



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

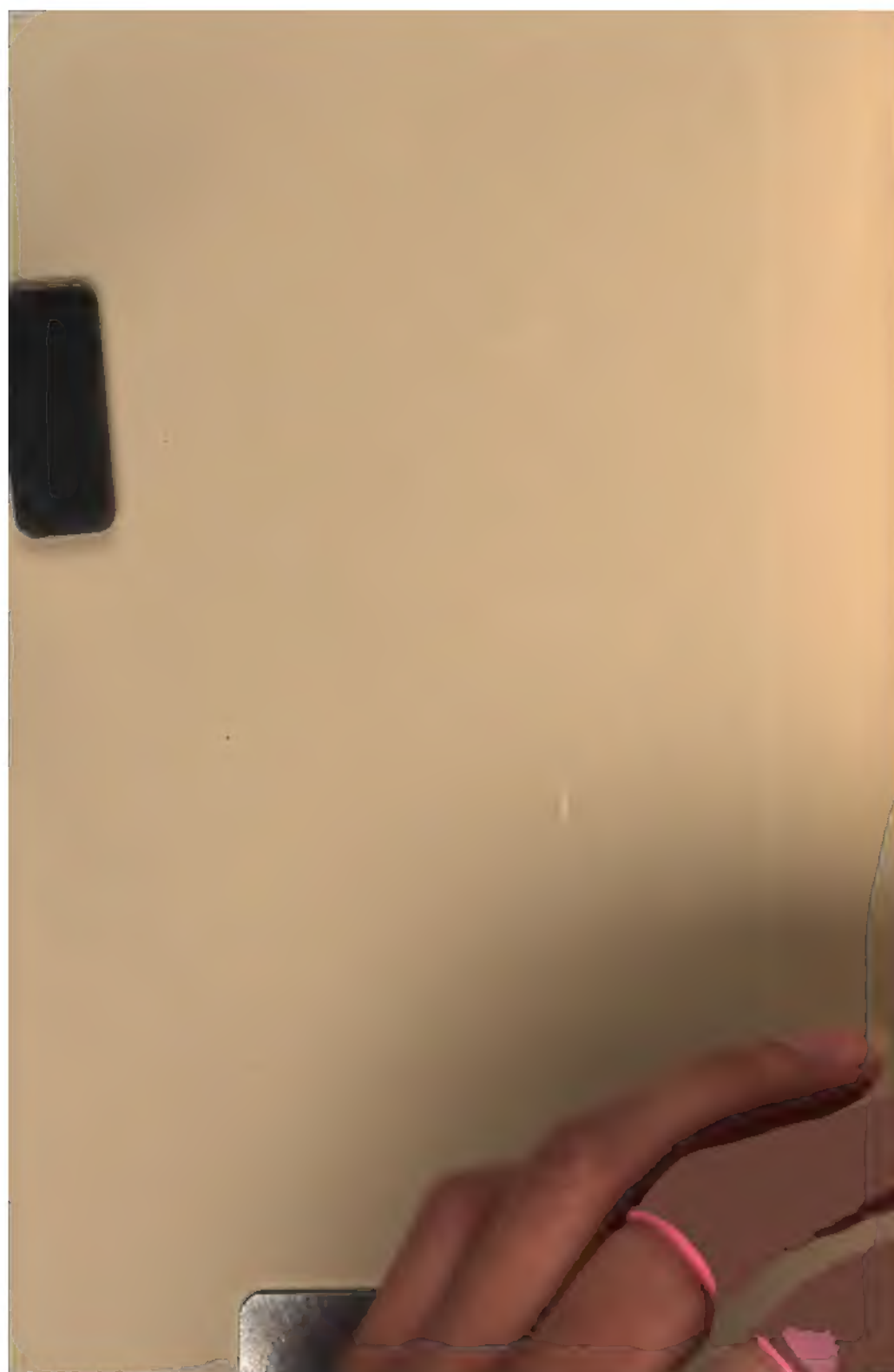
We also ask that you:

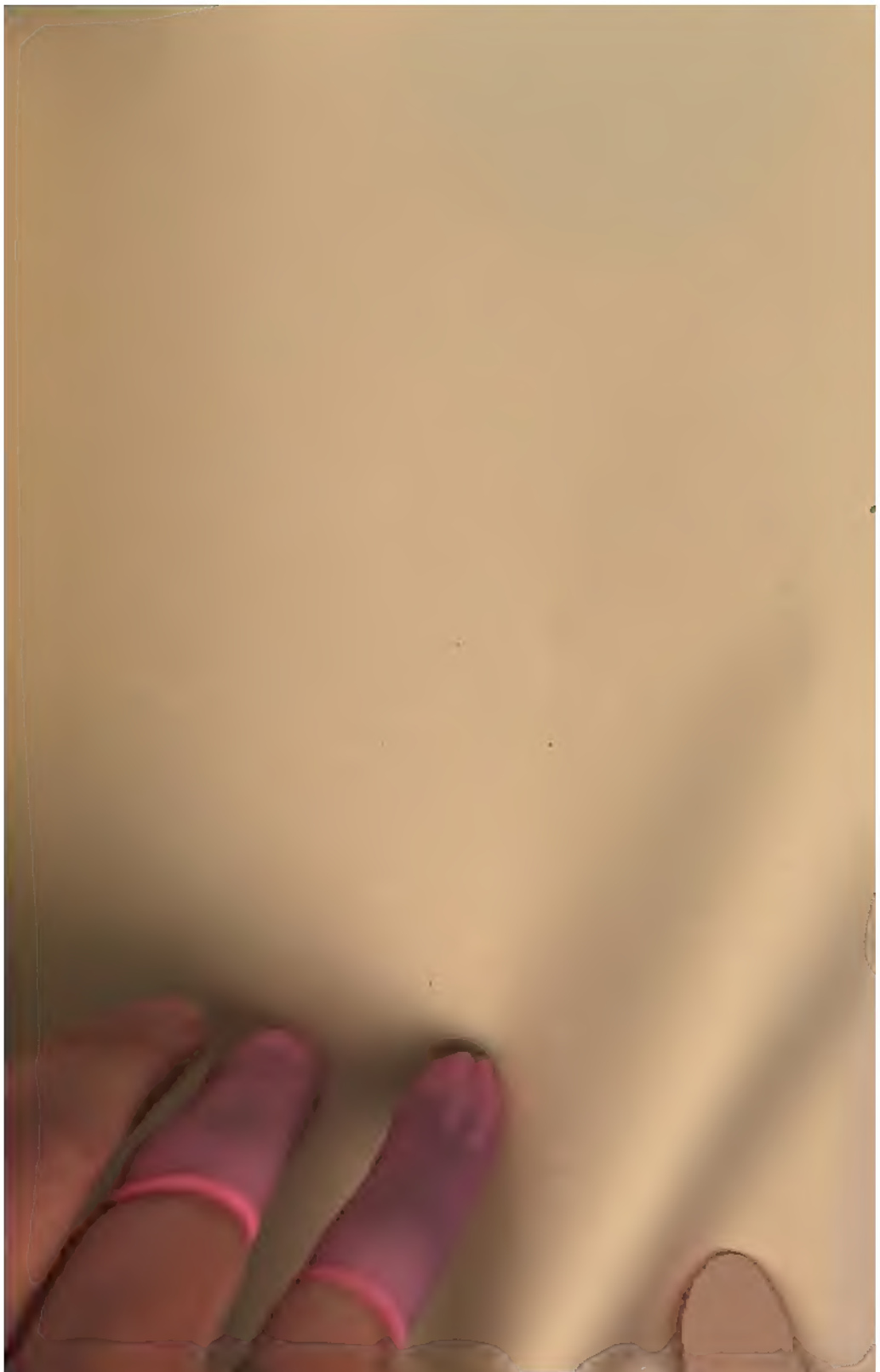
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>















THE COMPLETE WORKS  
OF  
JOHN GOWER

*G. C. MACAULAY*

\*\*\*

THE ENGLISH WORKS

**HENRY FROWDE, M.A.**  
**PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD**



**LONDON, EDINBURGH, AND NEW YORK**



THE COMPLETE WORKS  
OF  
JOHN GOWER

*EDITED FROM THE MANUSCRIPTS  
WITH INTRODUCTIONS, NOTES, AND GLOSSARIES*

BY  
G. C. MACAULAY, M.A.  
FORMERLY FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

\* \* \*

THE ENGLISH WORKS  
(*CONFESSIO AMANTIS*, LIB. V. 1971—LIB. VIII; *and* IN PRAISE OF PEACE)

O gentile Engleterre, a toi j'escrits.

Oxford  
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS  
1901

**Oxford**

**PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS**

**BY HORACE HART, M.A.**

**PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY**

**LIBRARY OF THE  
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY.  
Q 60248**

CONTENTS

	PAGE
CONFESSIO AMANTIS:—	
LIBER V (l. 1971) . . . . .	I
LIBER VI . . . . .	167
LIBER VII . . . . .	233
LIBER VIII . . . . .	386
IN PRAISE OF PEACE . . . . .	481
NOTES . . . . .	495
GLOSSARY AND INDEX OF PROPER NAMES . . . . .	555
INDEX TO THE NOTES . . . . .	651

## CORRIGENDA ET ADDENDA

- p. 1, l. 1981, *for one read on*
- p. 11, l. 2349, *for well read wel*
- p. 25, note on l. 2872, *for B, read SB,*
- p. 35, l. 3222, *for well read wel*
- p. 57, l. 4068, *for both read bothe*
- p. 96, l. 5504, *for ware read war*
- p. 97, l. 5540, *for luste read lust*
- p. 104, l. 5771, *for letres read lettres*
- p. 111, notes on ll. 6020, 6046, *for AdΔ, read SAdΔ,*
- p. 113, l. 6114, *for parte read part*
- p. 116, l. 6215, *for escaped read ascaped*
- p. 119, note on l. 6313, *for AdBTΔ read SAdBTΔ*
- p. 122, l. 6422\* *read Forthi* l. 6431\* *read daies*
- p. 123, l. 6408 (*margin*), *for obtinu- read optinu-.*
- p. 127, l. 6541, *for crafte read craft*
- p. 143, l. 7169\*, *for don read do*
- p. 144, l. 7181\* *read poverté* 7182\* *read underfing*
- p. 145, l. 7208\* *read Sacrilege*
- p. 170, l. 116, *for verraliche read verrailiche*
- p. 178, l. 415, *for Distruid read Destruid*
- p. 180, note on l. 497 (*margin*), *for BΔ read SBA*
- p. 218, l. 1880, *for schall read schal*
- p. 240, note on l. 262, *for Nomans, F read Noman S, F*
- p. 245, note on l. 451 *read J, SB, F*
- p. 259, l. 983 (*margin*), *for adesse read ad esse*
- p. 270, note on l. 1393, *for ellef þe read ellefþe*
- p. 272, l. 1445, *for whiche read which*
- p. 283, l. 1871, *for Well read Wel*

# CONFESSIO AMANTIS

(LIBER QUINTUS).

- iii. *Agros iungit agris cupidus domibusque domosque,* [COVOITISE.]  
*Possideat totam sic quasi solus humum.*  
*Solus et innumeros mulierum spirat amores,*  
*Vt sacra millenis sit sibi culta Venus.*

Dame Avarice is noght soleine,  
 Which is of gold the Capiteine;  
 Bot of hir Court in sondri wise  
 After the Scole of hire aprise  
 Sche hath of Servantz manyon,  
 Wherof that Covoitise is on;  
 Which goth the large world aboute,  
 To seche thavantages oute,  
 Wher that he mai the profit winne  
 To Avarice, and bringth it inne.  
 That one hald and that other draweth,  
 Ther is no day which hem bedaweth,  
 No mor the Sonne than the Mone,  
 Whan ther is eny thing to done,  
 And namely with Covoitise;  
 For he stant out of al assisse  
 Of resonable mannes fare.  
 Wher he pourposeth him to fare

Hic tractat confessor super illa specie Avaricie, que Cupiditas dicitur, quam in amoris causa pertractans Amanti super hoc opponit.

1980

P. ii. 194

- Latin verses* iii. 4 tibi AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT  
 1973 *his* AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> 1976 *margin* cupiditatis RCLB<sub>2</sub>  
 1978 *pauntage* (pe aantage) E . . . B<sub>2</sub>, W pe vantagens MH.XG  
 1979 *that om.* RCLB<sub>2</sub> 1981 *That on om.* B And thatoon H.  
 bald S, F bald A, B bald J 1988 *tofare* S, F



[COVEITISE.]

Upon his lucre and his beyete,  
 The smale path, the large Strete, 1990  
 The furlong and the longe Mile,  
 Al is bot on for thilke while :  
 And for that he is such on holde,  
 Dame Avarice him hath withholde,  
 As he which is the principal  
 Outward, for he is overal  
 A pourveour and an asprie.  
 For riht as of an hungri Pie  
 The storve bestes ben awaited,  
 Riht so is Covoitise afaited 2000  
 To loke where he mai purchace,  
 For be his wille he wolde embrace  
 Al that this wyde world beclippeth ;  
 Bot evere he somewhat overhippeth,  
 That he ne mai noght al fulfille  
 The lustes of his gredi wille.  
 Bot where it falleth in a lond,  
 That Covoitise in myhti hond  
 Is set, it is ful hard to fiede ;  
 For thanne he takth non other hiede, 2010  
 Bot that he mai purchace and gete,  
 His conscience hath al foryete,  
 And not what thing it mai amonte  
 That he schal afterward acompte.  
 Bote as the Luce in his degre  
 Of tho that lasse ben than he  
 The fisshes griedeli devoureth, P. ii. 195  
 So that no water hem socoureth,  
 Riht so no lawe mai rescowe  
 Fro him that wol no riht allowe ; 2020  
 For wher that such on is of myht,  
 His will schal stonde in stede of riht.  
 Thus be the men destruid fulofte,  
 Til that the grete god alofte  
 Ayein so gret a covoitise  
 Redresce it in his oghne wise :

1992 while] Mile AM  
 2020 ffor him E . . . B<sub>1</sub>

2002 he his wille wolde AMH<sub>1</sub>E . . . B<sub>1</sub>

## LIBER QUINTUS

3

And in ensample of alle tho  
I finde a tale write so,  
The which, for it is good to liere,  
Hierafterward thou schalt it hiere.

2030

Whan Rome stod in noble plit,  
Virgile, which was tho parfit,  
A Mirour made of his clergie  
And sette it in the tounes ye  
Of marbre on a piler withoute;  
That thei be thritty Mile aboute  
Be daie and ek also be nyhte  
In that Mirour beholde myhte  
Here enemys, if eny were,  
With al here ordinance there,  
Which thei ayein the Cite caste:  
So that, whil thilke Mirour laste,  
Ther was no lond which mihte achieve  
With werre Rome forto grieve;  
Wherof was gret envie tho.

And fell that ilke time so,  
That Rome hadde werres stronge  
Ayein Cartage, and stoden longe  
The tuo Cites upon debat.

P. ii. 196

Cartage sih the stronge astat  
Of Rome in thilke Mirour stonde,  
And thoghte al prively to fonde  
To overthrowe it be som wyle.  
And Hanybal was thilke while  
The Prince and ledere of Cartage,  
Which hadde set al his corage  
Upon knighthod in such a wise,  
That he be worthi and be wise  
And be non othre was conseiled,  
Wherof the world is yit merveiled  
Of the maistries that he wroghte  
Upon the marches whiche he soghte.

2050

2060

[TALE OF VIRGIL'S  
MIRROR.]

Hic ponit exemplum  
contra magnates cu-  
pidos Et narrat de  
Crasso Romanorum  
Imperatore, qui tur-  
rim, in qua speculum  
Virgilii Rome fixum  
extiterat, dolosa cir-  
cumuentus cupiditate  
evertit; unde non  
solum sui ipsius per-  
dicionem, set totius  
Ciuitatis intollerabile  
dampnum contingere  
causauit.

2030 thou schalt it] as þou schalt BT 2050 seep H1XG seip AM  
2057 knyhtod S knuthod F knyhtode AJ in] on E... B2  
vp on A 2059 non oþre AJ, S, F non oþer C, B

[TALE OF VIRGIL'S  
MIRROR.]

And fell in thilke time also,  
The king of Puile, which was tho,  
Thoghte ayein Rome to rebelle,  
And thus was take the querele,  
Hou to destruie this Mirour.

Of Rome tho was Emperour  
Crassus, which was so coveitous,  
That he was evere desirous 2070  
Of gold to gete the pilage ;  
Wherof that Puile and ek Cartage  
With Philosophres wise and grete  
Begunne of this matiere trete,  
And ate laste in this degre  
Ther weren Philosophres thre,  
To do this thing whiche undertoke, P. ii. 197  
And therupon thei with hem toke  
A gret tresor of gold in cophres,  
To Rome and thus these philisophres 2080  
Togedre in compainie wente,  
Bot noman wiste what thei mente.  
Whan thei to Rome come were,  
So prively thei duelte there,  
As thei that thoghten to deceive :  
Was non that mihte of hem perceive,  
Til thei in sondri stedes have  
Here gold under the ground begrave  
In tuo tresors, that to beholde  
Thei scholden seme as thei were olde. 2090  
And so forth thanne upon a day  
Al openly in good arai  
To themperour thei hem presente,  
And tolden it was here entente  
To duellen under his servise.  
And he hem axeth in what wise ;  
And thei him tolde in such a plit,  
That ech of hem hadde a spirit,  
The which slepende a nyht appiereth

2068 tho] jat E... B<sub>2</sub>      2074 matier(e) to trete H<sub>1</sub>L, AdBT, W  
2079 cophres AC, F      cofres (coffres) J, SB      2098 ech AJ, B  
eche F

## LIBER QUINTUS

5

And hem be sondri dremes lereth  
 After the world that hath betid.  
 Under the ground if oght be hid  
 Of oid tresor at eny throwe,  
 They schull it in here swevenes knowe ;  
 And upon this condicioun,

2100 [Tale of Virgin's  
MIRROR.]

Thei sein, what gold under the toun  
 Of Rome is hid, thei wole it finde, P. ii. 198  
 Ther scholde noght be left behinde,  
 Be so that he the halvendel  
 Hem grante, and he assenteth wel ;

2110

And thus cam sleighte forto duelle  
 With Covoitise, as I thee telle.  
 This Emperour bad redily  
 That thei be logged faste by  
 Where he his oghne body lay ;  
 And whan it was amorwe day,  
 That on of hem seith that he mette  
 Wher he a goldhord scholde fette :  
 Wherof this Emperour was glad,  
 And therupon anon he bad

2120

His Mynours forto go and myne,  
 And he himself of that covine  
 Goth forth withal, and at his hond  
 The tresor redi there he fond,  
 Where as thei seide it scholde be ;  
 And who was thanne glad bot he ?

Upon that other dai secounde  
 Thei have an other goldhord founde,  
 Which the seconde maister tok  
 Upon his swevene and undertok.

2130

And thus the sothe experience  
 To themperour yaf such credence,  
 That al his trist and al his feith  
 So sikerliche on hem he leith,  
 Of that he fond him so relieved,  
 That thei ben parfitli believed,  
 As thogh thei were goddes thre.

P. ii. 199

Nou herkne the soutilete.

2108 belcst F

2114 faste by A, F fasteby J, B

[TALE OF VIRGIL'S  
MIRROR.]

The thridde maister scholde mete,  
Which, as thei seiden, was unmete  
Above hem alle, and couthe most;  
And he withoute noise or bost  
Al prively, so as he wolde,  
Upon the morwe his swevene tolde  
To thempour riht in his Ere,  
And seide him that he wiste where  
A tresor was so plentivous  
Of gold and ek so precious  
Of jeweals and of riche stones,  
That unto alle hise hors at ones  
It were a charge sufficient.  
This lord upon this covenant  
Was glad, and axeth where it was.  
The maister seide, under the glas,  
And tolde him eke, as for the Myn  
He wolde ordeigne such engin,  
That thei the werk schull undersette  
With Tymber, that withoute lette  
Men mai the tresor sauvi delve,  
So that the Mirour be himselve  
Withoute empeirement schal stonde:  
And this the maister upon bonde  
Hath undertake in alle weie.  
This lord, which hadde his wit aweie  
And was with Covoitise blent,  
Anon therto yaf his assent;  
And thus they myne forth withal,  
The timber set up overal,  
Wherof the Piler stod upriht;  
Til it befell upon a nyht  
These clerkes, whan thei were war  
Hou that the timber only bar  
The Piler, wher the Mirour stod,—  
Here sleihte noman understod,—  
Thei go be nyhte unto the Myne

2140

2150

2160

P. ii. 200

2170

2150 unto] it to BT to A 2157 scholde (schuld &c.)  
M . Ba, TA, W 2162 And þus A . . . Ba, W Al þis  
S . . A



## LIBER QUINTUS

7

[TALE OF VIRGIL'S  
MIRROR.]

With pich, with souldphre and with rosine,  
 And whan the Cite was a slepe,  
 A wylde fyr into the depe  
 They caste among the timberwerk,  
 And so forth, whil the nyht was derk, 2180  
 Desguised in a povere arai  
 Thei passeden the toun er dai.  
 And whan thei come upon an hell,  
 Thei siben how the Mirour fell,  
 Wherof thei maden joie ynowh,  
 And ech of hem with other lowh,  
 And seiden, 'Lo, what coveitise  
 Mai do with hem that be noght wise!'  
 And that was proved afterward,  
 For every lond, to Romeward 2190  
 Which hadde be soubgit tofore,  
 Whan this Mirour was so forlore  
 And thei the wonder herde seie,  
 Anon begunne desobeie  
 With werres upon every side;  
 And thus hath Rome lost his pride  
 And was defouled overal. P. li. 201  
 For this I finde of Hanybal,  
 That he of Romeins in a dai,  
 Whan he hem fond out of arai, 2200  
 So gret a multitude slowh,  
 That of goldringes, whiche he drowh  
 Of gentil handes that ben dede,  
 Buissheilles fulle thre, I rede,  
 He felde, and made a bregge also,  
 That he mihte over Tybre go  
 Upon the corps that dede were  
 Of the Romeins, whiche he slowh there.  
 Bot now to speke of the juise,  
 The which after the covoitise 2210  
 Was take upon this Emperour,  
 For he destruide the Mirour;

2177 a slepe B, F    aslepe AJ    2202 goldringes JE, S, F  
 gold ringes A, B    2208 Of þe comuns E . . . Bz (þo EC) Of þe  
 bomeins (!) M    Of Romayns W

[TALE OF VIRGIL'S  
MIRROR.]

It is a wonder forto hiere.

The Romeins maden a chaiere  
And sette here Emperour therinne,  
And seiden, for he wolde winne  
Of gold the superfluite,  
Of gold he scholde such plente  
Receive, til he seide Ho :

And with gold, which thei hadden tho 2220  
Buillende hot withinne a panne,  
Into his Mouth thei poure thanne.

[COVEITISE.]  
Confessor.

And thus the thirst of gold was queynt,  
With gold which hadde ben atteynt.

Wherof, mi Sone, thou miht hiere,  
Whan Covoitise hath lost the stiere  
Of resonable governance, P. ii. 202  
Ther falleth ofte gret vengeance.

For ther mai be no worse thing  
Than Covoitise aboute a king : 2230  
If it in his persone be,

It doth the more adversite ;  
And if it in his conseil stonde,  
It bringth alday meschief to honde  
Of commun harm ; and if it growe  
Withinne his court, it wol be knowe,  
For thanne schal the king be piled.  
The man which hath hise londes tiled,  
Awaiteth noght more redily

The Hervest, than thei gredily 2240  
Ne maken thanne warde and wacche,  
Wher thei the profit mihten cacche :

And yit fulofte it falleth so,  
As men mai sen among hem tho,  
That he which most coveiteth faste  
Hath lest advantage ate laste.

For whan fortune is therayein,  
Thogh he coveite, it is in vein ;  
The happes be noght alle liche,  
On is mad povere, an other riche, 2250  
The court to some doth profit,

2226 the] his XCBs, Ad

## LIBER QUINTUS

9

[COVEITISE.]

And some ben evere in o plit;  
 And yit thei bothe aliche sore  
 Coveite, bot fortune is more  
 Unto that o part favorable.  
 And thogh it be noght resonable,  
 This thing a man mai sen alday, P. ii. 203  
 Wherof that I thee telle may  
 A fair ensample in remembrance,  
 Hou every man mot take his chance 2260  
 Or of richesse or of poverte.  
 Hou so it stonde of the decerte,  
 Hier is noght every thing aquit,  
 For ofte a man mai se this yit,  
 That who best doth, lest thonk schal have;  
 It helpeth noght the world to crave,  
 Which out of reule and of mesure  
 Hath evere stonde in aventure  
 Als wel in Court as elles where:  
 And hou in olde daies there 2270  
 It stod, so as the thinges felle,  
 I thenke a tale forto telle.

In a Cronique this I rede.  
 Aboute a king, as moste nede,  
 Ther was of knyhtes and squiers  
 Gret route, and ek of Officers:  
 Some of long time him hadden served,  
 And thoghten that thei have deserved  
 Avancement, and gon withoute;  
 And some also ben of the route  
 That comen bot a while agon,  
 And thei avanced were anon.  
 These olde men upon this thing,  
 So as thei dorste, ayein the king  
 Among hemself compleignen ofte:  
 Bot ther is nothing seid so softe,  
 That it ne comth out ate laste; P. ii. 204  
 The king it wiste, and als so faste,

[TALE OF THE TWO  
COFFERS.]

Hic ponit Confessor  
 exemplum contra il-  
 los, qui in domibus  
 Regum seruientes, pro  
 eo quod ipsi secundum  
 eorum cupiditatem  
 promoti non existunt,  
 de regio seruuicio  
 2280 quamuis in eorum de-  
 fectu indiscrete mur-  
 murant.

2278 margin eorum om. AMH: 2288 and als so] anon als B  
 and als (as) X, WH

[TALE OF THE TWO  
COFFERS.]

As he which was of his Prudence,  
 He schop therefore an evidence 2290  
 Of hem that pleighen in that cas,  
 To knowe in whos defalte it was.  
 And al withinne his oghne entente,  
 That noman wiste what it mente,  
 Anon he let tuo cofres make  
 Of o semblance and of o make,  
 So lich that no lif thilke throwe  
 That on mai fro that other knowe :  
 Thei were into his chambre broght,  
 Bot noman wot why thei be wroght, 2300  
 And natheles the king hath bede  
 That thei be set in prive stede.  
 As he that was of wisdom sligh,  
 Whan he therto his time sih,  
 Al prively, that non it wiste,  
 Hise oghne hondes that o kiste  
 Of fin gold and of fin perrie,  
 The which out of his tresorie  
 Was take, anon he felde full ;  
 That other cofre of straw and mull 2310  
 With Stones meind he felde also.  
 Thus be thei fulle bothe tuo,  
 So that erliche upon a day  
 He bad withinne, ther he lay,  
 Ther scholde be tofore his bed  
 A bord upset and faire spred ;  
 And thanne he let the cofres fette, P. ii. 205  
 Upon the bord and dede hem sette.  
 He knew the names wel of tho,  
 The whiche ayein him grucche so, 2320  
 Bothe of his chambre and of his halle,  
 Anon and sende for hem alle,  
 And seide to hem in this wise :  
 'Ther schal noman his happ despise ;  
 I wot wel ye have longe served,  
 And god wot what ye have deserved :  
 Bot if it is along on me

## LIBER QUINTUS

11

[TALE OF THE TWO  
COFFERS.]

Of that ye unavanced be,  
 Or elles it be long on you,  
 The sothe schal be proved nou, 2330  
 To stoppe with youre evele word.  
 Lo hier tuo cofres on the bord:  
 Ches which you list of bothe tuo;  
 And witeth wel that on of tho  
 Is with tresor so full begon,  
 That if ye happe therupon,  
 Ye schull be riche men for evere.  
 Now ches and tak which you is levere:  
 Bot be wel war, er that ye take;  
 For of that on I undertake 2340  
 Ther is no maner good thernne,  
 Wherof ye mihten profit winne.  
 Now goth togedre of on assent  
 And taketh youre avisement,  
 For bot I you this dai avance,  
 It stant upon youre oghne chance  
 Al only in defalte of grace: P. li. 206  
 So schal be schewed in this place  
 Upon you alle well afyn,  
 That no defalte schal be myn.' 2350  
 Thei knelen alle and with o vois  
 The king thei thonken of this chois:  
 And after that thei up arise,  
 And gon aside and hem avise,  
 And ate laste thei acorde;  
 Wherof her tale to recorde,  
 To what issue thei be falle,  
 A kniht schal speke for hem alle.  
 He kneleth down unto the king,  
 And seith that thei upon this thing, 2360  
 Or forto winne or forto lese,  
 Ben alle avised forto chese.  
 Tho tok this kniht a yerde on honde,  
 And goth there as the cofres stonde,  
 And with assent of everichon

2328 unavanced (vn auanced) 3e be E . . . B<sub>1</sub> 2350 faute  
 E B<sub>1</sub> 2352 his chois AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT 2357 be falle] byfalle A



[TALE OF THE TWO  
COFFERS.]

He leith his yerde upon that on,  
 And seith the king hou thilke same  
 Thei chese in reguerdoun be name,  
 And preith him that thei mote it have.  
 The king, which wolde his honour save, 2370  
 Whan he hath herd the commun vois,  
 Hath granted hem here oghne chois  
 And tok hem therupon the keie.  
 Bot for he wolde it were seie  
 What good thei have, as thei suppose,  
 He bad anon the cofre uncloze,  
 Which was fulfild with straw and stones : P. ii. 207  
 Thus be thei served al at ones.  
 This king thanne in the same stede  
 Anon that other cofre undede, 2380  
 Where as thei sihen gret richesse,  
 Wel more than thei couthen gesse.  
 'Lo,' seith the king, 'nou mai ye se  
 That ther is no defalte in me ;  
 Forthi miself I wole aquyte,  
 And bereth ye youre oghne wyte  
 Of that fortune hath you refused.'  
 Thus was this wise king excused,  
 And thei lefte of here evele speche  
 And mercy of here king beseche. 2390

[TALE OF THE BEG-  
GARS AND THE  
PASTIES.]

Nota hic de diuicia-  
 rum Accidencia : ubi  
 narrat qualiter Fre-  
 dericus Romanorum  
 Imperator duos pau-  
 peres audiuit litigan-  
 tes, quorum vnus  
 dixit, 'Bene potest di-  
 tari, quem Rex vult  
 ditare.' Et alius dixit,  
 'Quem deus vult ditare,  
 diues erit.' Que res  
 cum ad experimen-  
 tum postea probata  
 fuisset, ille qui deum  
 inuocabat pastellum  
 auro plenum sortitus

Somdiel to this matiere lik  
 I finde a tale, hou Frederik,  
 Of Rome that time Emperour,  
 Herde, as he wente, a gret clamour  
 Of tuo beggers upon the weie.  
 That on of hem began to seie,  
 'Ha lord, wel mai the man be riche  
 Whom that a king list forto riché.'  
 That other saide nothing so,  
 Bot, 'He is riche and wel bego, 2400  
 To whom that god wole sende wele.'  
 And thus thei maden wordes fele,  
 Wherof this lord hath hiede nome,  
 And dede hem bothe forto come

To the Paleis, wher he schal etc,  
And bad ordeine for here mete  
Tuo Pastes, whiche he let do make. P. li. 208

[TALE OF THE BEG-  
GARS AND THE  
PASTIES.]

est, alius vero caponis  
pastellum sorte pre-  
elegit.

A capoun in that on was bake,  
And in that other forto winne  
Of florins al that mai withinne  
He let do pute a gret richesse;  
And evene aliche, as man mai gesse,  
Outward thei were bothe tuo.

2410

This begger was comanded tho,  
He that which hield him to the king,  
That he ferst chese upon this thing:  
He sih hem, bot he felte hem noght,  
So that upon his oghne thoght  
He ches the Capoun and forsok  
That other, which his fela tok.

2420

Bot whanne he wiste hou that it ferde,  
He seide alowd, that men it herde,  
'Nou have I certainly conceived  
That he mai lityly be deceived,  
That tristeth unto mannes helpe;  
Bot wel is him whom god wol helpe,  
For he stant on the siker side,  
Which elles scholde go beside:  
I se my fela wel recovere,  
And I mot duelle stille povere.'

2430

Thus spak this begger his entente,  
And povere he cam and povere he wente;  
Of that he hath richesse soght,  
His infortune it wolde noght.

So mai it schewe in sondri wise,  
Betwen fortune and covoitise

The chance is cast upon a Dee; P. li. 209

Bot yit fulofte a man mai se

Ynowe of suche natheles,

Whiche evere pute hemself in press

2440

To gete hem good, and yit thei faile.

2405 *margin* sorte om. A . . . B<sub>2</sub> 2411 He] And BT 2412  
man, a man AMH<sub>1</sub> men WH<sub>1</sub> 2417 seeþ B 2433 he richesse  
om. bath, E . . . B<sub>2</sub> richesse he haþ Ad

## CONFESSIO AMANTIS

[COVEITISE OF  
LOVERS.]

And forto speke of this entaile  
 Touchende of love in thi matiere,  
 Mi goode Sone, as thou miht hiere,  
 That riht as it with tho men stod  
 Of infortune of worldes good,  
 As thou hast herd me telle above,  
 Riht so fulofte it stant be love :  
 Thogh thou coveite it everemore,  
 Thou schalt noght have o diel the more, 2450  
 Bot only that which thee is schape,  
 The remenant is bot a jape.  
 And natheles ynowe of tho  
 Ther ben, that nou coveiten so,  
 That where as thei a womman se,  
 Ye ten or tuelle thogh ther be,  
 The love is nou so unavised,  
 That wher the Beaute stant assised,  
 The mannes herte anon is there,  
 And rouneth tales in hire Ere, 2460  
 And seith hou that he loveth streite,  
 And thus he set him to coveite,  
 An hundred thogh he sihe aday.  
 So wolde he more thanne he may ;  
 Bot for the grete covoitise  
 Of sotie and of fol emprise  
 In ech of hem he fint somewhat P. ii. 210  
 That pleseth him, or this or that ;  
 Som on, for sche is whit of skin,  
 Som on, for sche is noble of kin, 2470  
 Som on, for sche hath rodi chieke,  
 Som on, for that sche semeth mieke,  
 Som on, for sche hath yhen greie,  
 Som on, for sche can lawhe and pleie,  
 Som on, for sche is long and smal,  
 Som on, for sche is lyte and tall,  
 Som on, for sche is pale and bleche,  
 Som on, for sche is softe of speche,  
 Som on, for that sche is camused,  
 Som on, for sche hath noght ben used, 2480

2453 ynowe] I trowe BT

2465 Bot] So BT

2477 Somon F

## LIBER QUINTUS

15

Som on, for sche can daunce and singe;  
 So that som thing to his likinge  
 He fyt, and thogh nomore he fiele,  
 Bot that sche hath a litel hiele,  
 It is ynow that he therfore

[COVOITISE OF  
LOVERS.]

Hire love, and thus an hundred score,  
 Whil thei be newe, he wolde he hadde;  
 Whom he forsakth, sche schal be hadde.

The blinde man no colour demeth,  
 But al is on, riht as him semeth;  
 So hath his lust no juggement,  
 Whom covoitise of love blent.

Cecus non indicat  
de coloribus.

2490

Him thenkth that to his covoitise  
 Hou al the world ne mai suffise,  
 For be his wille he wolde have alle,  
 If that it mihte so befall:

Thus is he commun as the Strete, P. ii. 211  
 I sette noght of his beyete.

Mi Sone, hast thou such covoitise?

Confessor.

Nai, fader, such love I despise,

2500

Amans.

And whil I live schal don evere,  
 For in good feith yit hadde I levere,  
 Than to coveite in such a weie,  
 To ben for evere til I deie  
 As povere as Job, and loveles,  
 Outaken on, for haveles  
 His thonkes is noman alyve.

For that a man scholde al unthryve

Ther oghte no wisman coveite,

The lawe was noght set so streite:

2510

Forthi miself withal to save,

Such on ther is I wolde have,

And non of al these othre mo.

Mi Sone, of that thou woldest so,

Confessor.

I am noght wroth, bot over this

I wol thee tellen hou it is.

For ther be men, whiche otherwise,

2482 to] of BT      2488 forsake} sche is b. BT      forsaketh he  
 schal be b. H<sub>1</sub>      2500 My fader G . . B<sub>1</sub>      2508 that} þan  
 (þanne) XG, B      þough E . . . B<sub>2</sub>      2513 al A, S, F      alle J, B

[COVEITISE OF  
LOVERS.]

Riht only for the covoitise  
Of that thei sen a womman riche,  
Ther wol thei al here love affiche; 2520  
Noght for the Beaute of hire face,  
Ne yit for vertu ne for grace,  
Which sche hath elles riht ynowh,  
Bot for the Park and for the plowh,  
And other thing which therto longeth :  
For in non other wise hem longeth  
To love, bot thei profit finde; P. ii. 212  
And if the profit be behinde,  
Here love is evere lesse and lesse,  
For after that sche hath richesse, 2530  
Her love is of proporcion.  
If thou hast such condicion,  
Mi Sone, tell riht as it is.

Confessio Amantis.

Min holi fader, nay ywiss,  
Condicion such have I non.  
For trewli, fader, I love oon  
So wel with al myn hertes thoght,  
That certes, thogh sche hadde noght,  
And were as povere as Medea,  
Which was exiled for Creusa, 2540  
I wolde hir noght the lasse love ;  
Ne thogh sche were at hire above,  
As was the riche qwen Candace,  
Which to deserve love and grace  
To Alisandre, that was king,  
Yaf many a worthi riche thing,  
Or elles as Pantasilee,  
Which was the quen of Feminee,  
And gret richesse with hir nam,  
Whan sche for love of Hector cam 2550  
To Troie in rescousse of the toun,—  
I am of such condicion,  
That thogh mi ladi of hirselve  
Were also riche as suche tuelve,

2526 hem om. RCB<sub>2</sub> he L 2540 for J, FH<sub>2</sub> fro AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>,  
S . . . Δ, WMagd. 2546 Yaf] Of E . . . B<sub>2</sub> 2550 to Hector BT  
2551 recousse F 2554 also] as AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, Ad, W

## LIBER QUINTUS

17

[COVEITISE OF  
LOVERS.]

I couthe noght, thogh it wer so,  
 No betre love hir than I do.  
 For I love in so plein a wise, P. ii. 213  
 That forto speke of coveitise,  
 As for poverte or for richesse  
 Mi love is nouthre mor ne lesse. 2560  
 For in good feith I trowe this,  
 So coveitous noman ther is,  
 Forwhy and he mi ladi sihe,  
 That he thurgh lokinge of his yhe  
 Ne scholde have such a strok withinne,  
 That for no gold he mihte winne  
 He scholde noght hire love asterte,  
 Bot if he lefte there his herte;  
 Be so it were such a man,  
 That couthe Skile of a womman. 2570  
 For ther be men so ruide some,  
 Whan thei among the wommen come,  
 Thei gon under proteccioun,  
 That love and his affeccioun  
 Ne schal noght take hem be the slieve;  
 For thei ben out of that believe,  
 Hem lusteth of no ladi chiere,  
 Bot evere thenken there and hiere  
 Wher that here gold is in the cofre,  
 And wol non other love profre: 2580  
 Bot who so wot what love amounteth  
 And be resoun trewliche acompteth,  
 Than mai he knowe and taken hiede  
 That al the lust of wommanhiede,  
 Which mai ben in a ladi face,  
 Mi ladi hath, and ek of grace  
 If men schull yiven hire a pris, P. ii. 214  
 Thei mai wel seie hou sche is wys  
 And sobre and simple of contenance,

2563 he] I y) BT    2564 his] hir X... B<sub>2</sub>, T    2571 some]  
 of some A... B<sub>2</sub>, B    2573 proteccioun (1) F    2574 and] of B  
 2579 je gold is in her cofre AdBT    her(e) gold is in her(e) E... B<sub>2</sub>  
 ther . her H<sub>1</sub>    2587 schulde E... B<sub>2</sub>, W    hire a pris BTΔ, F  
 hire, apris [appris, AJMXERLB<sub>2</sub>, W    here a pris C    her(e) apris  
 H., Ad. H<sub>1</sub>

[COVEITISE OF  
LOVERS.]

And al that to good governance 2590  
 Belongeth of a worthi wiht  
 Sche hath pleinli : for thilke nyht  
 That sche was bore, as for the nones  
 Nature sette in hire at ones  
 Beaute with bounte so besein,  
 That I mai wel afferme and sein,  
 I sawh yit nevere creature  
 Of comlihied and of feture  
 In eny kinges regioun  
 Be lich hire in comparisoun : 2600  
 And therto, as I have you told,  
 Yit hath sche more a thousandfold  
 Of bounte, and schortli to telle,  
 Sche is the pure hed and welle  
 And Mirour and ensample of goode.  
 Who so hir vertus understode,  
 Me thenkth it oughte ynow suffise  
 Withouten other covoitise  
 To love such on and to serve,  
 Which with hire chiere can deserve 2610  
 To be beloved betre ywiss  
 Than sche per cas that richest is  
 And hath of gold a Milion.  
 Such hath be myn opinion  
 And evere schal : bot natheles  
 I seie noght sche is haveles,  
 That sche nys riche and wel at ese, P. ii. 215  
 And hath ynow wherwith to plese  
 Of worldes good whom that hire liste ;  
 Bot o thing wolde I wel ye wiste, 2620  
 That nevere for no worldes good  
 Min herte untoward hire stod,  
 Bot only riht for pure love ;  
 That wot the hihe god above.  
 Nou, fader, what seie ye therto?  
 Mi Sone, I seie it is wel do.  
 For tak of this riht good believe,

Confessor.

2591 of] to AJMXG vnto H<sub>1</sub>E . . . B<sub>2</sub> as Δ  
 E . . . B<sub>2</sub>

2627 To take

## LIBER QUINTUS

19

What man that wole himself relieve  
 To love in eny other wise,  
 He schal wel finde his coveitise  
 Schal sore grieve him ate laste,  
 For such a love mai noght laste.  
 Bot nou, men sein, in oure daies  
 Men maken bot a fewe assaies,  
 Bot if the cause be richesse ;  
 Forthi the love is wel the lesse.  
 And who that wolde ensamples telle,  
 Be olde daies as thei felle,  
 Than mihte a man wel understonde  
 Such love mai noght longe stonde.  
 Now herkne, Sone, and thou schalt hiere  
 A gret ensample of this matiere.

[COVEITISE OF  
LOVERS.]

1630

1640

To trete upon the cas of love,  
 So as we tolden hiere above,  
 I finde write a wonder thing.  
 Of Puile whilom was a king,  
 A man of hih complexioun  
 And yong, bot his affeccioun  
 After the nature of his age  
 Was yit noght falle in his corage  
 The lust of wommen forto knowe.  
 So it betidde upon a throwe  
 This lord fell into gret seknesse :  
 Phisique hath don the besinesse  
 Of sondri cures manyon  
 To make him hol ; and therupon  
 A worthi maister which ther was  
 Yaf him conseil upon this cas,  
 That if he wolde have parfit hele,  
 He scholde with a womman dele,  
 A freissh, a yong, a lusti wiht,  
 To don him compaignie a nyht ;  
 For thanne he seide him redily,  
 That he schal be al hol therby,

[TALE OF THE KING  
AND HIS STEWARD'S  
WIFE]

P. ii. 216

Hic ponit exemplum  
 contra istos qui non  
 propter amorem sed  
 propter diuitias spon-  
 salia sumunt. Et nar-  
 rat de quodam Regis  
 Apule Seneschallo,  
 qui non solum propter  
 pecuniam uxorem  
 duxit, set etiam pec-  
 unie commercio uxorem  
 sibi desponsatam  
 vendidit.

1650

1660

1637 ensample AM... B<sub>1</sub>, W 1658 conseil upon] to conseil in  
 AM... ■



## CONFESSIO AMANTIS

[TALE OF THE KING  
AND HIS STEWARD'S  
WIFE.]

And otherwise he kneu no cure.

This king, which stod in aventure  
Of lif and deth, for medicine  
Assented was, and of covine  
His Steward, whom he tristeth wel,  
He tok, and tolde him everydel, 2670  
Hou that this maister hadde seid :  
And therupon he hath him preid  
And charged upon his ligance,  
That he do make porveance  
Of such on as be covenable  
For his plesance and delitable ;  
And bad him, hou that evere it stod, P. ii. 217  
That he schal spare for no good,  
For his will is riht wel to paie.

The Steward seide he wolde assaie : 2680  
Bot nou hierafter thou schalt wite,  
As I finde in the bokes write,  
What coveitise in love doth.  
This Steward, forto telle soth,  
Amonges al the men alyve  
A lusti ladi hath to wyve,  
Which natheles for gold he tok  
And noght for love, as seith the bok.  
A riche Marchant of the lond  
Hir fader was, and hire fond 2690  
So worthily, and such richesse  
Of worldes good and such largesse  
With hire he yaf in mariage,  
That only for thilke advantage  
Of good this Steward hath hire take,  
For lucre and noght for loves sake,  
And that was afterward wel seene ;  
Nou herkne what it wolde meene.

This Steward in his oghne herte

2666 The B	2671 his maister E . . . B <sub>1</sub>	2682 the om.
E . . . B <sub>1</sub>	2685 al the] alle (all) XE . . . B <sub>1</sub>	2690 hire] he
hir(e) A . . . B <sub>1</sub> , S . . . Δ		
2694 f.	Whan þat sche was but of ȝong age for good E . . . B <sub>1</sub> (was of L)	
2696 And lucre E . . . B <sub>1</sub>		

## LIBER QUINTUS

21

Sih that his lord mai noght asterte

His maladie, bot he have

A lusti womman him to save,

And thoghte he wolde yive ynowh

Of his tresor; wherof he drowh

Gret coveitise into his mynde,

And sette his honour fer behynde.

Thus he, whom gold hath overset, P. ii. 218

Was trapped in his oghne net;

The gold hath mad hise wittes lame,

So that sechende his oghne schame 2710

He rouneth in the kinges Ere,

And seide him that he wiste where

A gentile and a lusti on

Tho was, and thider wolde he gon:

Bot he mot yive yiftes grete;

For bot it be thurgh gret beyete

Of gold, he seith, he schal noght spede.

The king him bad upon the nede

That take an hundred pound he scholde,

And yive it where that he wolde, 2720

Be so it were in worthi place:

And thus to stonde in loves grace

This king his gold hath abandouned.

And whan this tale was full rouned,

The Steward tok the gold and wente,

Withinne his herte and many a wente

Of coveitise thanne he caste,

Wherof a pourpos ate laste

Ayein love and ayein his riht

He tok, and seide hou thiike nyht 2730

His wif schal ligge be the king;

And goth thenkende upon this thing

Toward his In, til he cam hom

Into the chambre, and thanne he nom

His wif, and tolde hire al the cas.

And sche, which red for schame was,

With bothe hire handes hath him preid P. ii. 219

2714 Ther was RCLB, W Wher was E 2735 tolde J, S  
 old A, B, F 2737 hath him preid] to him preide B with him p. T

2700 [TALE OF THE KING  
 AND HIS STEWARD'S  
 WIFE.]

[TALE OF THE KING;  
AND HIS STEWARD'S  
WIFE.]

Knelerde and in this wise seid,  
That sche to reson and to skile  
In what thing that he bidde wile 2740  
Is redy forto don his heste,  
Bot this thing were noght honeste,  
That he for gold hire scholde selle.  
And he tho with hise wordes felle  
Forth with his gastly contenance  
Seith that sche schal don obeissance  
And folwe his will in every place ;  
And thus thurgh strengthe of his manace  
Hir innocence is overlad,  
Wherof sche was so sore adrad 2750  
That sche his will mot nede obeie.  
And therupon was schape a weie,  
That he his oghne wif be nyhte  
Hath out of alle mennes sihte  
So prively that non it wiste  
Brought to the king, which as him liste  
Mai do with hire what he wolde.  
For whan sche was ther as sche scholde,  
With him abedde under the cloth,  
The Steward tok his leve and goth 2760  
Into a chambre faste by ;  
Bot hou he slep, that wot noght I,  
For he sih cause of jelousie.

Bot he, which hath the compainie  
Of such a lusti on as sche,  
Him thoghte that of his degre  
Ther was noman so wel at ese: P. ii. 220  
Sche doth al that sche mai to plese,  
So that his herte al hol sche hadde ;  
And thus this king his joie ladde, 2770  
Til it was nyh upon the day.  
'The Steward thanne wher sche lay  
Cam to the bedd, and in his wise  
Hath bede that sche scholde arise.

2738 seyde BT  
aweie AJ, B, F  
om. E . . . B<sub>2</sub>

2740 bidde] didde AM  
2761 faste by AJ, B fasteby F  
2773 his wise JR, BT, W

2752 a weie MC, T  
2771 nyh

'The king seith, 'Nay, sche schal noght go.'

[TALE OF THE KING  
AND HIS STEWARD'S  
WIFE.]

His Steward seide ayein, 'Noght so ;

For sche mot gon er it be knowe,

And so I swor at thilke throwe,

Whan I hire fette to you hiere.'

The king his tale wol noght hiere, 2780

And seith hou that he hath hire boght,

Forthi sche schal departe noght,

Til he the brighte dai beholde.

And cawhte hire in hise armes folde,

As he which liste ferto pleie,

And bad his Steward gon his weie,

And so he dede ayein his wille.

And thus his wif abedde stille

Lay with the king the longe nyht,

Til that it was hih Sonne lyht ; 2790

Bot who sche was he knew nothing.

Tho cam the Steward to the king

And preide him that withoute schame

In sayinge of hire goode name

He myhte leden hom ayein

This lady, and hath told him plein

Hou that it was his oghne wif. P. II. 221

The king his Ere unto this strif

Hath leid, and whan that he it herde,

Welnyh out of his wit he ferde, 2800

And seide, 'Ha, caitif most of alle,

Wher was it evere er this befalle,

That eny cokard in this wise

Betok his wif for coveitise ?

Thou hast bothe hire and me beguiled

And ek thin oghne astat reviled,

Wherof that buxom unto thee

Hierafter schal sche nevere be.

For this avou to god I make,

After this day if I thee take, 2810

Thou schalt ben honged and todrawe.

2776 The stiward BT Theward J seide no þing 'so B  
2779 hire fette to] hire fette vnto C 300 fette vnto B 2780 wold(e)  
R.E. . Ba, W 2793 that om. AdB

[TALE OF THE KING  
AND HIS STEWARD'S  
WIFE.]

Nou loke anon thou be withdrawe,  
So that I se thee neveremore.'  
This Steward thanne dradde him sore,  
With al the haste that he mai  
And fledde awei that same dai,  
And was exiled out of londe.

Lo, there a nyce housebonde,  
Which thus hath lost his wif for evere!  
Bot natheles sche hadde a levere; 2820  
The king hire weddeth and honoureth,  
Wherof hire name sche socoureth,  
Which erst was lost thurgh coveitise  
Of him, that ladde hire other wise,  
And hath himself also forlore.

Confessor.

Mi Sone, be thou war therfore,  
Wher thou schalt love in eny place, P. ii. 222  
That thou no covoitise embrace,  
The which is noght of loves kinde.  
Bot for al that a man mai finde 2830  
Nou in this time of thilke rage  
Ful gret desese in mariage,  
Whan venym melleth with the Sucre  
And mariage is mad for lucre,  
Or for the lust or for the hele;  
What man that schal with outhur dele,  
He mai noght faile to repente.

Amans.

Mi fader, such is myn entente:  
Bot natheles good is to have,  
For good mai ofte time save 2840  
The love which scholde elles spille.  
Bot god, which wot myn hertes wille,  
I dar wel take to witnesse,  
Yit was I nevere for richesse  
Beset with mariage non;  
For al myn herte is upon on  
So frely, that in the persone  
Stant al my worldes joie al one:  
I axe nouthur Park ne Plowh,

2816 þe same E . . . B<sub>1</sub>, S . . . Δ, WH; 2836 outhur] oþer  
(oþir) M . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT, W eifer Δ

If I hire hadde, it were ynowh, 2850  
 Hir love scholde me suffice  
 Withouten other coveitise.  
 Lo now, mi fader, as of this,  
 Touchende of me riht as it is,  
 Mi schrifte I am beknowe plein;  
 And if ye wole oght elles sein,  
 Of covoitise if ther be more P. ii. 223  
 In love, agropeth out the sore.

n *Fallere cum nequeat propria vir fraude, subornat  
 Testes, sit quod eis vera retorta fides.  
 Sicut agros cupidus dum querit amans mulieres,  
 Vult testes falsos falsus habere suos.  
 Non sine vindicta periurus abiit in eius  
 Visu, qui cordis intima cuncta videt.  
 Fallere periuro non est laudanda puellam  
 Gloria, set false condicionis opus.*

[FALSE WITNESS AND  
 PERJURY.]

Mi Sone, thou schalt understonde  
 Hou Coveitise hath yit on honde 2860  
 In special tuo conseilours,  
 That ben also hise procurours.  
 The ferst of hem is Falswitnessse,  
 Which evere is redi to witnessse  
 What thing his maister wol him hote:  
 Perjurie is the secounde hote,  
 Which spareth noght to swere an oth,  
 Thogh it be fals and god be wroth.  
 That on schal falswitnessse bere,  
 That other schal the thing forswere, 2870  
 Whan he is charged on the bok.  
 So what with hepe and what with crok  
 Thei make here maister ofte winne  
 And wol noght knowe what is sinne

Hic tractat super  
 illis Avaricie specie-  
 bus, que falsum Testi-  
 monium et Perjurium  
 nuncupantur; quorum  
 fraudulenta circum-  
 uencio tam in cupidi-  
 tatis quam in amoris  
 causa sui desiderii  
 propositum quamsepe  
 fallaciter attingit.

2856 wold(e) RCLB<sub>2</sub>, W

*Latin Verses* iv 2 vere A . . . CB<sub>2</sub> vero L verba W 4 7 om. B

laudando E . . . B<sub>2</sub>

2863 ferst J, S, F ferste A 2863 *margin* super illis] semper  
 de illis F . . . B<sub>2</sub> 2866 Perjurie J, F Periure AC, B 2867 *margin*

tam cupiditatis EC causa cup. RLB<sub>2</sub> tam in cupiditate H<sub>1</sub>

2868 be wroth] wroth AMH<sub>1</sub> 2872 hepe J, B, F hi pe T hu pe C

hap A

[FALSE WITNESS AND  
PERJURY.]

For coveitise, and thus, men sain,  
Thei maken many a fals bargain.  
Ther mai no trewe querele arise  
In thilke queste and thilke assise,  
Where as thei tuo the poeple enforme ;  
For thei kepe evere o maner forme, 2880  
That upon gold here conscience P. ii. 224  
Thei founde, and take here evidence ;  
And thus with falswitnessse and othes  
Thei winne hem mete and drinke and clothes.

Riht so ther be, who that hem knewe,  
Of thes lovers ful many untrewē:  
Nou mai a womman finde ynowe,  
That ech of hem, whan he schal wowe,  
Anon he wole his hand doun lein  
Upon a bok, and swere and sein 2890  
That he wole feith and trouthe bere ;  
And thus he profreth him to swere  
To serven evere til he die,  
And al is verai tricherie.  
For whan the sothe himselven trieth,  
The more he swerth, the more he lieth ;  
Whan he his feith makth althermest,  
Than mai a womman truste him lest ;  
For til he mai his will achieve,  
He is no lengere forto lieve. 2900  
Thus is the trouthe of love exiled,  
And many a good womman beguiled.

[FALSE WITNESS.]  
Confessor.

And ek to speke of Falswitnessse,  
There be nou many suche, I gesse,  
That lich unto the provisours  
Thei make here prive procurours,  
To telle hou ther is such a man,  
Which is worthi to love and can  
Al that a good man scholde kunne ;  
So that with lesinge is begunne 2910  
The cause in which thei wole procede, P. ii. 225  
And also siker as the crede

2878 and] of BT in XE, W 2900 line om. B 2904 suche  
J, SB such A, F 2906 hire AR, F procurous B, F

Thei make of that thei knowen fals.

[FALSE WITNESS.]

And thus fulofte aboute the hals

Love is of false men embraced ;

Bot love which is so purchaced

Comth afterward to litel pris.

Forthi, mi Sone, if thou be wis,

Nou thou hast herd this evidence,

Thou miht thin oghne conscience

2920

Oppose, if thou hast ben such on.

Nai, god wot, fader, I am non,

Amans.

Ne nevere was ; for as men seith,

Whan that a man schal make his feith,

His herte and tunge moste acorde ;

For if so be that thei discorde,

Thanne is he fals and elles noght :

And I dar seie, as of my thoght,

In love it is noght descordable

Unto mi word, bot acordable.

2930

And in this wise, fader, I

Mai riht wel swere and salvely,

That I mi ladi love wel,

For that acordeth everydel.

It nedeth noght to mi sothsawe

That I witnesse scholde drawe,

Into this dai for nevere yit

Ne mihte it sinke into mi wit,

That I my conseil scholde seie

To eny wiht, or me bewreie

2940

To sechen help in such manere,

P. ii. 226

Bot only of mi ladi diere.

And thogh a thousand men it wiste,

That I hire love, and thanne hem liste

With me to swere and to witnesse,

Yit were that no falswitnessse ;

For I dar on this trouthe duelle,

I love hire mor than I can telle.

Thus am I, fader, gulteles,

2932 saluely S, F sauely AJ, B      2937 euere BT      2940  
bewreie C, SB      be wreie J, F      by wreie A      2942 of] for BT  
on W



[FALSE WITNESS.]

Confessor.

As ye have herd, and natheles 2950  
In youre dom I put it al.

Mi Sone, wite in special,  
It schal noght comunliche faile,  
Al thogh it for a time availe  
That Falswitness his cause spede,  
Upon the point of his falshiede  
It schal wel afterward be kid;  
Wherof, so as it is betid,  
Ensample of suche thinges blinde  
In a Cronique write I finde. 2960

[TALE OF ACHILLES  
AND DEIDAMIA.]

Hic ponit exemplum de illis, qui falsum testificant amoris innocentiam circumveniunt. Et narrat qualiter Thetis Achillem filium suum adolescentem, muliebri vestitu apparatu, asserens esse puellam inter Regis Lichomedis filias ad educandum produxit. Et sic Achilles decepto Rege filie sue Deidamie socia et cubicularia effectus super ipsam Pirrum genuit; qui postea mire probitatis miliciam assecutus mortem patris sui apud Troiam in Polixenen tyrannice vindicauit.

The Goddesse of the See Thetis,  
Sche hadde a Sone, and his name is  
Achilles, whom to kepe and warde,  
Whil he was yong, as into warde  
Sche thoghte him salfly to betake,  
As sche which dradde for his sake  
Of that was seid in prophecie,  
That he at Troie scholde die,  
Whan that the Cite was belein.  
Forthi, so as the bokes sein, 2970  
Sche caste hire wit in sondri wise, P. ii. 227  
Hou sche him mihte so disguise  
That noman scholde his bodi knowe:  
And so befell that ilke throwe,  
Whil that sche thoghte upon this dede,  
Ther was a king, which Lichomede  
Was hote, and he was wel begon  
With faire dowhtres manyon,  
And duelte fer out in an yle.

Nou schalt thou hiere a wonder wyle: 2980  
This queene, which the moder was  
Of Achilles, upon this cas  
Hire Sone, as he a Maiden were,  
Let clothen in the same gere  
Which longeth unto wommanhiede:  
And he was yong and tok non hiede,

2951 put AJ, S, F (t) putte C, BT 2964 as] and BT, Hs  
2966 And AM . . . Bz, W 2967 in] of BT 2975 this] his AMH, X

Bot soffreth al that sche him dede.  
Wherof sche hath hire wommen bede  
And charged be here othes alle,  
Hou so it afterward befalle,

2990

That thei discovere noght this thing,  
Bot feigne and make a knowleching,  
Upon the conseil which was nome,  
In every place wher thei come  
To telle and to witnesse this,  
Hou he here ladi dowhter is.

And riht in such a maner wise  
Sche bad thei scholde hire don servise,  
So that Achilles underfongeth

As to a yong ladi belongeth  
Honour, servise and reverence.

3000

P. ii. 228

For Thetis with gret diligence  
Him hath so tawht and so afaited,  
That, hou so that it were awaited,  
With sobre and goodli contenance  
He scholde his wommanhiede avance,  
That non the sothe knowe myhte,  
Bot that in every mannes syhte  
He scholde seme a pure Maide.

And in such wise as sche him saide,  
Achilles, which that ilke while  
Was yong, upon himself to smyle  
Began, whan he was so besein.

3010

And thus, after the bokes sein,  
With frette of Perle upon his hed,  
Al freissh between the whyt and red,  
As he which tho was tendre of Age,  
Stod the colour in his visage,  
That forto loke upon his cheke  
And sen his childly manere eke,

3020

He was a womman to beholde.  
And thanne his moder to him tolde,  
That sche him hadde so begon  
Be cause that sche thoghte gon  
To Lichomede at thilke tyde,

[TALE OF ACHILLES  
AND DEIDANIA.]

Wher that sche seide he scholde abyde  
Among hise dowhtres forto duelle.

Achilles herde his moder telle,  
And wiste noght the cause why ;  
And natheles ful buxomly 3030  
He was redy to that sche bad, P. ii. 229

Wherof his moder was riht glad,  
To Lichomede and forth thei wente.

And whan the king knew hire entente,  
And sih this yonge dowhter there,

And that it cam unto his Ere  
Of such record, of such witnesse,

He hadde riht a gret gladnesse  
Of that he bothe syh and herde, 3040  
As he that wot noght hou it ferde

Upon the conseil of the nede.

Bot for al that king Lichomede  
Hath toward him this dowhter take,

And for Thetis his moder sake

He put hire into compainie

To duelle with Deïdamie,

His oghne dowhter, the eldeste,

The faireste and the comelieste

Of alle hise doghtres whiche he hadde.

Lo, thus Thetis the cause ladde, 3050

And lefte there Achilles feigned,

As he which hath himself restreigned

In al that evere he mai and can

Out of the manere of a man,

And tok his wommannysshe chiere,

Wherof unto his beddefere

Deïdamie he hath be nyhte.

Wher kinde wole himselve rihte,

After the Philosophres sein,

Ther mai no wiht be therayein : 3060

And that was thilke time seene. P. ii. 230

3036 he] sche E, BT    3032 hir B    riht] ful E . . . B<sub>1</sub>    3045  
put AJ, S, F    putte C, B    3046 wiþ þat Dedamie RCLB<sub>2</sub>  
3054 the om. AMGRLB<sub>2</sub>    alle (maner of man) H<sub>1</sub>    3058 wolde  
EL, BT

# LIBER QUINTUS

31

[TALE OF ACHILLES  
AND DEIDAMIA.]

The longe nyhtes hem betuene  
Nature, which mai noght forbere,  
Hath mad hem bothe forto stere :  
Thei kessen ferst, and overmore  
The hihe weie of loves lore  
Thei gon, and al was don in dede,  
Wherof lost is the maydenhede ;  
And that was afterward wel knowe.

For it befell that ilke throwe  
At Troie, wher the Siege lay  
Upon the cause of Menelay  
And of his queene dame Heleine,  
The Gregois hadden mochel peine  
Alday to fihite and to assaile.  
Bot for thei mihten noght availe  
So noble a Cite forto winne,  
A prive conseil thei beginne,  
In sondri wise wher thei trete ;  
And ate laste among the grete  
Thei fellen unto this acord,  
That Protheüs, of his record  
Which was an Astronomien  
And ek a gret Magicien,  
Scholde of his calculacion  
Seche after constellacion,  
Hou thei the Cite mihten gete :  
And he, which hadde noght foryete  
Of that belongeth to a clerk,  
His studie sette upon this werk.  
So longe his wit aboute he caste,  
Til that he fond out ate laste,  
Bot if they hadden Achilles  
Here werre schal ben endeles.  
And over that he tolde hem plein  
In what manere he was besein,  
And in what place he schal be founde ;  
So that withinne a litel stounde  
Uluxes forth with Diomede  
Upon this point to Lichomede

3070

3080

3090

P. ii. 231

3100

3090 his werk E . . . B<sub>2</sub> Δ the werke W

[TALE OF ACHILLES  
AND DEIDAMIA.]

Agamenon togedre sente.

Bot Ulixes, er he forth wente,  
Which was on of the moste wise,  
Ordeigned hath in such a wise,  
That he the moste riche aray,  
Wherof a womman mai be gay,  
With him hath take manyfold,  
And overmore, as it is told,  
An harneis for a lusti kniht,  
Which burned was as Selver bryht,  
Of swerd, of plate and ek of maile,  
As thogh he scholde to bataille,  
He tok also with him be Schipe.  
And thus togedre in felaschipe  
Forth gon this Diomedes and he  
In hope til thei mihten se  
The place where Achilles is.

3110

The wynd stod thanne noght amis,  
Bot evene topseilcole it blew,  
Til Ulixes the Marche knew,  
Wher Lichomede his Regne hadde.  
The Stieresman so wel hem ladde,  
That thei ben comen sauf to londe,  
Wher thei gon out upon the stronde  
Into the Burgh, wher that thei founde  
The king, and he which hath facounde,  
Ulixes, dede the message.

3120

P. ii. 232

Bot the conseil of his corage,  
Why that he cam, he tolde noght,  
Bot undernethe he was bethoght  
In what manere he mihte asprie  
Achilles fro Deïdamie  
And fro these othere that ther were,  
Full many a lusti ladi there.

3130

Thei pleide hem there a day or tuo,  
And as it was fortunèd so,

3110 burned as þe siluer E . . . B<sub>2</sub> b. was with s. W b. was of s. H<sub>3</sub>  
3119 topseilcole ACL, SAd, FH<sub>3</sub> topseil cole (coole) MH<sub>1</sub>XGERB<sub>3</sub>,  
BT top seile cole Δ to pseilcole J to Pheilcole W to pleiseil  
cole A

It fell that time in such a wise,  
 To Bachus that a sacrificise  
 Thes yonge ladys scholden make;  
 And for the strange mennes sake, 3140  
 That comen fro the Siege of Troie,  
 Thei maden wel the more joie.  
 Ther was Revel, ther was daunsinge,  
 And every hf which coude singe  
 Of lusti wommen in the route  
 A freissh carole hath sunge aboute;  
 Bot for al this yit natheles  
 The Greks unknowe of Achilles  
 So weren, that in no degre  
 Thei couden wite which was he, 3150  
 Ne be his vois, ne be his pas. P. ii. 233  
 Ulixes thanne upon this cas  
 A thing of hih Prudence hath wrought:  
 For thilke aray, which he hath broght  
 To yive among the wommen there,  
 He let do fetten al the gere  
 Forth with a knihtes harneis eke,—  
 In al a contre forto seke  
 Men scholden noght a fairer se,—  
 And every thing in his degre 3160  
 Endlong upon a bord he leide.  
 To Lichomede and thanne he preide  
 That every ladi chese scholde  
 What thing of alle that sche wolde,  
 And take it as be weie of yifte;  
 For thei herself it scholde schifte,  
 He seide, after here oghne wille.  
 Achilles thanne stod noght stille:  
 Whan he the bryhte helm behield,  
 The swerd, the hauberk and the Schield, 3170  
 His herte fell therto anon;  
 Of all that othre wolde he non,  
 The knihtes gere he underfongeth,

3145 Al (Alle) lusti wommen AMH: A lusty womman ECLB:  
 Of women lusti Ad þat route E . . . B: 3152 this] þe BT  
 3158 a contre] þe contre BTA 3169 the om. B

[TALE OF ACHILLES  
AND DEIDAMIA.]

And thilke aray which that belongeth  
Unto the wommen he forsok.

And in this wise, as seith the bok,  
Thei knowen thanne which he was:

For he goth forth the grete pas  
Into the chambre where he lay;

Anon, and made no delay,

3180

He armeth him in knyhtli wise,

P. ii. 234

That bettre can noman devise,

And as fortune scholde falle,

He cam so forth tofore hem alle,

As he which tho was glad ynowh.

But Lichomede nothing lowh,

Whan that he syh hou that it ferde,

For thanne he wiste wel and herde,

His dowhter hadde be forlein;

Bot that he was so oversein,

3190

The wonder overgoth his wit.

For in Cronique is write yit

Thing which schal nevere be foryete,

Hou that Achilles hath begete

Pirrus upon Deïdamie,

Wherof cam out the tricherie

Of Falswitnessse, whan thei saide

Hou that Achilles was a Maide.

Bot that was nothing sene tho,

For he is to the Siege go

3200

Forth with Ulixé and Diomede.

Confessor.

Lo, thus was proved in the dede

And fulli spoke at thilke while:

If o womman an other guile,

Wher is ther eny sikernesse?

Whan Thetis, which was the goddesse,

Deïdamie hath so bejaped,

I not hou it schal ben ascaped

With tho wommen whos innocence

Is nou alday thurgh such credence

3210

Deceived ofte, as it is seene,

P. ii. 235

3192 in a Cronique AMH<sub>1</sub>RCLB<sub>2</sub>, AdΔ. H<sub>1</sub>      3197 thei] he X, BT  
3209 whos] which AMH<sub>1</sub>XG      3210 now a day X, B, WH<sub>1</sub>

With men that such untrouthe meene.  
 For thei ben slyhe in such a wise,  
 That thei be sleihte and be queintise  
 Of Falswitnessse bringen inne  
 That doth hem ofte forto winne,  
 Wher thei ben noght worthi therto.  
 Forthi, my Sone, do noght so.

[PERJURY]

Amans

Mi fader, as of Falswitnessse  
 The trouthe and the matiere expresse, 3220  
 Touchende of love hou it hath ferd,  
 As ye have told, I have well herd.  
 Bot for ye seiden otherwise,  
 Hou thilke vice of Covoitise  
 Hath yit Perjurie of his acord,  
 If that you list of som record  
 To telle an other tale also  
 In loves cause of time ago,  
 What thing it is to be forswore,  
 I wolde preie you therfore, 3230  
 Wherof I mihte ensample take.

Confessor.

Mi goode Sone, and for thi sake  
 Touchende of this I schal fulfille  
 Thin axinge at thin oghne wille,  
 And the matiere I schal declare,  
 Hou the wommen deceived are,  
 Whan thei so tendre herte bere,  
 Of that thei hieren men so swere,  
 Bot whan it comth unto thassay,  
 Thei finde it fals an other day: 3240  
 As Jason dede to Medee, P. ii. 236  
 Which stant yet of Auctorite  
 In tokne and in memorial;  
 Wherof the tale in special  
 Is in the bok of Troie write,  
 Which I schal do thee forto wite.

In Grece whilom was a king,  
 Of whom the fame and knowleching

3217 Wher] per BT	3225 Perjurie J. B. F	Periure AC
3237 bertes XL, S... A	3241 voto B of T	3246 Who
3241 wol rede it per may wite E... B		



TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

Hic in amoris causa  
ponit exemplum con-  
tra periuros. Et nar-  
rat qualiter Iason,  
priusquam ad insulam  
Colchos pro aureo vel-  
lere ibidem conquest-  
ando transmearet, in  
amorem et coniugium  
Medee Regis Othonis  
filie iuramento firmitus  
se astringit; set suo  
postea completo nego-  
cio, cum ipsam secum  
nauigio in Greciam  
perduxisset, vbi illa  
senectam patris sui  
Esonis in floridam  
iuuentutem mirabili  
sciencia reformauit,  
ipse Iason fidei sue  
ligamento aliisque  
beneficiis postpositis,  
dictam Medeam pro  
quadam Creusa Regis  
Creontis filia periurus  
dereliquit.

Beleveth yit, and Peleüs  
He hihte; bot it fell him thus,  
That his fortune hir whiel so ladde  
That he no child his oghne hadde  
To regnen after his decess.  
He hadde a brother natheles,  
Whos rihte name was Eson,  
And he the worthi kniht Jason  
Begat, the which in every lond  
Alle othre passede of his hond  
In Armes, so that he the beste  
Was named and the worthieste,  
He soghte worschipe overal.  
Nou herkne, and I thee telle schal  
An aventure that he soghte,  
Which afterward ful dere he boghte.

3250

3260

Ther was an yle, which Colchos  
Was cleped, and therof aros  
Gret speche in every lond aboute,  
That such merveile was non oute  
In al the wyde world nawhere,  
As tho was in that yle there.  
Ther was a Schiep, as it was told,  
The which his flees bar al of gold,  
And so the goddes hadde it set,  
That it ne mihte awei be fet  
Be pouer of no worldes wiht:  
And yit ful many a worthi kniht  
It hadde assaied, as thei dorste,  
And evere it fell hem to the worste.  
Bot he, that wolde it noght forsake,  
Bot of his knyghthod undertake  
To do what thing therto belongeth,  
This worthi Jason, sore alongeth  
To se the strange regions  
And knowe the condiciouns  
Of othre Marches, where he wente;  
And for that cause his hole entente

3270

P. ii. 237

3280

## LIBER QUINTUS

37

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

He sette Colchos forto seche,  
 And therupon he made a speche  
 To Peleüs his Em the king.  
 And he wel paid was of that thing; 3190  
 And schop anon for his passage,  
 And suche as were of his lignage,  
 With othre knihtes whiche he ches,  
 With him he tok, and Hercules,  
 Which full was of chivalerie,  
 With Jason wente in compaignie;  
 And that was in the Monthe of Maii,  
 Whan colde stormes were away.  
 The wynd was good, the Schip was yare,  
 Thei tok here leve, and forth thei fare 3300  
 Toward Colchos: bot on the weie P. ii. 238  
 What hem befell is long to seie;  
 Hou Lamedon the king of Troie,  
 Which oghte wel have mad hem joie,  
 Whan thei to reste a while him preide,  
 Out of his lond he hem congeide;  
 And so fell the dissencion,  
 Which after was destruccion  
 Of that Cite, as men mai hiere:  
 Bot that is noght to mi matiere. 3310  
 Bot thus this worthi folk Gregeis  
 Fro that king, which was noght curteis,  
 And fro his lond with Sail updrawe  
 Thei wente hem forth, and many a sawe  
 Thei made and many a gret manace,  
 Til ate laste into that place  
 Which as thei soghte thei aryve,  
 And stricken Sail, and forth as blyve  
 Thei sente unto the king and tolden  
 Who weren ther and what thei wolden. 3320  
 Oetes, which was thanne king,

3190 that] his B 3295 was ful AMH: XG 3300 tok (took)  
 A], SB, F toke C, Ad, H; (taken leue H;) 3304 have mad]  
 to make BT 3306 But (Bot) of his lond E . . . B; 3311 this]  
 þe B þese X 3311 f. gregeis (Gregeis): curteis J, S, F  
 Gregois gregois), curtois courtoys) AC, B 3321 which þanne  
 þan was þe k. E . . . B; which was the k. H; W which was þer k. X

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

Whan that he herde this tyding  
 Of Jason, which was comen there,  
 And of these othre, what thei were,  
 He thoghte don hem gret worschipe:  
 For thei anon come out of Schipe,  
 And strawht unto the king thei wente,  
 And be the hond Jason he hente,  
 And that was ate paleis gate,  
 So fer the king cam on his gate 3330  
 Toward Jason to don him chiere; P. ii. 239  
 And he, whom lacketh no manere,  
 Whan he the king sih in presence,  
 Yaf him ayein such reverence  
 As to a kinges stat belongeth.  
 And thus the king him underfongeth,  
 And Jason in his arm he cawhte,  
 And forth into the halle he strawhte,  
 And ther they siete and spieke of thinges,  
 And Jason tolde him tho tidinges, 3340  
 Why he was come, and faire him preide  
 To haste his time, and the kyng seide,  
 'Jason, thou art a worthi kniht,  
 Bot it lith in no mannes myht  
 To don that thou art come fore:  
 Ther hath be many a kniht forlore  
 Of that thei wolden it assaie.'  
 Bot Jason wolde him noght esmaie,  
 And seide, 'Of every worldes cure  
 Fortune stant in aventure, 3350  
 Per aunter wel, per aunter wo:  
 Bot hou as evere that it go,  
 It schal be with myn hond assaied.'  
 The king tho hield him noght wel paied,  
 For he the Grekes sore dredde,  
 In aunter, if Jason ne spedde,  
 He mihte therof bere a blame;  
 For tho was al the worldes fame  
 In Grece, as forto speke of Armes.  
 Forthi he dredde him of his harmes, 3360

3340 tho] Je AM . . . B:

And gan to preche him and to preie; **P ii. 240** [TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

Bot Jason wolde noght obeie,  
Bot seide he wolde his porpos holde  
For ought that eny man him tolde.

The king, whan he thes wordes herde,  
And sih hou that this kniht ansuerde,  
Yit for he wolde make him glad,  
After Medea gon he bad,

Which was his dowhter, and sche cam.

And Jason, which good hiede nam, 3370

Whan he hire sih, ayein hire goth;  
And sche, which was him nothing loth,

Welcomede him into that lond,

And softe tok him be the hond,

And doun thei seten bothe same.

Sche hadde herd spoke of his name

And of his grete worthinesse;

Forthi sche gan hir yhe impresse

Upon his face and his stature, 3380

And thoghte hou nevere creature

Was so wel farende as was he.

And Jason riht in such degre

Ne mihte noght withholde his lok, ,

Bot so good hiede on hire he tok,

That him ne thoghte under the hevene

Of beaute sawh he nevere hir evene,

With al that fell to wommanhiede.

Thus ech of other token hiede,

Thogh ther no word was of record;

Here hertes bothe of on acord 3390

Ben set to love, bot as tho **P. ii. 241**

Ther mihten be no wordes mo.

The king made him gret joie and feste,

To alle his men he yaf an heste,

So as thei wolde his thonk deserve,

That thei scholde alle Jason serve,

Whil that he wolde there duelle.

And thus the dai, schortly to telle,

1365 thes] his MXGEC 3376 speke(n) AM . Bz, B, W  
1393 made AJ, B mad S, F

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

With manye merthes thei despente,  
 Til nyht was come, and tho thei wente, 3400  
 Echon of other tok his leve,  
 Whan thei no lengere myhten leve.  
 I not hou Jason that nyht slep,  
 Bot wel I wot that of the Schep,  
 For which he cam into that yle,  
 He thoghte bot a litel whyle;  
 Al was Medea that he thoghte,  
 So that in many a wise he soghte  
 His witt wakende er it was day,  
 Som time yee, som time nay, 3410  
 Som time thus, som time so,  
 As he was stered to and fro  
 Of love, and ek of his conqueste  
 As he was holde of his beheste.  
 And thus he ros up be the morwe  
 And tok himself seint John to borwe,  
 And seide he wolde ferst beginne  
 At love, and after forto winne  
 The flees of gold, for which he com,  
 And thus to him good herte he nom. 3420  
 Medea riht the same wise, P. ii. 242  
 Til dai cam that sche moste arise,  
 Lay and bethoughte hire al the nyht,  
 Hou sche that noble worthi kniht  
 Be eny weie mihte wedde :  
 And wel sche wiste, if he ne spedde  
 Of thing which he hadde undertake,  
 Sche mihte herself no porpos take ;  
 For if he deide of his bataile,  
 Sche moste thanne algate faile 3430  
 To geten him, whan he were ded.  
 Thus sche began to sette red  
 And torne aboute hir wittes alle,  
 To loke hou that it mihte falle  
 That sche with him hadde a leisir  
 To speke and telle of hir desir.  
 And so it fell that same day

## LIBER QUINTUS

41

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

That Jason with that suete may  
 Togedre sete and hadden space  
 To speke, and he besoughte hir grace. 3440  
 And sche his tale goodli herde,  
 And afterward sche him ansuerde  
 And seide, 'Jason, as thou wilt,  
 Thou miht be sauf, thou miht be spilt;  
 For wite wel that nevere man,  
 Bot if he couthe that I can,  
 Ne mihte that fortune achieve  
 For which thou comst: bot as I lieve,  
 If thou wolt holde covenant  
 To love, of al the remenant 3450  
 I schal thi lif and honour save, P. ii. 243  
 That thou the flees of gold schalt have.'  
 He seide, 'Al at youre oghne wille,  
 Ma dame, I schal treuly fulfille  
 Youre heste, whil mi lif mai laste.'  
 Thus longe he preide, and ate laste  
 Sche granteth, and behihte him this,  
 That whan nyht comth and it time is,  
 Sche wolde him sende certainly  
 Such on that scholde him prively 3460  
 Al one into hire chambre bringe.  
 He thonketh hire of that tidinge,  
 For of that grace him is begonne  
 Him thenkth alle othre thinges wonne.  
 The dai made ende and lost his lyht,  
 And comen was the derke nyht,  
 Which al the dates yhe blente.  
 Jason tok leve and forth he wente,  
 And whan he cam out of the pres,  
 He tok to conseil Hercules, 3470  
 And tolde him hou it was betid,  
 And preide it scholde wel ben hid,  
 And that he wolde loke aboute,  
 Therwhiles that he schal ben oute.  
 Thus as he stod and hiede nam,

3440 he om. E . . . B<sub>1</sub>      3465 lost is l. AYEC, S      3472  
 And nought per of hap fro him hid E . . . B<sub>1</sub>      ben wel MH<sub>1</sub>X

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

A Mayden fro Medea cam  
And to hir chambre Jason ledde,  
Wher that he fond redi to bedde  
The faireste and the wiseste eke ;  
And sche with simple chiere and meke, 3480  
Whan sche him sih, wax al aschamed. P. ii. 244  
Tho was here tale newe entamed ;  
For sikernesse of Mariage  
Sche fette forth a riche ymage,  
Which was figure of Jupiter,  
And Jason swor and seide ther,  
That also wiss god scholde him helpe,  
That if Medea dede him helpe,  
That he his pourpos myhte winne,  
Thei scholde nevere parte atwinne, 3490  
Bot evere whil him lasteth lif,  
He wolde hire holde for his wif.  
And with that word thei kisten bothe ;  
And for thei scholden hem unclothe,  
Ther cam a Maide, and in hir wise  
Sche dede hem bothe full servise,  
Til that thei were in bedde naked :  
I wot that nyht was wel bewaked,  
Thei hadden bothe what thei wolde.  
And thanne of leisir sche him tolde, 3500  
And gan fro point to point enforme  
Of his bataile and al the forme,  
Which as he scholde finde there,  
Whan he to thyle come were.

Sche seide, at entre of the pas  
Hou Mars, which god of Armes was,  
Hath set tuo Oxen sterne and stoute,  
That caste fyr and flamme aboute  
Bothe at the mouth and ate nase,  
So that thei setten al on blase 3510  
What thing that passeth hem betwene : P. ii. 245  
And furthermore upon the grene  
Ther goth the flees of gold to kepe

3481 aschamed A, SB a schamed J, F 3482 hire tale AJMXE  
3484 sette BT 3490 departe AMXG

## LIBER QUINTUS

43

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

A Serpent, which mai nevere slepe.  
 Thus who that evere scholde it winne,  
 The fyr to stoppe he mot beginne,  
 Which that the fierce bestes caste,  
 And daunte he mot hem ate laste,  
 So that he mai hem yoke and dryve ;  
 And therupon he mot as blyve 3520  
 The Serpent with such strengthe assaile,  
 That he mai slen him be bataile ;  
 Of which he mot the teth outdrawe,  
 As it belongeth to that lawe,  
 And thanne he mot tho Oxen yoke,  
 Til thei have with a plowh tobroke  
 A furgh of lond, in which arowe  
 The teth of thaddre he moste sowe,  
 And therof schule arise knihtes  
 Wel armed up at alle rihtes. 3530  
 Of hem is noght to taken hiede,  
 For ech of hem in hastihiede  
 Schal other slen with dethes wounde :  
 And thus whan thei ben leid to grounde,  
 Than mot he to the goddes preie.  
 And go so forth and take his preie.  
 Bot if he faile in eny wise  
 Of that ye hiere me devise,  
 Ther mai be set non other weie,  
 That he ne moste algates deie. 3540  
 'Nou have I told the peril al : P. ii. 246  
 I woll you tellen forth withal,'  
 Quod Medea to Jason tho,  
 'That ye schul knowen er ye go,  
 Ayein the venym and the fyr  
 What schal ben the recoverir.  
 Bot, Sire, for it is nyh day,  
 Ariseth up, so that I may  
 Delivere you what thing I have,  
 That mai youre lif and honour save.' 3550  
 Thei weren bothe loth to rise,

3517 the] po ERC, SBT      3533 dethes] hasty E . . . B.  
 3534 leid] brought B      3545 and] of BT



[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

Bot for thei weren bothe wise,  
 Up thei arisen ate laste :  
 Jason his clothes on him caste  
 And made him redi riht anon,  
 And sche hir scherte dede upon  
 And caste on hire a mantel clos,  
 Withoute more and thanne aros.  
 Tho tok sche forth a riche Tye  
 Mad al of gold and of Perrie, 3560  
 Out of the which sche nam a Ring,  
 The Ston was worth al other thing.  
 Sche seide, whil he wolde it were,  
 Ther myhte no peril him dere,  
 In water mai it noght be dreynt,  
 Wher as it comth the fyr is queynt,  
 It daunteth ek the cruel beste,  
 Ther may no qued that man areste,  
 Wher so he be on See or lond,  
 Which hath that ring upon his hond : 3570  
 And over that sche gan to sein, P. ii. 247  
 That if a man wol ben unsein,  
 Withinne his hond hold clos the Ston,  
 And he mai invisible gon.  
 The Ring to Jason sche betauhte,  
 And so forth after sche him tauhte  
 What sacrifise he scholde make ;  
 And gan out of hire cofre take  
 Him thoughte an hevenely figure,  
 Which al be charme and be conjure 3580  
 Was wrought, and ek it was thurgh write  
 With names, which he scholde wite,  
 As sche him tauhte tho to rede ;  
 And bad him, as he wolde spede,  
 Withoute reste of eny while,  
 Whan he were loded in that yle,  
 He scholde make his sacrifise  
 And rede his carecte in the wise  
 As sche him tauhte, on knes down bent,  
 Thre sithes toward orient ; 3590

For so scholde he the goddes plese  
 And winne himselven mochel ese.  
 And whanne he hadde it thries rad,  
 To opne a buiste sche him bad,  
 Which sche ther tok him in present,  
 And was full of such oignement,  
 That ther was fyr ne venym non  
 That scholde fastnen him upon,  
 Whan that he were enoynt withal.

Forthi sche taubte him hou he schal

3600

Enoignte his armes al aboute,

P. ii. 248

And for he scholde nothing doute,

Sche tok him thanne a maner glu,

The which was of so gret vertu,

That where a man it wolde caste,

It scholde binde anon so faste

That noman mihte it don aweie.

And that sche bad be alle weie

He scholde into the mouthes throwen

Of tho tweie Oxen that fyr blowen,

3610

Therof to stoppen the malice ;

The glu schal serve of that office.

And over that hir oignement,

Hir Ring and hir enchantement

Ayein the Serpent scholde him were,

Til he him sle with swerd or spere :

And thanne he may saufliche ynowh

His Oxen yoke into the plowh

And the teth sowe in such a wise,

Til he the knyhtes se arise,

3620

And ech of other doun be leid

In such manere as I have seid.

Lo, thus Medea for Jason

Ordeigneth, and preith therupon

That he nothing foryete scholde,

And ek sche preith him that he wolde,

Whan he hath alle his Armes don,

To grounde knele and thonke anon

3599 enoynt J, S, F anynt AC, B So 3601 3619 such(e)  
 was XGE, B

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

The goddes, and so forth be ese  
The flees of gold he scholde sese. 3630  
And whanne he hadde it sesed so, P. ii. 249  
That thanne he were sone ago  
Withouten eny tariyng.

Whan this was seid, into wepinge  
Sche fell, as sche that was thurgh nome  
With love, and so fer overcome,  
That al hir world on him sche sette.  
Bot whan sche sih ther was no lette,  
That he mot nedes parte hire fro,  
Sche tok him in hire armes tuo, 3640  
An hundred time and gan him kisse,  
And seide, 'O, al mi worldes blisse,  
Mi trust, mi lust, mi lif, min hele,  
To be thin helpe in this querele  
I preie unto the goddes alle.'  
And with that word sche gan doun falle  
On swoune, and he hire uppe nam,  
And forth with that the Maiden cam,  
And thei to bedde anon hir broghte,  
And thanne Jason hire besoghte, 3650  
And to hire seide in this manere:  
'Mi worthi lusti ladi dere,  
Conforteth you, for be my trouthe  
It schal noght fallen in mi slouthe  
That I ne wol thurghout fulfille  
Youre hestes at youre oghne wille.  
And yit I hope to you bringe  
Withinne a while such tidinge,  
The which schal make ous bothe game.'

Bot for he wolde kepe hir name, 3660  
Whan that he wiste it was nyh dai, P. ii. 250  
He seide, 'A dieu, mi swete mai.'  
And forth with him he nam his gere,  
Which as sche hadde take him there,  
And strauht unto his chambre he wente,  
And goth to bedde and slep him hente,

3647 Of swoune RCLB<sub>1</sub>, BT Inne swone W uppe nam] vp  
po nam E . . . B<sub>1</sub> vpon name H<sub>1</sub> 3665 he om. E . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT, W

And lay, that noman him awok,  
 For Hercules hiede of him tok,  
 Til it was undren hih and more.  
 And thanne he gan to sighe sore 3670  
 And sodeinliche abreide of slep;  
 And thei that token of him kep,  
 His chamberleins, be sone there,  
 And maden redi al his gere,  
 And he aros and to the king  
 He wente, and seide hou to that thing  
 For which he cam he wolde go.  
 The king therof was wonder wo,  
 And for he wolde him fain withdrawe,  
 He tolde him many a dredful sawe, 3680  
 Bot Jason wolde it noght recorde,  
 And ate laste thei acorde.  
 Whan that he wolde noght abide,  
 A Bot was redy ate tyde,  
 In which this worthi kniht of Grece  
 Ful armed up at every piece,  
 To his bataile which belongeth,  
 Tok ore on honde and sore him longeth,  
 Til he the water passed were.  
 Whan he cam to that yle there, 3690  
 He set him on his kneis down strauht, P. ii. 251  
 And his carecte, as he was tawht,  
 He radde, and made his sacrificse,  
 And siththe enoighte him in that wise,  
 As Medea him hadde bede;  
 And thanne aros up fro that stede,  
 And with the glu the fyr he queynte,  
 And anon after he atteinte  
 The grete Serpent and him slowh.  
 Bot erst he hadde sorwe ynowh, 3700  
 For that Serpent made him travaile

3668 of hem CL on him W 3669 vnder ERL, BT, H;  
 radorne X vnder CB, W 3671 abreide] he breide E . . . B,  
 BT H; 3678 was wonder wo] þan was ful wo YE . . . B, BTA  
 3688 ore on] oore in RLB, A sore in EC, BT (And forþ with all  
 his wey he longeþ X) 3691 set AJ, S, F sette C, B

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

So harde and sore of his bataile,  
That nou he stod and nou he fell:  
For longe time it so befell,  
That with his swerd ne with his spere  
He mihte noght that Serpent dere.  
He was so scherded al aboute,  
It hield all eggetol withoute,  
He was so ruide and hard of skin,  
Ther mihte nothing go therin; 3710  
Venym and fyr togedre he caste,  
That he Jason so sore ablaste,  
That if ne were his oignement,  
His Ring and his enchantement,  
Which Medea tok him tofore,  
He hadde with that worm be lore;  
Bot of vertu which therof cam  
Jason the Dragon overcam.  
And he anon the teth outdrouh,  
And sette his Oxen in a plouh, 3720  
With which he brak a piece of lond P. ii. 252  
And sieu hem with his oghne hond.  
Tho mihte he gret merveile se:  
Of every toth in his degre  
Sprong up a kniht with spere and schield,  
Of whiche anon riht in the field  
Echon slow other; and with that  
Jason Medea noght foryat,  
On bothe his knees he gan doun falle,  
And yaf thonk to the goddes alle. 3730  
The Flees he tok and goth to Bote,  
The Sonne schyneth bryhte and hote,  
The Flees of gold schon forth withal,  
The water glistreth overal.

Medea wepte and sigheth ofte,  
And stod upon a Tour alofte:  
Al prively withinne hirselve,  
Ther herde it nouthen ten ne tuelve,  
Sche preide, and seide, 'O, god him spede,

3705 ne] and BT, W      3706 þe serpent XB<sub>2</sub>, BT, W      3720  
his plough YE . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT      the plough W

The kniht which hath mi maidenhiede!' 3740 [TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDRA.]

And ay sche loketh toward thyle.

Bot whan sche sih withinne a while

The Flees glistrende ayein the Sonne,

Sche saide, 'Ha lord, now al is wonne,

Mi kniht the field hath overcome:

Nou wolde god he were come;

Ha lord, that he ne were alonde!'

Bot I dar take this on honde,

If that sche hadde wynges tuo,

Sche wolde have flowe unto him tho 3750

Strawht ther he was into the Bot. P. II. 253

The dai was clir, the Sonne hot,

The Gregeis weren in gret doute,

The whyle that here lord was oute:

Thei wisten noght what scholde tyde,

Bot waiten evere upon the tyde,

To se what ende scholde falle.

Ther stoden ek the nobles alle

Forth with the comun of the toun;

And as thei loken up and down, 3760

Thei weren war withinne a throwe,

Wher cam the bot, which thei wel knowe,

And sihe hou Jason broghte his preie.

And tho thei gonnen alle seie,

And criden alle with o stevene,

'Ha, wher was evere under the hevene

So noble a knyht as Jason is?'

And welnyh alle seiden this,

That Jason was a faie kniht,

For it was nevere of mannes miht 3770

The Flees of gold so forto winne;

And thus to talen thei beginne.

With that the king com forth anon,

And sih the Flees, hou that it schon,

3742 whan (when) AJC, B whanne F 3744 a (ha) lord al  
by wonne al is wonne) YE... B<sub>1</sub>, BTA ha lord al now is w  
MH.XG 3747 on londe E... B<sub>1</sub>, BTA, W 3751 he om. AM  
3765 cied (criede) RCLB<sub>1</sub>, A 3772 to talen] talen B of talen M  
of tales H. to talkan W

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

And whan Jason cam to the lond,  
The king himselve tok his hond  
And kist him, and gret joie him made.  
The Gregeis weren wonder glade,  
And of that thing riht merie hem thoghte,  
And forth with hem the Flees thei broghte, 3780  
And ech on other gan to leyhe ; P. ii. 254  
Bot wel was him that mihte neyhe,  
To se therof the proprete.

And thus thei passen the cite  
And gon unto the Paleis straght.

Medea, which foryat him naght,  
Was redy there, and seide anon,  
'Welcome, O worthi kniht Jason.'  
Sche wolde have kist him wonder fayn,  
Bot schame tornede hire agayn ; 3790  
It was noght the manere as tho,  
Forthi sche dorste noght do so.  
Sche tok hire leve, and Jason wente  
Into his chambre, and sche him sente  
Hire Maide to sen hou he ferde ;  
The which whan that sche sih and herde,  
Hou that he hadde faren oute  
And that it stod wel al aboute,  
Sche tolde hire ladi what sche wiste,  
And sche for joie hire Maide kiste. 3800  
The bathes weren thanne araied,  
With herbes tempred and assaied,  
And Jason was unarmed sone  
And dede as it befell to done :  
Into his bath he wente anon  
And wyssh him clene as eny bon ;  
He tok a sopp, and oute he cam,  
And on his beste aray he nam,  
And kempde his hed, whan he was clad,  
And goth him forth al merie and glad 3810  
Riht strawht into the kinges halle. P. ii. 255  
The king cam with his knihtes alle

3791 as tho] also AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT  
3798 al om. AMH<sub>1</sub>, H<sub>3</sub>W

3796 sche] he H<sub>1</sub>, BT

## LIBER QUINTUS

51

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA]

And maden him glad welcominge;  
And he hem tolde the t.dinge  
Of this and that, hou it befell,  
Whan that he wan the schepes fell.

Medea, whan sche was asent,  
Com sone to that parlement,  
And whan sche mihte Jason se,  
Was non so glad of alle as sche.  
Ther was no joie forto seche,  
Of him mad every man a speche,  
Som man seide on, som man seide other;  
Bot thogh he were goddes brother  
And mihte make fyr and thonder,  
Ther mihte be nomore wonder  
Than was of him in that cite.  
Echon tauhte other, 'This is he,  
Which hath in his pouer withinne  
That al the world ne mihte winne:  
Lo, hier the beste of alle goode.'  
Thus saiden thei that there stode,  
And ek that walkede up and doun,  
Bothe of the Court and of the toun.

3820

3830

The time of Souper cam anon,  
Thei wisshen and therto thei gon,  
Medea was with Jason set:  
Tho was ther many a deynte fet  
And set tofore hem on the bord,  
Bot non so likinge as the word  
Which was ther spoke among hem tuo, P. li. 256  
So as thei dorste speke tho.  
Bot thogh thei hadden litel space,  
Yit thei acorden in that place  
Hou Jason scholde come at nyht,  
Whan every torche and every liht  
Were oute, and thanne of other thinges  
Thei spieke aloud for supposinges  
Of hem that stoden there aboute:

3840

3814 the| po EC, B    3822 mad AJ, S, F    made C, B    3823  
seide . . . seide AC, B    seid . . . seide S, F    seid . . . seid J  
3847 of om. E. . B<sub>1</sub>, BT



[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

For love is everemore in doute, 3850  
If that it be wisly governed  
Of hem that ben of love lerned.

Whan al was don, that dissh and cuppe  
And cloth and bord and al was uppe,  
Thei waken whil hem lest to wake,  
And after that thei leve take  
And gon to bedde forto reste.  
And whan him thoghte for the beste,  
That every man was faste aslepe,  
Jason, that wolde his time kepe, 3860

Goth forth stalkende al prively  
Unto the chambre, and redely  
Ther was a Maide, which him kepte.  
Medea wok and nothing slepte,  
Bot natheles sche was abedde,  
And he with alle haste him spedde  
And made him naked and al warm.  
Anon he tok hire in his arm :  
What nede is forto speke of ese?  
Hem list ech other forto plese, 3870  
So that thei hadden joie ynow : P. ii. 257

And tho thei setten whanne and how  
That sche with him away schal stele.  
With wordes suche and othre fele  
Whan al was treted to an ende,  
Jason tok leve and gan forth wende  
Unto his oughne chambre in pes ;  
Ther wiste it non bot Hercules.

He slepte and ros whan it was time,  
And whanne it fell towardses prime, 3880  
He tok to him suche as he triste  
In secre, that non other wiste,  
And told hem of his conseil there,  
And seide that his wille were  
That thei to Schipe hadde alle thinge  
So priveliche in thevenynge,  
That noman mihte here dede asprie

3851 ffor if it be E . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT But if hit be W 3879 slepte]  
slep (sleep) YE, B 3883 him AH<sub>1</sub>XR

Bot tho that were of compaignie :  
 For he woll go withoute leve,  
 And lengere woll he noght beleve ;  
 Bot he ne wolde at thulke throwe  
 The king or queene scholde it knowe.  
 Thei saide, 'Al this schal wel be do :'  
 And Jason truste wel therto.

3890

Medea in the mene while,  
 Which thoghte hir fader to beguile,  
 The Tresor which hir fader hadde  
 With hire al priveli sche ladde,  
 And with Jason at time set  
 Away sche stal and fond no let,  
 And straght sche goth hire unto schipe  
 Of Grece with that felaschipe,  
 And thei anon drowe up the Seil.  
 And al that nyht this was conseil,  
 Bot erly, whan the Sonne schon,  
 Men syhe hou that thei were agon,  
 And come unto the king and tolde :

P. ii. 258

And he the sothe knowe wolde,  
 And axeth where his dowhter was.  
 Ther was no word bot Out, Allas !  
 Sche was ago. The moder wepte,  
 The fader as a wod man lepte,  
 And gan the time forto warie,  
 And swor his oth he wol noght tarie,  
 That with Caliphe and with galeie  
 The same cours, the same weie,  
 Which Jason tok, he wolde take,  
 If that he mihte him overtake.

3910

To this thei seiden alle yee :  
 Anon thei weren ate See,  
 And alle, as who seith, at a word  
 Thei gon withinne schipes bord,  
 The Sail goth up, and forth thei strauhte.  
 Bot non espleit therof thei cauhte,  
 And so thei tornen hom ayein,

3920

3888 in compaignie AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT 3914 wolde (wold)  
 M. . B<sub>2</sub>, B1Δ, WH:

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

For al that labour was in vein.

Jason to Grece with his preie  
Goth thurgh the See the rihte weie :  
Whan he ther com and men it tolde,  
Thei maden joie yonge and olde. 3930  
Eson, whan that he wiste of this, P. ii. 259  
Hou that his Sone comen is,  
And hath achieved that he soughte  
And hom with him Medea broughte,  
In al the wyde world was non  
So glad a man as he was on.  
Togedre ben these lovers tho,  
Til that thei hadden sones tuo,  
Wherof thei weren bothe glade,  
And olde Eson gret joie made 3940  
To sen thencress of his lignage ;  
For he was of so gret an Age,  
That men awaiten every day,  
Whan that he scholde gon away.  
Jason, which sih his fader old,  
Upon Medea made him bold,  
Of art magique, which sche couthe,  
And preith hire that his fader youthe  
Sche wolde make ayeinward newe :  
And sche, that was toward him trewe, 3950  
Behihte him that sche wolde it do,  
Whan that sche time sawh therto.  
Bot what sche dede in that matiere  
It is a wonder thing to hiere,  
Bot yit for the novellerie  
I thenke tellen a partie.

Nota quibus medi-  
camentis Esonem  
senectute decrepitum  
ad sue iuuentutis  
adolescenciam pru-  
dens Medea reduxit.

Thus it befell upon a nyht,  
Whan ther was noght bot sterreliht,  
Sche was varyssht riht as hir liste,  
That no wyht bot himself it wiste, 3960  
And that was ate mydnyht tyde. P. ii. 260  
The world was stille on every side ;

3956 telle a gret partie B, W tellen it a parti Δ 3960 it  
wiste] wiste CLB<sub>2</sub>, BTΔ ne wist(e) MH<sub>1</sub>X 3962 in euery side  
E . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT

With open hed and fot al bare,  
 Hir her tosprad sche gan to fare,  
 Upon hir clothes gert sche was,  
 Al specheles and on the gras  
 Sche glod forth as an Addre doth :  
 Non otherwise sche ne goth,  
 Til sche cam to the freisshe flod,  
 And there a while sche withstod. 3970  
 Thries sche torned hire aboute,  
 And thries ek sche gan doun loute  
 And in the flod sche wette hir her,  
 And thries on the water ther  
 Sche gaspeth with a drecching(e) onde,  
 And tho sche tok hir speche on honde.  
 Ferst sche began to clepe and calle  
 Upward unto the sterres alle,  
 To Wynd, to Air, to See, to lond  
 Sche preide, and ek hield up hir hond 3980  
 To Echates, and gan to crie,  
 Which is goddesse of Sorcerie.  
 Sche seide, ' Helpeth at this nede,  
 And as ye maden me to spede,  
 Whan Jason cam the Flees to seche,  
 So help me nou, I you beseche.'  
 With that sche loketh and was war,  
 Doun fro the Sky ther cam a char,  
 The which Dragouns aboute drowe :  
 And tho sche gan hir hed doun bowe, 3990  
 And up sche styh, and faire and wel P. ii. 261  
 Sche drof forth bothe char and whel  
 Above in thair among the Skyes.  
 The lond of Crete and tho parties  
 Sche soughte, and faste gan hire hye,  
 And there upon the hulles hyhe  
 Of Othrin and Olimpe also,  
 And ek of othre hulles mo,

3964 Hir heed BT 3966 and on] vpon BT 3975 drecching(e)  
 honde J drenching(e) onde YXGEC, BTA drenching(e) hond(e)  
 AMRLB drenching(e) honde M 3990 An F 3992 bothe]  
 by E, BTA but Hs

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

Sche fond and gadreth herbes suote,  
 Sche pulleth up som be the rote, 4000  
 And manye with a knyf sche scherth,  
 And alle into hir char sche berth.  
 Thus whan sche hath the hulles sought,  
 The flodes ther foryat sche nought,  
 Eridian and Amphrisos,  
 Peneie and ek Spercheidos,  
 To hem sche wente and ~~ther~~ sche ~~nom~~  
 Bothe of the water and the fom,  
 The sond and ek the smale stones,  
 Whiche as sche ches out for the nones, 4010  
 And of the rede See a part,  
 That was behovelich to hire art,  
 Sche tok, and after that aboute  
 Sche soughte sondri sedes oute  
 In feldes and in many greves,  
 And ek a part sche tok of leves:  
 Bot thing which mihte hire most availe  
 Sche fond in Crete and in Thessaile.  
 In daies and in nyhtes Nyne,  
 With gret travaile and with gret pyne, 4020  
 Sche was pourveid of every piece, P. ii. 262  
 And torneth homward into Grece.  
 Before the gates of Eson  
 Hir char sche let awai to gon,  
 And tok out ferst that was therinne;  
 For tho sche thoghte to beginne  
 Such thing as semeth impossible,  
 And made hirselves invisible,  
 As sche that was with Air enclosed  
 And mihte of noman be desclosed. 4030  
 Sche tok up turves of the lond  
 Withoute helpe of mannes hond,  
 Al heled with the grene gras,  
 Of which an Alter mad ther was

4006 Spertheidos XECB<sub>1</sub>, BT 4008 and of þe AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>,  
 BTΔA, W 4020 To make wiþ þis medicine B *line om.* TA  
 4024 His AMRC, T 4029 þat wiþ þe air YE . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT þat was  
 with þe air Δ þat was of air XG

Unto Echates the goddesse  
 Of art magique and the maistresse,  
 And eft an other to Juvente,  
 As sche which dede hir hole entente.  
 Tho tok sche fieldwode and verveyne,  
 Of herbes ben noght betre tueine, 4040  
 Of which anon withoute let  
 These alters ben aboute set :  
 Tuo sondri puttes faste by  
 Sche made, and with that hastely  
 A wether which was blak sche slouh,  
 And out therof the blod sche drouh  
 And dede into the pettes tuo ;  
 Warm melk sche putte also therto  
 With hony meynd : and in such wise  
 Sche gan to make hir sacrifice, 4050  
 And cride and preide forth withal P. ii. 263  
 To Pluto the god infernal,  
 And to the queene Proserpine.  
 And so sche soghte out al the line  
 Of hem that longen to that craft,  
 Behinde was no name laft,  
 And preide hem alle, as sche wel couthe,  
 To grante Eson his ferste youthe.  
 This olde Eson broght forth was tho,  
 Awei sche had alle othre go 4060  
 Upon peril that mihte falle ;  
 And with that word thei wenten alle,  
 And leften there hem tuo al one.  
 And tho sche gan to gaspe and gone,  
 And made signes manyon,  
 And seide hir wordes therupon ;  
 So that with spellinge of hir charmes  
 Sche tok Eson in both hire armes,  
 And made him forto slepe faste,  
 And him upon hire herbes caste. 4070  
 The blake wether tho sche tok,

4043 puttes AJ, B, F pettes S 4049 and in such wise] in such  
 wise C in such, e) wise BT and such(e) wise RLB: 4067 And  
 jaa B And pat T

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

And hiewh the fleissh, as doth a cok ;  
On either alter part sche leide,  
And with the charmes that sche seide  
A fyr down fro the Sky alyhte  
And made it forto brenne lyhte.  
Bot whan Medea sawh it brenne,  
Anon sche gan to sterte and renne  
The fyr aulters al aboute :  
Ther was no beste which goth oute  
More wylde than sche semeth ther :  
Aboute hir schuldres hyng hir her,  
As thogh sche were oute of hir mynde  
And torned in an other kynde.  
Tho lay ther certein wode cleft,  
Of which the pieces nou and eft  
Sche made hem in the pettes wete,  
And put hem in the fyr hete,  
And tok the brond with al the blase,  
And thries sche began to rase  
Aboute Eson, ther as he slepte ;  
And eft with water, which sche kepte,  
Sche made a cercle aboute him thries,  
And eft with fyr of sulphre twyes :  
Ful many an other thing sche dede,  
Which is noght writen in this stede.  
Bot tho sche ran so up and down,  
Sche made many a wonder soun,  
Somtime lich unto the cock,  
Somtime unto the Laverock,  
Somtime kacleth as a Hen,  
Somtime spekth as don the men :  
And riht so as hir jargoun strangeth,  
In sondri wise hir forme changeth,  
Sche semeth faie and no womman ;  
For with the craftes that sche can  
Sche was, as who seith, a goddesse,  
And what hir liste, more or lesse,  
Sche dede, in bokes as we finde,

4080

P. ii. 264

4090

4100

4072 þe cook H1G, BT      4073 either] every AM . . . B2  
4088 put J, S, F    putte AC, B      4106 forþ A . . . GC

That passeth over manneskinde. 4110 [TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]  
 Bot who that wole of wondres hiere, **P. ii. 265**  
 What thing sche wroghte in this matiere,  
 To make an ende of that sche gan,  
 Such merveile herde nevere man.  
 Apointed in the newe Mone,  
 Whan it was time forto done,  
 Sche sette a caldron on the fyr,  
 In which was al the hole atir,  
 Wheron the medicine stod,  
 Of jus, of water and of blod, 4120  
 And let it buile in such a plit,  
 Til that sche sawh the spume whyt;  
 And tho sche caste in rynde and rote,  
 And sed and flour that was for bote,  
 With many an herbe and many a ston,  
 Wherof sche hath ther many on :  
 And ek Cimpheius the Serpent  
 To hire hath alle his scales lent,  
 Chelidre hire yaf his addres skin,  
 And sche to builen caste hem in ; 4130  
 A part ek of the horned Oule,  
 The which men hiere on nyhtes houles ;  
 And of a Raven, which was told  
 Of nyne hundred wynter old,  
 Sche tok the hed with al the bile ;  
 And as the medicine it wile,  
 Sche tok thereafter the bouele  
 Of the Seewolf, and for the hele  
 Of Eson, with a thousand mo  
 Of thinges that sche hadde tho, 4140  
 In that Caldroun togedre as blyve **P. ii. 266**  
 Sche putte, and tok thanne of Olyve  
 A drie branche hem with to sterve,  
 The which anon gan floure and bere  
 And waxe al freissh and grene ayein.

4110 over] euery ERLB<sub>2</sub>, W ony C oure X 4113 make] take  
 ERCB<sub>2</sub> 4129 his] hir C, B 4137 thereafter] after E . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 ber (hir) after BT 4138 seefoul E, BTA sedewolf L 4140  
 that] which E . . . B<sub>2</sub>, W



[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

Whan sche this vertu hadde sein,  
 Sche let the leste drope of alle  
 Upon the bare flor doun falle;  
 Anon ther sprong up flour and gras,  
 Where as the drope falle was, 4150  
 And wox anon al medwe grene,  
 So that it mihte wel be sene.  
 Medea thanne knew and wiste  
 Hir medicine is forto triste,  
 And goth to Eson ther he lay,  
 And tok a swerd was of assay,  
 With which a wounde upon his side  
 Sche made, that therout mai slyde  
 The blod withinne, which was old  
 And sek and trouble and fieble and cold. 4160  
 And tho sche tok unto his us  
 Of herbes al the beste jus,  
 And poured it into his wounde;  
 That made his veynes fulle and sounde:  
 And tho sche made his wounde clos,  
 And tok his hand, and up he ros;  
 And tho sche yaf him drinke a drauhte,  
 Of which his youthe ayein he cauhte,  
 His hed, his herte and his visage  
 Lich unto twenty wynter Age; 4170  
 Hise hore heres were away, P. ii. 267  
 And lich unto the freisshe Maii,  
 Whan passed ben the colde schoures,  
 Riht so recovereth he his floures.  
 Lo, what mihte eny man devise,  
 A womman schewe in eny wise  
 Mor hertly love in every stede,  
 Than Medea to Jason dede?  
 Ferst sche made him the flees to winne,  
 And after that fro kiththe and kinne 4180  
 With gret tresor with him sche stal,  
 And to his fader forth withal

4151 mede E . . . B<sub>2</sub>    4152 be sene (scene) AJ, B    besene S, F  
 4160 and fieble] fieble E, B, W    4161 into (in to) AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 4177 eny stede XGL, B<sub>Δ</sub>

## LIBER QUINTUS

61

His Elde hath torned into youthe,  
Which thing non other womman couthe.  
Bot hou it was to hire aquit,  
The remembrance duelleth yit.

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

King Peleus his Em was ded,  
Jason bar corone on his hed,  
Medea hath fulfild his wille:

Bot whanne he scholde of riht fulfille 4190

The trouthe, which to hire afore  
He hadde in thyle of Colchos swore,  
Tho was Medea most deceived.

For he an other hath received,  
Which dowhter was to king Creon,  
Creusa sche hihte, and thus Jason,  
As he that was to love untrewē,  
Medea leste and tok a newe.

Bot that was after sone aboght:

Medea with hire art hath wrought 4200

Of cloth of gold a mantel riche, P. ii. 268

Which semeth worth a kingesriche,  
And that was unto Creusa sent

In name of yifte and of present,  
For Sosterhode hem was betuene;  
And whan that yonge freisshe queene  
That mantel lappeth hire aboute,  
Anon therof the fyr sprong oute  
And brente hir bothe fleissch and bon.

Tho cam Medea to Jason 4210

With bothe his Sones on hire hond,  
And seide, 'O thou of every lond  
The moste untrewē creature,  
Lo, this schal be thi forfeiture.'

With that sche bothe his Sones slough  
Before his yhe, and he outdrouh  
His swerd and wold have slayn hir tho,  
Bot farewel, sche was ago

Unto Pallas the Court above, 4220

Wher as sche pleigneth upon love,  
As sche that was with that goddesse,

[TALE OF JASON AND  
MEDEA.]

Confessor.

Amans.

Confessor.

[TALE OF PHRIXUS  
AND HELLE.]

Nota qualiter aureum vellus in partes insule Colchos primo deuenit. Athemas Rex Philen habuit coniugem, ex qua Frixum et Hellen genuit: mortua autem Philen Athemas Ynonem Regis Cadmi filiam postea in vxorem duxit, que more Noerce dictos infantes in tantum recollegit odium, quod ambos in mare proici penes Regem procurauit. Vnde Iuno compaciens quendam Arietem grandem aureo vestitum vellere ad litus

And he was left in gret destresse.

Thus miht thou se what sorwe it doth  
To swere an oth which is noght soth,  
In loves cause namely.

Mi Sone, be wel war forthi,  
And kep that thou be noght forswore:  
For this, which I have told tofore,  
Ovide telleth everydel.

Mi fader, I may lieve it wel,  
For I have herde it ofte seie **P.**  
Hou Jason tok the flees aweie  
Fro Colchos, bot yit herde I noght  
Be whom it was ferst thider broght.  
And for it were good to hiere,  
If that you liste at mi preiere  
To telle, I wolde you beseche.

Mi Sone, who that wole it seche,  
In bokes he mai finde it write;  
And natheles, if thou wolt wite,  
In the manere as thou hast preid  
I schal the telle hou it is seid.

The fame of thilke schepes fell,  
Which in Colchos, as it befell,  
Was al of gold, schal nevere deie;  
Wherof I thenke for to seie  
Hou it cam ferst into that yle.  
Ther was a king in thilke whyle  
Towardes Grece, and Athemas  
The Cronique of his name was;  
And hadde a wif, which Philen hihte,  
Be whom, so as fortune it dihte,  
He hadde of children yonge tuo.  
Frixus the ferste was of tho,  
A knave child, riht fair withalle;  
A dowhter ek, the which men calle  
Hellen, he hadde be this wif.  
Bot for ther mai no mannes lif

Endure upon this Erthe here,  
 This worthi queene, as thou miht hier, 4260  
 Er that the children were of age, P. ii. 270  
 Tok of hire ende the passage,  
 With gret worschipe and was begrave.  
 What thing it liketh god to have  
 It is gret reson to ben his ;  
 Forthi this king, so as it is,  
 With gret suffrance it underfongeth :  
 And afterward, as him belongeth,  
 Whan it was time forto wedde,  
**A newe wif he tok to bedde,**  
 Which Yno hihte and was a Mayde,  
 And ek the dowhter, as men saide,  
**Of Cadme, which a king also**  
 Was holde in thilke daies tho.  
 Whan Yno was the kinges make,  
 Sche caste hou that sche mihte make  
 These children to here fader lothe,  
 And schope a wyle ayein hem bothe,  
 Which to the king was al unknowe.  
 A yeer or tuo sche let do sowe 4280  
 The lond with sode whete aboute,  
 Wherof no corn mai springen oute ;  
 And thus be sleyhte and be covine  
**Aros the derthe and the famine**  
**Thurghout the lond in such a wise,**  
 So that the king a sacrificise  
 Upon the point of this destresse  
 To Ceres, which is the goddesse  
 Of corn, hath schape him forto yive,  
 To loke if it mai be foryive, 4290  
 The meschief which was in his lond. P. ii. 271  
 Bot sche, which knew tofor the hond  
 The circumstance of al this thing,  
 Ayein the cominge of the king  
 Into the temple, hath schape so,

[TALK OF PHRIXUS  
 AND HELLE]

natantem destinavit ;  
 super cuius dorsum  
 pueros apponi iussit.  
 Quo facto Aries super  
 vndas regressus cum  
 solo Phrixo sibi ad  
 herente in Colchos  
 applicuit, ubi Iuno  
 dictum Arietem cum  
 suo vellere, prout in  
 alius canitur cronidis,  
 sub arta custodia col-  
 locavit.

4270

4280

4290

4266 margin cum solo vellere A . . . B<sub>1</sub>, B 4267 margin canitur  
 GE. BTA<sub>1</sub> canetur AMH.XRCLB<sub>1</sub>, S, FH<sub>1</sub> habetur W 4276  
 anon sche bigan for to make E . . . B<sub>1</sub> She kest anone howe she  
 myght make W 4278 schope AJ, S, F schop (schoop) C, B

[TALE OF PHRIXUS  
AND HELLE.]

Of hire acord that alle tho  
Whiche of the temple prestes were  
Have seid and full declared there  
Unto the king, bot if so be  
That he delivere the contre 4300  
Of Frixus and of Hellen bothe,  
With whom the goddes ben so wrothe,  
That whil tho children ben therinne,  
Such tilthe schal noman beginne,  
Wherof to gete him eny corn.

Thus was it seid, thus was it sworn  
Of all the Prestes that ther are ;  
And sche which causeth al this fare  
Seid ek therto what that sche wolde,  
And every man thanne after tolde 4310  
So as the queene hem hadde preid.

The king, which hath his Ere leid,  
And lieveth al that evere he herde,  
Unto here tale thus ansuerde,  
And seith that levere him is to chese  
Hise children bothe forto lese,  
Than him and al the remenant  
Of hem whiche are aportenant  
Unto the lond which he schal kepe :  
And bad his wif to take kepe 4320  
In what manere is best to done, P. ii. 272  
That thei delivered weren sone  
Out of this world. And sche anon  
Tuo men ordeigneth forto gon ;  
Bot ferst sche made hem forto swere  
That thei the children scholden bere  
Unto the See, that non it knowe,  
And hem therinne bothe throwe.

The children to the See ben lad,  
Wher in the wise as Yno bad 4330  
These men be redy forto do.  
Bot the goddesse which Juno

4307 all S, F alle AJ, B 4309 seid AJ, B, F seide C  
4311 hem hap preid B hath hem preide W 4321 it is AMH.  
4330 Wherin J, F

Is hote, appiereth in the stede,  
 And hath unto the men forbede  
 That thei the children noght ne sle;  
 Bot bad hem loke into the See  
 And taken hiede of that thei sihen.  
 Ther swam a Schep tofore here yhen,  
 Whos flees of burned gold was al;  
 And this goddesse forth withal 4340  
 Comandeth that withoute lette  
 Thei scholde anon these children sette  
 Above upon this Schepes bak;  
 And al was do, riht as sche spak,  
 Wherof the men gon hom ayein.  
 And fell so, as the bokes sein,  
 Hellen the yonge Mayden tho,  
 Which of the See was wo bego,  
 For pure drede hire herte hath lore,  
 That fro the Schep, which hath hure bore, 4350  
 As sche that was swounende feint, P. ii. 273  
 Sche fell, and hath hirselve dreint;  
 With Frixus and this Schep forth swam,  
 Til he to thyle of Colchos cam,  
 Where Juno the goddesse he fond,  
 Which tok the Schep unto the lond,  
 And sette it there in such a wise  
 As thou tofore hast herd devise,  
 Wherof cam after al the wo,  
 Why Jason was forswore so 4360  
 Unto Medee, as it is spoke.

Mi fader, who that hath tobroke  
 His trouthe, as ye have told above,  
 He is noght worthi forto love  
 Ne be beloved, as me semeth:  
 Bot every newe love quemeth  
 To him which newefongel is.  
 And natheles nou after this,

Amans.

4334 þo men H: XGEC, B 4343 þe AMH: XGBs, Δ, W  
 4339 was lore H: ... Bs 4351 As} And AM: ... Bs 4352  
 4351 self adreynt B 4361 was spoke H: XECLB: 4367 To him  
 4361 BT, W

Confessor.

If that you list to taken hiede  
 Upon mi Schrifte to procede, 4370  
 In loves cause ayein the vice  
 Of covoitise and Avarice  
 What ther is more I wolde wite.  
 Mi Sone, this I finde write,  
 Ther is yit on of thilke brood,  
 Which only for the worldes good,  
 To make a Tresor of Moneie,  
 Put alle conscience aweie :  
 Wherof in thi confession  
 The name and the condicion 4380  
 I schal hierafterward declare, P. ii. 274  
 Which makth on riche, an other bare.

[USURY.]

v. *Plus capit usura sibi quam debetur, et illud  
 Fraude colorata sepe latenter agit.  
 Sic amor excessus quamsepe suos ut auarus  
 Spirat, et unius tres capit ipse loco.*

Hic tractat de illa  
 specie Auaricie, que  
 Vsura dicitur, cuius  
 creditor in pecunia  
 tantum numerata  
 plusquam sibi de iure  
 debetur incrementum  
 lucri adauget.

Upon the bench sittende on hih  
 With Avarice Usure I sih,  
 Full clothed of his oghne suite,  
 Which after gold makth chace and suite  
 With his brocours, that renne aboute  
 Lich unto racches in a route.  
 Such lucre is non above grounde,  
 Which is noght of tho racches founde ; 4390  
 For wher thei se beyete sterte,  
 That schal hem in no wise asterte,  
 Bot thei it dryve into the net  
 Of lucre, which Usure hath set.  
 Usure with the riche duelleth,  
 To al that evere he beith and selleth  
 He hath ordeined of his sleyhte  
 Measure double and double weyhte :  
 Outward he selleth be the lasse,  
 And with the more he makth his tasse, 4400  
 Wherof his hous is full withinne.

4369 you] þou H<sub>1</sub>YB<sub>2</sub>, BT, WH<sub>2</sub> 4391 where þe biȝete sterte EC  
 wher euere þei be ȝit stert(e) H<sub>1</sub>XRLB<sub>2</sub> 4396 To] And H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>

## LIBER QUINTUS

67

[USURY.]

He recbeth noght, be so he winne,  
 Though that ther lese ten or tuelve :  
 His love is al toward himselve  
 And to non other, bot he se  
 That he mai winne suche thre ;  
 For wher he schal oght yive or lene, P. ii. 275  
 He wol ayeinward take a bene,  
 Ther he hath lent the smale pese.  
 And riht so ther ben manye of these 4410  
 Lovers, that thogh thei love a lyte,  
 That scarsly wolde it weie a myte,  
 Yit wolde thei have a pound again,  
 As doth Usure in his bargain.  
 Bot certes such usure unliche  
 It falleth more unto the riche,  
 Als wel of love as of beyete,  
 Than unto hem that be noght grete,  
 And, as who seith, ben simple and povere ;  
 For sielden is whan thei recovere, 4420  
 Bot if it be thurgh gret decerte.  
 And natheles men se poverte  
 With porsuite and continuance  
 Fulofte make a gret chevance  
 And take of love his avantage,  
 Forth with the help of his brocage,  
 That maken seme wher is noght.  
 And thus fulofte is love boght  
 For litel what, and mochel take,  
 With false weyhtes that thei make. 4430  
 Nou, Sone, of that I seide above  
 Thou wost what Usure is of love :  
 Tell me forthi what so thou wilt,  
 If thou therof hast eny gilt.  
 Mi fader, nay, for ought I hiere.  
 For of tho pointz ye tolden hiere  
 I wol you be mi trouthe assure, P. ii. 276

Confessor.

Amans.

4409 by so AMH.XRCLB, B so W 4411 thei] sche B  
 4413 wolde he H.XRCLB 4423 of continuance BT and  
 continuance LB, WH 4425 his om. AM ... B 4427  
 wher it is A ... B, FWKH



[USURY.]

Mi weyhte of love and mi mesure  
 Hath be mor large and mor certein  
 Than evere I tok of love ayein : 4440  
 For so yit couthe I nevere of sleyhte,  
 To take ayein be double weyhte  
 Of love mor than I have yive.  
 For als so wiss mot I be schrive  
 And have remission of Sinne,  
 As so yit couthe I nevere winne,  
 Ne yit so mochel, soth to sein,  
 That evere I mihte have half ayein  
 Of so full love as I have lent :  
 And if myn happ were so wel went, 4450  
 That for the hole I mihte have half,  
 Me thenkth I were a goddeshalf.  
 For where Usure wole have double,  
 Mi conscience is noght so trouble,  
 I biede nevere as to my del  
 Bot of the hole an halvendel ;  
 That is non excess, as me thenketh.  
 Bot natheles it me forthenketh ;  
 For wel I wot that wol noght be,  
 For every day the betre I se 4460  
 That hou so evere I yive or lene  
 Mi love in place ther I mene,  
 For oght that evere I axe or crave,  
 I can nothing ayeinward have.  
 Bot yit for that I wol noght lete,  
 What so befalle of mi beyete,  
 That I ne schal hire yive and lene P. ii. 277  
 Mi love and al mi thoght so clene,  
 That toward me schal noght beleve.  
 And if sche of hire goode leve 4470  
 Rewarde wol me noght again,  
 I wot the laste of my bargain  
 Schal stonde upon so gret a lost,  
 That I mai neveremor the cost  
 Recovere in this world til I die.

4452 it were AM  
 and al my loue BT

4462 ther] þat BT  
 Mi loue and al mi trewþe Δ

4468 My þought

[USURY.]

So that touchende of this partie  
 I mai me wel excuse and schal ;  
 And forto speke forth withal,  
 If eny brocour for me wente,  
 That point cam nevere in myn entente : 4480  
 So that the more me merveilleth,  
 What thing it is mi ladi eilleth,  
 That al myn herte and al my time  
 Sche hath, and doth no betre bime.

I have herd seid that thoght is fre,  
 And natheles in private  
 To you, mi fader, that ben hiere  
 Min hole schrifte forto hiere,  
 I dar min herte wel desclose.  
 Touchende usure, as I suppose, 4490  
 Which as ye telle in love is used,  
 Mi ladi mai noght ben excused ;  
 That for o lokinge of hire yē  
 Min hole herte til I dye  
 With al that evere I may and can  
 Sche hath me wonne to hire man :  
 Wherof, me thenkth, good reson wolde P. ii. 278  
 That sche somdel rewarde scholde,  
 And yive a part, ther sche hath al.  
 I not what falle hierafter schal, 4500  
 Bot into nou yit dar I sein,  
 Hire liste nevere yive ayein  
 A goodli word in such a wise,  
 Wherof min hope mihte arise,  
 Mi grete love to compensate.  
 I not hou sche hire conscience  
 Excuse wole of this usure ;  
 Be large weyhte and gret mesure  
 Sche hath mi love, and I have noght  
 Of that which I have diere boght, 4510  
 And with myn herte I have it paid ;  
 Bot al that is asyde laid,  
 And I go loveles aboute.

4485 sein (seie) MXCLB<sub>2</sub>, W      4504 mihte S    miht (might)  
 AJ. B, F      4507 usure] mesure BT      4512 al þis BT

[USURY.]

Hire oghte stonde in ful gret doute,  
 Til sche redresce such a sinne,  
 That sche wole al mi love winne  
 And yifh me noght to live by :  
 Noght als so moche as 'grant mercy'  
 Hir list to seie, of which I mihte  
 Som of mi grete peine allyhte. 4520  
 Bot of this point, lo, thus I fare  
 As he that paith for his chaffare,  
 And beith it diere, and yit hath non,  
 So mot he nedes povere gon :  
 Thus beie I diere and have no love,  
 That I ne mai noght come above  
 To winne of love non encress. P. ii. 279  
 Bot I me wole natheles  
 Touchende usure of love aquite ;  
 And if mi ladi be to wyte, 4530  
 I preie to god such grace hir sende  
 That sche be time it mot amende.

Confessor.

Mi Sone, of that thou hast ansuerd  
 Touchende Usure I have al herd,  
 Hou thou of love hast wonne smale :  
 Bot that thou tellest in thi tale  
 And thi ladi therof accusest,  
 Me thenkth tho wordes thou misusest.  
 For be thin oghne knowlechinge  
 Thou seist hou sche for o lokinge 4540  
 Thin hole herte fro the tok :  
 Sche mai be such, that hire o lok  
 Is worth thin herte manyfold ;  
 So hast thou wel thin herte sold,  
 Whan thou hast that is more worth.  
 And ek of that thou tellest forth,  
 Hou that hire weyhte of love unevene  
 Is unto thin, under the hevene  
 Stod nevere in evene that balance  
 Which stant in loves governance. 4550  
 Such is the statut of his lawe,

4518 als so] als (as) X, Ad, WHs    4523 it om. B    4525 Thus beie  
 I diere] I beye deere H1 . . . B2    4526 noght om. H1RCLB2, W

## LIBER QUINTUS

71

[Usury.]

That thogh thi love more drawe  
And peise in the balance more,  
Thou miht noght axe ayein therfore  
Of duete, bot al of grace.

For love is lord in every place,  
Ther mai no lawe him justefie  
Be reddour ne be compaignie,  
That he ne wole after his wille  
Whom that him liketh spede or spille.

P. ii. 280

4560

To love a man mai wel beginne,  
Bot whether he schal lese or winne,  
That wot noman til ate laste:  
Forthi coveite noght to faste,  
Mi Sone, bot abyd thin ende,  
Per cas al mai to goode wende.  
Bot that thou hast me told and said,  
Of o thing I am riht wel paid,  
That thou be sleyhte ne be guile  
Of no brocour hast otherwhile  
Engined love, for such dede  
Is sore venged, as I rede.

4570

Brocours of love that deceiven,  
No wonder is thogh thei receiven  
After the wrong that thei decerven;  
For whom as evere that thei serven  
And do plesance for a whyle,  
Yit ate laste here oghne guile  
Upon here oghne hed descendeth,  
Which god of his vengeance sendeth,  
As be ensample of time go  
A man mai finde it hath be so.  
It fell sometime, as it was sene,  
The hihe goddesse and the queene  
Juno tho hadde in compaignie  
A Maiden full of tricherie;  
For sche was evere in on acord

[LOVE-BROKERAGE.  
TALE OF ECHO.]

Hic ponit exem-  
4580 plum contra istos  
maritos qui ultra id  
quod proprias habent  
vxores ad noue vo-  
luptatis incrementum  
alias mulieres super  
sue lucrari non ve-  
rentur. Et narrat  
qualiter Iuno vindic-  
tam suam in Echo  
decreuit, pro eo quod  
ipsa Echo in huius

P. ii. 281

4565 be ende H1 . . . B1 4568 riht wel paid] wel a payd (appared)  
H1 B1 4571 of suche dede BT 4574 thogh] of ERCB1  
H1 4576 fro whom AM 4579 hire AJM 4586 margin  
decreuit, pro eo quod ipsa Echo om. BT, H1 4587 on om. BT

[LOVE-BROKERAGE.  
TALE OF ECHO.]

modi mulierum lucris  
adquirendis de con-  
silio mariti sui Iouis  
mediatrix extiterat.

With Jupiter, that was hire lord,  
To gete him othre loves newe,  
Thurgh such brocage and was untrewē 4590  
Al otherwise than him nedeth.  
Bot sche, which of no schame dredeth,  
With queinte wordes and with slyhe  
Blente in such wise hir lady yhe,  
As sche to whom that Juno triste,  
So that therof sche nothing wiste.  
Bot so prive mai be nothing,  
That it ne comth to knowleching;  
Thing don upon the derke nyht  
Is after knowe on daies liht : 4600  
So it befell, that ate laste  
Al that this slyhe maiden caste  
Was overcast and overthrowe.  
For as the sothe mot be knowe,  
To Juno was don understonde  
In what manere hir housebonde  
With fals brocage hath take usure  
Of love mor than his mesure,  
Whan he tok othre than his wif,  
Wherof this mayden was gultif, 4610  
Which hadde ben of his assent.  
And thus was al the game schent;  
Sche soffreth him, as sche mot nede,  
Bot the brocour of his misdede,  
Sche which hir conseil yaf therto,  
On hire is the vengance do :  
For Juno with hire wordes hote, P. ii. 282  
This Maiden, which Eccho was hote,  
Reproveth and seith in this wise :  
'O traiteresse, of which servise 4620  
Hast thou thin oghne ladi served!  
Thou hast gret peine wel deserved,  
That thou canst maken it so queinte,  
Thi slyhe wordes forto peinte  
Towardes me, that am thi queene,  
Wherof thou madest me to wene

[LOVE-BROKERAGE.  
TALE OF ECHO.]

That myn housbonde trewe were,  
 Whan that he loveth elleswhere,  
 Al be it so him nedeth noght.  
 Bot upon thee it schal be boght, 4630  
 Which art prive to tho doinges,  
 And me fulofte of thi lesinges  
 Deceived hast: nou is the day  
 That I thi while aquite may;  
 And for thou hast to me conceled  
 That my lord hath with othre deled,  
 I schal thee sette in such a kende,  
 That evere unto the worldes ende  
 Al that thou hierest thou schalt telle,  
 And clappe it out as doth a belle.' 4640  
 And with that word sche was forschape,  
 Ther may no vois hire mouth ascape,  
 What man that in the wodes crieth,  
 Withoute faile Eccho replieth,  
 And what word that him list to sein,  
 The same word sche seith ayein.  
 Thus sche, which whilom hadde leve P. ii. 283  
 To duelle in chambre, mot beleve  
 In wodes and on helles bothe,  
 For such brocage as wyves lothe, 4650  
 Which doth here lordes hertes change  
 And love in other place strange.

Forthi, if evere it so befalle,  
 That thou, mi Sone, amonges alle  
 Be wedded man, hold that thou hast,  
 For thanne al other love is wast.  
 O wif schal wel to thee suffise,  
 And thanne, if thou for covoitise  
 Of love woldest axe more,  
 Thou scholdest don ayein the lore 4660  
 Of alle hem that trewe be.

Mi fader, as in this degre  
 My conscience is noght accused;

Confessor.

Amans.

4634 quite BT, W      4642 vice BT      4643 in the wodes]  
 were in wodes AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>      4651 herte XEC, BT, W      4652  
 places XGLB<sub>1</sub>, B

For I no such brocage have used,  
 Wherof that lust of love is wonne.  
 Forthi spek forth, as ye begonne,  
 Of Avarice upon mi schrifte.

Confessor.

    Mi Sone, I schal the branches schifte  
 Be ordre so as thei ben set,  
 On whom no good is wel beset.

4670

[PARSIMONY.]

vi. *Pro verbis verba, munus pro munere reddi  
 Convenit, ut pondus equa statera gerat.  
 Propterea cupido non dat sua dona Cupido,  
 Nam qui nulla serit, gramina nulla metet.*

Hic tractat super  
 illa specie Auaricie  
 que Parcimonia dicitur,  
 cuius natura tenax  
 aliqualem sue substan-  
 cie porcionem aut deo  
 aut hominibus partici-  
 pare nullatenus con-  
 sentit.

    Blinde Avarice of his lignage  
 For conseil and for cousinage,  
 To be withholde ayein largesse,      P. ii. 284  
 Hath on, whos name is seid Skarsnesse,  
 The which is kepere of his hous,  
 And is so thurghout averous,  
 That he no good let out of honde ;  
 Thogh god himself it wolde fonde,  
 Of yifte scholde he nothing have ;  
 And if a man it wolde crave,      4680  
 He moste thanne faile nede,  
 Wher god himselve mai noght spede.  
 And thus Skarsnesse in every place  
 Be reson mai no thonk porchace,  
 And natheles in his degree  
 Above alle othre most prive  
 With Avarice stant he this.  
 For he governeth that ther is  
 In ech astat of his office  
 After the reule of thilke vice ;      4690  
 He takth, he kepth, he halt, he bint,  
 That lihtere is to fle the flint  
 Than gete of him in hard or neisshe  
 Only the value of a reysse  
 Of good in helpinge of an other,  
 Noght thogh it were his oghne brother.

## LIBER QUINTUS

75

[PARSIMONY.]

For in the cas of yifte and lone  
 Stant every man for him al one,  
 Him thenkth of his unkindeschipe  
 That him nedeth no felaschipe : 4700  
 Be so the bagge and he acorden,  
 Him recbeth noht what men recorden  
 Of him, or it be evel or good. P. ii. 285

For al his trust is on his good,  
 So that al one he falleth ofte,  
 Whan he best weneth stonde alofte,  
 Als wel in love as other wise ;  
 For love is evere of som reprise  
 To him that wole his love holde.

Forthi, mi Sone, as thou art holde, 4710  
 Touchende of this tell me thi schrifte :  
 Hast thou be scars or large of yifte  
 Unto thi love, whom thou servest?

For after that thou wel deservest  
 Of yifte, thou miht be the bet ;  
 For that good holde I wel beset,  
 For why thou miht the betre fare ;  
 Thanne is no wisdom forto spare.

For thus men sein, in every nede  
 He was wys that ferst made mede ; 4720  
 For where as mede mai noht spede,  
 I not what helpeth other dede :

Fulofte he faileth of his game  
 That wol with ydel hand reclame  
 His hauk, as many a nyce doth.  
 Forthi, mi Sone, tell me soth  
 And sei the trouthe, if thou hast be  
 Unto thy love or skars or fre.

Mi fader, it hath stonde thus, Confessio Amantis.  
 That if the tresor of Cresus 4730

And al the gold Octovien,  
 Forth with the richesse Yndien  
 Of Perles and of riche stones, P. ii. 286  
 Were al togedre myn at ones,

470. By (B) so AM . . . B1, B (Be so G) 4717 why F which  
 A B1, S . . . Δ, KH, Magd thi W 4732 for wip S4



[PARSIMONY.]

I sette it at nomore acompte  
 Than wolde a bare straw amonte,  
 To yive it hire al in a day,  
 Be so that to that suete may  
 I myhte like or more or lesse.  
 And thus be cause of my scarsnesse 4740  
 Ye mai wel understonde and lieve  
 That I schal noght the worse achieve  
 The pourpos which is in my thoght.  
 Bot yit I yaf hir nevere noght,  
 Ne therto dorste a profre make;  
 For wel I wot sche wol noght take,  
 And yive wol sche noght also,  
 She is eschu of bothe tuo.  
 And this I trowe be the skile  
 Towardes me, for sche ne wile 4750  
 That I have eny cause of hope,  
 Noght also mochel as a drope.  
 Bot toward othre, as I mai se,  
 Sche takth and yifh in such degre,  
 That as be weie of frendlihiede  
 Sche can so kepe hir wommanhiede,  
 That every man spekth of hir wel.  
 Bot sche wole take of me no del,  
 And yit sche wot wel that I wolde  
 Yive and do bothe what I scholde 4760  
 To plesen hire in al my myht:  
 Be reson this wot every wyht,  
 For that mai be no weie asterte, P. ii. 287  
 Ther sche is maister of the herte,  
 Sche mot be maister of the good.  
 For god wot wel that al my mod  
 And al min herte and al mi thoght  
 And al mi good, whil I have oght,  
 Als freliche as god hath it yive,  
 It schal ben hires, while I live, 4770  
 Riht as hir list himself commande.  
 So that it nedeth no demande,

4738 By so AMX . . . B<sub>2</sub>, B      4739 I myhte] It m. AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>,  
 S . . . Δ      4742 That it schal H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>      4770 I schal BT

To axe of me if I be scars  
To love, for as to tho pars  
I wole ansuere and seie no.

Mi Sone, that is riht wel do.  
For often times of scarsnesse  
It hath be sen, that for the lesse  
Is lost the more, as thou schalt hiere  
A tale lich to this matiere.

4780

Confessor.

Skarsnesse and love acorden nevere,  
For every thing is wel the levere,  
Whan that a man hath boght it diere :  
And forto speke in this matiere,  
For sparinge of a litel cost  
Fulofte time a man hath lost  
The large cote for the hod.  
What man that scars is of his good  
And wol noght yive, he schal noght take :  
With yifte a man mai undertake  
The hihe god to plese and queme,  
With yifte a man the world mai deme ;  
For every creature bore,

P. ii. 288

If thou him yive, is glad therfore,  
And every gladschipe, as I finde,  
Is confort unto loves kinde  
And causeth ofte a man to spede.  
So was he wys that ferst yaf mede,  
For mede kepeth love in house ;  
Bot wher the men ben coveitouse  
And sparen forto yive a part,  
Thei knowe noght Cupides art :  
For his fortune and his aprise  
Desdeigneth alle coveitise  
And hateth alle nygardie.  
And forto loke of this partie,  
A soth ensample, hou it is so,  
I finde write of Babio ;  
Which hadde a love at his menage,

4800

[TALE OF BABIO  
AND CROCEUS.]

Hic loquitur contra  
istos, qui Avaricia  
stricti largitatis bene-  
ficio in amoris causa  
confundunt. Et ponit  
exemplum, qualiter  
Croceus largus et hil-  
laris Babionem aua-  
rum et tenacem de  
amore Viole, que  
pulcherrima fuit,  
donis largissimis cir-  
cumuenit.

4788 That man H<sub>1</sub>. . . B<sub>2</sub>  
4792 yifte om. H<sub>1</sub>RCLB<sub>2</sub>

4789 margin Babilonem A . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
4808 Rabio A . . . B<sub>2</sub>

[TALE OF BABIO  
AND CROCEUS.]

Ther was non fairere of hire age, 4810  
 And hihte Viola be name ;  
 Which full of youthe and ful of game  
 Was of himself, and large and fre,  
 Bot such an other chinche as he  
 Men wisten noght in al the lond,  
 And hadde affaited to his hond  
 His servant, the which Spodius  
 Was hote. And in this wise thus  
 The worldes good of sufficance  
 Was had, bot likinge and plesance, 4820  
 Of that belongeth to richesse  
 Of love, stod in gret destresse ;  
 So that this yonge lusty wyht P. ii. 289  
 Of thing which fell to loves riht  
 Was evele served overal,  
 That sche was wo bego withal,  
 Til that Cupide and Venus eke  
 A medicine for the seke  
 Ordeigne wolden in this cas.  
 So as fortune thanne was, 4830  
 Of love upon the destine  
 It fell, riht as it scholde be,  
 A freissh, a fre, a frendly man  
 That noght of Avarice can,  
 Which Croceus be name hihte,  
 Toward this swete caste his sihte,  
 And ther sche was cam in presence.  
 Sche sih him large of his despence,  
 And amorous and glad of chiere,  
 So that hir liketh wel to hieré 4840  
 The goodly wordes whiche he seide ;  
 And therupon of love he preide,  
 Of love was al that he mente,  
 To love and for sche scholde assente,  
 He yaf hire yiftes evere among.  
 Bot for men sein that mede is strong,  
 It was wel seene at thilke tyde ;

4814 such om. AMRCL 4817 Spondeus H<sub>1</sub>. . . B<sub>2</sub> Spodius T  
 4818 in om. RCB<sub>2</sub>

## LIBER QUINTUS

79

{TALE OF BABIO  
AND CROCEUS.}

For as it scholde of ryht betyde,  
This Viola largesce hath take  
And the nygard sche hath forsake: 4850

Of Babio sche wol no more,  
For he was grucchende everemore,  
Ther was with him non other fare P. ii. 290  
Bot forto prinche and forto spare,  
Of wordes muk to gete encess.

So goth the wrecche loveles,  
Bejaped for his Skarcete,  
And he that large was and fre  
And sette his herte to despende,  
This Croceus, the bowe bende, 4860  
Which Venus tok him forto holde,  
And schotte als ofte as evere he wolde.

Lo, thus departeth love his lawe,  
That what man wol noght be felawe  
To yive and spende, as I thee telle,  
He is noght worthi forto duelle  
In loves court to be relieved.  
Forthi, my Sone, if I be lieved,  
Thou schalt be large of thi despence.

Mi fader, in mi conscience 4870 Amans.  
If ther be eny thing amis,  
I wol amende it after this,  
Toward mi love namely.

Mi Sone, wel and redely Confessor.

Thou seist, so that wel paid withal  
I am, and forthere if I schal  
Unto thi schrifte specefie  
Of Avarices progenie  
What vice sueth after this,  
Thou schalt have wonder hou it is, 4880

Among the folk in eny regne  
That such a vice myhte regne,  
Which is comun at alle assaies, P. ii. 291  
As men mai finde nou adaies.

4851 Babio A . . . B<sub>1</sub> 4856 the] he AM 4862 schette  
(schet, JXERCB<sub>1</sub> 4868 I] it BT þou H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub> 4872 wold B  
4877 thi] þis H<sub>1</sub>E . . . B<sub>1</sub>

[INGRATITUDE.]

vii. *Cuncta creatura, deus et qui cuncta creauit,  
Dampnant ingrati dicta que facta viri.  
Non dolor alonge stat, quo sibi talis amicam  
Traxit, et in fine deserit esse suam.*

Hic loquitur super  
illa aborta specie Aua-  
ricie, que Ingratitudo  
dicta est, cuius con-  
dicionem non solum  
creator, set eciam  
cuncte creature abho-  
minabilem detestan-  
tur.

The vice lik unto the fend,  
Which nevere yit was mannes frend,  
And cleped is Unkindeschipe,  
Of covine and of felaschipe  
With Avarice he is withholde.  
Him thenkth he scholde noght ben holde 4890  
Unto the moder which him bar ;  
Of him mai nevere man be war,  
He wol noght knowe the merite,  
For that he wolde it noght aquite ;  
Which in this world is mochel used,  
And fewe ben therof excused.  
To telle of him is endeles,  
Bot this I seie natheles,  
Wher as this vice comth to londe,  
Ther takth noman his thonk on honde ; 4900  
Thogh he with alle his myhtes serve,  
He schal of him no thonk deserve.  
He takth what eny man wol yive,  
Bot whil he hath o day to live,  
He wol nothing rewarde ayein ;  
He gruccheth forto yive o grein,  
Wher he hath take a berne full.  
That makth a kinde herte dull,  
To sette his trust in such frendschipe, P. ii. 292  
Ther as he fint no kindeschipe ; 4910  
And forto speke wordes pleine,  
Thus hiere I many a man compleigne,  
That nou on daies thou schalt finde  
At nede fewe frendes kinde ;  
What thou hast don for hem tofore,  
It is foryete, as it were lore.  
The bokes speken of this vice,  
And telle hou god of his justice,

*Latin Verses* vii. 2 dicta que SBT dictaque AJM, FW dictique  
(dicti que) H<sub>1</sub>E . . . B<sub>2</sub> 3 alonge AJ, F a longe SB

Be weie of kinde and ek nature  
And every lifissh creature,  
The lawe also, who that it kan,  
Thei dampnen an unkinde man.

4920

[INGRATITUDE.]

It is al on to seie unkinde  
As thing which don is ayein kinde,  
For it with kinde nevere stod  
A man to yelden evel for good.  
For who that wolde taken hede,  
A beste is glad of a good dede,  
And loveth thilke creature  
After the lawe of his nature  
Which doth him ese. And forto se .  
Of this matiere Auctorite,  
Fulofte time it hath befalle ;  
Wherof a tale amonges alle,  
Which is of olde ensamplerie,  
I thenke forto specesie.

4930

To speke of an unkinde man,  
I finde hou whilom Adrian,  
Of Rome which a gret lord was,  
Upon a day as he per cas  
To wode in his huntinge wente,  
It hapneth at a soudein wente,  
After his chace as he poursuieth,  
Thurgh happ, the which noman eschuieth,  
He fell unwar into a pet,  
Wher that it mihte noght be let.  
The pet was dep and he fell lowe,  
That of his men non myhte knowe  
Wher he becam, for non was nyh,  
Which of his fall the meschief syh.  
And thus al one ther he lay  
Clepende and criende al the day  
For socour and deliverance,

P. ii. 293

[TALE OF ADRIAN  
AND BARDUS.]

4940 Hic dicit qualiter  
bestie in suis benefi-  
cius hominem ingra-  
tum naturaliter pre-  
cellunt. Et ponit ex-  
emplum de Adriano  
Rome Cenatore, qui  
in quadam Foresta ve-  
nacionibus insistsens,  
dum predam perse-  
queretur, in Cisternam  
profundam nescia fa-  
milia corrui: vbi su-  
perueniens quidam  
pauper nomine Bar-  
4950 dus, immissa cordula,  
putans hominem ex-  
traxisse, primo Sime-  
am extraxit, secundo  
Serpentem, tercio A-

4920 Dampnen þe vnkinde creature H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> (Dampneth H.B.)  
lifissh S. F. huisssh BT. luyngc AJM. Δ liflich (livelich) WH:  
4930: who that it kan} þat it can AM by þat I can H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 4935  
olde AJ, S, F old C, B 4942 at} þat XECLB<sub>2</sub> þat at H<sub>1</sub>R  
4944 the om, H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BA

[TALE OF ADRIAN  
AND BARDUS.]

drianum, qui pauperem despiciens aliquid ei pro benefacto reddere recusabat. Set tam Serpens quam Sima gratuita beneuolencia ipsum singulis donis sufficienter remunerarunt.

Til ayein Eve it fell per chance,  
A while er it began to nyhte,  
A povere man, which Bardus hihte,  
Cam forth walkende with his asse,  
And hadde gadred him a tasse  
Of grene stickes and of dreie  
To selle, who that wolde hem beie, 4960  
As he which hadde no liflode,  
Bot whanne he myhte such a lode  
To toune with his Asse carie.  
And as it fell him forto tarie  
That ilke time nyh the pet,  
And hath the trusse faste knet,  
He herde a vois, which cride dimme,  
And he his Ere to the brimme  
Hath leid, and herde it was a man, P. ii. 294  
Which seide, 'Ha, help hier Adrian, 4970  
And I wol yiven half mi good.'

The povere man this understod,  
As he that wolde gladly winne,  
And to this lord which was withinne  
He spak and seide, 'If I thee save,  
What sikernesse schal I have  
Of covenant, that afterward  
Thou wolt me yive such reward  
As thou behihest nou tofore?'

That other hath his othes swore 4980  
Be hevene and be the goddes alle,  
If that it myhte so befalle  
That he out of the pet him broghte,  
Of all the goodes whiche he oghte  
He schal have evene halvendel.

This Bardus seide he wolde wel;  
And with this word his Asse anon  
He let untrusse, and therupon  
Doun goth the corde into the pet,  
To which he hath at ende knet 4990

4959 *margin* ipsum] insuper ipsum AM 4981 the] jo B om. T  
4984 all S, F alle AJ, B 4989 f. put: knvt AMC pit: knit  
H1XRLB2, Ad, W

A staf, wherby, he seide, he wolde  
That Adrian him scholde holde.  
Bot it was tho per chance falle,  
Into that pet was also falle  
An Ape, which at thilke throwe,  
Whan that the corde cam doun lowe,  
Al sodeinli therto he skipte

And it in bothe hise armes clipte.

And Bardus with his Asse anon

P. ii. 295

Him hath updrawe, and he is gon,

5000

But whan he sih it was an Ape,

He wende al hadde ben a jape

Of faerie, and sore him dradde:

And Adrian eftsone gradde

For help, and cride and preide faste,

And he eftsone his corde caste;

Bot whan it cam unto the grounde,

A gret Serpent it hath bewounde,

The which Bardus anon up drouh.

And thanne him thoghte wel ynouh,

5010

It was fantosme, bot yit he herde

The vois, and he therto ansuerde,

'What wiht art thou in goddes name?'

'I am,' quod Adrian, 'the same,

Whos good thou schalt have evene half.'

Quod Bardus, 'Thanne a goddes half

The thridde time assaie I schal':

And caste his corde forth withal

Into the pet, and whan it cam

To him, this lord of Rome it nam,

5020

And therupon him hath adresced,

And with his hand fulofte blessed,

And thanne he bad to Bardus hale.

And he, which understod his tale,

Between him and his Asse al softe

Hath drawe and set him up alofte

1994 he pit 'put &c.) H1 . . . B1, Ad, W 5003 sore] for AM  
he W 5011 fantosme, bot yit] fantasme (fantome) pat B1A  
fantasme and yit L. fantastic but he pit W 5021 him bath adresced]  
to him bath dresced H1XRCLB1 5025 al softe] alofte B softe W



[TALE OF ADRIAN  
AND BARDUS.]

Withouten harm al esely.

He seith noght ones 'grant merci,'

Bot strauhte him forth to the cite, **P. ii. 2**

And let this povere Bardus be. **5**

And natheles this simple man

His covenant, so as he can,

Hath axed; and that other seide,

If so be that he him umbreide

Of oght that hath be speke or do,

It schal ben venged on him so,

That him were betre to be ded.

And he can tho non other red,

But on his asse ayein he caste

His trusse, and hieth homward faste : **5**

And whan that he cam hom to bedde,

He tolde his wif hou that he spedde.

Bot finaly to speke oght more

Unto this lord he dradde him sore,

So that a word ne dorste he sein :

And thus upon the morwe ayein,

In the manere as I recorde,

Forth with his Asse and with his corde

To gadre wode, as he dede er,

He goth; and whan that he cam ner **5**

Unto the place where he wolde,

He hath his Ape anon beholde,

Which hadde gadred al aboute

Of stickes hiere and there a route,

And leide hem redy to his hond,

Wherof he made his trosse and bond;

Fro dai to dai and in this wise

This Ape profreth his servise,

So that he hadde of wode ynouh. **P. ii. 2**

Upon a time and as he drouh **5'**

Toward the wode, he sih besyde

The grete gastli Serpent glyde,

Til that sche cam in his presence,

5034 If it so be þat he vpbreyde (vmbreide) BT 5035 speke  
rest spoke 5045 o word H<sub>1</sub>C, BT one word Δ, W 5051  
om. AM 5054 aroute F

And in hir kinde a reverence  
 Sche hath him do, and forth withal  
 A Ston mor briht than a cristall  
 Out of hir mouth tofore his weie  
 Sche let doun falle, and wente aweie,  
 For that he schal noght ben adrad.  
 Tho was this povere Bardus glad,  
 Thonkende god, and to the Ston  
 He goth and takth it up anon,  
 And hath gret wonder in his wit  
 Hou that the beste him hath aquit,  
 Wher that the mannes Sone hath failed,  
 For whom he hadde most travailed.  
 Bot al he putte in goddes hond,  
 And torneth hom, and what he fond  
 Unto his wif he hath it schewed ;  
 And thei, that weren bothe lewed,  
 Acorden that he scholde it selle.  
 And he no lengere wolde duelle,  
 Bot forth anon upon the tale  
 The Ston he profreth to the sale ;  
 And riht as he himself it sette,  
 The jueler anon forth fette  
 The gold and made his paiement,  
 Therof was no delaie ment.

5070

5080

Thus whan this Ston was boght and sold, P. ii. 298  
 Homward with joie manyfold  
 This Bardus goth ; and whan he cam  
 Hom to his hous and that he nam  
 His gold out of his Purs, withinne  
 He fond his Ston also therinne,  
 Wherof for joie his herte pleide,  
 Unto his wif and thus he seide,  
 'Lo, hier my gold, lo, hier mi Ston !'  
 His wif hath wonder therupon,  
 And axeth him hou that mai be.  
 'Nou be mi trouthe I not,' quod he,  
 'Bot I dar swere upon a bok,

5100

[TALE OF ADRIAN  
AND BARDUS.]

That to my Marchant I it tok,  
And he it hadde whan I wente :  
So knowe I noght to what entente  
It is nou hier, bot it be grace.  
Forthi tomorwe in other place  
I wole it fonde forto selle,  
And if it wol noght with him duelle,  
Bot crepe into mi purs ayein,  
Than dar I saufly swere and sein,  
It is the vertu of the Ston.'

5110

The morwe cam, and he is gon  
To seche aboute in other stede  
His Ston to selle, and he so dede,  
And lefte it with his chapman there.  
Bot whan that he cam elleswhere,  
In presence of his wif at hom,  
Out of his Purs and that he nom  
His gold, he fond his Ston withal :  
And thus it fell him overal,  
Where he it solde in sondri place,  
Such was the fortune and the grace.  
Bot so wel may nothing ben hidd,  
That it nys ate laste kidd :

P. ii. 299

5120

This fame goth aboute Rome  
So ferforth, that the wordes come  
To themperour Justinian ;  
And he let sende for the man,  
And axede him hou that it was.  
And Bardus tolde him al the cas,  
Hou that the worm and ek the beste,  
Although thei maden no beheste,  
His travail hadden wel aquit ;  
Bot he which hadde a mannes wit,  
And made his covenant be mouthe  
And swor therto al that he couthe  
To parte and yiven half his good,

5130

5102 That to] Vnto B      5105 bot it be grace] but it be bi grace  
AM but be goddis grace Δ      5111 the om. AM      5114 so he  
dede AdBTΔ, W      5125 al aboute H<sub>1</sub>XRCL      5128 þat man  
H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>      5130 him om. BT      5131 ek (eek) AJC, BT eke F  
5134 a mannes] mannes XE, B

Hath nou foryete hou that it stod,  
As he which wol no trouthe holde.

This Emperour al that he tolde  
Hath herd, and thilke unkindenesse  
He seide he wolde himself redresse.  
And thus in court of juggement  
This Adrian was thanne assent,  
And the querele in audience  
Declared was in the presence  
Of themperour and many mo ;  
Wherof was mochel speche tho  
And gret wondringe among the press. P. ii. 300

Bot ate laste natheles  
For the partie which hath pleigned  
The lawe hath diemed and ordeigned  
Be hem that were avised wel,  
That he schal have the halvendel  
Thurghout of Adrianes good.

And thus of thilke unkinde blod  
Stant the memoire into this day,  
Wherof that every wysman may  
Ensamplen him, and take in mynde  
What schame it is to ben unkinde ;  
Ayein the which reson debateth,  
And every creature it hateth.

Forthi, mi Sone, in thin office  
I rede fle that ilke vice.

For riht as the Cronique seith  
Of Adnan, hou he his feith  
Foryat for worldes covoitise,  
Fuloste in such a maner wise  
Of lovers nou a man mai se  
Full manye that unkinde be :

For wel behote and evele laste  
That is here lif ; for ate laste,  
Whan that thei have here wille do,  
Here love is after sone ago.

What seist thou, Sone, to this cas ?

545 And in þe AM And tho the Hi 5157 the] in AM . . . B.  
548 eny AM 5159 hem AMGRLB.

Amans.

Mi fader, I wol seie Helas,  
 That evere such a man was bore,  
 Which whan he hath his trouthe suore  
 And hath of love what he wolde, **P. ii. 301**  
 That he at eny time scholde **5180**  
 Evere after in his herte finde  
 To falsen and to ben unkinde.  
 Bot, fader, as touchende of me,  
 I mai noght stonde in that degre ;  
 For I tok nevere of love why,  
 That I ne mai wel go therby  
 And do my profit elles where,  
 For eny sped I finde there.  
 I dar wel thenken al aboute,  
 Bot I ne dar noght speke it oute ; **5190**  
 And if I dorste, I wolde pleigne,  
 That sche for whom I soffre peine  
 And love hir evere aliche hote,  
 That nouthur yive ne behote  
 In rewardinge of mi servise  
 It list hire in no maner wise.  
 I wol noght say that sche is kinde,  
 And forto sai sche is unkinde,  
 That dar I noght ; bot god above,  
 Which demeth every herte of love, **5200**  
 He wot that on myn oghne side  
 Schal non unkindeschipe abide :  
 If it schal with mi ladi duelle,  
 Therof dar I nomore telle.  
 Nou, goode fader, as it is,  
 Tell me what thenketh you of this.

Confessor.

Mi Sone, of that unkindeschipe,  
 The which toward thi ladischipe  
 Thou pleignest, for sche wol thee noght, **P. ii. 302**  
 Thou art to blamen of that thoght. **5210**  
 For it mai be that thi desir,  
 Thogh it brenne evere as doth the fyr,  
 Per cas to hire honour missit,

5180 eny *om.* AM  
 Wherof AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>

5199 bot] by (be) BT for W  
 5210 þy þought BT

5204

[INGRATITUDE.]

Or elles time com noght yit,  
 Which standt upon thi destine :  
 Forthi, mi Sone, I rede thee,  
 Thenk wel, what evere the befallē ;  
 For noman hath his lustes alle.  
 Bot as thou toldest me before  
 That thou to love art noght forswore, 5220  
 And hast don non unkindenesse,  
 Thou miht therof thi grace blesse :  
 And lef noght that continuance ;  
 For ther mai be no such grevance  
 To love, as is unkindeschipe,  
 Wherof to kepe thi worschipe,  
 So as these olde bokes tale,  
 I schal thee telle a redi tale :  
 Nou herkne and be wel war therby,  
 For I wol telle it openly. 5230

Mynos, as telleth the Poete,  
 The which whilom was king of Crete,  
 A Sone hadde and Androchee  
 He hihte : and so befell that he  
 Unto Athenes forto lere  
 Was send, and so he bar him there,  
 For that he was of hih lignage,  
 Such pride he tok in his corage,  
 That he foryeten hath the Scoles, 5240  
 And in riote among the soles  
 He dede manye thinges wronge ;  
 And useth thilke lif so longe,  
 Til ate laste of that he wroghte  
 He fond the meschief which he soghte,  
 Wherof it fell that he was slain.  
 His fader, which it herde sain,  
 Was wroth, and al that evere he mihte,  
 Of men of Armes he him dighte  
 A strong pouer, and forth he wente

[TALE OF THESEUS  
AND ARIADNE]

Hic ponit exemplum  
 contra viros amoris  
 ingratos. Et narrat  
 qualiter Theseus Cad-  
 mi filius consilio suf-  
 fultus Adriagne Regis  
 Mynos filie, in domo  
 que laborinthus dicitur  
 Minotaurum vicit.  
 vnde Theseus Adri-  
 agne sponsalia certis-  
 sime promittens ipsam  
 vna cum Fedra sorore  
 sua a Creta secum na-  
 uigio duxit. Set sta-  
 tim postea obli-  
 tudinis beneficio A-  
 driagnam ipsum sal-  
 uantem in insula Chio  
 spretam post tergum  
 reliquit ; et Fedram  
 Athenis sibi sponsa-  
 tam ingratus corona-  
 uit.

P. ii. 303

5240

5215 standt S, F stant AC, B standep J thi] be H1 . . . B1  
 5225 flor loue H1 . . . B1 5236 bar AJC, BT bare S, F 5237 margin  
 suffultus] fultus BT 5239 margin vincit H1 . . . B1 5242 vsed  
 AM . . . B1, W 5248 dighte F dihte AJ and so also in l. 5352

[TALE OF THESEUS  
AND ARIADNE.]

Unto Athenys, where he brente 5250  
The pleine contre al aboute :  
The Cites stode of him in doute,  
As thei that no defence hadde  
Ayein the pouer which he ladde.  
Egeüs, which was there king,  
His conseil tok upon this thing,  
For he was thanne in the Cite :  
So that of pes into tretee  
Betwen Mynös and Egeüs  
Thei felle, and ben acorded thus ; 5260  
That king Mynos fro yer to yeere  
Receive schal, as thou schalt here,  
Out of Athenys for truage  
Of men that were of myhti Age  
Persones nyne, of whiche he schal  
His wille don in special  
For vengance of his Sones deth.  
Non other grace ther ne geth,  
Bot forto take the juisse ; P. ii. 304  
And that was don in such a wise, 5270  
Which stod upon a wonder cas.  
For thilke time so it was,  
Wherof that men yit rede and singe,  
King Mynos hadde in his kepinge  
A cruel Monstre, as seith the geste :  
For he was half man and half beste,  
And Minotaurus he was hote,  
Which was begete in a riote  
Upon Pasiphe, his oghne wif,  
Whil he was oute upon the strif 5280  
Of thilke grete Siege at Troie.  
Bot sche, which lost hath alle joie,  
Whan that sche syh this Monstre bore,  
Bad men ordeigne anon therfore :  
And fell that ilke time thus,  
Ther was a Clerk, on Dedalus,  
Which hadde ben of hire assent

5252 cite H<sub>1</sub>. . . B<sub>2</sub>, T 5277 And] Of B 5281 of Troie  
XC, S . . . Δ, W 5282 lost hath] lost(e) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> hath lost W

Of that hir world was so miswent ;  
 And he made of his oghne wit,  
 Wherof the remembrance is yit, 5290  
 For Minotaure such an hous,  
 Which was so strange and merveilous,  
 That what man that withinne wente,  
 Ther was so many a sondri wente,  
 That he ne scholde noght come oute,  
 But gon amased al aboute.  
 And in this hous to loke and warde  
 Was Minotaurus put in warde,  
 That what lif that therinne cam, P. ii. 305  
 Or man or beste, he overcam 5300  
 And slow, and fedde him therupon ;  
 And in this wise many on  
 Out of Athenys for truage  
 Devoured weren in that rage.  
 For every yeer thei schope hem so,  
 Thei of Athenys, er thei go  
 Toward that ilke wofull chance,  
 As it was set in ordinance,  
 Upon fortune here lot thei caste ;  
 Til that Theseüs ate laste, 5310  
 Which was the kinges Sone there,  
 Amonges othre that ther were  
 In thilke yeer, as it befell,  
 The lot upon his chance fell.  
 He was a worthi kniht withalle ;  
 And whan he sih this chance falle,  
 He ferde as thogh he tok non hiede,  
 Bot al that evere he mihte spiede,  
 With him and with his felaschipe  
 Forth into Crete he goth be Schipe ; 5320  
 Wher that the king Mynos he soghte,  
 And profreth all that he him oghte  
 Upon the point of here acord.

5288 world] lord BT      5299 therinne] euer inne H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 5302 many AC, B    manye (manie) S, F    monie J    5308 As] And  
 X . . . B<sub>2</sub>      5316 this] his L, BT      5321 the king] to king  
 E . . . B<sub>2</sub>    kynge (*om.* the) X



[TALE OF THESEUS  
AND ARIADNE.]

This sterne king, this cruel lord  
Tok every day on of the Nyne,  
And put him to the discipline  
Of Minotaure, to be devoured ;  
Bot Theseüs was so favoured,  
That he was kept til ate laste. P. ii. 306  
And in the meene while he caste 5330  
What thing him were best to do :  
And fell that Adriagne tho,  
Which was the dowhter of Mynos,  
And hadde herd the worthi los  
Of Theseüs and of his myht,  
And syh he was a lusti kniht,  
Hire hole herte on him sche leide,  
And he also of love hir preide,  
So ferforth that thei were al on.  
And sche ordeigneth thanne anon 5340  
In what manere he scholde him save,  
And schop so that sche dede him have  
A clue of thred, of which withinne  
Ferst ate dore he schal beginne  
With him to take that on ende,  
That whan he wolde ayeinward wende,  
He mihte go the same weie.  
And over this, so as I seie,  
Of pich sche tok him a pelote,  
The which he scholde into the throte 5350  
Of Minotaure caste rihte :  
Such wepne also for him sche dighte,  
That he be reson mai noght faile  
To make an ende of his bataile ;  
For sche him tawhte in sondri wise,  
Til he was knowe of thilke emprise,  
Hou he this beste schulde quelle.  
And thus, schort tale forto telle,  
So as this Maide him hadde tawht, P. ii. 307

5326 put AJ, S, F putte C, BT 5341 sche schold B, W sche  
wolde T 5346 ayeinward] ayein H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 5349 tok (took)  
AJC, SB toke F 5357 Hou he] How þat he AH<sub>1</sub>RCLB<sub>2</sub> How  
þat M 5359 þe maide AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>

Theseus with this Monstre fawht,  
 Smot of his hed, the which he nam,  
 And be the thred, so as he cam,  
 He goth ayein, til he were oute.  
 Tho was gret wonder al aboute :  
 Mynos the tribut hath relessed,  
 And so was al the werre cessed  
 Betwen Athene and hem of Crete.

5360 [TALE OF THESEUS  
 AND ARIADNE.]

Bot now to speke of thilke suete,  
 Whos beaute was withoute wane,  
 This faire Maiden Adriane,  
 Whan that sche saw Theseus sound,  
 Was nevere yit upon the ground  
 A gladder wyht than sche was tho.  
 Theseus duelte a dai or tuo  
 Wher that Mynos gret chiere him dede :  
 Theseus in a prive stede  
 Hath with this Maiden spoke and rouned,  
 That sche to him was abandouned  
 In al that evere that sche couthe,  
 So that of thilke lusty youthe  
 Al prively betwen hem tweie  
 The ferste flour he tok aweie.  
 For he so faire tho behihte  
 That evere, whil he live mihte,  
 He scholde hire take for his wif,  
 And as his oghne hertes lif  
 He scholde hire love and trouthe bere ;  
 And sche, which mihte noght forbere,  
 So sore loveth him ayein,  
 That what as evere he wolde sein  
 With al hire herte sche believeth.  
 And thus his pourpos he achieveth,  
 So that assured of his trouthe  
 With him sche wente, and that was routhe.

5370

5380

P. ii. 308

5390

Fedra hire yonger Soster eke,  
 A lusti Maide, a sobre, a meke,  
 Fulfild of alle curtesie,

5364 So was B gret om. AM wonder AC, BT wondre  
 J, S, F 5372 his ground S . . . A 5387 wold(e) BT

[TALE OF THESEUS  
AND ARIADNE.]

For Sosterhode and compainie  
Of love, which was hem betuene,  
To sen hire Soster mad a queene, 5400  
Hire fader lefte and forth sche wente  
With him, which al his ferste entente  
Foryat withinne a litel throwe,  
So that it was al overthrowe,  
Whan sche best wende it scholde stonde.  
The Schip was blowe fro the londe,  
Wherin that thei seilende were ;  
This Adriagne hath mochel fere  
Of that the wynd so loude bleu,  
As sche which of the See ne kneu, 5410  
And preide forto reste a whyle.  
And so fell that upon an yle,  
Which Chyo hihte, thei ben drive,  
Where he to hire his leve hath yive  
That sche schal londe and take hire reste.  
Bot that was nothing for the beste :  
For whan sche was to londe broght,  
Sche, which that time thoghte noght  
Bot alle trouthe, and tok no kepe, P. ii. 309  
Hath leid hire softe forto slepe, 5420  
As sche which longe hath ben forwacched ;  
Bot certes sche was evele macched  
And fer from alle loves kinde ;  
For more than the beste unkinde  
Theseüs, which no trouthe kepte,  
Whil that this yonge ladi slepte,  
Fulfilde of his unkindeschipe  
Hath al foryete the goodschipe  
Which Adriane him hadde do,  
And bad unto the Schipmen tho 5430  
Hale up the seil and noght abyde,  
And forth he goth the same tyde  
Toward Athene, and hire alonde  
He lefte, which lay nyh the stronde

5411 f. And so fell þat vpon an ile  
Thei were wind driue wiþinne a while H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
(driuen in a while L) 5427 his] alle B 5430 schipman H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, W

[TALE OF THESEUS  
AND ARIADNE.]

Slepende, til that sche awok.  
 Bot whan that sche cast up hire lok  
 Toward the stronde and sih no wyht,  
 Hire herte was so sore aflyht,  
 That sche ne wiste what to thinke,  
 Bot drouh hire to the water brinke, 5440  
 Wher sche behield the See at large.  
 Sche sih no Schip, sche sih no barge  
 Als ferforth as sche mihte kenne :  
 'Ha lord,' sche seide, 'which a Senne,  
 As al the world schal after hiere,  
 Upon this woful womman hiere  
 This worthi kniht hath don and wroght!  
 I wende I hadde his love boght,  
 And so deserved ate nede, P. ii. 310  
 Whan that he stod upon his drede, 5450  
 And ek the love he me behihte.  
 It is gret wonder hou he mihte  
 Towardes me nou ben unkinde,  
 And so to lete out of his mynde  
 Thing which he seide his oghne mouth.  
 Bot after this whan it is couth  
 And drawe into the worldes fame,  
 It schal ben hindringe of his name :  
 For wel he wot and so wot I,  
 He yaf his trouthe bodily, 5460  
 That he myn honour scholde kepe.'  
 And with that word sche gan to wepe,  
 And sorweth more than ynouh :  
 Hire faire tresces sche todrouh,  
 And with herself tok such a strif,  
 That sche between the deth and lif  
 Swounende lay fulofte among.  
 And al was this on him along,  
 Which was to love unkinde so,  
 Wherof the wrong schal everemo 5470

5438 afriht (a fright &c.) A . . . B<sub>2</sub> (*except* E), W 5449 it at  
 nede H<sub>1</sub>XRCLB<sub>2</sub> 5456 is] was H<sub>1</sub>E . . . B<sub>2</sub> 5457 into] to  
 S . . . Δ 5464 tresces AC tresses BT trescess J, S, F 5465  
 wif hir selue (self) took a strif H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> wif herself sche took such  
 a s. B 5466 between(c) deþ H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 5467 lay] weepe (wep) BT

[TALE OF THESEUS  
AND ARIADNE.]

Stonde in Cronique of remembrance.  
And ek it asketh a vengeance  
To ben unkinde in loves cas,  
So as Theseüs thanne was,  
Al thogh he were a noble kniht ;  
For he the lawe of loves riht  
Forfeted hath in alle weie,  
That Adriagne he putte aweie,  
Which was a gret unkinde dede :  
And after this, so as I rede,  
Fedra, the which hir Soster is,  
He tok in stede of hire, and this  
Fel afterward to mochel teene.  
For thilke vice of which I meene,  
Unkindeschipe, where it falleth,  
The trouthe of mannes herte it palleth,  
That he can no good dede aquite :  
So mai he stonde of no merite  
Towardes god, and ek also  
Men clepen him the worldes fo ;  
For he nomore than the fend  
Unto non other man is frend,  
Bot al toward himself al one:  
Forthi, mi Sone, in thi persone  
This vice above alle othre fle.

P. ii. 311

5480

5490

Mi fader, as ye techen me,  
I thenke don in this matiere.  
Bot over this nou wolde I hiere,  
Wherof I schal me schryve more.

Mi goode Sone, and for thi lore,  
After the reule of coveitise  
I schal the proprete devise  
Of every vice by and by.  
Nou herkne and be wel ware therby.

5500

[RAVINE.]

viii. *Viribus ex clara res tollit luce Rapina,  
Floris et inuita virgine mella capit.*

In the lignage of Avarice,  
Mi Sone, yit ther is a vice,

Hic tractat super  
illa specie cupida que

5480 after pat S . . . Δ

5500 as for BT

His rihte name it is Ravine,  
 Which hath a route of his covine.  
 Ravine among the maistres duelleth,  
 And with his servantz, as men telleth,  
 Extorcion is nou withholde :  
 Ravine of othre mennes folde  
 Makth his larder and paieth noght ;  
 For wher as evere it mai be soght,  
 In his hous ther schal nothing lacke,  
 And that fulofte abyth the packe  
 Of povere men that duelle aboute.  
 Thus stant the comun poeple in doute,  
 Which can do non amendement ;  
 For whanne him faileth paiement,  
 Ravine makth non other skile,  
 Bot takth be strengthe what he wile.

So ben ther in the same wise  
 Lovers, as I thee schal devise,  
 That whan noght elles mai availe,  
 Anon with strengthe thei assaile  
 And gete of love the sesine,  
 Whan thei se time, be Ravine.

Forthi, mi Sone, schrif thee hier,  
 If thou hast ben a Raviner  
 Of love.

Certes, fader, no :  
 For I mi ladi love so,  
 That thogh I were as was Pompeie,  
 That al the world me wolde obeie,  
 Or elles such as Alisandre,  
 I wolde noght do such a sklaundre ;  
 It is no good man, which so doth.

In good feith, Sone, thou seist soth :  
 For he that wole of pourveance  
 Be such a weie his luste avance,

P ii. 312 [RAVINE.]

5510 Rapina nuncupatur,  
 cuius mater extorcio  
 ipsam ad deseruien-  
 dum magnatum curiis  
 specialius commen-  
 davit.

5520

Confessor

5530

Aman.

P. II. 313

Confessor.

5540

5507 it om. AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> (except E) 5510 servant H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 5520 þei failen H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> he faileth W 5522 what] al þat B  
 5524 thee schal schal M . . . B<sub>2</sub> schal þe Δ, W 5527 schine BT  
 5532 ladi love] loue desire H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 5533 That] for BT  
 was om. H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 5539 wolde H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>

• •

H

[RAVINE.]

Amans.

Confessor

[TALE OF TEREUS.]

Hic ponit exemplum  
contra istos in amoris  
causa raptos. Et  
narrat qualiter Pan-  
dion Rex Athenarum  
duas filias, videlicet  
Progne et Philome-  
nam, habuit. Pro-  
gne autem Tereo Regi  
Tracie desponsata,  
contigit quod cum Te-  
reus ad instantiam  
uxoris sue Philome-  
nam de Athenis in  
Traciam sororie visi-  
tationis causa secum  
quadam vice perdu-  
ceret in concupiscen-  
ciam Philomene tanta  
seueritate in itinere  
dilapsus est, quod ipse  
non solum sue violen-  
cia rapine virginitatem  
eius oppressit, set et  
ipsius linguam, ne fac-  
tum delegeret, forpice  
mutauit. Vnde in  
perpetue memorie  
Cronicam tanti rapto-  
ris austeritatem miro  
ordine diu postea vin-  
dicarunt.

He schal it after sore abie,  
Bot if these olde ensamples lie.

Nou, goode fader, tell me on,  
So as ye cunne manyon,  
Touchende of love in this matiere.

Nou list, mi Sone, and thou schalt hiere,  
So as it hath befaller er this,  
In loves cause hou that it is  
A man to take be Ravine  
The preie which is femeline.

5550

Ther was a real noble king,  
And riche of alle worldes thing,  
Which of his propre enheritance  
Athenes hadde in governance,  
And who so thenke therupon,  
His name was king Pandion.  
Tuo douhtres hadde he be his wif,  
The whiche he lovede as his lif;  
The ferste douhter Progne hihte,  
And the secounde, as sche wel mihte,  
Was cleped faire Philomene,  
To whom fell after mochel tene.

5560

The fader of his pourveance  
His doughter Progne wolde avance,  
And yaf hire unto mariage  
A worthi king of hih lignage,  
A noble kniht eke of his hond,  
So was he kid in every lond,  
Of Trace he hihte Tereus;  
The clerk Ovide telleth thus.

P. ii. 314

This Tereus his wif hom ladde,  
A lusti lif with hire he hadde;  
Til it befell upon a tyde,  
This Progne, as sche lay him besyde,  
Bethoughte hir hou it mihte be  
That sche hir Soster myhte se,

5570

5546 lust AMCL listne A 5557 margin duas filias om. B  
5559 margin Tereo A . . . Ba 5560 wel om. H.E . . . B 5561  
margin cum om. A . . . Ba 5563 margin sororis A . . . Ba, B, W

## LIBER QUINTUS

99

[TALE OF TEREUS.]

And to hir lord hir will sche seide,  
 With goodly wordes and him preide  
 That sche to hire mihte go:  
 And if it liked him noght so, 5580  
 That thanne he wolde himselfe wende,  
 Or elles be som other sende,  
 Which mihte hire diere Soster griete,  
 And schape hou that thei mihten miete  
 Hir lord anon to that he herde  
 Yaf his acord, and thus ansuerde:  
 'I wole,' he seide, 'for thi sake  
 The weie after thi Soster take  
 Miself, and bringe hire, if I may.'  
 And sche with that, there as he lay, 5590  
 Began him in hire armes clippe,  
 And kist him with hir softe lippe,  
 And seide, 'Sire, grant mercy.'  
 And he sone after was redy,  
 And tok his leve forto go;  
 In sori time dede he so.

This Tereus goth forth to Schipe P. ii. 315  
 With him and with his felaschipe;  
 Be See the rihte cours he nam,  
 'Into the contre til he cam, 5600  
 Wher Philomene was duellinge,  
 And of hir Soster the tidinge  
 He tolde, and tho thei weren glade,  
 And mochel joie of him thei made.  
 The fader and the moder bothe  
 To leve here douhter weren lothe,  
 Bot if thei weren in presence;  
 And natheles at reverence  
 Of him, that wolde himself travaile,  
 Thei wolden noght he scholde faile 5610  
 Of that he preide, and yive hire leve:  
 And sche, that wolde noght beleve,

5590 sche lay XGBz, S . . . A, W 5592 kist SB, F kyste  
 kiste AJ 5597 to] by (be) A . . . Bz 5600 Vnto B  
 5610 noght om. AM 5611 Of þat þey preyde T And þat þei  
 preyde B



[TALE OF TEREÜS.]

In alle haste made hire yare  
 Toward hir Soster forto fare,  
 With Tereüs and forth sche wente.  
 And he with al his hole entente,  
 Whan sche was fro hir frendes go,  
 Assoteth of hire love so,  
 His yhe myhte he noght withholde,  
 That he ne moste on hir beholde; 5620  
 And with the sihte he gan desire,  
 And sette his oghne herte on fyre;  
 And fyr, whan it to tow aprocheth,  
 To him anon the strengthe acrocheth,  
 Til with his hete it be devoured,  
 The tow ne mai noght be socoured.  
 And so that tirant raviner, P. ii. 316  
 Whan that sche was in his pouer,  
 And he therto sawh time and place,  
 As he that lost hath alle grace, 5630  
 Foryat he was a wedded man,  
 And in a rage on hire he ran,  
 Riht as a wolf which takth his preie.  
 And sche began to crie and preie,  
 'O fader, o mi moder diere,  
 Nou help!' Bot thei ne mihte it hiere,  
 And sche was of to litel myht  
 Defense ayein so ruide a knyht  
 To make, whanne he was so wod  
 That he no reson understod, 5640  
 Bot hield hire under in such wise,  
 That sche ne myhte noght arise,  
 Bot lay oppressed and desesed,  
 As if a goshauk hadde sesed  
 A brid, which dorste noght for fere  
 Remue: and thus this tirant there  
 Beraft hire such thing as men sein  
 Mai neveremor be yolde ayein,  
 And that was the virginite:  
 Of such Ravine it was pite. 5650

5621 he om. BT      5622 a fyre XC, B      5627 that] þe BT  
 5633 which] that H<sub>1</sub>, BT om. M, W      5646 þi A this] þe M

Bot whan sche to hirsclven com,  
 And of hir meschief hiede nom,  
 And knew hou that sche was no maide,  
 With wofull herte thus sche saide:  
 'O thou of alle men the worste,  
 Wher was ther evere man that dorste  
 Do such a dede as thou hast do? P. ii. 317  
 That dai schal falle, I hope so,  
 That I schal telle out al mi fille,  
 And with mi speche I schal fulfille 5660  
 The wyde world in brede and lengthe.  
 That thou hast do to me be strengthe,  
 If I among the poeple duelle,  
 Unto the poeple I schal it telle;  
 And if I be withinne wall  
 Of Stones closed, thanne I schal  
 Unto the Stones clepe and crie,  
 And tellen hem thi felonie;  
 And if I to the wodes wende,  
 Ther schal I tellen tale and ende, 5670  
 And crie it to the briddes oute,  
 That thei schul hiere it al aboute.  
 For I so loude it schal reherce,  
 That my vois schal the hevene perce,  
 That it schal sounne in goddes Ere.  
 Ha, false man, where is thi fere?  
 O mor cruel than eny beste,  
 Hou hast thou holden thi behest  
 Which thou unto my Soster madest?  
 O thou, which alle love ungladest, 5680  
 And art ensample of alle untrewes,  
 Nou wolde god mi Soster knewe,  
 Of thin untrouthe, hou that it stod!  
 And he than as a Lyon wod  
 With hise unhappi handes stronge

5667 þo stones EC      5670 tale) al BT  
 5671 f      And crie it to briddes al aboute  
                  How þou hast do to me purghoute Hi . . . B;  
 (to þe briddes R)      5678 How schalt AM . . . B;      Eucl has W  
 5684 a om. A

[TALE OF TEREUS.]

Hire cauhte be the tresses longe,  
 With whiche he bond ther bothe hire armes, P. ii. 318  
 That was a fieble dede of armes,  
 And to the grounde anon hire caste,  
 And out he clippeth also faste 5690  
 Hire tunge with a peire scheres.  
 So what with blod and what with teres  
 Out of hire yhe and of hir mouth,  
 He made hire faire face uncouth:  
 Sche lay swounende unto the deth,  
 Ther was unethes eny breth;  
 Bot yit whan he hire tunge refte,  
 A litel part therof belefte,  
 Bot sche with al no word mai soune,  
 Bot chitre and as a brid jargoune. 5700  
 And natheles that wode hound  
 Hir bodi hent up fro the ground,  
 And sente hir there as be his wille  
 Sche scholde abyde in prison stille  
 For everemo: bot nou tak hiede  
 What after fell of this misdede.  
 Whanne al this meschief was befalle,  
 This Tereüs, that foule him falle,  
 Unto his contre hom he tyh;  
 And whan he com his paleis nyh, 5710  
 His wif al redi there him kepte.  
 Whan he hir sih, anon he wepte,  
 And that he dede for deceite,  
 For sche began to axe him streite,  
 'Wher is mi Soster?' And he seide  
 That sche was ded; and Progne abreide,  
 As sche that was a wofull wif, P. ii. 319  
 And stod betuen hire deth and lif,  
 Of that sche herde such tidinge:  
 Bot for sche sih hire lord wepinge, 5720  
 She wende noght bot alle trouthe,  
 And hadde wel the more routhe.  
 The Perles weren tho forsake  
 To hire, and blake clothes take;

5719 Of] And BT

As sche that was gentil and kinde,  
 In worschipe of hir Sostres mynde  
 Sche made a riche enterement,  
 For sche fond non amendement  
 To syghen or to sobbe more :  
 So was ther guile under the gore.

5730

Nou leve we this king and queene,  
 And torne ayein to Philomene,  
 As I began to tellen erst.  
 Whan sche cam into prison ferst,  
 It thoghte a kinges douhter strange  
 To maken so soudein a change  
 Fro welthe unto so grete a wo ;  
 And sche began to thenke tho,  
 Thogh sche be mouthe nothing preide,  
 Withinne hir herte thus sche seide :

5740

'O thou, almyhty Jupiter,  
 That hihe sist and lokest fer,  
 Thou soffrest many a wrong doinge,  
 And yit it is noght thi willinge.  
 To thee ther mai nothing ben hid,  
 Thou wost hou it is me betid :

I wolde I hadde noght be bore,

P. ii. 320

For thanne I hadde noght forlore

Mi speche and mi virginite.

Bot, goode lord, al is in thee,

5750

Whan thou therof wolt do vengeance

And schape mi deliverance.'

And evere among this ladi wepte,

And thoghte that sche nevere kepte

To ben a worldes womman more,

And that sche wissbeth everemore.

Bot ofte unto hir Soster diere

Hire herte spekth in this manere,

And seide, 'Ha, Soster, if ye knewe

Of myn astat, ye wolde rewe,

5760

I trowe, and my deliverance

5737 wele vnto E, B welpe into MHuC grete A, S, F gret  
 JC, B 5740 and þus C 5743 wrongful þing X . . . Bz  
 wonderfull thȳng Hi 5748 hadde I S . . . A

[TALE OF TEREUS.]

Ye wolde schape, and do vengance  
 On him that is so fals a man :  
 And natheles, so as I can,  
 I wol you sende som tokninge,  
 Wherof ye schul have knowlechinge  
 Of thing I wot, that schal you lothe,  
 The which you toucheth and me bothe.  
 And tho withinne a whyle als tyt  
 Sche waf a cloth of Selk al whyt  
 With letres and ymagerie,  
 In which was al the felonie,  
 Which Tereüs to hire hath do ;  
 And lappede it togedre tho  
 And sette hir signet therupon  
 And sende it unto Progne anon.  
 The messenger which forth it bar,  
 What it amonteth is noght war ;  
 And natheles to Progne he goth  
 And prively takth hire the cloth,  
 And wente ayein riht as he eam,  
 The court of him non biede nam.

5770

P. ii. 321

5780

Whan Progne of Philomene herde,  
 Sche wolde knowe hou that it ferde,  
 And opneth that the man hath broght,  
 And wot therby what hath be wroght  
 And what meschief ther is befalle.  
 In swoune tho sche gan doun falle,  
 And efte aros and gan to stonde,  
 And eft sche takth the cloth on honde,  
 Behield the lettres and thymages ;  
 Bot ate laste, 'Of suche outrages,'  
 Sche seith, 'wepinge is noght the bote :'  
 And swerth, if that sche live mote,  
 It schal be venged otherwise.  
 And with that sche gan hire advise  
 Hou ferst sche mihte unto hire winne  
 Hir Soster, that noman withinne,  
 Bot only thei that were suore,

5790

5765 wold(e) H<sub>1</sub>ECB<sub>2</sub>, W  
 5773 hadde (had) do H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>

5769 tyt (tit) AC, SB tyd J, F  
 5774 lapped B

It scholde knowe, and schop therfore 5800 [TALE OF TEREUS.]  
 That Tereüs nothing it wiste ;  
 And yit riht as hirselves liste,  
 Hir Soster was delivered sone  
 Out of prison, and be the mone  
 To Progne sche was broght be nyhte.

Whan ech of other hadde a sihte,  
 In chambre, ther thei were al one, P. ii. 322

Thei maden many a pitous mone ;  
 Bot Progne most of sorwe made,  
 Which sihe hir Soster pale and fade 5810

And specheles and deshonoured,  
 Of that sche hadde be defloured ;  
 And ek upon hir lord sche thoghte,  
 Of that he so untreuly wroghte  
 And hadde his espousaile broke.

Sche makth a vou it schal be wroke,  
 And with that word sche kneleth doun  
 Wepinge in gret devocioun :

Unto Cupide and to Venus  
 Sche preide, and seide thanne thus : 5820

'O ye, to whom nothing asterte  
 Of love mai, for every herte  
 Ye knowe, as ye that ben above  
 The god and the goddesse of love ;  
 Ye witen wel that evere yit

With al mi will and al my wit,  
 Sith ferst ye schopen me to wedde,  
 That I lay with mi lord abedde,

I have be trewe in mi degre,  
 And evere thoghte forto be, 5830

And nevere love in other place,  
 Bot al only the king of Trace,  
 Which is mi lord and I his wif.

Bot nou allas this wofull strif!  
 That I him thus ayeinward finde

The most untrewe and most unkinde

5802 riht *om.* H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 5810 sihe AJ, S, F sih C, B  
 avow AC, B

5807 ther] wher H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 5816 a vov (a vou) J, S, F

[TATE OF TEREUS.]

That evere in ladi armes lay. P. ii. 323

And wel I wot that he ne may  
 Amende his wrong, it is so gret ;  
 For he to lytel of me let, 5840  
 Whan he myn oughne Soster tok,  
 And me that am his wif forsok.'

Lo, thus to Venus and Cupide  
 Sche preide, and furthermor sche cride  
 Unto Appollo the hiheste,  
 And seide, 'O myghti god of reste,  
 Thou do vengeance of this debat.  
 Mi Soster and al hire astat  
 Thou wost, and hou sche hath forlore  
 Hir maidenhod, and I therfore 5850  
 In al the world schal bere a blame  
 Of that mi Soster hath a schame,  
 That Tereüs to hire I sente :  
 And wel thou wost that myn entente  
 Was al for worschipe and for goode.  
 O lord, that yfst the lives fode  
 To every wyht, I prei thee hiere  
 Thes wofull Sostres that ben hiere,  
 And let ous noght to the ben lothe ;  
 We ben thin oghne wommen bothe.' 5860

Thus pleigneth Progne and axeth wreche,  
 And thogh hire Soster lacke speche,  
 To him that alle thinges wot  
 Hire sorwe is noght the lasse hot :  
 Bot he that thanne had herd hem tuo,  
 Him oughte have sorwed everemo  
 For sorwe which was hem betuene. P. ii. 324  
 With signes pleigneth Philomene,  
 And Progne seith, 'It schal be wreke,  
 That al the world therof schal speke.' 5870  
 And Progne tho seknesse feigneth,  
 Wherof unto hir lord sche pleigneth,  
 And preith sche moste hire chambres kepe,  
 And as hir liketh wake and slepe.

5837 ladiis (ladyes) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>      5859 noght] neuer H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 5873 chambre H<sub>1</sub> XELB<sub>2</sub>, AdBTΔ, W

And he hire granteth to be so ;  
 And thus togedre ben thei tuo,  
 That wolde him bot a litel good.  
 Nou herk hierafter hou it stod  
 Of wofull auntres that befelle :  
 Thes Sostres, that ben bothe felle,— 5880  
 And that was noght on hem along,  
 Bot onliche on the grete wrong  
 Which Tereus hem hadde do,—  
 Thei schopen forto venge hem tho.

This Tereüs be Progne his wif  
 A Sone-hath, which as his lif  
 He loveth, and Ithus he hihte :  
 His moder wiste wel sche mihte  
 Do Tereüs no more grief  
 Than sle this child, which was so lief. 5890  
 Thus sche, that was, as who seith, mad  
 Of wo, which hath hir overlad,  
 Withoute insihte of moderhede  
 Foryat pite and loste drede,  
 And in hir chambre prively  
 This child withouten noise or cry  
 Sche slou, and hieu him al to pieces: P. ii. 325  
 And after with diverse spieces  
 The fleissh, whan it was so toheewe,  
 Sche takth, and makth therof a sewe, 5900  
 With which the fader at his mete  
 Was served, til he hadde him ete ;  
 That he ne wiste hou that it stod,  
 Bot thus his oughne fleissh and blod  
 Himself devoureth ayein kinde,  
 As he that was tofore unkinde.  
 And thanne, er that he were arise,  
 For that he scholde ben agrise,  
 To schewen him the child was ded,  
 This Philomene tok the hed 5910  
 Betwen tuo disshes, and al wrothe

5878 herkne (herken) LB<sub>2</sub>, BT<sub>Δ</sub>, W 5880 The AJMH<sub>1</sub>XRLE<sub>2</sub>  
 The EC 5889 To . . . grieue H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 5890 jat was so  
 here H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>



[TALE OF TEREUS.]

Tho comen forth the Sostres bothe,  
 And setten it upon the bord.  
 And Progne tho began the word,  
 And seide, 'O werste of alle wicke,  
 Of conscience whom no pricke  
 Mai stere, lo, what thou hast do!  
 Lo, hier ben nou we Sostres tuo;  
 O Raviner, lo hier thi preie,  
 With whom so falsliche on the weie 5920  
 Thou hast thi tirannye wrought.  
 Lo, nou it is somdel aboght,  
 And bet it schal, for of thi dede  
 The world schal evere singe and rede  
 In remembrance of thi defame:  
 For thou to love hast do such schame,  
 That it schal nevere be foryete.' P. ii. 326  
 With that he sterte up fro the mete,  
 And schof the bord unto the flor,  
 And cauhte a swerd anon and suor 5930  
 That thei scholde of his handes dye.  
 And thei unto the goddes crie  
 Begunne with so loude a stevene,  
 That thei were herd unto the hevene;  
 And in a twinclinge of an yhe  
 The goddes, that the meschief syhe,  
 Here formes changen alle thre.  
 Echon of hem in his degre  
 Was torned into briddes kinde;  
 Diverseliche, as men mai finde, 5940  
 After thastat that thei were inne,  
 Here formes were set atwinne.  
 And as it telleth in the tale,  
 The ferst into a nyhtingale  
 Was schape, and that was Philomene,  
 Which in the wynter is noght sene,  
 For thanne ben the leves falle

5918 hier ben nou we] here be we now J nowe we her be W  
 here ben we M hier (here) ben now (om. we) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 5925 re-  
 menbrance F 5929 in to H<sub>1</sub> ECLB<sub>2</sub>, BTΔ, H<sub>2</sub> 5936 Al sodeinly  
 þat men it syhe H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 5944 þe nightingale XECLB<sub>2</sub>

[TALE OF TFEUS.]

And naked ben the buisshes alle.  
 For after that sche was a brid,  
 Hir will was evere to ben hid, 5950  
 And forto duelle in prive place,  
 That noman scholde sen hir face  
 For schame, which mai noght be lassed,  
 Of thing that was tofore passed,  
 Whan that sche loste hir maidenhiede:  
 For evere upon hir wommanhiede,  
 Thogh that the goddes wolde hire change, P. ii. 327  
 Sche thenkth, and is the more strange,  
 And halt hir clos the wyntres day.  
 Bot whan the wynter goth away, 5960  
 And that Nature the goddessse  
 Wole of hir oughne fre largesse  
 With herbes and with floures bothe  
 The feldes and the medwes clothe,  
 And ek the wodes and the greves  
 Ben heled al with grene leves,  
 So that a brid hire hyde mai,  
 Betwen Averil and March and Maii,  
 Sche that the wynter hield hir clos,  
 For pure schame and noght aros, 5970  
 Whan that sche seth the bowes thikke,  
 And that ther is no bare sticke,  
 Bot al is hid with leves grene,  
 To wode comth this Philomene  
 And makth hir ferste yeres flyht;  
 Wher as sche singeth day and nyht,  
 And in hir song al openly  
 Sche makth hir pleignte and seith, 'O why,  
 O why ne were I yit a maide?'  
 For so these olde wise saide, 5980  
 Which understoden what sche mente,  
 Hire notes ben of such entente.

5958 Sche thenkth] Sche was H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 5962 larchesse F  
 5966 al] and AM . . . L om. B<sub>2</sub> 5971 sib (sigh &c.)  
 F. AdBT, WH<sub>2</sub> saw Δ (sch S) 5974 þe Philomene H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 5977 openly] pruely H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 5979 O why] Why BT 5981  
 Which AJ, S, F Whiche B

[TALE OF TEREUS.]

And ek thei seide hou in hir song  
 Sche makth gret joie and merthe among,  
 And seith, 'Ha, nou I am a brid,  
 Ha, nou mi face mai ben hid:  
 'Thogh I have lost mi Maidenhede, P. ii. 328  
 Schal noman se my chekes rede.'  
 Thus medleth sche with joie wo  
 And with hir sorwe merthe also, 5990  
 So that of loves maladie  
 Sche makth diverse melodie,  
 And seith love is a wofull blisse,  
 A wisdom which can noman wisse,  
 A lusti fievere, a wounde softe:  
 This note sche reherceth ofte  
 To hem whiche understonde hir tale.  
 Nou have I of this nyhtingale,  
 Which erst was cleped Philomene,  
 Told al that evere I wolde mene, 6000  
 Bothe of hir forme and of hir note,  
 Wherof men mai the storie note.  
 And of hir Sister Progne I finde,  
 Hou sche was torned out of kinde  
 Into a Swalwe swift of winge,  
 Which ek in wynter lith swounynge,  
 Ther as sche mai nothing be sene:  
 Bot whan the world is woxe grene  
 And comen is the Somertide,  
 Than fleth sche forth and ginth to chide, 6010  
 And chitreth out in hir langage  
 What falshod is in mariage,  
 And telleth in a maner speche  
 Of Tereüs the Spousebreche.  
 Sche wol noght in the wodes duelle,  
 For sche wolde openliche telle;  
 And ek for that sche was a spouse, P. ii. 329  
 Among the folk sche comth to house,  
 To do thes wyves understonde

6008 world] woode B word T 6011 chatrep (chatereth)  
 AMH<sub>1</sub> chater (chateren) YXG . . . B<sub>1</sub> 6012 falshod A, S, F  
 falshode JC, B 6016 wol C, B 6019 to vnderstonde H<sub>1</sub>E . . . B<sub>1</sub>

## LIBER QUINTUS

111

The falshod of hire housebonde,  
 That thei of hem be war also,  
 For ther ben manye untrewes of the.  
 Thus ben the Sostres briddes bothe,  
 And ben toward the men so lothe,  
 That thei ne wole of pure schame  
 Unto no mannes hand be tame;  
 For evere it duelleth in here mynde  
 Of that thei founde a man unkinde,  
 And that was false Tereus.

6020 [TALE OF TEREUS.]

If such on be amanges ous  
 I not, bot his condicion  
 Men sein in every region  
 Withinne toune and ek withoute  
 Nou regneth comunliche aboute.  
 And natheles in remembrance  
 I wol declare what vengeance  
 The goddes hadden him ordeined,  
 Of that the Sostres hadden pleigned:  
 For anon after he was changed  
 And from his oghne kinde stranged,  
 A lappewincke mad he was,  
 And thus he hoppeth on the gras,  
 And on his hed ther stant upriht  
 A creste in tokne he was a kniht;  
 And yit unto this dai men seith,  
 A lappewincke hath lore his feith  
 And is the brid falseste of alle.

6030

6040

P. ii. 330

Bewar, mi Sone, er thee so falle;  
 For if thou be of such covine,  
 To gete of love be Ravine  
 Thi lust, it mai thee falle thus,  
 As it befell of Tereus.

Confessor.

6050

Mi fader, goddes forebode!

Amans.

6020 falshod A, F falshode J, SB falshede C hire] here (her  
 H: ERL, AdΔ, FH<sub>1</sub> 6026 no om. AM, Ad be X, W 6042  
 in H: E . . . B<sub>2</sub> 6044 he was] of a BT 6046 The l. A . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 AdΔ, WH<sub>1</sub> 6048 Bewar F Be war AJC, SB 6052 to Tereus  
 BT 6053 goddes forebode] may god it forbode X . . . B<sub>2</sub> may  
 god for bede H<sub>1</sub> (goddes forbode AJM, AdT, WH<sub>1</sub>)

[TALE OF TEREUS.]

Me were levere be fortrode  
 With wilde hors and be todrawe,  
 Er I ayein love and his lawe  
 Dede eny thing or loude or stille,  
 Which were noght mi ladi wille.  
 Men sein that every love hath drede;  
 So folweth it that I hire drede, 6060  
 For I hire love, and who so dredeth,  
 To plese his love and serve him nedeth.  
 Thus mai ye knowen be this skile  
 That no Ravine don I wile  
 Ayein hir will be such a weie;  
 Bot while I live, I wol obeie  
 Abidinge on hire courtesie,  
 If eny merci wolde hir plie.  
 Forthi, mi fader, as of this  
 I wot noght I have don amis: 6070  
 Bot furthermore I you beseche,  
 Som other point that ye me teche,  
 And axeth forth, if ther be auht,  
 That I mai be the betre tauht.

[ROBBERY.]

ix. *Viuat ut ex spoliis grandi quamsepe tumultu,  
 Quo graditur populus, latro perurget iter.  
 Sic amor, ex casu poterit quo carpere predam, P. ii. 331  
 Si locus est aptus, cetera nulla timet.*

Hic loquitur super  
 illa Cupiditatis specie  
 quam furtum vocant,  
 cuius Ministri alicuius  
 legis offensam non me-  
 tuentes, tam in amoris  
 causa quam aliter,  
 suam quamsepe con-  
 scienciam offendunt.

Whan Covoitise in povere astat  
 Stant with himself upon debat  
 Thurgh lacke of his misgovernance,  
 That he unto his sustenance  
 Ne can non other weie finde  
 To gete him good, thanne as the blinde, 6080  
 Which seth noght what schal after falle,  
 That ilke vice which men calle  
 Of Robberie, he takth on honde;  
 Wherof be water and be londe  
 Of thing which othre men beswinke

6054 be fortrede (for trede) H<sub>1</sub> XECLB<sub>2</sub> to be trede R 6059  
 lou(er)e AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> 6076 himseluen (himself) in d. H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 6084 water AC, B watre J, S, F

[ROBBERY.]

He get him cloth and mete and drinke.

Him reccheth noght what he beginne,

Thurgh theste so that he mai winne:

Forthi to maken his pourchas

He lith awaitende on the pas, 6090

And what thing that he seth ther passe,

He takth his part, or more or lasse,

If it be worthi to be take.

He can the packes wel ransake,

So prively berth non aboute

His gold, that he ne fint it oute,

Or other juel, what it be;

He takth it as his proprete.

In wodes and in feldes eke

Thus Robberie goth to seke, 6100

Wher as he mai his pourpos finde.

And riht so in the same kinde,

My goode Sone, as thou miht hier, P. ii. 332

To speke of love in the matiere

And make a verrai resemblance,

Riht as a thief makth his chevance

And robbeth mennes good aboute

In wode and field, wher he goth oute,

So be ther of these lovers some,

In wylde stedes wher thei come 6110

And finden there a womman able,

And therto place covenable,

Wuthoute leve, er that thei fare,

Thei take a parte of that chaffare:

Yee, though sche were a Scheperdesse,

Yit wol the lord of wantounesse

Assaie, althogh sche be unmete,

For other mennes good is swete,

Bot therof wot nothing the wif

At hom, which loveth as hir lif 6120

Hir lord, and sitt alday wisshinge

After hir lordes hom comynge:

Bot whan that he comth hom at eve,

6101 pourchas S... A 6103 as] or AMRCL. heere H<sub>1</sub> om. F  
6110 wyldee F wher] per AM 6114 hir(e) chaffare H<sub>1</sub>... B<sub>2</sub> bi ch. M

[ROBBERY.]

Anon he makth his wif beleve,  
 For sche noght elles scholde knowe :  
 He telth hire hou his hunte hath blowe,  
 And hou his houndes have wel runne,  
 And hou ther schon a merye Sunne,  
 And hou his haukes flowen wel ;  
 Bot he wol telle her nevere a diel 6130  
 Hou he to love untrewē was,  
 Of that he robbede in the pas,  
 And tok his lust under the schawe P. ii. 333  
 Ayein love and ayein his lawe.

Confessor.

Which thing, mi Sone, I thee forbede,  
 For it is an ungoodly dede.  
 For who that takth he Robberie  
 His love, he mai noght justefie  
 His cause, and so fulofte sithe  
 For ones that he hath be blithe 6140  
 He schal ben after sory thnes  
 Ensamplē of suche Robberies  
 I finde write, as thou schalt hiere,  
 Acordende unto this matiere.

[NEPTUNE AND  
CORNIX.]

Hic loquitur contra  
 istos in amoris causa  
 predones, qui cum in  
 suamfurtiveconcupis-  
 cenciam aspirant, for-  
 tuna in contrarium  
 operatur. Et narrat  
 quod cum Neptunus  
 quendam virginem  
 nomine Cornicem so-  
 lam iuxta mare deam  
 bulantem opprimere  
 suo furto voluisset,  
 superueniens Pallas  
 ipsam e manibus eius  
 virginitate seruata  
 gracios liberauit.

I rede hou whilom was a Maide,  
 The faireste, as Ovide saide,  
 Which was in hire time tho ;  
 And sche was of the chambre also  
 Of Pallas, which is the goddessse  
 And wif to Marte, of whom prouesse 6150  
 Is yove to these worthi knihtes.  
 For he is of so grete mihtes,  
 That he governeth the bataille ;  
 Withouten him may noght availe  
 The stronge hond, bot he it helpe ;  
 Ther mai no knyht of armes yelpē,  
 Bot he feihtē under his banere.  
 Bot nou to speke of mi matiere,  
 This faire, freisshe, lusti mai,  
 Al one as sche wente on a dai 6160  
 Upon the stronde forto pleie,

## LIBER QUINTUS

115

NEPTUNE AND  
CORNIX.]

Ther cam Neptunus in the weie,  
Which hath the See in governance; P. ii. 334

And in his herte such plesance  
He tok, whan he this Maide sih,  
That al his herte aros on hib,  
For he so sodeinliche unwar  
Behield the beaute that sche bar.

And caste anon withinne his herte  
That sche him schal no weie asterte, 6170

Bot if he take in advantage  
Fro thilke maide som pilage,  
Noght of the broches ne the Ringes,  
Bot of some othre smale thinges

He thoghte parte, er that sche wente;  
And hire in bothe hise armes hente,  
And putte his hond toward the cofre,  
Wher forto robbe he made a profre,  
That lusti tresor forto stele,  
Which passeth othre goodes fele 6180

And cleped is the maidenhede,  
Which is the flour of wommanhede.

This Maiden, which Cornix be name

Was hote, dredende alle schame,  
Sib that sche mihte noght debate,

And wel sche wiste he wolde algate  
Fulfille his lust of Robberie,  
Anon began to wepe and crie,  
And seide, 'O Pallas, noble queene,  
Scheu nou thi myht and let be sene, 6190

To kepe and save myn honour:  
Help, that I lese noght mi flour,  
Which nou under thi keie is loke.' P. ii. 335

That word was noght so sone spoke,

Whan Pallas schop recoverir

After the will and the desir

Of hire, which a Maiden was,

And sodeinliche upon this cas

6162 Neptimus AH, R, BT, Hs 6167 so sod.] al sod Hs . . Bz  
6178 Wherfor(e) to AB, Δ Wherof to Hs Where to BT, W  
6190 and] ad F lete it be AM



[NEPTUNE AND  
CORNE.]

Out of hire wommanisshe kinde  
Into a briddes like I finde 6200  
Sche was transformed forth withal,  
So that Neptunus nothing stal  
Of such thing as he wolde have stole.  
With fetheres blake as eny cole  
Out of hise armes in a throwe  
Sche flih before his yhe a Crowe;  
Which was to hire a more delit,  
To kepe hire maidenhede whit  
Under the wede of fethers blake,  
In Perles whyte than forsake 6210  
That no lif mai restore ayein.  
Bot thus Neptune his herte in vein  
Hath upon Robberie sett;  
The bridd is flowe and he was let,  
The faire Maide him hath escaped,  
Wherof for evere he was bejaped  
And scorned of that he hath lore.

Confessor.

Mi Sone, be thou war therfore  
That thou no maidenhode stele,  
Wherof men sen deseses fele 6220  
Aldai befall in sondri wise;  
So as I schal thee yit devise  
An other tale therupon,  
Which fell be olde daies gon.

[TALE OF CALISTONA.]

Hic ponit exemplum contra istos in causa virginitatis lese predones. Et narrat quod cum Calistona Lichaontis mire pulcritudinis filia suam virginitatem Diane conservandam castissima vouisset, et in Siluamque Tegea dicitur inter alas ibidem Nymphas moraturam se

King Lichaon upon his wif 7. ii. 336  
A dowhter hadde, a goodly lif,  
A clene Maide of worthi fame,  
Calistona whos rihte name  
Was cleped, and of many a lord  
Sche was besoght, bot hire acord 6230  
To love myhte noman winne,  
As sche which hath no lust therinne;  
Bot swor withinne hir herte and saide  
That sche wolde evere ben a Maide.  
Wherof to kepe hireself in pes,

6215 Maide] may H. . . B. him hath] is him S . . . A hath  
him W 6234 wol B

## LIBER QUINTUS

117

With suche as Amadriades  
 Were cleped, wodemaydes, tho,  
 And with the Nimphes ek also  
 Upon the spring of freisshe welles  
 Sche schop to duelle and nagher elles.  
 And thus cam this Calistona  
 Into the wode of Tegea,  
 Wher sche virginite behihte  
 Unto Diane, and therto plihite  
 Her trouthe upon the bowes grene,  
 To kepe hir maidenhode clene.  
 Which afterward upon a day  
 Was priveliche stole away;  
 For Jupiter thurgh his queintise  
 From hire it tok in such a wise,  
 That sodeinliche forth withal  
 Hire wombe aros and sche toswal,  
 So that it mihte noght ben hidd.  
 And therupon it is betidd,  
 Diane, which it herde telle,  
 In prive place unto a welle  
 With Nimphes al a compainie  
 Was come, and in a ragerie  
 Sche seide that sche bathe wolde,  
 And bad that every maide scholde  
 With hire al naked bathe also.  
 And tho began the prive wo,  
 Calistona wax red for schame;  
 Bot thei that knewe noght the game,  
 To whom no such thing was befalle,  
 Anon thei made hem naked alle,  
 As thei that nothing wolden hyde:  
 Bot sche withdrouh hire evere asyde,  
 And natheles into the flod,  
 Wher that Diane hirselve stod,  
 Sche thoughte come unaperceived.  
 Bot therof sche was al deceived;  
 For whan sche cam a litel nyh,

[TALE OF CALISTONA.]

translisset, Iupiter  
 virginis castitatem  
 subtili furto surrip-  
 ens, quendam filium,  
 6240 qui postea Archas  
 nominatus est, ex ea  
 genuit: unde Iuno in  
 Calistonam seuiens  
 eius pulcritudinem in  
 vrse turpissime defor-  
 mitatem subito trans-  
 figuravit.

6250

P. ii. 337

6260

6270

6239 margin quendam] quem B 6256 in to A . . . Ba. W  
 6257 al a] alle AM al þe (alle the) HiE . . . Ba 6267 byde AM

[TALE OF CALISTONA.]

And that Diane hire wombe syh,  
 Sche seide, 'Awey, thou foule beste,  
 For thin astat is noght honeste  
 This chaste water forto touche;  
 For thou hast take such a touche,  
 Which nevere mai ben hol ayein.'  
 And thus goth sche which was forlein 6280  
 With schame, and fro the Nymphes fledde,  
 Til whanne that nature hire spedde,  
 That of a Sone, which Archas  
 Was named, sche delivered was.  
 And tho Juno, which was the wif P. ii. 338  
 Of Jupiter, wroth and hastif,  
 In pourpos forto do vengeance  
 Cam forth upon this ilke chance,  
 And to Calistona sche spak,  
 And sette upon hir many a lak, 6290  
 And seide, 'Ha, nou thou art atake,  
 That thou thi werk myht noght forsake.  
 Ha, thou ungoodlich ypocrite,  
 Hou thou art gretly forto wyte!  
 Bot nou thou schalt ful sore abie  
 That ilke stelthe and micherie,  
 Which thou hast bothe take and do;  
 Wherof thi fader Lichao  
 Schal noght be glad, whan he it wot,  
 Of that his dowhter was so hot, 6300  
 That sche hath broke hire chaste avou  
 Bot I thee schal chastise nou;  
 Thi grete Beaute schal be torned,  
 Thurgh which that thou hast be mistorned,  
 Thi large frount, thin yhen greie,  
 I schal hem change in other weie,  
 And al the feture of thi face  
 In such a wise I schal deface,  
 That every man thee schal forbere.'  
 With that the liknesse of a bere 6310  
 Sche tok and was forschape anon.

6289 he AdBT      6293 vngoodlich JC, SB, F vngoodliche A  
 6296 of micherye B      6302 chastie EC      6304 that om. AM, Ad

Withinne a time and therupon  
 Befell that with a bowe on honde,  
 To hunte and gamen forto fonde,  
 Into that wode goth to pleie P. ii. 339  
 Hir Sone Archas, and in his weie  
 It hapneth that this bere cam.

And whan that sche good hiede nam,  
 Wher that he stod under the bowh,  
 Sche kneu him wel and to him drouh, 6320  
 For thogh sche hadde hire forme lore,  
 The love was noght lost therfore  
 Which kinde hath set under his lawe.  
 Whan sche under the wodesschawe  
 Hire child behield, sche was so glad,  
 That sche with bothe hire armes sprad,  
 As thogh sche were in wommanhiede,  
 Toward him cam, and tok non hiede  
 Of that he bar a bowe bent.

And he with that an Arwe hath hent 6330  
 And gan to teise it in his bowe,  
 As he that can non other knowe,  
 Bot that it was a beste wylde.  
 Bot Jupiter, which wolde schylde  
 The Moder and the Sone also,  
 Ordeineth for hem bothe so,  
 That thei for evere were save.

Bot thus, mi Sone, thou myht have Confessor  
 Ensampl, hou that it is to fle  
 To robbe the virginite 6340  
 Of a yong innocent aweie:

And overthis be other weie,  
 In olde bokes as I rede,  
 Such Robberie is forto drede,  
 And nameliche of thilke good P. ii. 340  
 Which every womman that is good  
 Desireth forto kepe and holde,

6313 in honde X, AdBTΔ 6317 happed E, AdBTΔ happed W  
 6318 he YEC, AdBT 6319 a bough H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, Δ 6324  
 wodesschawe AJ, F woode schawe C, BT 6336 so, tuo E, B  
 too W 6341 a weie F

[TALE OF CALISTONA]

As whilom was be daies olde.  
 For if thou se mi tale wel  
 Of that was tho, thou miht somdiel  
 Of old ensample taken hiede,  
 Hou that the flour of maidenhiede  
 Was thilke time holde in pris.  
 And so it was, and so it is,  
 And so it schal for evere stonde:  
 And for thou schalt it understonde,  
 Nou herkne a tale next suiende,  
 Hou maidenhod is to commende.

6350

[VIRGINITY]

- x. *Vt Rosa de spinis spineto preualet orta,  
 Et lilii flores cespite plura valent,  
 Sic sibi virginitas carnis sponsalia vincit.  
 Eternos fetus que sine labe parit.*

Hic loquitur de vir-  
 ginitatis commenda-  
 cione, vbi dicit quod  
 nuper Imperatores ob  
 tanti status dignitatem  
 virginibus cedebant  
 in via.

Of Rome among the gestes olde  
 I finde hou that Valerie tolde  
 That what man tho was Emperour  
 Of Rome, he scholde don honour  
 To the virgine, and in the weie,  
 Wher he hire mette, he scholde obeie  
 In worschipe of virginite,  
 Which tho was of gret dignite.  
 Noght onliche of the wommen tho,  
 Bot of the chaste men also  
 It was commended overal:  
 And forto speke in special

6360

6370

Touchende of men, ensample I finde, P. ii. 341

Hic loquitur, quah-  
 ter Phyrinus, iuuenem  
 Rome pulcherrimus,  
 ut illesam suam con-  
 seruaret virginitatem,  
 ambos oculos eruens  
 vultus sui decorem  
 abhominabilem con-  
 stituit.

Phyryns, which was of mannes kinde  
 Above alle othre the faireste  
 Of Rome and ek the comelieste,  
 That wel was hire which him mihte  
 Beholde and have of him a sihte.  
 Thus was he tempted ofte sore;

6351 olde ensamples AdBT, W

Latin Verses x. om. here and ins later S . . . Δ (ins. here Δ)

6361 That whilom was an emp. H<sub>1</sub>E That whilom her was emp

XRCLB: þat what man was þo emp. Δ 6363 and in] and

AMR in LB: 6364 margin sedebant H<sub>1</sub>RCLB: 6366 of]

a AdBT 6367 womman H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>, W 6372 Phirus AM

{VIRGINITY}

Bot for he wolde be nomore  
 Among the wommen so coveited,  
 The beaute of his face streited 6380  
 He hath, and threste out bothe hise yhen,  
 That alle wommen whiche him syhen  
 Thanne afterward, of him ne roghte:  
 And thus his maidehiede he boghte.  
 So mai I prove wel forthi,  
 Above alle othre under the Sky,  
 Who that the vertus wolde peise,  
 Virginite is forto preise,  
 Which, as thapocalips recordeth,  
 To Crist in hevene best acordeth. 6390  
 So mai it schewe wel therfore,  
 As I have told it hier tofore,  
 In hevene and ek in Erthe also  
 It is accept to bothe tuo\*.

And if I schal more over this  
 Declare what this vertu is,  
 I finde write upon this thing

\* Out of his flessch a man to live  
 Gregoire hath this ensample yive,  
 And seith it schal rather be told  
 Lich to an Angel manyfold,  
 Than to the lif of mannes kinde.  
 Ther is no reson forto finde,  
 Bot only thurgh the grace above,  
 In flessch withoute flesshly love  
 A man to live chaste hiere:  
 And natheles a man mai hiere  
 Of suche that have ben er this,  
 And yit ther ben; bot for it is  
 A vertu which is sielde wonne,  
 Now I this matiere have begonne,

In carne preter  
 carnem viuere potius  
 vita angelica quam  
 humana est.

P. ii, 342  
 6400\*

6378 be om. AM 6381 threste] put B 6382 him] it B  
 6387 f. That maidenhode is forto preise

Who jat be vertus wolde peise S . . . ΔΔ

6390 margin Hii secuntur agnum quocunque iert SΔ

6395\* 6438\* Only in SAdBTAA The text here follows S 6396\* ff.

margin In carne—est om. B 6398\* Lich BT Liche S

[CHASTITY OF  
VALENTINIAN.]

Hic loquitur quali-  
ter Valentianus Im-  
perator, cum ipse  
octogenarius plures  
provincias Romano

Of Valentinian the king  
And Emperour be thilke daies,  
A worthi knyht at alle assaies,  
Hou he withoute Mariage  
Was of an hundred wynter Age,

6400

I thenke tellen overmore,  
Which is, mi Sone, for thi lore,  
If that the list to taken hiede.

6410\*

x. *Vt Rosa de spinis spineto preualet orto,  
Et lili flores cespite plura valent,  
Sic sibi virginitas carnis sponsalia vincit,  
Eternos felus que sine labe parit.*

Milicia est vita  
hominis super terram.

To trete upon the maidenhiede,  
The bok seith that a mannes lif  
Upon knythhode in werre and strif  
Is sett among hise enemys:  
The frele fleissh, whos nature is  
As redy forto sporne and falle,  
The ferste foman is of alle;  
For thilke werre is redi ai,  
It werreth nyht, it werreth dai,  
So that a man hath nevere reste.  
For thi is thilke knyht the beste,  
Thurgh myht and grace of goddes sonde  
Which that bataille mai withstonde:  
Wherof yit duelleth the memoire  
Of hem that whilom the victoire  
Of thilke dedly werre hadden;  
The hih prouesse which thei ladden,  
Wherof the Soule stod amended,  
Upon this erthe is yit commended.

6420\*

P il. 343

6430\*

Hic loquitur quali-  
ter Valentianus Im-  
perator, cum ipse  
octogenarius plures  
provincias Romano  
Imperio belliger sub-

An Emperour be olde dayes  
Ther was, and he at alle assaies  
A worthi knyht was of his hond,  
Ther was non such in al the lond;

*Latin Verses x. inserted after 6412\* SAdB1 after 6413\* Δ*  
6413\* book BT boke S margin Milicia—terram BA om. SA  
6427\* dedly BT dedely S 6429\* stood BT stode S 6430\*  
is jit SA it is AdBTA



# LIBER QUINTUS

123

And hadde ben a worthi kniht  
Bothe of his lawe and of his myht.  
Bot whan men wolde his dedes peise  
And his knyghthode of Armes preise,  
Of that he dede with his hondes,  
Whan he the kinges and the londes  
To his subjeccion put under,  
Of al that pris hath he no wonder,  
For he it sette of non acompte,  
And seide al that may noght amonte  
Ayeins o point which he hath nome,  
That he his fleissh hath overcome:  
He was a virgine, as he seide;  
On that bataille his pris he leide.  
Lo nou, my Sone, avise thee.

Yee, fader, al this wel mai be,  
Bot if alle othre dede so,  
The world of men were sone go:  
And in the lawe a man mai finde,  
Hou god to man be weie of kinde  
Hath set the world to multeplie;  
And who that wol him justefie,  
It is ynoub to do the lawe.  
And natheles youre goode sawe  
Is good to kepe, who so may,  
I wol noght therayein seie nay.

Mi Sone, take it as I seie;  
If maidenhod be take aweie  
Withoute lawes ordinance,

Bot yit for al his vasselage  
He stod unwedded al his age,  
And in Cronique as it is told,  
He was an hundred wynter old.  
Bot whan men wolde etc. (as 6405 ff.)

[CHASTITY OF  
VALENTINIAN.]

Imperio belliger sub  
iugasset, dixit se super  
omnia magis gaudere  
de eo, quod contra sue  
carnis concupiscenci-  
am victoriam obtinu-  
isset, nam et ipse virgo  
omnibus diebus vite  
sue castissimus per-  
mansit.

P. ii. 344

(6450\*)

[VIRGINITY.]

Amans.

6420

Confessor.

6430

iugasset, dixit se super  
omnia magis gaudere  
de eo quod contra sue  
carnis concupiscen-  
ciam victoriam obtinu-  
isset; nam et ipse virgo  
omnibus diebus vite  
sue castissimus per-  
mansit.

6408 and] of AdBT 6409 put AJ, S, F putte B 6418 My  
fader Hi . . . Ba, Ad mai wel AMEC, S . . . ΔA 6429 take AJ,  
F tak SB  
6436\* stood BT stode S margin contra sue om B  
6439\* margin castissime B



[VIRGINITY.]

It mai noght failen of vengeance.  
 And if thou wolt the sothe wite,  
 Behold a tale which is write,  
 Hou that the King Agamenon,  
 Whan he the Cite of Lesbon  
 Hath wonne, a Maiden ther he fond,  
 Which was the faireste of the Lond  
 In thilke time that men wiste.  
 He tok of hire what him liste 6440  
 Of thing which was most precious,  
 Wherof that sche was dangerous.  
 This faire Maiden cleped is  
 Criseide, douhter of Crisis,  
 Which was that time in special P. ii. 345  
 Of thilke temple principal,  
 Wher Phebus hadde his sacrifice,  
 So was it wel the more vice.  
 Agamenon was thanne in weie  
 To Troieward, and tok aweie 6450  
 This Maiden, which he with him ladde,  
 So grete a lust in hire he hadde.  
 Bot Phebus, which hath gret desdeign  
 Of that his Maiden was forlein,  
 Anon as he to Troie cam,  
 Vengeance upon this dede he nam  
 And sende a comun pestilence.  
 Thei soghten thanne here evidence  
 And maden calculacion,  
 To knowe in what condicion 6460  
 This deth cam in so sodeinly;  
 And ate laste redyly  
 The cause and ek the man thei founde:  
 And forth withal the same stounde  
 Agamenon opposed was,  
 Which hath beknowen al the cas (6500\*)  
 Of the folie which he wroghte.

6444 Criseid(e) þe doughter AdBTA (Criseide dowhter S  
 645a grete AJ, S, F gret C, BT 6461 in] hem AXG . . . B<sub>2</sub> hym  
 MH. 6463 he founde RCLB<sub>2</sub> be f. E 6465 apposed  
 AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> (except E)

[VIRGINITY.]

And therupon mercy thei soghte  
Toward the god in sondri wise  
With preiere and with sacrificse,  
The Maide and hom ayein thei sende,  
And yive hire good ynouh to spende  
For evere whil sche scholde live:  
And thus the Senne was foryive  
And al the pestilence cessed.

6470

P. ii. 346

Lo, what it is to ben encressed  
Of love which is evele wonne.  
It were betre noght begonne  
Than take a thing withoute leve,  
Which thou most after nedes leve,  
And yit have malgre forth withal.  
Forthi to robben overal  
In loves cause if thou beginne,  
I not what ese thou schalt winne.  
Mi Sone, be wel war of this,  
For thus of Robberie it is.

Confessor.

6480

Mi fader, youre ensamplerie  
In loves cause of Robberie  
I have it riht wel understonde.  
Bot overthis, hou so it stonde,  
Yit wolde I wite of youre aprise  
What thing is more of Covoitise.

Amans

6490

- xi. *Insidiando latens tempus rimatur et horam  
Fur, quibus occulto tempore furta parat.  
Sic amor insidiis vacat, ut sub tegmine ludos  
Prendere furtivos nocte fauente queat.*

[STEALTH AND  
MICHERY.]

With Covoitise yit I finde  
A Servant of the same kinde,  
Which Stelthe is hote, and Mecherie  
With him is evere in compainie.

Hic tractat super  
illa Cupiditatis specie,  
que secretum latro

6471 maide and] mayden (maide) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT, W 6472  
3af AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, T, W (gave)

6486 f. My fader so I wole I wis Amans.

But now [wip] your ensamplerie H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>

wip om. all except E)

*Latin Verses* xi. 1 ad horam E, B 2 tempora AdBT 3 insidi  
H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>

[STEALTH AND  
MICHERY.]

cinium dicitur, cuius  
natura custode rerum  
nesciente ea que cupit  
tam per diem quam  
per noctem absque  
streptu clanculo fur-  
atur.

Of whom if I schal telle soth,  
He stalketh as a Pocok doth,  
And takth his preie so covert,  
That noman wot it in apert.  
For whan he wot the lord from home,  
Than wol he stalke aboute and rome;  
And what thing he fint in his weie,  
Whan that he seth the men aweie,  
He stelth it and goth forth withal,  
That therof noman knowe schal.  
And ek fulofte he goth a nyht  
Withoute Mone or sterrelht,  
And with his craft the dore unpiketh,  
And takth therinne what him liketh:  
And if the dore be so schet,  
That he be of his entre let,  
He wole in ate wyndou crepe,  
And whil the lord is faste aslepe,  
He stelth what thing as him best list,  
And goth his weie er it be wist.  
Fulofte also be lyhte of day  
Yit wole he stele and make assay;  
Under the cote his hond he put,  
Til he the mannes Purs have cut,  
And riflith that he fint therinne.  
And thus he auntreth him to winne,  
And berth an horn and noght ne bloweth,  
For noman of his conseil knoweth;  
What he mai gete of his Michinge,  
It is al bile under the winge.  
And as an hound that goth to folde  
And hath ther taken what he wolde,  
His mouth upon the gras he wypeth,  
And so with feigned chiere him slypeth,  
That what as evere of schep he strangle,  
Ther is noman therof schal jangle,  
As forto knowen who it dede;  
Riht so doth Stelthe in every stede,

6500  
P. ii. 347

6510

(6550\*)

6520

6530

P. ii. 348

6499 margin custodie A. B<sub>2</sub> 6501 at home H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>  
6518 wold(e) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub> 6533 As] And AdBT, H<sub>1</sub>

Where as him list his preie take.  
 He can so wel his cause make  
 And so wel feigne and so wel glose,  
 That ther ne schal noman suppose,  
 Bot that he were an innocent,  
 And thus a mannes yhe he blent ·  
 So that this crafte I mai remene  
 Withouten help of eny mene.

6540

Ther be lovers of that degre,  
 Which al here lust in privitye,  
 As who seith, geten al be Stelthe,  
 And ofte atteignen to gret welthe  
 As for the time that it lasteth.  
 For love awaiteth evere and casteth  
 Hou he mai stele and cacche his preie,  
 Whan he therto mai finde a weie :  
 For be it nyht or be it day,  
 He takth his part, whan that he may,  
 And if he mai nomore do,  
 Yit wol he stele a cuss or tuo.

[STEALTH OF LOVERS.]

6550

Mi Sone, what seist thou therto?  
 Tell if thou dedest evere so.

Confessor

Mi fader, hou? —

Mi Sone, thus,—

If thou hast stolen eny cuss  
 Or other thing which therto longeth,  
 For noman suche thieves hongeth :  
 Tell on forthi and sei the trouthe.

6560

P. ii. 349

Mi fader, nay, and that is routhe,  
 For be mi will I am a thief ;  
 Bot sche that is to me most lief,  
 Yit dorste I nevere in privitye  
 Noght ones take hire be the kne,  
 To stele of hire or this or that,  
 And if I dorste, I wot wel what :  
 And natheles, bot if I lie,  
 Be Stelthe ne be Robberie  
 Of love, which fell in mi thoght,  
 To hire dede I nevere noght.

Confessio Amantis.

(6600\*)

6570

6547 And for AdBT, W

[STEALTH OF LOVERS.]

Bot as men sein, wher herte is failed,  
 Ther schal no castell ben assailed;  
 Bot thogh I hadde hertes ten,  
 And were als strong as alle men,  
 If I be noght myn oghne man  
 And dar noght usen that I can,  
 I mai miselve noght recovere.

Thogh I be nevere man so povere,  
 I bere an herte and hire it is,  
 So that me faileth wit in this,  
 Hou that I scholde of myn acord  
 The servant lede ayein the lord:  
 For if mi fot wolde awher go,  
 Or that min hand wolde elles do,  
 Whan that myn herte is therayein,  
 The remenant is al in vein.

6580

And thus me lacketh alle wele,  
 And yit ne dar I nothing stele  
 Of thing which longeth unto love:  
 And ek it is so hyh above,

6590

P. ii. 350

I mai noght wel therto areche,  
 Bot if so be at time of speche,  
 Ful selde if thanne I stele may  
 A word or tuo and go my way.  
 Betwen hire hih astat and me  
 Comparison ther mai non be,  
 So that I fiele and wel I wot,  
 Al is to hevy and to hot

6600

To sette on hond withoute leve:  
 And thus I mot algate leve  
 To stele that I mai noght take,  
 And in this wise I mot forsake  
 To ben a thief ayein mi wille  
 Of thing which I mai noght fulfille.  
 For that Serpent which nevere slepte  
 The flees of gold so wel ne kepte  
 In Colchos, as the tale is told,  
 That mi ladi a thousandfold  
 Nys betre yemed and bewaked,

6610

[STEALTH OF LOVERS.]

Wher sche be clothed or be naked.  
 To kepe hir bodi nyht and day,  
 Sche hath a wardein redi ay,  
 Which is so wonderful a wyht,  
 That him ne mai no mannes myht (6650\*)  
 With swerd ne with no wepne daunte.  
 Ne with no sleihte of charme enchaunte,  
 Wherof he mihte be mad tame,  
 And Danger is his rihte name; 6620  
 Which under lock and under keie, P. ii. 351  
 That noman mai it stele aweie,  
 Hath al the Tresor underfonge  
 That unto love mai belonge.  
 The leste lokinge of hire yhe  
 Mai noght be stole, if he it syhe;  
 And who so gruccheth for so lyte,  
 He wolde sone sette a wyte  
 On him that wolde stele more.  
 And that me grieveth wonder sore, 6630  
 For this proverbe is evere newe,  
 That stronge lokes maken trewe  
 Of hem that wolden stele and pyke:  
 For so wel can ther noman slyke  
 Be him ne be now other mene,  
 To whom Danger wol yive or lene  
 Of that tresor he hath to kepe.  
 So thogh I wolde stalke and crepe,  
 And wayte on eve and ek on morwe,  
 Of Danger schal I nothing borwe, 6640  
 And stele I wot wel may I noght:  
 And thus I am riht wel bethoght,  
 Whil Danger stant in his office,  
 Of Stelthe, which ye clepe a vice,  
 I schal be gultif neveremo.  
 Therefore I wolde he were ago  
 So fer that I nevere of him herde,  
 Hou so that afterward it ferde:

6617 no om. H1E . . . B1, H1      6633 pile C      6634 skile C  
 6641 I wot wel may I] wel ne may I B      wel may I AdT      I wot  
 wel I mai Δ

[STEALTHOFLOVERS.]

For thanne I mihte yit per cas  
 Of love make som pourchas 6650  
 Be Stelthe or be som other weie, P. ii. 352  
 That nou fro me stant fer aweie.

Bot, fader, as ye tolde above,  
 Hou Stelthe goth a nyht for love,  
 I mai noght wel that point forsake,  
 That ofte times I ne wake  
 On nyhtes, whan that othre slepe;  
 Bot hou, I prei you taketh kepe.  
 Whan I am loged in such wise  
 That I be nyhte mai arise, 6660

At som wyndowe and loken oute  
 And se the housinge al aboute,  
 So that I mai the chambre knowe  
 In which mi ladi, as I trowe,  
 Lyth in hir bed and slepeth softe,  
 Thanne is myn herte a thief fulofte: (6700\*)

For there I stonde to beholde  
 The longe nyhtes that ben colde,  
 And thenke on hire that lyth there.  
 And thanne I wisshe that I were 6670

Als wys as was Nectanabus  
 Or elles as was Protheüs,  
 That couthen bothe of nigromaunce  
 In what liknesse, in what semblaunce,  
 Riht as hem liste, hemself transforme:

For if I were of such a forme,  
 I seie thanne I wolde fle  
 Into the chambre forto se  
 If eny grace wolde falle,  
 So that I mihte under the palle 6680  
 Som thing of love pyke and stele. P. ii. 353

And thus I thenke thoghtes fele,  
 And thogh therof nothing be soth,  
 Yit ese as for a time it doth:  
 Bot ate laste whanne I finde  
 That I am falle into my mynde,

6653 tolde] me tolde AM      6659 such a wise MH<sub>1</sub>E . . . B<sub>2</sub>, W  
 6667 to] and S . . . Δ      6678 the] hire (hir) X . . . B<sub>2</sub>, B    here H<sub>1</sub>

## LIBER QUINTUS

131

[STEALTH OF LOVERS]

And se that I have stonde longe  
 And have no profit underfonge,  
 Than stalke I to mi bedd withinne.  
 And this is al that evere I winne  
 Of love, whanne I walke on nyht:  
 Mi will is good, bot of mi myht  
 Me lacketh bothe and of mi grace;  
 For what so that mi thoght embrace,  
 Yit have I noght the betre ferd.  
 Mi fader, lo, nou have ye berd  
 What I be Stelthe of love have do,  
 And hou mi will hath be therto:  
 If I be worthi to penance  
 I put it on your ordinance.

6690

6700

Confessor.

    Mi Sone, of Stelthe I the behiete,  
 Thogh it be for a time swete,  
 At ende it doth bot litel good,  
 As be ensample hou that it stod  
 Whilom, I mai thee telle nou.

    I preie you, fader, sei me hou.

Amans.

    Mi Sone, of him which goth be daie  
 Be weie of Stelthe to assaie,  
 In loves cause and takth his preie,  
 Ovide seide as I schal seie,  
 And in his Methamor he tolde  
 A tale, which is good to holde.

6710

P. ii. 354

Confessor.

    The Poete upon this matiere  
 Of Stelthe wrot in this manere.  
 Venus, which hath this lawe in honde  
 Of thing which mai noght be withstonde, (6750\*)  
 As sche which the tresor to warde  
 Of love hath withinne hir warde,  
 Phebum to love hath so constreigned,  
 That he withoute reste is peined  
 With al his herte to coveite

[TALE OF LEUCOTHOE.]

Hic in amoris causa  
 super isto Latrocinio  
 quod de die contigit  
 ponit exemplum. Et  
 narrat quod, cum  
 Leuchotoe Orchami  
 filia in cameris sub  
 arta matris custodia

6720

6694 whoso AdBT þoght (þought) C, SB þoghte (þouhte) AJ, F  
 6697 ha doo AM kan do A 6700 put AJ, S, F putte B  
 it on) it in H, ECL me in B<sub>1</sub> 6706 tel E, B 6715 his lawe  
 AMX . . . B<sub>1</sub> hire lawe H<sub>1</sub> þe lawe S . . . Δ 6717 margin de die]  
 die H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub> de nocte B 6719 Phebus H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>



## [TALE OF LEUCOTHOR.]

virgo preseruabatur,  
Phebus eius pulcritu-  
dinem concupiscens,  
in conclave domus  
clara luce subintrans,  
virginis pudiciciam  
matre nescia deflora-  
uit: vnde ipsa inpreg-  
nata iratus pater filiam  
suam ad sepeliendum  
viam effodit; ex  
cuius tumulo florem,  
quem Solsequium vo-  
cant, dicunt tunc con-  
sequenter primitus  
accreuisse.

A Maiden, which was warded streyte  
Withinne chambre and kept so clos,  
That selden was whan sche desclos  
Goth with hir moder forto pleie.  
Leuchotoe, so as men seie,  
This Maiden hihte, and Orchamus  
Hir fader was; and befell thus.  
This doughter, that was kept so deere,  
And hadde be fro yer to yeere 6730  
Under hir moder discipline  
A clene Maide and a Virgine,  
Upon the whos nativite  
Of comelihiede and of beaute  
Nature hath set al that sche may,  
That lich unto the fresshe Maii,  
Which othre monthes of the yeer  
Surmonteth, so withoute pier  
Was of this Maiden the feture.  
Wherof Phebus out of mesure 6740  
Hire loveth, and on every syde P. ii. 355  
Awaiteth, if so mai betyde,  
That he thurgh eny sleihte myhte  
Hire lusti maidenhod unrihte,  
The which were al his worldes welthe.  
And thus lurkende upon his stelthe  
In his await so longe he lai,  
Til it befell upon a dai,  
That he thurghout hir chambre wall  
Cam in al sodeinliche, and stall 6750  
That thing which was to him so lief.  
Bot wo the while, he was a thief!  
For Venus, which was enemye  
Of thilke loves micherie,  
Discovereth al the pleine cas  
To Clymene, which thanne was

6728 *margin* *matre nescia*] *matre* H<sub>1</sub>RCLB<sub>2</sub> *matre nesciente* X, B  
nesciente *matre* E 6731 *margin* *quem* *om.* AMH<sub>1</sub>E . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
6732 *margin* *nunc* H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 6742 *if* *om.* AM 6746 *thus*  
*om.* AM 6751 *which*] *pat* A . . . B<sub>2</sub> *om.* W 6756 *How it*  
*befell and how it was* H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>

## LIBER QUINTUS

133

{TALE OF LEUCOTHOE.}

Toward Phebus his concubine.  
 And sche to lette the covine  
 Of thilke love, dedli wroth  
 To pleigne upon this Maide goth, 6760  
 And tolde hire fader hou it stod;  
 Wherof for sorwe welnyh wod  
 Unto hire moder thus he saide:  
 'Lo, what it is to kepe a Maide!  
 To Phebus dar I nothing speke,  
 Bot upon hire I schal be wreke, (6800\*)  
 So that these Maidens after this  
 Mow take ensample, what it is  
 To soffre her maidenhed be stole,  
 Wherof that sche the deth schal thole.' 6770  
 And bad with that do make a pet, P. ii. 356  
 Wherinne he hath his douhter set,  
 As he that wol no pite have,  
 So that sche was al quik begrave  
 And deide anon in his presence.  
 Bot Phebus, for the reverence  
 Of that sche hadde be his love,  
 Hath wrought thurgh his pouer above,  
 That sche sprong up out of the molde  
 Into a flour was named golde, 6780  
 Which stant governed of the Sonne.  
 And thus whan love is evele wonne,  
 Fulofte it comth to repentaile.  
 Mi fader, that is no mervaille,  
 Whan that the conseil is bewreid.  
 Bot ofte time love hath pleid  
 And stole many a prive game,  
 Which nevere yit cam into blame,  
 Whan that the thinges weren hidde.  
 Bot in youre tale, as it betidde, 6790  
 Venus discoverede al the cas,  
 And ek also brod dai it was,  
 Whan Phebus such a Stelthe wroghte,

Amans.

6766 it schal S . . . Δ      6768 Mow AC, S, F Mowe J, B  
 6769 hir(e) AJM, WH:      6771 do make J, SA, FH: to make  
 AM, AdBT, W go make H: . . . B:

[TALE OF LEUCOTHOE.]

Confessor.

[TALE OF HERCULES  
AND FAUNUS.]

Hic ponit exemplum super eodem quod de nocte contigit. Et narrat qualiter Hercules cum Eole in quadam spelunca nobili, Thophis dicta, sub monte Thymolo, ubi silua Bachi est, hospicio pernoctarunt. Et cum ipsi variis lectis seperatim iacentes dormierunt, contigit lectum Herculis vestimentis Eole lectumque Eole pelle leonis, qua Hercules induebatur, operiri. Super quo Faunus a silua descendens speluncam subintravit, temptans si forte cum Eole sue concupiscencie voluptatem nesciente Hercule furari posset. Et cum ad lectum Herculis muliebri palpata veste ex casu pervenisset, putans Eolen fuisse, cubiculum nudo corpore ingre-

Wherof the Maide in blame he broghte,  
That afterward sche was so lore.  
Bot for ye seiden nou tofore  
Hou stelthe of love goth be nyhte,  
And doth hise thinges out of syhte,  
Therof me liste also to hiere  
A tale lich to the matiere,  
Wherof I myhte ensample take.

6800  
P. ii. 357

Mi goode Sone, and for thi sake,  
So as it fell be daies olde,  
And so as the Poete it tolde,  
Upon the nyhtes micherie  
Nou herkne a tale of Poesie.

The myhtieste of alle men  
Whan Hercules with Eolen,  
Which was the love of his corage,  
Togedre upon a Pelrinage  
Towardes Rome scholden go,  
It fell hem be the weie so,  
That thei upon a dai a Cave  
Withinne a roche founden have,  
Which was real and glorious  
And of Entaile curious,  
Be name and Thophis it was hote.  
The Sonne schon tho wonder hote,  
As it was in the Somer tyde;  
This Hercules, which be his syde  
Hath Eolen his love there,  
Whan thei at thilke cave were,  
He seide it thoghte him for the beste  
That sche hire for the hete reste  
Al thilke day and thilke nyht;  
And sche, that was a lusti wyht,  
It liketh hire al that he seide:  
And thus thei duelle there and pleide  
The longe dai. And so befell,

6810

(6850\*)

6820

6795 he AdBT      6802 and om. B      6803 bifell AM, Ad, H<sub>1</sub>  
6811 Toward XRCLB<sub>2</sub>      Towarde H<sub>1</sub>      6816 margin sectis  
ARCLB<sub>2</sub>      6821 S has lost a leaf (ll. 6821-7000)      6824 margin  
voluntatem AM

This Cave was under the hell  
 Of Tymolus, which was begrowe  
 With vines, and at thilke throwe  
 Faunus with Saba the goddesse,  
 Be whom the large wilderness  
 In thilke time stod governed,  
 Weere in a place, as I am lerned,  
 Nyh by, which Bachus wode hihte.  
 This Faunus tok a gret insihte  
 Of Eolen, that was so nyh;  
 For whan that he hire beaute syh,  
 Out of his wit he was assoted,  
 And in his herte it hath so noted,  
 That he forsok the Nymphes alle,  
 And seide he wolde, hou so it falle,  
 Assaie an other forto winne;  
 So that his hertes thoght withinne  
 He sette and caste hou that he myhte  
 Of love pyke away be nyhte  
 That he be daie in other wise  
 To stele mihte noght suffise:  
 And therupon his time he waiteth.

Nou tak good hiede hou love afaiteth  
 Him which withal is overcome.  
 Faire Eolen, whan sche was come  
 With Hercules into the Cave,  
 Sche seide him that sche wolde have  
 Hise clothes of and hires bothe,  
 That ech of hem scholde other clothe.  
 And al was do riht as sche bad,  
 He hath hire in hise clothes clad

6830 [TALE OF HERCULES  
 AND FAUNUS.]  
 P. ii. 358

ditur; quem sentiens  
 Hercules manibus  
 apprehensum ipsum  
 ad terram ita fortiter  
 alisit ut impotens  
 sui corporis effectus  
 usque mane ibidem  
 requieuit, ubi Saba  
 cum Nymphis siluestri-  
 bus superueniens ip-  
 sum sic illudum deri-  
 debat.

6840

6850

6860

6836 Weere F Were AC, B Wher(e) JG 6839 so om.  
 H<sub>1</sub>XRCLB<sub>2</sub> him E 6846 herte H<sub>1</sub>RCLB<sub>2</sub>  
 For 6848-6851 X has—

That he by daye in oþer stede  
 flor ouȝte þat he haþ prayde and bede  
 To stele myȝte nouȝt suffise  
 Befouȝte him in a noþer wise  
 And þer vpon his time awaiteþ

6856 him om. A . . . B<sub>2</sub> 6857 hire AM, B 6858 That]  
 And AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>

[TALE OF HERCULES  
AND FAUNUS.]

And caste on hire his gulion, P. ii. 359

Which of the Skyn of a Leoun

Was mad, as he upon the weie

It slouh, and overthis to pleie

Sche tok his grete Mace also

And knet it at hir gerdil tho. (6900\*)

So was sche lich the man arraied,

And Hercules thanne hath assaied

To clothen him in hire array:

And thus thei jape forth the dai, 6870

Til that her Souper redy were.

And whan thei hadden souped there,

Thei schopen hem to gon to reste;

And as it thoghte hem for the beste,

Thei bede, as for that ilke nyht,

Tuo sondri beddes to be dyht,

For thei togedre ligge nolde,

Be cause that thei offre wolde

Upon the morwe here sacrifice.

The servantz deden here office 6880

And sondri beddes made anon,

Wherin that thei to reste gon

Ech be himself in sondri place.

Faire Eole hath set the Mace

Beside hire beddes hed above,

And with the clothes of hire love

Sche helede al hire bed aboute;

And he, which hadde of nothing doute,

Hire wympel wond aboute his cheke,

Hire kertell and hire mantel eke 6890

Abrod upon his bed he spredde. P. ii. 360

And thus thei slepen bothe abedde;

And what of travail, what of wyn,

The servantz lich to drunke Swyn

Begunne forto route faste.

This Faunus, which his Stelthe caste,

Was thanne come to the Cave,

And fond thei weren alle save

6867 the man] to man H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub> 6883 Ech AJC, B Eche F  
himself B 6895 Beginne H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub> (except C), AdBT

## LIBER QUINTUS

137

{TALE OF HERCULES  
AND FAUNUS.}

Withoute noise, and in he wente.  
 The derke nyht his sihte blente,  
 And yt it happeth him to go  
 Where Eolen abedde tho  
 Was leid al one for to slepe;  
 Bot for he wolde take kepe  
 Whos bed it was, he made assai,  
 And of the Leoun, where it lay,  
 The Cote he fond, and ek he fieleth  
 The Mace, and thanne his herte kieleth,  
 That there dorste he noght abyde,  
 Bot stalketh upon every side  
 And soghte aboute with his hond,  
 That other bedd til that he fond,  
 Wher lai bewympled a visage.  
 Tho was he glad in his corage,  
 For he hir kertell fond also  
 And ek hir mantell bothe tuo  
 Bespred upon the bed alofte.  
 He made him naked thanne, and softe  
 Into the bedd unwar he crepte,  
 Wher Hercules that time slepte,  
 And wende wel it were ache;  
 And thus in stede of Eole  
 Anon he profreth him to love.  
 But he, which felte a man above,  
 This Hercules, him threw to grounde  
 So sore, that thei have him founde  
 Liggende there upon the morwe;  
 And tho was noght a litel sorwe,  
 That Faunus of himselve made,  
 Bot elles thei were alle glade  
 And lowhen him to scorne aboute;  
 Saba with Nimphis al a route  
 Cam down to loke hou that he ferde,  
 And whan that thei the sothe herde,  
 He was berjaped overal.

6900

6910

(6950\*)

6920

P. ii. 361

6930

Mi Sone, be thou war withal

Confessor.

6925 þrew C, B þrewe AJ, F    6932 a route J, B, F arowie A  
 6933 it ferde AdBT

[TALE OF HERCULES  
AND FAUNUS.]

To seche suche mecheries,  
Bot if thou have the betre aspies,  
In aunter if the so betyde  
As Faunus dede thilke tyde, 6940  
Wherof thou miht be schamed so.

Amans.

Min holi fader, certes no.  
Bot if I hadde riht good leve,  
Such mecherie I thenke leve:  
Mi feinte herte wol noght serve;  
For malgre wolde I noght deserve  
In thilke place wher I love.  
Bot for ye tolden hier above  
Of Covoitise and his pilage,  
If ther be more of that lignage, 6950  
Which toucheth to mi schrifte, I preie P. ii. 362  
That ye therof me wolde seie,  
So that I mai the vice eschuie.

Confessor.

Mi Sone, if I be order suie  
The vices, as thei stonde arowe,  
Of Covoitise thou schalt knowe  
Ther is yit on, which is the laste;  
In whom ther mai no vertu laste,  
For he with god himself debateth,  
Wherof that al the hevene him hateth. 6960

[SACRILEGE.]

xii. *Sacrilegus tantum furto loca sacra prophanat;  
Vt sibi sunt agri, sic domus alma dei.  
Nec locus est, in quo non temptat amans quod amatur,  
Et que posse nequit carpere, velle capit.*

Hic tractat super  
ultima Cupiditatis  
specie, que Sacrile-  
gium dicta est, cuius  
furtum ea que altis-  
simo sanctificantur  
bona depredans eccle-  
sie tantum spoliis in-  
sidiatur.

The hihe god, which alle goode  
Pourveied hath for mannes fode  
Of clothes and of mete and drinke,  
Bad Adam that he scholde swinke  
To geten him his sustenance;  
And ek he sette an ordinance (7000\*)  
Upon the lawe of Moises,  
That though a man be haveles,  
Yit schal he noght be thefte stele.  
Bot nou adaies ther ben fele, 6970

6954 Mi om. AdBT    6955 on rowe H<sub>1</sub>RCLB<sub>2</sub>    6967 a lawe B

That wol no labour undertake,  
 Bot what thei mai be Stelthe take  
 Thei holde it sikerliche wonne.  
 And thus the lawe is overronne,  
 Which god hath set, and namely  
 With hem that so untrewely  
 The goodes robbe of holi cherche.  
 The thefte which thei thanne werche P. II. 363  
 Be name is cleped Sacrilegge,  
 Ayein the whom I thenke alegge.\* 6980  
 Of his condicion to telle,  
 Which riflith bothe bok and belle,  
 So forth with al the remenant

---

\* Upon the pointz as we ben taught  
 Stant sacrilege, and elles nought.

The firste point is for to seye,  
 Whan that a thief schal stele aweye  
 The holy thing from holy place.

The secounde is, if he pourchace 7020\*  
 By wey of thefte unholy thing,  
 Which he upon his knowleching  
 Fro holy place aweie took.

The thridde point, as seith the book,  
 Is such as, wher as evere it be,  
 In woode, in feld or in Cite,  
 Schal no man stele by no wise  
 That halwed is to the servise  
 Of god which alle thinges wot.  
 But ther is nouthur cold ne hot, 7030\*  
 Which he for god or man wol spare,  
 So that the body may wel fare;  
 And that he may the world aschape,  
 The hevene him thenkth is but a jape:  
 And thus, the sothe for to telle,  
 He riflith bothe book and belle,  
 So forth with al, etc. (as 6983 ff.)

7015\* 7036\* Only in AdBTA (not Δ) S is here defective, but did not  
 contain the passage. Text follows B 7015\* f. taght: naght T 7025\*  
 euerre T euer B 7034\* þenkeþ B thinkth T 7036\* riflith T ruyfleþ B



[SACRILEGE.]

To goddes hous appourtenant,  
 Wher that he scholde bidde his bede,  
 He doth his thefte in holi stede,  
 And takth what thing he fint therinne: P. ii. 364  
 For whan he seth that he mai winne,  
 He wondeth for no cursednesse,  
 That he ne brekth the holinesse 6990  
 And doth to god no reverence;  
 For he hath lost his conscience,  
 That though the Prest therfore curse,  
 He seith he fareth noght the wurse.

And forto speke it otherwise,  
 What man that lasseth the franchise (7050\*)  
 And takth of holi cherche his preie,  
 I not what bedes he schal preie.  
 Whan he fro god, which hath yive al,  
 The Pourpartie in special, 7000  
 Which unto Crist himself is due,  
 Benymth, he mai noght wel eschue  
 The peine comende afterward;  
 For he hath mad his foreward  
 With Sacrilege forto duelle,  
 Which hath his heritage in helle.  
 And if we rede of tholde lawe,  
 I finde write, in thilke dawe  
 Of Princes hou ther weren thre  
 Coupable sore in this degre. 7010  
 That on of hem was cleped thus,  
 The proude king Antiochus;  
 That other Nabuzardan hihte,  
 Which of his crualte behyhte  
 The temple to destruie and waste,  
 And so he dede in alle haste;  
 The thridde, which was after schamed, P. ii. 365  
 Was Nabugodonosor named,

6994 wurse A, F worse JC, B 7001 S *resumes* 7007 (7061\*)  
*margin* SBΔΔ *have here* Hic tractat precipue de tribus sacrilegis,  
 quorum vnus fuit Antiochus, alter Nabuzardan, tercius Nabugodonosor.  
 (precipue om. Δ) 7008 lawe AdBT 7009 hou om. H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 7010 sore] alle H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>

[SACRILEGE.]

And he Jerusalem putte under,  
 Of Sacrilege and many a wonder 7020  
 There in the holi temple he wroghte,  
 Which Baltazar his heir aboghte,  
 Whan Mane, Techel, Phares write  
 Was on the wal, as thou miht wite,  
 So as the bible it hath declared.  
 Bot for al that it is noght spared  
 Yit nou aday, that men ne pile,  
 And maken argument and skile  
 To Sacrilege as it belongeth,  
 For what man that ther after longeth, 7030  
 He takth non hiede what he doth.\*  
 And riht so, forto telle soth,  
 In loves cause if I schal trete,

\* And if a man schal telle soth,  
 Of guile and of soubtilite  
 Is non so slyh in his degre  
 To feigne a thing for his beyete,  
 As is this vice of which I trete. 7090\*  
 He can so priveliche pyke,  
 He can so wel hise wordes slyke  
 To putte away suspicioun,  
 That in his excusacioun,  
 Ther schal noman defalte finde.  
 And thus fulofte men be blinde,  
 That stonden of his word deceived,  
 Er his queintise be perceived.  
 Bot natheles yit otherwhile, P. ii. 366  
 For al his sleyhte and al his guile, 7100\*  
 Of that he wolde his werk forsake,  
 He is atteint and overtake;  
 Wherof thou schalt a tale rede,  
 In Rome as it befell in dede.

7022 (7076\*) *margin* Nota de scriptura in pariete tempore Regis  
 Baltazar, que fuit mane, techel, phares SBA (scripta B) 7025 it om.  
 Hi . . . B.

7086\*-7120\* *Only in SAdBTAA Text here follows S* 7100\*  
 sleyhte SA stelpe AdBT 7104\* *hinc om.* BT

[SACRILEGE OF  
LOVERS.]

Ther ben of suche smale and grete :  
If thei no leisir fynden elles,  
Thei wol noght wonden for the belles,

[TALE OF LUCIUS AND  
THE STATUE.]

Hic loquitur de illis  
quilaruata consciencia  
Sacrilegium sibi licere  
figunt. Et narrat  
quod, cum quidam  
Lucius clericus famo-  
sus et Imperatori no-  
tus deum suum Apol-  
linem in templo Rome  
de anulo suo, pallio  
et barba aurea spolia-  
set, ipse tandem ap-  
prehensus et coram  
Imperatore accusatus  
taliter se excusando  
ait: 'Anulum a deo  
recepi, quia ipse digi-  
to protenso ex sua  
largitate anulum hunc  
graciose michi optu-  
lit; pallium ex lamina  
aureo constructum  
tuli, quia aurum max-  
ime ponderosum et  
frigidum naturaliter  
consistit, unde nec in  
estate propter pondus  
nec in yeme propter  
frigus ad dei vestes  
utile fuit; barbam ab  
eo deposui, quia ip-  
sum patri suo assimi-  
lare volui, nam et  
Apollo, qui ante ip-  
sum in templo stetit,  
absque barba iuvenis  
apparuit. Et sic ea  
que gessi non ex fur-  
to set honestate pro-  
cessisse manifeste de-  
claraui.'

Er Rome cam to the creance  
Of Cristes feith, it fell per chance,  
Cesar, which tho was Emperour,  
Him liste forto don honour  
Unto the temple Apollinis,  
And made an ymage upon this, 7110\*  
The which was cleped Apollo.  
Was non so riche in Rome tho;  
Of plate of gold a berd he hadde,  
The which his brest al overspradde ;  
Of gold also withoute faile  
His mantell was of large entaile,  
Beset with perrie al aboute,  
Forthriht he strawhte his finger oute,  
Upon the which he hadde a ryng,  
To sen it was a riche thing, 7120\*  
A fin Carbuncle for the nones,  
Most precious of alle Stones.

And fell that time in Rome thus :  
Ther was a clerk, on Lucius,  
A Courteour, a famous man,  
Of every witt somewhat he can,  
Outake that him lacketh reule  
His oghne astat to guide and reule ;  
How so it stod of his spekinge, P. ii. 367  
He was noght wys in his doinge. 7130\*  
Bot every riot ate laste  
Mot nedes falle and mai noght laste :  
After the meede of his decerte,  
So fell this clerk into poverte  
And wiste noght how forto ryse ;  
Wherof in many a sondri wyse

7121\* charboncle AdT charbocle B 7126\* margin barbam  
ab eo] barbam a deo BA (margin om. AdT) 7128\* margin  
volui] nolui BA 7129\* margin qui ante—templo om. B  
7132\* margin set honestate] sed ex honestate BA

Ne thogh thei sen the Prest at masse ;  
 That wol thei leten overpasse.  
 If that thei finde here love there,

[SACRILEGE OF  
 I. OVERS.]

He caste his wittes hier and ther,  
 He loketh nyh, he loketh fer,  
 Til on a time that he com  
 Into the temple, and hiede he nom  
 Wher that the god Apollo stod.  
 He sib the richesse and the good,  
 And thoghte he wolde be som weie  
 The tresor pyke and stele aweie ;  
 And therupon so slyhly wroghte,  
 That his pourpos aboute he broghte,  
 And wente away unaparceived.

[TALE OF LUCIUS AND  
 THE STATUE.]

Thus hath the man his god deceived,  
 His ryng, his mantell and his beard,  
 As he which nothing was a feerd,  
 Al prively with him he bar :

7140\*

And whan the wardeins weren war  
 Of that here god despuiled was,  
 Hem thoghte it was a wonder cas,  
 How that a man for eny wele  
 Durste in so holy place stele,  
 And namely so gret a thing.

7150\*

This tale cam unto the king,  
 And was thurgh spoken overal :

P. ii. 368

Bot forto knowe in special  
 What maner man hath do the dede,  
 Thei soghten help upon the nede  
 And maden calculacioun,  
 Wherof be demonstracioun

7160\*

The man was founde with the good.  
 In juggement and whan he stood,  
 The king hath axed of him thus :  
 'Sey, thou unsely Lucius,  
 Whi hast thou don this sacrilege?'

7140\* he om. AdBTΛ      7148\* the] he S      7150\* a feerd  
 (a ferd) SB    aferd T      7156\* Durste BT    Durst S      7157\*  
 gret BT    grete S

[SACRILEGE OF  
LOVERS.]

Thei stonde and tellen in hire Ere, 7040  
 And axe of god non other grace, P. ii. 370  
 Whyl thei ben in that holi place ;

[TALE OF LUCIUS AND  
THE STATUE.]

‘Mi lord, if I the cause allegge,’ 7170\*  
 Quod he ayein, ‘me thenketh this,  
 That I have do nothing amis.  
 Thre pointz ther ben whiche I have do,  
 Wherof the ferste point stant so,  
 That I the ryng have take aweie.  
 As unto that this wole I seie :  
 Whan I the god behield aboute,  
 I sih how he his hond strawhte oute  
 And profred me the ryng to yive ;  
 And I, which wolde gladly live 7180\*  
 Out of povert of his largesse,  
 It underfeng, so that I gesse,  
 As therof I am noght to wyte.  
 And overmore I wol me quite,  
 Of gold that I the mantell tok :  
 Gold in his kinde, as seith the bok,  
 Is hevy bothe and cold also ;  
 And for that it was hevy so,  
 Me thoghte it was no garnement P. ii. 369  
 Unto the god convenient, 7190\*  
 To clothen him the somer tide ;  
 I thoghte upon that other side  
 How gold is cold, and such a cloth  
 Be resoun oghte to be loth  
 In wynter time for the chele.  
 And thus thenkende thoghtes fele,  
 As I myn yhe aboute caste,  
 His large beerd thanne ate laste  
 I syh, and thoghte anon therfore  
 How that his fader him before, 7200\*  
 Which stod upon the same place, .  
 Was beerdles with a yongly face :  
 And in such wise as ye have herd

7176\* As vnto þat SA Vnto þat AdTA Vnto þat point B 7181\*  
 of SA þurgh BT þoro Ad 7183\* And . . . am I AdBTA

## LIBER QUINTUS

145

[SACRILEGE OF  
LOVERS.]

Bot er thei gon som advantage  
 Ther wol thei have, and som pilage  
 Of goodli word or of beheste,  
 Or elles thei take ate leste  
 Out of hir hand or ring or glove,  
 So nyh the weder thei wol love,  
 As who seith sche schal noght foryete,  
 Nou I this tokne of hire have gete :  
 Thus halwe thei the hihe feste.  
 Such thefte mai no cherche areste,  
 For al is leueful that hem liketh,  
 To whom that elles it misliketh.  
 And ek riht in the selve kinde  
 In grete Cites men mai finde  
 This lusti folk, that make it gay,  
 And waite upon the haliday :  
 In cherches and in Menstres eke  
 Thei gon the wommen forto seke,  
 And wher that such on goth aboute,  
 Tofore the faireste of the route,  
 Wher as thei sitten alle arewe,  
 Ther wol he most his bodi schewe,  
 His croket kembd and theron set  
 A Nouche with a chapelet,  
 Or elles on of grene leues,  
 Which late com out of the greves,  
 Al for he scholde seme freissh.  
 And thus he loketh on the fleissh,

7050

7060

7070

I tok away the Sones berd,  
 For that his fader hadde non,  
 To make hem liche, and hier upon  
 I axe forto ben excused.'

[TALE OF LUCIUS AND  
THE STATUE]

Lo thus, wher Sacrilege is used,  
 A man can feigne his conscience ;  
 And riht upon such evidence  
 In loves cause, &c. (as 7033 ff.)

7110\*

7048 love] houe G, AdBTA      7053 leueful AJ, S, F leuful C  
 leful B      7070 the fleissh] his fl. AdBTA  
 7204\* took BT    toke S

\* \*

L

[SACRILEGE OF  
LOVERS.]

Riht as an hauk which hath a sihte      **P. ii. 371**  
Upon the foul, ther he schal lihte ;      (7250\*)

And as he were of faierie,  
He scheweth him tofore here yhe  
In holi place wher thei sitte,  
Al forto make here hertes flitte.  
His yhe nawher wole abyde,  
Bot loke and prie on every syde  
On hire and hire, as him best lyketh :  
And otherwhile among he syketh ;  
Thenkth on of hem, 'That was for me,'  
And so ther thenken tuo or thre,  
And yit he loveth non of alle,  
Bot wher as evere his chance falle.

7080

And natheles to seie a soth,  
The cause why that he so doth  
Is forto stele an herte or tuo,  
Out of the cherche er that he go :  
And as I seide it hier above,  
Al is that Sacrilege of love ;  
For wel mai be he stelth away  
That he nevere after yelde may.  
Tell me forthi, my Sone, anon,  
Hast thou do Sacrilege, or non,  
As I have said in this manere?

7090

Confessio Amantis.

    Mi fader, as of this matiere  
I wole you tellen redely  
What I have do ; bot trewely  
I mai excuse min entente,  
That nevere I yit to cherche wente  
In such manere as ye me schryve,  
For no womman that is on lyve.  
The cause why I have it laft  
Mai be for I unto that craft  
Am nothing able so to stele,  
Thogh ther be wommen noght so fele.  
Bot yit wol I noght seie this,  
Whan I am ther mi ladi is,

7100

**P. ii. 372**

7078 preie (prey) AMH<sub>1</sub>  
neuer (neer) A . . . B<sub>1</sub>

7094 do] be CL

7106 noght]

[SACRILEGE OF  
LOVERS.]

In whom lith holly mi querele,  
 And sche to cherche or to chapele 7110  
 Wol go to matins or to messe,—  
 That time I waite wel and gesse,  
 To cherche I come and there I stonde,  
 And thogh I take a bok on honde,  
 Mi contenance is on the bok,  
 Bot toward hire is al my lok;  
 And if so falle that I preie  
 Unto mi god, and somewhat seie  
 Of Paternoster or of Crede,  
 Al is for that I wolde spede, 7120  
 So that mi bede in holi cherche  
 Ther mihte som miracle werche (7300\*)  
 Mi ladi herte forto chaunge,  
 Which evere hath be to me so strange.  
 So that al mi devocion  
 And al mi contemplacion  
 With al min herte and mi corage  
 Is only set on hire ymage;  
 And evere I waite upon the tyde.  
 If sche loke eny thing asyde, 7130  
 That I me mai of hire avise, P. II. 373  
 Anon I am with covoitise  
 So smite, that me were lief  
 To ben in holi cherche a thief;  
 Bot noght to stele a vestement,  
 For that is nothing mi talent,  
 Bot I wold stele, if that I mihte,  
 A glad word or a goodly syhte;  
 And evere mi service I profre,  
 And namly whan sche wol gon offre, 7140  
 For thanne I lede hire, if I may,  
 For somewhat wolde I stele away.  
 Whan I beclippe hire on the wast,  
 Yit ate leste I stele a tast,  
 And otherwhile 'grant mercy'  
 Sche seith, and so winne I therby

7119 or of] of a AM    7124 to me hap be strange H1 . . . B1, W  
 7131 on hire A . . . B1 on here H1    7137 wold C, S, F wolde AJ, B



[SACRILEGE OF  
LOVERS.]

A lusti touch, a good word eke,  
 Bot al the remenant to seke  
 Is fro mi pourpos wonder ferr.  
 So mai I seie, as I seide er, 7150  
 In holy cherche if that I wowe,  
 My conscience it wolde allowe,  
 Be so that up amendement  
 I mihte gete assignement  
 Wher forto spede in other place:  
 Such Sacrilege I holde a grace.  
 And thus, mi fader, soth to seie,  
 In cherche riht as in the weie,  
 If I mihte oght of love take,  
 Such hansell have I noght forsake. 7160  
 Bot finali I me confesse, P. ii. 374  
 Ther is in me non holinesse,  
 Whil I hire se in eny stede;  
 And yit, for oght that evere I dede,  
 No Sacrilege of hire I tok,  
 Bot if it were of word or lok,  
 Or elles if that I hir fredde,  
 Whan I toward offringe hir ledde,  
 Take therof what I take may,  
 For elles bere I noght away: 7170  
 For thogh I wolde oght elles have,  
 Alle othre thinges ben so save (7350\*)  
 And kept with such a privilege,  
 That I mai do no Sacrilege.  
 God wot mi wille natheles,  
 Thogh I mot nedes kepe pes  
 And malgre myn so let it passe,  
 Mi will therto is noght the lasse,  
 If I mihte other wise aweie.  
 Forthi, mi fader, I you preie, 7180  
 Tell what you thenketh therupon,  
 If I therof have gult or non.

7152 I wolde AdBTA      7160 I om. AMR      7163 eny] holi  
 S . . . ΔΔ      7166 as it were H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>      3if I were J      7172 so]  
 to AM      7177 so] sone H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>      7181 3e þenken AM  
 3ou þenken H<sub>1</sub>XRCL      ye thingeth W

Confessor.

Thi will, mi Sone, is forto blame,  
 The remenant is bot a game,  
 That I have herd the telle as yit.  
 Bot tak this lore into thi wit,  
 That alle thing hath time and stede,  
 The cherche serveth for the bede,  
 The chambre is of an other speche.  
 Bot if thou wistest of the wreche,  
 Hou Sacrilege it hath aboght,  
 Thou woldest betre ben bethoght;  
 And for thou schalt the more amende,  
 A tale I wole on the despende.

7190  
 P. II. 375

To alle men, as who seith, knowe  
 It is, and in the world thurgh blowe,  
 Hou that of Troie Lamedon  
 To Hercules and to Jasoun,  
 Whan toward Colchos out of Grece  
 Be See sailende upon a piece  
 Of lond of Troie reste preide,—  
 Bot he hem wrathfulli congeide:  
 And for thei founde him so vilein,  
 Whan thei come into Grece ayein,  
 With pouer that thei gete myhte  
 Towardes Troie thei hem dyhte,  
 And ther thei token such vengeance,  
 Wherof stant yit the remembrance;  
 For thei destruide king and al,  
 And lesten bot the brente wal.  
 The Grecs of Troiens many slowe  
 And prisoners thei toke ynowe,  
 Among the whiche ther was on,  
 The kinges doughter Lamedon,  
 Esiona, that faire thing,  
 Which unto Thelamon the king  
 Be Hercules and be thassent  
 Of al the hole parlement

[TALE OF PARIS AND HELEN]

Hic in amoris causa  
 super istius vicii arti-  
 culo ponit exemplum  
 Et narrat, pro eo quod  
 7200 Paris Priami Regis fi-  
 lius Helenam Menelai  
 uxorem in quadam  
 Grece insula a templo  
 Veneris Sacrilegus ab-  
 duxit, illa Troie famo-  
 sissima obsidio per  
 universi orbis climata  
 divulgata precipue  
 causabatur. Ita quod  
 huiusmodi Sacrileg-  
 um non solum ad  
 ipsius regis Priami  
 omniumque suorum  
 interitum, set etiam  
 7210 ad perpetuam urbis  
 desolationem vindicte  
 fomitem ministrabat.

7194 on þe I wol Hi... CB<sub>1</sub> on þe wol I L 7203 *margin* famosissima F  
 7205 *margin* universa BT universum A... B<sub>1</sub> 7206 *margin*  
 causabat A... B<sub>1</sub> 7208 the] in AM... B<sub>1</sub> 7215 that] þe Hi... B<sub>1</sub>

[TALE OF PARIS AND  
HELEN.]

Was at his wille yove and granted.  
And thus hath Grece Troie danted, 7220  
And hom thei torne in such manere: P. ii. 376  
Bot after this nou schalt thou hiere (7400\*)  
The cause why this tale I telle,  
Upon the chances that befelle.

King Lamedon, which deide thus,  
He hadde a Sone, on Priamus,  
Which was noght thilke time at hom:  
Bot whan he herde of this, he com,  
And fond hou the Cite was falle,  
Which he began anon to walle 7230  
And made ther a cite newe,  
That thei whiche othre londes knewe  
Tho seiden, that of lym and Ston  
In al the world so fair was non.  
And on that o side of the toun  
The king let maken Ylioun,  
That hihe Tour, that stronge place,  
Which was adrad of no manace  
Of quarel nor of non engin;  
And thogh men wolde make a Myn, 7240  
No mannes craft it mihte aproche,  
For it was sett upon a roche.  
The walles of the toun aboute,  
Hem stod of al the world no doute,  
And after the proporcion  
Sex gates weren of the toun  
Of such a forme, of such entaile,  
That hem to se was gret mervaile:  
The diches weren brode and depe,  
A fewe men it mihte kepe 7250  
From al the world, as semeth tho, P. ii. 377  
Bot if the goddes weren fo.  
Gret presse unto that cite drouh,  
So that ther was of poeple ynouh,  
Of Burgeis that therinne duellen;  
Ther mai no mannes tunge tellen

## LIBER QUINTUS

151

[TALE OF PARIS AND  
HELEN.]

Hou that cite was riche of good.

Whan al was mad and al wel stod,

King Priamus tho him bethoghte

What thei of Grece whilom wroghte,

7260

And what was of her swerd devoured,

And hou his Soster deshonoured

With Thelamon away was lad :

And so thenkende he wax unglad,

And sette anon a parlement,

'To which the lordes were assent.

In many a wise ther was spoke,

Hou that thei mihten ben awroke,

Bot ate laste natheles

Thei seiden alle, 'Acord and pes.'

7270

To setten either part in reste

It thoghte hem thanne for the beste

(7450\*)

With resonable amendement ;

And thus was Anthenor forth sent

To axe Esionam ayein

And witen what thei wolden sein.

So passeth he the See be barge

To Grece forto seie his charge,

The which he seide redely

Unto the lordes by and by :

7280

Bot where he spak in Grece aboute, P. ii 378

He herde noght bot wordes stoute,

And nameliche of Thelamon ;

The maiden wolde he noght forgon,

He seide, for no maner thing,

And bad him gon hom to his king,

For there gat he non amende

For oght he couthe do or sende.

This Anthenor ayein goth hom

Unto his king, and whan he com,

7290

He tolde in Grece of that he herde,

And hou that Thelamon ansuerde,

7257 of good] and good JH. AdBTA 7264 þo þenkende he B  
 þus þenking he GC he þenking he H1XRLB2 he þenking þus E  
 7271 every AdBT 7274 Antenor F 7275 Esiona H. . B2, I  
 7277 be large Ad by grace AM

[TALE OF PARIS AND  
HELEN.]

And hou thei were at here above,  
That thei wol nouthur pes ne love,  
Bot every man schal don his beste.  
Bot for men sein that nyht hath reste,  
The king bethoghte him al that nyht,  
And erli, whan the dai was lyht,  
He tok conseil of this matiere ;  
And thei acorde in this manere, 7300  
That he withouten eny lette  
A certain time scholde sette  
Of Parlement to ben avised :  
And in the wise it was devised,  
Of parlement he sette a day,  
And that was in the Monthe of Maii.  
This Priamus hadde in his yhte  
A wif, and Hecuba sche hyhte,  
Be whom that time ek hadde he  
Of Sones fyve, and douhtres thre 7310  
Besiden hem, and thritty mo, P. ii. 379  
And weren knyhtes alle tho,  
Bot noght upon his wif begete,  
Bot elles where he myhte hem gete  
Of wommen whiche he hadde knowe ;  
Such was the world at thilke throwe :  
So that he was of children riche,  
As therof was noman his liche.

Of Parlement the dai was come,  
Ther ben the lordes alle and some ; 7320  
Tho was pronounced and pourposed,  
And al the cause hem was desclosed, (7500\*)  
Hou Anthenor in Grece ferde.  
Thei seten alle stille and herde,  
And tho spak every man aboute :  
Ther was alegged many a doute,  
And many a proud word spoke also ;  
Bot for the moste part as tho

7297 that] þe S. . . Δ 7303 f. *two lines om.* AdBT 7311 hem]  
tuo (too) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 7318 his] him H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, B, W 7327 And  
a proud word AMH<sub>1</sub>XRCL And proude wordes B<sub>2</sub> 7328 as tho]  
also AdBT

Thei wisten noght what was the beste,  
Or forto werre or forto reste.

[TALE OF PARIS AND  
HELEN.]  
7330

Bot he that was withoute fere,  
Hector, among the lordes there  
His tale tolde in such a wise,  
And seide, 'Lordes, ye ben wise,  
Ye knowen this als wel as I,  
Above all othre most worthi  
Stant nou in Grece the manhode  
Of worthinesse and of knihthode;  
For who so wole it wel agrope,  
To hem belongeth al Europe,  
Which is the thridde parti evene  
Of al the world under the hevene;  
And we be bot of folk a fewe.

7340  
P. ii. 380

So were it reson forto schewe  
The peril, er we falle thrinne:  
Betre is to leve, than beginne  
Thing which as mai noght ben achieved;  
He is noght wys that fint him grieved,  
And doth so that his grief be more;  
For who that loketh al tofore  
And wol noght se what is behinde,  
He mai fulofte hise harmes finde:  
Wicke is to stryve and have the worse.  
We have encheson forto corse,  
This wot I wel, and forto hate  
The Greks; bot er that we debate  
With hem that ben of such a myht,  
It is ful good that every wiht  
Be of himself riht wel bethoght.  
Bot as for me this seie I noght;  
For while that mi lif wol stonde,  
If that ye taken werre on honde,  
Falle it to beste or to the werste,  
I schal miselven be the ferste  
To grieven hem, what evere I may.

7350

7360

7336 all S, F alle AJ, B  
(for teachewe &c.) H1 . . . B2  
falle it to werste H1B2

7344 forto schewe] forto eschewe  
7363 or to werste JXERCL, H1

[TALE OF PARIS AND  
HELEN.]

I wol noght ones seie nay  
To thing which that youre conseil demeth,  
For unto me wel more it quemeth  
The werre certes than the pes ;  
Bot this I seie natheles, 7370  
As me belongeth forto seie. P. ii. 381  
Nou schape ye the beste weie.' (7550\*)

Whan Hector hath seid his avis,  
Next after him tho spak Paris,  
Which was his brother, and alleide  
What him best thoghte, and thus he seide :  
'Strong thing it is to soffre wrong,  
And suffre schame is more strong,  
Bot we have suffred bothe tuo ;  
And for al that yit have we do 7380  
What so we mihte to reforme  
The pes, whan we in such a forme  
Sente Anthenor, as ye wel knowe.  
And thei here grete wordes blowe  
Upon her wrongful dedes eke ;  
And who that wole himself noght meke  
To pes, and list no reson take,  
Men sein reson him wol forsake :  
For in the multitude of men  
Is noght the strengthe, for with ten 7390  
It hath be sen in trew querele  
Ayein an hundred false dele,  
And had the betre of goddes grace.  
This hath befalle in many place ;  
And if it like unto you alle,  
I wole assaie, hou so it falle,  
Oure enemis if I mai grieve ;  
For I have cawht a gret believe  
Upon a point I wol declare.

This ender day, as I gan fare 7400  
To hunte unto the grete hert, P. ii. 382  
Which was tofore myn houndes stert,

7382 This wrong and schame in bettre forme H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> (The  
wrong X) 7388 wol (wil) him H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, W 7391 trew F  
trewe AJC, SB 7400 ende er dai A

## LIBER QUINTUS

155

[TALE OF PARIS AND  
HELEN.]

And every man went on his syde  
 Him to poursuie, and I to ryde  
 Began the chace, and soth to seie,  
 Withinne a while out of mi weie  
 I rod, and nyste where I was.  
 And slep me cauhte, and on the gras  
 Beside a welle I lay me doun  
 To slepe, and in a visoun 7410  
 To me the god Mercurie cam;  
 Goddesses thre with him he nam,  
 Minerve, Venus and Juno,  
 And in his hond an Appel tho  
 He hield of gold with lettres write:  
 And this he dede me to wite,  
 Hou that thei putt hem upon me,  
 That to the faireste of hem thre  
 Of gold that Appel scholde I yive.  
 With ech of hem tho was I schrive, 7420  
 And echon faire me behihte;  
 Bot Venus seide, if that sche mihte (7600\*)  
 That Appel of mi yifte gete,  
 Sche wolde it neveremor foryete,  
 And seide hou that in Grece lond  
 Sche wolde bringe unto myn hond  
 Of al this Erthe the faireste;  
 So that me thoghte it for the beste,  
 To hire and yaf that Appel tho.  
 Thus hope I wel, if that I go, 7430  
 That sche for me wol so ordeine, P. ii. 383  
 That thei matiere forto pleigne  
 Schul have, er that I come ayein.  
 Nou have ye herd that I wol sein:  
 Sey ye what stant in youre avis.  
 And every man tho seide his,  
 And sundri causes thei recorde,  
 Bot ate laste thei acorde  
 That Paris schal to Grece wende,

7403 went AC, S, F wente J, BT 7405 thel to AdBT  
 7410 a visoun MXGCLBz. Δ, FWH: auisioun (avision etc) AJH, ER,  
 SAdBT 7417 putt A, S, F putte JC, B 7419 that] be AM



[TALE OF PARIS AND  
HELEN.]

And thus the parlement tok ende. 7440

Cassandra, whan sche herde of this,  
The which to Paris Soster is,  
Anon sche gan to wepe and weile,  
And seide, 'Allas, what mai ous eile?  
Fortune with hire blinde whiel  
Ne wol noght lete ous stonde wel:  
For this I dar wel undertake,  
That if Paris his weie take,  
As it is seid that he schal do,  
We ben for evere thanne undo.' 7450

This, which Cassandre thanne hihte,  
In al the world as it berth sihte,  
In bokes as men finde write,  
Is that Sibille of whom ye wite,  
That alle men yit clepen sage.  
Whan that sche wiste of this viage,  
Hou Paris schal to Grece fare,  
No womman mihte worse fare  
Ne sorwe more than sche dede;  
And riht so in the same stede 7460  
Ferde Helenus, which was hir brother, P. ii. 384  
Of prophecie and such an other:

And al was holde bot a jape,  
So that the pourpos which was schape,  
Or were hem lief or were hem loth,  
Was holde, and into Grece goth  
This Paris with his retenance.

And as it fell upon his chance,  
Of Grece he londeth in an yle,  
And him was told the same whyle 7470

Of folk which he began to freyne,  
'Tho was in thyle queene Heleyne, (7650\*)

And ek of contres there aboute  
Of ladis many a lusti route,  
With mochel worthi poeple also.  
And why thei comen theder tho,  
The cause stod in such a wise,—

7441 Cassandre H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
7470 þat same XRCLB<sub>2</sub>, T

7464 the om. AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>

[TALE OF PARIS AND  
HELEN.]

For worschipe and for sacrificise  
That thei to Venus wolden make,  
As thei tofore hadde undertake,  
Some of good will, some of behestē,  
For thanne was hire hire feste  
Withinne a temple which was there.

7480

Whan Paris wiste what thei were,  
Anon he schop his ordinance  
To gon and don his obeissance  
To Venus on hire holi day,  
And dede upon his beste aray.  
With gret richeshe he him behongeth,  
As it to such a lord belongeth,  
He was noght armed natheles,  
Bot as it were in lond of pes,  
And thus he goth forth out of Schipe  
And takth with him his felaschipe:  
In such manere as I you seie  
Unto the temple he held his weie.

7490

P. ii. 385

Tydinge, which goth overal  
To grete and smale, forth withal  
Com to the queenes Ere and tolde  
Hou Paris com, and that he wolde  
Do sacrificise to Venus:  
And whan sche herde telle thus,  
She thoghte, hou that it evere be,  
That sche wole him abyde and se.

7500

Forth comth Paris with glad visage  
Into the temple on pelrinage,  
Wher unto Venus the goddesse  
He yifh and offreth gret richeshe,  
And preith hir that he preie wolde.  
And thanne aside he gan beholde,  
And sih wher that this ladi stod;  
And he forth in his freisshe mod  
Goth ther sche was and made hir chiere,  
As he wel couthe in his manere,  
That of his wordes such plesance  
Sche tok, that al hire aqueintance,

7510

7524 wolde AdB

7510 on side H1... Ba (except E)

[TALE OF PARIS AND  
HELEN.]

Als ferforth as the herte lay,  
He stal er that he wente away.  
So goth he forth and tok his leve,  
And thoghte, anon as it was eve, 7520  
He wolde don his Sacrilege, P. ii. 386  
That many a man it scholde abegge. (7700\*)

Whan he to Schipe ayein was come,  
To him he bath his conseil nome,  
And al devised the matiere  
In such a wise as thou schalt hiere.  
Withinne nyht al prively  
His men he warneth by and by,  
That thei be redy armed sone  
For certein thing which was to done: 7530  
And thei anon ben redi alle,  
And ech on other gan to calle,  
And went hem out upon the stronde  
And tok a pourpos ther alonde  
Of what thing that thei wolden do,  
Toward the temple and forth thei go.  
So fell it, of devocion  
Heleine in contemplacion  
With many an other worthi wiht  
Was in the temple and wok al nyht, 7540  
To bidde and preie unto thymage  
Of Venus, as was thanne usage;  
So that Paris riht as him liste  
Into the temple, er thei it wiste,  
Com with his men al sodeinly,  
And alle at ones sette ascry  
In hem whiche in the temple were,  
For tho was mochel poeple there;  
Bot of defense was no bote,  
So soffren thei that soffre mote. 7550

Paris unto the queene wente, P. ii. 387  
And hire in bothe hise armes hente  
With him and with his felaschipe,  
And forth thei bere hire unto Schipe.

7533 went A, SB, F wente JC 7535 that om. AM... B<sub>2</sub> 7541 unto]  
to H<sub>1</sub>... B<sub>2</sub> 7544 it om. H<sub>1</sub>... B<sub>2</sub> 7554 in to AM... B<sub>2</sub>, WH<sub>2</sub> to Δ

[TALE OF PARIS AND  
HELEN.]

Up goth the Seil and forth thei wente,  
 And such a wynd fortune hem sente,  
 Til thei the havene of Troie cauhte;  
 Where out of Schipe anon thei strauhte  
 And gon hem forth toward the toun,  
 The which cam with processoun 7560  
 Ayein Paris to sen his preie.  
 And every man began to seie  
 To Paris and his felaschipe  
 Al that thei couthen of worschipe;  
 Was non so litel man in Troie,  
 That he ne made merthe and joie  
 Of that Paris hath wonne Heleine.  
 Bot al that merthe is sorwe and peine  
 To Helenus and to Cassaundre;  
 For thei it token schame and sklaundre 7570  
 And lost of al the comun grace,  
 That Paris out of holi place (7750\*)  
 Be Stelthe hath take a mannes wif,  
 Wherof that he schal lese his lif  
 And many a worthi man therto,  
 And al the Cite be fordo,  
 Which nevere schal be mad ayein.  
 And so it fell, riht as thei sein,  
 The Sacrilege which he wroghte  
 Was cause why the Gregois soughte 7580  
 Unto the toun and it beleie, P. ii. 388  
 And wolden nevere parte aweie,  
 Til what be sleichte and what be strengthe  
 Thei hadde it wonne in brede and lengthe,  
 And brent and slayn that was withinne.  
 Now se, mi Sone, which a sinne  
 Is Sacrilege in holy stede:  
 Be war therfore and bidd thi bede,  
 And do nothing in holy cherche,  
 Bot that thou miht be reson werche. 7590  
 And ek tak hiede of Achilles,  
 Whan he unto his love ches  
 Polixena, that was also

7570 token] tolden S . . . A

[SACRILEGE OF  
LOVERS.]

In holi temple of Appollo,  
Which was the cause why he dyde  
And al his lust was leyd asyde.

And Troilus upon Criseide  
Also his ferste love leide  
In holi place, and hou it ferde,  
As who seith, al the world it herde;  
Forsake he was for Diomedé,  
Such was of love his laste mede.

7600

Confessor.

Forthi, mi Sone, I wolde rede,  
Be this ensample as thou myht rede,  
Sech elles, wher thou wolt, thi grace,  
And war the wel in holi place  
What thou to love do or speke,  
In aunter if it so be wreke  
As thou hast herd me told before.

[DIVISIONS OF  
AVARICE.]

And tak good hiede also therfore  
Upon what forme, of Avarice

7610

P. ii. 389

Mor than of eny other vice,  
I have divided in parties  
The branches, whiche of compainies  
Thurghout the world in general  
Ben nou the leders overal,  
Of Covoitise and of Perjure,  
Of fals brocage and of Usure,  
Of Skarsnesse and Unkindeschipe,  
Which neveré drouh to felaschipe,  
Of Robberie and privi Stelthe,  
Which don is for the worldes welthe,  
Of Ravine and of Sacrilegge,  
Which makth the conscience agregge;  
Although it mai richesse atteigne,  
It floureth, bot it schal noght greine  
Unto the fruit of rihtwisnesse,  
Bot who that wolde do largesse  
Upon the reule as it is yive,  
So myhte a man in trouthe live

7620

(7800\*)

7630

7602 of lust (luste) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 7604 line om. B 7611 what] þe  
AdBT that W 7619 Skarnesse F 7621 and of M . . . B<sub>2</sub>, T  
7630 to troupe AMH<sub>1</sub>XRCLB<sub>2</sub> by troupe E

Toward his god, and ek also  
 Toward the world, for bothe tuo  
 Largesse awaiteth as belongeth,  
 To neither part that he ne wrongeth;  
 He kepeth himself, he kepeth his frendes,  
 So stant he sauf to bothe hise endes,  
 That he exceedeth no mesure,  
 So wel he can himself mesure:  
 Wherof, mi Sone, thou schalt wite,  
 So as the Philosophre hath write.

7640

xiii. *Prodeus et parcus duo sunt extrema, que largus P. ii. 390* [PRODIGALITY AND  
*Est horum medius, plebis in ore bonus.* LARGESS.]

Between the tuo extremities  
 Of vice stant the propretes  
 Of vertu, and to prove it so  
 Tak Avarice and tak also  
 The vice of Prodegalite;  
 Between hem Liberalite,  
 Which is the vertu of Largesse,  
 Stant and governeth his noblesse.  
 For tho tuo vices in discord  
 Stonde evere, as I finde of record;  
 So that between here tuo debat  
 Largesse reuleth his estat.  
 For in such wise as Avarice,  
 As I tofore have told the vice,  
 Thurgh streit holdinge and thurgh skarsnesse  
 Stant in contraire to Largesse,  
 Riht so stant Prodegalite  
 Revers, bot noght in such degre.  
 For so as Avarice spareth,  
 And forto kepe his tresor careth,  
 That other al his oghne and more  
 Ayein the wise mannes lore  
 Yifeth and despendeth hiere and there,  
 So that him reccheth nevere where.  
 While he mai borwe, he wol despende,

7650

7660

Nota hic de virtute  
 Largitatis, que ad  
 oppositum Avaricie  
 inter duo extrema,  
 videlicet Parcimoni-  
 am et Prodegalitatem,  
 specialiter consistit.

7634 partie (party) hat he wronged AM . . B<sub>1</sub>  
 Latin Verses xiii. 1 extrema que C, B extremaque J, F

[PRODIGALITY AND  
LARGESSE.]

Til ate laste he seith, 'I wende';  
 Bot that is spoken al to late,  
 For thanne is poverte ate gate  
 And takth him evene be the shieve, **P. ii. 391**  
 For erst wol he no wisdom heve. 7670  
 And riht as Avarice is Sinne,  
 That wolde his tresor kepe and winne, (7850\*)  
 Riht so is Prodegalite:  
 Bot of Largesse in his degre,  
 Which evene stant between the tuo,  
 The hihe god and man also  
 The vertu ech of hem commendeth.  
 For he himselven ferst amendeth,  
 That overal his name spredeth,  
 And to alle othre, where it nedeth, 7680  
 He yifh his good in such a wise,  
 That he makth many a man arise,  
 Which elles scholde falle lowe.  
 Largesce mai noght ben unknowe;  
 For what lond that he regneth inne,  
 It mai noght faile forto winne  
 Thurgh his decerte love and grace,  
 Wher it schal faile in other place.  
 And thus between tomoche and lyte  
 Largesce, which is noght to wyte, 7690  
 Halt evere forth the middel weie:  
 Bot who that torne wole aweie  
 Fro that to Prodegalite,  
 Anon he lest the proprete  
 Of vertu and goth to the vice;  
 For in such wise as Avarice  
 Lest for scarsnesse his goode name,  
 Riht so that other is to blame,  
 Which thurgh his wast mesure excedeth, **P. ii. 392**  
 For noman wot what harm that bredeth. 7700  
 Bot mochel joie ther betydeh,

7689 tomoche E, S, F to moche AJ, BT tuo (two) moche  
 Hi... B<sub>1</sub> (except E) the moche W 7694 lost AM... B<sub>1</sub>  
 (except E) loseth W leueth Δ 7700 it bredeþ A... B<sub>1</sub>  
 7701-7746 Forty-six lines om. S... Δ (ms. A)

Wher that largesse an herte guydeth  
 For his mesure is so governed,  
 That he to bothe partz is lerned,  
 To god and to the world also,  
 He doth reson to bothe tuo.  
 The povere folk of his almesse  
 Relieved ben in the destresse  
 Of thurst, of hunger and of cold ;  
 The yifte of him was nevere sold,  
 Bot freiy yive, and natheles  
 The myhti god of his encess  
 Rewardeth him of double grace ;  
 The hevене he doth him to pourchace  
 And yifth him ek the worlides good :  
 And thus the Cote for the hod  
 Largesse takth, and yit no Sinne  
 He doth, hou so that evere he winne.

{PRODIGALITY AND  
LARGESS }

7710

What man hath hors men yive him hors,  
 And who non hath of him no fors,  
 For he mai thanne on fote go ;  
 The world hath evere stonde so.  
 Bot forto loken of the tweie,  
 A man to go the siker weie,  
 Betre is to yive than to take :  
 With yifte a man mai frendes make,  
 Bot who that takth or gret or smal,  
 He takth a charge forth withal,  
 And stant noght fre til it be quit.  
 So forto deme in mannes wit,  
 It helpeth more a man to have  
 His oghne good, than forto crave  
 Of othre men and make him bounde,  
 Wher elles he mai stonde unbounde.

Lucas. Omni ha-  
benti dabitur

7720

Beacius est dare  
quam accipere.

P. ii. 393

7730

Senec conseileth in this wise,  
 And seith, 'Bot if thi good suffise  
 Unto the liking of thi wille,  
 Withdrawb thi lust and hold the stille,  
 And be to thi good sufficient.'

Seneca. Si res tue  
tibi non sufficient, fac  
ut rebus tuis sufficias.

7725 *margin* Beacius—accipere om. A . . . B  
 accipere] ac-pere F



[PRODIGALITY AND  
LARGESS.]

Apostolus. Ordina-  
ta caritas incipit a  
seipsa.

For that thing is appourtenant 7740  
To trouthe and causeth to be fre  
After the reule of charite,  
Which first beginneth of himselve.  
For if thou richest othre tuelve,  
Wherof thou schalt thiself be povere,  
I not what thonk thou miht recovere.

Whil that a man hath good to yive,  
With grete routes he mai live  
And hath his frendes overal,  
And everich of him telle schal. 7750  
Therwhile he hath his fuile packe,  
Thei seie, 'A good felawe is Jacke';  
Bot whanne it faileth ate laste,  
Anon his pris thei overcaste,  
For thanne is ther non other lawe  
Bot, 'Jacke was a good felawe.'  
Whan thei him povere and nedey se, P. ii. 394  
Thei lete him passe and farwel he;  
Al that he wende of compaignie  
Is thanne torned to folie. 7760

[PRODIGALITY OF  
LOVERS.]

Bot nou to speke in other kinde  
Of love, a man mai suche finde,  
That wher thei come in every route  
Thei caste and waste her love aboute,  
Til al here time is overgon,  
And thanne have thei love non:  
For who that loveth overal,  
It is no reson that he schal (7900  
Of love have eny proprete.  
Forthi, mi Sone, avise thee  
If thou of love hast be to large,  
For such a man is noght to charge:  
And if it so be that thou hast  
Despended al thi time in wast  
And set thi love in sondri place,  
Though thou the substance of thi grace

7742 margin Aplus A. Amplus H. ERC. Amplius B. Amb.  
7751 The whil J, W. pat whil C. (Al þe while he hath h.  
7766 non] gon AM

## LIBER QUINTUS

165

{PRODIGALITY OF  
LOVERS.}

Lese ate laste, it is no wonder ;  
 For he that put himselven under,  
 As who seith, comun overal,  
 He lest the love special 7780  
 Of eny on, if sche be wys ;  
 For love schal noght bere his pris  
 Be reson, whanne it passeth on.  
 So have I sen ful many on,  
 That were of love wel at ese,  
 Whiche after felle in gret desese  
 Thurgh wast of love, that thei spente P. ii. 395  
 In sondri places wher thei wente.

Riht so, mi Sone, I axe of thee Confessor.  
 If thou with Prodegalite 7790  
 Hast hier and ther thi love wasted.

Mi fader, nay ; bot I have tasted Amans.  
 In many a place as I have go,  
 And yit love I nevere on of tho,  
 Bot forto drive forth the dai.  
 For lieveth wel, myn herte is ay  
 Withoute mo for everemore  
 Al upon on, for I nomore  
 Desire bot hire love al one :  
 So make I many a prive mone, 7800  
 For wel I fiele I have despended  
 Mi longe love and noght amended  
 Mi sped, for oght I finde yit.  
 If this be wast to youre wit  
 Of love, and Prodegalite,  
 Nou, goode fader, demeth ye :  
 Bot of o thing I wol me schryve,  
 That I schal for no love thryve,  
 Bot if himself me wol relieve.

Mi Sone, that I mai wel lieve : 7810 Confessor.  
 And natheles me semeth so,  
 For oght that thou hast yit misdo  
 Of time which thou hast despended,  
 It mai with grace ben amended.

7784 sene (sen) many on H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub> 7804 to] vnto E, B  
 7809 wol me AdBT, W me wolde M

[PRODIGALITY OF  
LOVERS.]

For thing which mai be worth the cost  
Per chaunce is nouthur wast ne lost ;  
For what thing stant on aventure, **P. ii. 396**  
That can no worldes creature (7950\*)  
Telle in certein hou it schal wende,  
Til he therof mai sen an ende. 7820

So that I not as yit therfore  
If thou, mi Sone, hast wonne or lore :  
For ofte time, as it is sene,  
Whan Somer hath lost al his grene  
And is with Wynter wast and bare,  
That him is left nothing to spare,  
Al is recovered in a throwe ;  
The colde wyndes overblowe,  
And stille be the scharpe schoures,  
And soudeinliche ayein his floures 7830  
The Somer hapneth and is riche :  
And so per cas thi graces liche,  
Mi Sone, thogh thou be nou povere  
Of love, yit thou miht recovere.

Amans.

Mi fader, certes grant merci :  
Ye have me tawht so redeli,  
That evere whil I live schal  
The betre I mai be war withal  
Of thing which ye have seid er this.  
Bot overmore hou that it is, 7840  
Toward mi schrifte as it belongeth,  
To wite of othre pointz me longeth ;  
Wherof that ye me wolden teche  
With al myn herte I you beseche.

**Explicit Liber Quintus.**

7817 in aventure AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, W      7819 Telle JC, SB    Tell A, F  
7823 tymes AdBTΔ      7829 stilled S . . . Δ      7840 euermore  
H<sub>1</sub>XR B<sub>1</sub>, BΔ, W

## Incipit Liber Sextus

1. *Ist gula que nostrum maculauit prima parentem* P. iii, 1

*Ex vetito poma, quo dolet omnis homo.*

[GLUTTONY]

*Hec agit ut corpus anime contraria spirat,*

*Quo caro fit crassa, spiritus atque macer.*

*Intus et exterius si que virtutis habentur,*

*Potibus ebrietas conuincata ruit.*

*Mersa sopore, labris, que Bachus inebriat hospes,*

*Indignata Venus oscula raro premit.*

THE grete Senne original,  
Which every man in general  
Upon his berthe hath envenymed,  
In Paradis it was mystymed:  
Whan Adam of thilke Appel bot,  
His swete morscel was to hot,  
Which dedly made the mankinde.  
And in the bokes as I finde,  
This vice, which so out of rule  
Hath sette ous alle, is cleped Gule;  
Of which the branches ben so grete,  
That of hem alle I wol noght trete,  
Bot only as touchende of tuo  
I thenke speke and of no mo,  
Wherof the ferste is Dronkeschipe,  
Which berth the cuppe felaschipe.  
Ful many a wonder doth this vice,  
He can make of a wisman nyce,  
And of a fool, that him schal seme  
That he can al the lawe deme,  
And given every juggement  
Which longeth to the firmament  
Bothe of the sterre and of the mone;

Hic in sexto libro  
tractare intendit de il-  
lo capitali vicio quod  
Gula dicitur, nec non  
et de eiusdem duabus  
solummodo speciebus,  
videbret Ebrietate et  
Delicacia, ex quibus  
humane concupiscen-  
cie oblectamentum ha-  
bundantius augmenta-  
tur.

P. iii, 2

[1. DRUNKENNESS.]

20

10 sette AJC, S, F set BT

13 tuo] mo B

[DRUNKENNESS.]

And thus he makth a gret clerk sone  
 Of him that is a lewed man.  
 Ther is nothing which he ne can,  
 Whil he hath Dronkeschipe on honde,  
 He knowth the See, he knowth the stronde,  
 He is a noble man of armes,  
 And yit no strengthe is in his armes : 30  
 Ther he was strong ynouh tofore,  
 With Dronkeschipe it is forlore,  
 And al is changed his astat,  
 And wext anon so fieble and mat,  
 That he mai nouthur go ne come,  
 Bot al togedre him is benome  
 The pouer bothe of hond and fot,  
 So that algate abide he mot.  
 And alle hise wittes he foryet,  
 The which is to him such a let, 40  
 That he wot nevere what he doth, P. iii. 3  
 Ne which is fals, ne which is soth,  
 Ne which is dai, ne which is nyht,  
 And for the time he knowth no wyht,  
 That he ne wot so moche as this,  
 What maner thing himselven is,  
 Or he be man, or he be beste.  
 That holde I riht a sori feste,  
 Whan he that reson understod  
 So soudeinliche is woxe wod, 50  
 Or elles lich the dede man,  
 Which nouthur go ne speke can.  
 Thus ofte he is to bedde broght,  
 Bot where he lith yit wot he noght,  
 Til he arise upon the morwe ;  
 And thanne he seith, 'O, which a sorwe  
 It is a man be drinkeles !'  
 So that halfdrunke in such a res  
 With dreie mouth he sterte him uppe,  
 And seith, 'Nou *bailles* *ça* the cuppe.' 60

34 wext BT, F wext J wexþ A wexþ C 44 As for AdBTA  
 57 a man be] for to be AdBT a man to be JBa, Δ 59 sterte AJ.  
 S, F stert C, BT

That made him lese his wit at eve  
 Is thanne a morwe al his beleve ;  
 The cuppe is al that evere him pleseth,  
 And also that him most deseseth ;  
 It is the cuppe whom he serveth,  
 Which alle cares fro him kerveth  
 And alle bales to him bringeth :  
 In joie he wepeth, in sorwe he singeth,  
 For Dronkeschipe is so divers,  
 It may no whyle stonde in vers. 70  
 He drinkth the wyn, bot ate laste P. iii. 4  
 The wyn drynkth him and bint him faste,  
 And leith him drunke be the wal,  
 As him which is his bonde thral  
 And al in his subjeccion.

[DRUNKENNESS.]

And lich to such condicion,  
 As forto speke it other wise,  
 It falleth that the moste wise  
 Ben otherwhile of love adoted,  
 And so bewhaped and assoted, 80  
 Of drunke men that nevere yit  
 Was non, which half so loste his wit  
 Of drinke, as thei of such thing do  
 Which cleped is the jolif wo ;  
 And waxen of here oghne thought  
 So drunke, that thei knowe noght  
 What reson is, or more or lesse.  
 Such is the kinde of that sieknesse,  
 And that is noght for lacke of brain,  
 Bot love is of so gret a main, 90  
 That where he takth an herte on honde,  
 Ther mai nothing his miht withstonde :  
 The wise Salomon was nome,  
 And stronge Sampson overcome,  
 The knihtli David him ne mihte  
 Rescoue, that he with the sihte  
 Of Bersabee ne was bestad,  
 Virgile also was overlad,

[LOVE-DRUNKEN-  
NESS.]

66 care H1 . . . B1 69 fro F 79 doted AdBT 86 þei ne  
 knowe AM . . . B1 (except GE) þei knewe J

[LOVE-DRUNKEN-  
NESS.]

Confessio Amantis.

And Aristotle was put under.  
Forthi, mi Sone, it is no wonder  
If thou be drunke of love among,  
Which is above alle othre strong :  
And if so is that thou so be,  
Tell me thi Schrifte in privite ;  
It is no schame of such a thew  
A yong man to be dronkelew.  
Of such Phisique I can a part,  
And as me semeth be that art,  
Thou scholdest be Phisonomie  
Be schapen to that maladie  
Of lovedrunke, and that is routhe.

100  
P. iii. 5

110

Ha, holi fader, al is trouthe  
That ye me telle : I am beknowe  
That I with love am so bethrowe,  
And al myn herte is so thurgh sunke,  
That I am verraliche drunke,  
And yit I mai bothe speke and go.  
Bot I am overcome so,  
And torned fro miself so ciene,  
That ofte I wot noght what I mene ;  
So that excusen I ne mai  
Min herte, fro the ferste day  
That I cam to mi ladi kiththe,  
I was yit sobre nevere siththe.  
Wher I hire se or se hire noght,  
With musinge of min oghne thoght,  
Of love, which min herte assaileth,  
So drunke I am, that mi wit faileth  
And al mi brain is overtorned,  
And mi manere so mistorned,  
That I foryete al that I can  
And stonde lich a mased man ;  
That ofte, whanne I scholde pleie,  
It makth me drawe out of the weie  
In soulein place be miselve,  
As doth a labourer to delve,  
Which can no gentil mannes chere ;

120

130  
P. iii. 6

## LIBER SEXTUS

171

[LOVE DRUNKEN-  
NESS.]

Or elles as a lewed Frere,  
 Whan he is put to his penance,  
 Riht so lese I mi contenance.  
 And if it nedes so betyde,  
 That I in compaignie abyde,  
 Wher as I moste daunce and singe  
 The hokedance and carolinge,  
 Or forto go the newefot,  
 I mai noght wel heve up mi fot,  
 If that sche be noght in the weie;  
 For thanne is al mi merthe aweie,  
 And waxe anon of thoght so full,  
 Wherof mi limes ben so dull,  
 I mai unethes gon the pas.  
 For thus it is and evere was,  
 Whanne I on suche thoghtes muse,  
 The lust and merthe that men use,  
 Whan I se noght mi ladi byme,  
 Al is foryete for the time  
 So ferforth that mi wittes changen  
 And alle lustes fro me strangen,  
 That thei seie alle trewely,  
 And swere, that it am noght I.  
 For as the man which ofte drinketh,  
 With win that in his stomac sinketh  
 Wext drunke and witles for a throwe,  
 Riht so mi lust is overthrowe,  
 And of myn oghne thoght so mat  
 I wexe, that to myn astat  
 Ther is no lime wol me serve,  
 Bot as a drunke man I swerve,  
 And suffre such a Passion,  
 That men have gret compassion,  
 And everich be himself mervelleth  
 What thing it is that me so eilleth.  
 Such is the manere of mi wo  
 Which time that I am hire fro,

140

150

160

P. iii. 7

170

145 newefot S; F the rest newe foot (fot) 151 a pas H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 152 euer(e) it was AdBT 160 I am H<sub>1</sub>XERC 162 With]  
 The AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> 172 so om. H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>



[LOVE-DRUNKEN-  
NESS.]

Til eft ayein that I hire se.  
 Bot thanne it were a nycete  
 To telle you hou that I fare :  
 For whanne I mai upon hire stare,  
 Hire wommanhede, hire gentillesse,  
 Myn herte is full of such gladnesse, 180  
 That overpasseth so mi wit,  
 That I wot nevere where it sit,  
 Bot am so drunken of that sihte,  
 Me thenkth that for the time I mihte  
 Riht sterte thurgh the hole wall ;  
 And thanne I mai wel, if I schal,  
 Bothe singe and daunce and lepe aboute,  
 And holde forth the lusti route.  
 Bot natheles it falleth so  
 Fulofte, that I fro hire go 190  
 Ne mai, bot as it were a stake, P. iii. 8  
 I stonde avisement to take  
 And loke upon hire faire face ;  
 That for the while out of the place  
 For al the world ne myhte I wende.  
 Such lust comth thanne into mi mende,  
 So that withoute mete or drinke,  
 Of lusti thoughtes whiche I thinke  
 Me thenkth I mihte stonden evere ;  
 And so it were to me levere 200  
 Than such a sihte forto leve,  
 If that sche wolde yif me leve  
 To have so mochel of mi wille.  
 And thus thenkende I stonde stille  
 Withoute blenchinge of myn ybe,  
 Riht as me thoghte that I syhe  
 Of Paradis the moste joie :  
 And so therwhile I me rejoie,  
 Into myn herte a gret desir,  
 The which is hotere than the fyr, 210  
 Al soudeinliche upon me renneth,  
 That al mi thoght withinne brenneth,

197 or] and AMX . . . B<sub>1</sub>, Δ 202 3if A, F 31ue J, B  
 for wel is me þat I haue leue Hi . . . B<sub>1</sub> (I om. C) 209 Vnto AdBT

And am so ferforth overcome,  
That I not where I am become;  
So that among the hetes stronge  
In stede of drinke I underfonge  
A thoght so swete in mi corage,  
That nevere Pymment ne vernage  
Was half so swete forto drinke.

For as I wolde, thanne I thinke  
As thogh I were at myn above,  
For so thurgh drunke I am of love,  
That al that mi sotye demeth

220

P. iii, 9

Is soth, as thanne it to me semeth.  
And whyle I mai tho thoghtes kepe,  
Me thenkth as thogh I were aslepe  
And that I were in goddes barm;  
Bot whanne I se myn oghne harm,  
And that I soudeinliche awake

Out of my thought, and hiede take  
Hou that the sothe stant in dede,  
Thanne is mi sekernesse in drede  
And joie torned into wo,

230

So that the hete is al ago  
Of such sotie as I was inne.  
And thanne ayeinward I beginne  
To take of love a newe thorst,  
The which me grieveth altherworst,  
For thanne comth the blanche fievere,

With chele and makth me so to chievere, 240  
And so it coldeth at myn herte,

That wonder is hou I asterte,  
In such a point that I ne deie:  
For certes ther was nevere keie  
Ne frosen ys upon the wal  
More inly cold than I am al.

And thus soffre I the hote chele,  
Which passeth othre peines fele;  
In cold I brenne and frese in hete:  
And thanne I drinke a biter swete

250

215 þo hetes ST þo hertes B 235 I om. AM  
al (alle) H, E, SAdTA 242 hou] þat AM

241 at]

[LOVE-DRUNKEN-  
NESS.]

With dreie lippe and yhen wete. P. iii. 10  
 Lo, thus I tempre mi diete,  
 And take a drauhte of such reles,  
 That al mi wit is herteles,  
 And al myn herte, ther it sit,  
 Is, as who seith, withoute wit ;  
 So that to prove it be reson  
 In makinge of comparison  
 Ther mai no difference be  
 Betwen a drunke man and me. 260  
 Bot al the worste of everychon  
 Is evere that I thurste in on ;  
 The more that myn herte drinketh,  
 The more I may ; so that me thinketh,  
 My thirst schal nevere ben aqueint.  
 God schilde that I be noght dreint  
 Of such a superfluite :  
 For wel I fiele in mi degre  
 That al mi wit is overcast,  
 Wherof I am the more agast, 270  
 That in defaulte of ladischipe  
 Per chance in sūch a drunkeschipe  
 I mai be ded er I be war.  
 For certes, fader, this I dar  
 Beknowe and in mi schrifte telle :  
 Bot I a drauhte have of that welle,  
 In which mi deth is and mi lif,  
 Mi joie is torned into strif,  
 That sobre schal I nevere worthe,  
 Bot as a drunke man forworthe ; 280  
 So that in londe where I fare P. iii. 11  
 The lust is lore of mi welfare,  
 As he that mai no bote finde.  
 Bot this me thenkth a wonder kinde,  
 As I am drunke of that I drinke,  
 So am I ek for false of drinke ;  
 Of which I finde no reles :  
 Bot if I myhte natheles

26a pruste M, Δ trust(e) AdBT, W  
 28g line om. B

281 wher pat AMG, H:

## LIBER SEXTUS

175

Of such a drinke as I coveite,  
 So as me liste, have o receite,  
 I scholde assobre and fare wel.  
 Bot so fortune upon hire whiel  
 On hih me deigneth noght to sette,  
 For everemore I finde a lette :  
 The boteler is noght mi frend,  
 Which hath the keie be the bend ;  
 I mai wel wisshe and that is wast,  
 For wel I wot, so freissh a tast,  
 Bot if mi grace be the more,  
 I schal assaie neveremore.  
 Thus am I drunke of that I se,  
 For tastinge is defended me,  
 And I can noght miselven stanche :  
 So that, mi fader, of this branche  
 I am gultif, to telle trouthe.

290

[LOVE-DRUNKEN-  
NESS.]

300

    Mi Sone, that me thenketh routhe ;  
 For lovedrunke is the meschief  
 Above alle othre the most chief,  
 If he no lusti thoght assaie,  
 Which mai his sori thirst allaie :  
 As for the time yit it lisseth  
 To him which other joie misseth.  
 Forthi, mi Sone, aboven alle  
 Thenk wel, hou so it the befalle,  
 And kep thi wittes that thou hast,  
 And let hem noght be drunke in wast :  
 Bot natheles ther is no wyht  
 That mai withstonde loves miht.  
 Bot why the cause is, as I finde,  
 Of that ther is diverse kinde  
 Of lovedrunke, why men pleigneth  
 After the court which al ordeigneth,  
 I wol the tellen the manere ;  
 Nou lest, mi Sone, and thou schalt hiere.

Confessor.

310

P. lii, 12

320

    For the fortune of every chance  
 After the goddes pourveance  
 To man it groweth from above,

297 wel om. AM . . . Ba

Hic narrat secun-  
dum Poetam, qualiter

[JUPITER'S TWO  
TUNES.]

in suo celario Iupiter  
duo dolea habet, quo-  
rum primum liquoris  
dulcissimi, secundum  
amarissimi plenum  
consistit, ita quod ille  
cui fatata est prosperi-  
tas de dulci potabit,  
alter vero, cui aduer-  
sabitur, poculum gus-  
tabit amarum.

So that the sped of every love  
Is schape there, er it befall.  
For Jupiter aboven alle,  
Which is of goddes sovereign,  
Hath in his celier, as men sein,  
Tuo tonnes fulle of love drinke,  
That maken many an herte sinke  
And many an herte also to flete,  
Or of the soure or of the swete.  
That on is full of such piment,  
Which passeth all entendement  
Of mannes witt, if he it taste,  
And makth a jolif herte in haste :  
That other biter as the galle,  
Which makth a mannes herte palle,  
Whos drunkschipe is a sicknesse  
Thurgh felinge of the biternesse.  
Cupide is boteler of bothe,  
Which to the lieve and to the lothe  
Yifh of the swete and of the soure,  
That some lawhe, and some loure.  
Bot for so moche as he blind is,  
Fulofte time he goth amis  
And takth the badde for the goode,  
Which hindreth many a mannes fode  
Withoute cause, and forthreth eke.  
So be ther some of love seke,  
Whiche oghte of reson to ben hole,  
And some comen to the dole  
In happ and as hemselfe leste  
Drinke undeserved of the beste.  
And thus this blinde Boteler  
Yifh of the trouble in stede of cler  
And ek the cler in stede of trouble :  
Lo, hou he can the hertes trouble,  
And makth men drunke al upon chaunce

330

340

P. iii. 13

350

360

329 be falle JH<sub>1</sub>ERB<sub>2</sub>, BT 339 caste AdBT, H<sub>2</sub> 354 of be  
seke AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> 357 In iape AM 358 vnserued AM, W  
363 drinke al H.X, AdBT drunken (om. al) E all (om. drunke) B<sub>2</sub>  
dronke and W

[JUPITER'S TWO  
TUNNS.]

Withoute lawe of governance.  
 If he drawe of the swete tonne,  
 Thanne is the sorwe al overronne  
 Of lovedrunke, and schalt noght greven  
 So to be drunken every even,  
 For al is thanne bot a game.  
 Bot whanne it is noght of the same, 370  
 And he the biter tonne draweth, P. iii. 14  
 Such drunkeschipe an herte gnaweth  
 And siebleth al a mannes thoght,  
 That betre him were have drunke noght  
 And al his bred have eten dreie;  
 For thanne he lest his lusti weie  
 With drunkeschipe, and wot noght whider  
 To go, the weies ben so slider,  
 In which he mai per cas so falle,  
 That he schal breke his wittes alle. 380  
 And in this wise men be drunke  
 After the drink that thei have drunke:  
 Bot alle drinken noght alike,  
 For som schal singe and som schal syke,  
 So that it me nothing merveillesh,  
 Mi Sone, of love that thee eilleth;  
 For wel I knowe be thi tale,  
 That thou hast drunken of the duale,  
 Which biter is, til god the sende  
 Such grace that thou miht amende. 390

Bot, Sone, thou schalt bidde and preie

[PRAYER BACCHUS  
IN THE DESERT.]

In such a wise as I schal seie,  
 That thou the lusti welle atteigne  
 Thi wofull thurstes to restreigne  
 Of love, and taste the swetnesse;  
 As Bachus dede in his distresse,  
 Whan bodiliche thirst him hente  
 In strange londes where he wente.  
 This Bachus Sone of Jupiter

Nota hic qualiter  
potus aliquando sici-

367 Of lovedrunke and schalt FK Of lovedrunke and schal J,  
 SAdBT, W Of lovedrunke and schal AM . . . B, Δ Of loue drunken  
 and shal H: 376 lest J, B, F lesþ A leeseþ C 379 which A, B, F  
 whiche J 382 that om. AdBT 387 I wel AJM I wol(e) H . . . B:

[PRAYER. BACCHUS  
IN THE DESERT.]

enti precibus acquiritur. Et narrat in exemplum quod, cum Bacchus de quodam bello ab oriente repatrians in quibusdam Lubie partibus alicuius generis potum non inuenit, fuis ad louem precibus, apparuit ei Arius, qui terram pede percussit, statimque fons emanauit; et sic potum petenti peticio preueniuit.

Was hote, and as he wente fer  
Be his fadres assignement  
To make a werre in Orient,  
And gret pouer with him he ladde,  
So that the heiere hond he hadde  
And victoire of his enemys,  
And torneth homward with his pris,  
In such a contre which was dreie  
A meschief fell upon the weie.  
As he rod with his compainie  
Nyh to the strondes of Lubie,  
Ther myhte thei no drinke finde  
Of water nor of other kinde,  
So that himself and al his host  
Were of defalte of drinke almost  
Distruid, and thanne Bachus preide  
To Jupiter, and thus he seide:  
'O hihe fader, that sest al,  
To whom is reson that I schal  
Beseche and preie in every nede,  
Behoid, mi fader, and tak hiede  
This wofull thirst that we ben inne  
To staunche, and grante ous forto winne,  
And sauf unto the contre fare,  
Wher that oure lusti loves are  
Waitende upon oure hom cominge.'  
And with the vois of his preinyng,  
Which herd was to the goddes hihe,  
He syh anon tofore his yhe  
A wether, which the ground hath sporned;  
And wher he hath it overturned,  
Ther sprang a welle freissh and cler,  
Wherof his oghne boteler  
After the lustes of his wille  
Was every man to drinke his fille.  
And for this ilke grete grace  
Bachus upon the same place

400  
P. iii. 15

410

420

430

P. iii. 16

408 the] ter F      409 margin concussit A . . . B<sub>2</sub>      414 for  
defaute Hi . . . C, A, H<sub>2</sub> in defeaute B<sub>2</sub>, W      421 wofull] foule  
AdBT      434 Was] 3af Hi . . . B<sub>2</sub>



A riche temple let arere,  
Which evere scholde stonde there  
To thursti men in remembrance.

[PRAYER. BACCHUS  
IN THE DESERT.]

Forthi, mi Sone, after this chance  
It sit thee wel to taken hiede  
So forto preie upon thi nede,  
As Bachus preide for the welle;  
And thenk, as thou hast herd me telle,  
Hou grace he gradde and grace he hadde.  
He was no fol that ferst so radde,  
For selden get a domb man lond:  
Tak that proverbe, and understand  
That wordes ben of vertu grete.

440 Confessor.

Forthi to speke thou ne lete,  
And axe and prei erli and late  
Thi thirst to quenche, and thenk algate,  
The boteler which berth the keie  
Is blind, as thou hast herd me seie,  
And if it mihte so betyde,  
That he upon the blinde side  
Per cas the swete tonne arauhte,  
Than schalt thou have a lusti drauhte  
And waxe of lovedrunke sobre.  
And thus I rede thou assobre  
Thin herte in hope of such a grace; P. iii. 17  
For drunkschipe in every place,  
To whether side that it torne,  
Doth harm and makth a man to sporne  
And ofte falle in such a wise,  
Wher he per cas mai noght arise.

450

460

And forto loke in evidence  
Upon the sothe experience,  
So as it hath befaller this,  
In every mannes mouth it is  
Hou Tristram was of love drunke  
With Bele Ysolde, whan thei drunke  
The drink which Brangwein hem betok,  
Er that king Marc his Eem hire tok

[LOVE-DRUNKENNESS.  
TRISTRAM.]

Hic de amoris ebri-  
tate ponit exemplum,  
470 qualiter Tristrans ob  
potum, quem Brang-  
weyne in nam ei por-  
rexit, de amore Bele  
Isolde inebriatus ex-  
tuit.

442 be nede AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> 463 i (1, torne AM 469 So  
1 at AdBT, W 470 margin ad potum H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>



[LOVE-DRUNKENNESS.  
TRISTRAM]

To wyve, as it was after knowe.  
And ek, mi Sone, if thou wolt knowe,  
As it hath fallen overmore  
In loves cause, and what is more  
Of drunkschipe forto drede,  
As it whilom befell in dede,  
Wherof thou miht the betre eschue  
Of drunke men that thou ne suie  
The compaignie in no manere,  
A gret ensample thou schalt hiere.

480

[MARRIAGE OF PIROTHOUS.]

Hic de periculis ebrietatis causa in amore contingentibus narrat quod, cum Pirothous illam pulcherrimam Ypotaciam in uxorem duceret, quosdam qui Centauri vocabantur inter alios vicinos ad nuptias invitavit; qui vino imbuti, novae nupte formositatem aspicientes, duplici ebrietate insanierunt, ita quod ipsi subito salientes a mensa Ipotaciam a Pirothoo marito suo in impetu rapuerunt.

This finde I write in Poesie  
Of thilke faire Ipotacie,  
Of whos beaute ther as sche was  
Spak every man,—and fell per cas,  
That Pirothous so him spedde,  
That he to wyve hire scholde wedde,  
Wherof that he gret joie made.  
And for he wolde his love glade,  
Ayein the day of mariage  
Be mouthe bothe and be message  
Hise frendes to the feste he preide,  
With gret worschipe and, as men seide,  
He hath this yonge lady spoused.  
And whan that thei were alle housed,  
And set and served ate mete,  
Ther was no wyn which mai be gete,  
That ther ne was plente ynouh:  
Bot Bachus thilke tonne drouh,  
Wherof be weie of drunkschipe  
The greteste of the felaschipe  
Were oute of reson overtake;  
And Venus, which hath also take  
The cause most in special,  
Hath yove hem drinke forth withal  
Of thilke cuppe which exciteth  
The lust wherinne a man deliteth:

490  
P. iii. 18

500

510

488 margin contingentibus F      495 feste AJ, B    fest C, F  
497 margin in om. H1 . . . B1, B2, W      500 be gete} begete  
(bigete) AX, SAdTA      508 joue B, F    510e A    510c J, C

## LIBER SEXTUS

181

[MARRIAGE OF PHIR-  
THOUS.]

And thus be double weie drunke,  
 Of lust that ilke fyr funke  
 Hath mad hem, as who seith, halfwode,  
 That thei no reson understode,  
 Ne to non other thing thei syhen,  
 Bot hire, which tofore here yhen  
 Was wedded thilke same day,  
 That freisshe wif, that lusti May,  
 On hire it was al that thei thoghten.  
 And so ferforth here lustes soghten, 520  
 That thei the whiche named were P. iii. 19  
 Centauri, ate feste there  
 Of on assent, of on acord  
 This yonge wif malgre hire lord  
 In such a rage awei forth ladden,  
 As thei whiche non insihte hadden  
 Bot only to her drunke fare,  
 Which many a man hath mad misfare  
 In love als wel as other weie.  
 Wherof, if I schal more seie 530  
 Upon the nature of the vice,  
 Of custume and of excercise  
 The mannes grace hou it fordoth,  
 A tale, which was whilom soth,  
 Of fooles that so drunken were,  
 I schal reherce unto thine Ere.

I rede in a Cronique thus  
 Of Galba and of Vitellus,  
 The whiche of Spaigne bothe were  
 The greteste of alle othre there,  
 And bothe of o condicion  
 After the disposicion  
 Of glotonie and drunkschipe.  
 That was a sori felaschipe:  
 For this thou miht wel understonde,  
 That man mai wel noght longe stonde  
 Which is wyndrunke of comun us;

[GALBA AND VITEL-  
LIUS.]

Hic loquitur specia-  
 liter contra vicium  
 540 illorum, qui nimia po-  
 tatione quasi ex con-  
 suetudine ebriosi effi-  
 ciuntur Et narrat ex  
 emplum de Galba et  
 Vitellio, qui potentes  
 in Hispania principes  
 fuerunt, set ipsi coti-  
 diane ebrietatis poti-  
 bus assueti, tanta vi-  
 cinis intulerunt enor-

513 halfwode S, F half wode (woode) AJ, B 519 On] Of B  
 531 þus vice A . . . B<sub>2</sub>, S . . . Δ 543 and of Hi . . . B<sub>2</sub>, W

[GALBA AND VITEL-  
LIUS.]

mia, quod tandem toto  
conclamante populo  
pena sentencie capi-  
talis in eos iudicialiter  
diffinita est: qui prius  
quam morentur, ut  
penam mortis allucina-  
rent, spontanea vini  
ebrietate sopiti, quasi  
porci semimortui gla-  
dio inter erunt.

For he hath lore the vertus,  
Wherof reson him scholde clothe;  
And that was seene upon hem bothe. 550  
Men sein ther is non evidence, P. iii. 20  
Wherof to knowe a difference  
Betwen the drunken and the wode,  
For thei be nevere nouthur goode;  
For wher that wyn doth wit aweie,  
Wisdom hath lost the rihte weie,  
That he no maner vice dredeth;  
Nomore than a blind man thredeth  
His nedle be the Sonnes lyht,  
Nomore is reson thanne of myht, 560  
Whan he with drunkschipe is blent.  
And in this point thei weren schent,  
This Galba bothe and ek Vitelle,  
Upon the cause as I schal telle,  
Wherof good is to taken hiede.  
For thei tuo thurgh her drunkenhiede  
Of witles excitacioun  
Oppressede al the nacion  
Of Spaigne; for of fool usance,  
Which don was of continuance 570  
Of hem, whiche alday drunken were,  
Ther was no wif ne maiden there,  
What so thei were, or faire or foule,  
Whom thei ne token to defoule,  
Wherof the lond was often wo:  
And ek in othre thinges mo  
Thei wroghten many a sondri wrong.  
Bot hou so that the dai be long,  
The derke nyht comth ate laste:  
God wolde noght thei scholden laste, 580  
And schop the lawe in such a wise, P. iii. 21  
That thei thurgh dom to the juise  
Be dampned forto be forelore.

550 *margin* que tandem AM coclamante F 554 *nevere*  
AJ, T neuer C, SB, F 556 *margin* perierunt A . . . B<sub>1</sub>  
559 Sonne H<sub>1</sub>E, B, W (sonne bright) 569 of fool] a fool AM . . C  
a foul B: of foul Ad of foli Δ

[GALBA AND VITEL  
LIUS.]

Bot thei, that hadden ben tofore  
Enclin to alle drunkenesse,—  
Here ende thanne bar witesse;  
For thei in hope to assuage  
The peine of deth, upon the rage  
That thei the lasse scholden fiele,  
Of wyn let fille full a Miele,  
And dronken til so was befallie  
That thei her strengthes losten alle  
Withouten wit of eny brain;  
And thus thei ben halfdede slain,  
That hem ne grieveth bot a lyte.

590

Mi Sone, if thou be forto wyte  
In eny point which I have seid,  
Wherof thi wittes ben unteid,  
I rede clepe hem hom ayein.

Confessor.

I schal do, fader, as ye sein,  
Als ferforth as I mai suffise:  
Bot wel I wot that in no wise  
The drunskeschipe of love aweie  
I mai remue be no weie,  
It stant noght upon my fortune.  
Bot if you liste to comune  
Of the seconde Glotonie,  
Which cleped is Delicacie,  
Wherof ye spieken hier tofore,  
Beseche I wolde you therfore.

610

Amans.

Mi Sone, as of that ilke vice,  
Which of alle othre is the Norrice,  
And stant upon the retenue  
Of Venus, so as it is due,  
The proprete hou that it fareth  
The bok hierafter nou declareth.

P. iii. 22

Confessor

- ii. *Delicie cum diuiciis sunt uirum potentum,  
In quibus orta Venus excitat ora gule.  
Non sunt delicie tales, que corpora pascunt,  
Ex quibus impletus gaudia venter agit.*

[DELICACY.]

590 fille ful] fulfille (ful fille) H. XRCB. fulle M fille W  
I rede þe H. ERCB. Ad I rede } on X (I rede þe M corr.)

599

[DELICACY.]

Hic tractatus super illa specie Gule que Delicacia nuncupatur, cuius mollicies voluptuose carni in personis precipue potentibus queque complacencia corporaliter ministrat

*Quin completus amor maiori munere gaudet,  
Cum data deliciis mens in amante satur.*

Of this chapitre in which we trete  
There is yit on of such diete,  
To which no povere mai atteigne,  
For al is Past of paindemeine  
And sondri wyn and sondri drinke,  
Wherof that he wole ete and drinke  
Hise cokes ben for him affiaied,  
So that his body is awaited,  
That him schal lacke no delit,  
Als ferforth as his appetit  
Sufficeth to the metes hote.  
Wherof this lusti vice is hote  
Of Gule the Delicacie,  
Which al the hole progenie  
Of lusti folk hath undertake  
To feede, whil that he mai take  
Richesses wherof to be founde:  
Of Abstinence he wot no bounde,  
To what profit it scholde serve.  
And yit phisique of his conserve  
Makth many a restauracioun  
Unto his recreacioun,  
Which wolde be to Venus lief.  
Thus for the point of his relief  
The coc which schal his mete arraie,  
Bot he the betre his mouth assaie,  
His lordes thonk schal ofte lese,  
Er he be served to the chese:  
For ther mai lacke noght so lyte,  
That he ne fint anon a wyte;  
For bot his lust be fully served,  
Ther bath no wiht his thonk deserved.  
And yit for mannes sustenance,  
To kepe and holde in governance,

620

630

P. iii. 23

640

650

*Latin Verses* ii. 6 *satur* H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, B

620 is Past of] his past of AJ is past(e) as BT his past is Ad  
621 *margin* mollicies A . . . B<sub>1</sub> 623 *margin* quoque AMH<sub>1</sub>XB<sub>2</sub>, W  
633 Richesse AMH<sub>1</sub>, H<sub>2</sub> Riches W 647 For bot] But if AdBI

[DELICACY]

To him that wole his hele gete  
 Is non so good as comun mete ·  
 For who that loketh on the bokes,  
 It seith, confeccion of cokes,  
 A man him scholde wel avise  
 Hou he it toke and in what wise.  
 For who that useth that he knoweth,  
 Ful selden seknesse on him groweth,  
 And who that useth metes strange,  
 Though his nature empeire and change 660  
 It is no wonder, lieve Sone,  
 Whan that he doth ayein his wone;  
 For in Phisique this I finde,  
 Usage is the seconde kinde.

Philosophus. Con-  
 suetudo est altera na-  
 tura.

P. iii. 24 [LOVE-DELICACY.]

And riht so changeth his astat  
 He that of love is delicat:  
 For though he hadde to his hond  
 The beste wif of al the lond,  
 Or the faireste love of alle,  
 Yit wolde his herte on othre falle 670  
 And thenke hem mor delicious  
 Than he hath in his oghne hous:  
 Men sem it is nou ofte so;  
 Avise hem wel, thei that so do.  
 And forto speke in other weie,  
 Fulofte time I have herd seie,  
 That he which hath no love achieved,  
 Him thenkth that he is noight relieved,  
 Thogh that his ladi make him chiere,  
 So as sche mai in good manere 680  
 Hir honour and hir name save,  
 Bot he the surplus mihte have.  
 Nothing withstondende hire astat,  
 Of love more delicat  
 He set hire chiere at no delit,

653 who that] who so AM . . . Bz 664 Vsance A . . . Bz  
 665-964 ms after 1146 SAdBTAA These copies proceed here with l. 965  
 Vsage is þe seconde kinde  
 In loue als wel as oþer weie, &c.  
 673 nou om. AM 681 His honour AM

[LOVE-DELICACY.]

Bot he have al his appetit.

Mi Sone, if it be with thee so,  
Tell me.

Confessio Amantis.

Myn holi fader, no :

For delicat in such a wise

Of love, as ye to me devise,

690

Ne was I nevere yit gultif;

For if I hadde such a wif

As ye speke of, what scholde I more?

For thanne I wolde neveremore

For lust of eny wommanhiede

P. iii. 25

Myn herte upon non other fiede :

And if I dede, it were a wast.

Bot al withoute such repast

Of lust, as ye me tolde above,

Of wif, or yit of other love,

700

I faste, and mai no fode gete ;

So that for lacke of deinte mete,

Of which an herte mai be fedd,

I go fastende to my bedd.

Bot myhte I geten, as ye tolde,

So mochel that mi ladi wolde

Me fede with hir glad semblant,

Though me lacke al the remenant,

Yit scholde I somdel ben abeched

And for the time wel refreched.

710

Bot certes, fader, sche ne doth ;

For in good feith, to telle soth,

I trowe, thogh I scholde sterve,

Sche wolde noght hire yhe swerve,

Min herte with o goodly lok

To fede, and thus for such a cok

I mai go fastinge everemo :

Bot if so is that eny wo

Mai fede a mannes herte wel,

Therof I have at every meel

720

Of plente more than ynowh ;

Bot that is of himself so towh,

686 But if BT  
one goodly Δ

715 a goodly JH<sub>1</sub>RCB<sub>1</sub>, AdBT, H<sub>1</sub> a gladly W

Mi stomac mai it noght defie.

[LOVE-DELICACY]

Lo, such is the delicacie

Of love, which myn herte fedeth; P. iii. 26

Thus have I lacke of that me nedeth.

Bot for al this yit natheles

I seie noght I am gylteles,

That I somdel am delicat:

For elles were I fulli mat, 730

Bot if that I som lusti stounde

Of confort and of ese founde,

To take of love som repast;

For thogh I with the fulle tast

The lust of love mai noght fiele,

Min hunger otherwise I kiele

Of smale lustes whiche I pike,

And for a time yit thei like;

If that ye wisten what I mene.

Nou, goode Sone, schrif thee clene 740 Confessor.

Of suche deyntes as ben goode,

Wherof thou takst thin hertes fode.

Mi fader, I you schal reherce, Confessio Amantis.

Hou that mi fodes ben diverse,

So as thei fallen in degre.

O fedinge is of that I se,

An other is of that I here,

The thridde, as I schal tellen here,

It groweth of min oghne thoght:

And elles scholde I live noght; 750

For whom that failleth fode of herte,

He mai noght wel the deth asterte.

Of sihte is al mi ferste fode,

Thurgh which myn yhe of alle goode

Hath that to him is acordant, P. iii. 27

A lusti fode sufficient.

Whan that I go toward the place

Wher I schal se my ladi face,

Min yhe, which is loth to faste,

Beginth to hungre anon so faste, 760

734 ful paast AM 746 Of feding(e) AM, AdA, Hs If feding(e)  
Hs . . . Bz (not G) Tho fedyng W 751 of herte] and herte AJM

Nota qualiter visus in  
amore se continet deli-  
catus.



[LOVE-DELICACY.]

That him thenkth of on houre thre,  
 Til I ther come and he hire se :  
 And thanne after his appetit  
 He takth a fode of such delit,  
 That him non other deynte nedeth.  
 Of sondri sihtes he him fedeth :  
 He seth hire face of such colour,  
 That freisshere is than eny flour,  
 He seth hire front is large and plein  
 Withoute fronce of eny grein,  
 He seth hire yhen lich an hevene,  
 He seth hire nase strauht and evene,  
 He seth hire rode upon the cheke,  
 He seth hire rede lippes eke,  
 Hire chyn acordeth to the face,  
 Al that he seth is full of grace,  
 He seth hire necke round and clene,  
 Therinne mai no bon be sene,  
 He seth hire handes faire and whyte ;  
 For al this thing without wyte  
 He mai se naked ate leste,  
 So is it wel the more feste  
 And wel the mor Delicacie  
 Unto the fiedinge of myn yhe.  
 He seth hire schapthe forth withal,  
 Hire bodi round, hire middel smal,  
 So wel begon with good array,  
 Which passeth al the lust of Mai,  
 Whan he is most with softe schoures,  
 Ful clothed in his lusti floures.  
 With suche sihtes by and by  
 Min yhe is fed ; bot finaly,  
 Whan he the port and the manere  
 Seth of hire wommanysshe chere,  
 Than hath he such delice on honde,  
 Him thenkth he mihte stille stonde,  
 And that he hath ful sufficance  
 Of liflode and of sustenance

770

780

P. iii. 28

790

762 he hire] to hir(e) AdBT      784 myn] his AM .      B:  
 785 schapthe S, F      the rest schape (schappe &c.)

As to his part for everemo.

And if it thoghte alle othre so,  
Fro thenne wolde he nevere wende,

Bot there unto the worldes ende  
He wolde abyde, if that he mihte,  
And fieden him upon the syhte.

For thogh I mihte stonden ay  
Into the time of domesday  
And loke upon hire evere in on,  
Yit whanne I scholde fro hire gon,

Min yhe wolde, as thogh he faste,  
Ben hungerstorven al so faste,  
Til este ayein that he hire syhe.

Such is the nature of myn yhe :  
Ther is no lust so deintefull,  
Of which a man schal noght be full,  
Of that the stomac underfongeth,

Bot evere in on myn yhe longeth :  
For loke hou that a goshawk tireth,  
Riht so doth he, whan that he pireth  
And toteth on hire wommanhiede ;

For he mai nevere fulli fiede  
His lust, bot evere aliche sore  
Him hungreth, so that he the more  
Desireth to be fed algate :

And thus myn yhe is mad the gate,  
Thurgh which the deyntes of my thought  
Of lust ben to myn herte broght.

Riht as myn yhe with his lok  
Is to myn herte a lusti coc  
Of loves fode delicat,  
Riht so myn Ere in his astat,  
Wher as myn yhe mai noght serve,  
Can wel myn hertes thonk deserve  
And fieden him fro day to day  
With suche deyntes as he may.

For thus it is, that overal,  
Wher as I come in special,  
I mai hiere of mi ladi pris ;

827 Paragraph at l. 830 in MSS.

800

810

P. lii. 29

820

830 Quahter auris in  
amore delectatur

[LOVE-DELICACY.]

I hiere on seith that sche is wys,  
 An other seith that sche is good,  
 And som men sein, of worthi blod 840  
 That sche is come, and is also  
 So fair, that nawher is non so ;  
 And som men preise hire goodli chiere :  
 Thus every thing that I mai hiere,  
 Which souneth to mi ladi goode, P. iii. 30  
 Is to myn Ere a lusti foode.  
 And ek min Ere hath over this  
 A deynte feste, whan so is  
 That I mai hiere hirselve speke ;  
 For thanne anon mi faste I breke 850  
 On suche wordes as sche seith,  
 That full of trouthe and full of feith  
 Thei ben, and of so good desport,  
 That to myn Ere gret confort  
 Thei don, as thei that ben delices.  
 For al the metes and the spices,  
 That eny Lombard couthe make,  
 Ne be so lusti forto take  
 Ne so ferforth restauratif,  
 I seie as for myn oghne lif, 860  
 As ben the wordes of hire mouth :  
 For as the wyndes of the South  
 Ben most of alle debonaire,  
 So whan hir list to speke faire,  
 The vertu of hire goodly speche  
 Is verraily myn hertes leche.  
 And if it so befalle among,  
 That sche carole upon a song,  
 Whan I it hiere I am so fedd,  
 That I am fro miself so ledd, 870  
 As thogh I were in paradis ;  
 For certes, as to myn avis,  
 Whan I here of hir vois the stevene,  
 Me thenkth it is a blisse of hevene.  
 And ek in other wise also P. iii. 31

838 seith] seie MC, AdΔ, W (say) 841 is also] seip also  
 AdBT 856 and all(e) þe spices M . . . B<sub>2</sub>, W

Fulofte time it falleth so,  
 Min Ere with a good pitance  
 Is fedd of redinge of romance  
 Of Ydoine and of Amadas,  
 That whilom weren in mi cas, 880  
 And eke of othre many a score,  
 That loveden longe er I was bore.  
 For whan I of here loves rede,  
 Min Ere with the tale I fede;  
 And with the lust of here histoire  
 Somtime I drawe into memoire  
 Hou sorwe mai noght evere laste;  
 And so comth hope in ate laste,  
 Whan I non other fode knowe.  
 And that endureth bot a throwe, 890  
 Riht as it were a cherie feste;  
 Bot forto compten ate leste,  
 As for the while yit it eseth  
 And somdel of myn herte appeseth:  
 For what thing to myn Ere spreadeth,  
 Which is plesant, somdel it feedeth  
 With wordes suche as he mai gete  
 Mi lust, in stede of other mete.

Lo thus, mi fader, as I seie,  
 Of lust the which myn yhe hath seie, 900  
 And ek of that myn Ere hath herd,  
 Fulofte I have the betre ferd.

And tho tuo bringen in the thridde,  
 The which hath in myn herte amidde

His place take, to arraie

P. iii. 32

The lusti fode, which assaie  
 I mot; and nameliche on nyhtes,  
 Whan that me lacketh alle sihtes,  
 And that myn heringe is aweie,  
 Thanne is he redy in the weie 910  
 Mi resouper forto make,  
 Of which myn hertes fode I take.

This lusti cokes name is hote

Amans.

892 for tacompten B  
 1oughtes B om. AdT fode Ba

899 as I þe seye B

906 fode]

[LOVE-DELICACY.]

Qualiter cogitatus im-  
pressiones leticie yma-  
ginatiuas cordibus in-  
serit amantum.

Thoght, which hath evere hise pottes hote  
 Of love buillende on the fyr  
 With fantasie and with desir,  
 Of whiche er this fulofte he fedde  
 Min herte, whanne I was abedde ;  
 And thanne he set upon my bord  
 Bothe every syhte and every word 920  
 Of lust, which I have herd or sein.  
 Bot yit is noght mi feste al plein,  
 Bot al of woldes and of wissches,  
 Therof have I my fulle disshes,  
 Bot as of fieling and of tast,  
 Yit mihte I nevere have o repast.  
 And thus, as I have seid afor,  
 I licke hony on the thorn,  
 And as who seith, upon the bridel  
 I chiewe, so that al is ydel 930  
 As in effect the fode I have.  
 Bot as a man that wolde him save,  
 Whan he is sek, he medicine,  
 Riht so of love the famine  
 I fonde in al that evere I mai P. iii. 33  
 To fiede and dryve forth the day,  
 Til I mai have the grete feste,  
 Which al myn hunger myhte areste.  
 Lo suche ben mi lustes thre ;  
 Of that I thenke and hiere and se 940  
 I take of love my fiedinge  
 Withoute tastinge or fieling :  
 And as the Plover doth of Eir  
 I live, and am in good espeir  
 That for no such delicacie  
 I trowe I do no glotonie.  
 And natheles to youre avis,  
 Min holi fader, that be wis,  
 I recomande myn astat  
 Of that I have be delicat. 950  
 Mi Sone, I understonde wel

Confessor.

927 tofor AdBT  
to do AM

928 on] of EB<sub>2</sub>, AdBT

946 I do]

That thou hast told hier everydel,  
And as me thenketh be thi tale,  
It ben delices wonder smale,  
Wherof thou takst thi loves fode.  
Bot, Sone, if that thou understode  
What is to ben delicious,  
Thou woldest nocht be curious  
Upon the lust of thin astat  
To ben to sore delicat,

[LOVE-DELICACY.]

960

Wherof that thou reson excede :  
For in the bokes thou myht rede,  
If mannes wisdom schal be suied,  
It oghte wel to ben eschuiet  
In love als wel as other weie ;  
For, as these holi bokes seie,  
The bodely delices alle  
In every point, hou so thei falle,  
Unto the Soule don grievance.  
And forto take in remembrance,  
A tale acordant unto this,  
Which of gret understandinge is  
To mannes soule resonable,  
I thenke telle, and is no fable.

P. iii. 34

[DELICACY.]

Delicie corporis milit-  
tant aduersus animam.

970

Of Cristes word, who wole it rede,  
Hou that this vice is forto drede  
In thevangile it telleth plain,  
Which mot algate be certein,  
For Crst himself it berth witnessse.  
And thogh the clerk and the clergesse  
In latin tunge it rede and singe,  
Yit for the more knowlechinge  
Of trouthe, which is good to wite,  
I schal declare as it is write  
In Engleissh, for thus it began.

DIVES AND LAZARUS.]

Hic ponit exemplum  
contra istos delicatos.  
Et narrat de diuite et  
Lazaro, quorum gestus  
in euangelio Lucas  
euidencius describit.

980

Crist seith : ' Ther was a riche man,  
A mihti lord of gret astat,  
And he was ek so delicat

After 964 Als wel be reson as be kinde etc. (1149 ff.) SAdBTAA  
973 To In AM . . . B; 979 margin gesta B 988 eek he was C, Δ

DIVES AND LAZARUS.]

Of his clothing, that everyday  
 Of pourpre and bisse he made him gay, 990  
 And eet and drank therto his fille  
 After the lustes of his wille,  
 As he which al stod in delice  
 And tok non hiede of thilke vice.  
 And as it scholde so betyde, P. iii. 35  
 A povere lazre upon a tyde  
 Cam to the gate and axed mete:  
 Bot there mihte he nothing gete  
 His dedly hunger forto stanche;  
 For he, which hadde his fulle panche 1000  
 Of alle lustes ate bord,  
 Ne deigneth noght to speke a word,  
 Onliche a Crumme forto yive,  
 Wherof the povere myhte live  
 Upon the yifte of his almesse.  
 Thus lai this povere in gret destresse  
 Acold and hungred ate gate,  
 Fro which he mihte go no gate,  
 So was he wofulli besein.  
 And as these holi bokes sein, 1010  
 The houndes comen fro the halle,  
 Wher that this sike man was falle,  
 And as he lay ther forto die,  
 The woundes of his maladie  
 Thei licken forto don him ese.  
 Bot he was full of such desese,  
 That he mai noght the deth eschape;  
 Bot as it was that time schape,  
 The Soule fro the bodi passeth,  
 And he whom nothing overpasseth, 1020  
 The hihe god, up to the hevene  
 Him tok, wher he hath set him evene  
 In Habrahammes barm on hyh,  
 Wher he the hevene joie syh

993 As] And AdBT stood al H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>, Ad, W 998 he] be  
 AMXRB<sub>1</sub> 1004 þis p. S . . . Δ 1006 þe p. S . . . Δ 1008  
 for AdBT 1010 these] þe AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, H<sub>1</sub> 1023 Habrahammes  
 J, F *rest* Abrahames (Abrahams &c.): so 1039, 1046, 1073

And hadde al that he have wolde.

P. iii 36 [DIVES AND LAZARUS]

And fell, as it befalle scholde,  
This riche man the same throwe  
With soudein deth was overthrowe,  
And forth withouten eny wente  
Into the helle straght he wente;  
The fend into the fyr him drouh,  
Wher that he hadde peine ynouh  
Of flamme which that evere brenneth.

1030

And as his ybe aboute renneth,  
Toward the hevene he cast his lok,  
Wher that he syh and hiede tok  
Hou Lazar set was in his Se  
Als ferr as evere he mihte se  
With Habraham; and thanne he preide  
Unto the Patriarch and seide:

1040

"Send Lazar down fro thilke Sete,  
And do that he his finger wete  
In water, so that he mai droppe  
Upon my tunge, forto stoppe  
The grete hete in which I brenne."

Bot Habraham answerde thenne  
And seide to him in this wise:

"Mi Sone, thou thee miht avise  
And take into thi remembrance,  
Hou Lazar hadde gret penance,

1050

Whyl he was in that other lif,  
Bot thou in al thi lust jolif  
The bodily delices soghtest:  
Forthi, so as thou thanne wroghtest,  
Nou schalt thou take thi reward

P. iii. 37

Of dedly peine hierafterward  
In helle, which schal evere laste;  
And this Lazar nou ate laste  
The worldes peine is overronne,  
In hevene and hath his lif begonne  
Of joie, which is endeles.

1060

1027 thel his Hi . . . E<sub>3</sub> 1030 Vnto þe helle BT In to helle  
JRB<sub>2</sub>, Δ, W 1048 *margin* Salomon. Qui obturat aures suas  
ad clamorem pauperum, ipse clamabit et non exaudietur SBTΔ



[Dives and Lazarus.]

Bot that thou preidest natheles,  
 That I schal Lazar to the sende  
 With water on his finger ende,  
 Thin hote tunge forto kiele,  
 Thou schalt no suche graces fiele;  
 For to that foule place of Sinne,  
 For evere in which thou schalt ben inne,  
 Comth non out of this place thider,  
 Ne non of you mai comen hider;  
 'Thus be yee parted nou atuo." 1070

The riche ayeinward cride tho:  
 "O Habraham, sithe it so is,  
 That Lazar mai noght do me this  
 Which I have axed in this place,  
 I wolde preie an other grace.  
 For I have yit of brethren fyve,  
 That with mi fader ben alyve  
 Togedre duellende in on hous;  
 To whom, as thou art gracious, 1080  
 I preie that thou woldest sende  
 Lazar, so that he mihte wende  
 To warne hem hou the world is went,  
 That afterward thei be noght schent  
 Of suche peines as I drye. P. iii. 38  
 Lo, this I preie and this I crie,  
 Now I may noght miself amende."

The Patriarch anon suiende  
 To his preiere ansuerde nay;  
 And seide him hou that everyday 1090  
 His brethren mihten knowe and hiere  
 Of Moises on Erthe hiere  
 And of prophetes othre mo,  
 What hem was best. And he seith no;  
 Bot if ther mihte a man aryse  
 Fro deth to lyve in such a wise,  
 To tellen hem hou that it were,  
 He seide hou thanne of pure fere  
 Thei scholden wel be war therby.

1085 I drye] þey drye B    1089 his] þis (this) H, AdBTA his S)  
 1098 hou om. S. . . Δ

Quod Habraham: "Nay sikerly;  
 For if thei nou wol noght obeie  
 To suche as techen hem the weie,  
 And alday preche and alday telle  
 Hou that it stant of hevene and helle,  
 Thei wol noght thanne taken hiede,  
 Thogh it befelle so in dede  
 That eny ded man were arered,  
 To ben of him no betre lered  
 Than of an other man alyve."

1100 [DIVES AND LAZARUS]

If thou, mi Sone, canst descryve  
 This tale, as Crist himself it tolde,  
 Thou schalt have cause to beholde,  
 To se so gret an evidence,  
 Wherof the sothe experience

1110 Confessor.

Hath schewed openliche at ye,  
 That bodili delicacie  
 Of him which yeveth non almesse  
 Schal after falle in gret destresse.  
 And that was sene upon the riche  
 For he ne wolde unto his liche  
 A Crumme yiven of his bred,  
 Thanne afterward, whan he was ded,  
 A drope of water him was werned.  
 Thus mai a mannes wit be lerned  
 Of hem that so delices taken;  
 Whan thei with deth ben overtaken,  
 That erst was swete is thanne sour.  
 Bot he that is a governour  
 Of worldes good, if he be wys,  
 Withinne his herte he set no pris  
 Of al the world, and yit he useth  
 The good, that he nothing refuseth,  
 As he which lord is of the thinges.  
 The Nouches and the riche ringes,  
 The cloth of gold and the Perrie  
 He takth, and yit delicacie

P. iii. 39

1120

1130

1100 Habraham JX, F *rest* Abraham 110 5 wold e) M, B, W  
 1107 Than eny AH: Themeny M. (p. m.) 1109 of lyue X. . B<sub>1</sub>,  
 Ad. H<sub>1</sub> on liue Δ 1112 be holde JH<sub>1</sub>RB<sub>1</sub>

[DIVES AND LAZARUS.]

He leveth, thogh he were al this.  
 The beste mete that ther is  
 He ett, and drinkth the beste drinke ;  
 Bot hou that evere he ete or drinke, 1140  
 Delicacie he put aweie,  
 As he which goth the rihte weie  
 Noght only forto fiede and clothe  
 His bodi, bot his soule bothe.  
 Bot thei that taken otherwise P. iii. 40  
 Here lustes, ben none of the wise ;  
 And that whilom was sch wed eke,  
 If thou these olde bokes seke,  
 Als wel be reson as be kinde,  
 Of olde ensample as men mai finde. 1150

[DELICACY OF NERO.]

Hic loquitur de deli-  
 cacia Neronis, qui  
 corporalibus deliciis  
 magis adherens spirit-  
 alia gaudia minus ob-  
 tinuit.

What man that wolde him wel advise,  
 Delicacie is to despise,  
 Whan kinde acordeth noght withal ;  
 Wherof ensample in special  
 Of Nero whilom mai be told,  
 Which ayein kinde manyfold  
 Hise lustes tok, til ate laste  
 That god him wolde al overcaste ;  
 Of whom the Cronique is so plein,  
 Me list nomore of him to sein. 1160  
 And natheles for glotonie  
 Of bodili Delicacie,  
 To knowe his stomak hou it ferde,  
 Of that noman tofore herde,  
 Which he withinne himself bethoghte,  
 A wonder soubtil thing he wroghte.  
 Thre men upon eleccioun

After 1146 SAdBTAA have the following six lines (omitting the two  
 1147 f.), and then insert the passage 665-964. The text here is that of S :—

Bot now a dai a man mai se  
 The world so full of vanite,  
 That noman takþ of reson hiede  
 Or forto clope or forto fiede,  
 Bot al is sett vnto þe vice  
 To newe and changen his delice.  
 And riht so etc. (as 665 ff.)

1151 That man X . . . Bz (not G), W 1155 margin minus om. B

Of age and of complexioun  
 Lich to himself be alle weie  
 He tok towards him to pleie, 1170  
 And ete and drinke als wel as he.  
 Therof was no diversite;  
 For every day whan that thei eete,  
 Tofore his oghne bord thei seete,  
 And of such mete as he was served,  
 Althogh thei hadde it noght deserved,  
 Thei token service of the same. P. iii. 41  
 Bot afterward al thilke game  
 Was into wofull earnest torned;  
 For whan thei weren thus sojourned, 1180  
 Withinne a time at after mete  
 Nero, which hadde noght foryete  
 The lustes of his frele astat,  
 As he which al was delicat,  
 To knowe thilke experience,  
 The men let come in his presence:  
 And to that on the same tyde,  
 A courser that he scholde ryde  
 Into the feld, anon he bad;  
 Wherof this man was wonder glad, 1190  
 And goth to prike and prance aboute.  
 That other, whil that he was oute,  
 He leide upon his bedd to slepe:  
 The thridde, which he wolde kepe  
 Withinne his chambre, faire and softe  
 He goth now doun nou up fulofte,  
 Walkende a pass, that he ne slepte,  
 Til he which on the courser lepte  
 Was come fro the field ayen.  
 Nero thanne, as the bokes sein, 1200  
 These men doth taken alle thre  
 And slouh hem, for he wolde se  
 The whos stomak was best defied:  
 And whanne he hath the sothe tryed,  
 He fond that he which goth the pass  
 Defyed best of alle was,

[DELICACY OF NERO.]

Which afterward he usede ay. P. iii. 42

And thus what thing unto his pay  
 Was most plesant, he lefte non :  
 With every lust he was begon, 1210

Wherof the bodi myhte glade,  
 For he non abstinence made ;  
 Bot most above alle erthli thinges  
 Of wommen unto the likinges  
 Nero sette al his hole herte,  
 For that lust scholde him noght asterte.  
 Whan that the thirst of love him cawhte,  
 Wher that him list he tok a drauhte,  
 He spareth nouthur wif ne maide,  
 That such an other, as men saide, 1220  
 In al this world was nevere yit.

[LOVE-DELICACY.]

He was so drunke in al his wit  
 Thurgh sondri lustes whiche he tok,  
 That evere, whil ther is a bok,  
 Of Nero men schul rede and singe  
 Unto the worldes knowlechinge,  
 Mi goode Sone, as thou hast herd.  
 For evere yit it hath so ferd,  
 Delicacie in loves cas  
 Withoute reson is and was ; 1230  
 For wher that love his herte set,  
 Him thenkth it myhte be no bet ;  
 And thogh it be noght fulli mete,  
 The lust of love is evere swete.

Confessor.

Lo, thus togedre of felaschipe  
 Delicacie and drunkeschipe,  
 Wherof reson stant out of herre, P. iii. 43  
 Have mad full many a wisman erre  
 In loves cause most of alle :  
 For thanne hou so that evere it falle, 1240  
 Wit can no reson understonde,  
 Bot let the governance stonde  
 To Will, which thanne wext so wylde,  
 That he can noght himselve schylde

1209 non] anon EC, AdBT 1230 it is AM... B: 1233 Al pough B  
 As pough AdT Thogh W

Fro no peril, bot out of seere  
 The weie he secheth hiere and there,  
 Him recheth noght upon what syde:  
 For oftetime he goth beside,  
 And doth such thing withoute drede,  
 Wherof him oghte wel to drede.  
 Bot whan that love assoteth sore,  
 It passeth alle mennes lore;  
 What lust it is that he ordeigneth,  
 Ther is no mannes niht restreigneth,  
 And of the godd takth he non huede:  
 Bot laweles withoute drede,  
 His pourpos for he wolde achieve  
 Ayeins the pointz of the believe,  
 He tempteth hevене and erthe and helle,  
 Hierafterward as I schal telle.

[LOVE-DELICACY.]

1250

1260

111. *Dum stimulat amor, quicquid iubet orta voluptas,  
 Audet et aggreditur, nulla timenda timens.  
 Omne quod astra queunt herbarum siue potestas,  
 Seu vigor inferni, singula temptat amans.  
 Quod nequit ipse deo mediante parare sinistrum,  
 Demonis hoc magica credulus arte parat.  
 Sic sibi non curat ad opus que recia tendit,  
 Dummodo nudatam prendere possit auem.*

[SORCERY AND  
WITCHCRAFT.]

Who dar do thing which love ne dar? P. iii. 44

To love is every lawe unwar,  
 Bot to the lawes of his heste  
 The fisch, the foul, the man, the beste  
 Of al the worldes kinde louteth.  
 For love is he which nothing douteth:  
 In mannes herte where he sit,  
 He compteth noght toward his wit  
 The wo nomore than the wele,  
 No mor the hete than the chele,  
 No mor the wete than the dreie,  
 No mor to live than to deie,

Hic tractat qualiter  
 Ebrietas et Delicacia  
 omnis pudicie con-  
 trarium instigantes  
 inter alia ad carnalis  
 concupiscentie pro-  
 mocionem Sortilegio  
 magicam requirunt.

1270

1245 no] pe B2, AdBT pat M 1254 is] as A... B2 1257 wol(e)  
 AH1... B2 1267 he] it G, B margin Sortilegio SBTAA Sacrilegio  
 AX... B2, FH2 sacrilegia H1 sacri legis M (Latin om. J,  
 Ad. W)

[SORCERY AND  
WITCHCRAFT.]

So that tofore ne behinde  
He seth nothing, bot as the blinde  
Withoute insyhte of his corage  
He doth merveilles in his rage.  
To what thing that he wole him drawe,  
Ther is no god, ther is no lawe,  
Of whom that he takth eny hiede ;  
Bot as Baiard the blinde stede, 1280  
Til he falle in the dich amidde,  
He goth ther noman wole him bidde ;  
He stant so ferforth out of reule,  
Ther is no wit that mai him reule.  
And thus to telle of him in soth,  
Ful many a wonder thing he doth,  
That were betre to be laft,  
Among the whiche is wicchecraft,  
That som men clepen Sorcerie,  
Which forto winne his druerie 1290  
With many a circumstance he useth, P. iii. 45  
Ther is no point which he refuseth.

Nota de Auctorum  
necnon et de librorum  
tam naturalis quam  
execrabilis magice  
nominibus.

The craft which that Saturnus fond,  
To make prickes in the Sond,  
That Geomance cleped is,  
Fulofte he useth it amis ;  
And of the flod his Ydromance,  
And of the fyr the Piromance,  
With questions echon of tho  
He tempteth ofte, and ek also 1300  
Aëremance in juggement  
To love he bringth of his assent :  
For these craftes, as I finde,  
A man mai do be weie of kinde,  
Be so it be to good entente.  
Bot he goth al an other wente ;  
For rather er he scholde faile,  
With Nigromance he wole assaile  
To make his incantacioun  
With hot subfumigacioun. 1310

1289 som men] somme (some &c.) A . . . B<sub>1</sub>  
et de] et BT 1294 pikkes AdBTa

1293 margin

[SORCERY AND  
WITCHCRAFT.]

Thilke art which Spatula is hote,  
 And used is of comun rote  
 Among Paiens, with that craft ek  
 Of which is Auctor Thosz the Grek,  
 He worcheth on and on be rowe:  
 Razel is noght to him unknowe,  
 Ne Salomones Candarie,  
 His Ydeac, his Eutonye;  
 The figure and the bok withal  
 Of Balamuz, and of Ghenbal  
 The Seal, and therupon thymage  
 Of Thebith, for his advantage  
 He takth, and somewhat of Gibiere,  
 Which helplich is to this matiere.  
 Babilla with hire Sones sevene,  
 Which hath renonced to the hevене,  
 With Cernes bothe square and rounde,  
 He traceth ofte upon the grounde,  
 Makende his invocacioun;  
 And for full enformacioun  
 The Scole which Honorius  
 Wrot, he poursuieth: and lo, thus  
 Magique he useth forto winne  
 His love, and spareth for no Sinne.  
 And over that of his Sotie,  
 Riht as he secheth Sorcerie  
 Of hem that ben Magiciens,  
 Riht so of the Naturiens  
 Upon the Sterres from above  
 His weie he secheth unto love,  
 Als fer as he hem understondeth.  
 In many a sondry wise he fondeth:  
 He makth ymage, he makth sculpture,  
 He makth writinge, he makth figure,  
 He makth his calculacions,  
 He makth his demonstracions;  
 His houres of Astronomie  
 He kepeth as for that partie

1320

P. iii. 46

1330

1340

1319 of] to AM      1317 Ne] The B      1319 and] of B  
 1320 Chenbal B, SA      Geubal AM      Glenball H;      Thenballe W



[SORCERY AND  
WITCHCRAFT.]

Which longeth to thinspeccion  
Of love and his affeccion ;  
He wolde into the helle seche  
The devel himselve to beseche,  
If that he wiste forto spede,  
To gete of love his lusti mede :  
Wher that he hath his herte set,  
He bede nevere fare bet  
Ne wite of other hevene more.

1350

P. iii. 47

Confessor.

Mi Sone, if thou of such a lore  
Hast ben er this, I red thee leve.

Amans.

Min holi fader, be youre leve  
Of al that ye have spoken hiere  
Which toucheth unto this matiere,  
To telle soth riht as I wene,  
I wot noght o word what ye mene.  
I wol noght seie, if that I couthe,  
That I nolde in mi lusti youthe  
Benethe in helle and ek above  
To winne with mi ladi love  
Don al that evere that I mihte ;  
For therof have I non insihte  
Wher afterward that I become,  
To that I wonne and overcome  
Hire love, which I most coveite.

1360

1370

Confessor.

Mi Sone, that goth wonder streite :  
For this I mai wel telle soth,  
Ther is noman the which so doth,  
For al the craft that he can caste,  
That he nabeith it ate laste.  
For often he that wol beguile  
Is guiled with the same guile,  
And thus the guilour is beguiled ;  
As I finde in a bok compiled  
To this matiere an old histoire,  
The which comth nou to mi memoire,  
And is of gret essamplerie  
Ayein the vice of Sorcerie,  
Wherof non ende mai be good.

1380

P. iii. 48

Bot hou whilom therof it stod,  
A tale which is good to knowe  
To thee, mi Sone, I schal beknowe.

1390

Among hem whiche at Troie were,  
Uluxes ate Siege there  
Was on be name in special;  
Of whom yit the memorial  
Abit, for whyl ther is a mouth,  
For evere his name schal be couth.  
He was a worthi knyht and king  
And clerk knowende of every thing;  
He was a gret rethorien,  
He was a gret magicien;  
Of Tullius the rethorique,  
Of king Zorastes the magique,  
Of Tholome thastronomie,  
Of Plato the Philosophie,  
Of Daniel the slepi dremes,  
Of Neptune ek the water stremes,  
Of Salomon and the proverbes,  
Of Macer al the strengthe of herbes,  
And the Phisique of Ypocras,  
And lich unto Pictagoras  
Of Surgerie he knew the cures.

1400

P. iii. 49

Bot somewhat of his adventures,  
Which schal to mi matiere acorde,  
To thee, mi Sone, I wol recorde.

This king, of which thou hast herd sein,  
Fro Troie as he goth hom ayein  
Be Schipe, he fond the See divers,  
With many a wyndi storm revers.  
Bot he thurgh wisdom that he schapeth  
Ful many a gret peril ascapeth,  
Of whiche I thenke tellen on,  
Hou that malgre the nedle and ston  
Wynddrive he was al soudeinly  
Upon the strondes of Cilly,

1410

[TALE OF  
ULYSSES AND  
TELEGONUS.]

Nota contra istos ob  
amoris causam sorti-  
legos, ubi narrat in  
exemplum quod, cum  
Uluxes a subuersione  
Troie repatriare na-  
vigio voluisset, ipsum  
in Insula Cilly, ubi illa  
expertissima maga  
nomine Circes regna-  
uit, contigit applicu-  
isse: quem ut in sui  
amoris concupiscen-  
ciam exardesceret,  
Circes omnibus suis  
incantationibus vin-  
cere conabatur. V-  
luxes tamen magica  
potencior ipsam in  
amore subegit, ex qua  
filium nomine Thelo-  
gonum genuit, qui  
postea patrem suum  
interfecit: et sic contra  
fidei naturam genitus  
1410 contra generacionis  
naturam patricidium  
operatus est

1388 whilom how herof AMX . . . Ba hou somtyme p. j  
whilome therof how H1 1391 whiche SB which AJC, F  
1419 which B

[TALE OF  
ULYSSES AND  
TELEGONUS.]

Wher that he moste abyde a whyle.  
 Tuo queenes weren in that yle  
 Calipsa named and Circes ;  
 And whan they herde hou Uluxes  
 Is loded ther upon the ryve,  
 For him thei senden als so blive. 1430  
 With him suche as he wolde he nam  
 And to the court to hem he cam.  
 Thes queenes were as tuo goddesses  
 Of Art magique Sorceresses,  
 That what lord comth to that rivage,  
 Thei make him love in such a rage  
 And upon hem assote so,  
 That thei wol have, er that he go,  
 Al that he hath of worldes good.  
 Uluxes wel this understod, 1440  
 Thei couthe moche, he couthe more ; P. iii. 50  
 Thei schape and caste ayein him sore  
 And wroghte many a soutil wyle,  
 Bot yit thei mihte him noght beguile.  
 Bot of the men of his navie  
 Thei tuo forschope a gret partie,  
 Mai non of hem withstonde here hestes ;  
 Som part thei schopen into bestes,  
 Som part thei schopen into foules,  
 To beres, tiges, Apes, oules, 1450  
 Or elles be som other weie ;  
 Ther myhte hem nothing desobeie,  
 Such craft thei hadde above kinde.  
 Bot that Art couthe thei noght finde,  
 Of which Uluxes was deceived,  
 That he ne hath hem alle weyved,  
 And broght hem into such a rote,  
 That upon him thei bothe assote ;  
 And thurgh the science of his art  
 He tok of hem so wel his part, 1460  
 That he begat Circes with childe.  
 He kepte him sobre and made hem wilde,

1432 of hem AdBT  
1442 schope S . . . Δ

1437 And] That AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> (not G)  
1444 And 3it AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>

{TALE OF  
ULYSSES AND  
TELEGONUS.}

He sette himselfe so above,  
That with here good and with here love,  
Who that therof be lief or loth,  
Al quit into his Schip he goth.  
Circes toswolle bothe sides  
He lefte, and waiteth on the tydes,  
And straght thurghout the salte fom  
He takth his cours and comth him hom, 1470  
Where as he fond Penolope; P. iii. 51  
A bette wif ther mai non be,  
And yit ther ben ynowhe of goode.  
Bot who hir goodschipe understode  
Fro ferst that sche wifhode tok,  
Hou many loves sche forsok  
And hou sche bar hire al aboute,  
Ther whiles that hire lord was oute,  
He mihte make a gret avant  
Amonges al the remenant 1480  
That sche was on of al the beste.  
Wel myhte he sette his herte in reste,  
This king, whan he hir fond in hele;  
For as he couthe in wisdom dele,  
So couthe sche in wommanhiede:  
And whan sche syh withoute drede  
Hire lord upon his oghne ground,  
That he was come sauf and sound,  
In al this world ne mihte be  
A gladdere womman than was sche. 1490  
The fame, which mai noght ben hidd,  
Thurghout the lond is sone kidd,  
Here king is come hom ayein:  
Ther mai noman the fulle sein,  
Hou that thei weren alle glade,  
So mochel joie of him thei made.  
The presens every day be newed,  
He was with yiftes al besnewed;  
The poeple was of him so glad,  
That thogh non other man hem bad, 1500

1479 = om. AJMxGERCL  
world AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>

1481 was om. AdBT

1489 pc

[TALE OF  
ULYSSES AND  
TELEGONUS.]

Oracius Omnia  
sunt hominum tenus  
pendencia filo.

Taillage upon hemself thei sette, P. iii 52  
And as it were of pure dette  
Thei yeve here goodes to the king  
This was a glad hom welcomyng.  
Thus hath Uluxes what he wolde,  
His wif was such as sche be scholde,  
His poeple was to him sougit,  
Him lacketh nothing of delit.  
Bot fortune is of such a sleyhte,  
That whan a man is most on heyhte, 1510  
Sche makth him rathest forto falle :  
Ther wot noman what schal befallē,  
The happes over mannes hed  
Ben honged with a tendre thred.  
That proved was on Uluxes ;  
For whan he was most in his pes,  
Fortune gan to make him werre  
And sette his welthe al out of herre.  
Upon a dai as he was merie,  
As thogh ther mihte him nothing derie, 1520  
Whan nyht was come, he goth to bedde,  
With slep and bothe his yhen fedde.  
And while he slepte, he mette a swevene :  
Him thoghte he syh a stature evenē,  
Which brihtere than the sonne schon ;  
A man it semeth was it non,  
Bot yit if was as in figure  
Most lich to mannyssh creature,  
Bot as of beaute hevenelich  
It was most to an Angel lich : 1530  
And thus betwen angel and man P. iii. 53  
Beholden it this king began,  
And such a lust tok of the sihte,  
That fain he wolde, if that he mihte,  
The forme of that figure embrace ;  
And goth him forth toward the place,  
Wher he sih that ymage tho,

1510 on] of AMG, H; in Δ 2513 margin Omnia T, F 1516 in  
pes AdBTΔ (in his pes S) 1518 al om. AdBT 1520 ther,  
he AM 1524 statue A . . . Ba, B 1536 þat place BT

[TALE OF ULYSSES  
AND TELEGONUS.]

And takth it in his Armes tuo,  
 And it embraceth him ayein  
 And to the king thus gan it sein :  
 'Uluxes, understond wel this,  
 The tokne of oure aqueintance is  
 Hierafterward to mochel tene :  
 The love that is ous betuene,  
 Of that we nou such joie make,  
 That on of ous the deth schal take,  
 Whan time comth of destine ;  
 It may non other wise be.'  
 Uluxes tho began to preie  
 That this figure wolde him seie  
 What wyht he is that seith him so.  
 This wyht upon a spere tho  
 A pensel which was wel begon,  
 Embrouded, scheweth him anon :  
 Thre fisshes alle of o colour  
 In manere as it were a tour  
 Upon the pensel were wroght.  
 Uluxes kneu this tokne noght,  
 And preith to wite in som partie  
 What thing it myhte signefie,  
 'A signe it is,' the wyht ansuerde,  
 'Of an Empire : ' and forth he ferde  
 Al sodeinly, whan he that seide.

1540

1550

1560

P. iii. 54

Uluxes out of slep abreide,  
 And that was riht ayein the day,  
 That lengere slepen he ne may.  
 Men sein, a man hath knowleching  
 Save of himself of alle thing ;  
 His oghne chance noman knoweth,  
 Bot as fortune it on him throweth :  
 Was nevere yit so wys a clerk,  
 Which mihte knowe al goddes werk,  
 Ne the secret which god hath set  
 Ayein a man mai noght be let.  
 Uluxes, thogh that he be wys,

Bernardus. Plures  
plura sciunt et seipsos  
nesciunt.

1570

1567 seip SBT *margin* Multi multa sciunt AH: XGECLB:  
*Latin om.* JMR, AdB, W

P

[TALE OF ULYSSES  
AND TELEGONUS.]

With al his wit in his avis,  
The mor that he his swevene acompteth,  
The lasse he wot what it amonteth:  
For al his calculacion,  
He seth no demonstracion 1580  
Al plainly forto knowe an ende;  
Bot natheles hou so it wende,  
He dradde him of his oghne Sone.  
That makth him wel the more astone,  
And schop therfore anon withal,  
So that withinne castel wall  
Thelamachum his Sone he schette,  
And upon him strong warde he sette.  
The sothe further he ne knew,  
Til that fortune him overthreu; 1590  
Bot natheles for sikernesse, P. iii. 55  
Wher that he mihte wite and gesse  
A place strengest in his lond,  
Ther let he make of lym and sond  
A strengthe where he wolde duelle;  
Was nevere man yt herde telle  
Of such an other as it was.  
And forto strengthe him in that cas,  
Of al his lond the sekereste  
Of servantz and the worthieste, 1600  
To kepen him withinne warde,  
He sette his bodi forto warde;  
And made such an ordinance,  
For love ne for aqueintance,  
That were it erly, were it late,  
Thei scholde lete in ate gate  
No maner man, what so betydde,  
Bot if so were himself it bidde.  
Bot al that myhte him noght availe,  
For whom fortune wole assaile, 1610  
Ther mai be non such resistance,  
Which mihte make a man defence;

1581 As S . . . Δ 1598 þe cas JM, Δ þa cas A 1602  
He) His F He charged hem þei scholde harde Hi . . . B<sub>1</sub> (but  
warde E)

Al that schal be mot falle algate.  
 This Circes, which I spak of late,  
 On whom Uluxes hath begete  
 A child, thogh he it have foryete,  
 Whan time com, as it was wone,  
 Sche was delivered of a Sone,  
 Which cleped is Thelogonus.  
 This child, whan he was bore thus,  
 Aboute his moder to ful age,  
 That he can reson and langage,  
 In good astat was drawe forth :  
 And whan he was so mochel worth  
 To stonden in a mannes stede,  
 Circes his moder hath him bede  
 That he schal to his fader go,  
 And tolde him al togedre tho  
 What man he was that him begat.  
 And whan Thelogonus of that  
 Was war and hath ful knowleching  
 Hou that his fader was a king,  
 He preith his moder faire this,  
 To go wher that his fader is ;  
 And sche him granteth that he schal,  
 And made him redi forth withal.  
 It was that time such usance,  
 That every man the conoiscance  
 Of his contre bar in his hond,  
 Whan he wente into strange lond ;  
 And thus was every man therfore  
 Wel knowe, wher that he was bore :  
 For espiaile and mistrowinges  
 They dede thanne suche thinges,  
 That every man mai other knowe.  
 So it befell that ilke throwe  
 Thelogonus as in this cas ;  
 Of his contre the signe was  
 Thre fisshes, whiche he scholde bere  
 Upon the penon of a spere :

1620  
 P. iii. 56

1630

1640

1650

1631 hath } had (hadde) AM . . . B, W  
 S . . . A

1645 mihte (might)



[TALE OF ULYSSES  
AND TELEGONUS.]

And whan that he was thus arraied P. iii 57

And hath his harneis al assaied,  
That he was redy everydel,  
His moder bad him farewel,  
And seide him that he scholde swithe  
His fader griete a thousand sithe.

Thelogonus his moder kiste  
And tok his leve, and wher he wiste  
His fader was, the weie nam,  
Til he unto Nachaie cam,

1660

Which of that lond the chief Cite  
Was cleped, and ther axeth he  
Wher was the king and hou he ferde.  
And whan that he the sothe herde,  
Wher that the king Uluxes was,

Al one upon his hors gret pas  
He rod him forth, and in his hond  
He bar the signal of his lond

With fisshes thre, as I have told;  
And thus he wente unto that hold,  
Wher that his oghne fader duelleth.

1670

The cause why he comth he telleth  
Unto the kepers of the gate,

And wolde have comen in therate,  
Bot schortli thei him seide nay:

And he als faire as evere he may  
Besoghte and tolde hem ofte this,

Hou that the king his fader is;  
Bot they with proude wordes grete

Begunne to manace and threte,

1680

Bot he go fro the gate faste,  
Thei wolde him take and sette faste.

P. iii. 58

Fro wordes unto strokes thus

Thei felle, and so Thelogonus

Was sore hurt and welnyh ded;

Bot with his scharpe speres hed

He makth defence, hou so it falle,

And wan the gate upon hem alle,

And hath slain of the beste fyve;

1669 Which A

1680 and to þrete JH.CB<sub>a</sub>, Δ, WK

And thei ascriden als so blyve  
Thurghout the castell al aboute.

1690 [TALE OF ULYSSES  
AND TELEGONUS]

On every syde men come oute,  
Wherof the kinges herte afflihte,  
And he with al the haste he mihte  
A spere cauhte and out he goth,  
As he that was nyh wod for wroth.  
He sih the gates ful of blod,  
'Thelogonus and wher he stod  
He sih also, bot he ne knew

What man it was, and to him threw  
His Spere, and he sterte out asyde.  
Bot destine, which schal betide,  
Befell that ilke time so,

1700

'Thelogonus knew nothing tho  
What man it was that to him caste,  
And while his oghne spere laste,  
With al the signe therupon  
He caste unto the king anon,  
And smot him with a dedly wounde.

Uluxes fell anon to grounde ;  
Tho every man, 'The king ! the king !' P iii 59

1710

Began to crie, and of this thing  
Thelogonus, which sih the cas,  
On knes he fell and seide, 'Helas !

I have min oghne fader slain :

Nou wolde I deie wonder fain,

Nou sle me who that evere wile,

For certes it is riht good skile.'

He crith, he wepeth, he seith therfore,

'Helas, that evere was I bore,

1720

That this unhappi destine

So wofulli comth in be me !'

This king, which yit hath lif ynouh,

His herte ayein to him he drouh,

And to that vois an Ere he leide

1691 al om. AM 1695 out] forþ H, AdBT 1696 nyh]  
right AdBT for wroth] and wroþ AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> (except C), W wroþ T  
for worþ J 1700 and] but AdBT 1716 I wolde AMX . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
1718 good skile] and skile S . . . ΔΔ

[TALE OF ULYSSES  
AND THELOGONUS.]

And understod al that he seide,  
And gan to speke, and seide on hiȝ,  
'Bring me this man.' And whan he siȝ  
Thelogonus, his thoght he sette  
Upon the swevene which he mette, 1730  
And axeth that he myhte se  
His spere, on which the fisshes thre  
He siȝ upon a pensel wroght.  
Tho wiste he wel it failleth noght,  
And badd him that he telle scholde  
Fro whenne he cam and what he wolde.

Thelogonus in sorghe and wo  
So as he mihte tolde tho  
Unto Uluxes al the cas,  
Hou that Circes his moder was, 1740  
And so forth seide him everydel, P. iii. 60  
Hou that his moder gret him wel,  
And in what wise sche him sente.  
Tho wiste Uluxes what it mente,  
And tok him in huse Armes softe,  
And al bledende he kest him ofte,  
And seide, 'Sone, whil I live,  
This infortune I thee foryive.'  
After his other Sone in haste  
He sende, and he began him haste 1750  
And cam unto his fader tyt.  
Bot whan he siȝ him in such plit,  
He wolde have ronne upon that other  
Anon, and slain his oghne brother,  
Ne hadde be that Uluxes  
Betwen hem made acord and pes,  
And to his heir Thelamachus  
He bad that he Thelogonus  
With al his pouer scholde kepe,  
Til he were of his woundes depe 1760  
Al hol, and thanne he scholde him yive  
Lond wher upon he mihte live.  
Thelamachus, whan he this herde,

1733 þe pensel G, B    1735 badd S    bad A, B    bed J    badde F  
1746 kest J, SB, F    keste T    kuste AC

[TALE OF ULYSSES  
AND TELEGONUS.]

Unto his fader he ansuerde  
And seide he wolde don his wille.  
So duelle thei togedre stille,  
These brethren, and the fader sterveth.

Lo, wherof Sorcerie serveth.  
Thurgh Sorcerie his lust he wan,  
Thurgh Sorcerie his wo began,  
Thurgh Sorcerie his love he ches,  
Thurgh Sorcerie his lif he les;  
The child was gete in Sorcerie,  
The which dede al this felonie:  
Thing which was ayein kynde wroght  
Unkindeliche it was aboght;  
The child his oghne fader slowh,  
That was unkindeschipe ynowh.  
Forthi tak hiede hou that it is,  
So forto winne love amis,  
Which endeth al his joie in wo:  
For of this Art I finde also,  
That hath be do for loves sake,  
Wherof thou miht ensample take,  
A gret Cronique imperial,  
Which evere into memorial  
Among the men, hou so it wende,  
Schal duelle to the worldes ende.

1770  
P. iii. 61

1780

The bihe creatour of thinges,  
Which is the king of alle kinges,  
Ful many a wonder worldes chance  
Let slyden under his suffrance;  
Ther wot noman the cause why,  
Bot he the which is almyhty.  
And that was proved whilom thus,  
Whan that the king Nectanabus,  
Which hadde Egipte forto lede,—  
Bot for he sib tofor the dede  
Thurgh magique of his Sorcerie,  
Wherof he couthe a gret partie,

[TALE OF  
NECTANABUS.]

1790

Hic narrat exemplum super eodem, qualiter Nectanabus ab Egipto in Macedoniam fugitiuus, Olympiadem Philippi Regis ibidem tunc absentis uxorem arte magica decipiens, cum ipsa concubuit, magnamque ex ea Alexandrum sortilegus genuit, qui natus, postea cum ad erudiendum sub eius todia Nectanabi com

1800

1786 into] in A. . . B. vnto W 1787 it so AM  
de Egipto BT 1794 margin fugiturus BT

1793 margin

[TALE OF  
NECTANABUS]

mendatus fuisset, ipsum Nectanabum patrem suum ab altitudine cuiusdam turris in fossam profundam proiciens interfecit. Et sic sortilegus ex suo sortilegio infortunii sortem sortitus est.

Hise enemys to him comende, P. iii 62

Fro whom he mihte him noght defende,

Out of his oghne lond he fledde;

And in the wise as he him dredde

It fell, for al his wicchecraft,

So that Egipte him was beraft,

And he disguised fledde aweie

Be schipe, and hield the rihte weie

To Macedoine, wher that he

Aryveth ate chief Cite. 1810

Thre yomen of his chambre there

Al only forto serve him were,

The whiche he trusteth wonder wel,

For thei were trewe as eny stiel;

And hapneth that thei with him ladde

Part of the beste good he hadde.

Thei take logginge in the toun

After the disposicion

Wher as him thoghte best to duelle

He axeth thanne and herde telle 1820

Hou that the king was oute go

Upon a werre he hadde tho;

But in that Cite thanne was

The queene, which Olimpias

Was hote, and with sollempnete

The feste of hir nativite,

As it befell, was thanne holde;

And for hire list to be beholde

And preised of the poeple aboute,

Sche schop hir forto riden oute

At after mete al openly. 1830

Anon were alle men redy,

And that was in the monthe of Mai,

This lusti queene in good arrai

Was set upon a Mule whyt:

To sen it was a gret delit

The joie that the cite made;

With freisshe thinges and with glade

P. iii. 63

1806 margin ex] pro BT      1815 thei] he B      1817 toke  
(took &c.) A . . B2      1828 to beholde (be holde, Hi, AdTB

The noble toun was al behonged,  
And every wiht was sore alonged  
To se this lusti ladi ryde.

1840

Ther was gret merthe on alle syde ;  
Wher as sche passeth be the strete,  
Ther was ful many a tymber bete  
And many a maide carolende :  
And thus thurghout the toun pleiende  
This queene unto a pleine rod,  
Wher that sche hoved and abod  
To se diverse game pleie,  
The lusti folk jouste and tourneie ;  
And so forth every other man,  
Which pleie couthe, his pley began,  
To plesse with this noble queene.

1850

Nectanabus cam to the grene  
Amonges othre and drouh him nyh.  
Bot whan that he this ladi sih  
And of hir beaute hiede tok,  
He couthe noght withdrawe his lok  
To se noght elles in the field,  
Bot stod and only hire behield.  
Of his clothinge and of his gere

1860

P. iii. 64

• He was unlich alle othre there,  
So that it hapneth ate laste,  
The queene on him hire yhe caste,  
And knew that he was strange anon :  
Bot he behield hire evere in on  
Withoute blenchinge of his chere.  
Sche tok good hiede of his manere,  
And wondreth why he dede so,  
And bad men scholde for him go.  
He cam and dede hire reverence,  
And sche him axeth in cilence  
Fro whenne he cam and what he wolde  
And he with sobre wordes tolde,  
And seith, 'Ma dame, a clerk I am,  
To you and in message I cam,  
The which I mai noght tellen hiere ;

1870

1847 je pleine AdBT

1875 And] He AdBT

[TALE OF  
NECTANABUS.]

Bot if it liketh you to hiere,  
 It mot be seid al prively,  
 Wher non schall be bot ye and I.' 1880  
 Thus for the time he tok his leve.  
 The dai goth forth til it was eve,  
 That every man mot lete his werk;  
 And sche thoghte evere upon this clerk,  
 What thing it is he wolde mene:  
 And in this wise abod the queene,  
 And passeth over thilke nyht,  
 Til it was on the morwe liht.  
 Sche sende for him, and he com,  
 With him his Astellabre he nom, 1890  
 Which was of fin gold precious P. iii. 65  
 With pointz and cercles mervelous;  
 And ek the hevenely figures  
 Wroght in a bok ful of peintures  
 He tok this ladi forto schewe,  
 And tolde of ech of hem be rewe  
 The cours and the condicion.  
 And sche with gret affeccion  
 Sat stille and herde what he wolde:  
 And thus whan he sih time, he tolde, 1900  
 And feigneth with hise wordes wise  
 A tale, and seith in such a wise:  
 'Ma dame, bot a while ago,  
 Wher I was in Egipte tho,  
 And radde in scole of this science,  
 It fell into mi conscience  
 That I unto the temple wente,  
 And ther with al myn hole entente  
 As I mi sacrifice dede,  
 On of the goddes hath me bede 1910  
 That I you warne prively,  
 So that ye make you redy,  
 And that ye be nothing agast;  
 For he such love hath to you cast,  
 That ye schul ben his oghne diere,

And he schal be your beddefiere,  
 Til ye conceive and be with childe.'  
 And with that word sche wax al mylde,  
 And somdel red becam for schame,  
 And axeth him that goddes name, 1930  
 Which so wol don hire compainie. P. iii. 66  
 And he seide, 'Amos of Lubie.'  
 And sche seith, 'That mai I nocht lieve,  
 Bot if I sihe a betre prieve.'  
 'Ma dame,' quod Nectanabus,  
 'In tokne that it schal be thus,  
 This nyht for enformacion  
 Ye schul have an avision:  
 That Amos schal to you appiere,  
 To schewe and teche in what manere 1930  
 The thing schal afterward befall.  
 Ye oghten wel aboven alle  
 To make joie of such a lord;  
 For whan ye ben of on acord,  
 He schal a Sone of you begete,  
 Which with his swerd schal winne and gete  
 The wyde world in lengthe and brede;  
 Alle erthli kinges schull him drede,  
 And in such wise, I you behote,  
 The god of erthe he schal be hote.' 1940  
 'If this be soth,' tho quod the queene,  
 'This nyht, thou seist, it schal be sene.  
 And if it falle into mi grace,  
 Of god Amos that I pourchace  
 To take of him so gret worschipe,  
 I wol do thee such ladischipe,  
 Wherof thou schalt for everemo  
 Be riche.' And he hir thonketh tho,  
 And tok his leve and forth he wente.  
 Sche wiste litel what he mente, 1950  
 For it was guile and Sorcerie, P. iii. 67  
 Al that sche tok for Prophecie.  
 Nectanabus thurghout the day,

1931 thing] king B

1939 such AJC, B suche S, F



[TALE OF  
NECTANABUS.]

Whan he cam hom wher as he lay,  
 His chambre be himselve tok,  
 And overtorneth many a bok,  
 And thurgh the craft of Artemage  
 Of wex he forgeth an ymage.  
 He loketh his equacions  
 And ek the constellacions,  
 He loketh the conjuncions,  
 He loketh the recepcions,  
 His signe, his houre, his ascendent,  
 And drawth fortune of his assent :  
 The name of queene Olimpias  
 In thilke ymage write was  
 Amiddes in the front above.  
 And thus to winne his lust of love  
 Nectanabus this werk hath diht ;  
 And whan it cam withinne nyht,  
 That every wyht is falle aslepe,  
 He thoghte he wolde his time kepe,  
 As he which hath his houre apointed.  
 And thanne ferst he hath enoignted  
 With sondri herbes that figure,  
 And therupon he gan conjure,  
 So that thurgh his enchantement  
 This ladi, which was innocent  
 And wiste nothing of this guile,  
 Mette, as sche slepte thilke while,  
 Hou fro the hevene cam a lyht,  
 Which al hir chambre made lyht ;  
 And as sche loketh to and fro,  
 Sche sib, hir thoghte, a dragoun tho,  
 Whos scherdes schynen as the Sonne,  
 And hath his softe pas begonne  
 With al the chiere that he may  
 Toward the bedd ther as sche lay,  
 Til he cam to the beddes side.  
 And sche lai stille and nothing cride,  
 For he dede alle his thinges faire  
 And was courteis and debonaire :  
 1954 wher þat A . . . Bs (*except E*) ther as W

1960

1970

1980

P. iii. 68

1990

[TALE OF  
NECTANABUS.]

And as he stod hire fasteby,  
 His forme he changeth sodeinly,  
 And the figure of man he nom,  
 To hire and into bedde he com,  
 And such thing there of love he wroghte,  
 Wherof, so as hire thanne thoghte,  
 Thurgh hkinge of this god Amos  
 With childe anon hire wombe aros, 2000  
 And sche was wonder glad withal.  
 Nectanabus, which causeth al  
 Of this metrede the substance,  
 Whan he sih time, his nigromance  
 He stinte and nothing more seide  
 Of his carecte, and sche abreide  
 Out of hir slep, and lieveth wel  
 That it is soth thanne everydel  
 Of that this clerk hire hadde told,  
 And was the gladdere manyfold 2010  
 In hope of such a glad metrede,  
 Which after schal befall in dede. P. iii. 69

Sche longeth sore after the dai,  
 That sche hir swevene telle mai  
 To this guilour in privete,  
 Which kneu it als so wel as sche:  
 And natheles on morwe sone  
 Sche lefte alle other thing to done,  
 And for him sende, and al the cas  
 Sche tolde him plainly as it was, 2020  
 And seide hou thanne wel sche wiste  
 That sche his wordes mihte triste,  
 For sche fond hire Avisioun  
 Riht after the condicion  
 Which he hire hadde told tofore;  
 And preide him hertely therfore  
 That he hire holde covenant  
 So forth of al the remenant,  
 That sche may thurgh his ordinance  
 Toward the god do such plesance, 2030

1993 fasteby J, F faste by AC, SB 1996 he om. AdBT 2016  
 als (as) wel XCLB, Δ (?), WK 2030 Towardes (Toward) god AdBT

[TALE OF  
NECTANABUS.]

That sche wakende myhte him kepe  
In such wise as sche mette aslepe.  
And he, that couthe of guile ynouh,  
Whan he this herde, of joie he loub,  
And seith, 'Ma dame, it schal be do.  
Bot this I warne you therto:  
This nyht, whan that he comth to pleie,  
That ther be no lif in the weie  
Bot I, that schal at his likinge  
Ordeine so for his cominge, 2040  
That ye ne schull noght of him faile. P. iii. 70  
For this, ma dame, I you consaile,  
That ye it kepe so prive,  
That no wiht elles bot we thre  
Have knowlechinge hou that it is;  
For elles mihte it fare amis,  
If ye dede oght that scholde him grieve.'  
And thus he makth hire to believe,  
And feigneth under guile feith:  
Bot natheles al that he seith 2050  
Sche troweth; and ayein the nyht  
Sche hath withinne hire chambre dyht,  
Wher as this guilour faste by  
Upon this god schal prively  
Awaite, as he makth hire to wene:  
And thus this noble gentil queene,  
Whan sche most trusteth, was deceived.  
The nyht com, and the chambre is weyved,  
Nectanabus hath take his place,  
And whan he sih the time and space, 2060  
Thurgh the deceipte of his magique  
He putte him out of mannes like,  
And of a dragoun tok the forme,  
As he which wolde him al conforme  
To that sche sih in swevene er this;

2041 3e schol (schul) not of him AdΔ ye ne shalle of  
him H; I ne schal of him AM 2046 mihte AJ, S  
miht F might C, B 2055 and he makþ BT and makeþ  
Ad 2061 the om. AM . . . B, Δ 2062 putte AC, B  
put J, F

And thus to chambre come he is.  
 The queene lay abedde and sih,  
 And hopeth evere, as he com nyh,  
 That he god of Luby were,  
 So hath sche wel the lasse fere. 2070  
 Bot for he wolde hire more assure, P. iii. 71  
 Yit eft he changeth his figure,  
 And of a wether the liknesse  
 He tok, in signe of his noblesse  
 With large hornes for the nones :  
 Of fin gold and of riche stones  
 A corone on his hed he bar,  
 And soudeinly, er sche was war,  
 As he which alle guile can,  
 His forme he torneth into man, 2080  
 And cam to bedde, and sche lai stille,  
 Wher as sche soffreth al his wille,  
 As sche which wende noght misdo.  
 Bot natheles it hapneth so,  
 Although sche were in part deceived,  
 Yit for al that sche hath conceived  
 The worthieste of alle kiththe,  
 Which evere was tofore or sitbthe  
 Of conqueste and chivalerie;  
 So that thurgh guile and Sorcerie 2090  
 Ther was that noble knyht begunne,  
 Which al the world hath after wunne.  
 Thus fell the thing which falle scholde,  
 Nectanabus hath that he wolde ;  
 With guile he hath his love sped,  
 With guile he cam into the bed,  
 With guile he goth him out ayein :  
 He was a schrewed chamberlein,  
 So to beguile a worthi queene,  
 And that on him was after seene. 2100  
 Bot natheles the thing is do ; P. iii. 72  
 This false god was sone go,

2071 wolde AJ, SB wold F 2083 noght misdo om B  
 2089 and of cheualerie (chivalric &c.) AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdA, W 2091  
 that] þe AM

TALE OF  
NECTANABUS ]

With his deceipte and hield him clos,  
Til morwe cam, that he aros.

And tho, whan time and leisir was,  
The queene tolde him al the cas,  
As sche that guile non supposeth;  
And of tuo pointz sche him opposeth.  
On was, if that this god nomore  
Wol come ayein, and overmore,  
Hou sche schal stonden in acord  
With king Philippe hire oghne lord,  
Whan he comth hom and seth hire grone.  
'Ma dame,' he seith, 'let me alone :

2110

As for the god I undertake  
That whan it liketh you to take  
His compaignie at eny throwe,  
If I a day tofore it knowe,  
He schal be with you on the nyht ;  
And he is wel of such a myht  
To kepe you from alle blame.  
Forthi conforte you, ma dame,  
Ther schal non other cause be.'

2120

Thus tok he leve and forth goth he,  
And tho began he forto muse  
Hou he the queene mihte excuse  
Toward the king of that is falle ;  
And fond a craft amonges alle,  
Thurgh which he hath a See foul daunted,  
With his magique and so enchaunted,  
That he flyh forth, whan it was nyht, P. iii. 73  
Unto the kinges tente riht,

2130

Wher that he lay amidde his host :  
And whanne he was aslepe most,  
With that the See foul to him broghte  
And othre charmes, whiche he wroghte  
At hom withinne his chambre stille,  
The king he torneth at his wille,  
And makth him forto dreme and se  
The dragoun and the privete  
Which was betuen him and the queene.

2140

And over that he made him wene  
 In swevene, hou that the god Amos,  
 Whan he up fro the queene aros,  
 Tok forth a ring, wherinne a ston  
 Was set, and grave therupon  
 A Sonne, in which, whan he cam nyh,  
 A leoun with a swerd he sih;  
 And with that priente, as he tho mette,  
 Upon the queenes wombe he sette 2150  
 A Seal, and goth him forth his weie.  
 With that the swevene wente aweie,  
 And tho began the king awake  
 And sigheth for his wyves sake,  
 Wher as he lay withinne his tente,  
 And hath gret wonder what it mente.

With that he hasteth him to ryse  
 Anon, and sende after the wise,  
 Among the whiche ther was on,  
 A clerc, his name is Amphion: 2160  
 Whan he the kinges swevene herde, P. iii. 74  
 What it betokneth he ansuerde,  
 And seith, 'So siker as the lif,  
 A god hath leie be thi wif,  
 And gete a Sone, which schal winne  
 The world and al that is withinne.  
 As leon is the king of bestes,  
 So schal the world obeie his hestes,  
 Which with his swerd schal al be wonne,  
 Als ferr as schyneth eny Sonne.' 2170

The king was doubtif of this dom;  
 Bot natheles, whan that he com  
 Ayein into his oghne lond,  
 His wif with childe gret he fond.  
 He muhte noght himselve stiere,  
 That he ne made hire hevy chiere;  
 Bot he which couthe of alle sorwe,  
 Nectanabus, upon the morwe  
 Thurgh the deceipte and nigromance

2145 þer inne AdBT 2149 tho] so AdBT 2155 Wher þat  
 AM . . . B: 2156 what] þat AM

• •

Q

[TALE OF  
NECTANABUS.]

Tok of a dragoun the semblance, 2180  
 And wher the king sat in his halle,  
 Com in rampende among hem alle  
 With such a noise and such a rore,  
 That thei agast were also sore  
 As thogh thei scholde deie anon.  
 And natheles he grieveth non,  
 Bot goth toward the deyss on hih;  
 And whan he cam the queene nyh,  
 He stinte his noise, and in his wise  
 To hire he profreth his servise, 2190  
 And leith his hed upon hire barm; P. iii. 75  
 And sche with goodly chiere hire arm  
 Aboute his necke ayeinward leide,  
 And thus the queene with him pleide  
 In sihte of alle men aboute.  
 And ate laste he gan to loute  
 And obeissance unto hire make,  
 As he that wolde his leve take;  
 And sodeinly his lothly forme  
 Into an Egle he gan transforme, 2200  
 And flyh and sette him on a raile;  
 Wherof the king hath gret mervaile,  
 For there he pruneth him and piketh,  
 As doth an hauk whan him wel liketh,  
 And after that himself he schok,  
 Wherof that al the halle quok,  
 As it a terremote were;  
 Thei seiden alle, god was there:  
 In such a res and forth he flyh.  
 The king, which al this wonder syh, 2210  
 Whan he cam to his chambre alone,  
 Unto the queene he made his mone  
 And of foryvenesse hir preide;  
 For thanne he knew wel, as he seide,  
 Sche was with childe with a godd.  
 Thus was the king withoute rodd  
 Chastised, and the queene excused  
 Of that sche hadde ben accused.

2212 he om. B

## LIBER SEXTUS

227

[TALE OF  
NECTANABUS.]

And for the gretere evidence,  
 Yit after that in the presence  
 Of king Philipp and othre mo,  
 Whan thei ride in the fieldes tho,  
 A Phesant cam before here yhe,  
 The which anon as thei hire syhe,  
 Fleende let an ey down falle,  
 And it tobrak tofore hem alle:  
 And as thei token therof kepe,  
 Thei syhe out of the schelle crepe  
 A litel Serpent on the ground,  
 Which rampeth al aboute round,  
 And in ayein it wolde have wonne,  
 Bot for the brennyng of the Sonne  
 It mihte noght, and so it deide.  
 And therupon the clerkes seide,  
 'As the Serpent, whan it was oute,  
 Went enviroun the schelle aboute  
 And mihte noght torne in ayein,  
 So schal it fallen in certain:  
 This child the world schal envrone,  
 And above alle the corone  
 Him schal befalle, and in yong Age  
 He schal desire in his corage,  
 Whan al the world is in his hond,  
 To torn ayein into the lond  
 Wher he was bore, and in his weie  
 Homward he schal with puison deie.'

2220

P. iii. 76

2230

2240

The king, which al this sih and herde,  
 Fro that dai forth, hou so it ferde,  
 His jalousie hath al foryete.  
 Bot he which hath the child begete,  
 Nectanabus, in private  
 The time of his nativite  
 Upon the constellacioun  
 Awaiteth, and relacion  
 Makth to the queene hou sche schal do,

2250

P. iii 77

2226 before (biforn &c.) M . . . B: afore (afor) A, W 2231 he  
 wolde AdBT 2244 vnto AdBT 2247 sih (sigh, seyh) A, SB  
 2252 F sye J 2255 schal] had H, AdBT



[TALE OF  
NECTANABUS]

And every houre apointeth so,  
That no mynut therof was lore.  
So that in due time is bore  
This child, and forth with therupon  
Ther felle wondres many on 2260  
Of terremote universiel :

The Sonne tok colour of stiel  
And loste his lyht, the wyndes blewe,  
And manye strengthes overthrewe ;  
The See his propre kinde changeth,  
And al the world his forme strangeth ;  
The thonder with his fyri leve  
So cruel was upon the hevene,  
That every erthli creature  
Tho thoghte his lif in aventure. 2270

The tempeste ate laste cesseth,  
The child is kept, his age encresseth,  
And Alisandre his name is hote,  
To whom Calistre and Aristote  
To techen him Philosophie  
Entenden, and Astronomie,  
With othre thinges whiche he couthe  
Also, to teche him in his youthe  
Nectanabus tok upon honde.

Bot every man mai understonde, 2280  
Of Sorcerie hou that it wende, P. iii. 78  
It wole himselve prove at ende,  
And namely forto beguile  
A lady, which withoute guile  
Supposeth trouthe al that sche hiereth :  
Bot often he that evele stiereth  
His Schip is dreynt therinne amidde ;  
And in this cas riht so betudde.

Nectanabus upon a nyht,  
Whan it was fair and sterre lyht, 2290  
This yonge lord ladde up on hih  
Above a tour, wher as he sih  
The sterres suche as he acompteth,  
And seith what ech of hem amonteth,

As thogh he knewe of alle thing;  
 Bot yit hath he no knowleching  
 What schal unto himself befallē.  
 Whan he hath told his wordes alle,  
 This yonge lord thanne him opposeth,  
 And axeth if that he supposeth 2300  
 What deth he schal himselve deie.  
 He seith, 'Or fortune is aweie  
 And every sterre hath lost his wone,  
 Or elles of myn oghne Sone  
 I schal be slain, I mai noght fle.'  
 Thoghte Alisandre in prive,te,  
 'Hierof this olde dotard lieth':  
 And er that other oght aspieth,  
 Al sodeinliche his olde bones  
 He schof over the wal at ones, 2310  
 And seith him, 'Ly down there apart: P. ili. 79  
 Wherof nou serveth al thin art?  
 Thou knewe alle othre menne's chance  
 And of thiself hast ignorance:  
 That thou hast seid amonges alle  
 Of thi persone, is noght befallē.'  
 Nectanabus, which hath his deth,  
 Yit while him lasteth lif and breth,  
 To Alisandre he spak and seide  
 That he with wrong blame on him leide, 2320  
 Fro point to point and al the cas  
 He tolde, hou he his Sone was.  
 Tho he, which sory was ynowh,  
 Out of the dich his fader drouh,  
 And tolde his moder hou it ferde  
 In conseil; and whan sche it herde  
 And kneu the toknes whiche he tolde,  
 Sche nyste what sche seie scholde,  
 Bot stod abayssht as for the while  
 Of his magique and al the guile. 2330  
 Sche thoghte hou that sche was deceived,

2399 appose) AMGBz, W      2301 schold(e) SAdBT      2303  
 hast F      2314 of H:GEC, S...Δ, W      if AJMXRLBz, FK  
 2331 that om. AM...Bz, WK

[TALE OF  
NECTANABUS.]

That sche hath of a man conceived,  
And wende a god it hadde be.  
Bot natheles in such degre,  
So as sche mihte hire honour save,  
Sche schop the body was begrave.

And thus Nectanabus aboghte  
The Sorcerie which he wroghte :  
Thogh he upon the creatures  
Thurgh his carectes and figures <sup>2340</sup>  
The maistrie and the pouer hadde, **P. iii. 80**  
His creatour to noght him ladde,  
Ayein whos lawe his craft he useth,  
Whan he for lust his god refuseth,  
And tok him to the dieules craft.  
Lo, what profit him is belast :  
That thing thurgh which he wende have stonde,  
Ferst him exilede out of londe  
Which was his oghne, and from a king  
Made him to ben an underling ; <sup>2350</sup>  
And siththen to deceive a queene,  
That torneth him to mochel teene ;  
Thurgh lust of love he gat him hate,  
That ende couthe he noght abate.  
His olde sleyhtes whiche he caste,  
Yonge Alisaundre hem overcaste,  
His fader, which him misbegat,  
He slouh, a gret mishap was that ;  
Bot for o mis an other mys  
Was yolde, and so fulofte it is ; <sup>2360</sup>  
Nectanabus his craft miswente,  
So it misfell him er he wente.  
I not what helpeth that clergie  
Which makth a man to do folie,  
And nameliche of nigromance,  
Which stant upon the mescrance.

And forto se more evidence,  
Zorastes, which the experience  
Of Art magique ferst forth drouh,

[ZOROASTER.]  
Nota qualiter Rex  
Zorastes, statim cum  
ab utero matris sue

2345 dieules S, F dieules A deueles J, B <sup>2355 caste</sup>  
caughte B 2357 S has lost a leaf 2357-vii. 88

Anon as he was bore, he louh,  
 Which tokne was of wo suinge :  
 For of his oghne controvinge  
 He fond magique and tauhte it forth ;  
 Bot al that was him litel worth,  
 For of Surrie a worthi king  
 Him slou, and that was his endyng.  
 Bot yit thurgh him this craft is used,  
 And he thurgh al the world accused,  
 For it schal nevere wel achieve  
 That stant noght riht with the believe :  
 Bot lich to wolfe is evele sponne,  
 Who lest himself hath litel wonne,  
 An ende proveth every thing.  
 Saul, which was of Juys king,  
 Up peine of deth forbad this art,  
 And yit he tok therof his part.

The Phitonesse in Samarie  
 Yaf him conseil be Sorcerie,  
 Which after fell to mochel sorwe,  
 For he was slain upon the morwe.

To conne moche thing it helpeth,  
 Bot of to mochel noman yelpeth :  
 So forto loke on every side,  
 Magique mai noght wel betyde.  
 Forthi, my Sone, I wolde rede  
 That thou of these ensamples drede,  
 That for no lust of erthli love  
 Thou seche so to come above,  
 Wherof as in the worldes wonder  
 Thou schalt for evere be put under.

Mi goode fader, grant mercy,  
 For evere I schal be war therby :  
 Of love what me so befalle,  
 Such Sorcerie aboven alle  
 Fro this dai forth I schal eschuie,

2370 [ZOROASTER]

P. iii. 81 nasceretur, gaudio  
 magno risit; in quo  
 prenosticum doloris  
 subsequens signum  
 figurabatur: nam et  
 ipse detestabilis ma-  
 gice primus fuit inuen-  
 tor, quem postea Rex  
 Surrie dira morte tru-  
 cidavit, et sic opus  
 operarium consump-  
 sit.

2380

[SAUL AND THE  
 WITCH]

Nota de Saule et  
 Phitonissa

2390

Confessor

[MAGIC TO BE  
 ESCHewed.]

2400

P. iii. 82

Amans.

2376 that om. AM 2383 An ende BT, F And ende AJMERL,  
 Ad, K And pende CL And the ende H1 And sende X The ende  
 B2, W At ende Δ 2385 margin Nota de Saule et Ph. om. AM, Δ  
 2403 so me A . . . B2, AdΔ euer me W

That so ne wol I noght poursuiue  
 Mi lust of love forto seche.  
 Bot this I wolde you beseche,  
 Beside that me stant of love,  
 As I you herde speke above  
 Hou Alisandre was betawht  
 To Aristotle, and so wel tawht  
 Of al that to a king belongeth,  
 Wherof min herte sore longeth  
 To wite what it wolde mene.  
 For be reson I wolde wene  
 That if I herde of thinges strange,  
 Yit for a time it scholde change  
 Mi peine, and lisse me somdiel.

2410

Confessor.

Mi goode Sone, thou seist wel.  
 For wisdom, hou that evere it stonde,  
 To him that can it understonde  
 Doth gret profit in sondri wise;  
 Bot touchende of so hih aprise,  
 Which is noght unto Venus knowe,  
 I mai it noght miselue knowe,  
 Which of hir court am al forthdrawe  
 And can nothing bot of hir lawe.  
 Bot natheles to knowe more  
 Als wel as thou me longeth sore;  
 And for it helpeth to comuna,  
 Al ben thei noght to me comune,  
 The scoles of Philosophie,  
 Yit thenke I forto specefie,  
 In boke as it is comprehended,  
 Wherof thou mihtest ben amended.  
 For thogh I be noght al cunnyng  
 Upon the forme of this wrytyng  
 Som part therof yit have I herd,  
 In this matiere hou it hath ferd.

2420

2430

P. iii. 83

2440

## Explicit Liber Sextus.

2417 But B

2433 Philophie F

2435 bokes AdBT, W

## Incipit Liber Septimus. P. iii. 84

1. *Omnibus in causis sapiens doctrina salutem  
 Consequitur, nec habet quis nisi doctus opem.  
 Naturam superat doctrina, viro quod et ortus  
 Ingenii docilis non dedit, ipsa dabit.  
 Non ita discretus hominum per climata regnat,  
 Quin, magis ut sapiat, indiget ipse scola.*

[THE EDUCATION OF  
ALEXANDER.]

I GENIUS the prest of love,  
 Mi Sone, as thou hast preid above  
 That I the Scole schal declare  
 Of Aristotle and ek the fare  
 Of Alsandre, hou he was tauht,  
 I am somdel therof destrauht;  
 For it is noght to the matiere  
 Of love, why we sitten hiere  
 To schryve, so as Venus bad.  
 Bot natheles, for it is glad,  
 So as thou seist, for thin aprise  
 To hiere of suche thinges wise,  
 Wherof thou myht the time lisse,  
 So as I can, I schal the wisse:  
 For wisdom is at every throwe  
 Above alle other thing to knowe  
 In loves cause and elleswhere.  
 Forthi, my Sone, unto thin Ere,  
 Though it be noght in the registre  
 Of Venus, yit of that Calistre  
 And Aristotle whylom write  
 To Alisandre, thou schalt wite.  
 Bot for the lores ben diverse,

Quia omnis doctrina bona humano regimini salutem confert, in hoc septimo libro ad instanciam Amantis languidi intendit Genius illam ex qua Philosophi et Astrologi philosophie doctrinam Regem Alexandrum imbuerunt, secundum aliquid declarare. Dividit enim philosophiam in tres partes, quarum prima Theorica, secunda Rhetorica, tertia Practica nuncupata est, de quarum condicionibus subsequenter per singula tractabit.

P. iii. 85

20

[THREE PARTS OF  
PHILOSOPHY.]

I thenke ferst to the reherce  
The nature of Philosophie,  
Which Aristotle of his clergie,  
Wys and expert in the sciences,  
Declareth thilke intelligences,  
As of thre pointz in principal.

Wherof the ferste in special 30  
Is Theorique, which is grounded  
On him which al the world hath founded,  
Which comprehendeth al the lore.

And forto loken overmore,  
Next of sciences the seconde  
Is Rethorique, whos faconde  
Above alle othre is eloquent:  
To telle a tale in juggement  
So wel can noman speke as he.

The laste science of the thre 40  
It is Practique, whos office  
The vertu tryeth fro the vice,  
And techeth upon goode thewes  
To fle the compaignie of schrewes,  
Which stant in disposicion P. iii. 86  
Of mannes free eleccion.

Practique enformeth ek the reule,  
Hou that a worthi king schal reule  
His Realme bothe in werre and pes.

Lo, thus danz Aristotiles 50  
These thre sciences hath divided  
And the nature also decided,  
Wherof that ech of hem schal serve.

The ferste, which is the conserve  
And kepere of the remnant,  
As that which is most sufficant  
And chief of the Philosophie,  
If I therof schal specefie  
So as the Philosophre tolde,  
Nou herkne, and kep that thou it holde. 60

11. *Prima creatorem dat scire sciencia summum  
 Qui caput agnoscit, sufficit illud ei.  
 Plura viros quandoque iuuat nescire, set illud  
 Quod videt expediens, sobrius ille sapit.*

[I. THEORIC.]

Of Theorique principal  
 The Philosophre in special  
 The propretees hath determined,  
 As thilke which is enlumined  
 Of wisdom and of his prudence  
 Above alle othere in his science:  
 And stant departed upon thre,  
 The ferste of which in his degre  
 Is cleped in Philosophie  
 The science of Theologie,  
 That other named is Phisique,  
 The thridde is seid Mathematique.

Hic tractat de prima parte Philosophie, que Theorica dicitur, cuius natura triplex dotata est sciencia, scilicet Theologia, Phisica et Mathematica: set primo illam partem Theologie declarabit,

70

P. iii. 87

Theologie is that science  
 Which unto man yifeth evidence  
 Of thing which is noght bodely,  
 Wherof men knowe redely  
 The hihe almyhti Trinite,  
 Which is o god in unite  
 Withouten ende and beginnyng  
 And creatour of alle thinge,  
 Of hevene, of erthe and ek of helle.  
 Wherof, as olde bokes telle,  
 The Philosophre in his resoun  
 Wrot upon this conclusioun,  
 And of his wrytinge in a clause  
 He clepeth god the ferste cause,  
 Which of himself is thilke good,  
 Withoute whom nothing is good,  
 Of which that every creature  
 Hath his beinge and his nature.  
 After the beinge of the thinges  
 Ther ben thre formes of beinges:  
 Thing which began and ende schal,

[THEOLOGY]

80

90

Nota quod triplex dicitur essentia. Prima temporanea, que incipit et desinit, Se-

*Latin Verses 11, 2 capit AdBT, W*

87 is thilke] his ilke H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>  
 pc AMH<sub>1</sub>XRLB<sub>1</sub>

89 S resumes

92 thre]



## [THEOLOGY.]

cunda perpetua, que  
incipit et non desinit,  
Tercia sempiterna,  
que nec incipit nec  
desinit.

That thing is cleped temporal ;  
Ther is also be other were  
Thing which began and schal noght deie,  
As Soules, that ben spiritiel,  
Here beinge is perpetuel :  
Bot ther is on above the Sonne,  
Whos time nevere was begonne,  
And endeles schal evere be ;  
That is the god, whos mageste  
Alle othre thinges schal governe,  
And his beinge is sempiternc.  
The god, to whom that al honour  
Belongeth, he is creatour,  
And othre ben hise creatures :  
The god commandeth the natures  
That thei to him obeien alle ;  
Withouten him, what so befalle,  
Her myht is non, and he mai al :  
The god was evere and evere schal,  
And thei begonne of his assent ;  
The times alle be present  
To god, to hem and alle unknowe,  
Bot what him liketh that thei knowe :  
Thus bothe an angel and a man,  
The whiche of al that god began  
Be chief, obeien goddes myht,  
And he stant endeles upriht.  
To this science ben prive  
The clerkes of divinite,  
The whiche unto the poeple prechen  
The feith of holi cherche and techen,  
Which in som cas upon believe  
Stant more than thei conne prieve  
Be weie of Argument sensible :  
Bot natheles it is credible,  
And doth a man gret meede have,  
To him that thinkth himself to save.  
Theologie in such a wise

100

P. iii. 88

110

120

130

P. iii. 89

108 The god] And he B The T He Ad 109 That] And AdBT  
119 By chief AM . . . C, W þe cheef L

Of hih science and hih aprise  
Above alle othre stant unlike,  
And is the ferste of Theorique.

Phisque is after the secounde,  
Thurgh which the Philosophre bath founde  
To techen sondri knowlechinges  
Upon the bodiliche thinges.

Of man, of beste, of herbe, of ston,  
Of fisch, of foughl, of everychon  
That ben of bodely substance,  
The nature and the circumstance  
Thurgh this science it is ful soght,  
Which vailleth and which vailleth noght.

The thridde point of Theorique,  
Which cleped is Mathematique,  
Devided is in sondri wise  
And stant upon diverse aprise.  
The ferste of whiche is Arsmetique,  
And the secounde is seid Musique,  
The thridde is ek Geometrie,  
Also the ferthe Astronomie.

Of Arsmetique the matiere  
Is that of which a man mai liere  
What Algorisme in nombre amonteth,  
Whan that the wise man acompteth  
After the formel proprete  
Of Algorismes Abece:  
Be which multiplicacioun  
Is mad and diminucioun  
Of sommes be the experience  
Of this Art and of this science.

The secounde of Mathematique,  
Which is the science of Musique,  
That techeth upon Armonie  
A man to make melodie  
Be vois and soun of instrument  
Thurgh notes of acordement,  
The whiche men pronounce alofte,  
Nou scharpe notes and nou softe,

161 experience M . . . B, A

## [PHYSICS.]

Nota de secunda  
parte Theorice, que  
Phisica dicitur.

140

## [MATHEMATICS.]

Nota de terciã parte  
Theorice, que Mathe-  
matica dicitur, cuius  
condicio quatuor in  
se continet intelligen-  
cias, scilicet Arsmeti-  
cam, Musicam, Ge-  
ometriam et Astro-  
nomiam set primo  
de Artismetice natura  
dicere intendit.

150

160

P. iii. 90

Nota de Musica, que  
secunda pars Artis  
Mathematice dicitur.

170

[MATHEMATICS.]

Nota de terciã spe-  
cie Artis Mathematicæ,  
quam Geometriam vo-  
cant.

Nou hihe notes and nou lowe,  
As be the gamme a man mai knowe,  
Which techeth the prolacion  
Of note and the condicion.

Mathematique of his science  
Hath yit the thridde intelligence  
Full of wisdom and of clergie  
And cleped is Geometrie,  
Thurgh which a man hath thilke sleyhte,  
Of lengthe, of brede, of depthe, of heyhte 180  
To knowe the proporcion  
Be verrai calculacion  
Of this science: and in this wise  
These olde Philosophres wise,  
Of al this worldes erthe round,  
Hou large, hou thikke was the ground,  
Controeeden the experience;  
The cercle and the circumference  
Of every thing unto the hevene  
Thei setten point and mesure evene. 190

Mathematique above therthe P. iii. 91  
Of hyh science hath yit the ferthe,  
Which spekth upon Astronomie  
And techeth of the sterres hihe,  
Beginnyng upward fro the mone.  
Bot ferst, as it was forto done,  
This Aristotle in other thing  
Unto this worthi yonge king  
The kinde of every element  
Which stant under the firmament, 200  
Hou it is mad and in what wise,  
Fro point to point he gan devise.

[CREATION OF THE  
FOUR ELEMENTS.] —

iii. *Quatuor omnipotens elementa creauit origo,  
Quatuor et venti partibus ora dabat.  
Nostraque quadruplici complexio sorte creatur,  
Corpore sicque suo stat variatus homo.*

Tofore the creacion  
Of eny worldes stacion,

Of hevene, of erthe, or eke of helle,  
 So as these olde bokes telle,  
 As soun tofore the song is set  
 And yit thei ben togedre knet,  
 Riht so the hihe pourveance  
 Tho hadde under his ordinance  
 A gret substance, a gret matiere,  
 Of which he wolde in his manere  
 These othre thinges make and forme  
 For yit withouten eny forme  
 Was that matiere universal,  
 Which hihte Ylem in special.  
 Of Ylem, as I am enformed,  
 These elementz ben mad and formed,  
 Of Ylem elementz they hote  
 After the Scoler of Aristote,  
 Of whiche if more I schal reherce,  
 Foure elementz ther ben diverse.

P. iii. 92

210

The ferste of hem men erthe calle,  
 Which is the lowest of hem alle,  
 And in his forme is schape round,  
 Substantial, strong, sadd and sound,  
 As that which mad is sufficient  
 To bere up al the remenant.  
 For as the point in a compas  
 Stant evne amiddes, riht so was  
 This erthe set and schal abyde,  
 That it may swerve to no side,  
 And hath his centre after the lawe  
 Of kinde, and to that centre drawe  
 Desireth every worldes thing,  
 If ther ne were no lettyng.

230

Above therthe kepthe his bounde  
 The water, which is the secounde  
 Of elementz, and al withoute  
 It environeth therthe aboute.  
 Bot as it scheweth, noght forthe  
 This soubtil water myhtely,

[CREATION OF THE  
FOUR ELEMENTS.]

Hic interim tractat  
 de creacione quatuor  
 Elementorum, scilicet  
 terre, aque, aeris et  
 ignis, necnon et de  
 210 eorum naturis, nam  
 et singulis proprie-  
 tates singule attri-  
 buuntur.

Nota de Terra, quod  
 est primum elemen-  
 tum.

Philosophus Vnum-  
 quodque naturaliter  
 appetit suum centrum.

Nota de Aqua, quod  
 est secundum elemen-  
 tum.

240

207 margin interim om. BA 236 ther ne] berþe the erthe  
 &c) ne AMH. XGEL berþe (om. ne) C erþe ne R line om. W

[CREATION OF THE  
FOUR ELEMENTS.]

Thogh it be of himselve softe,  
The strengthe of therthe perceth ofte ;  
For riht as veines ben of blod  
In man, riht so the water flod  
Therthe of his cours makth ful of veines, P. iii. 93  
Als wel the helles as the pleines.  
And that a man may sen at ye,  
For wher the hulles ben most hyhe,  
Ther mai men welle stremes finde : 250  
So proveth it be weie of kinde  
The water beyher than the lond.

Nota de Aere, quod  
est tertium elemen-  
tum

And over this nou understand,  
Air is the thridde of elementz,  
Of whos kinde his asprementz  
Takth every lifiss creature,  
The which schal upon erthe endure :  
For as the fissh, if it be dreie,  
Mot in defaute of water deie, 260  
Riht so withouten Air on lyve  
No man ne beste myhte thryve,  
The which is mad of fleissch and bon ;  
There is outake of alle non.

Nota qualiter Aer  
in tribus Periferis di-  
uiditur.

This Air in Periferes thre  
Divided is of such degre,  
Benethe is on and on amidde,  
To whiche above is set the thridde :  
And upon the divisions  
There ben diverse impressions 270  
Of moist and ek of drye also,  
Whiche of the Sonne bothe tuo  
Ben drawe and haled upon hy,  
And maken cloudes in the Sky,  
As schewed is at mannes sihte ;  
Wherof be day and ek be nyhte  
After the times of the yer  
Among ous upon Erthe her  
In sondri wise thinges falle.

P. iii. 94

De prima Aeris  
Periferia.

The ferste Periferie of alle 280

257 lyliche AM liueliche W lif iche Ht fische A  
262 Nomans, F 269 the om, AM 275 And B

## LIBER SEPTIMUS

241

[CREATION OF THE  
FOUR ELEMENTS.]

Engendreth Myst and overmore  
The dewes and the Frostes bore,  
After thilke intersticion  
In which thei take impression.

De secunda Aeris  
Periferia.

Fro the seconde, as bokes sein,  
The moiste dropes of the reyn  
Descenden into Middilerthe,  
And tempreth it to sed and Erthe,  
And doth to springe grass and flour.  
And ofte also the grete schour  
Out of such place it mai be take,  
That it the forme schal forsake  
Of reyn, and into snow be torned;  
And ek it mai be so sojourned  
In sondri places up alofte,  
That into hail it torneth ofte.

290

The thridde of thair after the lawe  
Thurgh such matiere as up is drawe  
Of dreie thing, as it is ofte,  
Among the cloudes upon lofte,  
And is so clos, it may noght oute,—  
Thanne is it chased sore aboute,  
Til it to fyr and leyt be falle,  
And thanne it brekth the cloudes alle,  
The whiche of so gret noyse craken,  
That thei the feerful thonder maken.  
The thonderstrok smit er it leyte,  
And yit men sen the fyr and leyte,  
The thonderstrok er that men hiere :  
So mai it wel be proeved hiere  
In thing which schewed is fro feer,  
A mannes yhe is there nerr  
Thanne is the soun to mannes Ere.  
And natheles it is gret feere  
Bothe of the strok and of the fyr,  
Of which is no recoverir  
In place wher that thei descende,  
Bot if god wolde his grace sende.

De tercia Aeris  
Periferia.

300

P. iii. 95

310

298 is vpdrawe (vp drawe) C, AdBT, W      300 vpon alofte AM  
vp alofte T, Δ      303 befall H, EC, SAdB, W

R

[CREATION OF THE  
FOUR ELEMENTS.]

Notabit qualiter ignes, quos noctanter in Aere discurrere videmus, secundum varias apparencie formas varia gestant nomina: quorum primus Assub, secundus Capra saliens, tercius Eges et quartus Daali in libris Philosophorum nuncupatus est.

And forto speken over this,  
In this partie of thair it is  
That men fulofte sen be nyhte  
The fyr in sondri forme alyhte.  
Somtime the fyrdrake it semeth,  
And so the lewed poeple it demeth;  
Somtime it semeth as it were  
A Sterre, which that glydeth there:  
Bot it is nouthur of the tuo,  
The Philosophre telleth so,  
And seith that of impressions  
Thurgh diverse exalacions  
Upon the cause and the matiere  
Men sen diverse forme appiere  
Of fyr, the which hath sondri name.

320

330

Assub, he seith, is thilke same,  
The which in sondry place is founde,  
Whanne it is falle down to grounde,  
So as the fyr it hath aneled,  
Lich unto slym which is congeled.

P. iii. 96

Of exalacion I finde  
Fyr kinled of the fame kinde,  
Bot it is of an other forme;  
Wherof, if that I schal conforme  
The figure unto that it is,  
These olde clerkes tellen this,  
That it is lik a Got skippende,  
And for that it is such semende,  
It hatte Capra saliens.

340

And ek these Astronomiens  
An other fyr also, be nyhte  
Which scheweth him to mannes syhte,  
Thei clepen Eges, the which brenneth  
Lik to the corrant fyr that renneth  
Upon a corde, as thou hast sein,

350

319 *margin* hic om. A... B, W (Nota hic om. Δ) 323 fyry  
drake E, BT 330 exaltaciouns AM 336 falle down  
to gr.] down (downe) to þe gr. (om. falle) AM... B. falle  
down to þe grounde J, T, W (thre grounde T) 339 exaltacioun  
AMH.

Whan it with poudre is so besein  
Of Sulphre and othre thinges mo.

[CREATION OF THE  
FOUR ELEMENTS.]

Ther is an other fyr also,  
Which semeth to a mannes yhe  
Be nyhtes time as thogh ther flyhe  
A dragon brennende in the Sky,  
And that is cleped proprely  
Daaly, wherof men sein fulofte,  
'Lo, wher the fyr drake alofte  
Fleth up in thair!' and so thei demen  
Bot why the fyres suche semen  
Of sondri formes to beholde,  
The wise Philosophre tolde,  
So as tofore it hath ben herd.

360

P. iii. 97

Lo thus, my Sone, hou it hath ferd :  
Of Air the due proprete  
In sondri wise thou myht se,  
And hou under the firmament  
It is ek the thridde element,  
Which environeth bothe tuo,  
The water and the lond also.

Confessor

370

And forto tellen overthis  
Of elementz which the ferthe is,  
That is the fyr in his degre,  
Which environeth thother thre  
And is withoute moist al drye.  
Bot lest nou what seith the clergie ;  
For upon hem that I have seid  
The creatour hath set and leid  
The kinde and the complexion  
Of alle mennes nacion.

Nota de Igne, quod  
est quantum elemen-  
tum.

380

Foure elementz sondri ther be,  
Lich unto whiche of that degre  
Among the men ther ben also  
Complexions foure and nomo,  
Wherof the Philosophre treteth,  
That he nothing behinde leteth,  
And seith hou that thei ben diverse,

390

361 Daily H<sub>i</sub> Baaly CL 365 forme AdBT 368 hou it  
cm Ad T it B 374 sond(e) AMXGERCB<sub>a</sub>



[THE FOUR COM-  
PLEXIONS OF MAN.]

Nota hic qualiter  
secundum naturam  
quatuor elementorum  
quatuor in humano  
corpore complexi-  
ones, scilicet Malen-  
colia, Fleuma, Sanguis  
et Colera, naturaliter  
constituuntur: unde  
primo de Malencolia  
dicendum est.

De complexionem  
Fleumatis.

De complexionem  
Sanguinis.

De complexionem  
Colere.

So as I schal to thee rehearse.

He which natureth every kinde,  
The myhti god, so as I finde,  
Of man, which is his creature,  
Hath so devided the nature,  
That non til other wel acordeth : P. iii. 98  
And be the cause it so discordeth,  
The lif which fieleth the seknesse  
Mai stonde upon no sekernesse. 400

Of therthe, which is cold and drye,  
The kinde of man Malencolie  
Is cleped, and that is the ferste,  
The most ungoodlich and the werste ;  
For unto loves werk on nyht  
Him lacketh bothe will and myht :  
No wonder is, in lusty place  
Of love though he lese grace.  
What man hath that complexion,  
Full of ymaginacion 410  
Of dredes and of wrathful thoghtes,  
He fret himselven al to noghtes.

The water, which is moyste and cold,  
Makth fleume, which is manyfold  
Foryetel, slou and wery sone  
Of every thing which is to done :  
He is of kinde sufficient  
To holde love his covenant,  
Bot that him lacketh appetit,  
Which longeth unto such delit. 420

What man that takth his kinde of thair,  
He schal be lyht, he schal be fair,  
For his complexion is blood.  
Of alle ther is non so good,  
For he hath bothe will and myht  
To plesse and paie love his riht :  
Wher as he hath love undertake, P. iii. 99  
Wrong is if that he be forsake.

The fyr of his condicion

Appreth the complexion  
Which in a man is Colre hote,  
Whos propretes ben dreie and hote:  
It makth a man ben enginous  
And swift of fote and ek irous;  
Of contek and folbastifnesse  
He hath a riht gret besinesse,  
To thenke of love and litel may:  
Though he behote wel a day,  
On nyht whan that he wole assaie,  
He may ful evele his dette paie.

After the kinde of thelement,  
Thus stant a mannes kinde went,  
As touchende his complexion,  
Upon sondri division  
Of dreie, of moiste, of chele, of hete,  
And ech of hem his oghne sete  
Appropred hath withinne a man.

And ferst to telle as I began,

The Splen is to Malencolie  
Assigned for herbergerie:

The moiste fleume with his cold  
Hath in the lunges for his hold  
Ordeined him a propre stede,  
To duelle ther as he is bede:

To the Sanguin complexion  
Nature of hire inspeccion  
A propre hous hath in the livere  
For his duellinge mad delivere:

The dreie Colre with his hete  
Be weie of kinde his propre sete  
Hath in the galle, wher he duelleth,  
So as the Philosophre telleth.

Nou over this is forto wite,  
As it is in Phisique write  
Of livere, of lunge, of galle, of splen,

430 [THE FOUR COM-  
PLEXIONS OF MAN]

440

Nota qualiter qua-  
tuor complexiones  
quatuor in homine  
habitationes diuisim  
possident.

Splen domus est  
450 Malencolie.

Pulmo domus Fleu-  
matis.

Epar domus San-  
guinis.

P. iii. 100

Fel domus Colere

460

Nota de Stomacho,  
qui vna cum aliis cordi  
specialius deseruit

438 be hote AJMHXL, AdTA, K 445 chele] cold(c) AM . . . Ba  
449 margin est om. B 451 pe cold AdBT margin d  
J, S, B, F domus est ACB<sub>1</sub> &c. 456 his AdBT hyte X 464  
margin cordi om. AM . . . Ba

[THE FOUR COM-  
PLEXIONS OF MAN.]

Ther alle unto the herte ben  
 Servantz, and ech in his office  
 Entendeth to don him service,  
 As he which is chief lord above  
 The livere makth him forto love, 475  
 The lunge yifh him weie of speche,  
 The galle serveth to do wreche,  
 The Splen doth him to lawhe and pleie,  
 Whan al unclennesse is aweie:  
 Lo, thus hath ech of hem his dede.  
 And to sustienen hem and fede  
 In time of recreation,  
 Nature hath in creacion  
 The Stomach for a comun Coc  
 Ordeined, so as seith the boc. 480  
 The Stomach coc is for the halle,  
 And builleth mete for hem alle,  
 To make hem myghty forto serve  
 The herte, that he schal noght sterve:  
 For as a king in his Empire  
 Above alle othre is lord and Sire,  
 So is the herte principal, P. iii. 101  
 To whom reson in special  
 Is yove as for the governance,  
 And thus nature his pourveance 490  
 Hath mad for man to liven here;  
 Bot god, which hath the Soule diere,  
 Hath formed it in other wise.  
 That can noman plainli devise;  
 Bot as the clerkes ous enforme,  
 That lich to god it hath a forme,  
 Thurgh which figure and which liknesse  
 The Soule hath many an hyh noblesse  
 Appropred to his oghne kinde,  
 Bot ofte hir wittes be mad blinde 500  
 Al onliche of this ilke point,  
 That hir abydinge is conjoint

[THE SOUL OF MAN]

469 chief om. H1 . . . B2 (is chief om. R) 478 increacion  
 AM . . . B2, W 480 Ordeined AH1 . . . B2 Ordeyne M  
 483 forto] to AM 492 hath] þat AM . . . B2

[THE SOUL OF MAN.]

Forth with the bodi forto duelle:  
 That on desireth toward helle,  
 That other upward to the hevene;  
 So schul thei nevere stonde in evene,  
 Bot if the fleissh be overcome  
 And that the Soule have holi nome  
 The governance, and that is selde,  
 Whil that the fleissh him mai bewelde. 510  
 Al erthli thing which god began  
 Was only mad to serve man;  
 Bot he the Soule al only made  
 Himselfen forto serve and glade.  
 Alle othre bestes that men finde  
 Thei serve unto here oghne kinde,  
 Bot to reson the Soule serveth; P. iii. 102  
 Wherof the man his thonk deserveth  
 And get him with hise werkes goode  
 The perdurable lyves foode. 520

Of what matiere it schal be told,  
 A tale lyketh manyfold  
 The betre, if it be spoke plein:  
 Thus thinke I forto torne ayein  
 And telle plenerly therfore  
 Of therthe, wherof nou tofore  
 I spak, and of the water eke,  
 So as these olde clerkes spieke,  
 And sette proprely the bounde  
 After the forme of Mappemounde, 530  
 Thurgh which the ground be pourparties  
 Departed is in thre parties,  
 That is Asie, Aufrique, Europe,  
 The whiche under the hevene cope,  
 Als ferr as streccheth eny ground,  
 Begripeth al this Erthe round.  
 Bot after that the hihe wrieche  
 The water weies let out seche

[THE DIVISION OF  
THE EARTH]

Hic loquitur vite-  
 rius de divisione Terre  
 que post diluvium  
 tribus filius Noe in tres  
 partes, scilicet Asiam,  
 Africam et Europam  
 dividibatur.

508 hap AMH<sub>1</sub>, AdBT<sub>0</sub>, WK      510 fleissh(e) may H XRCLB<sub>1</sub>  
 fleissh may him E      521 be told JGC, B    betold, bitold, A, S, F  
 525 priuely AJM    plainly B<sub>1</sub>      528 bookes B

[THE DIVISION OF  
THE EARTH.]

And overgo the helles hye,  
Which every kinde made dye 540  
That upon Middelerthe stod,  
Outake Noë and his blod,  
His Sones and his doughtres thre,  
Thei were sauf and so was he;—  
Here names who that rede rihte,  
Sem, Cam, Japhet the brethren hihte;—  
And whanne thilke almyhty hond P. iii. 103  
Withdrouh the water fro the lond,  
And al the rage was aweie,  
And Erthe was the mannes weie, 550  
The Sones thre, of whiche I tolde,  
Riht after that hemselfe wolde,  
This world departe thei begonne.

De Asia.

Asie, which lay to the Sonne  
Upon the Marche of orient,  
Was graunted be comun assent  
To Sem, which was the Sone eldeste;  
For that partie was the beste  
And double as moche as othre tuo.  
And was that time bounded so; 560  
Wher as the flod which men Nil calleth  
Departeth fro his cours and falleth  
Into the See Alexandrine,  
Ther takth Asie ferst seisine  
Toward the West, and over this  
Of Canahim wher the flod is  
Into the grete See rennende,  
Fro that into the worldes ende  
Estward, Asie it is algates,  
Til that men come unto the gates 570  
Of Paradis, and there ho.  
And schortly for to speke it so,  
Of Orient in general

Withinne his bounde Asie hath al.

De Aufrica et Eu-  
ropa.

And thanne upon that other syde

541 Middelerþe (middelerþe) J, S, F myddel erþe AC, B 546  
Cam AJ, F Cham C, SB 552 himselue AJM 575 margin  
Aufrica AJC, F Affrica SB

Westward, as it fell thilke tyde,  
 The brother which was hote Cham P. iii. 104  
 Upon his part Aufrique nam.  
 Japhet Europe tho tok he,  
 Thus parten thei the world on thre. 580  
 Bot yit ther ben of londes fele  
 In occident as for the chele,  
 In orient as for the hete,  
 Which of the poeple be forlete  
 As lond desert that is unable,  
 For it mai noght ben habitable.

[THE DIVISION OF  
 THE EARTH.]

The water eke hath sondri bounde,  
 After the lond wher it is founde,  
 And takth his name of thilke londes  
 Wher that it renneth on the strondes: 590  
 Bot thilke See which hath no wane  
 Is cleped the gret Occeane,  
 Out of the which arise and come  
 The hye fodes alle and some ;  
 Is non so litel welle spring,  
 Which ther ne takth his beginnyng,  
 And lich a man that haleth breth  
 Be weie of kinde, so it geth  
 Out of the See and in ayein,  
 The water, as the bokes sein. 600

Nota de mari quod  
 magnum Oceanum  
 dicitur.

Of Elementz the propretes  
 Hou that they stonden be degres,  
 As I have told, nou myht thou hier,  
 Mi goode Sone, al the matiere  
 Of Erthe, of water, Air and fyr.  
 And for thou saist that thi desir  
 Is forto witen overmore P. iii. 105  
 The forme of Aristotles lore,  
 He seith in his entendement,  
 That yit ther is an Element 610  
 Above the foure, and is the fifte,  
 Set of the hihe goddes yifte,  
 The which that Orbis cleped is.

Nota hic secundum  
 philosophum de quinto  
 Elemento, quod omnia  
 sub celo creata infra  
 suum ambitum conti-  
 net, cui nomen Orbis  
 specialiter appropria-  
 tum est.

[THE DIVISION OF  
THE EARTH.]

And therupon he telleth this,  
That as the schelle hol and sound  
Encloseth al aboute round  
What thing withinne an Ey belongeth,  
Riht so this Orbis underfongeth  
These elementz alle everychon,  
Which I have spoke of on and on.

620

Bot overthis nou tak good hiede,  
Mi Sone, for I wol procede  
To speke upon Mathematique,  
Which grounded is on Theorique.  
The science of Astronomie  
I thinke forto specefie,  
Withoute which, to telle plein,  
Alle othre science is in vein  
Toward the scole of erthli thinges :  
For as an Egle with his wings  
Fleth above alle that men finde,  
So doth this science in his kinde.

630

[ASTRONOMY.]

iv. *Lege planetarum magis inferiora reguntur,  
Ista set interdum regula fallit opus.  
Vir mediante deo sapiens dominabitur astris,  
Fata nec immerito quid novitatis agunt.*

Benethe upon this Erthe hiere P. iii. 106  
Of alle thinges the matiere,  
As tellen ous thei that ben lerned,  
Of thing above it stant governed,  
That is to sein of the Planetes.  
The cheles bothe and ek the hetes,  
The chances of the world also,  
That we fortune clepen so,  
Among the mennes nacion  
Al is thurgh constellacion,  
Wherof that som man hath the wele,  
And som man hath deseses fele  
In love als wel as othre thinges ;

640

Hic loquitur de Ar-  
tis Mathematicæ quarta  
specie, que Astrono-  
mia nuncupata est, cui  
etiam Astrologia socia  
connumeratur : set  
primo de septem plan-  
etis, que inter astra  
potenciores existunt,  
incipiendo a luna seor-  
sum tractare intendit.

620 Which AJ, S, F Whiche B 621 good JC, SB goode A f  
628 Alle oþre AJ, S, F Alle (Al) oþer EC, B  
*Latin Verses* iv 4 quod H1 . . . Ba, B quis T

The stat of realmes and of kinges  
 In time of pes, in time of werre  
 It is conceived of the Sterre :  
 And thus seith the naturien  
 Which is an Astronomien.

650

Bot the divin seith otherwise,  
 That if men weren goode and wise  
 And plesant unto the godhede,  
 Thei scholden noght the sterres drede ;  
 For o man, if him wel befalle,  
 Is more worth than ben thei alle  
 Towardes him that weldeth al.

Bot yit the lawe original,  
 Which he hath set in the natures,  
 Mot worchen in the creatures,  
 That therof mai be non obstacle,  
 Bot if it stonde upon miracle

660

Thurgh preiere of som holy man.  
 And forthi, so as I began  
 To speke upon Astronomie,  
 As it is write in the clergie,  
 To telle hou the planetes fare,  
 Som part I thenke to declare,  
 Mi Sone, unto thin Audience.

P. iii 107

Astronomie is the science  
 Of wisdom and of hih connynge,  
 Which makth a man have knowlechinge  
 Of Sterres in the firmament,  
 Figure, cercle and moevement  
 Of ech of hem in sondri place,  
 And what between hem is of space,  
 Hou so thei moeve or stonde faste,  
 Al this it telleth to the laste.

670

Assembled with Astronomie  
 Is ek that ilke Astrologie,  
 The which in juggementz acompteth  
 Theeffect, what every sterre amonteth,  
 And hou thei causen many a wonder  
 To tho climatz that stonde hem under.

680



[ PLANETS AND SIGNS ]

And forto telle it more plein,  
 These olde philosophres sein  
 That Orbis, which I spak of err,  
 Is that which we fro therthe a ferr  
 Beholde, and firmament it calle,  
 In which the sterres stonden alle, 690  
 Among the whiche in special  
 Planetes sefne principal  
 Ther ben, that mannes sihte demeth, P. iii. 108  
 Bot thorizonte, as to ous semeth.  
 And also ther ben signes twelve,  
 Whiche have her cercles be hemselve  
 Compassed in the zodiaque,  
 In which thei have here places take.  
 And as thei stonden in degre,  
 Here cercles more or lasse be, 700  
 Mad after the proporcion  
 Of therthe, whos condicion  
 Is set to be the foundement  
 To sustiene up the firmament.  
 And be this skile a man mai knowe,  
 The more that thei stonden lowe,  
 The more ben the cercles lasse;  
 That causeth why that some passe  
 Here due cours tofore an other.  
 Bot nou, mi lieve dere brother, 710  
 As thou desirest forto wite  
 What I finde in the bokes write,  
 To telle of the planetes sevene,  
 Hou that thei stonde upon the hevene  
 And in what point that thei ben inne,  
 Tak hiede, for I wol beginne,  
 So as the Philosophre tauhte  
 To Alisandre and it betauhte,  
 Wherof that he was full tawht  
 Of wisdom, which was him betawht. 720  
 Benethe alle othre stant the Mone,

685 *Paragr. in MSS at 686*      694 Bot þorizonte FWK Be (By)  
 þorizonte SAdBTΔA But (Bot) zorizonte AMYXGERCBz Bot  
 þoroughout (þurgh out &c) JH:L      717 it tawhte (taughte) A . Bz

The which hath with the See to done -

Of flodes hihe and ebbes lowe

P. iii. 109

Upon his change it schal be knowe :

And every fissh which hath a schelle

Mot in his governance duelle,

To wexe and wane in his degre,

As be the Mone a man mai se ;

And al that stant upon the grounde

Of his moisture it mot be founde.

730

Alle othre sterres, as men finde,

Be schynende of here oghne kinde

Outake only the monelyht,

Which is noght of himselve bright,

Bot as he takth it of the Sonne.

And yit he hath noght al fulwonne

His lyht, that he nys somdiel derk ;

Bot what the lette is of that werk

In Almageste it telleth this :

The Mones cercle so lowe is,

740

Wherof the Sonne out of his stage

Ne seth him noght with full visage,

For he is with the ground beschaded,

So that the Mone is somdiel faded

And may noght fully schyne cler.

Bot what man under his pouer

Is bore, he schal his places change

And seche manye londes strange :

And as of this condicion

The Mones disposicion

750

Upon the lond of Alemaigne

Is set, and ek upon Bretaigne,

Which nou is cleped Engeland ;

P. iii. 110

For thei travaile in every lond.

Of the Planetes the secounde

Above the Mone bath take his bounde,

Mercurie, and his nature is this,

That under him who that bore is,

In boke he schal be studious

And in wrytinge curious,

760

724 schal beknowe SA, FK

736 fulwonne FK

rest ful wonne

[THE PLANETS.]

Nota hic de prima  
planeta, que alius infe-  
rior Luna dicitur.

Desecunda planeta,  
que Mercurius dicitur.

[THE PLANETS.]

De tercia planeta,  
que Venus dicitur.

And slouh and lustles to travaile  
 In thing which elles myhte availe:  
 He loveth ese, he loveth reste,  
 So is he noght the worthieste;  
 Bot yit with somdiel besinesse  
 His herte is set upon richesse.  
 And as in this condicion,  
 Theffect and disposicion  
 Of this Planete and of his chance  
 Is most in Burgoigne and in France.

770

Next to Mercurie, as wol befalle,  
 Stant that Planete which men calle  
 Venus, whos constellacion  
 Governeth al the nacion  
 Of lovers, wher thei spiede or non,  
 Of whiche I trowe thou be on:  
 Bot whiderward thin happes wende,  
 Schal this planete schewe at ende,  
 As it hath do to many mo,  
 To some wel, to some wo.

And natheles of this Planete  
 The moste part is softe and swete;  
 For who that therof takth his berthe, P. iii. 111  
 He schal desire joie and merthe,  
 Gentil, courteis and debonaire,  
 To speke his wordes softe and faire,  
 Such schal he be be weie of kinde,  
 And overal wher he may finde  
 Plesance of love, his herte boweth  
 With al his myht and there he woweth.

He is so ferforth Amourous,  
 He not what thing is vicious  
 Touchende love, for that lawe  
 Ther mai no maner man withdrawe,  
 The which venerien is bore  
 Be weie of kinde, and therefore  
 Venus of love the goddessse  
 Is cleped: bot of wantounesse

780

790

769 and om. AMH XGR  
 wantounesse S wantounesse T

798 wantounesse JC, B, F

The climat of hir lecherie  
Is most commun in Lombardie.

(THE PLANETS.)  
800

Next unto this Planete of love  
The brighte Sonne stant above,  
Which is the hindrere of the nyht  
And forthrere of the daies lyht,  
As he which is the worldes ye,  
Thurgh whom the lusti compaignie  
Of foules be the morwe singe,  
The freisshe floures sprede and springe,  
The hihe tre the ground beschadeth,  
And every mannes herte gladeth,  
And for it is the hed Planete,  
Hou that he sitteth in his sete,  
Of what riches, of what nobleie, P. iii, 112  
These bokes telle, and thus thei seie.

Nota de Sole, qui  
medio planetarum  
res. dens Astorum  
principatum obtinet.

Of gold glistrende Spoke and whiel  
The Sonne his carte hath faire and wiel,  
In which he sitt, and is coroned  
With brighte stones environed;  
Of whiche if that I speke schal,  
Ther be tofore in special  
Set in the front of his corone  
Thre Stones, whiche no persone  
Hath upon Erthe, and the ferste is  
Be name cleped Licuchis;  
That othre tuo be cleped thus,  
Astrices and Ceramius.  
In his corone also behinde,  
Be olde bokes as I finde,  
Ther ben of worthi Stones thre  
Set ech of hem in his degre:  
Wherof a Cristall is that on,  
Which that corone is set upon;  
The seconde is an Adamant;  
The thridde is noble and avenant,  
Which cleped is Ydriades.  
And over this yit natheles  
Upon the sydes of the werk,

810

Nota de curru Solis  
necnon et de vario  
eiusdem apparatu

820

830

[THE PLANETS.]

After the wrytinge of the clerk,  
 Ther sitten fyve Stones mo :  
 The smaragdine is on of tho, 840  
 Jaspis and Elitropius  
 And Dendides and Jacinctus.  
 Lo, thus the corone is beset, P. iii. 113  
 Wherof it schyneth wel the bet ;  
 And in such wise his liht to sprede  
 Sit with his Diademe on hede  
 The Sonne schynende in his carte.  
 And forto lede him swithe and smarte  
 After the bryhte daies lawe,  
 Ther ben ordeined forto drawe 850  
 Foure hors his Char and him withal,  
 Wherof the names telle I schal :  
 Eritheüs the ferste is hote,  
 The which is red and schyneth hote,  
 The seconde Acteos the bryhte,  
 Lampes the thridde coursier hihte,  
 And Philogeüs is the ferthe,  
 That bringen lyht unto this erthe,  
 And gon so swift upon the hevene,  
 In foure and twenty houres evene 860  
 The carte with the bryhte Sonne  
 Thei drawe, so that overronne  
 Thei have under the cercles hihe  
 Al Middelerthe in such an hye.  
 And thus the Sonne is overal  
 The chief Planete imperial,  
 Above him and benethe him thre :  
 And thus between hem regneth he,  
 As he that hath the middel place  
 Among the Sevene, and of his face 870  
 Be glade alle erthly creatures,  
 And taken after the natures  
 Here ese and recreacion. P. iii. 114  
 And in his constellation  
 Who that is bore in special,  
 Of good will and of liberal  
 He schal be founde in alle place,

## [THE PLANETS.]

And also stonde in mochel grace  
 Toward the lordes forto serve  
 And gret profit and thonk deserve.  
 And over that it causeth yit  
 A man to be soubtil of wit  
 To worche in gold, and to be wys  
 In every thing which is of pris.  
 Bot forto speken in what cost  
 Of al this erthe he regneth most  
 As for wisdom, it is in Grece,  
 Wher is apropred thilke spiece.

880

Mars the Planete bataillous  
 Next to the Sonne glorious  
 Above stant, and doth mervailles  
 Upon the fortune of batailes.  
 The conquerours be daies olde  
 Were unto this planete holde:  
 Bot who that his nativite  
 Hath take upon the proprete  
 Of Martes disposicioun  
 Be weie of constellacioun,  
 He schal be fiers and folhastif  
 And desirous of werre and strif.  
 Bot forto telle redely  
 In what climat most comunly  
 That this planete hath his effect,  
 Seid is that he hath his aspect  
 Upon the holi lond so cast,  
 That there is no pes stedefast.

Nota de quinta  
 planeta, que Mars  
 dicitur.

890

900

P. iii. 115

Above Mars upon the hevene,  
 The sexte Planete of the sevene,  
 Stant Jupiter the delicat,  
 Which causeth pes and no debat.  
 For he is cleped that Planete  
 Which of his kinde softe and swete  
 Attempreth al that to him longeth;  
 And whom this planete underfongeth  
 To stonde upon his regiment,  
 He schal be meke and pacient

Nota de sexta pla-  
 neta, que Iupiter di-  
 citur.

910

911 that] pe AMH<sub>1</sub>G, AdBT, W

[THE PLANETS.]

And fortunat to Marchandie  
 And lusti to delicacie  
 In every thing which he schal do.  
 This Jupiter is cause also 920  
 Of the science of lyhte werkes,  
 And in this wise tellen clerkes  
 He is the Planete of delices.  
 Bot in Egipte of his offices  
 He regneth most in special:  
 For ther be lustes overal  
 Of al that to this lif befalleth;  
 For ther no stormy weder falleth,  
 Which myhte grieve man or beste,  
 And ek the lond is so honeste 930  
 That it is plentevous and plein,  
 Ther is non ydel ground in vein;  
 And upon such felicite P. iii. 116  
 Stant Jupiter in his degre.

De septima plane-  
 ta, que reliquis celsior  
 Saturnus dictus est.

The heyeste and aboven alle  
 Stant that planete which men calle  
 Saturnus, whos complexion  
 Is cold, and his condicion  
 Causeth malice and crualte  
 To him the whos nativite 940  
 Is set under his governance.  
 For alle hise werkes ben grevance  
 And enemy to mannes hele,  
 In what degre that he schal dele.  
 His climat is in Orient,  
 Wher that he is most violent.

Of the Planetes by and by,  
 Hou that thei stonde upon the Sky,  
 Fro point to point as thou myht hiere,  
 Was Alisandre mad to liere. 950  
 Bot overthis touchende his lore,  
 Of thing that thei him tawhte more  
 Upon the scoles of clergie  
 Now herkne the Philosophie.

933 vpon] whan AM      935 f. *margin* De septima—dictus est  
 om. B      936 þe AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdΔ

He which departeth dai fro nyht,  
 That on derk and that other lyht,  
 Of sevene daies made a weke,  
 A Monthe of foure wekes eke  
 He hath ordeigned in his lawe,  
 Of Monthes tuelve and ek forthdrawe  
 He hath also the longe year.  
 And as he sette of his pouer  
 Acordant to the daies sevene  
 Plapetes Sevene upon the hevene,  
 As thou tofore hast herd devise,  
 To speke riht in such a wise,  
 To every Monthe be himselve  
 Upon the hevene of Signes tuelve  
 He hath after his Ordinal  
 Assigned on in special,  
 Wherof, so as I schal rehersen,  
 The tydes of the yer diversen.  
 Bot plainly forto make it knowe  
 Hou that the Signes sitte arowe,  
 Ech after other be degre  
 In substance and in proprete  
 The zodiaque comprehendeth  
 Withinne his cercle, as it appendeth.

The ferste of whiche natheles  
 Be name is cleped Aries,  
 Which lich a wether of stature  
 Resembled is in his figure,  
 And as it seith in Almageste,  
 Of Sterres tuelve upon this beste  
 Ben set, wherof in his degre  
 The wombe hath tuo, the heved hath thre,  
 The Tail hath sevene, and in this wise,  
 As thou myht hiere me devise,  
 Stant Aries, which hot and drye  
 Is of himself, and in partie

## [THE SIGNS.]

Postquam dictum  
 est de vii. Planetis,  
 quibus singuli septi-  
 mane dies singulariter  
 attribulantur, dicendum  
 est iam de xii. Signis,  
 960 per que xii. Menses  
 Annivariustemporibus  
 effectus varios asse-  
 quuntur.

P. iii. 117

970

Nota hic de primo  
 Signo, quod Aries  
 980 dicitur, cui Mensis  
 Marcii specialiter ap-  
 propriatus est.  
 Quo deus in primo  
 produxit adessecrata.

990

956 bryht (bright) S... A 962 margin assequitur H: E... B:  
 asseruntur X 978 as it] and it E, AdBT it XL 979-982 Four  
 lines om. B 983 margin adesse H: XGEGR, SBΔ, W (Lat. om.  
 JM, AdT) 984 þe beste AM... B: his brest W



THE SIGNS.]

He is the receipte and the hous P. iii. 118

Of myhty Mars the bataillous.

And overmore ek, as I finde,

The creatour of alle kinde

Upon this Signe ferst began

The world, whan that he made man.

And of this constellacioun

The verray operacioun

Availeth, if a man therinne

The pourpos of his werk beginne ; 1000

For thanne he hath of proprete

Good sped and gret felicite.

The twelve Monthes of the yeer

Attitled under the pouer

Of these twelve Signes stonde ;

Wherof that thou schalt understonde

This Aries on of the twelve

Hath March attitled for himselve,

Whan every bridd schal chese his make,

And every neddre and every Snake 1010

And every Reptil which mai moeve,

His myht assaieth forto proeve,

To crepen out ayein the Sonne,

Whan Ver his Seson hath begonne.

Secundum Signum  
dicitur Taurus, cuius  
Mensis est Aprilis.

Quo prius occultas  
inuenit herba vias.

Taurus the seconde after this

Of Signes, which figured is

Unto a Bole, is dreie and cold ;

And as it is in bokes told,

He is the hous appourtient P. iii. 119To Venus, somdiel discordant. 1020

This Bole is ek with sterres set,

Thurgh whiche he hath hise hornes knet

Unto the tail of Aries,

So is he noght ther sterreles.

Upon his brest ek eyhtetiene

He hath, and ek, as it is sene,

Upon his tail stonde othre tuo.

1007 out of AdBT and of W      1017 is om. AdBT      1019  
hous of AM      1027 tuo] moo (mo) AM . . . B:

# LIBER SEPTIMUS

261

[THE SIGNS.]

His Monthe assigned ek also  
Is Averil, which of his schoures  
Ministreth weie unto the floures.

1030

The thridde signe is Gemini,  
Which is figured redely  
Lich to tuo twinnes of mankinde,  
That naked stonde; and as I finde,  
Thei be with Sterres wel bego:  
The heved hath part of thilke tuo  
That schyne upon the boles tail,  
So be thei bothe of o parail;  
But on the wombe of Gemini  
Ben fyve sterres noght forthi,  
And ek upon the feet be tweie,  
So as these olde bokes seie,  
That wise Tholomeus wrot.

Tercium Signum  
dicitur Gemini, cuius  
Mensis Maius est.

Quo volucrum can-  
tus gaudet de floribus  
ortus.

His propre Monthe wel I wot  
Assigned is the lusti Maii,  
Whanne every brid upon his lay  
Among the griene leves singeth,  
And love of his pointure stingeth  
After the lawes of nature  
The youthe of every creature.

1040

P. iii. 120

1050

Cancer after the reule and space  
Of Signes halt the ferthe place.  
Like to the crabbe he hath semblance,  
And hath unto his retienance  
Sextiene sterres, wherof ten,  
So as these olde wise men  
Describe, he berth on him tofore,  
And in the middel tuo be bore,  
And foure he hath upon his ende.  
Thus goth he sterred in his kende,  
And of himself is moiste and cold,  
And is the propre hous and hold  
Which appartieneth to the Mone,

Quartum Signum  
Cancer dicitur, cuius  
Mensis Iunius est.

Quo falcis pratis  
pabula tonsor equis

1060

1033 of o kynde H1ERCBs of kynde XL  
1058 be bore] before (before) AdBT

1044 Hise F

## [THE SIGNS.]

Quintum signum  
Leo dicitur, cuius Mensis  
Iulius est.

Quo magis ad terras  
expandit Lucifer ignes.

And doth what longeth him to done.  
The Monthe of Juin unto this Signe  
Thou schalt after the reule assigne.

The fite Signe is Leo hote,  
Whos kinde is schape dreie and hote,  
In whom the Sonne hath herbergage.  
And the semblance of his ymage 1070  
Is a leoun, which in baillie  
Of sterres hath his pourpartie :  
The foure, which as Cancer hath  
Upon his ende, Leo tath  
Upon his heved, and thanne nest P. iii. 121  
He hath ek foure upon his brest,  
And on upon his tail behinde,  
In olde bokes as we finde.  
His propre Monthe is Juyl be name,  
In which men pleien many a game. 1080

Sextum Signum  
Virgo dicitur, cuius  
Mensis Augustus est.

Quo vacuata prius  
pubes replet horrea  
messis.

After Leo Virgo the nexte  
Of Signes cleped is the sexte,  
Wherof the figure is a Maide ;  
And as the Philosophre saide,  
Sche is the welthe and the risinge,  
The lust, the joie and the likinge  
Unto Mercurie : and soth to seie  
Sche is with sterres wel beseie,  
Wherof Leo hath lent hire on,  
Which sit on hih hir heved upon, 1090  
Hire wombe hath fyve, hir feet also  
Have other fyve : and overmo  
Touchende as of complexion,  
Be kindly disposicion  
Of dreie and cold this Maiden is.  
And forto tellen over this  
Hir Monthe, thou schalt understonde,  
Whan every feld hath corn in honde  
And many a man his bak hath plied,

1079 Monthe om. B      1095 cold om. AdBT      1100 Augst  
applied T, F      August applied A . . . Bs (except E), SAdΔ, WK  
August plyed E, B

Unto this Signe is Augst applied.

1100 [THE SIGNS.]

After Virgo to rekenen evene  
 Libra sit in the nombre of sevene,  
 Which hath figure and resemblance  
 Unto a man which a balance  
 Berth in his hond as forto weie:  
 In boke and as it mai be seie,  
 Diverse sterres to him longeth,  
 Wherof on hevede he underfongeth  
 Ferst thre, and ek his wombe hath tuo,  
 And doun benethe eighte othre mo.  
 This Signe is hot and moiste bothe,  
 The whiche thinges be noght lothe  
 Unto Venus, so that alofte  
 Sche resteth in his hous fulofte,  
 And ek Saturnus often hyed  
 Is in this Signe and magnified.  
 His propre Monthe is seid Septembre,  
 Which yifh men cause to remembre,  
 If eny Sor be left behinde  
 Of thing which grieve mai to kinde.

P. iii. 122

1110

Septimum Signum  
 Libra dicitur, cuius  
 Mensis Septembris est.  
 Vineâ quo Bacchum  
 pressa liquore colit.

Among the Signes upon heichte  
 The Signe which is nombred eighte  
 Is Scorpio, which as feloun  
 Figured is a Scorpoun.  
 Bot for al that yit natheles  
 Is Scorpio noght sterreles;  
 For Libra granteth him his ende  
 Of eighte sterres, wher he wende,  
 The whiche upon his heved assised  
 He berth, and ek ther ben divided  
 Upon his wombe sterres thre,  
 And eighte upon his tail hath he.  
 Which of his kinde is moiste and cold  
 And unbehovely manyfold;  
 He harmeth Venus and empeireth,  
 Bot Mars unto his hous repeireth,  
 Bot war whan thei togedre duellen.

1120

Octauum Signum  
 Scorpio dicitur, cuius  
 Mensis October est.  
 Floribus exclusis ye-  
 mis qui ranitor extat.

1130

P. iii. 123

## [THE SIGNS.]

Nonum signum Sa-  
gittarius dicitur, cuius  
Mensis Nouember est.

Quo mustum bibulo  
linquit sua nomina  
vino.

His propre Monthe is, as men tellen,  
Octobre, which bringth the kalende  
Of wynter, that comth next suiende.

1140

The nynthe Signe in nombre also,  
Which folweth after Scorpio,  
Is cleped Sagittarius,

The whos figure is marked thus,  
A Monstre with a bowe on honde :  
On whom that sondri sterres stonde,  
Thilke eighte of whiche I spak tofore,  
The whiche upon the tail ben bore  
Of Scorpio, the heved al faire

Bespreden of the Sagittaire;

1150

And eighte of othre stonden evene  
Upon his wombe, and othre sevene  
Ther stonde upon his tail behinde.

And he is hot and dreie of kinde :

To Jupiter his hous is fre,

Bot to Mercurie in his degre,

For thei ben noght of on assent,

He worcheth gret empeirement.

This Signe hath of his proprete

P. iii. 124

A Monthe, which of duete

1160

After the sesoun that befalleth

The Plowed Oxe in wynter stalleth ;

And fyr into the halle he bringeth,

And thilke drinke of which men singeth,

He torneth must into the wyn ;

Thanne is the larder of the swyn ;

That is Novembre which I meene,

Whan that the lef hath lost his greene.

Decimum Signum  
Capricornus dicitur,  
cuius Mensis Decem-  
ber est.

Ipse diem Nano  
noctemque Gigante  
figurat.

The tenthe Signe dreie and cold,

The which is Capricornus told,

1170

Unto a Got hath resemblance :

For whos love and whos aqueintance

Withinne hise houses to sojorne

It liketh wel unto Satorne,

Bot to the Mone it liketh noght,

[THE SIGNS.]

For no profit is there wrought.  
 This Signe as of his proprete  
 Upon his heved hath sterres thre,  
 And ek upon his wombe tuo,  
 And tweie upon his tail also.  
 Decembre after the yeeres forme,  
 So as the bokes ous enforme,  
 With daies schorte and nyhtes longe  
 This ilke Signe hath underfonge.

1180

Of tho that sitte upon the hevene  
 Of Signes in the nombre ellevene  
 Aquarius hath take his place,  
 And stant wel in Satornes grace,  
 Which duelleth in his herbergage,  
 Bot to the Sonne he doth oultrage.  
 This Signe is verrailly resembled  
 Lich to a man which halt assembled  
 In eyther hand a water spoute,  
 Wherof the stremes rennen oute.  
 He is of kinde moiste and hot,  
 And he that of the sterres wot  
 Seith that he hath of sterres tuo  
 Upon his heved, and ben of tho  
 That Capricorn hath on his ende;  
 And as the bokes maken mende,  
 That Tholomeus made himselve,  
 He hath ek on his wombe tuelve,  
 And tweie upon his ende stonde.  
 Thou schalt also this understonde,  
 The frosti colde Janever,  
 Whan comen is the newe yeer,  
 That Janus with his double face  
 In his chaiere hath take his place  
 And loketh upon bothe sides,  
 Somdiel toward the wynter tydes,  
 Somdiel toward the yeer suiende,  
 That is the Monthe belongende  
 Unto this Signe, and of his dole

P. iii. 125

Vndecimum Signum  
 Aquarius dicitur, cuius  
 Mensis Ianuarius est.  
 Quo Ianus vultum  
 duplum conuertit in  
 annum.

1190

1200

1210

## [THE SIGNS.]

Duodecimum Signum Piscis dicitur, cuius Mensis Februarius est.

Quo pluue torrens riparum concitat ampnes.

He yifth the ferste Primerole.

The tuelfthe, which is last of alle **P. iii. 126**  
 Of Signes, Piscis men it calle,  
 The which, as telleth the scripture,  
 Berth of tuo fisshes the figure.  
 So is he cold and moiste of kinde,  
 And ek with sterres, as I finde, **1220**  
 Beset in sondri wise, as thus :  
 Tuo of his ende Aquarius  
 Hath lent unto his heved, and tuo  
 This Signe hath of his oghne also,  
 Upon his wombe, and over this  
 Upon his ende also ther is  
 A nombre of twenty sterres bryghte,  
 Which is to sen a wonder sighte.  
 Toward this Signe into his hous  
 Comth Jupiter the glorious, **1230**  
 And Venus ek with him acordeth  
 To duellen, as the bok recordeth.  
 The Monthe unto this Signe ordeined  
 Is Februer, which is bereined,  
 And with londflodes in his rage  
 At Fordes letteth the passage.

Nou hast thou herd the proprete  
 Of Signes, bot in his degre  
 Albumazar yit over this  
 Seith, so as therthe parted is **1240**  
 In foure, riht so ben divided  
 The Signes twelve and stonde assised,  
 That ech of hem for his partie  
 Hath his climat to justefie.  
 Wherof the ferste regiment **P. iii. 127**  
 Toward the part of Orient  
 From Antioche and that contre  
 Governed is of Signes thre,  
 That is Cancer, Virgo, Leo :  
 And toward Occident also **1250**  
 From Armenie, as I am lerned,

1223 unto] and to B

1229 his signe AdBT

## LIBER SEPTIMUS

267

[THE SIGNS.]

Of Capricorn it stant governed,  
 Of Pisces and Aquarius :  
 And after hem I finde thus,  
 Southward from Alisandre forth  
 Tho Signes whiche most ben worth  
 In governance of that doaire,  
 Libra thei ben and Sagittaire  
 With Scorpio, which is conjoint  
 With hem to stonde upon that point : 1260  
 Constantinople the Cite,  
 So as the bokes tellen me,  
 The laste of this division  
 Stant untoward Septemtrion,  
 Wher as be weie of pourveance  
 Hath Aries the governance  
 Forth with Taurus and Gemini.  
 Thus ben the Signes propreli  
 Divided, as it is reherced,  
 Wherof the londes ben diversed. 1270

Lo thus, mi Sone, as thou myht hiere,  
 Was Alisandre mad to liere  
 Of hem that weren for his lore.  
 But nou to loken overmore,  
 Of othre sterres hou thei fare P. iii. 128  
 I thenke hierafter to declare,  
 So as king Alisandre in youthe  
 Of him that suche thinges couthe  
 Enformed was tofore his yhe  
 Be nyhte upon the sterres hihe. 1280

Confessor

Upon sondri creacion  
 Stant sondri operacion,  
 Som worcheth this, som worcheth that ;  
 The fyr is hot in his astat  
 And brenneth what he mai atteigne,  
 The water mai the fyr restreigne,  
 The which is cold and moist also.  
 Of other thing it fath riht so

[THE FIFTEEN STARS.]

Hic tractat super  
 doctrina Nectanabi,  
 dum ipse iuuenem  
 Alexandrum instruxit,  
 de illis precipue xv  
 stellis una cum earum  
 lapidibus et herbis,  
 que ad artis magicę

1260 þe point AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> 1261 Constantyn noble þe cite  
 H. XERCL Constantyne þe noble cite B<sub>1</sub> 1266 Aries haþ Hi . . . B<sub>1</sub>  
 1280 hihe] sihe (seye) BT 1287 moist AJ, S, F moiste B



[THE FIFTEEN STARS.]  
*naturalis operacionem  
 specialius conueniunt.*

Upon this erthe among ous here ;  
 And forto speke in this manere, 1290  
 Upon the hevene, as men mai finde,  
 The sterres ben of sondri kinde  
 And worchen manye sondri thinges  
 To ous, that ben here underlinges.  
 Among the whiche forth withal  
 Nectanabus in special,  
 Which was an Astronomien  
 And ek a gret Magicien,  
 And undertake hath thilke emprise  
 To Alisandre in his aprise 1300  
 As of Magique naturel  
 To knowe, enformeth him somdel  
 Of certein sterres what thei mene ;  
 Of whiche, he seith, ther ben fiftene,  
 And sondrily to everich on P. iii. 129  
 A gras belongeth and a Ston,  
 Wherof men worchen many a wonder  
 To sette thing bothe up and under.

*Prima stella vocatur Aldeboran, cuius lapis Carbunculus et herba Anabulla est.*

To telle riht as he began,  
 The ferste sterre Aldeboran, 1310  
 The cliereste and the moste of alle,  
 Be rihte name men it calle ;  
 Which lich is of condicion  
 To Mars, and of complexion  
 To Venus, and hath therupon  
 Carbunculum his propre Ston :  
 His herbe is Anabulla named,  
 Which is of gret vertu proclamed.

*Secunda stella vocatur Clota seu Pliades, cuius lapis Cristallum et herba Feniculus est.*

The seconde is noght vertules ;  
 Clota or elles Pliades 1320  
 It hatte, and of the mones kinde  
 He is, and also this I finde,  
 He takth of Mars complexion :  
 And lich to such condicion  
 His Ston appropred is Cristall,  
 And ek his herbe in special  
 The vertuous Fenele it is.

The thridde, which comth after this,  
Is hote Algol the clere rede,  
Which of Satorne, as I may rede,  
His kinde takth, and ek of Jove  
Complexion to his behove.  
His propre Ston is Dyamant,  
Which is to him most acordant;  
His herbe, which is him betake,  
Is hote Eleborum the blake.

So as it falleth upon lot,  
The ferthe sterre is Alhaiot,  
Which in the wise as I seide er  
Of Satorne and of Jupiter  
Hath take his kinde; and therupon  
The Saphir is his propre Ston,  
Marrubium his herbe also,  
The whiche acorden bothe tuo.

And Canis maior in his like  
The fife sterre is of Magique,  
The whos kinde is venerien,  
As seith this Astronomen.  
His propre Ston is seid Berille,  
Bot forto worche and to fulfille  
Thing which to this science falleth,  
Ther is an herbe which men calleth  
Saveine, and that behoveth nede  
To him that wole his pourpos spede.

The sexte suiende after this  
Be name Canis minor is;  
The which sterre is Mercurial  
Be weie of kinde, and forth withal,  
As it is writen in the carte,  
Complexion he takth of Marte.  
His Ston and herbe, as seith the Scole,  
Ben Achates and Primerole.

The sefthe sterre in special  
Of this science is Arial,  
Which sondri nature underfongeth.

[THE FIFTEEN STARS.]

Tercia stella vocatur  
Algol, cuius lapis  
1330 Dyamans et herba  
Eleborum nigrum est.

P. iii. 130

Quarta stella vocatur  
Alhaiot, cuius  
lapis Saphirus et herba  
Marrubium est.

1340

Quinta stella vocatur  
Canis maior, cuius  
lapis Berillus et herba  
Savina est.

1350

Sexta stella vocatur  
Canis minor, cuius  
lapis Achates et herba  
Primula est.

1360

Septima stella vocatur  
Arial, cuius lapis  
Gorgonza et herba  
Celidonia est.

P. iii. 131

1346 margin Berillis A . . . B<sub>2</sub>, W 1361 as pe scole *om.* seith,  
AMH<sub>1</sub>XRLB<sub>2</sub> after þis scole E (as seip þe scole JGC)

[THE FIFTEEN STARS.]

Octava stella vocatur Ala Corui, cuius lapis Honochinus et herba Lapacia est.

Nona stella vocatur Alaezel, cuius lapis Smaragdus et herba Salgea est.

Decima stella vocatur Almareth, cuius lapis Iaspis et herba Plantago est.

Vndecima stella vocatur Venenas, cuius lapis Adamans et herba Cicorea est.

Duodecima stella vocatur Alpheta, cuius

The Ston which propre unto him longeth,  
Gorgonza proprely it hihte;  
His herbe also, which he schal rihte  
Upon the worching as I mene,  
Is Celidoine freissh and grene.

1370

Sterre Ala Corvi upon hehte  
Hath take his place in nombre of eighte,  
Which of his kinde mot parforne  
The will of Marte and of Satorne:  
To whom Lapacia the grete  
Is herbe, bot of no beyete;  
His Ston is Honochinus hote,  
Thurgh which men worchen gret riote.

The nynthe sterre faire and wel  
Be name is hote Alaezel,  
Which takth his propre kinde thus  
Bothe of Mercurie and of Venus.  
His Ston is the grene Amyraude,  
To whom is yoven many a laude:  
Salge is his herbe appourtenant  
Aboven al the remenant.

1380

The tenthe sterre is Almareth,  
Which upon lif and upon deth  
Thurgh kinde of Jupiter and Mart  
He doth what longeth to his part.  
His Ston is Jaspe, and of Planteine  
He hath his herbe soveraine.

1390

The sterre ellefthe is Venenas,  
The whos nature is as it was  
Take of Venus and of the Mone,  
In thing which he hath forto done.  
Of Adamant is that perrie  
In which he worcheth his maistrie;  
Thilke herbe also which him befalleth,  
Cicorea the bok it calleth.

P. iii. 132

1400

Alpheta in the nombre sit,  
And is the twelfthe sterre yit;

1372 margin Honochinus om. AM 1383 grene] grete  
B. W 1393 ellef þe JC, S, F elleþe A elleueþe B 1400 him  
calleþ R, AdBT

Of Scorpio which is governed,  
And takth his kinde, as I am lerned;  
And hath his vertu in the Ston  
Which cleped is Topazion:  
His herbe propre is Rosmarine,  
Which schapen is for his covine.

Of these sterres, whiche I mene,  
Cor Scorpionis is thritiene;  
The whos nature Mart and Jove  
Have yoven unto his behove.  
His herbe is Aristologie,  
Which folweth his Astronomie:  
The Ston which that this sterre alloweth,  
Is Sardis, which unto him boweth.

The sterre which stant next the laste,  
Nature on him this name caste  
And clepeth him Botercadent;  
Which of his kinde obedient  
Is to Mercurie and to Venus.  
His Ston is seid Crisolitus,  
His herbe is cleped Satureie,  
So as these olde bokes seie.

Bot nou the laste sterre of alle  
The tail of Scorpio men calle,  
Which to Mercurie and to Satorne  
Be weie of kinde mot retorne  
After the preparacion  
Of due constellation.

The Calcedoine unto him longeth,  
Which for his Ston he underfongeth;  
Of Majorane his herbe is grounded.  
Thus have I seid hou thei be founded,  
Of every sterre in special,  
Which hath his herbe and Ston withal,  
As Hermes in his bokes olde  
Witnesse berth of that I tolde.

[THE FIFTEEN STARS.]  
lapis Topazion et her-  
ba Rosa marina est.

1410 Terciadecima stel-  
la vocatur Cor Scor-  
pionis, cuius lapis  
Sardis et herba Aris-  
tologia est.

1420 Quartadecima stel-  
la vocatur Boterca-  
dent, cuius lapis Criso-  
litus et herba Satureia  
est.

P. iii. 133 Quintadecima stel-  
la vocatur Cauda Scor-  
pionis, cuius lapis  
Calcedonia et herba  
Maiorana est.

1430

1404 margin Topazion H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
H<sub>1</sub> . . . CB<sub>2</sub> to paxione L  
astrologia) A . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BA, H<sub>1</sub>  
MH<sub>1</sub>E, BA, H<sub>1</sub>

1406 Topazion (topaxione)  
1412 margin Astrologia  
1413 Astrologie (astrologie)

[AUTHORS OF THE  
SCIENCE OF ASTRO-  
NOMY.]

Nota hic de Aucto-  
ribus illis, qui ad As-  
tronomie scienciam  
pre ceteris studiosius  
intendentes libros  
super hoc distinctis  
nominibus composue-  
runt.

The science of Astronomie,  
Which principal is of clergie 1440  
To dieme betwen wo and wel  
In thinges that be naturel,  
Thei hadde a gret travail on honde  
That made it ferst ben understonde;  
And thei also whiche overmore  
Here studie sette upon this lore,  
Thei weren gracious and wys  
And worthi forto bere a pris.  
And whom it liketh forto wite  
Of hem that this science write, 1450  
On of the ferste which it wrot  
After Noë, it was Nembrot,  
To his disciple Ychonithon  
And made a bok forth therupon  
The which Megaster cleped was. P. iii. 134  
An other Auctor in this cas  
Is Arachel, the which men note;  
His bok is Abbategnyh hote.  
Danz Tholome is noght the leste,  
Which makth the bok of Almageste; 1460  
And Alfraganus doth the same,  
Whos bok is Chatemuz be name.  
Gebuz and Alpetragus eke  
Of Planisperie, which men seke,  
The bokes made: and over this  
Ful many a worthi clerc ther is,  
That writen upon this clergie  
The bokes of Altemetrie,  
Planemetrie and ek also,  
Whiche as belongen bothe tuo, 1470  
So as thei ben naturiens,  
Unto these Astronomiens.  
Men sein that Habraham was on;  
Bot whether that he wrot or non,  
That finde I noght; and Moïses  
Ek was an other: bot Hermes

1445 which AJ, S, F    whiche B    1464 palmestrie H1 . . . B1  
1473 Habraham JX, F    rest Abraham

[AUTHORS OF THE  
SCIENCE OF ASTRO-  
NOMY.]

Above alle othre in this science  
He hadde a gret experience;  
Thurgh him was many a sterre assised,  
Whos bokes yit ben auctorized. 1480

I mai noght knowen alle tho  
That writen in the time tho  
Of this science; bot I finde,  
Of jugement be weie of kinde  
That in o point thei alle acorden: P. iii. 135

Of sterres whiche thei recorden  
That men mai sen upon the hevene,  
Ther ben a thousand sterres evene  
And tuo and twenty, to the syhte  
Whiche aren of hemself so bryhte, 1490  
That men mai dieme what thei be,  
The nature and the proprete.

Nou hast thou herd, in which a wise  
These noble Philosophres wise  
Enformeden this yonge king,  
And made him have a knowleching  
Of thing which ferst to the partie  
Belongeth of Philosophie,  
Which Theorique cleped is,  
As thou tofore hast herd er this. 1500  
Bot nou to speke of the secounde,  
Which Aristotle hath also founde,  
And techeth hou to speke faire,  
Which is a thing full necessaire  
To contrepeise the balance,  
Wher lacketh other sufficance.

- v. *Compositi pulcra sermonis verba placere* [11 RHETORIC.]  
*Principio poterunt, veraque fine placent.*  
*Herba, lapis, sermo, tria sunt virtute repleti,*  
*Vis tamen ex verbi pondere plura facit.*

Above alle erthli creatures  
The hihe makere of natures

1477 this] his AdBT 1490 aren] been (ben) A... B<sub>1</sub>, W  
1493 such a wise MH<sub>1</sub>CL, T, H<sub>1</sub>  
Latin Verses v. 1 sermones H<sub>1</sub>... B<sub>1</sub>, B 4 pulcra AdBT  
\* \* \* T

## [RHETORIC.]

Hic tractat de secunda parte Philosophie, cuius nomen Rethorica facundos efficit, Loquutionem de eiusdem duabus speciebus, scilicet Grammatica et Logica, quarum doctrina Rethor sua verba perornat.

The word to man hath yove alone,  
 So that the speche of his persone, 1510  
 Or forto lese or forto winne, P. iii. 136  
 The hertes thought which is withinne  
 Mai schewe, what it wolde mene;  
 And that is noghwhere elles sene  
 Of kinde with non other beste.  
 So scholde he be the more honeste,  
 To whom god yaf so gret a yifte,  
 And loke wel that he ne schifte  
 Hise wordes to no wicked us;  
 For word the techen of vertus 1520  
 Is cleped in Philosophie.  
 Wherof touchende this partie,  
 Is Rethorique the science  
 Appropred to the reverence  
 Of wordes that ben resonable:  
 And for this art schal be vailable  
 With goodli wordes forto like,  
 It hath Gramaire, it hath Logique,  
 That serven bothe unto the speche.  
 Gramaire ferste hath forto teche 1530  
 To speke upon congruite:  
 Logique hath eke in his degre  
 Betwen the trouthe and the falshode  
 The pleine wordes forto schode,  
 So that nothing schal go beside,  
 That he the riht ne schal decide,  
 Wherof full many a gret debat  
 Reformed is to good astat,  
 And pes sustiened up alofte  
 With esy wordes and with softe, 1540  
 Wher strengthe scholde lete it falle. P. iii. 137  
 The Philosophre amonges alle  
 Forthi commendeth this science,  
 Which hath the reule of eloquence.  
 In Ston and gras vertu ther is,  
 Bot yit the bokes tellen this,

That word above alle erthli thinges  
 Is vertuous in his doinges,  
 Wher so it be to evele or goode.  
 For if the wordes semen goode 1550  
 And ben wel spoke at mannes Ere,  
 Whan that ther is no trouthe there,  
 Thei don fulofte gret deceipte ;  
 For whan the word to the conceipte  
 Descordeth in so double a wise,  
 Such Rethorique is to despise  
 In every place, and forto drede.  
 For of Uluxes thus I rede,  
 As in the bok of Troie is founde,  
 His eloquence and his facounde 1560  
 Of goodly wordes whiche he tolde,  
 Hath mad that Anthenor him solde  
 The toun, which he with tresoun wan.  
 Word hath beguiled many a man ;  
 With word the wilde beste is daunted,  
 With word the Serpent is enchaunted,  
 Of word among the men of Armes  
 Ben woundes heeled with the charmes,  
 Wher lacketh other medicine ;  
 Word hath under his discipline 1570  
 Of Sorcerie the karectes. P. iii. 138  
 The wordes ben of sondri sectes,  
 Of evele and eke of goode also ;  
 The wordes maken frend of fo,  
 And fo of frend, and pes of werre,  
 And werre of pes, and out of herre  
 The word this worldes cause entriketh,  
 And reconsileth whan him liketh.  
 The word under the coupe of hevene  
 Set every thing or odde or evene ; 1580  
 With word the hihe god is plesed,  
 With word the wordes ben appesed,  
 The softe word the loude stilleth ;  
 Wher lacketh good, the word fulfilleth,  
 To make amendes for the wrong ;

1574 and fo A . . . B<sub>4</sub>, AdT 1577 þe worldes A . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BA



[RHETORIC.]

Nota de Eloquencia  
Iuli in causa Cateline  
contra Cillenum et  
alios tunc urbis Rome  
Conciues.

Whan wordes medlen with the song,  
It doth plesance wel the more.

Bot forto loke upon the lore  
Hou Tullius his Rethorique

Componeth, ther a man mai pike  
Hou that he schal hise wordes sette,  
Hou he schal lose, hou he schal knette,  
And in what wise he schal pronounce  
His tale plein withoute frounce.

1590

Wherof ensample if thou wolt seche,  
Tak hiede and red whilom the speche  
Of Julius and Cithero,

Which consul was of Rome tho,  
Of Catoun eke and of Cillene,  
Behold the wordes hem betwene,

1600

Whan the tresoun of Cateline

P. ili. 139

Desccovered was, and the covine  
Of hem that were of his assent  
Was knowe and spoke in parlement,  
And axed hou and in what wise  
Men scholde don hem to juisse.

Cillenus ferst his tale tolde,  
To trouthe and as he was beholde,  
The comun profit forto save,

He seide hou tresoun scholde have  
A cruel deth; and thus thei spieke,  
The Consul bothe and Catoun eke,  
And seiden that for such a wrong  
Ther mai no peine be to strong.

1610

Bot Julius with wordes wise  
His tale tolde al otherwise,  
As he which wolde her deth respite,  
And fondeth hou he mihte excite  
The jugges thurgh his eloquence  
Fro deth to torne the sentence

1620

And sette here hertes to pite.  
Nou tolden thei, nou tolde he;

1588 his lore A . . . B<sub>a</sub> 1589 his] | e AdBT  
(Taak) AC, SB Take J, F 1597 and of AMR  
men A me M 1619 iugge AdBT

1596 Tak  
1618 he]

Thei spieken plein after the lawe,  
 Bot he the wordes of his sawe  
 Coloureth in an other weie  
 Spekende, and thus betwen the tweie,  
 To trete upon this juggement,  
 Made ech of hem his Argument.  
 Wherof the tales forto hiere,  
 Ther mai a man the Scole liere  
 Of Rethoriques eloquences,  
 Which is the secounde of sciences  
 Touchende to Philosophie;  
 Wherof a man schal justifie  
 Hise wordes in disputeisoun,  
 And knette upon conclusioun  
 His Argument in such a forme,  
 Which mai the pleine trouthe enforme  
 And the soubtil cautele abate,  
 Which every trewman schal debate.

[RHETORIC.]

1630

P. iii. 140

1640

- vi. *Practica quemque statum pars tertia Philosophic  
 Ad regimen recte ducit in orbe vie:  
 Set quanto maior Rex est, tanto magis ipsum  
 Hec scola concernit, qua sua regna regat.*

[III PRACTIC.]

The ferste, which is Theorique,  
 And the secounde Rethorique,  
 Sciences of Philosophie,  
 I have hem told as in partie,  
 So as the Philosophre it tolde  
 To Alisandre: and nou I wolde  
 Telle of the thridde what it is,  
 The which Practique cleped is.  
 Practique stant upon thre thinges  
 Toward the governance of kinges;  
 Wherof the ferst Etique is named,  
 The whos science stant proclaimed  
 To teche of vertu thilke reule,

Hic tractat de tertia  
 parte Philosophie, que  
 Practica vocat ir, cuius  
 species sunt tres, scilicet  
 Etica, Ichonomia et  
 Policia, quarum doc-  
 trina regia magestas  
 in suo regimine ad  
 honoris magnificen-  
 ciam per singula diri-  
 gitur

1650

1640 trewman AC, S, F trewe man B  
 Latin Verses vi. 4 Hec FKH:Magd Ex A . . . Bz, S . . . ΔΔ, W  
 regit BTA gerit Ad  
 1651 ferst AJ, S, F ferste (firste) C, B

PRACTIC.]

Hou that a king himself schal reule  
 Of his moral condicion  
 With worthi disposicion  
 Of good livinge in his persone, P. iii. 141  
 Which is the chief of his corone.  
 It makth a king also to lerne  
 Hou he his bodi schal governe, 1660  
 Hou he schal wake, hou he schal slepe,  
 Hou that he schal his hele kepe  
 In mete, in drinke, in clothunge eke:  
 Ther is no wisdom forto seke  
 As for the reule of his persone,  
 The which that this science al one  
 Ne techeth as be weie of kinde,  
 That ther is nothing left behinde.

That other point which to Practique  
 Belongeth is Iconomique, 1670  
 Which techeth thilke honestete  
 Thurgh which a king in his degre  
 His wif and child schal reule and guie,  
 So forth with al the companie  
 Which in his houshold schal abyde,  
 And his astat on every syde  
 In such manere forto lede,  
 That he his houshold ne mislede.

Practique hath yit the thridde aprise,  
 Which techeth hou and in what wise 1680  
 Thurgh hih pourveied ordinance  
 A king schal sette in governance  
 His Realme, and that is Policie,  
 Which longeth unto Regalie  
 In time of werre, in time of pes,  
 To worschipe and to good encess  
 Of clerk, of kniht and of Marchant, P. iii. 142  
 And so forth of the remenant  
 Of al the comun poeple aboute,  
 Withinne Burgh and ek withoute, 1690

1666 that om. AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> 1670 Belongeth to Icon. AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>  
 1671 honeste M . . . B<sub>1</sub> (except C), SA, WH: 1681 hih] his B  
 1688 of 'al AdBT 1690 cek C, B eke (eek) A, F

Of hem that ben Artificiers,  
Whiche usen craftes and mestiers,  
Whos Art is cleped Mechanique.  
And though thei ben noght alle like,  
Yit natheles, hou so it falle,  
O lawe mot governe hem alle,  
Or that thei lese or that thei winne,  
After thastat that thei ben inne.

[PRACTIC.]

Lo, thus this worthi yonge king  
Was fulli tauht of every thing,  
Which mihte yive entendement  
Of good reule and good regiment  
To such a worthi Prince as he.  
Bot of verray necessite  
The Philosophre him hath betake  
Fyf pointz, whiche he hath undertake  
To kepe and holde in observance,  
As for the worthi governance  
Which longeth to his Regalie,  
After the reule of Policie.

[FIVE POINTS OF  
POLICY.]

1700

1710

vii. *Moribus ornatus regit hic qui regna moderna,  
Cercius expectat ceptra futura poli.  
Et quia veridica virtus supereminet omnes,  
Regis ab ore boni fabula nulla sonat.*

[THE FIRST POINT OF  
POLICY. TRUTH.]

To every man behoveth lore,  
Bot to noman belongeth more  
Than to a king, which hath to lede P. iiii. 143  
The poeple; for of his kinghede  
He mai hem bothe save and spille.  
And for it stant upon his wille,  
It sit him wel to ben avised,  
And the vertus whiche are assised  
Unto a kinges Regiment,  
To take in his entendement:  
Wherof to tellen, as thei stonde,  
Hierafterward nou woll I fonde.

Hic secundum Poli-  
ciam tractare intendit  
precipue super quin-  
que regularum Artic-  
ulis, que ad Principis  
Regimen observande  
specialius existunt,  
quarum prima veritas  
nuncupatur Perquam  
1720 veridicus fit sermo  
Regis ad omnes.

1695 hou om. AM 1698 þe staat (state) AMB. W þe estate R  
1711 behoveth] bilongþ X, AdBT 1718 are] been (ben) A . . .  
B. margin existat AM . . . B.

[TRUTH.]

Among the vertus on is chief,  
 And that is trouthe, which is lief  
 To god and ek to man also.  
 And for it hath ben evere so,  
 Tawhte Aristotle, as he wel couthe,  
 To Alisandre, hou in his youthe  
 He scholde of trouthe thilke grace  
 With al his hole herte embrace, 1730  
 So that his word be trewe and plein,  
 Toward the world and so certein  
 That in him be no double speche:  
 For if men scholde trouthe seche  
 And founde it noght withinne a king,  
 It were an unsittende thing.  
 The word is tokne of that withinne,  
 Ther schal a worthi king beginne  
 To kepe his tunge and to be trewe,  
 So schal his pris ben evere newe. 1740  
 Advise him every man tofore,  
 And be wel war, er he be swore,  
 For afterward it is to late, P. iii. 144  
 If that he wole his word debate.  
 For as a king in special  
 Above all othre is principal  
 Of his pouer, so scholde he be  
 Most vertuous in his degre;  
 And that mai wel be signefied  
 Be his corone and specified. 1750  
 The gold betokneth excellence,  
 That men schull don him reverence  
 As to here liege sovereign.  
 The Stones, as the bokes sein,  
 Commended ben in treble wise:  
 Ferst thei ben harde, and thilke assisse  
 Betokneth in a king Constance,  
 So that ther schal no variance  
 Be founde in his condicion;  
 And also be descripcion 1760

Nota super his que  
 in corona Regis designantur.

1744 wolde B      1749 be wel A . . . Ba (except H<sub>1</sub> welbe)  
 1751 *margin* Nota—designantur om. R, B, H<sub>1</sub>

The vertu which is in the stones  
 A verrai Signe is for the nones  
 Of that a king schal ben honeste  
 And holde trewly his beheste  
 Of thing which longeth to kinghede:  
 The bryhte colour, as I rede,  
 Which in the stones is schynende,  
 Is in figure betoknende  
 The Cronique of this worldes fame,  
 Which stant upon his goode name. 1770  
 The cercle which is round aboute  
 Is tokne of al the lond withoute,  
 Which stant under his Gerarchie, P. iii 145  
 That he it schal wel kepe and guye.

And for that trouthe, hou so it falle,  
 Is the vertu soverein of alle,  
 That longeth unto regiment,  
 A tale, which is evident  
 Of trouthe in comendacioun,  
 Toward thin enformacion, 1780  
 Mi Sone, hierafter thou schalt hiere  
 Of a Cronique in this matiere.

As the Cronique it doth reherce,  
 A Soldan whilom was of Perce,  
 Which Daires hihte, and Ytaspis  
 His fader was; and soth it is  
 That thurgh wisdom and hih prudence  
 Mor than for eny reverence  
 Of his lignage as be descende  
 The regne of thilke empire he hente:  
 And as he was himselve wys,  
 The wisemen he hield in pris  
 And soghte hem oute on every side,  
 That toward him thei scholde abide.  
 Among the whiche thre ther were  
 That most service unto him bere,

[ KING, WINE, WOMAN  
 AND TRUTH ]

Hic narrat, qualiter  
 Darius filius Ytaspis  
 Soldanus Percie a tri-  
 bus suis Cubicularius,  
 quorum nomina Ar-  
 paghes, Manachaz et  
 Zorobabel dicta sunt,  
 nomine questionis  
 singillatim interroga-  
 vit, vtrum Rex aut  
 mulier aut vinum ma-  
 ioris fortitudinis vim  
 obtineret: ipsis vero  
 varia opinione re-  
 spondentibus, Zoro-  
 babel vltimus asseruit  
 quod mulier sui amo-

1769 his worldes Hi . . . Ba 1770 goode om. AM 1789 as]  
 and A . . . Ba 1791 And for he AM . . . Ba 1792 wisemen  
 S, F wise men AJC, B 1793 on] in AM . . . C of L 1795  
 margin asserit B

[KING, WINE, WOMAN  
AND TRUTH.]

ris complacencia tam  
Regis quam vini po-  
tenciam excellit. Ad-  
didit insuper pro finali  
conclusionē dicens,  
quod veritas super  
omnia vincit. Cuius  
responsio ceteris lau-  
dabilior acceptabatur

As thei which in his chambre lyhen  
And al his conseil herde and syhen.

Here names ben of strange note,

Arpaghes was the ferste hote,

1800

And Manachaz was the secounde,

Zorohabel, as it is founde

In the Cronique, was the thridde.

P. iii. 146

This Soldan, what so him betidde,

To hem he triste most of alle,

Wherof the cas is so befallē :

This lord, which hath conceiptes depe,

Upon a nyht whan he hath slepe,

As he which hath his wit desposed,

Touchende a point hem hath opposed.

1810

The kinges question was this ;

Of thinges thre which strengest is,

The wyn, the womman or the king :

And that thei scholde upon this thing

Of here ansuere avised be,

He yaf hem fulli daies thre,

And hath behote hem be his feith

That who the beste reson seith,

He schal resceive a worthi mede.

Upon this thing thei token hiede

1820

And stoden in desputeison,

That be diverse opinion

Of Argumentz that thei have holde

Arpaghes ferst his tale tolde,

And seide hou that the strengthe of kinges

Is myhtiest of alle thinges.

For king hath pouer over man,

And man is he which reson can,

As he which is of his nature

The moste noble creature

1830

Of alle tho that god hath wrought :

And be that skile it semeth noght,

He seith, that eny erthly thing

P. iii. 147

1797 which A. F    whiche B    1800 Arpaghes AMH.XCLB  
Arpaghes R    1805 he triste] þat trust(e) AM    he trusteth Δ  
1815 anssuere F



[KING, WINE, WOMAN  
AND TRUTH.]

Mai be so myhty as a king.  
 A king mai spille, a king mai save,  
 A king mai make of lord a knave  
 And of a knave a lord also:  
 The pouer of a king stant so,  
 That he the lawes overpasseth;  
 What he wol make lasse, he lasseth,  
 What he wol make more, he moreth;  
 And as the gentil faucon soreth,  
 He fleth, that noman him reclameth;  
 Bot he al one alle othre tameth,  
 And stant himself of lawe fre.  
 Lo, thus a kinges myht, seith he,  
 So as his reson can argue,  
 Is strengest and of most value.

1840

Bot Manachaz seide otherwise,  
 That wyn is of the more emprise;  
 And that he scheweth be this weie.  
 The wyn fulofte takth aweie  
 The reson fro the mannes herte;  
 The wyn can make a krepel sterte,  
 And a delivere man unwelde;  
 It makth a blind man to behelde,  
 And a bryht yhed seme derk;  
 It makth a lewed man a clerk,  
 And fro the clerkes the clergie  
 It takth aweie, and couardie  
 It torneth into hardiesse;  
 Of Avarice it makth largesse.

1850

1860

The wyn makth ek the goode blod, P. lii. 148  
 In which the Soule which is good  
 Hath chosen hire a resting place,  
 Whil that the lif hir wole embrace.  
 And be this skile Manachas  
 Ansuered hath upon this cas,  
 And seith that wyn be weie of kinde  
 Is thing which mai the hertes binde  
 Well more than the regalie.

187

Zorobabel for his partie



[KING, WINE, WOMAN  
AND TRUTH.]

Nota hic de vigore  
amoris, qui inter Ci-  
rum Regem Persarum  
et Apemen Besazis  
filiam ipsius Regis  
Concubinam spec-  
tante tota Curia expe-  
riebatur.

Seide, as him thoghte for the beste,  
That wommen ben the myhtieste.  
The king and the vinour also  
Of wommen comen bothe tuo;  
And ek he seide hou that manhede  
Thurgh strengthe unto the wommanhede  
Of love, wher he wole or non,  
Obeie schal; and therupon,  
To schewe of wommen the maistrie,  
A tale which he syh with yhe  
As for ensample he tolde this,—

1880

Hou Apemen, of Besazis  
Which dowhter was, in the paleis  
Sittende upon his hihe deis,  
Whan he was hottest in his ire  
Toward the grete of his empire,  
Cirus the king tirant sche tok,  
And only with hire goodly lok  
Sche made him debonaire and meke,  
And be the chyn and be the cheke  
Sche luggeth him riht as hir liste, P. iii. 149  
That nou sche japeth, nou sche kiste,  
And doth with him what evere hir liketh;  
Whan that sche loureth, thanne he siketh,  
And whan sche gladeth, he is glad:  
And thus this king was overlad  
With hire which his lemman was.  
Among the men is no solas,  
If that ther be no womman there;  
For bot if that the wommen were,  
This wordes joie were aweie:  
Thurgh hem men finden out the weie  
To knihthode and to worldes fame;  
Thei make a man to drede schame,  
And honour forto be desired:  
Thurgh the beaute of hem is fyred  
The Dart of which Cupide throweth,  
Wherof the jolif peine groweth,

1890

1900

1910

1882 I sih AdBT      1883 And for AM      1884 of Besazis  
H.XRCB<sub>2</sub> and Besazis L      1902 þc womman J, BT

Which al the world bath under fote.  
 A womman is the mannes bote,  
 His lif, his deth, his wo, his wel;  
 And this thing mai be schewed wel,  
 Hou that wommen ben goode and kinde,  
 For in ensample this I finde.

[KING, WINE, WOMAN  
AND TRUTH.]

Whan that the duk Ametus lay  
 Sek in his bedd, that every day  
 Men waiten whan he scholde deie,  
 Alceste his wif goth forto preie,  
 As sche which wolde thonk deserve,  
 With Sacrifice unto Minerve,

[TALE OF ALCESTIS.]

Nota de fidelitate  
 Coniugis, qualiter Al  
 cesta vxor Ameti, vt  
 1920 maritum suum viuifi-  
 caret, seipsam morti  
 spontanee subegit.

To wite ansuere of the goddesse      P. iii. 150  
 Hou that hir lord of his seknesse,  
 Wherof he was so wo besein,  
 Recouere myhte his hele ayein.  
 Lo, thus sche cride and thus sche preide,  
 Til ate laste a vois hir seide,  
 That if sche wolde for his sake  
 The maladie soffre and take,      1930  
 And deie himself, he scholde live.  
 Of this ansuere Alceste hath yive  
 Unto Minerve gret thonkinge,  
 So that hir deth and his livinge  
 Sche ches with al hire hole entente,  
 And thus acorded hom sche wente.  
 Into the chambre and whan sche cam,  
 Hire housebonde anon sche nam  
 In bothe hire Armes and him kiste,  
 And spak unto him what hire liste;      1940  
 And therupon withinne a throwe  
 This goode wif was overthrowe  
 And deide, and he was hool in haste.  
 So mai a man be reson taste,  
 Hou next after the god above  
 The trouthe of wommen and the love,  
 In whom that alle grace is founde,  
 Is myhtiest upon this grounde  
 And most behovely manyfold.

[KING, WINE, WOMAN  
AND TRUTH.]

Lo, thus Zorobabel hath told 1950  
The tale of his opinion :  
Bot for final conclusion  
What strengest is of erthli thinges, P. iii. 151  
The wyn, the wommen or the kinges,  
He seith that trouthe above hem alle  
Is myhtiest, hou evere it falle.  
The trouthe, hou so it evere come,  
Mai for nothing ben overcome ;  
It mai wel soffre for a throwe,  
Bot ate laste it schal be knowe. 1960  
The proverbe is, who that is trewe,  
Him schal his while nevere rewe :  
For hou so that the cause wende,  
The trouthe is schameles ate ende,  
Bot what thing that is troutheles,  
It mai noght wel be schameles,  
And schame hindreth every wyht :  
So proveth it, ther is no myht  
Withoute trouthe in no degre.  
And thus for trouthe of his decre 1970  
Zorobabel was most commended,  
Wherof the question was ended,  
And he resceived hath his mede  
For trouthe, which to mannes nede  
Is most behoveliche overal.  
Forthi was trouthe in special  
The ferste point in observance  
Betake unto the governance  
Of Alisandre, as it is seid :  
For therupon the ground is leid 1980  
Of every kinges regiment,  
As thing which most convenient  
Is forto sette a king in evene P. iii. 152  
Bothe in this world and ek in hevene.

[THE SECOND POINT OF  
POLICY LIBERALITY.]

viii. *Absit Avaricia, ne tangat regia corda,  
Eius enim spoliis excoariatur humus.*

1978 the om. J, AdBT 1980 therupon] vpon AM  
*Latin Versus viii. a Eius FKHs Magd rest Cuius*

*Fama colit largum volitans per secula Regem.  
Dona tamen licitis sunt moderanda modis.*

LIBERALITY.

Next after trouthe the secounde,  
In Policie as it is founde,  
Which serveth to the worldes fame  
In worschipe of a kinges name,  
Largesse it is, whos privilegge  
Ther mai non Avarice abregge.  
The worldes good was ferst comune,  
Bot afterward upon fortune  
Was thilke comun profit cessed:  
For whan the poeple stod encrested  
And the lignages woxen grete,  
Anon for singulier beyete  
Drouh every man to his partie;  
Wherof cam in the ferste envie  
With gret debat and werres stronge,  
And laste among the men so longe,  
Til noman wiste who was who,  
Ne which was frend ne which was fo  
Til ate laste in every lond  
Withinne hemself the poeple fond  
That it was good to make a king,  
Which mihte appesen al this thing  
And yive riht to the lignages  
In partinge of here heritages  
And ek of al here other good;  
And thus above hem alle stod  
The king upon his Regalie,  
As he which hath to justifie  
The worldes good fro covoitise.  
So sit it wel in alle wise  
A king between the more and lesse  
To sette his herte upon largesse  
Toward himself and ek also  
Toward his poeple; and if noght so,  
That is to sein, if that he be

Hic tractat de regie  
maiestatis secunda  
Policia, quam Aris-  
totiles largitatem vo-  
cat: cuius virtute non  
solum propulsata A-  
varicia Regis nomen  
magnificum extollitur,  
set et sui subditi omni-  
um diuiciarum habund-  
antia locundiores effi-  
ciuntur.

1990

P. iii. 153

2010

1990 *margin* subditi omni sub dicionum (subdicionum) A . . . Bz, B  
2015 bitwene (between) more AM . . . Bz, A, WHa

[LIBERALITY.]

Nota super hoc  
quod Aristotiles Alex-  
andrum exemplifi-  
cavit de exactionibus  
Regis Chaldecorum.

Toward himselven large and fre  
And of his poeple take and pile,  
Largesse be no weie of skile  
It mai be seid, bot Avarice,  
Which in a king is a gret vice.

2020

A king behoveth ek to fle  
The vice of Prodegalite,  
That he mesure in his expence  
So kepe, that of indigence  
He mai be sauf: for who that nedeth,  
In al his werk the worse he spedeth.

2030

As Aristotle upon Chaldee  
Ensample of gret Auctorite  
Unto king Alisandre tauhte  
Of thilke folk that were unsauhte  
Toward here king for his pilage:  
Wherof he bad, in his corage  
That he unto thre pointz entende,  
Wher that he wolde his good despende.

First scholde he loke, hou that it stod, **P. iii. 154**  
That al were of his oghne good

2040

The yiftes whiche he wolde yive;  
So myhte he wel the betre live;  
And ek he moste taken hiede  
If ther be cause of eny nede,  
Which oghte forto be defended,  
Er that his goodes be despended:

He mot ek, as it is befallē,

Amonges othre thinges alle

Se the decertes of his men;

And after that thei ben of ken

2050

And of astat and of merite,

He schal hem largeliche aquite,

Or for the werre, or for the pes,

That non honour falle in descres,

Which mihte torne into defame,

Bot that he kepe his goode name,

So that he be noght holde unkinde.

For in Cronique a tale I finde,

2021 and pile] no pile AM

2043 Paragr. here J, SB, F &amp;c.

Which spekth somdiel of this matiere,  
 Hierafterward as thou schalt here.

2060

In Rome, to poursuie his riht,  
 Ther was a worthi povere kniht,  
 Which cam al one forto sein  
 His cause, when the court was plem,  
 Wher Julus was in presence.  
 And for him lacketh of despence,  
 Ther was with him non advocat  
 To make ple for his astat.

[TALE OF JULIUS AND  
 THE POOR KNIGHT.]

Hic secundum gesta  
 Iuli exemplum  
 ponit, qualiter Rex  
 suorum militum, quos  
 probos agnouerit, in  
 digenciam largitatis  
 sue beneficiis releuare  
 tenetur.

Bot thogh him lacke forto plede,  
 Him lacketh nothing of manhede;  
 He wiste wel his pours was povere,  
 Bot yit he thoghte his riht recouere,  
 And openly poverte alleide,  
 To themperour and thus he seide:  
 'O Julius, lord of the lawe,  
 Behold, mi conseil is withdrawe  
 For lacke of gold: do thin office  
 After the lawes of justice:  
 Help that I hadde conseil here  
 Upon the trouthe of mi matiere.'

P. iii. 155

2070

And Julius with that anon  
 Assigned him a worthi on,  
 Bot he himself no word ne spak.  
 This kniht was wroth and fond a lak  
 In themperour, and seide thus:  
 'O thou unkinde Julius,  
 Whan thou in thi bataille were  
 Up in Aufrique, and I was there,  
 Mi myht for thi rescousse I dede  
 And putte noman in my stede,  
 Thou wost what woundes ther I hadde:  
 Bot hier I finde thee so badde,  
 That thee ne liste speke o word  
 Thin oghne mouth, nor of thin hord

2080

2090

2067 margin reuelare AM om. C  
 2078 lawe AM . . . Bz, AdBT  
 AdBT

2077 do] to H. . . Bz, AdBT  
 2093 list (luste) to H. EBz,

TALE OF JULIUS AND  
THE POOR KNIGHT.]

To yive a florin me to helpe.  
Hou scholde I thanne me beyelpe  
Fro this dai forth of thi largesse,  
Whan such a gret unkindenesse  
Is founde in such a lord as thou?' P. iii. 156

This Julius knew wel ynou 2100  
That al was soth which he him tolde;  
And for he wolde noght ben holde  
Unkinde, he tok his cause on honde,  
And as it were of goddes sonde,  
He yaf him good ynouh to spende  
For evere into his lives ende.  
And thus scholde every worthi king  
Take of his knihtes knowleching,  
Whan that he syh thei hadden nede,  
For every service axeth mede: 2110  
Bot othre, whiche have noght deserved  
Thurgh vertu, bot of japes served,  
A king schal noght deserve grace,  
Thogh he be large in such a place.

[ANTIGONUS AND  
CINICHUS.]

Hic ponit exem-  
plum de Rege An-  
tigono, quaher dona  
regia secundum maius  
et minus equa discre-  
cione moderanda sunt.

It sit wel every king to have  
Discrecion, whan men him crave,  
So that he mai his yifte wite:  
Wherof I finde a tale write,  
Hou Cinichus a povere kniht  
A Somme which was over myht 2120  
Preide of his king Antigonus.  
The king ansuerde to him thus,  
And seide hou such a yifte passeth  
His povere astat: and thanne he lasseth,  
And axeth bot a litel peny,  
If that the king wol yive him eny.  
The king ansuerde, it was to smal  
For him, which was a lord real;  
To yive a man so litel thing P. iii. 157  
It were unworschipe in a king. 2130

Be this ensample a king mai lere

2106 vnto H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT  
which] pat AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>

2122 king om. AM 2128



# LIBER SEPTIMUS

291

That forto yive is in manere :  
 For if a king his tresor lasseth  
 Withoute honour and thonkles passeth,  
 Whan he himself wol so beguile,  
 I not who schal compleigne his while.  
 Ne who be rihte him schal relieve.  
 Bot natheles this I believe,  
 To helpe with his oghne lond  
 Behoveth every man his hond  
 To sette upon necessite ;  
 And ek his kinges realte  
 Mot every liege man conforte,  
 With good and bodi to supporte,  
 Whan thei se cause resonable.  
 For who that is noght entendable  
 To holde upriht his kinges name,  
 Him oghte forto be to blame.

[DISCRETION IN  
 GIVING.]

2140

Nota hic quod Re-  
 gius status a suis  
 fidelibus omni favore  
 supportandus est.

Of Policie and overmore  
 To speke in this matiere more,  
 So as the Philosophre tolde,  
 A king after the reule is holde  
 To modifie and to adresce  
 Hise yiftes upon such largesce  
 That he mesure noght excede :  
 For if a king falle into nede,  
 It causeth ofte sondri thinges  
 Whiche are ungoodly to the kinges.  
 What man wol noght himself mesure, P. iii. 158  
 Men sen fulofte that mesure  
 Him hath forsake : and so doth he  
 That useth Prodegalite,  
 Which is the moder of poverte,  
 Wherof the londs ben deserte ;  
 And namely whan thilke vice  
 Aboute a king stant in office  
 And bath withholde of his partie  
 The covoitouse flaterie,

[PRODIGALITY OF  
 KINGS.]

2150

Nota hic secundum  
 Aristotilem, qualiter  
 Principum Prodegali-  
 tas paupertatem in-  
 ducit communem

Seneca. Sic alius  
 benefacito, ut tibi non  
 noccas.

2160

2140 Bilongep AdBT  
 secundum Aristotilem om. S  
 2158 been (ben) A . . . B<sub>1</sub>

2150 margin Nota -Aristotilem om B<sub>2</sub>  
 2155 margin Seneca] Salomon B



Which many a worthi king deceiveth,  
 Er he the fallas aperceiveth  
 Of hem that serven to the glose.  
 For thei that cunnen plese and glose.  
 Ben, as men tellen, the norrices  
 Unto the fostringe of the vices,  
 Wherof fulofte natheles  
 A king is blamed gulteles.

2170

## [FLATTERERS.]

Nota qualiter in  
 principum curis adu-  
 latores triplici graui-  
 tate offendunt.

Primo contra deum.

A Philosophre, as thou schalt hiere,  
 Spak to a king of this matiere,  
 And seide him wel hou that flatours  
 Coupable were of thre errours.

2180

Secundo        contra  
 Principem.

On was toward the goddes hihe,  
 That weren wrothe of that thei sihe  
 The meschief which befalle scholde  
 Of that the false flatour tolde.  
 Toward the king an other was,  
 Whan thei be sleihte and be fallas  
 Of feigned wordes make him wene  
 That blak is whyt and blew is grene  
 Touchende of his condicion :

P. iii. 159

2190

For whanne he doth extorcion  
 With manye an other vice mo,  
 Men schal noght finden on of tho  
 To groucche or speke therayein,  
 Bot holden up his oil and sein  
 That al is wel, what evere he doth ;  
 And thus of fals thei maken soth,  
 So that here kinges yhe is blent  
 And wot not hou the world is went.  
 The thridde errour is harm comune,  
 With which the poeple mot commune  
 Of wronges that thei bringen inne :  
 And thus thei worchen treble sinne,  
 That ben flatours aboute a king.  
 Ther myhte be no worse thing  
 Aboute a kinges regalie,  
 Thanne is the vice of flaterie.

2200

Tercio contra po-  
 pulum.

2198 not A, F    noght S    nought J, B    2199 margin Tercio  
 contra populum om. B, W

And natheles it hath ben used,  
 That it was nevere yit refused  
 As forto speke in court real;  
 For there it is most special,  
 And mai noght longe be forbore.  
 Bot whan this vice of hem is bore,  
 That scholden the vertus forthbringe,  
 And trouthe is torned to lesinge,  
 It is, as who seith, ayein kinde,  
 Wherof an old ensample I finde.

2210

Among these othre tales wise  
 Of Philosopres, in this wise  
 I rede, how whilom tuo ther were, P. iii. 160  
 And to the Scole forto lere  
 Unto Athenes fro Cartage  
 Here frendes, whan thei were of Age,  
 Hem sende; and ther thei stoden longe,  
 Til thei such lore have underfonge,  
 That in here time thei surmonte  
 Alle othre men, that to acompte  
 Of hem was tho the grete fame.  
 The ferste of hem his rihte name  
 Was Diogenes thanne hote,  
 In whom was founde no riote;  
 His felaw Arisippus hyhte,  
 Which mochel couthe and mochel myhte.  
 Bot ate laste, soth to sein,  
 Thei bothe tornen hom ayein  
 Unto Cartage and scole lete.  
 This Diogenes no beyete

[TALE OF DIOGENES  
 AND ARISTIPPUS.]

Hic contra vanitates  
 adulantum loquitur,  
 et narrat quod cum  
 2220 Arisippus de Carta-  
 gine Philosophus sco-  
 le studium relinquens  
 sui Principis obsequio  
 in magnis adulacio-  
 nibus pre ceteris ca-  
 rior assistebat, acci-  
 dit ut ipse quodam  
 die Diogenem Philo-  
 sophum nuper socium  
 suum, virum tam mo-  
 ribus quam scientia  
 probatissimum, herbas  
 ad olera sua collectas  
 2230 lauantes ex casu ad  
 ripam inuenit. cui ait  
 'O Diogenes, vere si  
 tu sicut et ego Prin-  
 cipi tuo placere scires,  
 huiusmodi herbas aut  
 colligere aut lauare  
 tibi minime indigeret.'  
 Cui alter respondit,

2219 ff. *margin* Hic contra—deberes] Hic loquitur super eodem,  
 et narrat quod, cum Diogenes et Arisippus philosophi a scolis  
 Athenarum ad Cartaginem, vnde orti fuerant, reuertissent, Ari-  
 sippus curie principis sui familiaris adhesit, Diogenes vero in quodam  
 mansiunculo suo studio vacans permansit. Et contigit quod, cum  
 ipse quodam die ad finem orti (ortus S) sui super ripam herbas quas  
 elegerat (eligerat S) ad olera lauasset, superuenit ex casu Arisippus,  
 dixitque ei, 'O Diogenes, certe si Principi tuo placere scires tu ad  
 olera tua lauanda non indigeres.' Cui ille respondit, 'O Arisippe, certe  
 si tu olera tua lauare scires, te in blandiciis et adulacionibus principi  
 tuo seruire non oporteret.' SBAA (*Lat om.* AdT)

[TALE OF DIOGENES  
AND ARISTIPPUS.]

'O Arisippe, certe et  
si tu sicut et ego olera  
tua colligere et lauare  
scires, principem tuum  
obituus glorie cupid-  
itatem blandiri nulla-  
tenus deberes'

Of worldes good or lasse or more  
Ne soghte for his longe lore,  
Bot tok him only forto duelle  
At hom; and as the bokes telle,  
His hous was nyh to the rivere  
Besyde a bregge, as thou schalt hiere.  
Ther duelleth he to take his reste,  
So as it thoghte him for the beste,  
To studie in his Philosophie,  
As he which wolde so defie  
The worldes pompe on every syde.

2240

Bot Arisippe his bok aside  
Hath leid, and to the court he wente, P. iii. 161  
Wher many a wyle and many a wente 2250  
With flatene and wordes softe  
He caste, and hath compassed ofte  
Hou he his Prince myhte plesse;  
And in this wise he gat him ese  
Of vein honour and worldes good.  
The londes reule upon him stod,  
The king of him was wonder glad,  
And all was do, what thing he bad,  
Bothe in the court and ek withoute  
With flatene he broghte aboute 2260  
His pourpos of the worldes werk,  
Which was ayein the stat of clerk,  
So that Philosophie he lefte  
And to richesse himself upleste:  
Lo, thus hadde Arisippe his wille.

Bot Diogenes duelte stille  
At home and loked on his bok:  
He soghte noght the worldes crok  
For vein honour ne for richesse,  
Bot all his hertes besinesse 2270  
He sette to be vertuous;  
And thus withinne his oghne hous  
He liveth to the sufficance  
Of his havinge. And fell per chance,

2270

2243 and takþ B  
pastat B

2251 and] and wþ AM, Δ

2262

[TALE OF DIOGENES  
AND ARISTIPPUS.]

This Diogene upon a day,  
 And that was in the Monthe of May,  
 Whan that these herbes ben holsome,  
 He walketh forto gadre some  
 In his gardin, of whiche his joutes **P. iii. 162**  
 He thoghte have, and thus aboutes **2280**  
 Whanne he hath gadred what him liketh,  
 He satte him thanne doun and pyketh,  
 And wyssh his herbes in the flod  
 Upon the which his gardin stod,  
 Nyh to the bregge, as I tolde er.  
 And hapneth, whil he sitteth ther,  
 Cam Arisippes be the strete  
 With manye hors and routes grete,  
 And straght unto the bregge he rod,  
 Wher that he hoked and abod; **2290**  
 For as he caste his yhe nyh,  
 His felaw Diogene he syh,  
 And what he dede he syh also,  
 Wherof he seide to him so:

'O Diogene, god thee spede.  
 It were certes litel nede  
 To sitte there and wortes pyke,  
 If thou thi Prince couthest lyke,  
 So as I can in my degre.'  
 'O Arisippe,' ayein quod he, **2300**  
 'If that thou couthist, so as I,  
 Thi wortes pyke, trewely  
 It were als litel nede or lasse,  
 That thou so worldly wolt compasse  
 With flaterie forto serve,  
 Wherof thou thenkest to deserve  
 Thi princes thonk, and to pourchace  
 Hou thou myht stonden in his grace,  
 For getinge of a litel good. **P. iii. 163**  
 If thou wolt take into thi mod **2310**  
 Reson, thou myht be reson deeme  
 That so thi prince forto queeme

2282 satte S, F    sate W    sat J, AdBT    sitte (sit) AMH, XGC  
 sette set) ERLB, A, Hs    2294 so] þo GLB, AdBT, W

Is noght to reson acordant,  
 Bot it is gretly descordant  
 Unto the Scoles of Athene.  
 Lo, thus ansuerde Diogene  
 Ayein the clerkes flaterie.

[FLATTERY]

Bot yit men sen thessamplerie  
 Of Arisippe is wel received,  
 And thilke of Diogene is weyved.  
 Office in court and gold in cofre  
 Is nou, men sein, the philosophre  
 Which hath the worschipe in the halle;  
 Bot flaterie passeth alle  
 In chambre, whom the court avanceth;  
 For upon thilke lot it chanceth  
 To be beloved nou aday.

2320

\* I not if it be ye or nay,  
 Bot as the comun vois it telleth;  
 Bot wher that flaterie duelleth  
 In eny lond under the Sonne,  
 Ther is ful many a thing begonne

2330

[EXAMPLE OF DANTE.]

Nota exemplum  
 cuiusdam poete de  
 Ytalia, qui Dante vo-  
 cabatur.

\* I not if it be ye or nay.

How Dante the poete answerde  
 To a flatour, the tale I herde.  
 Upon a strif bitwen hem tuo  
 He seide him, 'Ther ben many mo  
 Of thy servantes than of myne.  
 For the poete of his covyne  
 Hath non that wol him clothe and fede,  
 But a flatour may reule and lede  
 A king with al his lond aboute.'  
 So stant the wise man in doute  
 Of hem that to folie drawe:  
 For such is now the newe lawe,  
 And as the comune vois it telleth,  
 Wher now that flaterie duelleth  
 In every lond etc. (as 2331 ff.)

2330\*

P. iii. 164

2340\*

2318 sein B sayne W 2329 Bot] And AdBTA 2330 Bot  
 wher] And wher AM. . B: Wher now AdBTA 2331 every AdBI  
 2329\*-2340\* only in AdBTA (not SA) 2332\* seid T sayd B

Which were betre to be left;  
That hath be schewed nou and eft.

[FLATTERY.]

Bot if a Prince wolde him reule  
Of the Romeins after the reule,  
In thilke time as it was used,  
This vice scholde be refused,  
Wherof the Princes ben assoted.

Bot wher the pleine trouthe is noted, 2340  
Ther may a Prince wel conceive,  
That he schal noght himself deceive,  
Of that he hiereth wordes pleine;  
For him thar noght be reson pleigne,  
That warned is er him be wo.

And that was fully proeved tho,  
Whan Rome was the worldes chief,  
The Sothseiere tho was lief,  
Which wolde noght the trouthe spare,  
Bot with hise wordes pleine and bare 2350  
To Themperour hise sothes tolde,  
As in Cronique is yit withholde,  
Hierafterward as thou schalt hiere  
Acordende unto this matiere.

To se this olde ensamplerie,  
That whilom was no flaterie  
Toward the Princes wel I finde;  
Wherof so as it comth to mynde,  
Mi Sone, a tale unto thin Ere,  
Whil that the worthi princes were  
At Rome, I thenke forto tellen.  
For whan the chances so befellen

P. iii. 165

[THE ROMAN TRIUMPH.]

Hic narrat super  
eodem, qualiter nuper  
Romanorum Impera-  
tor, cum ipse trium-  
phator in hostes a  
2360 bello Rome rediret,  
tres sibi laudes in sig-  
num sui triumphus  
precipue debebantur

2335 him wolde S . . . Δ, W 2337 as om. AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> (except C)  
2352 is yit] it is C, AdBT 2357 ff. margin Hic narrat—aduersabitur]  
Hic etiam contra vicium adulacionis ponit exemplum: et narrat  
quod, cum nuper Romanorum imperator contra suos hostes victoriam  
optinuisset, et cum palma triumphus (trumphe S) in urbem redire  
debuisset, ne ipsum inanis glorie altitudo superextolleret, licitum fuit  
pro illo die quod unusquisque peiora que sue condicionis agnosceret  
in aures suas apercius exclamaret, vt sic gaudium cum dolore com-  
pesceret, et adulantum voces, sique fuerant, pro minimo computaret.  
SBA<sup>1</sup> (Lat. om. AdT)

[THE ROMAN TRI-  
UMPH.]

primo quatuor equi  
albissimi currum in  
quo sedebat veherent,  
secundo tunica lovis  
pro tunc indueretur,  
tercio sin capui prope  
currum ad vtrum-  
quelatus catenati de-  
ambulant. Set ne  
tanti honoris adulacio  
eius animus in su-  
perbiam extolleret,  
quidam scurra lingu-  
osus iuxta ipsum in  
curru sedebat, qui  
quasi continuatis vo-  
cibus improperando  
ei dixit, 'Notheos,'  
hoc est nosce te ipsum,  
'quia si hodie fortuna  
tibi prospera fuerit,  
cras forte versa rota  
mutabilis aduersabi-  
tur.'

That eny Emperour as tho  
Victoire hadde upon his fo,  
And so forth cam to Rome ayein,  
Of treble honour he was certein,  
Wherof that he was magnified.  
The ferste, as it is specefied,  
Was, whan he cam at thilke tyde,  
The Charr in which he scholde ryde  
Foure whyte Stiedes scholden drawe ;  
Of Jupiter be thilke lawe  
The Cote he scholde were also ;  
Hise prisoners ek scholden go  
Endlong the Charr on eyther hond,  
And alle the nobles of the lond  
Tofore and after with him come  
Kidende and broghten him to Rome,  
In thonk of his chivalerie  
And for non other flaterie.  
And that was schewed forth withal ;  
Wher he sat in his Charr real,  
Beside him was a Ribald set,  
Which hadde hise wordes so beset,  
To themperour in al his gloire  
He seide, 'Tak into memoire,  
For al this pompe and al this pride  
Let no justice gon aside,  
Bot know thiself, what so befalle.  
For men sen ofte time falle  
Thing which men wende siker stonde :  
Thogh thou victoire have nou on honde,  
Fortune mai noght stonde alway ;  
The whiel per chance an other day  
Mai torne, and thou myht overthrowe ;  
Ther lasteth nothing bot a throwe.'  
With these wordes and with mo  
This Ribald, which sat with him tho,  
To Themperour his tale tolde :

2370

2380

P. iii. 166

(2400\*)

2390

2363 eny om. AM    2376 of loond A    2377 margin fortunata  
A . . . B<sub>a</sub>    2378 margin fuerit] fuit B<sub>a</sub>    sint H<sub>1</sub> . . . L.    2379  
margin forte om. AM    tokne S . . A    2384 word(e) AMXLB<sub>a</sub>



And overmor what evere he wolde, 2400  
 Or were it evel or were it good,  
 So plainly as the trouthe stod,  
 He spareth noght, bot spekth it oute :  
 And so myhte every man aboute  
 The day of that solempnete  
 His tale telle als wel as he  
 To Themperour al openly.  
 And al was this the cause why ;  
 That whil he stod in that noblesse,  
 He scholde his vanite represse 2410  
 With suche wordes as he herde.

Lo nou, hou thilke time it ferde  
 Toward so bih a worthi lord :  
 For this I finde ek of record,  
 Which the Cronique hath auctorized. P. iii. 167  
 What Emperour was entronized,  
 The ferste day of his corone,  
 Wher he was in his real Throne  
 And hield his feste in the paleis  
 Sittende upon his hihe deis  
 With al the lust that mai be gete,  
 Whan he was gladdest at his mete,  
 And every menstral hadde pleid,  
 And every Disour hadde seid  
 What most was plesant to his Ere,  
 Than ate laste comen there  
 Hise Macons, for thei scholden crave  
 Wher that he wolde be begrave,  
 And of what Ston his sepulture  
 Thei scholden make, and what sculpture 2430  
 He wolde ordeine therupon.

Tho was ther flaterie non

[THE EMPEROR AND  
 HIS MASONS.]

Hic etiam contra  
 adulacionem scribit  
 quod primo die quo  
 nuper Imperator in-  
 tronizatus extitit, la-  
 tom sui ab ipso con-  
 stanter peterent, de  
 quali lapide sue se-  
 pulture tumulum fa-  
 2420 bricarent, ut sic futu-  
 ram mortem com-  
 memorans vanitates  
 huius seculi transito-  
 rias facilius reprime-  
 ret.

2409 that] his B 2412 it om J, AdBT 2414 fl. margin  
 Hic etiam—reprimeret] Hic ponit exemplum super eodem; et narrat  
 quod eodem die quo imperator intronizatus in palacio suo regio ad  
 conuiuium in maiori leticia sedisset, ministri sui sculptores coram  
 ipso procederent alta voce dicentes, 'O imperator, dic nobis cuius  
 forme et ubi tumbam sculpture tue faciemus,' ut sic morte remorsus  
 huius vite blandicias obtemperaret. SBAA but procederant SBA (Lat.  
 om. AdT) 2424 Disour] Gestour AM . . B1 2428 be om. AM



The worthi princes to bejape;  
 The thing was other wise schape  
 With good conseil; and otherwise  
 Thei were hemselven thanne wise,  
 And understoden wel and knewen.  
 Whan suche softe wyndes blew  
 Of flaterie into here Ere,  
 Thei setten noght here hertes there; 2440  
 Bot whan thei herden wordes feigned,  
 The pleine trouthe it hath desdeigned  
 Of hem that weren so discrete.  
 So tok the flatour no beyete  
 Of him that was his prince tho: P. lii. 168  
 And forto proven it is so,  
 A tale which befell in dede  
 In a Cronique of Rome I rede.

## [CAESAR'S ANSWER.]

Hic inter alia gesta  
 Caesar's narrat vnum  
 exemplum precipue  
 contra illos qui, cum  
 in aspectu princi-  
 pis alius sapientiores  
 apparere vellent,  
 quandoque tamen si-  
 mulate sapientie talia  
 committunt, per que  
 ceteris stuliores in  
 fine comprobantur

Cesar upon his real throne  
 Wher that he sat in his persone 2450  
 And was hiest in al his pris,  
 A man, which wolde make him wys,  
 Fell doun knelende in his presence,  
 And dede him such a reverence,  
 As thogh the hihe god it were:  
 Men hadden gret mervaille there  
 Of the worschipe which he dede.  
 This man aros fro thilke stede,  
 And forth with al the same tyde  
 He goth him up and be his side 2460  
 He set him doun as pier and pier,  
 And seide, 'If thou that sittest hier  
 Art god, which alle thinges myht,  
 Thanne have I do worschipe ariht  
 As to the god; and other wise,  
 If thou be noght of thilke assisse,  
 Bot art a man such as am I,  
 Than mai I sitte faste by,

2434 thing, king Bs, AdBT      2444 Tho took AdB   Sto cok I  
 2460 be om. AM      2461 as] and A      2464 do worschipe]  
 worshiped AdBT

For we be bothen of o kinde.'

[CAESAR'S ANSWER.]

Cesar ansuerde and seide, 'O blinde, 2470

Thou art a fol, it is wel sene

Upon thiself: for if thou wene

I be a god, thou dost amys

To sitte wher thou sest god is;

And if I be a man, also P. iii. 169

Thou hast a gret folie do,

Whan thou to such on as schal deie

The worschipe of thi god aweie

Hast yoven so unworthely.

Thus mai I prove redely, 2480

Thou art noght wys.' And thei that herde

Hou wysly that the king ansuerde,

It was to hem a newe lore;

Wherof thei dradden him the more,

And broghten nothing to his Ere,

Bot if it trouthe and reson were.

So be ther manye, in such a wise

That feignen wordes to be wise, (2500\*)

And al is verray flaterie

To him which can it wel asprie. 2490

The kinde flatour can noght love

Bot forto bringe himself above;

For hou that evere his maister fare,

So that himself stonde out of care,

Him reccheth noght: and thus fulofte

Deceived ben with wordes softe

The kinges that ben innocent.

Wherof as for chastement

The wise Philosophre seide,

What king that so his tresor leide 2500

Upon such folk, he hath the lesse,

And yit ne doth he no largesse,

Bot harmeth with his oghne hond

Himself and ek his oghne lond,

And that be many a sondri weie. P. iii. 170

Wherof if that a man schal seie,

As forto speke in general,

2469 bope (both) AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBA, W

2486 if om. AM, Δ

[FLATTERERS OF A  
KING.]

Nota, qualiter isti  
circa Principem adu-  
latores potius a Curia  
expelli, quam ad regie  
maiestatis munera ac-  
ceptari, Policia sua-  
dente deberent.

[FLATTERERS OF A  
KING.]

Wher such thing falleth overal  
That eny king himself misreule,  
The Philosophre upon his reule  
In special a cause sette,  
Which is and evere hath be the lette  
In governance aboute a king  
Upon the meschief of the thing,  
And that, he seith, is Flaterie.  
Wherof tofore as in partie  
What vice it is I have declared ;  
For who that hath his wit bewared  
Upon a flatour to believe,  
Whan that he weneth best achieve  
His goode world, it is most fro.  
And forto proeven it is so  
Ensamples ther ben manyon,  
Of whiche if thou wolt knowen on,  
It is behovely forto hiere  
What whilom fell in this matiere.

2510

2520

[AHAB AND MICAH.]

Hic loquitur vterius  
de consilio adulantium,  
quorum fabulis prin-  
cipis aures organizate  
veritatis auditum ca-  
pere nequunt. Et  
narrat exemplum de  
Rege Achab, qui pro  
eo quod ipse prophe-  
cias fidelis Michee  
recusavit blandicis-  
que adulantis Zede-  
chie adhesit, Rex  
Sirie Benedab in cam-  
po bellator ipsum di-  
vino iudicio deunctum  
interfecit.

Among the kinges in the bible  
I finde a tale, and is credible,  
Of him that whilom Achab hihte,  
Which hadde al Irahel to rihte ;  
Bot who that couthe glose softe  
And flatre, suche he sette alofte  
In gret astat and made hem riche ,  
Bot thei that spieken wordes liche  
To trouthe and wolde it noght forbere, P. iii. 171  
For hem was non astat to bere,  
The court of suche tok non hiede.  
Til ate laste upon a nede,  
That Benedab king of Surie  
Of Irahel a gret partie,  
Which Ramoth Galaath was hote,  
Hath sesed ; and of that riote  
He tok conseil in sondri wise,  
Bot noght of hem that weren wise.

2530

2540

2530 Irahel (Israel) J, S, FK *rest* Israel 2536 margin adulantis  
A . . . B: 2540 Irahel (Israel) AJ, S, FK *rest* Israel

[AHAB AND MILAIAM.]

And natheles upon this cas  
 To strengthen him, for Josaphas,  
 Which thanne was king of Judee,  
 He sende sorto come, as he  
 Which thurgh frendschipe and alliance  
 Was next to him of aqueintance; 2550  
 For Joram Sone of Josaphath  
 Achabbes dowhter wedded hath,  
 Which hihte faire Godelie.  
 And thus cam into Samarie  
 King Josaphat, and he fond there  
 The king Achab: and whan thei were  
 Togedre spekende of this thing,  
 This Josaphat seith to the king,  
 Hou that he wolde gladly hiere  
 Som trew prophete in this matiere, 2560  
 That he his conseil myhte yive  
 To what point that it schal be drive.

And in that time so befell,  
 Ther was such on in Irabel,  
 Which sette him al to flaterie, P. iii. 172  
 And he was cleped Sedechie;  
 And after him Achab hath sent:  
 And he at his comandement  
 Tofore him cam, and be a sleyhte  
 He hath upon his heved on heyhte 2570  
 Tuo large hornes set of bras,  
 As he which al a flatour was,  
 And goth rampende as a leoun  
 And caste hise hornes up and down,  
 And bad men ben of good espeir,  
 For as the hornes percen their,  
 He seith, withoute resistance,  
 So wiste he wel of his science  
 That Benedab is desconfit.  
 Whan Sedechie upon this plit 2580  
 Hath told this tale to his lord,  
 Anon ther were of his acord  
 Prophetes false manye mo

AHAB AND MICAH.

To bere up oil, and alle tho  
 Affermen that which he hath told,  
 Wherof the king Achab was bold  
 And yaf hem yiftes al aboute.  
 But Josaphat was in gret doute, (2600\*)  
 And hield fantosme al that he herde,  
 Preiende Achab, hou so it ferde, .590  
 If ther were eny other man,  
 The which of prophecie can,  
 To hiere him speke er that thei gon.  
 Quod Achab thanne, 'Ther is on,  
 A brothell, which Micheas hihte; P. iii. 173  
 Bot he ne comth noght in my sihte,  
 For he hath longe in prison lein.  
 Him liketh nevere yit to sein  
 A goodly word to mi plesance;  
 And natheles at thin instance 2600  
 He schal come oute, and thanne he may  
 Seie as he seide many day;  
 For yit he seide nevere wel.'  
 Tho Josaphat began somdel  
 To gladen him in hope of trouthe,  
 And bad withouten eny slouthe  
 That men him scholden fette anon.  
 And thei that weren for him gon,  
 Whan that thei comen wher he was,  
 Thei tolden unto Micheas 2610  
 The manere hou that Sedechie  
 Declared hath his prophecie;  
 And therupon thei preie him faire  
 That he wol seie no contraire,  
 Wherof the king mai be desplesed,  
 For so schal every man ben esed,  
 And he mai helpe himselve also.  
 Micheas upon trouthe tho  
 His herte sette, and to hem seith,  
 Al that belongeth to his feith 2620  
 And of non other feigned thing,

2594 Ther is on] is per non B is per on T 2598 liked S. . A, W  
 2609 per S . . . A 2619 him AMX . . . Ba, K

That wol he telle unto his king,  
 Als fer as god hath yove him grace.  
 Thus cam this prophete into place  
 Wher he the kinges wille herde; P. iii. 174  
 And he therto anon ansuerde,  
 And seide unto him in this wise:  
 ' Mi liege lord, for mi servise,  
 Which trewe hath stonden evere yit,  
 Thou hast me with prisone aquit; 2630  
 Bot for al that I schal noght glose  
 Of trouthe als fer as I suppose;  
 And as touchende of this bataille,  
 Thou schalt noght of the sothe faile.  
 For if it like thee to hiere,  
 As I am tauht in that matiere,  
 Thou miht it understonde sone;  
 Bot what is afterward to done  
 Advise thee, for this I sih.  
 I was tofor the throne on hih, 2640  
 Wher al the world me thoghte stod,  
 And there I herde and understod  
 The vois of god with wordes cliere  
 Axende, and seide in this manere:  
 "In what thing mai I best beguile  
 The king Achab?" And for a while  
 Upon this point thei spieken faste.  
 Tho seide a spirit ate laste,  
 "I undertake this emprise."  
 And god him axeth in what wise. 2650  
 "I schal," quod he, "deceive and lye  
 With flaterende prophecie  
 In suche mouthes as he lieveth."  
 And he which alle thing achieveth  
 Bad him go forth and don riht so. P. iii. 175  
 And over this I sih also  
 The noble peple of Irahel  
 Dispers as Schep upon an hell,

2622 his] þe H<sub>1</sub>, S... Δ 2633 this] þi S... Δ 2637 miht  
 (might) JC, B mihte A, S, F 2641 S has lost two leaves (ll. 2641-  
 3004) 2657 Irahel (Israel) J, FK rest Israel

[AHAB AND MICAIAH.]

Withoute a kepere unarraied :  
 And as thei wente aboute astraied, 2660  
 I herde a vois unto hem sein,  
 "Goth hom into your hous ayein,  
 Til I for you have betre ordeigned."'  
 Quod Sedechie, 'Thou hast feigned  
 This tale in angringe of the king.'  
 And in a wraththe upon this thing  
 He smot Michee upon the cheke ;  
 The king him hath rebuked eke,  
 And every man upon him cride :  
 Thus was he schent on every side, 2670  
 Ayein and into prison lad,  
 For so the king himselve bad.  
 The trouthe myhte noght ben herd ;  
 Bot afterward as it hath ferd,  
 The dede proveth his entente :  
 Achab to the bataille wente,  
 Wher Benedab for al his Scheld  
 Him slouh, so that upon the feld  
 His poeple goth aboute astray.  
 Bot god, which alle thinges may, 2680  
 So doth that thei no meschief have ;  
 Here king was ded and thei ben save,  
 And hom ayein in goddes pes  
 Thei wente, and al was founde les  
 That Sedechie hath seid tofore. P. lii. 176  
 So sit it wel a king therfore  
 To loven hem that trouthe mene ;  
 For ate laste it wol be sene (2700\*)  
 That flaterie is nothing worth.  
 Bot nou to mi matiere forth, 2690  
 As forto speken overmore  
 After the Philosophres lore,  
 The thridde point of Policie  
 I thenke forto specifie.

[THE THIRD POINT OF  
POLICY. JUSTICE.]

ix. *Propter transgressos leges statuuntur in orbe,  
 Ut viuant iusti Regis honore viri.*

2689 flatering AdBT    2691 euermore JM, B    forthermore W

*Lex sine iusticia populum sub principis umbra  
Deuiat, ut rectum nemo videbit iter.*

[JUSTICE.]

What is a lond wher men ben none?  
What ben the men whiche are al one  
Withoute a kinges governance?  
What is a king in his ligance,  
Wher that ther is no lawe in londe?  
What is to take lawe on honde,  
Bot if the jugges weren trewe?  
These olde worldes with the newe  
Who that wol take in evidence,  
Ther mai he se the experience,  
What thing it is to kepe lawe,  
Thurgh which the wronges ben withdrawe  
And rihtwysnesse stant commended,  
Wherof the regnes ben amended.  
For wher the lawe mai comune  
The lordes forth with the commune,  
Ech hath his propre duete;  
And ek the kinges realte  
Of bothe his worschipe underfongeth,  
To his astat as it belongeth,  
Which of his hihe worthinesse  
Hath to governe rihtwysnesse,  
As he which schal the lawe guide.  
And natheles upon som side  
His pouer stant above the lawe,  
To yive bothe and to withdrawe  
The forfet of a mannes lif;  
But thinges whiche are excessif  
Ayein the lawe, he schal noght do  
For love ne for hate also.

The myhtes of a king ben grete,  
Bot yit a worthi king schal lete  
Of wrong to don, al that he myhte;  
For he which schal the poeple ryhte,  
It sit wel to his regalie  
That he himself ferst justefie

Hic tractat de ter-  
cia Principum regi-  
minis Policia, que Ius-  
ticia nominata est,  
cuius condicio legibus  
incorrupta unicuique  
quod suum est equo  
pondere distribuit.

1700

1710

P. iii. 177

1720

1730

Imperatoriam ma-  
iestatem non solum  
armis, set etiam legi-  
bus oportet esse ar-  
matam.

2698 margin regiminis] Regis AM, BT, FW legis H<sub>1</sub> . . B<sub>2</sub> siue  
regis Δ (Lat. om J, Ad, K) 2710 lorde AH<sub>1</sub> lordep M



[JUSTICE.]

Towardes god in his degre :  
 For his estat is elles fre  
 Toward alle othre in his persone,  
 Save only to the god al one,  
 Which wol himself a king chastise,  
 Wher that non other mai suffise.  
 So were it good to taken hiede  
 That ferst a king his oghne dede  
 Between the vertu and the vice  
 Redresce, and thanne of his justice 2740  
 So sette in evene the balance P. iii. 178  
 Towardes othre in governance,  
 That to the povere and to the riche  
 Hise lawes myhten stonde liche,  
 He schal excepte no persone.  
 Bot for he mai noght al him one  
 In sondri places do justice,  
 He schal of his real office  
 With wys consideracion  
 Ordeigne his deputation 2750  
 Of suche jugges as ben lerned,  
 So that his poeple be governed  
 Be hem that trewe ben and wise.  
 For if the lawe of covoitise  
 Be set upon a jugges hond,  
 Wo is the poeple of thilke lond,  
 For wrong mai noght himselven hyde :  
 Bot elles on that other side,  
 If lawe stonde with the riht,  
 The poeple is glad and stant upriht. 2760  
 Wher as the lawe is resonable,  
 The comun poeple stant menable,  
 And if the lawe torne amis,  
 The poeple also mistorned is.  
 And in ensample of this matiere  
 Of Maximin a man mai hier,  
 Of Rome which was Emperour,

[JUSTICE OF MAXIMIN]

Nota hic de iusticia  
 Maximini Imperatoris,

2747 do] to AM 2750 disputacioun AM... B<sub>1</sub> 2762 menable  
 AXG, FW mouuable (moueable &c.) H<sub>1</sub>E, AdBT, K menable (?)  
 JMRCLB<sub>2</sub>, Δ

That whanne he made a governour  
 Be weie of substitution  
 Of Province or of region,  
 He wolde ferst enquire his name,  
 And let it openly proclame  
 What man he were, or evel or good.  
 And upon that his name stod  
 Enclin to vertu or to vice,  
 So wolde he sette him in office,  
 Or elles putte him al aweie.  
 Thus hield the lawe his rihte weie,  
 Which fond no let of covoitise:  
 The world stod than upon the wise,  
 As be ensample thou myht rede;  
 And hold it in thi mynde, I rede.

In a Cronique I finde thus,  
 Hou that Gayus Fabricius,  
 Which whilom was Consul of Rome,  
 Be whom the lawes yede and come,  
 Whan the Sampnites to him broghte  
 A somme of gold, and him besoghte  
 To don hem favour in the lawe,  
 Toward the gold he gan him drawe,  
 Wherof in alle mennes lok  
 A part up in his hond he tok,  
 Which to his mouth in alle haste  
 He putte, it forto smelle and taste,  
 And to his yhe and to his Ere,  
 Bot he ne fond no confort there:  
 And thanne he gan it to despise,  
 And tolde unto hem in this wise:  
 'I not what is with gold to thryve,  
 Whan non of all my wittes fyve  
 Fynt savour ne delit therinne.  
 So is it bot a nyce Sinne  
 Of gold to ben to covoitous;  
 Bot he is riche and glorious,

[JUSTICE OF MAXIMIN]

qui cum aliquis provincie custodem sibi substituere volebat, primo de sui nominis fama proclamatione facta ipsius conditionem diligencius investigatebat.

2770

P. iii. 179

2780

[GAIUS FABRICIUS.]

Hic ponit exemplum de iudiciis incorruptis Et narrat qualiter (1800\*) Gayus Fabricius nuper Rome Consul aurum a Samnitibus sibi oblatum renuit, dicens quod nobilius est aurum possidentes domino subiugare, quam ex auri cupiditate domini libertatem amittere.

2790

2800

P. lii. 180

2775 Enclind (Enclined) H1 . . . B3, W  
 AN . . . B3 2794 putte AC, B put F

2792 in to his

[GAIUS FABRICIUS.]

Which hath in his subjeccion  
 Tho men whiche in possession  
 Ben riche of gold, and be this skile;  
 For he mai aldai whan he wile,  
 Or be hem lieve or be hem lothe,  
 Justice don upon hem bothe.' 2810

Lo, thus he seide, and with that word  
 He threw tofore hem on the bord  
 The gold out of his hond anon,  
 And seide hem that he wolde non:  
 So that he kepte his liberte  
 To do justice and equite,  
 Withoute lucre of such richesse.

Ther be nou fewe of suche, I gesse;  
 For it was thilke times used,  
 That every jugge was refused 2820  
 Which was noght frend to comun riht;  
 Bot thei that wolden stonde upriht  
 For trouthe only to do justice  
 Preferred were in thilke office  
 To deme and jugge commun lawe:  
 Which nou, men sein, is al withdrawe.  
 To sette a lawe and kepe it noght  
 Ther is no comun profit soght;  
 Bot above alle natheles  
 The lawe, which is mad for pes, 2830  
 Is good to kepe for the beste, P. iii. 181  
 For that set alle men in reste.

[THE EMPEROR  
CONRAD.]

Hic narrat de iusticia nuper Conradi Imperatoris, cuius tempore alicuius reuerencia persone, aliquaseu precum interuencione quacunque vel auri redempcione, legum Statuta commutari seu redimi nullatenus potuerunt.

The rihtful Emperour Conrade  
 To kepe pes such lawe made,  
 That non withinne the cite  
 In destorbance of unite  
 Dorste ones moeven a matiere.  
 For in his time, as thou myht hiere,  
 What point that was for lawe set  
 It scholde for no gold be let, 2840  
 To what persone that it were.

2806 whiche AJ, B which C, F 2814 non] anon MCB<sub>1</sub> (p. m.)  
 gon E 2840 good AdBT

And this broghte in the comun fere,  
Why every man the lawe dradde,  
For ther was non which favour hadde.

/ So as these olde bokes sein,  
I finde write hou a Romein,  
Which Consul was of the Pretoire,  
Whos name was Carmidotoire,  
He sette a lawe for the pes,  
That non, bot he be wepneles,  
Schal come into the conseil hous,  
And elles as malicious  
He schal ben of the lawe ded.  
To that statut and to that red  
Acorden alle it schal be so,  
For certein cause which was tho:  
Nou lest what fell therafter sone.  
This Consul hadde forto done,  
And was into the felde ride;  
And thei him hadden longe abide,  
That lordes of the conseil were,  
And for him sende, and he cam there  
With swerd begert, and hath foryete,  
Til he was in the conseil sete.  
Was non of hem that made speche,  
Til he himself it wolde seche,  
And fond out the defalte himselve;  
And thanne he seide unto the tuelve,  
Whiche of the Senat weren wise,  
'I have deserved the juise,  
In haste that it were do.'  
And thei him seiden alle no;  
For wel thei wiste it was no vice,  
Whan he ne thoghte no malice,  
Bot onliche of a litel slouthe:  
And thus thei leften as for routhe

[THE CONSUL CAR-  
MIDOTIRUS.]

Nota exemplum de  
constancia iudicis; ubi  
narrat de Carmidotiro  
Rome nuper Consule,  
qui cum sui statuti le-  
gem nescius offendis-  
set, Romanique super  
hoc penam sibi remit-  
tere voluissent, ipse  
propria manu, ubi nul-  
lus alius in ipsum vin-  
dex fuit, sui criminis  
vindictam executus  
est.

2860  
P. iii. 182

2870

2850 f. That every man be wepneles  
That come in to &c. H1 . . . B2

2857 [est] heer (here) AM . . . B2 2858 Thus AM 2863  
gerd (I gerde &c) AM . . . B2

To do justice upon his gilt,  
 For that he scholde noght be spilt.  
 And whanne he sih the maner hou  
 Thei wolde him save, he made avou 2880  
 With manfull herte, and thus he seide,  
 That Rome scholde nevere abreide  
 His heires, whan he were of dawē,  
 That here Ancestre brak the lawe.  
 Forthi, er that thei weren war,  
 Forth with the same swerd he bar  
 The statut of his lawe he kepte,  
 So that al Rome his deth bewepete. (2900\*)

[EXAMPLE OF CAM-  
 BYSES.]

Nota quod falsi iudices mortis pena puniendi sunt. Narrat enim qualiter Cambyses Rex Persarum quendam iudicem corruptum execrari vitium fecit, eiusque pelle cathedram iudicalem operiri constituit, ita quod filius suus super patris pellem postea pro tribunali cessorus iudicii equitatem evidencius memoraretur.

In other place also I rede,  
 Wher that a jugge his oghne dede 2890  
 Ne wol noght venge of lawe broke, P. iii. 183  
 The king it bath himselven wroke.  
 The grete king which Cambises  
 Was hote, a jugge laweles  
 He fond, and into remembrance  
 He dede upon him such vengeance,  
 Out of his skyn he was beflain  
 Al quyk, and in that wise slain,  
 So that his skyn was schape al meete,  
 And nayled on the same seete 2900  
 Wher that his Sone scholde sitte.  
 Advise him, if he wolde flitte  
 The lawe for the covertise,  
 Ther sih he redi his juisse.

Thus in defalte of other jugge  
 The king mot otherwhile jugge,  
 To holden up the rihte lawe.  
 And sorto speke of tholde dawē,  
 To take ensample of that was tho,  
 I finde a tale write also, 2910  
 Hou that a worthi prince is holde  
 The lawes of his lond to holde,  
 Ferst for the hihe goddes sake,  
 And ek for that him is betake

The poeple forto guide and lede,  
Which is the charge of his kinghede.

In a Cronique I rede thus  
Of the rihtful Ligurgius,  
Which of Athenis Prince was,  
Hou he the lawe in every cas,  
Wherof he scholde his poeple reule, P. iii. 184  
Hath set upon so good a reule,  
In al this world that cite non  
Of lawe was so wel begon  
Forth with the trouthe of governance.  
Ther was among hem no distance,  
Bot every man hath his encress;  
Ther was withoute werre pes,  
Withoute envie love stod;  
Richesse upon the comun good  
And noght upon the singuler  
Ordeigned was, and the pouer  
Of hem that weren in astat  
Was sauf: wherof upon debat  
Ther stod nothing, so that in reste  
Mihte every man his herte reste.

And whan this noble rihtful king  
Sih hou it ferde of al this thing,  
Wherof the poeple stod in ese,  
He, which for evere wolde plese  
The hihe god, whos thonk he soghte,  
A wonder thing thanne him bethoghte,  
And schop if that it myhte be,  
Hou that his lawe in the cite  
Mihte afterward for evere laste.  
And therupon his wit he caste  
What thing him were best to feigne,  
That he his pourpos myhte atteigne.

A Parlement and thus he sette,  
His wisdom wher that he besette  
In audience of grete and smale,

[LYCURGUS AND HIS  
LAWS.]

Hic ponit exemplum  
de Principibus illis,  
qui non solum legem  
statuentes illam con-  
servant, set vt com-  
mune bonum adauge-  
ant, propriam faculta-  
tem dimittunt. Et  
narrat quod, cum Li-  
gurgius Athenarum  
princeps subditos suos  
in omni prosperitat,  
habundancia divites et  
vnanimes congruis  
legibus stare fecisset,  
volens ad vtilitatem  
rei publice leges illas  
firmius observari, per-  
egre proficisci se fin-  
xit; set prius iuramen-  
tum solempne a legis  
suis sub hac forma ex-  
egit, quod ipsi vsque in  
reditum suum leges  
suas nullatenus in-  
fringerent: quibus iu-  
ratis peregrinationem  
suam in exilium abs-  
que reditu pro per-  
petuo delegavit.

2940

2950

P. iii. 185

2920 margin qui om. BT  
2938 margin delegatur BT

2926 margin subditos suos om A . . . Bs  
2951 and om. A (p. m.)

[LYCURGUS AND HIS  
LAWS.]

And in this wise he tolde his tale :  
 ' God wot, and so ye witen alle,  
 Hierafterward hou so it falle,  
 Yit into now my will hath be  
 To do justice and equite  
 In forthringe of comun profit ;  
 Such hath ben evere my delit.  
 Bot of o thing I am beknowe,  
 The which mi will is that ye knowe : 2960  
 The lawe which I tok on honde,  
 Was altogedre of goddes sonde  
 And nothing of myn oghne wit ;  
 So mot it nede endure yit,  
 And schal do lengere, if ye wile.  
 For I wol telle you the skile ;  
 The god Mercurius and no man  
 He hath me tawht al that I can  
 Of suche lawes as I made,  
 Wherof that ye ben alle glade ; 2970  
 It was the god and nothing I,  
 Which dede al this, and nou forthi  
 He hath comanded of his grace  
 That I schal come into a place  
 Which is forein out in an yle,  
 Wher I mot tarie for a while,  
 With him to speke, as he hath bede.  
 For as he seith, in thilke stede  
 He schal me suche thinges telle,  
 That evere, whyl the world schal duelle, 2980  
 Athenis schal the betre fare. P. iii. 186  
 Bot ferst, er that I thider fare,  
 For that I wolde that mi lawe  
 Amonges you ne be withdrawe  
 Ther whyles that I schal ben oute,  
 Forthi to setten out of doute  
 Bothe you and me, this wol I preie,  
 That ye me wolde assure and seie (3000\*)  
 With such an oth as I wol take,

2967 no man JC, B ñoman A, F 2977 as] and AdBT  
 2989 3e wol AdBT I wold Δ

That ech of you schal undertake  
 Mi lawes forto kepe and holde.  
 Thei seiden alle that thei wolde,  
 And therupon thei swore here oth,  
 That fro the time that he goth,  
 Til he to hem be come ayein,  
 Thei scholde hise lawes wel and plein  
 In every point kepe and fulfille.

2990 [LYCURGUS AND HIS  
 LAWS.]

Thus hath Ligurgius his wille,  
 And tok his leve and forth he wente.  
 Bot lest nou wel to what entente 3000  
 Of rihtwisnesse he dede so:  
 For after that he was ago,  
 He schop him nevere to be founde;  
 So that Athenis, which was bounde,  
 Nevere after scholde be releessed,  
 Ne thilke goode lawe cessed,  
 Which was for comun profit set.  
 And in this wise he hath it knet;  
 He, which the comun profit soghte,  
 The king, his oghne astat ne roghte; 3010  
 To do profit to the comune, P. iii, 187  
 He tok of exil the fortune,  
 And lefte of Prince thilke office  
 Only for love and for justice,  
 Thurgh which he thoghte, if that he myhte,  
 For evere after his deth to rihte  
 The cite which was him betake.  
 Wherof men oghte ensample take  
 The goode lawes to avance  
 With hem which under governance 3020  
 The lawes have forto kepe;  
 For who that wolde take kepe  
 Of hem that ferst the lawes founde,  
 Als fer as lasteth eny bounde  
 Of lond, here names yit ben knowe:  
 And if it like thee to knowe

2993 swore Ht . . . B<sub>1</sub>, Ad, WK 3000 lest] heer (here,  
 AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> 3003 schop (schoop) AJC, B schope F 3005  
 S 12511125 3020 which AC, S, F whiche B



[THE FIRST LAW-  
GIVERS.]

Hic ad eorum lau-  
dem, qui iusticie causa  
leges primo statu-  
erunt, aliquorum nomi-  
na specialius com-  
memorat.

Some of here names hou thei stonde,  
Nou herkne and thou schalt understonde.

Of every bienfet the merite  
The god himself it wol aquite; 3030

And ek fulofte it falleth so,  
The world it wole aquite also,  
Bot that mai noght ben evene liche :

'The god he yifth the heveneriche,  
'The world yifth only bot a name,  
Which stant upon the goode fame  
Of hem that don the goode dede.

And in this wise double mede  
Resceiven ther that don wel here  
Wherof if that thee list to hie 3040

After the fame as it is blowe, P. iii. 188

Ther myht thou wel the sothe knowe,  
Hou thilke honeste besinesse

Of hem that ferst for rihtwisnesse

Among the men the lawes made,

Mai nevere upon this erthe fade.

For evere, whil ther is a tunge,

Here name schal be rad and sunge

And holde in the Cronique write; 3050

So that the men it scholden wite,

To speke good, as thei wel oghten,

Of hem that ferst the lawes soghten

In forthringe of the worldes pes.

Unto thebreus was Moises

The ferste, and to thegipcians

Mercurius, and to Troiens

Ferst was Neuna Pompilius,

To Athenes Ligurgius

Yaf ferst the lawe, and to Gregois

Foroneus hath thilke vois, 3060

And Romulus to the Romeins.

For suche men that ben vileins

The lawe in such a wise ordeigneth,

That what man to the lawe pleigneth,

3040 to om. A . . . CBz  
JC, SB suche A, F

3060 hadde AdBT

3063 such

[KINGS MUST KEEP  
THE LAWS.]

Be so the jugge stonde upriht,  
He schal be served of his riht.  
And so ferforth it is befallē  
That lawe is come among ous alle :

God heve it mote wel ben holde,  
As every king therto is holde ;  
For thing which is of kinges set,  
With kinges oghte it noght be let.  
What king of lawe takth no kepe,  
Be lawe he mai no regne kepe  
Do lawe away, what is a king ?

3070

P. iii. 189

Wher is the riht of eny thing,  
If that ther be no lawe in londe ?  
This oghte a king wel understonde,  
As he which is to lawe swore,  
That if the lawe be forbore

3080

Withouten execucioun,  
It makth a lond torne up so doun,  
Which is unto the king a sclandre.

Forthi unto king Alisandre  
The wise Philosophre bad,  
That he himselve ferst be lad  
Of lawe, and forth thanne overal

(3100\*)

So do justice in general,  
That al the wyde lond aboute  
The justice of his lawe doute,  
And thanne schal he stonde in reste.

3090

For therto lawe is on the beste  
Above alle other erthly thing,  
To make a liege drede his king.  
Bot hou a king schal gete him love  
Toward the hihe god above,  
And ek among the men in erthe,  
This nexte point, which is the ferthe

Of Aristotles lore, it techeth :

Wherof who that the Scole secheth,

3100

What Policie that it is

P. iii. 190

The bok reherceth after this,

3086 he lad AM, Δ he bad B<sub>1</sub>3088 To do H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>

[THE FOURTH POINT  
OF POLICY. PITY.]

Hic tractat de quarta Principum regiminis Policia, que Pietas dicta est; per quam Principes erga populum misericordes effectum misericordiam altissimi graciosius consequuntur.

x. *Nil rationis habens ubi velle tyrannica regna  
Stringit, amor populi transiet exul ibi.  
Set Pietas, regnum que conseruabit in euum,  
Non tantum populo, set placet illa deo.*

It nedeth noght that I delate  
The pris which preised is algate,  
And hath ben evere and evere schal,  
Wherof to speke in special,  
It is the vertu of Pite,  
Thurgh which the hihe mageste  
Was stered, whan his Sone alyhte,  
And in pite the world to rihte  
Tok of the Maide fleissch and blod.  
Pite was cause of thilke good,  
Wherof that we ben alle save:  
Wel oghte a man Pite to have  
And the vertu to sette in pris,  
Whan he himself which is al wys  
Hath schewed why it schal be preised.  
Pite may noght be conterpeised  
Of tirannie with no peis;  
For Pite makth a king courteis  
Bothe in his word and in his dede.

3110

3120

Nota.

It sit wel every liege drede  
His king and to his heste obeie,  
And riht so be the same weie  
It sit a king to be pitous  
Toward his poeple and gracious  
Upon the reule of governance,  
So that he worche no vengeance,  
Which mai be cleped crualte.  
Justice which doth equite  
Is dredfull, for he noman spareth;  
Bot in the lond wher Pite fareth  
The king mai nevere faile of love,  
For Pite thurgh the grace above,  
So as the Philosophre affermeth,

P. iii. 191

3130

*Latin Verses* x. 2 vbi H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>

3110 margin graciosius H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, W 3122 margin Nota F  
om. AC, B 3135 Philosophre] holy book BTA

His regne in good astat confermeth.\*

Thus seide whilom Constantin :  
'What Emperour that is enclin

[PITY]

Constantinus Imperator ait: 'Vere se dominum esse com-

\*Thapostle James in this wise  
Seith, what man scholde do juise,  
And hath not pite forth with al,  
The doom of him which demeth al  
He may himself fulsore drede,  
That him schal lakke upon the nede  
To fynde pite, whan he wolde :  
For who that pite wol biholde,—  
It is a poynt of Cristes lore.  
And for to loken overmore,  
It is bihovely, as we fynde,  
To resoun and to lawe of kynde.

3150\*

Cassodre in his apprise telleth,  
'The regne is sauf, wher pite duelleth.'

3160\*

Cassodorus. Vbi regnat pietas, consolidatur regnum.

And Tullius his tale avoweth,  
And seith, 'What king to pite boweth  
And with pite stant overcome,  
He hath that schield of grace nome,  
Which to the kinges yifh victoire.' P. lii. 192

Tullius. Qui pietate vincitur scutum victorie merito gestabit.

Of Alisandre in his histoire  
I rede how he a worthi knight  
Of sodein wraththe and nought of right  
Forjugged hath, and he appeleth.  
And with that word the king quereleth,  
And seith, 'Non is above me.'  
'That wot I wel my lord,' quoth he ;  
'Fro thy lordschipe appele I nought,  
But fro thy wraththe in al my thought  
To thy pitee stant myn appeel.  
The king, which understod him wel,  
Of pure pite yaf him grace.  
And eek I rede in other place,  
Thus seide whilom etc. (as 3137 ff.)

3170\*

Valerius narrat quod cum rex Alexander in ira sua quandam militem morti condemnasset, et ille appellavit, dixit rex, 'In terra nullus maior me est: ad quem ergo appellas?' Respondit miles, 'Non a maiestate tua, sed a sententia ire tue tantum ad pietatem tuam appello.' Et sic rex pietate motus ipsum in misericordiam benignissime suscepit.

3180\*

3137-3162 Placed after 3360\* in SA

3149\*-3180\* Only in BTA (Ad defective). Text follows B  
scholde] pat scholde T 3163\* his tale T

3150\*

[PITY.]

probat, qui seruum  
pietatis se facit.<sup>2</sup>

Troianus ait, quod  
ipse subditos suos so-  
lite pietatis fauore ma-  
gis quam austeritatis  
rigore regere, eorum-  
que beneuolenciam  
pocius quam timorem  
penes se attractare  
proponebat.

To Pite forto be servant,  
Of al the worldes remenant  
He is worthi to ben a lord.<sup>3140</sup>

In olde bokes of record  
This finde I write of essamplaire:  
Troian the worthi debonaire,  
Be whom that Rome stod governed,  
Upon a time as he was lerned (3190\*)  
Of that he was to familier,  
He seide unto that conseillear,  
That forto ben an Emperour  
His will was noght for vein honour, 3150  
Ne yit for reddour of justice;  
Bot if he myhte in his office  
Hise lordes and his poeple plese, P. iii. 193  
Him thoghte it were a grettere ese  
With love here hertes to him drawe,  
Than with the drede of eny lawe. (3200\*)  
For whan a thing is do for doute,  
Fulofte it comth the worse aboute;  
Bot wher a king is Pietous,  
He is the more gracious, 3160  
That mochel thrift him schal betyde,  
Which elles scholde torne aside.\*

[TALE OF CODRUS.]

Of Pite forto speke plein, P. iii. 198, l. 17  
Which is with mercy wel besein,

[TALE OF THE JEW  
AND THE PAGAN.]

Hic in pietatis ex-  
emplum prout Aris-  
totiles Regi Alexan-  
dro nuper rettulit, de-  
clarans scribit qualiter  
Iudeus pedestes cum  
quodam pagano asi-  
num equitante per de-

\*To do pite support and grace,  
The Philosophre upon a place  
In his writinge of daies olde  
A tale of gret essample tolde 3210\*  
Unto the king of Macedoine:  
How betwen Kaire and Babeloine,  
Whan comen is the somer heete,  
It hapneth tuo men forto meete,

3142 ff. *margin* Troianus—proponerebat om. BT 3143 This A, F  
Thus B 3148 conseillear F 3159 pitous (petous) JH1LBs, Δ, W  
piteous R piteuous X

3207\* 3360\* Only in SAdBTAA (Ad defective to l. 3269\*). Text  
follows S 3212\* betwene S

Fulofte he wole himselve peine  
 To kepe an other fro the peine  
 For Charite the moder is  
 Of Pite, which nothing amis  
 Can soffre, if he it mai amende.

As thei scholde entren in a pas,  
 Wher that the wyldernesse was.  
 And as they wenten forth spekende  
 Under the large wodes ende,  
 That o man axeth of that other:  
 'What man art thou, mi lieve brother?  
 Which is thi creance and thi feith?'

'I am paien,' that other seith,  
 'And be the lawe which I use  
 I schal noght in mi feith refuse  
 To loven alle men aliche,  
 The povere bothe and ek the riche:  
 Whan thei ben glade I schal be glad,  
 And sori whan thei ben bestad;  
 So schal I live in unite  
 With every man in his degre.  
 For riht as to miself I wolde,  
 Riht so toward alle othre I scholde  
 Be gracious and debonaire.  
 Thus have I told thee softe and faire  
 Mi feith, mi lawe, and mi creance;  
 And if thee list for aqueintance,  
 Now tell what maner man thou art.'  
 And he ansuerde upon his part:

'I am a Jew, and be mi lawe  
 I schal to noman be felawe  
 To kepe him trowthe in word ne dede,  
 Bot if he be withoute drede  
 A verrai Jew riht as am I:  
 For elles I mai trewely

[TALE OF CODRUS.]

Nota hic de Principis pietate erga populum, ubi narrat quod, cum Codrus Rex Athenarum contra Dorences bellum gerere de-

[TALE OF THE JEW AND THE PAGAN.]

sertum itinerando ipsum de secta et fide sua strictius interrogavit. Qui respondens ait: 'Paganus sum et fides mea hec est, ut omnes vno animo diligam et penes unumquemque tempore necessitatis pietatem pro posse meo excerceam.' Cui Iudeus: 'Permitte me ergo, qui lassatus itinere deficio, aliquantulum equitare, et tu respectu pietatis ob meam recreationem pedibus pro tempore incedas.' Et ita factum est, unde postea paganus infra breve lassatus asino suo restitui a Iudeo postulavit. At ille ait: 'Nequaquam; quia fides mea est, ut illi qui sectam meam non credit, nocumentum absque pietate prouocare debeo.' Et his dictis asellum veloci passu coegit, et paganus a dorso illum reliquit. Quod videns paganus in terram dolens corruit, extensisque in celum manibus summam iusticiam inuocabat. Postque a terra exurgens, cum paulisper deambulasset, respexit in quamdam vallem Iu-

P. iii. 194

3230\*

3240\*

3220\* art] ar] S 3222\* marg. pietatem om. B 3223\* marg.  
 excerciam S 3228\* marg. pro tempore om. BT 3231\* marg.  
 asinum sibi restitui BTA 3232\* I om. BT 3234\* marg. nocumen-  
 tum S nocumenta B 3242\* And T 3244\* marg. quadam valle BT

\* \*

Y

## [TALE OF CODRUS.]

beret, consulto prius  
Appolline responsum  
accepit, quod vnum de  
duobus, videlicet aut  
seipsum in prelio in-  
terfici et populum su-  
um saluari, aut popu-  
lum interfici et se  
saluum fieri, eligere

[TALE OF THE JEW  
AND THE PAGAN.]

deum a leone in mor-  
tis articulo prostratum;  
et sic asinum suum  
cum gaudio resumens,  
pietatem magis quam  
austeritatem laudabi-  
lem decreuit.

It sit to every man livende 3170  
To be Pitous, bot non so wel  
As to a king, which on the whiel (3370\*)  
Fortune hath set aboven alle:  
For in a king, if so befall  
That his Pite be ferme and stable,  
To al the lond it is vailable

Bereve him bothe hf and good.  
The paien herde and understod,  
And thoghte it was a wonder lawe.  
And thus upon here sondri sawe  
Talkende bothe forth thei wente.  
The dai was hoot, the sonne brente, 3150\*  
The paien rod upon an asse,  
And of his catell more and lasse  
With him a riche trusse he ladde.  
The Jew, which al untrowthe hadde,  
And wente upon his feet beside, P. iii. 195  
Bethoghte him how he mihte ride:  
And with his wordes slihe and wise  
Unto the paien in this wise  
He seide: 'O, now it schal be seene  
What thing it is thou woldest meene: 3160\*  
For if thi lawe be certein  
As thou hast told, I dar wel sein,  
Thou wolt beholde mi destresse,  
Which am so full of werinesse,  
That I ne mai unethe go,  
And let me ride a Myle or tuo,  
So that I mai mi bodi ese.'  
The paien wolde him noght desplese  
Of that he spak, bot in pite  
It list him forto knowe and se 3170\*  
The pleignte which that other made;  
And for he wolde his herte glade,  
He lihte and made him nothing strange.

3174 if it so AM 3176 margin se] seipsum BT, Ha eligere om. B F  
3251\* margin after decreuit B adds et cum omni sui cordis intimo  
deo gratias egit 3256\* Bopoghte S 3265\* vnnepes T



Only thurgh grace of his persone ; P. iii. 199 [TALE OF CODRUS.]  
 For the Pite of him al one oporteret. Super quo  
 Mai al the large realme save. Rex pietate motus  
 So sit it wel a king to have 3180 plebisque sue magis  
 Pite ; for this Valeire tolde, quam proprii corporis  
 And seide hou that be daies olde (3380\*) salutem affectans, mor-  
 Codrus, which was in his degre tem sibi preelegit ; et  
 sic bellum aggrediens  
 pro vita multorum so-  
 lus interit.

Thus was ther made a newe change,  
 The paien goth, the Jew alofte  
 Was sett upon his asse softe :  
 So gon thei forth carpende faste  
 Of this and that, til ate laste  
 The paien mihte go nomore,  
 And preide unto the Jew therfore 3280\*  
 To suffre him ride a litel while.  
 The Jew, which thoghte him to beguile,  
 Anon rod forth the grete pas,  
 And to the paien in this cas  
 He seide, 'Thou hast do thi riht, P. iii. 196  
 Of that thou haddest me behiht  
 To do socour upon mi nede ;  
 And that acordeth to the dede,  
 As thou art to the lawe holde.  
 And in such wise as I thee tolde, 3290\*  
 I thenke also for mi partie  
 Upon the lawe of Juerie  
 To worche and do mi duete.  
 Thin asse schal go forth with me  
 With al thi good, which I have sesed,  
 And that I wot thou art desesed,  
 I am riht glad and noght mispaid.'  
 And whanne he hath these wordes said,  
 In alle haste he rod awcie.  
 This paien wot non other weic, 3300\*  
 Bot on the ground he kneleth evene,  
 His handes up unto the hevene,  
 And seide, 'O hihe sothfastnesse,

[TALE OF THE JEW  
 AND THE PAGAN.]

3278\* On his on þat AdBTA 3283\* rod] goþ T 3292\* Iuerie  
 AdT Iewerie B Iurie S



TALK OF CODRUS]

King of Athenis the cite,  
 A werre he hadde ayein Dorrence :  
 And forto take his evidence  
 What schal befall of the bataille,  
 He thoghte he wolde him first consaille  
 With Appollo, in whom he triste ;  
 Thurgh whos ansuere this he wiste, 3190

[ TALE OF THE JEW  
AND THE PAGAN. ]

That lovest alle rihtwisnesse,  
 Unto thi dom, lord, I appele ;  
 Behold and deme mi querele,  
 With humble herte I thee beseche ;  
 The mercy bothe and ek the wreche  
 I sette al in thi juggement.  
 And thus upon his marrement 3310\*  
 This paien bath made his preiere :  
 And than he ros with drery chiere,  
 And goth him forth, and in his gate  
 He caste his yhe aboute algate,  
 The Jew if that he mihte se. P. lii. 197  
 Bot for a time it mai noght be ;  
 Til ate laste ayein the nyht,  
 So as god wolde, he wente ariht,  
 As he which hield the hihe weie,  
 And thanne he sih in a valleie 3320\*  
 Wher that the Jew liggende was,  
 Al blodi ded upon the gras,  
 Which strangled was of a leoun.  
 And as he lokede up and down,  
 He fond his asse faste by  
 Forth with his harneis redely  
 Al hol and sound, as he it lefte,  
 Whan that the Jew it him berefte :  
 Wherof he thonketh god knelende.  
 Lo, thus a man mai knowe at ende, 3330\*  
 How the pitous pite deserveth.  
 For what man that to pite serveth,

3186 his om. AM an W

3305\* dom (doom) AdBT dome S 3311\* made SAdBA

mad T 3312\* whan B 3327\* hol BT hole SAd

Of tuo pointz that he myhte chese,  
 Or that he wolde his body lese  
 And in bataille himselve deie,  
 Or elles the seconde weie,  
 To sen his poeple desconfit.  
 Bot he, which Pite hath parfit  
 Upon the point of his believe,

[Tale of Codrus.]  
 (3390\*)

As Aristotle it berth witnessse,  
 God schal hise foomen so repressse,  
 That thei schul ay stonde under foote  
 Pite, men sein, is thilke roote  
 Wherof the vertus springen alle:

[Tale of the Jew  
 and the Pagan.]

What infortune that befall  
 In eny lond, lacke of pite  
 Is cause of thilke adversite;  
 And that aldai mai schewe at yhe,  
 Who that the world discretly syhe.  
 Good is that every man therfore  
 Take hiede of that is seid tofore;  
 For of this tale and othre ynowbe  
 These noble princes whilom drowhe  
 Here evidence and here aprise,

3340\*

P. lii. 198

As men mai finde in many a wise,  
 Who that these olde bokes rede:  
 And thogh thei ben in erthe dede,  
 Here goode name may noght deie  
 For Pite, which thei wolde obeie,  
 To do the dedes of mercy,  
 And who this tale redly  
 Remembre, as Aristotle it tolde,  
 He mai the will of god beholde  
 Upon the point as it was ended,  
 Wherof that pite stod commended,  
 Which is to charite felawe,  
 As thei that kepen bothe o lawe.

3350\*

3360\*

3339\* lond AdBT    londe S    3342\* discretely S    3348\*  
 many wise AdB    After 3360\* ms. 3137-3162 SA    rest procced  
 with 3163 ff.

[TALE OF CODRUS.]

The poeple thoghte to relieve,  
 And ches himselve to be ded.  
 Wher is nou such an other hed, 3200  
 Which wolde for the lemes dye?  
 And natheles in som partie (3400\*)  
 It oghte a kinges herte stere,  
 That he hise liege men forbere.  
 And ek toward hise enemis  
 Fulofte he may deserve pris,  
 To take of Pite remembrance, P. iii. 200  
 Wher that he myhte do vengeance:  
 For whanne a king hath the victoire,  
 And thanne he drawe into memoire 3210  
 To do Pite in stede of wreche,  
 He mai noght faile of thilke speche  
 Wherof arist the worldes fame,  
 To give a Prince a worthi name.

POMPEIUS AND THE  
KING OF ARMENIA.]

Hic ponit exemplum de victorioso Principis pietate erga aduersarios suos. Et narrat quod, cum Pompeius Romanorum Imperator Regem Armenie aduersarium suum in bello victum cepisset, captumque vinculis alligatum Rome tenuisset, tyrannidis iracundie stimulos postponens, pietatis mansuetudinem operatus est. Dixit enim quod nobilius est Regem facere quam depouere super quo dictum Regem absque ulla redemptione non solum a vinculis absoluit, sed ad sui regni culmen gratuita voluntate coronatum restituit.

I rede hou whilom that Pompeie,  
 To whom that Rome moste obeie,  
 A werre hadde in jeupartie  
 Ayein the king of Ermenie,  
 Which of long time him hadde grieved.  
 Bot ate laste it was achieved 3220  
 That he this king desconfit hadde,  
 And forth with him to Rome ladde  
 As Prisoner, wher many a day  
 In sori plit and povere he lay,  
 The corone of his heved deposed,  
 Withinne walles faste enclosed;  
 And with ful gret humilite  
 He soffreth his aduersite.  
 Pompeie sih his pacience  
 And tok pite with conscience, 3230  
 So that upon his hihe deis  
 Tofore al Rome in his Pales,  
 As he that wolde upon him rewe,  
 Let yive him his corone newe

3198 thoghte to relieve] of his byleeue AM 3218 in Ermonie AM  
 3225 on his heed B 3233 margin restituit F

And his astat al full and plein  
 Restoreth of his regne ayein,  
 And seide it was more goodly thing P. iii. 201  
 To make than undon a king,  
 To him which pouer hadde of bothe.  
 Thus thei, that weren longe wrothe, 3240  
 Acorden hem to final pes;  
 And yit justice natheles  
 Was kept and in nothing offended;  
 Wherof Pompeie was comended.  
 Ther mai no king himself excuse,  
 Bot if justice he kepe and use,  
 Which for teschuie crualte  
 He mot attempte with Pite.

[POMPEIUS AND THE  
KING OF ARMENIA.]

Of crualte the felonie [CRUELTY.]  
 Engendred is of tirannie, 3250  
 Ayein the whos condicion  
 God is himself the champion, (3450\*)  
 Whos strengthe mai noman withstonde.  
 For evere yit it hath so stonde,  
 That god a tirant overladde;  
 Bot wher Pite the regne ladde,  
 Ther mihte no fortune laste  
 Which was grevous, bot ate laste  
 The god himself it hath redresced.  
 Pite is thilke vertu blessed 3260  
 Which nevere let his Maister falle;  
 Bot crualte, thogh it so falle  
 That it mai regne for a throwe,  
 God wole it schal ben overthrowe:  
 Wherof ensamples ben ynowhe  
 Of hem that thilke merel drowhe.

Of crualte I rede thus: P. iii. 202  
 Whan the tirant Leoncius  
 Was to thempire of Rome arrived,  
 Fro which he hath with strengthe prived 3270  
 The piteous Justinian,

[CRUELTY OF  
LEONTIUS.]

Hic loquitur contra  
 illos, qui tyrannica  
 potestate principatum  
 obtinentes in iniquita-

3235 and ful AM. . . B<sub>1</sub> 3244 was] is 314 S. . . Δ 3270  
 with] pe XGERL by H<sub>1</sub> no B<sub>2</sub> 3271 pitous [petows] MH. XLB<sub>1</sub>,  
 Δ WH: piteuous AdT margin in om. H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BTA

[CRUELTY OF  
LEONTIUS.]

tia sue malicia gloriantur. Et narrat exemplum, qualiter Leontius tyrannus pium Iustinianum non solum a solo imperatore maiestatis fraudulenter expulit, set ut ipse inhabilis ad regnum in aspectu plebis efficeretur, naso et labris absceis, ipsum tyrannice mutulauit. Deus tamen, qui super omnia pius est, Tiberio superueniente una cum adiutorio Terbelli Bulgari Regis, Iustinianum interfecto Leontio ad imperium restitui misericorditer procurauit.

[CRUELTY OF  
SICULUS.]

Hic loquitur vltimus de crudelitate Siculi tyranni, necnon et de Berillo eiusdem Consiliario, qui ad tormentum populi quendam taurum eneum tyrannica coniectura fabricari constituit; in quo tamen ipse prior, proprio crimine illud exigente, usque ad sui interitus expirationem iudicialiter torquebatur.

As he which was a cruel man,  
His nase of and his lippes bothe  
He kutte, for he wolde him lothe  
Unto the poeple and make unable.  
Bot he which is al merciabile,  
The hihe god, ordeigneth so,  
That he withinne a time also,  
Whan he was strengest in his ire,  
Was schoven out of his empire.  
Tiberius the pouer hadde,  
And Rome after his will he ladde,  
And for Leonce in such a wise  
Ordeigneth, that he tok iuise  
Of nase and lippes bothe tuo,  
For that he dede an other so,  
Which more worthi was than he.

3280

Lo, which a fall bath cruale,  
And Pite was set up ayein:  
For after that the bokes sein,  
Therbellis king of Bulgarie  
With helpe of his chivalerie  
Justinian bath unprisoned  
And to thempire ayein coroned.

3290

In a Cronique I finde also  
Of Siculus, which was ek so  
A cruel king lich the tempeste,  
The whom no Pite myhte areste,—  
He was the ferste, as bokes seie,  
Upon the See which fond Galeie  
And let hem make for the werre,  
As he which al was out of herre  
Fro Pite and misericorde;  
For therto couthe he noght acorde,  
Bot whom he myhte slen, he slouh,  
And therof was he glad ynouh.

P. lii. 203

3300

(3500<sup>n</sup>)

3274 *margin* in exemplum S . . . Δ 3276 al is SAdBT is Δ  
3279 of his ire Δ in his A in hic M *margin* in om. BT  
3298 To whom AM . . . B, Ad Inne whom W hom Δ  
*margin* tyranni om A . . . B

[CRUELTY OF  
SICULUS.]

He hadde of conseil manyon,  
 Among the whiche ther was on,  
 Be name which Berillus hihte;  
 And he bethoghte him hou he myhte 3310  
 Unto the tirant do likinge,  
 And of his oghne ymaginyng  
 Let forge and make a Bole of bras,  
 And on the side cast ther was  
 A Dore, wher a man mai inne,  
 Whan he his peine schal beginne  
 Thurgh fyr, which that men putten under.  
 And al this dede he for a wonder,  
 That whanne a man for peine cride,  
 The Bole of bras, which gapeth wyde, 3320  
 It scholde seme as thogh it were  
 A belwinge in a mannes Ere,  
 And nought the criinge of a man.  
 Bot he which alle sleihtes can,  
 The devel, that lith in helle fast,  
 Him that this caste hath overcast,  
 That for a trespas which he dede P. iii. 204  
 He was putt in the same stede,  
 And was himself the ferste of alle  
 Which was into that peine falle 3330  
 That he for othre men ordeigneth;  
 Ther was noman which him compleigneth.

Of tirannie and crualte

Be this ensample a king mai se,  
 Himself and ek his conseil bothe,  
 Hou thei ben to mankinde lothe  
 And to the god abhominable.  
 Ensamples that ben concordable  
 I finde of othre Princes mo,  
 As thou schalt hiere, of time go. 3340

The grete tirant Dionys,  
 Which mannes lif sette of no pris,

3326 this caste] it cast B is cast Ad, H<sub>2</sub> þis made A . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 3330 vnto AdBT to Δ 3332 which] þat AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> 3338  
 couenable AM . . . R couenable L couable B<sub>2</sub> (C defect.) 3340 ago  
 as go' H<sub>1</sub>E, B<sub>2</sub>, WH<sub>2</sub> 3342 of] at A . . . B<sub>2</sub> om. W

DIONYSIUS AND HIS  
HORSES.]

Nota hic de Dionysio tyranno, qui mire crudelitatis seueritate etiam hospites suos ad deuorandum equis suis tribuit: cui Hercules tandem superueniens victum impium in impietate sua pari morte concludit.

## LICHAON.]

Nota hic de consili mli Lichaontis tyrannia, qui carnes hominum hominibus in suo hospicio ad vescendum dedit: cuius formam condicioni similem Iupiter coequans ipsum in lupum transformauit.

Unto his hors fulofte he yaf  
The men in stede of corn and chaf,  
So that the hors of thilke stod  
Devoureden the mennes blod;  
Til fortune ate laste cam,  
That Hercules him overcam,  
And he riht in the same wise  
Of this tirant tok the juisse:  
As he til othre men hath do,  
The same deth he deide also,  
That no Pite him hath socoured,  
Til he was of hise hors devoured.

3350

(3350\*)

Of Lichaon also I finde  
Hou he ayein the lawe of kinde  
Hise hostes slouh, and into mete  
He made her bodies to ben ete  
With othre men withinne his hous.  
Bot Jupiter the glorious,  
Which was commoeved of this thing,  
Vengance upon this cruel king  
So tok, that he fro mannes forme  
Into a wolf him let transforme:  
And thus the cruelte was kidd,  
Which of long time he hadde hidd;  
A wolf he was thanne openly,  
The whos nature prively  
He hadde in his condicion.

P. iii. 205

3360

And unto this conclusioun,  
That tirannie is to despise,  
I finde ensample in sondri wise,  
And nameliche of hem fulofte,  
The whom fortune hath set alofte  
Upon the werres forto winne.  
Bot hou so that the wrong beginne  
Of tirannie, it mai nocht laste,  
Bot such as thei don ate laste  
To othre men, such on hem falleth;  
For ayein suche Pite calleth

3370

3380



Vengance to the god above.  
 For who that hath no tender love  
 In savinge of a mannes lif,  
 He schal be founde so gultif,  
 That whanne he wolde mercy crave  
 In time of nede, he schal non have.

[NOBLENESSE OF THE  
 LION.]

Of the natures this I finde,  
 The fierce Leon in his kinde,  
 Which goth rampende after his preie,  
 If he a man finde in his weie,  
 He wole him slen, if he withstonde.  
 Bot if the man coude understonde  
 To falle anon before his face  
 In signe of mercy and of grace,  
 The Leon schal of his nature  
 Restreigne his ire in such mesure,  
 As thogh it were a beste tamed,  
 And torne away halfvinge aschamed,  
 That he the man schal nothing grieve.

P. lii. 206

Nota qualiter Leo  
 hominibus stratis par-  
 cit

3390

Hou scholde than a Prince achieve  
 The worldes grace, if that he wolde  
 Destruie a man whanne he is yolde  
 And stant upon his mercy al?

3400

(3600\*)

Bot forto speke in special,  
 Ther have be suche and yit ther be  
 Tirantz, whos hertes no pite  
 Mai to no point of mercy plie,  
 That thei upon her tirannie  
 Ne gladen hem the men to sle;  
 And as the rages of the See  
 Ben unpitous in the tempeste,  
 Riht so mai no Pite areste  
 Of crualte the gret outrage,  
 Which the tirant in his corage  
 Engendred bath: wherof I finde  
 A tale, which comth nou to mynde.

3410

I rede in olde bokes thus:

P. ili. 207

3387 nature þis AdBT natures þus AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>  
 AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> 3412 areste] haue reste AM

3397 i tamed



[SPERTACHUS AND  
THAMARIS.]

Hic loquitur precipue contra tyrannos illos qui, cum in bello vincere possunt, humani sanguinis effusiones saturari nequiunt. Et narrat in exemplum de quodam Persarum Rege, cuius nomen Spertachus erat, qui pre ceteris tunc in Oriente bellicosus et victoriosus, quoscunque gladio vincere poterat, absque pietate interfici constituit. Set tandem sub manu Thamaris Marsegetarum Regine in bello captus quod a dñi quesivit, seueritatem pro seueritate finaliter inuenit. Nam et ipsa quoddam vas de sanguine Persarum plenum ante se afferri decreuit, in quo caput tyranni vsque ad mortem mergens dixit: 'O tyrannorum crudelissime, semper eauriens sanguinem sitisti: ecce iam ad saturitatem sanguinem bibe'

Ther was a Duk, which Spertachus  
Men clepe, and was a werreieur,  
A cruel man, a conquerour 3420  
With strong pouer the which he ladde.  
For this condicion he hadde,  
That where him hapneth the victoire,  
His lust and al his moste gloire  
Was forto sle and noght to save:  
Of rancoun wolde he no good have  
For savinge of a mannes lif,  
Bot al goth to the swerd and knyf,  
So lief him was the mannes blod.  
And natheles yit thus it stod, 3430  
So as fortune aboute wente,  
He fell riht heir as be descende  
To Perse, and was coroned king.  
And whan the worschipe of this thing  
Was falle, and he was king of Perse,  
If that thei weren ferst diverse,  
The tirannies whiche he wroghte,  
A thousandfold welmore he soghte  
Thanne afterward to do malice.  
The god vengeance ayein the vice 3440  
Hath schape: for upon a tyde,  
Whan he was heihest in his Pride,  
In his rancour and in his hete  
Ayein the queene of Marsagete,  
Which Thameris that time hihte,  
He made werre al that he myhte:  
And sche, which wolde hir lond defende, P. iii. 208  
Hir oghne Sone ayein him sende,  
Which the defence hath undertake.  
Bot he desconfit was and take; 3450  
And whan this king him hadde in honde,  
He wol no mercy understonde, (3650\*)  
Bot dede him slen in his presence

3420 *margin* precipue om. A . . . B<sub>1</sub> 3423 hapned X<sup>1</sup>RCB:  
papned L 3429 to mannes b. AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> 3432 as he by sente A  
as by sente M alle by dissent W 3436 *margin* offerre A . . . B<sub>1</sub>  
, offerri G, W) 3440 Til god S . . . A 3448 His AM

[SPERTACHUS AND  
THAMARIS.]

The tidinge of this violence  
 Whan it cam to the moder Ere,  
 Sche sende anon ay wydewhere  
 To suche frendes as sche hadde,  
 A gret pouer til that sche ladde.  
 In sondri wise and tho sche caste  
 Hou sche this king mai overcaste ; 3460  
 And ate laste acorded was,  
 That in the danger of a pass,  
 Thurgh which this tirant scholde passe,  
 Sche schop his pouer to compasse  
 With strengthe of men be such a weie  
 That he schal noght eschape aweie.  
 And whan sche hadde thus ordeigned,  
 Sche hath hir oghne bodi feigned,  
 For feere as thogh sche wolde flee  
 Out of hir lond : and whan that he 3470  
 Hath herd hou that this ladi fledde,  
 So faste after the chace he spedde,  
 That he was founde out of array.  
 For it betidde upon a day,  
 Into the pas whanne he was falle,  
 Thembuisschementz tobrieken alle  
 And him bechpte on every side, P. lii. 209  
 That fle ne myhte he noght aside :  
 So that ther weren dede and take  
 Tuo hundred thousand for his sake, 3480  
 That weren with him of his host.  
 And thus was leid the grete host  
 Of him and of his tirannie :  
 It halp no mercy forto crie  
 To him which whilom dede non ;  
 For he unto the queene anon  
 Was broght, and whan that sche him sih,  
 This word sche spak and seide on hih :  
 ' O man, which out of mannes kinde

3454 dydinge AM 3464 hir(e) power H<sub>1</sub>, BTΔ, W ouerpasse  
 AM 3465 With} By AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> 3476 tobrieken S, I  
 tobreken (to breken) AJC, B 3483 of om. AM 3484 no] not  
 ,noght) AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> (except E)

[SPERTACHUS AND  
THANARIS.]

Reson of man hast left behinde 3490  
 And lived worse than a beste,  
 Whom Pite myhte noght areste,  
 The mannes blod to schede and spille  
 Thou haddest nevere yit thi fille.  
 Bot nou the laste time is come,  
 That thi malice is overcome :  
 As thou til othre men hast do,  
 Nou schal be do to thee riht so.  
 Tho bad this ladi that men scholde  
 A vessel bringe, in which sche wolde 3500  
 Se the vengeance of his juisse,  
 Which sche began anon devise ; (3700\*)  
 And tok the Princes whiche he ladde,  
 Be whom his chief conseil he hadde,  
 And whil hem lasteth eny breth,  
 Sche made hem blede to the deth  
 Into the vessel wher it stod : P. iii. 210  
 And whan it was fulfild of blod,  
 Sche caste this tirant therinne,  
 And seide him, 'Lo, thus myht thou wynne 3510  
 The lustes of thin appetit.  
 In blod was whilom thi delit,  
 Nou schalt thou drinken al thi fille.'  
 And thus onliche of goddes wille,  
 He which that wolde himselve strange  
 To Pite, fond mercy so strange,  
 That he withoute grace is lore.  
 So may it schewe wel therfore  
 That cruelte hath no good ende ;  
 Bot Pite, hou so that it wende, 3520  
 Makth that the god is merciable,  
 If ther be cause resonable  
 Why that a king schal be pitous.  
 Bot elles, if he be doubtful  
 To slen in cause of rihtwisesse,  
 It mai be said no Pitousnesse,  
 Bot it is Pusillamite,

3505 f. him . . . him AdBT, W      3510 him om. AM . . . Bz, A  
 3523 Why] Wip AdBT

Which every Prince scholde flee.  
 For if Pite mesure excede,  
 Kinghode may noght wel procede  
 To do justice upon the riht :  
 For it belongeth to a knyht  
 Als gladly forto fhte as reste,  
 To sette his liege poeple in reste,  
 Whan that the werre upon hem falleth ;  
 For thanne he mote, as it befalleth,  
 Of his knythode as a Leon P. lii. 211  
 Be to the poeple a champioun  
 Withouten eny Pite feigned.  
 For if manhode be restreigned, 3540  
 Or be it pes or be it werre,  
 Justice goth al out of herre,  
 So that knythode is set behinde.  
 Of Aristotles lore I finde,  
 A king schal make good visage,  
 That noman knowe of his corage  
 Bot al honour and worthinesse :  
 For if a king schal upon gesse  
 Withoute verrai cause drede,  
 He mai be lich to that I rede ; 3550  
 And thogh that it be lich a fable,  
 Thensample is good and resonable. (3750\*)

[ MERCY MUST BE  
 WITHOUT WEAKNESS.

As it be olde daies fell,  
 I rede whilom that an hell  
 Up in the londes of Archade  
 A wonder dredful noise made ;  
 For so it fell that ilke day,  
 This hell on his childinge lay,  
 And whan the throwes on him come,  
 His noise lich the day of dome  
 Was ferfull in a mannes thoght  
 Of thing which that thei sihe noght,  
 Bot wel thei herden al aboute  
 The noise, of which thei were in doute,

[ THE MOUNTAIN AND  
 THE MOUSE ]

Hic loquitur secundum Philosophum, dicens quod sicut non decet Principes tyrannica impetuositate esse crudeles, ita nec decet timorosa pusillanimitate esse vecordes.

3530 Knythode R, B, W 3551 þogh it be lich to a fable A  
 þoght it be lich a fable M 3556 And wonder dredful noise it made  
 AdBT

[THE MOUNTAIN AND  
THE MOUSE.]

As thei that wenden to be lore  
Of thing which thanne was unbore.  
The nerr this hell was upon chance P. iii. 212  
To taken his deliverance,  
The more unbuxomliche he cride;  
And every man was fledd aside, 3570  
For drede and leste his oghne hous:  
And ate laste it was a Mous,  
The which was bore and to norrice  
Betake; and tho thei hield hem nyce,  
For thei withoute cause dradde.

Thus if a king his herte ladde  
With every thing that he schal hiere,  
Fuloste he scholde change his'chiere  
And upon fantasie drede,  
Whan that ther is no cause of drede. 3580

Orace to his Prince tolde,  
That him were levere that he wolde  
Upon knighthode Achillem suie  
In time of werre, thanne eschue,  
So as Tersites dede at Troie.  
Achilles al his hole joie  
Sette upon Armes forto fihte;  
Tersites soghte al that he myhte  
Unarmed forto stonde in reste:  
Bot of the tuo it was the beste 3590  
That Achilles upon the nede  
Hath do, wherof his knyhtlihiende  
Is yit comended overal.

King Salomon in special  
Seith, as ther is a time of pes,  
So is a time natheles  
Of werre, in which a Prince algate P. iii. 213  
Schal for the comun riht debate  
And for his oghne worschipe eke.  
Bot it behoveth noght to seke 3600

Nola hic secundum  
Oracium de magnanimo  
Yacide et pusillanimo  
Tersite.

Salomon. Tempus  
belii, tempus pacis

3574 hield (heeld) A, S, F beelde (helde) C, B hielden J  
3575 causa F 3589 and reste AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> 3592 wher of þat  
his knyhtbode H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub> wher of his knyhtbode AM, AdΔ, H<sub>1</sub>  
(knythlihiende F)

## LIBER SEPTIMUS

337

Only the werre for worschipe,  
 Bot to the riht of his lordschipe,  
 Which he is holde to defende,  
 Mote every worthi Prince entende.  
 Between the simplesce of Pite  
 And the folhaste of crualte,  
 Wher stant the verray hardiesce,  
 Ther mote a king his herte adreesce,  
 Whanne it is time to forsake,  
 And whan time is also to take  
 The dedly werres upon honde,  
 That he schal for no drede wonde,  
 If rihtwysnesse be withal.  
 For god is myhty overal  
 To forthren every mannes trowthe,  
 Bot it be thurgh his oghne slowthe;  
 And namely the kinges nede  
 It mai noght faile forto spede,  
 For he stant one for hem alle;  
 So mote it wel the betre falle  
 And wel the more god favoureth,  
 Whan he the comun riht socoureth.  
 And forto se the sothe in dede,  
 Behold the bible and thou myht rede  
 Of grete ensamples manyon,  
 Wherof that I wol tellen on.

(3800\*)

[THERE IS A TIME  
FOR WAR.]Nota qualiter inter  
duo extrema consistit  
virtus.

3610

3620

Upon a time as it befell,  
 Ayein Judee and Irahel  
 Whan sondri kinges come were  
 In pourpos to destruie there  
 The poeple which god kepte tho,—  
 And stod in thilke daies so,  
 That Gedeon, which scholde lede  
 The goddes folk, tok him to rede,  
 And sende in al the lond aboute,  
 Til he assembled hath a route  
 With thritti thousand of defence,

P. iii. 214 [STORY OF GIDEON.]

3630 Hædicit quod Prin-  
 cepts iusticie causa  
 bellum nullo modo  
 timere debet. Et  
 narrat qualiter dux  
 Gedeon cum solis  
 tricenis viris quin-  
 que Reges, scilicet  
 Madianitarum, Ama-  
 lechitarum, Amonita-  
 rum, Amoreorum et

3607 hardinesse R, AdBTA, W 3615 forþere (forþre, forþer)  
 AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> (forþe X) 3628 Irahel (Israel) J, S, F rest Israel

\* \*

Z

## [STORY OF GIDEON.]

Iebuscorum, cum eorum exercitu, qui ad lxxxix<sup>th</sup> Milia numeratus est, gracia cooperante diuina, victorioso in fugam conuertit

To fihthe and make resistance  
 Ayein the whiche hem wolde assaille:  
 And natheles that o bataille 3640  
 Of thre that weren enemys  
 Was double mor than was al his;  
 Wherof that Gedeon him dradde,  
 That he so litel poeple hadde.  
 Bot he which alle thing mai helpe,  
 Wher that ther lacketh mannes helpe,  
 To Gedeon his Angel sente,  
 And bad, er that he forther wente,  
 Al openly that he do crie  
 That every man in his partie 3650  
 Which wolde after his oghne wille  
 In his delice abide stille (3850\*)  
 At hom in eny maner wise,  
 For purchas or for covoitise,  
 For lust of love or lacke of herte,  
 He scholde noght aboute sterte,  
 Bot holde him stille at hom in pes: P iii. 215  
 Wherof upon the morwe he les  
 Wel twenty thousand men and mo,  
 The whiche after the cri ben go. 3660  
 Thus was with him bot only left  
 The thridde part, and yit god eft  
 His Angel sende and seide this  
 To Gedeon: 'If it so is  
 That I thin help schal undertake,  
 Thou schalt yit lasse poeple take,  
 Be whom mi will is that thou spede.  
 Forthi tomorwe tak good hiede,  
 Unto the flod whan ye be come,  
 What man that hath the water nome 3670  
 Up in his hond and lapeth so,  
 To thi part ches out alle tho;  
 And him which wery is to swinke,  
 Upon his wombe and lith to drinke,

3639 hem L, S . . . Δ he A . . . CBa, A, FWKMagd  
 3641 thre] these W 3652 delit(e) Hl . . . Ba, W 3672  
 out om. AdBT



Forsak and put hem alle aweie.  
 For I am myhti alle weie,  
 Wher as me list myn help to schewe  
 In goode men, thogh thei ben fewe.'

This Gedeon awaiteth wel,  
 Upon the morwe and everydel, 3680  
 As god him bad, riht so he dede.  
 And thus ther leften in that stede  
 With him thre hundred and nomo,  
 The remenant was al ago:

Wherof that Gedeon merveileth,  
 And therupon with god conseileth,  
 Pleignende as ferforth as he dar. P. iii. 216

And god, which wolde he were war  
 That he schal spede upon his riht,  
 Hath bede him go the same nyht 3690

And take a man with him, to hiere  
 What schal be spoke in his matere  
 Among the hethen enemis;  
 So mai he be the more wys,  
 What afterward him schal befall.

This Gedeon amanges alle  
 Phara, to whom he triste most,  
 Be nyhte tok toward thilke host,  
 Which logged was in a valleie,  
 To hiere what thei wolden seie: 3700  
 Upon his fot and as he ferde,  
 Tuo Sarazins spekende he herde. (3900\*)  
 Quod on, 'Ared mi swevene ariht,  
 Which I mette in mi slep to nyht.

Me thoghte I sih a barli cake,  
 Which fro the Hull his weie hath take,  
 And cam rollende doun at ones;  
 And as it were for the nones,  
 Forth in his cours so as it ran,  
 The kinges tente of Madian, 3710

3677 my lust AM 3683 nomo JC, S, F no mo(o) A, B  
 3688 which] pat AM . . . B; 3689 scholde AdBT 3692 his]  
 þis AM . . . B; AdBTΔ, Magd 3701 he ferde] aferde AM  
 3704 slep] sweuen(e) AM . . . L (slep G)



[STORY OF GIDEON.]

Of Amalech, of Amoreie,  
 Of Amon and of Jebuseie,  
 And many an other tente mo  
 With gret noise, as me thoghte tho,  
 It threw to grounde and overcaste,  
 And al this host so sore agaste  
 That I awok for pure drede.'

P. iii. 217

'This swevene can I wel arede,'  
 Quod thother Sarazin anon:  
 'The barli cake is Gedeon,  
 Which fro the hell doun sodeinly  
 Schal come and sette such ascry  
 Upon the kinges and ous bothe,  
 That it schal to ous alle lothe:  
 For in such drede he schal ous bringe,  
 That if we hadden flyht of wynges,  
 The weie on fote in desespeir  
 We scholden leve and fien in their,  
 For ther schal nothing him withstonde.'

3720

Whan Gedeon hath understonde

3730

This tale, he thonketh god of al,  
 And priveliche ayein he stal,  
 So that no lif him hath perceived.  
 And thanne he hath fulli conceived  
 That he schal spede; and therupon  
 The nyht suiende he schop to gon  
 This multitude to assaile.  
 Nou schalt thou hiere a gret mervaille,  
 With what voisdie that he wroghte.  
 The litel poeple which he broghte,  
 Was non of hem that he ne hath  
 A pot of erthe, in which he tath  
 A lyht brennende in a kressette,  
 And ech of hem ek a trompette  
 Bar in his other hond beside;  
 And thus upon the nyhtes tyde  
 Duk Gedeon, whan it was derk,  
 Ordeineth him unto his werk,

3740

P. iii. 218

3716 his host E, B, Magd  
 AdBTA, W 3728 schullen B

3727 despeir AJMH<sub>1</sub>RLB<sub>2</sub>,  
 3748 his] þis H<sub>1</sub>G, BΔ

And parteth thanne his folk in thre,  
 And chargeth hem that thei ne fle, 3750  
 And tawhte hem hou they scholde ascrie  
 Alle in o vois per compaignie, (3950\*)  
 And what word ek thei scholden speke,  
 And hou thei scholde here pottes breke  
 Echon with other, whan thei herde  
 That he himselve ferst so ferde;  
 For whan thei come into the stede,  
 He bad hem do riht as he dede.

And thus stalkende forth a pas  
 This noble Duk, whan time was, 3760  
 His pot tobrak and loude ascride,  
 And tho thei breke on every side.  
 The trompe was noght forto seke;  
 He blew, and so thei blewen eke  
 With such a noise among hem alle,  
 As thogh the hevene scholde falle.  
 The hull unto here vois ansuerde,  
 This host in the valleie it herde,  
 And sih hou that the hell alyhte;  
 So what of hieringe and of sihte, 3770  
 Thei cawhten such a sodein feere,  
 That non of hem beleste there:  
 The tentes hole thei forsoke,  
 That thei non other good ne toke,  
 Bot only with here bodi bare  
 Thei fledde, as doth the wylde Hare.  
 And evere upon the hull thei blewe, P. iii 219  
 Til that thei sihe time, and knewe  
 That thei be fled upon the rage;  
 And whan thei wiste here advantage, 3780  
 Thei felle anon unto the chace.

Thus myht thou sen hou goddes grace  
 Unto the goode men availeth;  
 But elles ofte time it failleth  
 To suche as be noght wel disposed.  
 This tale nedeth noght be glosed,

3752 per] þe AdBT þair L 3763 forto] þo to AM B:  
 10 W 3773 hole J, S, F holly AC, B

[STORY OF GIDEON.]

For it is openliche schewed  
 That god to hem that ben wel thewed  
 Hath yove and granted the victoire :  
 So that thensample of this histoire 3790  
 Is good for every king to holde ;  
 Ferst in himself that he beholde  
 If he be good of his livinge,  
 And that the folk which he schal bringe  
 Be good also, for thanne he may  
 Be glad of many a merie day,  
 In what as evere he hath to done.  
 For he which sit above the Mone  
 And alle thing mai spille and spede,  
 In every cause, in every nede 3800  
 His goode king so wel adresceþ,  
 That alle his fomen he represseth, (4000\*)  
 So that ther mai noman him dere ;  
 And als so wel he can forbere,  
 And soffre a wickid king to falle  
 In hondes of his fomen alle.

SAUL AND AGAG.]

Hic dicit quod ubi  
 et quando causa et  
 tempus requirunt,  
 princeps illos sub po-  
 testate sua, quos iusti-  
 cie adversarios agno-  
 uerit, occidere de iure  
 tenetur. Et narrat  
 in exemplum quali-  
 ter, pro eo quod Saul  
 Regem Agag in bello  
 devictum iuxta Samu-  
 elis consilium occidere  
 noluit, ipse divino  
 iudicio non solum a  
 regno Israel priuatus,  
 set et heredes sui pro  
 perpetuo exheredati  
 sunt.

Nou forthermore if I schal sein P. ili 220  
 Of my matiere, and torne ayein  
 To speke of justice and Pite  
 After the reule of realte, 3810  
 This mai a king wel understonde,  
 Knihthode mot ben take on honde,  
 Whan that it stant upon the nede :  
 He schal no rihtful cause drede,  
 Nomore of werre thanne of pes,  
 If he wol stonde blameles ;  
 For such a cause a king mai have  
 That betre him is to sle than save,  
 Wherof thou myht ensample finde.  
 The hihe makere of mankinde 3820  
 Be Samuel to Saul bad,  
 That he schal nothing ben adrad  
 Ayein king Agag forto fihte ;

3797 what þat AM . . . B<sup>s</sup> 3800 in] and AM . . . RLB.  
 3819 myht might, AC, B myhte (mihte) J, S, F

[SAUL AND AGAG.]

For this the godhede him behihte,  
That Agag schal ben overcome :  
And whan it is so ferforth come,  
That Saul hath him desconfit,  
The god bad make no respit,  
That he ne scholde him slen anon.

Bot Saül let it overgon

3830

And dede noght the goddes heste :  
For Agag made gret beheste  
Of rancoun which he wolde yive,  
King Saül soffreth him to live  
And feigneth pite forth withal.

Bot he which seth and knoweth al,

The hihe god, of that he feigneth P. iii. 221

To Samuel upon him pleigneth,

And sende him word, for that he lefte

Of Agag that he ne berefte

3840

The lif, he schal noght only dye

Himself, bot fro his regalie

He schal be put for everemo,

Noght he, bot ek his heir also,

That it schal nevere come ayein.

Thus myht thou se the sothe plein,

[DAVID AND JOAB.]

That of tomoche and of tolyte

Upon the Princes stant the wyte.

Bot evere it was a kinges riht

To do the dedes of a knyht ;

For in the handes of a king

The deth and lif is al o thing

After the lawes of justice.

To slen it is a dedly vice,

Bot if a man the deth deserve ;

And if a king the lif preserve

Of him which oghte forto dye,

He suieth noght thensamplerie

Which in the bible is evident :

Hou David in his testament,

Whan he no lengere myhte live,

Unto his Sone in charge hath yive

3860

3854 ften (fle) SA

3861 non F

Hic narrat vterius  
super eodem, qualiter  
David in extremis ius-  
ticie causa ut Joab  
occideretur absque vl-  
la remissione filio suo  
Salomoni iniunxit.

3850

(4050\*)

[DAVID AND JOAB]

That he Joab schal slen algate;  
 And whan David was gon his gate,  
 The yonge wise Salomon  
 His fader heste dede anon,  
 And slouh Joab in such a wise, P. iii. 222  
 That thei that herden the juisse  
 Evere after dradden him the more,  
 And god was ek wel paid therfore, 3870  
 That he so wolde his herte plye  
 The lawes forto justefie.  
 And yit he kepte forth withal  
 Pite, so as a Prince schal,  
 That he no tirannie wroghte;  
 He fond the wisdom which he soghte,  
 And was so rihtful natheles,  
 That al his lif he stod in pes,  
 That he no dedly werres hadde,  
 For every man his wisdom dradde. 3880  
 And as he was himselve wys,  
 Riht so the worthi men of pris  
 He hath of his conseil withholde;  
 For that is every Prince holde,  
 To make of suche his retenue  
 Whiche wise ben, and to remue  
 The foles: for ther is nothing  
 Which mai be betre aboute a king,  
 Than conseil, which is the substance  
 Of all a kinges governance. 3890

[SOLOMON'S WISDOM]

Hic dicit quod populum sibi commissum bene regere super omnia Principi laudabilius est. Et narrat in exemplum qualiter, pro eo quod Salomon, ut populum bene regeret, ab altissimo sapientiam specialius postulavit, omnia bona pariter cum illa sibi

In Salomon a man mai see  
 What thing of most necessite  
 Unto a worthi king belongeth.  
 Whan he his kingdom underfongeth,  
 God bad him chese what he wolde,  
 And seide him that he have scholde  
 What he wolde axe, as of o thing. P. iii. 223  
 And he, which was a newe king,  
 Forth therupon his bone preide  
 To god, and in this wise he seide: 3900  
 'O king, be whom that I schal regne,

Yif me wisdom, that I my regne,  
 Forth with thi poeple which I have,  
 To thin honour mai kepe and save.  
 Whan Salomon his bone hath taxed,  
 The god of that which he hath axed  
 Was riht wel paid, and granteth sone  
 Noght al only that he his bone  
 Schal have of that, bot of richesse,  
 Of hele, of pes, of hih noblesse,  
 Forth with wisdom at his axinges,  
 Which stant above alle othre thinges.

Bot what king wole his regne save,  
 Ferst him behoveth forto have  
 After the god and his believe  
 Such conseil which is to believe,  
 Fulfild of trouthe and rihtwisnesse:  
 Bot above alle in his noblesse  
 Between the reddour and pite  
 A king schal do such equite  
 And sette the balance in evene,  
 So that the hihe god in hevene  
 And al the poeple of his nobleie  
 Loange unto his name seie.  
 For most above all erthli good,  
 Wher that a king himself is good  
 It helpeth, for in other weie  
 If so be that a king forsueie,  
 Fulofte er this it hath be sein,  
 The comun poeple is overlein  
 And hath the kinges Senne aboght,  
 Al thogh the poeple agulte noght.  
 Of that the king his god misserveth,  
 The poeple takth that he descerveth  
 Hier in this world, bot elleswhere  
 I not hou it schal stonde there.  
 Forthi good is a king to triste  
 Ferst to himself, as he ne wiste  
 Non other help bot god alone;

(4100\*) [SOLOMON'S WISDOM.]  
 habundancius adueni-  
 runt.

3910

Hic dicit secundum  
 Salomonem, quod re-  
 gie maiestatis imperi-  
 um ante omnia sano  
 consilio dirigendum  
 est.

3920

P. iii. 224

3930 Quicquid delirant  
 reges, plectuntur A-  
 chiui.

3902 I my regne] I may regne C, W I regne AdT in my regne  
 H1E in me regne XRLB, 3903 thi] þe AMC

THE COURTIERES AND  
THE FOOL.]

Hic de Lucio Imperatore exemplum ponit, qualiter Princeps sui nominis famam a secretis consiliariis sapienter inuestigare debet; et si quid in ea sinistrum inuenerit, prouisa discrezione ad dexteram conuertat.

So schal the reule of his persone  
Withinne himself thurgh providence  
Ben of the betre conscience.  
And forto finde ensample of this,  
A tale I rede, and soth it is.

3940

In a Cronique it telleth thus:  
The king of Rome Lucius  
Withinne his chambre upon a nyht  
The Steward of his hous, a knyht,  
Forth with his Chamberlein also,  
To conseil hadde bothe tuo, 3950  
And stoden be the Chiminee  
Togedre spekende alle thre. (4150\*)  
And happeth that the kinges fol  
Sat be the fyr upon a stol,  
As he that with his babil pleide,  
Bot yit he herde al that thei seide,  
And therof token thei non hiede. P. lii. 225  
The king hem axeth what to rede  
Of such matiere as cam to mouthe,  
And thei him tolden as thei couthe. 3960  
Whan al was spoke of that thei mente,  
The king with al his hole entente  
Thanne ate laste hem axeth this,  
What king men tellen that he is:  
Among the folk touchende his name,  
Or be it pris, or be it blame,  
Riht after that thei herden sein,  
He bad hem forto telle it plein,  
That thei no point of soth forbere,  
Be thilke feith that thei him bere. 3970

The Steward ferst upon this thing  
Yaf his ansuere unto the king  
And thoghte glose in this matiere,  
And seide, als fer as he can hiere,  
His name is good and honourable:  
Thus was the Steward favorable,  
That he the trouthe plein ne tolde.  
The king thanne axeth, as he scholde,



The Chamberlein of his avis.

[THE COURTIER AND  
THE FOOL.]

And he, that was soubtil and wys,  
And somdel thoghte upon his feith,  
Him tolde hou al the poeple seith  
That if his conseil were trewe,  
Thei wiste thanne wel and knewe  
That of himself he scholde be  
A worthi king in his degre:

3980

And thus the conseil he accuseth    P. iii. 226  
In partie, and the king excuseth.

The fol, which herde of al the cas

That time, as goddes wille was,  
Sih that thei seiden noght ynowh,  
And hem to skorne bothe lowh,  
And to the king he seide tho:

3990

'Sire king, if that it were so,  
Of wisdom in thin oghne mod  
That thou thiselven were good,  
Thi conseil scholde noght be badde.'

The king therof merueille hadde,

Whan that a fol so wisly spak,  
And of himself fond out the lack

4000

Withinne his oghne conscience:

And thus the foles evidence,    (4100\*)

Which was of goddes grace enspired,  
Makth that good conseil was desired.

He putte away the vicious

And tok to him the vertuous;

The wrongful lawes ben amended,

The londes good is wel despended,

The poeple was nomore oppressed,

And thus stod every thing redressed.    4010

For where a king is propre wys,

And hath suche as himselven is

Of his conseil, it mai noght faile

That every thing ne schal availe:

The vices thanne gon aweie,

And every vertu holt his weie;

3984 wel þanne AMH, AdΔ wel than al W    3989 al of þis BT  
of al þis Ad al this W    3990 What tyme B    4004 that] þe AdBT



[THE COURTIER AND  
THE FOOL.]

[FOLLY OF  
REHOBAM.]

Hic dicit quod Seniores magis experti ad Principis consilium admittendi potius existunt. Et narrat qualiter, pro eo quod Roboas Salomonis filius et heres sentum sermonibus renuncians dicta iuuenum prelegit, de xii. tribubus Israel a domino suo penitus amisit, et sic cum duabus tantummodo illius postea regnavit.

Wherof the hihe god is plesed, P. iii. 227  
And al the londes folk is esed.  
For if the comun poeple crie,  
And thanne a king list noght to plie 4020  
To hieere what the clamour wolde,  
And otherwise thanne he scholde  
Desdeigneth forto don hem grace,  
It hath be sen in many place,  
Ther hath befallle gret contraire;  
And that I finde of ensamplaire.

After the deth of Salomon,  
Whan thilke wise king was gon,  
And Roboas in his persone 4030  
Receive scholde the corone,  
The poeple upon a Parlement  
Avised were of on assent,  
And alle unto the king thei preiden,  
With comun vois and thus thei seiden:  
'Oure liege lord, we thee beseche  
That thou receive oure humble speche  
And grante ous that which reson wile,  
Or of thi grace or of thi skile,  
Thi fader, whil he was alyve  
And myhte bothe grante and pryve, 4040  
Upon the werkes whiche he hadde  
The comun poeple streite ladde:  
Whan he the temple made newe,  
Thing which men nevere afore knewe  
He broghte up thanne of his taillage,  
And al was under the visage  
Of werkes whiche he made tho. P. iii. 228  
Bot nou it is befallle so,  
That al is mad, riht as he seide,  
And he was riche whan he deide; 4050  
So that it is no maner nede,  
If thou therof wolt taken hiede, (4250\*)

4020 thanne] pat A... Bz 4031 þc parlement AM 4037  
which pat H: . . . Bz, BT, W pat Ad 4044 to fore tofore  
AM . . . Bz, W

[FOLLY OF  
REHOBAM.]

To pilen of the poeple more,  
Which long time hath be grieved sore.  
And in this wise as we thee seie,  
With tendre herte we thee preie  
That thou relesse thilke dette,  
Which upon ous thi fader sette.  
And if thee like to don so,  
We ben thi men for everemo,  
To gon and comen at thin heste.'

4060

The king, which herde this requeste,  
Seith that he wole ben avised,  
And hath therof a time assised;  
And in the while as he him thoghte  
Upon this thing, conseil he soghte.  
And ferst the wise knyhtes olde,  
To whom that he his tale tolde,  
Conseilen him in this manere;  
That he with love and with glad chiere  
Foryive and grante al that is axed  
Of that his fader hadde taxed;  
For so he mai his regne achieve  
With thing which schal him litel grieve.

De consilio Senium

4070

The king hem herde and overpasseth,  
And with these othre his wit compasseth,  
That yonge were and nothing wise. P. iii. 229  
And thei these olde men despise,  
And seiden: 'Sire, it schal be schame  
For evere unto thi worthi name,  
If thou ne kepe noght the riht,  
Whil thou art in thi yonge myht,  
Which that thin olde fader gat.  
Bot seie unto the poeple plat,  
That whil thou livest in thi lond,  
The leste finger of thin hond  
It schal be strengere overal  
Than was thi fadres bodi al.  
And this also schal be thi tale,  
If he hem smot with roddes smale,  
With Scorpions thou schalt hem smyte;

De consilio iude  
num.

4080

4090

4081: pi (py) right MHL, BA

409: him AM

[FOLLY OF  
RENOBOAM.]

And wher thi fader tok a lyte,  
Thou thenkst to take mochel more.  
Thus schalt thou make hem drede sore  
The grete herte of thi corage,  
So forto holde hem in servage.

This yonge king him hath conformed  
To don as he was last enformed,  
Which was to him his undoinge ;  
For whan it cam to the spekinge, 4100  
He hath the yonge conseil holde,  
That he the same wordes tolde (4300\*)  
Of al the poeple in audience ;

And whan thei herden the sentence  
Of his malice and the manace,  
Anon tofore his oghne face  
Thei have him outtrelly refused P. iii. 230  
And with ful gret reproef accused.

So thei begunne forto rave,  
That he was fain himself to save ; 4110  
For as the wilde wode rage

Of wyndes makth the See salvage,  
And that was calm bringth into wawe,  
So for defalte of grace and lawe  
This poeple is stered al at ones

And forth thei gon out of hise wones ;  
So that of the lignages tuelve  
Tuo tribes only be hemselfe  
With him abiden and nomo :  
So were thei for everemo 4120

Of no retorn withoute espeir  
Departed fro the rihtfull heir,  
Al Irahel with comun vois  
A king upon here oghne chois  
Among hemself anon thei make,  
And have here yonge lord forsake ;  
A povere knyht Jeroboas  
Thei toke, and lefte Roboas,

4092 a lyte S alyte (alite) AJC, B, F 4093 þenkest take B  
4115 is om. FWK 4123 Al Irahel (Israel) J, S, FK Al Israel  
(Israel &c.) AM... B, W Of Israel G, AdBT

## LIBER SEPTIMUS

351

Which rihtfull heir was be descente.

Lo, thus the yonge cause wente :  
For that the conseil was noght good,  
The regne fro the rihtfull blod  
Evere afterward divided was.

So mai it proven be this cas  
That yong conseil, which is to warm,  
Er men be war doth ofte harm.

Old age for the conseil serveth, P. lli. 231  
And lusti youthe his thonk deserveth  
Upon the travail which he doth ;

And bothe, forto seie a soth, 4130  
Be sondri cause forto have,  
If that he wole his regne save,  
A king behoveth every day.

That on can and that other mai,  
Be so the king hem bothe reule,  
For elles al goth out of reule.

And upon this matiere also

A question betwen the tuo

Thus writen in a bok I fond ;

Wher it be betre for the lond

A king himselfe to be wys,

And so to bere his oghne pris,

And that his consail be noght good,

Or other wise if it so stod,

A king if he be vicious

And his conseil be vertuuous.

It is ansuerd in such a wise,

That betre it is that thei be wise

Be whom that the conseil schal gon,

For thei be manye, and he is on ;

And rathere schal an one man

With fals conseil, for oght he can,

From his wisdom be mad to falle,

Thanne he al one scholde hem alle

Fro vices into vertu change,

For that is wel the more strange.

{FOLLY OF  
REHOBOAM

4130

[WISDOM IN A KING'S  
COUNCIL.]

Nota questionem  
cuiusdam Philosophi,  
4150 utrum regno conueni-  
entius foret principem  
(4350\*) cum malo consilio op-  
tare sapientem, quam  
cum sano consilio ip-  
sum eligere insipien-  
tem.

4160

4160 is on] but oon (on &c.) AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> 4161 oonly (only)  
AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>

[MERCY AND JUSTICE]

Nota adhuc preel  
pue de principis erga  
suos subditos debita  
pietate Legiturenim  
qualiter Authonius a  
Cipione exemplifica-  
tus dixit, quod mallet  
vnum de populo sibi  
commisso virum salua-  
re, quam centum ex  
hostibus ahenigenis  
in bello perdere.

Forthi the lond mai wel be glad, P. ili. 232  
Whos king with good conseil is lad,  
Which set him unto rihtwisnesse,  
So that his hihe worthinesse 4170  
Betwen the reddour and Pite  
Dath mercy forth with equite.  
A king is holden overal  
To Pite, bot in special  
To hem wher he is most beholde;  
Thei scholde his Pite most beholde  
That ben the Lieges of his lond,  
For thei ben evere under his hond  
After the goddes ordinaunce  
To stonde upon his governance. 4180

Of themperour Authonius  
I finde hou that he seide thus,  
That levere him were forto save  
Oon of his lieges than to have  
Of enemis a thousand dede.  
And this he lernede, as I rede,  
Of Cipio, which hadde be  
Consul of Rome. And thus to se  
Diverse ensamples hou thei stonde,  
A king which hath the charge on honde 4190  
The comun poeple to governe,  
If that he wole, he mai wel lerne.  
Is non so good to the plesance  
Of god, as is good governance;  
And every governance is due  
To Pite: thus I mai argue  
That Pite is the foundement P. ili. 233  
Of every kinges regiment,  
If it be medled with justice.  
Thei tuo remuen alle vice, 4200  
And ben of vertu most vailable  
To make a kinges regne stable. (4400\*)

Lo, thus the foure pointz tofore,  
In governance as thei ben bore,

4174 bot] and AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> 4183 How him were leuere AdBT  
4185 an hondred AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> 4186 þus AdBT, W 4194 good] god F

Of trouthe first and of largesse,  
 Of Pite forth with rihtwisnesse,  
 I have hem told; and over this  
 The fift point, so as it is  
 Set of the reule of Policie,  
 Wherof a king schal modifie  
 The fleisschly lustes of nature,  
 Nou thenk I telle of such mesure,  
 That bothe kinde schal be served  
 And ek the lawe of god observed.

4210

- xi. *Corporis et mentis regem decet omnis honestas,  
 Nominis ut famam nulla libido ruat,  
 Omne quod est hominis effeminat illa voluptas,  
 Sit nisi magnanimi cordis, ut obstet ei.*

[THE FIFTH POINT OF  
 POLICY. CHASTITY.]

The Madle is mad for the femele,  
 Bot where as on desireth fele,  
 That nedeth noght be weie of kinde:  
 For whan a man mai redy finde  
 His oghne wif, what scholde he seche  
 In strange places to beseche  
 To borwe an other mannes plough,  
 Whan he hath geere good ynough  
 Affaited at his oghne heste,  
 And is to him wel more honeste  
 Than other thing which is unknowe?  
 Forthi scholde every good man knowe  
 And thenke, hou that in mariage  
 His trouthe plight lith in morgage,  
 Which if he breke, it is falshode,  
 And that descordeth to manhode,  
 And namely toward the grete,  
 Wherof the bokes alle trete;  
 So as the Philosophre techeth  
 To Alisandre, and him betecheth  
 The lore hou that he schal mesure  
 His bodi, so that no mesure  
 Of fleisschly lust he scholde excede.

Hic tractat secundum Aristotelem de quinta principum regimini Policia, que Castitatem concernit, cuius honestas impudencie motus obtemperans tam corporis quam anime mundi etiam specialius prestat.

P. iii. 234

4230

4208 ferste (first &c.) AM . . . B<sub>1</sub> fist Ad 4212 Jenk C, S, F  
 Jenke AJ, B 4222 good] at home S . . . A

••

A 2

[THE FIFTH POINT OF  
POLICY. CHASTITY.]

And thus forth if I schal procede,  
The fifte point, as I seide er,  
Is chastete, which sielde wher 4240  
Comth nou adaies into place;  
And natheles, bot it be grace  
Above alle othre in special,  
Is non that chaste mai ben all.  
Bot yit a kinges hihe astat,  
Which of his ordre as a prelat  
Schal ben enoight and seintefied,  
He mot be more magnefied  
For dignete of his corone,  
Than scholde an other low persone, 4250  
Which is noght of so hih emprise.  
Therefore a Prince him scholde advise, (4450\*)  
Er that he felle in such riote, P. iii. 235  
And namely that he nassote  
To change for the wommanhede  
The worthinesse of his manhede.

Nota de doctrina  
Aristotilis, qualiter  
Princeps, vt animi sui  
iocunditatem prouo-  
cet, mulieres formosas  
crebro aspicere debet.  
Caveat tamen, ne  
mens voluptuosa tor-  
pescens ex carnis fra-  
gilitate in vicium di-  
labatur.

Of Aristotle I have wel rad,  
Hou he to Alisandre bad,  
That forto gladen his corage  
He schal beholde the visage 4260  
Of wommen, whan that thei ben faire.  
Bot yit he set an essamplaire,  
His bodi so to guide and reule,  
That he ne passe noght the reule,  
Wherof that he himself beguile.  
For in the womman is no guile  
Of that a man himself bewhapeth;  
Whan he his oghne wit bejapeth,  
I can the wommen wel excuse:  
Bot what man wole upon hem muse 4270  
After the fool impression  
Of his ymaginacioun,  
Withinne himself the fyr he bloweth,  
Wherof the womman nothing knoweth,

4239 firste (ferst &c.) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, W fist(e) M, Ad 4245 hihe  
(hye) AJC, S, F hih B 4262 set A, S, F sette C, B 4266  
wommen AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, W. 4269, womman J, AdBT, W

[THE FIFTH POINT OF  
POLICY. CHASTITY.]

So mai sche nothing be to wyte.  
 For if a man himself excite  
 To drenche, and wol it noght forbere,  
 The water schal no blame bere.  
 What mai the gold, thogh men coveite?  
 If that a man wol love streite, 4280  
 The womman hath him nothing bounde;  
 If he his oghne herte wounde,  
 Sche mai noght lette the folie; P. iii. 236  
 And thogh so felle of compainie  
 That he myht eny thing pourchace,  
 Yit makth a man the ferste chace,  
 The womman fleth and he poursuieth:  
 So that be weie of skile it suieth,  
 The man is cause, hou so befallē,  
 That he fulofte sithe is falle 4290  
 Wher that he mai noght wel aryse.  
 And natheles ful manye wise  
 Befoled have hemself er this,  
 As nou adaies yit it is  
 Among the men and evere was,  
 The stronge is fieblest in this cas.  
 It sit a man be weie of kinde  
 To love, bot it is noght kinde  
 A man for love his wit to lese:  
 For if the Monthe of Juil schal frese 4300  
 And that Decembre schal ben hot,  
 The yeer mistorneth, wel I wot. (4500\*)  
 To sen a man fro his astat<sup>3</sup>  
 Thurgh his sotie effeminat,  
 And leve that a man schal do,  
 It is as Hose above the Scho,  
 To man which oghte noght ben used.  
 Bot yit the world hath ofte accused  
 Ful grete Princes of this dede,  
 Hou thei for love hemself misledē, 4310  
 Wherof manhode stod behinde,  
 Of olde ensamples as I finde.



[EVIL EXAMPLE OF  
SARDANAPALUS.]

Hic ponit exemplum qualiter, pro eo quod Sardana, Pallus Assiriorum Princeps inuliebrioblectamento effeminatus sue concupiscencie torporem quasi ex consuetudine adhibebat, a Barbaro Rege Medorum super hoc insidiante in sui feruoris maiori voluptate subitis mutacionibus extinctus est.

These olde gestes tellen thus, P. iii. 237  
That whilom Sardana Pallus,  
Which hield al hol in his empire  
The grete kingdom of Assire,  
Was thurgh the slouthe of his corage  
Falle into thilke fyri rage  
Of love, which the men assoteth,  
Wherof himself he so rioteth, 4320  
And wax so ferforth womannyssh,  
That ayein kinde, as if a fissh  
Abide wolde upon the lond,  
In wommen such a lust he fond,  
That he duelte evere in chambre stille,  
And only wroghte after the wille  
Of wommen, so as he was bede,  
That selden whanne in other stede  
If that he wolde wenden oute,  
To sen hou that it stod aboute. 4330  
Bot ther he keste and there he pleide,  
Thei tawhten him a Las to breide,  
And weve a Pours, and to enfile  
A Perle : and fell that ilke while,  
On Barbarus the Prince of Mede  
Sih hou this king in wommanhede  
Was falle fro chivalerie,  
And gat him help and compaignie,  
And wroghte so, that ate laste  
This king out of his regne he caste, 4340  
Which was undon for everemo :  
And yit men speken of him so,  
That it is schame forto hier.

P. iii. 238

[DAVID.]

Nota qualiter David amans mulieres propter hoc probitatem Armorum non minus excercuit.

Forthi to love is in manere.  
King David hadde many a love,  
Bot natheles alwey above  
Knyththode he kepte in such a wise,  
That for no fleisshli covoytise

4314 Sardanapallus E, Δ, W 4316 *marg.* Sardanapallus ER, Δ, W  
4317 *marg.* mulieri A . . . B<sub>2</sub> (*except* E) 4321 waxþ (waxeþ, wexeþ)  
A . . . B<sub>2</sub>, Δ, W 4322 *marg.* voluptati H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> 4331 þer as . . .  
þer as AM 4336 how þat þe king AMLB<sub>2</sub> how þe k. H<sub>1</sub> . . . C

Of lust to ligge in ladi armes  
 He leste noght the lust of armes. 4350  
 For where a Prince hise lustes suieth,  
 That he the werre noght poursuieth, (4350\*)  
 Whan it is time to ben armed,  
 His contre stant fulofte harmed,  
 Whan thenemis ben woxe bolde,  
 That thei defence non beholde,  
 Ful many a lond hath so be lore,  
 As men mai rede of time afore  
 Of hem that so here eses soghten,  
 Which after thei full diere aboghten. 4360

[DAVID.]

To mochel ese is nothing worth,  
 For that set every vice forth  
 And every vertu put abak,  
 Wherof priss torneth into lak,  
 As in Cronique I mai reherse :  
 Which telleth hou the king of Perse,  
 That Cirus hihte, a werre hadde  
 Ayen a poeple which he dradde,  
 Of a contre which Liddos hihte ;  
 Bot yit for oght that he do mihte  
 As in bataille upon the werre,  
 He hadde of hem alwey the werre.  
 And whan he sih and wiste it wel, P. iii. 239  
 That he be strengthe wan no del,  
 Thanne ate laste he caste a wyle  
 This worthi poeple to beguile,  
 And tok with hem a feigned pes,  
 Which scholde lasten endeles,  
 So as he seide in wordes wise,  
 Bot he thoghte al in other wise.  
 For it betidd upon the cas,  
 Whan that this poeple in reste was,  
 Thei token eses manyfold ;  
 And wordes ese, as it is told,

[CYRUS AND THE  
 LYDIANS.]

Hic loquitur quali-  
 ter regnum lasciuie  
 voluptatibus deditum  
 de facili vincitur. Et  
 ponit exemplum de  
 Ciro Rege Persarum,  
 qui cum Liddos mire  
 probitatis strenuissi-  
 mos sibi in bello  
 aduersantes nullo mo-  
 do vincere potuit,  
 cum ipsis tandem pa-  
 cis tractatum dissimi-  
 lans concordiam fina-  
 lem stabiliri finxit. Su-  
 per quo Liddi postea  
 per aliquod tempus  
 armis insoliti sub pa-  
 cis torpore voluptati-  
 bus intendebant: quod  
 Cirus percipiens in  
 eos armatus subito  
 irruit, ipsosque inde-  
 fencibiles vincens sub  
 imperio tributarios  
 subiugauit.

4380

4357 many JC, SB manye A, F 4362 that} it AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 4365 *margin* viuatur AM vincit W 4367 *margin* mirum H . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 4372 *margin* stabilire A . . . B<sub>2</sub> 4375 *margin* tempore B<sub>2</sub>, BT 4378  
*margin*, indefencibiles F 4381 betidd S, F betidde AC, B be tid J

[CYRUS AND THE  
LYDIANS.]

Be weie of kinde is the norrice  
Of every lust which toucheth vice/  
Thus whan thei were in lustes falle,  
The werres ben foryeten alle;  
Was non which wolde the worschipe  
Of Armes, bot in idelschipe 4390  
Thei putten besinesse aweie  
And token hem to daunce and pleie;  
Bot most above alle othre thinges  
Thei token hem to the likinges  
Of fleysshly lust, that chastete  
Received was in no degre,  
Bot every man doth what him liste.  
And whan the king of Perse it wiste,  
That thei unto folie entenden,  
With his pouer, whan thei lest wenden, 4400  
Mor sodeinly than doth the thunder  
He cam, for evere and put hem under. (4600°)  
And thus hath lecherie lore P. iii. 240  
The lond, which hadde be tofore  
The beste of hem that were tho.

[THE COUNSEL OF  
BALAAM.]

Nota hic qualiter  
fata bellica luxus in-  
fortunat. Et narrat  
quod cum Rex Ama-  
lech Hebreis sibi in-  
sultantibus resistere  
nequit, consilio Ba-  
laam mulieres regni  
sui pulcherrimas in  
castra Hebreorum  
misit; qui ab ipsis  
contaminati gratiam  
statim amiserunt. Et  
sic ab Amalech deuic-  
ti in magna multitudine  
gladio ceciderunt.

And in the bible I finde also  
A tale lich unto this thing,  
Hou Amalech the paien king,  
Whan that he myhte be no weie  
Defende his lond and putte aweie 4410  
The worthi poeple of Irael,  
This Sarazin, as it befell,  
Thurgh the conseil of Balaam  
A route of faire wommen nam,  
That lusti were and yonge of Age,  
And bad hem gon to the lignage  
Of these Hebreus: and forth thei wente  
With yhen greye and browes bente  
And wel arraied everych on;  
And whan thei come were anon 4420

4395 fleyssly F 4402 put AJ. S, F putte C, B 4408 margin  
hic om. BT 4411 Irael (Irabel) J, S, FK rest Israel 4415  
of 30ng age B 4415 ff. margin contaminati—ceciderrunt] contaminati  
sunt (om. graciarn—ceciderrunt) BT

Among thebreus, was non insihte,  
Bot cacche who that cacche myhte,  
And ech of hem hise lustes soghte,  
Whiche after thei full diere boghte.

For grace anon began to faile,  
That whan thei comen to bataille  
Thanne afterward, in sori plit  
Thei were take and disconfit,

So that withinne a litel throwe  
The myht of hem was overthrowe,  
That whilom were wont to stonde.

443<sup>o</sup>

Til Phinees the cause on honde  
Hath take, this vengeance laste,  
Bot thanne it cessede ate laste,  
For god was paid of that he dede:

P. iii. 241

For wher he fond upon a stede  
A couple which misferde so,  
Thurghout he smot hem bothe tuo,  
And let hem ligge in mennes yhe,  
Wherof alle othre whiche hem sihe  
Ensamplede hem upon the dede,  
And preiden unto the godhiede  
Here olde Sennes to amende:  
And he, which wolde his mercy sende,  
Restorede hem to newe grace.

444<sup>o</sup>

Thus mai it schewe in sondri place,  
Of chastete hou the clenness  
Acordeth to the worthinesse  
Of men of Armes overal;

Bot most of alle in special  
This vertu to a king belongeth,  
For upon his fortune it hongeth  
Of that his lond schal spede or spille.

445<sup>o</sup>

(4650\*)

Forthi bot if a king his wille  
Fro lustes of his fleiss restreigne,  
Ayein himself he makth a treigne,  
Into the which if that he slyde,  
Him were betre go besyde.  
For every man mai understonde,

Hou for a time that it stonde, 4460  
 It is a sori lust to lyke,  
 Whos ende makth a man to syke  
 And torneth joies into sorwe. P. iii. 242  
 The brihte Sonne be the morwe  
 Beschyneth noght the derke nyht,  
 The lusti youthe of mannes myht,  
 In Age bot it stonde wel,  
 Mistorneth al the laste whiel.

[EVIL EXAMPLE OF  
 SOLOMON.]

Hic loquitur qualiter  
 Principum irregulata  
 voluptas eos a semita  
 recta multociens de-  
 uiare compellit. Et  
 narrat exemplum de  
 Salomone, qui ex sue  
 carnis concupiscencia  
 victus mulierum blan-  
 dimentis in sui scan-  
 dalum deos alienos  
 colere presumebat.

That every worthi Prince is holde  
 Withinne himself himself beholde, 4470  
 To se the stat of his persone,  
 And thenke hou ther be joies none  
 Upon this Erthe mad to laste,  
 And hou the fleissh schal ate laste  
 The lustes of this lif forsake,  
 Him oghte a gret ensample take  
 Of Salomon, whos appetit  
 Was holy set upon delit,  
 To take of wommen the plesance :  
 So that upon his ignorance 4480  
 The wyde world merveileth yit,  
 That he, which alle mennes wit  
 In thilke time hath overpassed,  
 With fleisshly lustes was so tassed,  
 That he which ladde under the lawe  
 The poeple of god, himself withdrawe  
 He hath fro god in such a wise,  
 That he worschipe and sacrificise  
 For sondri love in sondri stede  
 Unto the false goddes dede. 4490  
 This was the wise ecclesiaste,  
 The fame of whom schal evere laste,  
 That he the myhti god forsok, P. iii. 243  
 Ayein the lawe whanne he tok  
 Hise wyves and hise concubines  
 Of hem that weren Sarazines,  
 For whiche he dede ydolatrie.

For this I rede of his sotie :

[EVIL EXAMPLE OF  
SOLOMON.]

Sche of Sidoyne so him ladde,  
That he knelende hise armes spradde  
To Astrathen with gret humblesse,

4500 De filia Regis Ci-  
donie.

Which of hire lond was the goddesse: (4700\*)

And sche that was a Moabite  
So ferforth made him to delite  
Thurgh lust, which al his wit devoureth,  
That he Chamos hire god honoureth.

De filia Regis Moab

An other Amonyte also  
With love him hath assoted so,  
Hire god Moloch that with encense  
He sacreth, and doth reverence  
In such a wise as sche him bad.  
Thus was the wiseste overlad  
With blinde lustes whiche he soghte ;  
Bot he it afterward aboghte.

De filia Regis A-  
mon.

For Achias Selonites,  
Which was prophete, er his decess,  
Whil he was in hise lustes alle,  
Betokneth what schal after falle.  
For on a day, whan that he mette  
Jeroboam the knyht, he grette  
And bad him that he scholde abyde,  
To hiere what him schal betyde.

[DIVISION OF HIS  
KINGDOM.]

Nota hic qualiter  
Achias propheta, in  
signum quod regnum  
post mortem Salomo-  
nis ob eius peccatum  
4520 a suo herede diminu-  
eretur, palhum suum  
in xii partes scidit,  
vnde x. partes Ieroboe  
filio Nabal, qui regnat-  
urus postea successit,  
precepto dei tribuit

And forth withal Achias caste  
His mantell of, and also faste  
He kut it into pieces twelve,

P. iii. 244

Wherof tuo partz toward himselve  
He kepte, and al the remenant,  
As god hath set his covenant,  
He tok unto Jeroboas,

Of Nabal which the Sone was  
And of the kinges court a knyht :

4530

And seide him, 'Such is goddes myht,  
As thou hast sen departed hiere  
Mi mantell, riht in such manere  
After the deth of Salomon  
God hath ordeigned therupon,

4525 kut kutt) AJC, S, F cutte B

4526 toward] vnto AdBT

[DIVISION OF HIS  
KINGDOM.]

This regne thanne he schal divide :  
Which time thou schalt ek abide,  
And upon that division  
The regne as in proporcion  
As thou hast of mi mantell take,  
Thou schalt receive, I undertake.  
And thus the Sone schal abie  
The lustes and the lecherie  
Of him which nou his fader is.'

4540

So forto taken hiede of this,  
It sit a king wel to be chaste,  
For elles he mai lihtly waste  
Himself and ek his regne bothe,  
And that oghte every king to lothe.

4550

O, which a Senne violent,  
Wherof so wys a king was schent, (4750\*)  
That the vengeance in his persone , P. iii. 245  
Was noght ynouh to take al one,  
Bot afterward, whan he was passed,  
It hath his heritage lassed,

As I more openli tofore  
The tale tolde. And thus therfore  
The Philosophre upon this thing .

Aristotiles. O Alex-  
ander, super omnia  
consulo, conserua tibi  
calorem naturalem.

Writ and conseileth to a king,  
That he the surfet of luxure  
Schal tempre and reule of such mesure,  
Which be to kinde sufficient  
And ek to reson acordant,  
So that the lustes ignorance  
Be cause of no misgovernance,  
Thurgh which that he be overthrowe,  
As he that wol no reson knowe.

4560

For bot a mannes wit be swerved,  
Whan kinde is dueliche served,  
It oghte of reson to suffise ;  
For if it falle him otherwise,  
He mai tho lustes sore drede.

4570

4557 f. As more . . . is told AdB As more . . . tolde T 4559  
margin Aristotiles om. B 4572 fille H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> fulle AM  
4573 tho] } e H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdΔ, W

For of Anthonie thus I rede,  
 Which of Severus was the Sone,  
 That he his lif of comun wone  
 Yaf holy unto thilke vice,  
 And ofte time he was so nyce,  
 Wherof nature hire hath compleigned  
 Unto the god, which hath desdeigned 4580  
 The werkes whiche Antonie wroghte  
 Of lust, whiche he ful sore aboghte:  
 For god his forfet hath so wroke P. iii. 246  
 That in Cronique it is yit spoke.  
 Bot forto take remembrance  
 Of special misgovernance  
 Thurgh covoitise and injustice  
 Forth with the remenant of vice,  
 And nameliche of lecherie,  
 I finde write a gret partie 4590  
 Withinne a tale, as thou schalt hiere,  
 Which is thensample of this matiere.

So as these olde gestes sein,  
 The proude tyrannyssh Romein  
 Tarquinius, which was thanne king  
 And wroghte many a wrongful thing.  
 Of Sones hadde manyon,  
 Among the whiche Arrons was on,  
 Lich to his fader of maneres;  
 So that withinne a fewe yeres  
 With tresoun and with tirannie  
 Thei wonne of lond a gret partie,  
 And token hiede of no justice,  
 Which due was to here office  
 Upon the reule of governance;  
 Bot al that evere was plesance  
 Unto the fleissches lust thei toke.  
 And fell so, that thei undertoke  
 A werre, which was noght achieved,

{ANTONIUS.}

De voluptuoso Antonio.

[TARQUIN AND HIS SON ARUNS.]

Hic loquitur de Tarquino nuper Rome Imperatore, necnon et eiusdem filio nomine Arrons, qui omni viciorum varietate repleti tam in homines quam in mulieres innumera scelera perpetrarunt set specialiter super his que contra Gabinos fraudulentè operati sunt tractare intendit.

4600

(4800\*)

4574 Anthonie AJ, F Antonie S antoigne B 4581 Antonie S  
 Anthonie A Antoine J, B, F 4595 margin nuper Rome] rome  
 nuper BT nuper A om. M



[TARQUIN AND HIS  
SON ARUNS.]

Bot ofte time it hadde hem grieved, 4610

Ayein a folk which thanne hihte

The Gabiens : and al be nyhte

This Arrons, whan he was at hom P. iii. 247

In Rome, a prive place he nom

Withinne a chambre, and bet himselve

And made him woundes ten or tuelve

Upon the bak, as it was sene ;

And so forth with hise hurtes grene

In al the haste that he may

He rod, and cam that other day 4620

Unto Gabie the Cite,

And in he wente : and whan that he

Was knowe, anon the gates schette,

The lordes alle upon him sette

With drawe swerdes upon honde.

This Arrons wolde hem noght withstonde,

Bot seide, 'I am hier at your wille,

Als lief it is that ye me spille,

As if myn oghne fader dede.'

And forthwith in the same stede 4630

He preide hem that thei wolde se,

And schewede hem in what degre

His fader and hise brethren bothe,

Whiche, as he seide, weren wrothe,

Him hadde beten and reviled,

For evere and out of Rome exiled.

And thus he made hem to believe,

And seide, if that he myhte achieve

His pourpos, it schal wel be yolde,

Be so that thei him helpe wolde. 4640

Whan that the lordes hadde sein

Hou wofully he was besein,

Thei token Pite of his grief; P. iii. 248

Bot yit it was hem wonder lief

That Rome him hadde exiled so.

These Gabiens be conseil tho

Upon the goddes made him swere,

4610 he hadde AM . . . B<sub>2</sub> 4611 a] þe LB<sub>2</sub>, Δ om. AM, T 4628  
ye me] I me AdBT 4641 Whan þe lordes AM 4646 The B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT

[TARQUIN AND HIS  
SON ARUNS.]

That he to hem schal trouthe bere  
 And strengthen hem with al his myht,  
 And thei also him have behiht 4650  
 To helpen him in his querele.  
 Thei schopen thanne for his hele (4850\*)  
 That he was bathed and enoight,  
 Til that he was in lusti point;  
 And what he wolde thanne he hadde,  
 That he al hol the cite ladde  
 Riht as he wolde himself devise.  
 And thanne he thoghte him in what wise  
 He myhte his tirannie schewe;  
 And to his conseil tok a schrewe, 4660  
 Whom to his fader forth he sente  
 In his message, and he tho wente,  
 And preide his fader forto seie  
 Be his avis, and finde a weie,  
 Hou they the cite myhten winne,  
 Whil that he stod so wel therinne.  
 And whan the messenger was come  
 To Rome, and bath in conseil nome  
 The king, it fell per chance so  
 That thei were in a gardin tho, 4670  
 This messenger forth with the king.  
 And whanne he hadde told the thing  
 In what manere that it stod, P. iii. 249  
 And that Tarquinius understod  
 Be the message hou that it ferde,  
 Anon he tok in honde a yerde,  
 And in the gardin as thei gon,  
 The lile croppes on and on,  
 Wher that thei weren sprongen oute,  
 He smot of, as thei stode aboute, 4680  
 And seide unto the messenger:  
 'Lo, this thing, which I do nou hier,  
 Schal ben in stede of thin ansuere;  
 And in this wise as I me bere,  
 Thou schalt unto mi Sone telle.'  
 And he no lengere wolde duelle,

[TARQUIN AND HIS  
SON ARUNS.]

Bot tok his leve and goth withal  
 Unto his lord, and told him al,  
 Hou that his fader hadde do.  
 Whan Arrons herde him telle so, 4690  
 Anon he wiste what it mente,  
 And therto sette al his entente,  
 Til he thurgh fraude and tricherie  
 The Princes hefdes of Gabie  
 Hath smiten of, and al was wonne:  
 His fader cam tofore the Sonne  
 Into the toun with the Romeins,  
 And tok and slowh the citezeins  
 Withoute reson or pite,  
 That he ne spareth no degre. 4700  
 And for the sped of this conqueste  
 He let do make a riche feste (4900\*)  
 With a sollempne Sacrifice P. iii. 250  
 In Phebus temple; and in this wise  
 Whan the Romeins assembled were,  
 In presence of hem alle there,  
 Upon thalter whan al was diht  
 And that the fyres were alyht,  
 From under thalter sodeinly  
 An hidous Serpent openly 4710  
 Cam out and hath devoured al  
 The Sacrifice, and ek withal  
 The fyres queynt, and forth anon,  
 So as he cam, so is he gon  
 Into the depe ground ayein.  
 And every man began to sein,  
 'Ha lord, what mai this signefie?'  
 And therupon thei preie and crie  
 To Phebus, that thei mihten knowe  
 The cause: and he the same throwe 4720  
 With gastly vois, that alle it herde,  
 The Romeins in this wise ansuerde,  
 And seide hou for the wikkidnesse  
 Of Pride and of unrihtwisnesse,  
 That Tarquin and his Sone hath do,  
 4688 told C, SB, F tolde A

The Sacrifice is wasted so,  
 Which myhte noght ben acceptable  
 Upon such Senne abhominable.  
 And over that yit he hem wisseth,  
 And seith that which of hem ferst kisseth 4730  
 His moder, he schal take wrieche  
 Upon the wrong: and of that speche  
 Thei ben withinne here hertes glade, P. iii. 251  
 Thogh thei outward no semblant made.  
 Ther was a knyht which Brutus hihte,  
 And he with al the haste he myhte  
 To grounde fell and therthe kiste,  
 Bot non of hem the cause wiste,  
 Bot wenden that he hadde sporned  
 Per chance, and so was overtorned. 4740  
 Bot Brutus al an other mente;  
 For he knew wel in his entente  
 Hou therthe of every mannes kinde  
 Is Moder: bot thei weren blinde,  
 And sihen noght so fer as he.  
 Bot whan thei leften the Cite  
 And comen hom to Rome ayein,  
 Thanne every man which was Romein  
 And moder hath, to hire he bende  
 And keste, and ech of hem thus wende 4750  
 To be the ferste upon the chance,  
 Of Tarquin forto do vengeance, (4950\*)  
 So as thei herden Phebus sein.

[TARQUIN AND HIS  
 SON ARUNS.]

Bot every time bath his certein,  
 So moste it nedes thanne abide,  
 Til afterward upon a tyde  
 Tarquinius made unskilfully  
 A werre, which was fasteby  
 Ayein a toun with walles stronge  
 Which Ardea was cleped longe,  
 And caste a Siege therabout,  
 That ther mai noman passen oute.

[THE RAPE OF  
 LUCRECE]

Hic narrat quod  
 cum Tarquinius in ob-  
 sidione Civitatis Ar-  
 dec, ut eam destrueret,  
 intentus fuit. Arrons  
 filius eius Romam se-  
 creto adiens in domo  
 Collatini hospitatus  
 est; ubi de nocte illam

4737 ground F therthe] per he AdBT pere (per) H: YXGERC, A  
 4746 the] pat S . . . Δ 4754 Paragraph in MSS. at 4757

[THE RAPE OF  
LUCRECE.]

castissimam dominam  
Lucreciam ymaginata  
fraude vi oppressit :  
vnde illa pre dolore  
mortua, ipse cum Tar-  
quino patre suo tota  
conclamante Roma in  
perpetuum exilium  
delegati sunt.

So it befell upon a nyht, P. iii. 252

Arrons, which hadde his souper diht,

A part of the chivalerie

With him to soupe in compaignie

Hath bede : and whan thei comen were

And seten at the souper there,

Among here othre wordes glade

Arrons a gret spekinge made, 4770

Who hadde tho the beste wif

Of Rome : and ther began a strif,

For Arrons seith he hath the beste.

So jangle thei withoute reste,

Til ate laste on Collatin,

A worthi knyht, and was cousin

To Arrons, seide him in this wise :

'It is,' quod he, 'of non emprise

To speke a word, bot of the dede,

Therof it is to taken hiede. 4780

Anon forthi this same tyde

Lep on thin hors and let ous ryde :

So mai we knowe bothe tuo

Unwarli what oure wyves do,

And that schal be a trewe assay.'

This Arrons seith noght ones nay :

On horse bak anon thei lepte

In such manere, and nothing slepte,

Ridende forth til that thei come

Al prively withinne Rome ; 4790

In strange place and doun thei lihte,

And take a chambre, and out of sihte

Thei be disguised for a throwe, P. iii. 253

So that no lif hem scholde knowe.

And to the paleis ferst thei soghte,

To se what thing this ladi wroghte

Of which Arrons made his avant :

And thei hire sihe of glad semblant,

Al full of merthes and of bordes ;

Bot among alle hire othre wordes 4800

4772 ther] þus B      4780 Wher of (Wherof) AdBT, K      4795  
the om. A      4796 þis ladyes B      þeis ladis Ad      þise lady (s erased) T

Sche spak noght of hire housebonde  
 And whan thei hadde al understonde (5000\*)  
 Of thilke place what hem liste,  
 Thei gon hem forth, that non it wiste,  
 Beside thilke gate of bras,  
 Collacea which cleped was,  
 Wher Collatin bath his duellinge.  
 Ther founden thei at hom sittinge  
 Lucrece his wif, al environed  
 With wommen, whiche are abandoned 4810  
 To werche, and sche wroghte ek withal,  
 And bad hem haste, and seith, 'It schal  
 Be for mi housebondes were,  
 Which with his swerd and with his spere  
 Lith at the Siege in gret desese.  
 And if it scholde him noght displese,  
 Nou wolde god I hadde him hiere;  
 For certes til that I mai hiere  
 Som good tidinge of his astat,  
 Min herte is evere upon debat. 4820  
 For so as alle men witenesse,  
 He is of such an hardesse,  
 That he can noght himselve spare, P. iii. 254  
 And that is al my moste care,  
 Whan thei the walles schulle assaile.  
 Bot if mi wissches myhte availe,  
 I wolde it were a groundles pet,  
 Be so the Siege were unknet,  
 And I myn housebonde sihe.'  
 With that the water in hire yhe 4830  
 Aros, that sche ne myhte it stoppe,  
 And as men sen the dew bedroppe  
 The leves and the floures eke,  
 Riht so upon hire whyte cheke  
 The wofull salte teres felle.  
 Whan Collatin bath herd hire telle  
 The menyng of hire trewe herte,

4803 him AXGCR      4810 were X, AdBT      4812 seide B  
 4814 swerd] schield (shelde) Hi, B      4825 schulde (scholde) M,  
 AdBT      4832 dewe droppe AM, W  
       B b

[THE RAPE OF  
LUCRECE.]

Anon with that to hire he sterte,  
And seide, 'Lo, mi goode diere,  
Nou is he come to you hiere, 4840  
That ye most loven, as ye sein.'  
And sche with goodly chiere ayein  
Beclpte him in hire armes smale,  
And the colour, which erst was pale,  
To Beaute thanne was restored,  
So that it myhte noght be mored.

The kinges Sone, which was nyh,  
And of this lady herde and syh  
The thinges as thei ben befallē,  
The resoun of hise wittes alle 4850  
Hath lost; for love upon his part  
Cam thanne, and of his fyrī dart (5050\*)  
With such a wounde him hath thurghsmite, P. iii. 255  
That he mot nedes fiele and wite  
Of thilke blinde maladie,

To which no cure of Surgerie  
Can helpe. Bot yit natheles  
At thilke time he hield his pes,  
That he no contenance made,  
Bot openly with wordes glade, 4860  
So as he couthe in his manere,  
He spak and made frendly chiere,  
Til it was time forto go.

And Collatin with him also  
His leve tok, so that be nyhte  
With al the haste that thei myhte  
Thei riden to the Siege ayein.  
Bot Arrons was so wo besein  
With thoghtes whiche upon him runne,  
That he al be the brode Sunne 4870  
To bedde goth, noght forto reste,  
Bot forto thenke upon the beste  
And the faireste forth withal,  
That evere he syh or evere schal,  
So as him thoghte in his corage,  
Where he pourtreieth hire ymage:  
Ferst the fetures of hir face,

In which nature hadde alle grace  
 Of wommanly beaute beset,  
 So that it myhte noght be bet;  
 And hou hir yelwe her was tresced  
 And hire atir so wel adresced,  
 And hou sche spak, and hou sche wroghte, P. iii. 256  
 And hou sche wepte, al this he thoghte,  
 That he foryeten hath no del,  
 Bot al it liketh him so wel,  
 That in the word nor in the dede  
 Hire lacketh noght of wommanhiede.  
 And thus this tirannysshe knyht  
 Was soupled, bot noght half ariht,  
 For he non other hiede tok,  
 Bot that he myhte be som crok,  
 Although it were ayein hire wille,  
 The lustes of his fleissh fulfille;  
 Which love was noght resonable,  
 For where honour is remuable,  
 It oghte wel to ben avised.  
 Bot he, which hath his lust assised  
 With melled love and tirannie,  
 Hath founde upon his tricherie  
 A weie which he thenkth to holde,  
 And seith, 'Fortune unto the bolde  
 Is favorable forto helpe.'  
 And thus withinne himself to yelpe,  
 As he which was a wylde man,  
 Upon his treson he began:  
 And up he sterte, and forth he wente  
 On horsebak, bot his entente  
 Ther knew no wiht, and thus he nam  
 The nexte weie, til he cam  
 Unto Collacea the gate  
 Of Rome, and it was somdiel late,  
 Riht evene upon the Sonne set, P. iii. 257  
 As he which hadde schape his net  
 Hire innocence to betrappe.

488o

489o

490o

(5100\*) Audaces fortuna ju-  
vat.

491o

488o let GEC, AdBT 4881 hir om. B her (c) H, XR 4886 liked  
 SAdBT 4887 in the dede in dede AM, XLB, 4914 And he AdBT



[THE RAPE OF  
LUCRECE.]

And as it scholde tho mishappe,  
 Als priveliche as evere he myhte  
 He rod, and of his hors alyhte  
 Tofore Collatines In,  
 And al frendliche he goth him in, 4920  
 As he that was cousin of house.  
 And sche, which is the goode spouse,  
 Lucrece, whan that sche him sih,  
 With goodli chiere drowh him nyh,  
 As sche which al honour supposeth,  
 And him, so as sche dar, opposeth  
 Hou it stod of hire housebonde.  
 And he tho dede hire understonde  
 With tales feigned in his wise,  
 Riht as he wolde himself devise, 4930  
 Wherof he myhte hire herte glade,  
 That sche the betre chiere made,  
 Whan sche the 'glade wordes herde,  
 Hou that hire housebonde ferde.  
 And thus the trouthe was deceived  
 With slih tresoun, which was received  
 To hire which mente alle goode;  
 For as the festes thanne stode,  
 His Souper was ryht wel arraied.  
 Bot yit he hath no word assaied 4940  
 To speke of love in no degre;  
 Bot with covert soubtilite  
 His frendly speches he affaiteth, P. iii. 258  
 And as the Tigre his time awaiteth  
 In hope forto cacche his preie.  
 Whan that the bordes were aweie  
 And thei have souped in the halle,  
 He seith that slep is on him falle,  
 And preith he moste go to bedde;  
 And sche with alle haste spedde, 4950  
 So as hire thoghte it was to done,  
 That every thing was redi sone. (5150\*)  
 Sche broghte him to his chambre tho

4918 he lighte AdBT      4920 he om. AdBT      4929 his wise  
 AdBT      4940 he om. AM      4944 the om. AM      a H<sub>1</sub>

And tok hire leve, and forth is go  
 Into hire oghne chambre by,  
 As sche that wende certainly  
 Have had a frend, and hadde a fo,  
 Wherof fell after mochel wo.

This tirant, thogh he lyhe softe,  
 Out of his bed aros fulofte, 4960  
 And goth aboute, and leide his Ere  
 To herkne, til that alle were  
 To bedde gon and slepten faste.

And thanne upon himself he caste  
 A mantell, and his swerd al naked  
 He tok in honde; and sche unwaked  
 Abedde lay, but what sche mette,  
 God wot; for he the Dore unschette  
 So prively that non it herde,  
 The softe pas and forth he ferde 4970

Unto the bed wher that sche slepte,  
 Al sodeinliche and in he crepte,  
 And hire in bothe his Armes tok. P. iii. 259  
 With that this worthi wif awok,

Which thurgh tendresce of wommanhiede  
 Hire vois hath lost for pure drede,  
 That o word speke sche ne dar:  
 And ek he bad hir to be war,  
 For if sche made noise or cry,  
 He seide, his swerd lay faste by 4980

To slen hire and hire folk aboute.  
 And thus he broghte hire herte in doute,  
 That lich a Lomb whanne it is sesed  
 In wolves mouth, so was desesed  
 Lucrece, which he naked fond:

Wherof sche swounede in his hond,  
 And, as who seith, lay ded oppressed.  
 And he, which al him hadde adressed  
 To lust, tok thanne what him liste,  
 And goth his wey, that non it wiste, 4990  
 Into his oghne chambre ayein,  
 And clepede up his chamberlein,

[THE RAPE OF  
LUCRECE.]

And made him redi forto ryde.  
 And thus this lecherouse pride  
 To horse lepte and forth he rod ;  
 And sche, which in hire bed abod,  
 Whan that sche wiste he was agon,  
 Sche clepede after liht anon  
 And up aros long er the day,  
 And caste away hire freissh aray, 5000  
 As sche which hath the world forsake,  
 And tok upon the clothes blake : (5200\*)  
 And evere upon continuinge, P. iii. 260  
 Riht as men sen a welle springe,  
 With yhen fulle of wofull teres,  
 Hire her hangende aboute hire Eres,  
 Sche wepte, and noman wiste why.  
 Bot yit among full pitously  
 Sche preide that thei nolden drecche  
 Hire housebonde forto fecche 5010  
 Forth with hire fader ek also.

Thus be thei comen bothe tuo,  
 And Brutus cam with Collatin,  
 Which to Lucrece was cousin,  
 And in thei wenten alle thre  
 To chambre, wher thei myhten se  
 The wofulleste upon this Molde,  
 Which wepte as sche to water scholde.  
 The chambre Dore anon was stoke,  
 Er thei have oght unto hire spoke ; 5020  
 Thei sihe hire clothes al disguised,  
 And hou sche hath himself despised,  
 Hire her hangende unkemd aboute,  
 Bot natheles sche gan to loute  
 And knele unto hire housebonde ;  
 And he, which fain wolde understonde  
 The cause why sche ferde so,  
 With softe wordes axeth tho,  
 'What mai you be, mi goode swete ?'  
 And sche, which thoghte herself unmete 5030  
 And the lest worth of wommen alle,  
 Hire wofull chiere let doun falle

For schame and couthe unnethes loke. **P. iii. 261** [THE RAPE OF  
 And thei therof good hiede toke, LUCRECE.]  
 And preiden hire in alle weie  
 That sche ne spare forto seie  
 Unto hir frendes what hire eileth,  
 Why sche so sore himself bewerleth,  
 And what the sothe wolde mene.  
 And sche, which hath hire sorwes grene, 5040  
 Hire wo to telle thanne assaieth,  
 Bot tendre schame hire word delaieth,  
 That sondri tmes as sche munte  
 To speke, upon the point sche stinte.  
 And thei hire bidden evere in on  
 To telle forth, and therupon,  
 Whan that sche sih sche moste nede,  
 Hire tale between schame and drede  
 Sche tolde, noght withoute peine.  
 And he, which wolde hire wo restreigne, 5050  
 Hire housebonde, a sory man,  
 Conforteth hire al that he can, (5250\*)  
 And swor, and ek hire fader bothe,  
 That thei with hire be noght wrothe  
 Of that is don ayein hire wille;  
 And preiden hire to be stille,  
 For thei to hire have al foryive.  
 Bot sche, which thoghte noght to live,  
 Of hem wol no foryivenesse,  
 And seide, of thilke wickednesse 5060  
 Which was unto hire bodi wroght,  
 Al were it so sche myhte it noght,  
 Nevere afterward the world ne schal **P. iii. 262**  
 Reproeven hire; and forth withal,  
 Er eny man therof be war,  
 A naked swerd, the which sche bar  
 Withinne hire Mantel priveli,  
 Between hire hondes sodeinly  
 Sche tok, and thurgh hire herte it throng,  
 And fell to grounde, and evere among, 5070  
 Whan that sche fell, so as sche myhte,

5043 f. munte . . . stinte J, SB, F mente . . . stente AEC

[THE RAPE OF  
LUCRECE.]

Hire clothes with hire hand sche rihte,  
That noman dounward fro the kne  
Scholde eny thing of hire se:  
Thus lay this wif honestly,  
Althogh she deide wofully.

Tho was no sorwe forto seke:  
Hire housebonde, hire fader eke  
Aswoune upon the bodi felle;  
Ther mai no mannes tunge telle 5080  
In which anguisshe that thei were.  
Bot Brutus, which was with hem there,  
Toward himself his herte kepte,  
And to Lucrece anon he lepte,  
The blodi swerd and pulleth oute,  
And swor the goddes al aboute  
That he therof schal do vengeance.  
And sche tho made a contenance,  
Hire dedlich yhe and ate laste  
In thonkinge as it were up caste, 5090  
And so behield him in the wise,  
Whil sche to loke mai suffise.

And Brutus with a manlich herte P. iii. 263  
Hire housebonde hath mad up sterte  
Forth with hire fader ek also  
In alle haste, and seide hem tho  
That thei anon withoute lette  
A Beere for the body fette;  
Lucrece and therupon bledende  
He leide, and so forth out criende 5100  
He goth into the Market place  
Of Rome: and in a litel space (5300\*)  
Thurgh cry the cite was assembled,  
And every mannes herte is trembled,  
Whan thei the sothe herde of the cas.  
And therupon the conseil was  
Take of the grete and of the smale,  
And Brutus tolde hem al the tale;  
And thus cam into remembrance

5101 vnto X . . . B<sub>1</sub> 5104 mannes herte trembled H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>, W  
manne herte trembled AM

Of Senne the continuance,  
 Which Arrons hadde do tofore,  
 And ek, long time er he was bore,  
 Of that his fadre hadde do  
 The wrong cam into place tho;  
 So that the comun clamour tolde 5115  
 The newe schame of Sennes olde.  
 And al the toun began to crie,  
 'Awey, awey the tirannie  
 Of lecherie and covoitise!'  
 And ate laste in such a wise  
 The fader in the same while  
 Forth with his Sone thei exile,  
 And taken betre governance. P. iii. 264  
 Bot yit an other remembrance  
 That rihtwysnesse and lecherie  
 Acorden noght in compaignie  
 With him that hath the lawe on honde,  
 That mai a man wel understonde,  
 As be a tale thou shalt wite,  
 Of olde ensample as it is write.

5110 [THE RAPE OF  
 LUCRECE.]

5120

5130

At Rome whan that Apius,  
 Whos other name is Claudius,  
 Was governour of the cite,  
 Ther fell a wonder thing to se  
 Touchende a gentil Maide, as thus,  
 Whom Livius Virginus  
 Begeten hadde upon his wif:  
 Men seiden that so fair a lif  
 As sche was noght in al the toun.  
 This fame, which goth up and down,  
 To Claudius cam in his Ere,  
 Wherof his thoght anon was there,  
 Which al his herte hath set afyre,  
 That he began the flour desire  
 Which longeth unto maydenhede,

[TALE OF VIRGINIA.]

Hic ponit exemplum  
 super eodem, qualiter  
 Livius Virginus dux  
 exercitus Romanorum  
 unicam filiam pul-  
 cheram habens cum  
 quodam nobili viro  
 nomine Ilcio, ut ip-  
 sam in uxorem duce-  
 ret, finaliter concorda-  
 vit. Set interim Ap-  
 ius Claudius tunc Im-  
 perator virginis formo-  
 sitatem, ut eam vio-  
 laret, concupiscens,  
 occasiones quibus ma-  
 trimonium impedire,  
 ipsamque ad sui usum  
 apprehendere posset,

5140

5113 fadre S, F fader AJC, B 5130 olde ensample C, F old  
 (oold) ensample AJ, B olde ensamples SA 5133 margin super  
 eodem om. B 5135 and þus FWKMagd 5140 margin tunc  
 om. BT

## [TALE OF VIRGINIA]

subdola conspiracione fieri coniectant. Et cum propositum sui desiderii productis falsis testibus in iudicio Imperator habere debisset, pater tunc ibidem presens extracto gladio filie sue pectus mortali vulnere per medium transfodit, dicens 'Malo michi de filia mea virginem habere mortuam, quam in suis scandalum meretricem reservare viventem.'

And sende, if that he myhte spedde  
The blinde lustes of his wille.  
Bot that thing mai he noght fulfille,  
For sche stod upon Mariage;  
A worthi kniht of gret lignage, 5150  
Ilicius which thanne hihte,  
Acorded in hire fader sihte (5350\*)  
Was, that he scholde his douhter wedde. P. iii. 265  
Bot er the cause fully spedde,  
Hire fader, which in Romanie  
The ledinge of chivalerie  
In governance hath undertake,  
Upon a werre which was take  
Goth out with al the strengthe he hadde  
Of men of Armes whiche he ladde: 5160  
So was the mariage left,  
And stod upon acord til eft.

The king, which herde telle of this,  
Hou that this Maide ordeigned is  
To Mariage, thoghte an other.  
And hadde thilke time a brother,  
Which Marchus Claudius was hote,  
And was a man of such riote  
Riht as the king himselve was:  
Thei tuo togedre upon this cas 5170  
In conseil founden out this weie,  
That Marchus Claudius schal seie  
Hou sche be weie of covenant  
To his service appourtenant  
Was hol, and to non other man;  
And therupon he seith he can  
In every point witesse take,  
So that sche schal it noght forsake.  
Whan that thei hadden schape so,  
After the lawe which was tho, 5180  
Whil that hir fader was absent,  
Sche was somouned and assent  
To come in presence of the king P. iii. 266

5161 þis Mariage SBTΔ 5171 þe weie GBs, S . . . Δ 5182  
somouned (or sommoned) AJ, F somoned C, SB

And stonde in ansuere of this thing.  
 Hire frendes wisten alle wel  
 That it was falsched everydel,  
 And comen to the king and seiden,  
 Upon the comun lawe and preiden,  
 So as this noble worthi knyht  
 Hir fader for the comun riht  
 In thilke time, as was befallē,  
 Lai for the profit of hem alle  
 Upon the wylde felde armed,  
 That he ne scholde noght ben harmed  
 Ne schamed, whil that he were oute;  
 And thus thei preiden al aboute.

5190

For al the clamour that he herde,  
 The king upon his lust ansuerde,  
 And yaf hem only daies tuo  
 Of respit; for he wende tho,  
 That in so schorte a time appiere  
 Hire fader mihte in no manere. (5400\*)  
 Bot as therof he was deceived;  
 For Livius hadde al conceived  
 The pourpos of the king tofore,  
 So that to Rome ayein therfore  
 In alle haste he cam ridende,  
 And leste upon the field liggende  
 His host, til that he come ayein.  
 And thus this worthi capitein  
 Appiereth redi at his day,  
 Wher al that evere reson may  
 Be lawe in audience he doth, P. iii. 267  
 So that his dowhter upon soth  
 Of that Marchus hire hadde accused  
 He bath tofore the court excused.

5210

The king, which sih his pourpos faile,  
 And that no sleihte mihte availe,  
 Encombred of his lustes blinde  
 The lawe torneth out of kinde,

5220

5184 stood (stode) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> stante W 5201 schorte J, S, F  
 schort AC, B 5206 And þoughte to be þer perfore H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>  
 5220 torned AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>



[TALE OF VIRGINIA.]

And half in wraththe as thogh it were,  
 In presence of hem alle there  
 Deceived of concupiscence  
 Yaf for his brother the sentence,  
 And bad him that he scholde sese  
 This Maide and make him wel at ese;  
 Bot al withinne his oghne entente  
 He wiste hou that the cause wente,  
 Of that his brother hath the wyte  
 He was himselven forto wyte.

5230

Bot thus this maiden hadde wrong,  
 Which was upon the king along,  
 Bot ayein him was non Appel,  
 And that the fader wiste wel:

Wherof upon the tirannie,  
 That for the lust of Lecherie  
 His douhter scholde be deceived,  
 And that Ilicius was weyved  
 Untrewly fro the Mariage,

Riht as a Leon in his rage,  
 Which of no drede set acompte  
 And not what pite scholde amounte,  
 A naked swerd he pulleth oute,

5240

P. iii. 268

The which amonges al the route  
 He threste thurgh his dowhter side,  
 And al alowd this word he cride:

'Lo, take hire ther, thou wrongfull king,  
 For me is levere upon this thing  
 To be the fader of a Maide,

Thogh sche be ded, than if men saide  
 That in hir lif sche were schamed  
 And I therof were evele named.'

5250

(5450\*)

Tho bad the king men scholde areste  
 His bodi, bot of thilke heste,  
 Lich to the chaced wylde bor,  
 The houndes whan he fieleth sor,  
 Tothroweth and goth forth his weie,  
 In such a wise forto seie

5239 fro] for J, AdBT  
 5251 aschamed ALM, Δ

5247 take (taake) AC, S, F tak J, B

[TALE OF VIRGINIA]

This worthi kniht with swerd on honde  
 His weie made, and thei him wonde,  
 That non of hem his strokes kepte ;  
 And thus upon his hors he lepte,  
 And with his swerd droppende of blod,  
 The which withinne his doubter stod,  
 He cam ther as the pouer was  
 Of Rome, and tolde hem al the cas,  
 And seide hem that thei myhten liere  
 Upon the wrong of his matiere,  
 That betre it were to redreace  
 At hom the grete unrihtwisnesse,  
 Than forto werre in strange place  
 And lese at hom here oghne grace.  
 For thus stant every mannes lif  
 In jeupartie for his wif  
 Or for his dowhter, if thei be  
 Passende an other of beaute.

5260

5270

P. iii. 269

Of this merveile which thei sihe  
 So apparant tofore here yhe,  
 Of that the king him hath misbore,  
 Here othes thei have alle swore  
 That thei wol stonde be the riht.  
 And thus of on acord upriht  
 To Rome at ones hom ayein  
 Thei torne, and schortly forto sein,  
 This tirannye cam to mouthe,  
 And every man seith what he couthe,  
 So that the prive tricherie,  
 Which set was upon lecherie,  
 Cam openly to mannes Ere ;  
 And that broghte in the comun feere,  
 That every man the peril dradde  
 Of him that so hem overladde.  
 Forthi, er that it worse falle,  
 Thurgh comun conseil of hem alle

5280

5290

5263 Al with . . . of blood T Al wiþ . . . al blod B Wiþ . . . al  
 blode Ad 5267 seide AJ, SB seid F 5268 þis AMB  
 5275 And for AdBT Or of W 5279 haþ him AM, W 5293  
 for þey B

[TALE OF VIRGINIA]

Thei have here wrongfull king deposed,  
 And hem in whom it was supposed  
 The conseil stod of his ledinge  
 Be lawe unto the dom thei bringe,  
 Wher thei receiven the penance  
 That longeth to such governance. 5300  
 And thus thunchaste was chastised,  
 Wherof thei myhte ben avised (5500\*)  
 That scholden afterward governe, P. iii. 270  
 And be this evidence lerne,  
 Hou it is good a king eschuie  
 The lust of vice and vertu suie.

[TOBIAS AND SARA.]

Hic inter alia castitatis regimen concernencia loquitur quomodo Matrimonium, cuius status Sacramentum, quas continentiam equiperans, etiam honeste delectationis regimine moderari debet. Et narrat in exemplum, qualiter pro eo quod illi vii.<sup>mo</sup> viri, qui Sarre Raguelis filie magis propter concupiscentiam quam propter matrimonium voluptuose nupserunt, unus post alium omnes prima nocte a demone Asmodeo singillatim iugulati interierunt.

To make an ende in this partie,  
 Which toucheth to the Policie  
 Of Chastite in special,  
 As for conclusion final 5310  
 That every lust is to eschue  
 Be gret ensample I mai argue:  
 Hou in Rages a toun of Mede  
 Ther was a Mayde, and as I rede,  
 Sarra sche hihte, and Raguel  
 Hir fader was; and so befell,  
 Of bodi bothe and of visage  
 Was non so fair of the lignage,  
 To seche among hem alle, as sche;  
 Wherof the riche of the cite, 5320  
 Of lusti folk that couden love,  
 Assoted were upon hire love,  
 And asken hire forto wedde.  
 On was which ate laste spedde,  
 Bot that was more for likinge,  
 To have his lust, than for weddinge,  
 As he withinne his herte caste,  
 Which him repenteth ate laste.  
 For so it fell the ferste nyht,  
 That whanne he was to bedde dyht, 5330  
 As he which nothing god besecheth  
 Bot al only hise lustes secheth,

5327 withinne] which in AdBT

Abedde er he was fully warm P. iii. 271 [TOBIAS AND SARA.]  
 And wolde have take hire in his Arm,  
 Asmod, which was a fend of helle,  
 And serveth, as the bokes telle,  
 To tempte a man of such a wise,  
 Was redy there, and thilke emprise,  
 Which he hath set upon delit,  
 He vengeth thanne in such a plit, 5340  
 That he his necke hath writhe atuo.  
 This yonge wif was sory tho,  
 Which wiste nothing what it mente;  
 And natheles yit thus it wente  
 Noght only of this ferste man,  
 Bot after, riht as he began,  
 Sexe othre of hire housebondes  
 Asmod hath take into hise bondes,  
 So that thei alle abedde deiden,  
 Whan thei her hand toward hir leiden, 5350  
 Noght for the lawe of Mariage,  
 Bot for that ilke fyri rage (5350\*)  
 In which that thei the lawe excede  
 For who that wolde taken hiede  
 What after fell in this matiere,  
 Ther mihte he wel the sothe hie.  
 Whan sche was wedded to Thobie,  
 And Raphael in compainie  
 Hath tawht him hou to ben honeste,  
 Asmod wan noght at thilke feste, 5360  
 And yit Thobie his wille hadde;  
 For he his lust so goodly ladde,  
 That bothe lawe and kinde is served, P. iii. 272  
 Wherof he hath himself preserved,  
 That he fell noght in the sentence.  
 O which an open evidence  
 Of this ensample a man mai se,  
 That whan likinge in the degre

5336 served B    5337 in such CRB<sub>2</sub>    5341 wriþe AJC, SB  
 wriþ F    5345 of) for AdBT    5348 hise bondes J, S, FK  
 his hondes H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdTBA, WMagd    hondes (om. his) AM  
 5366 Of which AdBT, W    O such H<sub>1</sub>

[CHASTITY.]

Of Mariage mai forsueie,  
 Wel oghte him thanne in other weie 5370  
 Of lust to be the betre avised.

For god the lawes hath assised  
 Als wel to reson as to kinde,  
 Bot he the bestes wolde binde  
 Only to lawes of nature,

Nota.

Bot to the mannes creature  
 God yaf him reson forth withal,  
 Wherof that he nature schal  
 Upon the causes modefie,  
 That he schal do no lecherie, 5380  
 And yit he schal hise lustes have.

So ben the lawes bothe save  
 And every thing put out of sclandre ;  
 As whilom to king Alisandre  
 The wise Philosophre tawhte,  
 Whan he his ferste lore cawhte,  
 Noght only upon chastete,  
 Bot upon alle honestete ;  
 Wherof a king himself mai taste,  
 Hou trewe, hou large, hou joust, hou chaste 5390  
 Him oghte of reson forto be,  
 Forth with the vertu of Pite,  
 Thurgh which he mai gret thonk deserve P.iii. 273  
 Toward his godd, that he preserve  
 Him and his poeple in alle welthe  
 Of pes, richesse, honour and helthe  
 Hier in this world and elles eke.

Confessor.

    Mi Sone, as we tofore spieke  
 In schrifte, so as thou me seidest,  
 And for thin ese, as thou me preidest, 5400  
 Thi love throghe forto lisse,  
 That I thee wolde telle and wisse (5600\*)  
 The forme of Aristotles lore,  
 I have it seid, and somdiel more  
 Of othre ensamples, to assaie  
 If I thi peines myhte allaie

5379 cause AdBT 5380 *marg.* Nota A, F *om.* C, B 5383 put AJ.  
 SB pit F 5388 honeste H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, A, WK 5392 the *om.* AM

# LIBER SEPTIMUS

385

Thurgh eny thing that I can seie.

[CHASTITY.]

Do wey, mi fader, I you preie :

Amans.

Of that ye have unto me told

I thonke you a thousandfold.

5410

The tales sounen in myn Ere,

Bot yit myn herte is elleswhere,

I mai miselue noght restreigne,

That I nam euer in loves peine :

Such lore couthe I nevere gete,

Which myhte make me foryete

O point, bot if so were I slepte,

That I my tydes ay ne kepte

To thenke of love and of his lawe ;

That herte can I noght withdrawe.

5420

Forthi, my goode fader diere,

Lef al and speke of my matiere

Touchende of love, as we begonne : P. iii. 274

If that ther be oght overronne

Or oght foryete or left behinde

Which falleth unto loves kinde,

Wherof it nedeth to be schrive,

Nou axeth, so that whil I live

I myhte amende that is mys.

Mi goode diere Sone, yis.

5430

Confessor

Thi schrifte forto make plein,

Ther is yit more forto sein

Of love which is unavised.

Bot for thou schalt be wel avised

Unto thi schrifte as it belongeth,

A point which upon love hongeth

And is the laste of alle tho,

I wol thee telle, and thanne ho.

## Explicit Liber Septimus.

5407 which I AdBT  
leaves (5417—viii. 336)  
to (into) AMBz

5411 sounen F 5417 S has lost two  
5422 al om. H1 . . . Bz, AdBT 5426 in

## Incipit Liber Octavus.

- [LECHERY.] i. *Que jauet ad viciū vetus hec modo regula confert, P. iii. 275*  
*Nec nouus econtra qui docet ordo placet.*  
*Cecus amor dudum nondum sua lumina cepit,*  
*Quo Venus impositum deuia fallit iter.*

Postquam ad instanciam Amantis confessi Confessor Genius super hiis que Aristotiles Regem Alexandrum edocuit, vna cum aliarum Cronicarum exemplis seriose tractauit, iam vltimo in isto octauo volumine ad confessionem in amoris causa regrediens tractare proponit super hoc, quod nonnulli primordia nature ad libitum voluptuose consequentes, nullo humane rationis arbitrio seu ecclesie legum impositione a suis excessibus debite refrenantur. Vnde quatenus amorem concernit Amantis conscienciam pro finali sue confessionis materia Genius rimari conatur.

THE myhti god, which unbegunne  
 Stant of himself and hath begunne  
 Alle othre thinges at his wille,  
 The hevene him liste to fulfille  
 Of alle joie, where as he  
 Sit inthronized in his See,  
 And hath hise Angles him to serve,  
 Suche as him liketh to preserve,  
 So that thei mowe noght forsueie :  
 Bot Lucifer he putte aweie,  
 With al the route apostazied  
 Of hem that ben to him allied,  
 Whiche out of hevene into the helle  
 From Angles into fendes felle ;  
 Wher that ther is no joie of lyht,  
 Bot more derk than eny nyht  
 The peine schal ben endeles ;  
 And yit of fyres natheles  
 Ther is plente, bot thei ben blake,  
 Wherof no syhte mai be take.

10

P. iii. 276

20

Thus whan the thinges ben befalle,  
 That Luciferes court was falle  
 Wher dedly Pride hem hath conueied,  
 Anon forthwith it was pourveied  
 Thurgh him which alle thinges may ;

## LIBER OCTAVUS

387

\* [THE ORIGIN OF  
MANKIND.]

He made Adam the sexte day  
 In Paradis, and to his make  
 Him liketh Eve also to make,  
 And bad hem cresce and multiplie.  
 For of the mannes Progenie,  
 Which of the womman schal be bore,  
 The nombre of Angles which was lore,  
 Whan thei out fro the blisse felle,  
 He thoghte to restore, and felle  
 In hevene thilke holy place  
 Which stod tho voide upon his grace.  
 Bot as it is wel wiste and knowe,  
 Adam and Eve bot a throwe,  
 So as it scholde of hem betyde,  
 In Paradis at thilke tyde  
 Ne duelten, and the cause why,  
 Write in the bok of Genesi,  
 As who seith, alle men have herd,  
 Hou Raphael the fyrī swerd  
 In honde tok and drof hem oute,  
 To gete here lyves fode aboute  
 Upon this wofull Erthe hiere.  
 Metodre seith to this matiere,  
 As he be revelacion  
 It hadde upon avision,  
 Hou that Adam and Eve also  
 Virgines comen bothe tuo  
 Into the world and were aschamed,  
 Til that nature hem hath reclaimed  
 To love, and tauht hem thilke lore,  
 That ferst thei keste, and overmore  
 Thei don that is to kinde due,  
 Wherof thei hadden fair issue.  
 A Sone was the ferste of alle,  
 And Chain be name thei him calle;  
 Abel was after the secounde,  
 And in the geste as it is founde,  
 Nature so the cause ladde,

30

40

P. iii. 277

50

60

37 wiste AJ, F    wist C, B    48 his A    60 Cham AJ  
 Chaym (Caym) H; . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT, W



[LAWS OF MARRIAGE.]

Tuo douhtres ek Dame Eve hadde,  
 The ferste cleped Calmana  
 Was, and that other Delbora.  
 Thus was mankinde to beginne;  
 Forthi that time it was no Sinne  
 The Soster forto take hire brother,  
 Whan that ther was of chois non other : 70  
 To Chain was Calmana betake,  
 And Delboram hath Abel take,  
 In whom was gete natheles  
 Of worldes folk the ferste encres.  
 Men sein that nede hath no lawe,  
 And so it was be thilke dawe  
 And laste into the Secounde Age, P. iii. 278  
 Til that the grete water rage,  
 Of Noë which was seid the flod,  
 The world, which thanne in Senne stod, 80  
 Hath dreint, outake lyves Eyhte.  
 Tho was mankinde of litel weyhte;  
 Sem, Cham, Japhet, of these thre,  
 That ben the Sones of Noë,  
 The world of mannes nacion  
 Into multiplicacion  
 Was tho restored newe ayein  
 So ferforth, as the bokes sein,  
 That of hem thre and here issue  
 Ther was so large a retenue, 90  
 Of naciouns seventy and tuo;  
 In sondri place ech on of tho  
 The wyde world have enhabited.  
 Bot as nature hem hath excited,  
 Thei token thanne litel hiede,  
 The brother of the Sosterhiede  
 To wedde wyves, til it cam  
 Into the time of Habraham.  
 Whan the thridde Age was begunne,  
 The nede tho was overrunne, 100

71 Cham AJM Chaym (Caym) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT, W 72 Delbora  
 H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub> (Debora E), Δ, W 77 into A, FW vnto CLB<sub>2</sub>, B 79  
 the om. A 98 Habraham J, FK rest Abraham 100 was jo AML

For ther was poeple ynouh in londe :

Thanne ate ferste it cam to honde,

That Sosterhode of mariage

Was torned into cousinage,

So that after the rihte lyne

The Cousin weddeth the cousine.

For Habraham, er that he deide, P. iii. 279

This charge upon his servant leide,

To him and in this wise spak,

That he his Sone Isaac

110

Do wedde for no worldes good,

Bot only to his oghne blod :

Wherof this Servant, as he bad,

Whan he was ded, his Sone hath lad

To Bathuel, wher he Rebecke

Hath wedded with the whyte necke ;

For sche, he wiste wel and syh,

Was to the child cousine nyh.

And thus as Habraham hath tawht,

Whan Isaac was god betawht,

120

His Sone Jacob dede also,

And of Laban the dowhtres tuo,

Which was his Em, he tok to wyve,

And gat upon hem in his lyve,

Of hire ferst which hihte Lie,

Sex Sones of his Progenie,

And of Rachel tuo Sones eke :

The remenant was forto seke,

That is to sein of foure mo,

Wherof he gat on Bala tuo,

130

And of Zelpa he hadde ek tweie.

And these tuelve, as I thee seie,

Thurgh providence of god himselve

Ben seid the Patriarkes tuelve ;

Of whom, as afterward befell,

The tribes tuelve of Irabel

Engendred were, and ben the same P. iii. 280

That of Hebreus tho hadden name,

Which of Sibrede in alliance

[LAWS OF MARRIAGE.]

For evere kepten thilke usance 140

Most comunly, til Crist was bore.

Bot afterward it was forbore

Amonges ous that ben baptized;

For of the lawe canonized

The Pope hath bede to the men,

That non schal wedden of his ken

Ne the seconde ne the thridde.

Bot thogh that holy cherche it bidde,

So to restreigne Mariage,

Ther ben yit upon loves Rage 150

Full manye of suche nou aday

That taken wher thei take may.

For love, which is unbesein

Of alle reson, as men sein,

Thurgh sotie and thurgh nycete,

Of his voluptuosite

He spareth no condicion

Of ken ne yit religion,

Bot as a cock among the Hennes,

Or as a Stalon in the Fennes, 160

Which goth amonges al the Stod,

Riht so can be nomore good,

Bot takth what thing comth next to bonde

Confessor.

Mi Sone, thou schalt understonde,

That such delit is forto blame.

Forthi if thou hast be the same

To love in eny such manere, P iii. 281

Tell forth therof and schrif thee hiere.

Amans.

Mi fader, nay, god wot the sothe,

Mi feire is noght of such a bothe, 170

So wylde a man yit was I nevere,

That of mi ken or hef or levere

Me liste love in such a wise:

And ek I not for what emprise

I scholde assote upon a Nonne,

For thogh I hadde hir love wonne,

It myhte into no pris amonte,

145 bode H1 . . . B1, AdBT 148 it om. GC, BA 170 in such  
 AdBTΔ 177 I myhte AM

[LAWS OF MARRIAGE.]

So therof sette I non acompte.  
 Ye mai wel axe of this and that,  
 Bot sothli forto telle plat,  
 In al this world ther is bot on  
 The which myn herte hath overgon;  
 I am toward alle othre fre.

180

Full wel, mi Sone, nou I see  
 Thi word stant evere upon o place,  
 Bot yit therof thou hast a grace,  
 That thou thee myht so wel excuse  
 Of love such as som men use,  
 So as I spak of now tofore.  
 For al such time of love is lore,  
 And lich unto the bitterswete;  
 For thogh it thenke a man ferst swete,  
 He schal wel fielen ate laste  
 That it is sour and may noght laste.  
 For as a morsell envenimed,  
 So hath such love his lust mistimed,  
 And grete ensamples manyon  
 A man mai finde therupon.

Confessor.

190

P. iii. 282

At Rome ferst if we beginne,  
 Ther schal I finde hou of this sinne  
 An Emperour was forto blame,  
 Gayus Caligula be name,  
 Which of his oghne Sostres thre  
 Berefte the virginite.  
 And whanne he hadde hem so forlein,  
 As he the which was al vilein,  
 He dede hem out of londe exile.  
 Bot afterward withinne a while  
 God hath beraft him in his ire  
 His lif and ek his large empire:  
 And thus for likinge of a throwe  
 For evere his lust was overthrowe.

[EXAMPLES OF INCEST  
CALIGULA.]

200

Hic loquitur contra  
 illos, quos Venus sui  
 desiderii fervore in-  
 flammasita incestuo-  
 sos efficit, ut neque pro-  
 priis Sororibus par-  
 cunt. Et narrat ex-  
 emplum, qualiter pro  
 eo quod Gayus Cali-  
 gula tres sorores suas  
 virgines coitu illicito  
 oppressit, deus tanti  
 sceleris peccatum im-  
 pune non ferens ipsum  
 non solum ab imperio  
 set a vita iusticia vin-  
 dice priuavit.

210

Narrat etiam aliud

Of this sote also I finde,

185 The AM, W      188 such AJ, B    suche F      205 30  
 om. AdBT      210 margin impune om. BT, W    inpunitum E  
 212 margin priuavit] preliauit H. . . Ba

[AMON.]

exemplum super eodem, qualiter Amon filius David fatui amoris concupiscencia preuenit, sororem suam Thamar a sue virginitatis pudicia inuitam deflorauit propter quod et ipse a fratre suo Absolon postea interfectus, peccatum sue mortis precio inuitus redemit.

[LOT AND HIS DAUGHTERS.]

Hic narrat, qualiter Loth duas filias suas ipsis consencientibus carnali copula cognouit, duosque ex eis filios, scilicet Moab et Amon, progeniuit, quorum postea generacio praua et exasperans contra populum dei in terra saltim promissionis vario grauamine quam sepius insultabat.

Confessor.

Amon his Soster ayein kinde,  
Which hihte Thamar, he forlay;  
Bot he that lust an other day  
Aboghte, whan that Absolon  
His oghne brother therupon,  
Of that he hadde his Soster schent,  
Tok of that Senne vengeance  
And slowh him with his oghne hond:  
And thus thunkinde unkinde fond.

220

And forto se more of this thing,  
The bible makth a knowleching,  
Wherof thou miht take evidence  
Upon the sothe experience.  
Whan Lothes wif was overgon P. iii. 283  
And schape into the salte Ston,  
As it is spoke into this day,  
Be bothe hise dowhtres thanne he lay, 230  
With childe and made hem bothe grete,  
Til that nature hem wolde lete,  
And so the cause aboute ladde  
That ech of hem a Sone hadde,  
Moab the ferste, and the seconde  
Amon, of whiche, as it is founde,  
Cam afterward to gret ences  
Tuo nacions: and natheles,  
For that the stockes were ungoode,  
The branches mihten noght be goode; 240  
For of the false Moabites  
Forth with the strengthe of Amonites,  
Of that thei weren ferst misgete,  
The poeple of god was ofte upsete  
In Irahel and in Judee,  
As in the bible a man mai se.

240

Lo thus, my Sone, as I thee seie,  
Thou miht thiselue be bescie  
Of that thou hast of othre herd:

228 vnto MCL, BT 231 and made] he made AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>,  
AdTB 237 gret AC, B grete F 239 not (nought) goode  
AM . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT 245 Irahel as in l. 136

For evere yit it hath so ferd, 250 [INCEST.]  
 Of loves lust if so befall  
 That it in other place falle  
 Than it is of the lawe set,  
 He which his love hath so beset  
 Mote afterward repente him sore,  
 And every man is othres lore;  
 Of that befell in time er this P. iii. 284  
 The present time which now is  
 May ben enformed hou it stod,  
 And take that him thenketh good, 260  
 And leve that which is noght so.  
 Bot forto loke of time go,  
 Hou lust of love exceedeth lawe,  
 It oghte forto be withdrawe;  
 For every man it scholde drede,  
 And nameliche in his Sibrede, K. 221  
 Which torneth ofte to vengeance:  
 Wherof a tale in remembrance,  
 Which is a long process to hiere,  
 I thenke forto tellen hiere. 270

11. *Omnibus est communis amor, set et immoderatos  
 Qui facit excessus, non reputatur amans.  
 Sors tamen unde Venus attractat corda, videre  
 Que rationis erunt, non ratione sinit.*

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Of a Cronique in daies gon,  
 The which is cleped Pantheon,  
 In loves cause I rede thus,  
 Hou that the grete Antiochus,  
 Of whom that Antioche tok  
 His ferste name, as seith the bok,  
 Was coupled to a noble queene,  
 And hadde a dowhter hem betwene:  
 Bot such fortune cam to honde,  
 That deth, which no king mai withstonde, 280  
 Bot every lif it mote obeie,  
 This worthi queene tok aweie.

Hic loquitur adhuc  
 contra incestuosos a-  
 mantum coitus. Et  
 narrat mirabile exem-  
 plum de magno Rege  
 Antiocho, qui vxore  
 mortua propriam fili-  
 am violauit: et quia  
 filie Matrimonium pe-  
 nes alios impedire vo-  
 luit, tale ab eo exuit  
 edictum, quod si quis  
 eam in vxorem pete-  
 ret, nisi ipse prius quod-  
 dam problema ques-  
 tionis, quam ipse Rex  
 proposuerat, veraciter

257 And þat AdBT 262 ago AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBTΔ 280 margin  
 ipse prius FK, om. A . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT (Lat. om. AdΔ, W)

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

solueret, capitali sententia puniretur. Super quo veniens tandem discretus iuuenis princeps Tyri Appolinus questionem soluit; nec tamen filiam habere potuit, set Rex indignatus ipsum propter hoc in mortis odium recollegit. Vnde Appolinus a facie Regis fugiens, quamplura, prout inferius intitulantur, propter amorem pericla passus est.

The king, which made mochel mone, P. iii. 285

Tho stod, as who seith, al him one

Withoute wif. bot natheles

His doghter, which was piereles

Of beaute, duelte aboute him stille.

Bot whanne a man hath welthe at wille,

The fleissh is frele and falleth ofte,

And that this maide tendre and softe,

290

Which in hire fadres chambres duelte,

Withinne a time wiste and felte:

For likinge and concupiscence

Withoute insihte of conscience

The fader so with lustes blente,

That he caste al his hole entente

His oghne doghter forto spille.

This king hath leisir at his wille

With strengthe, and whanne he time sih,

This yonge maiden he forlüh:

300

And sche was tendre and full of drede,

Sche couthe noght hir Maidenhede

Defende, and thus sche hath forlore

The flour which sche hath longe bore.

It helpeth noght althogh sche wepe,

For thei that scholde hir bodi kepe

Of wommen were absent as thanne;

And thus this maiden goth to manne,

The wylde fader thus devoureth

His oghne fleissh, which non socoureth,

310

And that was cause of mochel care.

Bot after this unkinde fare

Out of the chambere goth the king, P. iii. 286

And sche lay stille, and of this thing,

Withinne herself such sorghe made,

Ther was no wiht that mihte hir glade,

For feere of thilke horrible vice.

With that cam inne the Norrice

Which fro childhode hire hadde kept,

291 chambre (chamber) MH, XEC, AdBTA, WK 293 and] of  
AM . . . Bz, AdBT 298 The king Hi . . . Bz, AdBT 310  
which om. B

And axeth if sche hadde slept,  
 And why hire chiere was unglad.  
 Bot sche, which hath ben overlad  
 Of that sche myhte noght be wreke,  
 For schame couthe unethes speke;  
 And natheles mercy sche preide  
 With wepende yhe and thus sche seide:

'Helas, mi Soster, waileway,  
 That evere I säh this ilke day!  
 Thing which mi bodi ferst begat  
 Into this world, onliche that  
 Mi worldes worschipe hath bereft.'  
 With that sche swouneth now and eft,  
 And evere wissheth after deth,  
 So that welnyh hire lacketh breth.  
 That other, which hire wordes herde,  
 In confortinge of hire ansuerde,  
 To lette hire fadres fol desir  
 Sche wiste no recoverir:

Whan thing is do, ther is no bote,  
 So suffren thei that suffre mote;  
 Ther was non other which it wiste.  
 Thus hath this king al that him liste  
 Of his likinge and his plesance,  
 And laste in such continuance,  
 And such delit he tok therinne,  
 Him thoghte that it was no Sinne;  
 And sche dorste him nothing withseie.

Bot fame, which goth every weie,  
 To sondry regnes al aboute  
 The grete beaute telleth oute  
 Of such a maide of hih parage:  
 So that for love of mariage  
 The worthi Princes come and sende,  
 As thei the whiche al honour wende,  
 And knewe nothing hou it stod.  
 The fader, whanne he understod,  
 That thei his dowhter thus besoghte,

320 [APOLLONIUS OF  
 TYRE]

330

340

P. iii. 287

350



[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

With al his wit he caste and thoghte  
 Hou that he myhte finde a lette;  
 And such a Statut thanne he sette, 360  
 And in this wise his lawe he taxeth,  
 That what man that his doghter axeth,  
 Bot if he couthe his question  
 Assoile upon suggestion  
 Of certein thinges that befelle,  
 The whiche he wolde unto him telle,  
 He scholde in certein lese his hed.  
 And thus ther weren manye ded,  
 Here hevedes stondende on the gate,  
 Till ate laste longe and late, 370  
 For lacke of ansuere in the wise,  
 The remenant that weren wise  
 Eschuieden to make assay. P. iii. 288

De aduentu Appol-  
 ini in Antiochiam, vbi  
 ipse filiam Regis An-  
 tiochi in vxorem pos-  
 tulauit.

Til it befell upon a day  
 Appolinus the Prince of Tyr,  
 Which hath to love a gret desir,  
 As he which in his hihe mod  
 Was likende of his hote blod,  
 A yong, a freissh, a lusti knyht,  
 As he lai musende on a nyht 380  
 Of the tidinges whiche he herde,  
 He thoghte assaie hou that it ferde.  
 He was with worthi compainie  
 Arraied, and with good navie  
 To schipe he goth, the wynd him dryveth,  
 And seileth, til that he arryveth:  
 Sauf in the port of Antioche  
 He londeth, and goth to aproche  
 The kinges Court and his presence.  
 Of every naturel science, 390  
 Which eny clerk him couthe teche,  
 He cquthe ynowh, and in his speche  
 Of wordes he was eloquent;  
 And whanne he sih the king present,  
 He preith he moste his dowhter have.

358 soghte (soughte) A . . . CB<sub>2</sub>, SAdTB (In al wise he him be  
 powt Δ) 362 that om. BTA, W 371 þis wise EB<sub>2</sub>, BΔ

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE]

The king ayein began to crave,  
And tolde him the condicion,  
Hou ferst unto his question  
He mote ansuere and faile noght,  
Or with his heved it schal be boght: 400  
And he him axeth what it was.

The king declareth him the cas  
With sturne lok and sturdi chiere, P. iii. 289 *Questio Regis An-*  
To him and seide in this manere: *tiuchi.*

'With felonie I am upbore,  
I ete and have it noght forbore  
Mi modres fleissch, whos housebonde  
Mi fader forto seche I fonde,  
Which is the Sone ek of my wif.  
Hierof I am inquisitif; 410

And who that can mi tale save,  
Al quyt he schal my doghter have;  
Of his ansuere and if he faile,  
He schal be ded withoute faile.  
Forthi my Sone,' quod the king,  
'Be wel avised of this thing,  
Which hath thi lif in jeupartie.'

Appolinus for his partie,  
Whan he this question hath herd,  
Unto the king he hath ansuerd 420  
And hath rehersed on and on  
The pointz, and seide therupon:  
'The question which thou hast spoke,  
If thou wolt that it be unloke,  
It toucheth al the privete  
Betwen thin oghne child and thee,  
And stant al hol upon you tuo.'

The king was wonder sory tho,  
And thoghte, if that he seide it oute,  
Than were he schamed al aboute.  
With slihe wordes and with felle  
He seith, 'Mi Sone, I schal thee telle,

*Scelere vehor, ma-  
terna carne vescor,  
quero patrem meum,  
matris mee virum, vx-  
oris mee filium.*

*Responsio Appol-  
lini.*

*Indignacio Antiochi  
super responsione Ap-  
polini.*

403 sturne F sterne A, SB lok] word B 416 of of F  
419 this] jat AdBT the Bv 428 margin Indignacio—Appolini  
om. SA (as also the marginal notes following down to l. 1020,

[ APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE ]

De recessu Appol-  
lini ab Antiochia.

De fuga Appolini  
per mare a Regno suo.

Though that thou be of litel wit, P. iii. 290  
It is no gret merveile as yit,  
Thin age mai it noght suffice:  
Bot loke wel thou noght despise  
Thin oghne lif, for of my grace  
Of thretty daies fulle a space  
I grante thee, to ben avised.

And thus with leve and time assised 440  
This yonge Prince forth he wente,  
And understod wel what it mente,  
Withinne his herte as he was lered,  
That forto maken him afered  
The king his time bath so deslaied.  
Wherof he dradde and was esmaied,  
Of treson that he deie scholde,  
For he the king his sothe tolde;  
And sodeinly the nyhtes tyde,  
That more wolde he noght abide, 450  
Al prively his barge he hente  
And hom ayein to Tyr he wente:  
And in his oghne wit he seide  
For drede, if he the king bewreide,  
He knew so wel the kinges herte,  
That deth ne scholde he noght asterie,  
The king him wolde so poursue.  
Bot he, that wolde his deth eschue,  
And knew al this tofor the hond,  
Forsake he thoghte his oghne lond, 460  
That there wolde he noght abyde;  
For wel he knew that on som syde  
This tirant of his felonie P. iii. 291

Be som manere of tricherie  
To grieve his bodi wol noght leve.  
Forthi withoute take leve,  
Als priveche as evere he myhte,  
He goth him to the See be nyhte  
In Schipes that be whete laden:

443 his om. B 446 esmaied JEC, S, FK amared (amayed)  
AMH, XGRLB, AdBT dismaied Δ, W 462 tyde AMX, W  
467 margin mare om. F as evere he] as he H, . . . B, Ad as ]ey BT  
469 In] Her(e) AdBTa be] ben wip AdBTΔΔ, W

Here takel redy tho thei maden  
 And hale up Seil and forth thei fare.  
 Bot forto tellen of the care  
 That thei of Tyr begonne tho,  
 Whan that thei wiste he was ago,  
 It is a Pite forto hiere.

They losten lust, they losten chiere,  
 Thei toke upon hem such penaunce,  
 Thei was no song, ther was no daunce,  
 Bot every merthe and melodie  
 To hem was thanne a maladie ;

For unlust of that aventure  
 Ther was noman which tok tonsure,  
 In doelful clothes thei hem clothe,  
 The bathes and the Stwēs bothe  
 Thei schetten in be every weie ;  
 There was no lif which leste pleie  
 Ne take of eny joie kepe,

Bot for here liege lord to wepe ;  
 And every wyht seide as he couthe,  
 ' Helas, the lusti flour of youthe,  
 Our Prince, oure heved, our governour,  
 Thurgh whom we stoden in honour,  
 Withoute the comun assent

Thus sodeinliche is fro ous went !'  
 Such was the clamour of hem alle.

Bot se we now what is befallē  
 Upon the ferste tale plein,  
 And torne we therto ayein.  
 Antiochus the grete Sire,  
 Which full of rancour and of ire  
 His herte berth, so as ye herde,  
 Of that this Prince of Tyr ansuerde,  
 He hadde a feloun bacheler,  
 Which was his prive consailer,  
 And Tahart be name be hihte :

470 [APOLLONIUS OF  
 TYRE.]

480

490

P. iii. 292

Nota qualiter Thaliartus Miles, ut Appollonium veneno intoxicaret, ab Antiocho in Tyrum missus, ipso ibidem non inuento 500 Antiochiam rediit.

471 hale up<sup>1</sup> haleþ AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBTA 483 deelful (deleful)  
 AML, W deelful (dedful) H<sub>1</sub> . . . CB<sub>2</sub>, AdTA dedly B 492  
 stonden B<sub>2</sub>, AdBTA, WK 496 margin Nota om. A . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT  
 (Lat. om. SAdA) 505 Taliart F Thaliart AJ, SB

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

The king a strong puison him dihte  
Withinne a buiste and gold therto,  
In alle haste and bad him go  
Strawht unto Tyr, and for no cost  
Ne spare he, til he hadde lost 510  
The Prince which he wolde spille.  
And whan the king hath seid his wille,  
This Taliart in a Galeie  
With alle haste he tok his weie :  
The wynd was good, he saileth blyve,  
Til he tok lond upon the ryve  
Of Tyr, and forth with al anon  
Into the Burgh he gan to gon,  
And tok his In and bod a throwe.  
Bot for he wolde nought be knowe, 520  
Desguised thanne he goth him oute ;  
He sih the wepinge al aboute,  
And axeth what the cause was, P. iii. 293  
And thei him tolden al the cas,  
How sodeinli the Prince is go.  
And whan he sih that it was so,  
And that his labour was in vein,  
Anon he torneth hom ayein,  
And to the king, whan he cam nyh,  
He tolde of that he herde and syh, 530  
Hou that the Prince of Tyr is fled,  
So was he come ayein unsped.  
The king was sori for a while,  
Bot whan he sih that with no wyle  
He myhte achieve his crualte,  
He stinte his wraththe and let him be.

Bot over this now forto telle  
Of adventures that befelle  
Unto this Prince of whom I tolde,  
He hath his rihte cours forth holde 540  
Be Ston and nedle, til he cam  
To Tharse, and there his lond he nam.  
A Burgeis riche of gold and fee

Qualiter Appolinus  
in portu Tharsis appli-  
cuit, ubi in hospicio  
cuiusdam magni viri  
nomine Stranguionis  
hospitatus est.

507 box AM . . . B2, AdBT 510 spare he FK 778 spare  
513 Taliart J, F Taliart A, SB 535 He] His F 539 which B

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Was thilke time in that cite,  
 Which cleped was Stranguho,  
 His wif was Dionise also :  
 This yonge Prince, as seith the bok,  
 With hem his herbergage tok ;  
 And it befell that Cite so  
 Before time and thanne also, 550  
 Thurgh strong famyne which hem ladde  
 Was non that eny whete hadde  
 Appolinus, whan that he herde P. iii. 294  
 The meschief, hou the cite ferde,  
 Al freliche of his oghne yifte  
 His whete, among hem forto schifte,  
 The which be Schipe he hadde broght,  
 He yaf, and tok of hem riht noght,  
 Bot sithen ferst this world began,  
 Was nevere yit to such a man 560  
 Mor joie mad than thei him made :  
 For thei were alle of him so glade,  
 That thei for evere in remembrance  
 Made a figure in resemblance  
 Of him, and in the comun place  
 Thei sette him up, so that his face  
 Mihte every maner man beholde,  
 So as the cite was beholde ;  
 It was of latoun overgilt ;  
 Thus hath he noght his yifte spilt. 570  
 Upon a time with his route  
 This lord to pleie goth him oute,  
 And in his weie of Tyr he mette  
 A man, the which on knees him grette,  
 And Hellican be name he bihte,  
 Which preide his lord to have insihte  
 Upon himself, and seide him thus,  
 Hou that the grete Antiochus

Qualiter Hellicanus  
 cuius Tyri Tharsum ve-  
 niens Appolinum de  
 insidiis Antiochi pre-  
 muniuit.

548 him H, AdBT 553 whan (when) AJC, B whanne S, F  
 565 the om. AMH, XRL, Ad a B 566 him FWK it ACLB, B  
 568 So as] So þat AM . . . B, (So as G) 571 a route AM . . .  
 B, AdBT 573 *margin* prenuiciavit B preminuit M 574  
 the which on knees] which on his knees E, B which on knees  
 H, XRLB, AdTA

\* \*

D d

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Appolinus  
portum Tharsis relin-  
quens, cum ipse per  
mare nauigio securio-  
rem quesuit, superue-  
niente tempestate na-  
uis cum omnibus pre-  
ter ipsum solum in  
eadem contentis iuxta  
Pentapolum periclitat-  
batur.

Awaiteth if he mihte him spille.  
That other thoghte and hield him stille, 580  
And thonked him of his warnynge,  
And bad him telle no tidinge,  
Whan he to Tyr cam hom ayein, P. iii. 295  
That he in Tharse him hadde sein.

Fortune hath evere be muable  
And mai no while stonde stable :  
For now it hiheth, now it loweth,  
Now stant upriht, now overthroweth,  
Now full of blisse and now of bale, 590  
As in the tellinge of mi tale

Hierafterward a man mai liere,  
Which is gret routhe forto hiere.  
This lord, which wolde don his beste,  
Withinne himself hath litel reste,  
And thoghte he wolde his place change  
And seche a contre more strange.  
Of Tharsiens his leve anon  
He tok, and is to Schipe gon :

His cours he nam with Seil updrawe,  
Where as fortune doth the lawe, 600  
And scheweth, as I schal reherse,  
How sche was to this lord diverse,  
The which upon the See sche ferketh.  
The wynd aros, the weder derketh,  
It blew and made such tempeste,  
Non ancher mai the schip areste,  
Which hath tobroken al his gere ;  
The Schipmen stode in such a feere,  
Was non that myhte himself bestere, 610  
Bot evere awaite upon the lere,  
Whan that thei scholde drenche at ones.

Ther was ynowh withinne wones  
Of wepinge and of sorghe tho ; P. iii. 296  
This yonge king makth mochel wo  
So forto se the Schip traivale :  
Bot al that myhte him noght avale ;

58a no] for no H<sub>1</sub>E . . . B<sub>a</sub>  
for as in telling(e) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>a</sub>

590 As in telling(e) AM, AdT  
598 ygon B



[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

The mast tobrak, the Seil torof,  
The Schip upon the wawes drof,  
Til that thei sihe a londes cooste.

Tho made avou the leste and moste,  
Be so thei myhten come alonde;  
Bot he which hath the See on honde,  
Neptunus, wolde noght acorde,  
Bot altobroke cable and corde,  
Er thei to londe myhte aproche,  
The Schip toclef upon a roche,  
And al goth down into the depe.

Bot he that alle thing mai kepe  
Unto this lord was merciable,  
And broghte him sauf upon a table,  
Which to the lond him hath upbore;  
The remenant was al forlore,  
Wherof he made mochel mone.

Thus was this yonge lord him one,  
Al naked in a povere plit:  
His colour, which whilom was whyt,  
Was thanne of water fade and pale,  
And ek he was so sore acale  
That he wiste of himself no bote,  
It halp him nothing forto mote

To gete ayein that he hath lore.  
Bot sche which hath his deth forbore,  
Fortune, thogh sche wol noght yelpe, **P. iii. 297**

Al sodeinly hath sent him helpe,  
Whanne him thoghte alle grace aweie;  
Ther cam a Fisshere in the weie,  
And sib a man ther naked stonde,  
And whan that he hath understonde  
The cause, he hath of him gret routhe,  
And onliche of his povere trouthe  
Of suche clothes as he hadde  
With gret Pite this lord he cladde.

620

630

Qualiter Appolinus  
nudus super litus iac-  
tabatur, ubi quidam pis-  
cator ipsum suo collo-  
bio vestiens ad urbem  
Pentapolim direxit.

640

650

620 avou (avow) A, B, F a vow (a vou) J, S, K 624 altobroke  
A, S, F al tobroke C, B al to broke J 633 Therof (Ther of)  
A . . . B, AdBT Wherefore W 635 a om. AMR 636 was  
whilom AM . . . B, AdBT was som tyme J



[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Appolino  
Pentapolim aduen-  
iente ludus Gignasii  
per urbem publice pro-  
clamatus est.

And he him thonketh as he scholde,  
And seith him that it schal be yolde,  
If evere he gete his stat ayein,  
And preide that he wolde him sein  
If nyh were eny toun for him.  
He seide, 'Yee, Pentapolim,  
Wher bothe king and queene duellen.'  
Whanne he this tale herde tellen,  
He gladeth him and gan beseche  
That he the weie him wolde teche:  
And he him taghte; and forth he wente  
And preide god with good entente  
To sende him joie after his sorwe.

660

It was noght passed yit Midmorwe,  
Whan thiderward his weie he nam,  
Wher sone upon the Non he cam.

He eet such as he myhte gete,  
And forth anon, whan he hadde ete,  
He goth to se the toun aboute,  
And cam ther as he fond a route

670

Of yonge lusti men withalle;  
And as it scholde tho befalle,  
That day was set of such assisse,  
That thei scholde in the londes guise,  
As he herde of the poeple seie,  
Here comun game thanne pleie;  
And crid was that thei scholden come  
Unto the gamen alle and some  
Of hem that ben deliver and wyhte,  
To do such maistrie as thei myhte.

P. iii. 298

680

Thei made hem naked as thei scholde,  
For so that ilke game wolde,  
As it was tho custume and us,  
Amonges hem was no refus:  
The flour of al the toun was there  
And of the court also ther were,  
And that was in a large place

667 Than (Thanne) AM . . . Bz, AdBT afterward B 677 As  
was herd AdBT 680 game MH1, AdBTΔ, W gamis X 685  
As] And AM . . . Bz, AdBT tho] þe H1 . . . Bz, AdBT, WK om. Δ

## LIBER OCTAVUS

405

Riht evene afore the kinges face,  
 Which Artestrathes thanne hihte.  
 The pley was pleid riht in his sibte,  
 And who most worthi was of dede  
 Receive he scholde a certein mede  
 And in the cite bere a pris.  
 Appolinus, which war and wys  
 Of every game couthe an ende,  
 He thoghte assaie, hou so it wende,  
 And fell among hem into game:  
 And there he wan him such a name,  
 So as the king himself acompteth  
 That he alle othre men surmonteth,  
 And bar the pris above hem alle. P. iii. 299  
 The king bad that into his halle  
 At Souper time he schal be broght;  
 And he cam thanne and lefte it noght,  
 Withoute compaignie al one:  
 Was non so semlich of persone,  
 Of visage and of limes bothe,  
 If that he hadde what to clothe. 700  
 At Souper time natheles  
 The king amidde al the pres  
 Let clepe him up among hem alle,  
 And bad his Mareschall of halle  
 To setten him in such degre  
 That he upon him myhte se.  
 The king was sone set and served,  
 And he, which hath his pris deserved  
 After the kinges oghne word,  
 Was mad beginne a Middel bord, 710  
 That bothe king and queene him sihe.  
 He sat and caste aboute his yhe  
 And sih the lordes in astat,  
 And with himself wax in debat  
 Thinkende what he hadde lore,

690 [APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Appolinus  
ludum gignasti vincens  
in aulam Regis ad ce-  
nam honorifice recep-  
tus est.

700

710

710

697 margin aula A . . . Bz, BT 705 schulde (scholde)  
 AdBT, W 714 his Mareschal of h. J, S, FK his Marchal  
 of his h. AM . . . CBz, BT his marschal of the h. Δ, W pe Marchal  
 of his h. Ad (ll 704-714 om. L) 718 hadde B

## CONFESSIO AMANTIS

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Appolnus  
in cena recumbens  
nichil comedit, set do-  
loroso vultu, submisso  
capite, ingemiscebat,  
qui tandem a filia  
Regis confortatus cy-  
tharam plectens cunc-  
tis audientibus citha-  
risando vltamodum  
complacuit.

And such a sorwe he tok therfore,  
That he sat evere stille and thoghte,  
As he which of no mete roghte.

The king behield his bevyntesse,  
And of his grete gentillesse 730

His doghter, which was fair and good  
And ate bord before him stod,  
As it was thilke time usage, P. iii. 300

He bad to gon on his message  
And fonde forto make him glad.

And sche dede as hire fader bad,  
And goth to him the softe pas

And axeth whenne and what he was,  
And prenth he scholde his thoghtes leve.

He seith, 'Ma Dame, be your leve 740  
Mi name is hote Appolinus,

And of mi richesse it is thus,  
Upon the See I have it lore.

The contre wher as I was bore,  
Wher that my lond is and mi rente,

I leste at Tyr, whan that I wente:  
The worschipe of this worldes aghte,

Unto the god ther I betaghte.  
And thus togedre as thei tuo speeke,

The teres runne be his cheeke. 750  
The king, which therof tok good kepe,

Hath gret Pite to sen him wepe,  
And for his doghter sende ayein,

And preide hir faire and gan to sein  
That sche no lengere wolde drecche,

Bot that sche wolde anon forth fecche  
Hire harpe and don al that sche can

To glade with that sory man. 760  
And sche to don hir fader heste

Hir harpe fette, and in the feste  
Upon a Chaier which thei fette

Hirself next to this man sche sette:

732 *margin* maxime ingemiscebat A . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT (*Latin om.* SAdΔ)  
747 of his worldes aghte J, SΔ, FWK þer of (þerof) which I laughte  
AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT 748 I þer(e) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT

With harpe bothe and ek with mouthe **P. iii. 301** [APOLLONIUS OF  
 To him sche dede al that sche couthe TYRE.]  
 To make him chiere, and evere he siketh,  
 And sche him axeth hou him liketh.  
 'Ma dame, certes wel,' he seide,  
 'Bot if ye the mesure pleide  
 Which, if you list, I schal you liere,  
 It were a glad thing forto hiere.' 770  
 'Ha, lieve sire,' tho quod sche,  
 'Now tak the harpe and let me se  
 Of what mesure that ye mene.'  
 Tho preith the king, tho preith the queene,  
 Forth with the lordes alle arewe,  
 That he som merthe wolde schewe;  
 He takth the Harpe and in his wise  
 He tempreth, and of such assise  
 Singende he harpeth forth withal,  
 That as a vois celestial 780  
 Hem thoghte it souneth in here Ere,  
 As thogh that he an Angel were.  
 Thei gladen of his melodie,  
 Bot most of all the compainie  
 The kinges doghter, which it herde,  
 And thoghte ek hou that he ansuerde,  
 Whan that he was of hire opposed,  
 Withinne hir herte hath wel supposed  
 That he is of gret gentilesse.  
 Hise dedes ben therof witnesse 790  
 Forth with the wisdom of his lore;  
 It nedeth noght to seche more,  
 He myhte noght have such manere, **P. iii. 302**  
 Of gentil blod bot if he were.  
 Whanne he hath harped al his fille,  
 The kinges heste to fulfille,  
 Away goth diash, away goth cuppe,  
 Doun goth the bord, the cloth was uppe,  
 Thei risen and gon out of halle.

77a takþ (takeþ) AM 78a he] it AM... B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT 786 hou  
 that] of þat AH<sub>1</sub>... B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT þat M howe W 787 he was]  
 it was H<sub>1</sub>... B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Appolinus  
cum Rege pro filia  
sua erudienda reten-  
tus est

Qualiter filia Regis  
Appolinum ornato ap-  
paratu vestiri fecit, et  
ipse ad puellae doctri-  
nam in quampluribus  
familiariter intende-  
bat: vnde placata  
puella in amorem  
Appolini exardescens  
infirmabatur.

The king his chamberlein let calle,  
And bad that he be alle weie  
A chambre for this man pourveie,  
Which nyh his oghne chambre be.  
'It schal be do, mi lord,' quod he.  
Appolinus of whom I mene  
'Tho tok his leve of king and queene  
And of the worthi Maide also,  
Which preide unto hir fader tho,  
That sche myhte of that yonge man  
Of tho sciences whiche he can  
His lore have; and in this wise  
The king hir granteth his aprise,  
So that himself therto assente.  
Thus was acorded er thei wente,  
That he with al that evere he may  
This yonge faire freisshe May  
Of that he couthe scholde enforme;  
And full assented in this forme  
Thei token leve as for that nyht.

800

810

And whanne it was amorwe lyht,  
Unto this yonge man of Tyr  
Of clothes and of good atir  
With gold and Selver to despende  
This worthi yonge lady sende:  
And thus sche made him wel at ese,  
And he with al that he can plese  
Hire serveth wel and faire ayein.  
He tawhte hir til sche was certein  
Of Harpe, of Citole and of Rote,  
With many a tun and many a note  
Upon Musique, upon mesure,  
And of hire Harpe the temprure  
He tawhte hire ek, as he wel couthe.  
Bot as men sein that frele is youthe,  
With leisir and continuance  
This Mayde fell upon a chance,

820

P. iii. 303

830

809 that] þe Hi . . . Ba, AdBT      817 he scholde AdB      827  
Hire] He AdBT      829 of Citole] citole B      and citole K      830 tun]  
time X, B

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

That love hath mad him a querele  
 Ayein hire youthe freissh and frele,  
 That malgre wher sche wole or noght,  
 Sche mot with al hire hertes thoght 840  
 To love and to his lawe obeie;  
 And that sche schal ful sore abeie.  
 For sche wot nevere what it is,  
 Bot evere among sche fieleth this:  
 Thenkende upon this man of Tyr,  
 Hire herte is hot as eny fyr,  
 And otherwhile it is acale;  
 Now is sche red, nou is sche pale  
 Riht after the condicion  
 Of hire ymaginacion; 850  
 Bot evere among hire thoghtes alle,  
 Sche thoghte, what so mai befallē,  
 Or that sche lawhe, or that sche wepe, P. iii. 304  
 Sche wolde hire goode name kepe  
 For feere of wommanysshe schame.  
 Bot what in earnest and in game,  
 Sche stant for love in such a plit,  
 That sche hath lost al appetit  
 Of mete, of drinke, of nyhtes reste,  
 As sche that not what is the beste; 860  
 Bot forto thenken al hir fille  
 Sche hield hire ofte times stille  
 Withinne hir chambre, and goth noght oute:  
 The king was of hire lif in doute,  
 Which wiste nothing what it mente.  
 Bot fell a time, as he out wente  
 To walke, of Princes Sones thre  
 Ther come and felle to his kne;  
 And ech of hem in sondri wise  
 Besoghte and profreth his servise, 870  
 So that he myhte his doghter have.  
 The king, which wolde his honour save,

Qualiter tres filii  
 Principum filiam Re-  
 gis singillatim in vx-  
 orem suis supplicatio-  
 nibus postularunt.

- 839 wolde AdBT 845 Touching(e) AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBTa  
 852a may so AMR 856 and in game] what in game ME, B and  
 what in game CLB<sub>1</sub>, AdT 859 and drinke MCL, BT of drinkyng W  
 860 that om. AMH<sub>1</sub> 872 hir(e) honour AJH<sub>1</sub> . . . L, AdBT

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter filia Regis  
omnibus aliis relictis  
Appolinum in maritum  
preelegit.

Seith sche is siek, and of that speche  
Tho was no time to beseche;  
Bot ech of hem do make a bille  
He bad, and wryte his oghne wille,  
His name, his fader and his good;  
And whan sche wiste hou that it stod,  
And hadde here billes oversein,  
Thei scholden have ansuere ayein. 880  
Of this conseil thei weren glad,  
And writen as the king hem bad,  
And every man his oghne bok P. iii. 305  
Into the kinges hond betok,  
And he it to his dowhter sende,  
And preide hir forto make an ende  
And wryte ayein hire oghne hond,  
Riht as sche in hire herte fond.

The billes weren wel received,  
Bot sche hath alle here loves weyved, 890  
And thoghte tho, was time and space  
To put hire in hir fader grace,  
And wrot ayein and thus sche saide:  
'The schame which is in a Maide  
With speche dar noght ben unloke,  
Bot in writunge it mai be spoke;  
So wryte I to you, fader, thus:  
Bot if I have Appolinus,  
Of al this world, what so betyde,  
I wol non other man abide. 900  
And certes if I of him faile,  
I wot riht wel withoute faile  
Ye schull for me be dowhterles.'  
This lettre cam, and ther was press  
Tofore the king, ther as he stod;  
And whan that he it understod,  
He yaf hem ansuer by and by,  
Bot that was do so prively,  
That non of othres conseil wiste.  
Thei toke her leve, and wher hem liste 910  
Thei wente forth upon here weie.

875 to make AdBT

892 put AJ, S, F putte C, B



## LIBER OCTAVUS

411

The king ne wolde noght bewreie  
 The conseil for no maner hihe,      P. iii. 306  
 Bot soffreth til he time sihe:  
 And whan that he to chambre is come,  
 He hath unto his conseil nome  
 This man of Tyr, and let him se  
 The lettre and al the privete,  
 The which his dowhter to him sente:  
 And he his kne to grounde bente      920  
 And thonketh him and hire also,  
 And er thei wenten thanne atuo,  
 With good herte and with good corage  
 Of full Love and full mariage  
 The king and he ben hol acorded.  
 And after, whanne it was recorded  
 Unto the dowhter hou it stod,  
 The yifte of al this worldes good  
 Ne scholde have mad hir half so blythe:  
 And forth withal the king als swithe,      930  
 For he wol have hire good assent,  
 Hath for the queene hir moder sent.  
 The queene is come, and whan sche herde  
 Of this matiere hou that it ferde,  
 Sche syh debat, sche syh desese,  
 Bot if sche wolde hir dowhter plese,  
 And is therto assented full.  
 Which is a dede wonderfull,  
 For noman knew the sothe cas  
 Bot he himself, what man he was;      940  
 And natheles, so as hem thoghte,  
 Hise dedes to the sothe wroghte  
 That he was come of gentil blod:      P. iii. 307  
 Him lacketh noght bot worldes good,  
 And as therof is no despeir,  
 For sche schal ben hire fader heir,  
 And he was able to governe.  
 Thus wol thei noght the love werne  
 Of him and hire in none wise,

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Rex et Re-  
 gina in maritagium  
 filie sue cum Appoli-  
 no consenserunt.

928 þe worldes A. . Ba, AdT  
 except E), AdA

946 fadres (faders) AM . . . B.



[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Appolinus  
filie Regis nupsit, et  
prima nocte cum ea  
concubiens ipsam im-  
pregnauit.

Qualiter Ambacia-  
tores a Tyro in qua-  
dam nau Pentapoli-  
venientes morti in Re-  
gis Antiochi Appolino  
nunciarunt.

# CONFESSIO AMANTIS

Bot ther acorded thei diuise 950  
The day and time of Mariage.

Wher love is lord of the corage,  
Him thenketh longe er that he spede;  
Bot ate laste unto the dede  
The time is come, and in her wise  
With gret offrende and sacrificse  
Thei wedde and make a riche feste,  
And every thing which was honeste  
Withinnen house and ek withoute  
It was so don, that al aboute 960  
Of gret worschipe, of gret noblesse  
Ther cride many a man largesse  
Unto the lordes hihe and loude;  
The knyhtes that ben yonge and proude,  
Thei jouste ferst and after daunce.  
The day is go, the nyhtes chaunce  
Hath derked al the bryhte Sonne;  
This lord, which hath his love wonne,  
Is go to bedde with his wif,  
Wher as thei ladde a lusti lif, 970  
And that was after somdel sene,  
For as thei pleiden hem betwene,  
Thei gete a child between hem tuo, P. iii. 308  
To whom fell after mochel wo.

Now have I told of the spousailes.  
Bot forto speke of the mervailles  
Whiche afterward to hem befelle,  
It is a wonder forto telle.  
It fell adai thei riden oute,  
The king and queene and al the route, 980  
To pleien hem upon the stronde,  
Wher as thei sen toward the londe  
A Schip sailende of gret array.  
To knowe what it mene may,

950 Paragraph here F ther] al (alle) AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBI  
958 which was] pat was W was Ad was riht AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT  
961 and gret AMH<sub>1</sub>E . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT and of gret X 962 many man  
AH<sub>1</sub>EC, AdBT many men X 970 lede B 975 spousales FK  
979 adai (aday) J, F a dai (a day) AC, SB

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Til it be come thei abide ;  
 Than sen thei stonde on every side,  
 Endlong the schipes bord to schewe,  
 Of Penonceals a riche rewe.  
 Thei axen when the schip is come :  
 Fro Tyr, anon ansuerde some, 990  
 And over this thei seiden more  
 The cause why thei comen fore  
 Was forto seche and forto finde  
 Appolinus, which was of kinde  
 Her liege lord : and he appiereth,  
 And of the tale which he hiereth  
 He was riht glad ; for thei him tolde,  
 That for vengeance, as god it wolde,  
 Antiochus, as men mai wite,  
 With thondre and lythnynge is forsmite ; 1000  
 His doghter hath the same chaunce,  
 So be thei bothe in o balance.  
 'Forthi, oure liege lord, we seie P. iii. 309  
 In name of al the lond, and preie,  
 That left al other thing to done,  
 It like you to come sone  
 And se youre oghne liege men  
 With othre that ben of youre ken,  
 That live in longinge and desir  
 Til ye be come ayein to Tyr.' 1010  
 This tale after the king it hadde  
 Pentapolim al overspradde,  
 Ther was no joie forto seche ;  
 For every man it hadde in speche  
 And seiden alle of on acord,  
 'A worthi king schal ben oure lord :  
 That thoghte ous first an hevinesse  
 Is schape ous now to gret gladnesse.'  
 Thus goth the tidinge overal.  
 Bot nede he mot, that nede schal : 1020  
 Appolinus his leve tok,  
 To god and al the lond betok

1020 Qualiter Appolino  
 cum vxore sua impreg-  
 nata a Pentapoli ver-  
 sus Tyrum nauiganti-

994 was FWK is A . . . B<sub>2</sub>, S . . . Δ 1000 forto smyte AM  
 1009 liuen in AH<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBTA

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

bus, contigit vxorem,  
mortis articulo angus-  
tistam, in naui filiam,  
que postea Thaisis  
vocabatur, parere.

Qualiter Appolinus  
vxoris sue mortem  
planxit.

With al the poeple long and brod,  
That he no lenger there abod.  
The king and queene sorwe made,  
Bot yit somdiel thei weren glade  
Of such thing as thei herden tho :  
And thus between the wel and wo  
To schip he goth, his wif with childe,  
The which was evere meke and mylde 1030  
And wolde noght departe him fro,  
Such love was between hem tuo.  
Lichorida for hire office P. iii 310  
Was take, which was a Norrice,  
To wende with this yonge wif,  
To whom was schape a woful lif.  
Withinne a time, as it betidde,  
Whan thei were in the See amidde,  
Out of the North they sihe a cloude ;  
The storm aros, the wyndes loude 1040  
Thei blewen many a dredful blast,  
The welkne was al overcast,  
The derke nyht the Sonne hath under,  
Ther was a gret tempeste of thunder :  
The Mone and ek the Sterres bothe  
In blake cloudes thei hem clothe,  
Wherof here brihte lok thei hyde.  
This yonge ladi wepte and cride,  
To whom no confort myhte availe ;  
Of childe sche began travaile, 1050  
Wher sche lay in a Caban clos :  
Hire woful lord fro hire aros,  
And that was longe er eny morwe,  
So that in anguisse and in sorwe  
Sche was delivered al be nyhte  
And ded in every mannes syhte ;  
Bot natheles for al this wo  
A maide child was bore tho.

Appolinus whan he this knew,  
For sorwe a swoune he overthrew, 1060

1024 lenger F 1047 here (her) AC, SB hire J, F 1056  
deide AdBT 1060 a swoune JC, SB, F aswoune A

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

That noman wiste in him no lif.  
 And whanne he wok, he seide, 'Ha, wif,  
 Mi lust, mi joie, my desir, P. iii. 311  
 Mi welthe and my recoverir,  
 Why schal I live, and thou schalt dye?  
 Ha, thou fortune, I thee deffie,  
 Nou hast thou do to me thi werste.  
 Ha, herte, why ne wolt thou berste,  
 That forth with hire I myhte passe?  
 Mi peines weren wel the lasse.' 1070  
 In such wepinge and in such cry  
 His dede wif, which lay him by,  
 A thousand sithes he hire kiste;  
 Was nevere man that sih ne wiste  
 A sorwe unto his sorwe lich;  
 For evere among upon the lich  
 He fell swounende, as he that soghte  
 His oghne deth, which he besoghte  
 Unto the goddes alle above  
 With many a pitous word of love; 1080  
 Bot suche wordes as tho were  
 Yit herde nevere mannes Ere,  
 Bot only thilke whiche he seide.  
 The Maister Schipman cam and preide  
 With othre suche as be therinne,  
 And sein that he mai nothing winne  
 Ayein the deth, bot thei him rede,  
 He be wel war and tak hiede,  
 The See be weie of his nature  
 Receive mai no creature 1090  
 Withinne himself as forto holde,  
 The which is ded: forthi thei wolde,  
 As thei conseilen al aboute, P. iii. 312  
 The dede body casten oute.  
 For betre it is, thei seiden alle,  
 That it of hire so befalle,  
 Than if thei scholden alle spille.

1063 and my desir AdBT, W and desir J 1069 it myhte  
 FWK 1076 For evere] Was cuer(e) AH. . . Bz, AdBT Was  
 newre M

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Quahter suadenti-  
bus nautis corpus vx-  
oris sue mortue in  
quadam Cista plumbi  
et ferro obtusa que  
circumligata Appoli-  
nus cum magno the-  
sauro vna cum quadam  
littera sub eius capite  
scripta recludi et in  
mare proieci fecit.

Copia littere Appo-  
lini capiti vxoris sue  
supposite.

The king, which understod here wille  
And knew here conseil that was trewe,  
Began ayein his sorwe newe  
With pitous herte, and thus to seie:

1100

'It is al reson that ye preie.

I am,' quod he, 'bot on al one,  
So wolde I noght for mi persone  
Ther felle such aduersite.

Bot whan it mai no betre be,  
Doth thanne thus upon my word,  
Let make a cofre strong of bord,  
That it be ferm with led and pich.'

Anon was mad a cofre sich,

1110

Al redy broght unto his hond;

And whanne he sih and redy fond  
This cofre mad and wel enclowed,  
The dede bodi was besowed

In cloth of gold and leid therinne.

And for he wolde unto hire winne

Upon som cooste a Sepulture,

Under hire heved in aventure,

Of gold he leide Sommes grete

And of jeueals a strong beyete

1120

Forth with a lettre, and seide thus:

'I, king of Tyr Appollinus,

Do alle maner men to wite,

P. iii. 313

That hiere and se this lettre write,

That helpeles withoute red

Hier lith a kinges doghter ded:

And who that happeth hir to finde,

For charite tak in his mynde,

And do so that sche be begrave

With this tresor, which he schal have.'

1130

Thus whan the lettre was full spoke,

Thei haue anon the cofre stoke,

1098 *Latin here and at* 1122, 1141, 1151, 1324, 1373, 1424 *om.* SA  
(*up to 2029 om.* Δ) 1102 *margin* obtusa que C, B obtusaque A, F  
1106 *margin.* in mari A... Bz, BT 1107 *his* AdBT 1110 sich (suche,  
swiche) AJMRBz, BΔ, W such (suche) H, XECL, SAdT, FK 1120  
of jeueals a<sup>1</sup> of Iewels (Jewels) AM... Bz, AdBT of the Iewels a W  
1128 tak AJ, S, F take C, B 1131 whan (when) AJ, SB whanne F

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

And bounden it with yren faste,  
That it may with the wawes laste,  
And stoppen it be such a weie,  
That it schal be withinne dreie,  
So that no water myhte it grieve.  
And thus in hope and good believe  
Of that the corps schal wel aryve,  
Thei caste it over bord als blyve.

The Schip forth on the wawes wente;  
The prince hath changed his entente,  
And seith he wol noght come at Tyr  
As thanne, bot al his desir  
Is ferst to seilen unto Tharse.

The wyndy Storm began to skarse,  
The Sonne arist, the weder cliereth,  
The Schipman which behinde stiereth,  
Whan that he sih the wyndes saghte,  
Towardes Tharse his cours he straghte.

Bot now to mi matiere ayein,  
To telle as olde bokes sein,  
This dede corps of which ye knowe  
With wynd and water was forthrowe  
Now hier, now ther, til ate laste  
At Ephesim the See upcaste  
The cofre and al that was therinne.  
Of gret merveile now beginne  
Mai hie who that sitteth stille;  
That god wol save mai noght spille.  
Riht as the corps was throwe alonde,  
Ther cam walkende upon the stronde  
A worthi clerc, a Surgien,  
And ek a gret Phisicien,  
Of al that lond the wisest on,  
Which hihte Maister Cerymon;  
Ther were of his disciples some.  
This Maister to the Cofre is come,  
He peiseth ther was somewhat in,  
And bad hem bere it to his In,

1140

Qualiter Appolnus,  
vixoris sue corpore in  
mare proiecto, Tyrum  
relinquens cursum  
suum versus Tharsim  
navigio dolens arri-  
puit.

1150

Qualiter corpus pie  
dicte defuncte super  
litus apud Ephesim  
quidam medicus no-  
mine Cerymon cum  
aliquibus suis discipu-  
lis invenit, quod in  
hospitium suum por-  
tans et extra cistam  
ponens, spiraculo vite  
in ea adhuc inuento,  
ipsam plene sanitati  
restituit.

1160

1170

1142 This prince AJM, SA  
BT 1168 the] his BA, W

1156 margin suum om. A . . . Bs,

• •

E c

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

And goth himselve forth withal.  
 Al that schal falle, falle schal ;  
 They comen hom and tarie noght ;  
 This Cofre is into chambre broght,  
 Which that thei finde faste stoke,  
 Bot thei with craft it have unloke.  
 Thei loken in, where as thei founde  
 A bodi ded, which was bewounde  
 In cloth of gold, as I seide er,  
 The tresor ek thei founden ther 1180  
 Forth with the lettre, which thei rede.  
 And tho thei token betre hiede ;  
 Unsowed was the bodi sone, P. iii. 315  
 And he, which knew what is to done,  
 This noble clerk, with alle haste  
 Began the veines forto taste,  
 And sih hire Age was of youthe,  
 And with the craftes whiche he couthe  
 He soghte and fond a signe of lif.  
 With that this worthi kinges wif 1190  
 Honestely thei token oute,  
 And maden fyres al aboute ;  
 Thei leide hire on a couche softe,  
 And with a scheete warmed ofte  
 Hire colde brest began to hete,  
 Hire herte also to flacke and bete.  
 This Maister hath hire every joingt  
 With certein oile and balsme enoight,  
 And putte a liquour in hire mouth,  
 Which is to fewe clerkes couth, 1200  
 So that sche coevereth ate laste :  
 And ferst hire yhen up sche caste,  
 And whan sche more of strengthe cawhte,  
 Hire Armes bothe forth sche strawhte,  
 Hield up hire hond and pitously  
 Sche spak and seide, ' Ha, wher am I ?  
 Where is my lord, what world is this ? '

1178 was iwounde (I wounde &c.) AM . . . L was I bounde B<sub>1</sub> lay  
 ywounde AdBT 1184 which . . . is] þat . . . was AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>,  
 AdBT 1206 Ha om. MXR, AdBT, W



[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

As sche that wot noght hou it is.  
 Bot Cerymon the worthi leche  
 Ansuerde anon upon hire speche 1210  
 And seith, 'Ma dame, yee ben hiere,  
 Where yee be sauf, as yee schal hiere  
 Hierafterward; forthi as nou P. iii. 316  
 Mi conseil is, conforteth you:  
 For trusteth wel withoute faile,  
 Ther is nothing which schal you faile,  
 That oghte of reson to be do.'  
 Thus passen thei a day or tuo;  
 Thei speke of noght as for an ende,  
 Til sche began somdiel amende, 1220  
 And wiste hireselven what sche mente.

Qualiter vxor Ap-  
 polini sanata domum  
 religionis pecut, vbi  
 sacro velam ne muni-  
 ta castam omni tem-  
 pore se vovuit.

Tho forto knowe hire hol entente,  
 This Maister axeth al the cas,  
 Hou sche cam there and what sche was.  
 'Hou I cam hiere wot I noght,'  
 Quod sche, 'bot wel I am bethoght  
 Of othre thinges al aboute':  
 Fro point to point and tolde him oute  
 Als ferforthli as sche it wiste.  
 And he hire tolde hou in a kiste 1230  
 The See hire threw upon the lond,  
 And what tresor with hire he fond,  
 Which was al redy at hire wille,  
 As he that schop him to fulfille  
 With al his myht what thing he scholde.  
 Sche thonketh him that he so wolde,  
 And al hire herte sche discloseth,  
 And seith him wel that sche supposeth  
 Hire lord be dreint, hir child also;  
 So sih sche noght bot alle wo. 1240  
 Wherof as to the world nomore  
 Ne wol sche torne, and preith therfore  
 That in som temple of the Cite, P. iii. 317  
 To kepe and holde hir chastete,  
 Sche mihte among the wommen duelle.

1222 hol (hool) C, B, F hole AB 1224 margin sacro] facto BT  
 1240 sih] sei] AML



[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Whan he this tale hir herde telle,  
He was riht glad, and made hire knowen  
That he a dowhter of his owen  
Hath, which he wol unto hir yive  
To serve, whil thei bothe live, 1250  
In stede of that which sche hath lost ;  
Al only at his oghne cost  
Sche schal be rendred forth with hire.  
She seith, 'Grant mercy, lieve sire,  
God quite it you, ther I ne may.'  
And thus thei drive forth the day,  
'Til time com that sche was hol ;  
And tho thei take her conseil hol,  
To schape upon good ordinance  
And make a worthi pourveance 1260  
Ayein the day whan thei be veiled.  
And thus, whan that thei be conseiled,  
In blake clothes thei hem clothe,  
This lady and the dowhter bothe,  
And yolde hem to religion.  
The feste and the profession  
After the reule of that degre  
Was mad with gret solempnete,  
Where as Diane is seintefied ;  
Thus stant this lady justefied 1270  
In ordre wher sche thenkth to duelle.

Qualiter Appolinus  
Tharsim nauigans, fi-  
liam suam Thaisim  
Strangulioni et Dioni-  
sie vxori sue educan-  
dam commendauit ; et  
deinde Tyrum adiit,  
vbi cum inestimabili  
gaudio a suis receptus  
est.

Bot now ayeinward forto telle  
In what plit that hire lord stod inne : P. iii. 318  
He seileth, til that he may winne  
The havene of Tharse, as I seide er ;  
And whanne he was aryved ther,  
And it was thurgh the Cite knowe,  
Men myhte se withinne a throwe,  
As who seith, al the toun at ones,  
That come ayein him for the nones, 1280  
To yiven him the reverence,  
So glad thei were of his presence :

1252 line om. B      1253 schal] hap AdBT      1258 took(e) LB<sub>2</sub>  
AdBT, W      1260 made AH<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT      1274 seiled AdBT  
1277 And FW      Tho ACLB<sub>2</sub>, B

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

And thogh he were in his corage  
 Desesed, yit with glad visage  
 He made hem chiere, and to his In,  
 Wher he whilom sojourned in,  
 He goth him straght and was resceived.  
 And whan the presse of poeple is weived,  
 He takth his hoste unto him tho,  
 And seith, 'Mi frend Strangulio, 1290  
 Lo, thus and thus it is befalle,  
 And thou thiself art on of alle,  
 Forth with thi wif, whiche I most triste.  
 Forthi, if it you bothe liste,  
 My doghter Thaise be youre leve  
 I thenke schal with you beleve  
 As for a time; and thus I preie,  
 That sche be kept be alle weie,  
 And whan sche hath of age more,  
 That sche be set to bokes lore. 1300  
 And this avou to god I make,  
 That I schal nevere for hir sake  
 Mi berd for no likinge schave, P. iii. 319  
 Til it befalle that I have  
 In covenable time of age  
 Beset hire unto mariage.'  
 Thus thei acorde, and al is wel,  
 And forto resten him somdel,  
 As for a while he ther sojorneth,  
 And thanne he takth his leve and torneth 1310  
 To Schipe, and goth him hom to Tyr,  
 Wher every man with gret desir  
 Awaiteth upon his comynge.  
 Bot whan the Schip com in seilinge,  
 And thei perceiven it is he,  
 Was nevere yit in no cite  
 Such joie mad as thei tho made;  
 His herte also began to glade  
 Of that he sih the poeple glad.  
 Lo, thus fortune his hap hath lad; 1320

1293 whiche A, S, F which JC, B 1315 And parceiuen þat it B  
 1319 þe FW his ACLB<sub>2</sub>, B

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Thaysis  
vna cum Philotenna  
Strangulionis et Dio-  
nisie filia omnis scien-  
cie et honestatis doc-  
trina imbuta est : set  
Thaisis Philotennam  
precellens in odium  
mortale per inuidiam  
a Dionisia recollecta  
est.

In sondri wise he was travailed,  
Bot hou so evere he be assailed,  
His latere ende schal be good.

And forto speke hou that it stod  
Of Thaise his doghter, wher sche duelleth,  
In Tharse, as the Cronique telleth,  
Sche was wel kept, sche was wel loked,  
Sche was wel tawht, sche was wel boked,  
So wel sche spedde hir in hire youthe  
That sche of every wisdom couthe, 1330  
That forto seche in every lond  
So wys an other noman fond,  
Ne so wel tawht at mannes yhe. P. iii. 320

Bot wo worthe evere fals envie !  
For it befell that time so,  
A dowhter hath Strangulio,  
The which was cleped Philotenne :  
Bot fame, which wole evere renne,  
Cam al day to hir moder Ere,  
And seith, wher evere hir doghter were 1340  
With Thayse set in eny place,  
The comun vois, the comun grace  
Was al upon that other Maide,  
And of hir doghter noman saide.  
Who wroth but Dionise thanne ?  
Hire thoghte a thousand yer til whanne  
Sche myhte ben of Thaise wreke  
Of that sche herde folk so speke.  
And fell that ilke same tyde,  
That ded was trewe Lychoride, 1350  
Which hadde be servant to Thaise,  
So that sche was the worse at aise,  
For sche hath thanne no servise  
Bot only thurgh this Dionise,  
Which was hire dedlich Anemie  
Thurgh pure treson and envie.  
Sche, that of alle sorwe can,  
Tho spak unto hire bondeman,  
Which cleped was Theophilus,

1334 worþe J, F worþ AC, SB

And made him swere in conseil thus, 1360  
 That he such time as sche him sette  
 Schal come Thaise forto fette,  
 And lede hire oute of alle sihte, P. iii. 321  
 Wher as noman hire helpe myhte,  
 Upon the Stronde nyh the See,  
 And there he schal this maiden sle.  
 This cherles herte is in a traunce,  
 As he which drad him of vengance  
 Whan time comth an other day;  
 Bot yit dorste he noght seie nay, 1370  
 Bot swor and seide he schal fulfille  
 Hire hestes at hire oghne wille.

The treson and the time is schape,  
 So fell it that this cherles knape  
 Hath lad this maiden ther he wolde  
 Upon the Stronde, and what sche scholde  
 Sche was adrad; and he out breide  
 A rusti swerd and to hir seide,  
 'Thou schalt be ded.' 'Helas!' quod sche,  
 'Why schal I so?' 'Lo thus,' quod he, 1380  
 'Mi ladi Dionise hath bede,  
 Thou schalt be moerdred in this stede.'  
 This Maiden tho for feere schryhte,  
 And for the love of god almyhte  
 Sche preith that for a litel stounde  
 Sche myhte knele upon the grounde,  
 Toward the hevene forto crave,  
 Hire wofull Soule if sche mai save:  
 And with this noise and with this cry,  
 Out of a barge faste by, 1390  
 Which hidd was ther on Scomerfare,  
 Men sterten out and weren ware  
 Of this feloun, and he to go, P. iii. 322  
 And sche began to crie tho,

[APOLLONIUS OF  
 TYRE]

Qualiter Dionisia  
 Thaisim, ut occidere  
 tur, Theophilo seruo  
 suo tradidit, qui cum  
 noctante, longius ab  
 vrbe ipsam prope litus  
 maris interficere pro-  
 posuerat, Pirate ibi-  
 dem prope latitantes  
 Thaisim de mano Car-  
 nificis eripuerunt, ip-  
 samque vsque Ciuita-  
 tem M telenam ducent-  
 es, cuidam Leonino  
 scortorum ibidem  
 magistro vendiderunt.

1364 wher pat AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT, W 1371 swer(e) E . . . B<sub>1</sub>, K  
 sware X 1373 margin occideret A . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT 1374 cherlish  
 (cherliche &c.) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT, K 1375 wher(e) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>,  
 AdBTΔ, W 1378 margin Pirate ibidem prope] Pirate ibidem  
 A . . . B<sub>1</sub> ibidem BT 1383 margin reddiderunt AM 1388  
 pat sche AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT 1389 and pis cry A

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

'Ha, mercy, help for goddes sake !'  
Into the barge thei hire take,  
As thieves scholde, and forth thei wente.  
Upon the See the wynd hem hente,  
And malgre wher thei wolde or non,  
Tofor the weder forth thei gon,  
Ther halp no Seil, ther halp non Ore,  
Forstormed and forblowen sore  
In gret peril so forth thei dryve,  
Til ate laste thei aryve  
At Mitelene the Cite.

1400

In havene sauf and whan thei be,  
The Maister Schipman made him boun,  
And goth him out into the toun,  
And profreth Thaise forto selle.

On Leonin it herde telle,

1410

Which Maister of the bordel was,  
And bad him gon a redy pas  
To fetten hire, and forth he wente,  
And Thaise out of his barge he hente,  
And to this bordeller hir solde.

And he, that be hire body wolde  
Take advantage, let do crye,

That what man wolde his lecherie  
Attempte upon hire maidenhede,

Lei doun the gold and he schal spede.

1420

And thus whan he hath crid it oute

In syhte of al the poeple aboute,

He ladde hire to the bordel tho.

P. iii. 323

No wonder is thogh sche be wo :

Clos in a chambre be hireselve,

Ech after other ten or tuelve

Of yonge men to hire in wente ;

Bot such a grace god hire sente,

That for the sorwe which sche made

Was non of hem which pouer hade

1430

Qualiter Leoninus  
Thaisim ad lupanar  
destinavit, vbi dei  
gracia preuenta ipsius  
virginitatem nullus  
violare potuit.

1399 thei] sche B 1413 fecchen (fechen) AM... B<sub>2</sub>, AdB sechen T  
1415 hir] he AM... B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT<sub>1</sub> 1416 And þat he by (be) H<sub>1</sub>... B<sub>2</sub>  
And þat by AM 1423 Paragraph here in MSS. 1424 No  
wonder þough sche were wo B No wonder þogh sche be wo Ad

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

To don hire eny vileinie.  
 This Leonin let evere asprie,  
 And waiteth after gret beyete;  
 Bot al for noght, sche was forlete,  
 That mo men wolde ther noght come.  
 Whan he therof hath hiede nome,  
 And knew that sche was yit a maide,  
 Unto his oghne man he saide,  
 That he with strengthe ayein hire leve  
 Tho scholde hir maidenhod bereve. 1440  
 This man goth in, bot so it ferde,  
 Whan he hire wofull pleintes herde  
 And he therof hath take kepe,  
 Him liste betre forto wepe  
 Than don oght elles to the game.  
 And thus sche kepte herself fro schame,  
 And kneleth doun to therthe and preide  
 Unto this man, and thus sche seide:  
 'If so be that thi maister wolde  
 That I his gold encresce scholde, 1450  
 It mai noght falle be this weie:  
 Bot soffre me to go mi weie  
 Out of this hous wher I am inne, P. iii. 324  
 And I schal make him forto winne  
 In som place elles of the toun,  
 Be so it be religioun,  
 Wher that honeste wommen duelle.  
 And thus thou myht thi maister telle,  
 That whanne I have a chambre there,  
 Let him do crie ay wyde where, 1460  
 What lord that hath his doghter diere,  
 And is in will that sche schal liere  
 Of such a Scole that is trewe,  
 I schal hire teche of thinges newe,  
 Which as non other womman can  
 In al this lond.' And tho this man

1435 nomen wolde þer noght come K nomen wolden þeer (þer)  
 come AM no man (noman) wolde þer(e) come H<sub>1</sub>... B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT mo men  
 wolde ther none come W 1447 kneled BTΔ 1450 good BT  
 1456 be of rel. AM... B<sub>2</sub>, BT 1465 Which þat AM... B<sub>2</sub>, BT

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Thaisis a  
lupanari virgo liber-  
ata, inter sacras muli-  
eres hospicium ha-  
bens, sciencias quibus  
edocta fuit nobiles  
regni puellas ibidem  
edocebat.

Qualiter Theophilus  
ad Dionisiam mane  
rediens affirmavit se  
Thaisim occidisse; su-  
per quo Dionisia vna  
cum Strangulione ma-  
rito suo dolorem in  
publico confingentes,  
exequias et sepultu-  
ram honorifice quan-

Hire tale hath herd, he goth ayein,  
And tolde unto his maister plein  
That sche hath seid; and therupon,  
Whan than he sih beyete non 1470  
At the bordel be cause of hire,  
He bad his man to gon and spire  
A place wher sche myhte abyde,  
That he mai winne upon som side  
Be that sche can: bot ate leste  
Thus was sche sauf fro this tempeste.

He hath hire fro the bordel take,  
Bot that was noght for goddes sake,  
Bot for the lucre, as sche him tolde.  
Now comen tho that comen wolde 1480  
Of wommen in her lusty youthe,  
To hiere and se what thing sche couthe:  
Sche can the wisdom of a clerk, P. iii. 325  
Sche can of every lusti werk  
Which to a gentil womman longeth,  
And some of hem sche underfongeth  
To the Citole and to the Harpe,  
And whom it liketh forto carpe  
Proverbes and demandes slyhe,  
An other such thei nevere syhe, 1490  
Which that science so wel tawhte:  
Wherof sche grete yftes cawhte,  
That sche to Leonin hath wonne;  
And thus hire name is so begonne  
Of sondri thinges that she techeth,  
That al the lond unto hir secheth  
Of yonge wommen forto liere.

Nou lete we this maiden hiere,  
And speke of Dionise ayein  
And of Theophile the vilein, 1500  
Of whiche I spak of nou tofore.  
Whan Thaise scholde have be forlore,  
This false cherl to his lady  
Whan he cam hom, al prively

1476 fro] of AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT      1484 eny AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, B  
1500 Theophile AJC, T, F    Theophil B      1503 margin confingentes F

He seith, 'Ma Dame, slain I have  
This maide Thaise, and is begrave  
In prive place, as ye me biede.

Forthi, ma dame, taketh hiede

And kep conseil, hou so it stonde.'

This fend, which this hath understonde,

1510

Was glad, and weneth it be soth :

Now herkne, hierafter hou sche doth.

Sche wepth, sche sorweth, sche compleigneth, P. iii. 326

And of sieknesse which sche feigneth

Sche seith that Taise sodeinly

Be nyhte is ded, 'as sche and I

Togedre lyhen nyh my lord.'

Sche was a womman of record,

And al is lieved that sche seith ;

And forto yive a more feith,

1520

Hire housebonde and ek sche bothe

In blake clothes thei hem clothe,

And made a gret enterrement ;

And for the poeple schal be blent,

Of Thaise as for the remembrance,

After the real olde usance

A tumbere of latoun noble and riche

With an ymage unto hir liche

Liggende above therupon

Thei made and sette it up anon.

1530

Hire Epitaffe of good assisse

Was write aboute, and in this wise

It spak : 'O yee that this beholde,

Lo, hier lith sche, the which was holde

The faireste and the flour of alle,

Whos name Thaisis men calle.

The king of Tyr Appolinus

Hire fader was : now lith sche thus.

Fourtiene yer sche was of Age,

Whan deth hir tok to his viage.'

1540

Thus was this false treson hidd,

Qualiter Appolinus  
in regno suo apud

1505 ich haue AM      1509 kepeþ BT      1512 Now se her  
after B    Now hiere after T      1513 sorweth] crieþ BT      1523  
make BT    om. W      1534 the om. AM, Δ, W

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

tum ad extra subdola  
coniectacione fieri  
constituerunt.



[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Tyrum existens par-  
liamentum fieri con-  
stituit.

Qualiter Appolinus  
post parliamentum  
Tharsim pro Thaise  
filia sua querenda adiit,  
qua ibidem non in-  
venta abinde navigio  
recessit.

Which afterward was wyde kidd,  
As be the tale a man schal hiere.  
Bot forto clare mi matiere,  
To Tyr I thenke torne ayein,  
And telle as the Croniques sein.  
Whan that the king was comen hom,  
And hath left in the salte fom  
His wif, which he mai noght foryete,  
For he som confort wolde gete,  
He let somoun a parlement,  
To which the lordes were asent;  
And of the time he hath ben oute,  
He seth the thinges al aboute,  
And told hem ek hou he hath fare,  
Whil he was out of londe fare;  
And preide hem alle to abyde,  
For he wolde at the same tyde  
Do schape for his wyves mynde,  
As he that wol noght ben unkinde.  
Solempne was that ilke office,  
And riche was the sacrifice,  
The feste reali was holde:  
And therto was he wel beholde;  
For such a wif as he hadde on  
In thilke daies was ther non.

Whan this was do, thanne he him thoghte  
Upon his doghter, and besoghte  
Suche of his lordes as he wolde,  
That thei with him to Tharse scholde,  
To fette his doghter Taise there:  
And thei anon al redy were,  
To schip they gon and forth thei wente,  
Til thei the havene of Tharse hente.  
They londe and faile of that thei seche  
Be coverture and sleyhte of speche:  
This false man Strangulio,  
And Dionise his wif also,  
That he the betre trowe myhte,

1544 forto clare] to declare AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT  
tolde C

P. iii. 327

1550

1560

1570

P. iii. 328

1555 told A, B, F

Thei ladden him to have a sihte  
 Wher that hir tombe was arraied.  
 The lasse yit he was mispaied,  
 And natheles, so as he dorste,  
 He curseth and seith al the worste  
 Unto fortune, as to the blinde,  
 Which can no seker weie finde;  
 For sche him neweth evere among,  
 And medleth sorwe with his song.  
 Bot sithe it mai no betre be,

1580 [APOLLONIUS OF  
 TYRE.]

He thonketh god and forth goth he  
 Seilende toward Tyr ayein.  
 Bot sodeinly the wynd and reyn  
 Begonne upon the See debate,  
 So that he soffre mot algate  
 The lawe which Neptune ordeigneth;  
 Wherof fulofte time he pleigneth,  
 And hield him wel the more esmaied  
 Of that he hath tofore assaied.

1590 Qualiter Nauis Ap-  
 polini ventis agitata  
 portum vrbis Mitelene  
 in die quo festa Nep-  
 tuni celebrare con-  
 sueuerunt applicuit;  
 set ipse pre dolore  
 Thaysis filiesue, quam  
 mortuam reputabat, in  
 fundo nauis obscuro  
 iacens lumen videre  
 noluit.

So that for pure sorwe and care,  
 Of that he seth his world so fare,  
 The reste he lefte of his Caban,  
 That for the conseil of noman  
 Ayein therinne he nolde come,  
 Bot hath benethe his place nome,  
 Wher he wepende al one lay,  
 Ther as he sih no lyht of day.  
 And thus tofor the wynd thei dryve,  
 Til longe and late thei aryve  
 With gret distresce, as it was sene,  
 Upon this toun of Mitelene,  
 Which was a noble cite tho.  
 And hapneth thilke time so,  
 The lordes bothe and the comune  
 The hihe festes of Neptune  
 Upon the stronde at the rivage,  
 As it was custumme and usage,  
 Sollempneliche thei besihe.

1600

P. iii. 329

1610

1590 Paragraph here FWK, at 1595 in most other copies  
 margin celebrari A . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT, W

1593

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Athenagoras vrbis Mitelene Princeps, nauim Appollini inuestigans, ipsum sic contristatum nichilque respondentem consolari satagebat.

Whan thei this strange vessel syhe  
Come in, and hath his Seil aualed,  
The toun therof hath spoke and taled. 1620  
The lord which of the cite was,  
Whos name is Athenagoras,  
Was there, and seide he wolde se  
What Schip it is, and who thei be  
That ben therinne: and after sone,  
Whan that he sih it was to done,  
His barge was for him arraied,  
And he goth forth and hath assaied.  
He fond the Schip of gret Array,  
Bot what thing it amonte may, 1630  
He seth thei maden hevy chiere,  
Bot wel him thenkth be the manere  
That thei be worthi men of blod, P. iii. 330  
And axeth of hem hou it stod;  
And thei him tellen al the cas,  
Hou that here lord fordrive was,  
And what a sorwe that he made,  
Of which ther mai noman him glade.  
He preith that he here lord mai se,  
Bot thei him tolde it mai noght be, 1640  
For he lith in so derk a place,  
That ther may no wiht sen his face:  
Bot for al that, thogh hem be loth,  
He fond the ladre and doun he goth,  
And to him spak, bot non ansuere  
Ayein of him ne mihte he bere  
For oght that he can don or sein;  
And thus he goth him up ayein.

Tho was ther spoke in many wise  
Amonges hem that weren wise, 1650  
Now this, now that, bot ate laste  
The wisdom of the toun this caste,  
That yonge Taise were asent.  
For if ther be amendement

Qualiter precepto Principis, vt Appollinum consolaretur, Thaisis cum cithara

1621 þat cite H<sub>1</sub>XELB<sub>2</sub>, BT 1633 be] were B 1637 which a s.  
AM... B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT 1641 so] þe AM 1646 here LB<sub>2</sub>, Δ, W 1649  
Paragraph here ALB<sub>2</sub>, BT at 1652 J, SAd, FW Tho] Thus A . . . B<sub>2</sub>

To glade with this woful king,  
 Sche can so moche of every thing,  
 That sche schal gladen him anon.  
 A Messenger for hire is gon,  
 And sche cam with hire Harpe on honde,  
 And seide hem that sche wolde fonde 1660  
 Be alle weies that sche can,  
 To glade with this sory man.  
 Bot what he was sche wiste noght, P. iii. 331  
 Bot al the Schip hire bath besoght  
 That sche hire wit on him despende,  
 In aunter if he myhte amende,  
 And sein it schal be wel aquit.  
 Whan sche hath understonden it,  
 Sche goth hir doun, ther as he lay,  
 Wher that sche harpeth many a lay 1670  
 And lich an Angel sang withal;  
 Bot he nomore than the wal  
 Tok hiede of eny thing he herde.  
 And whan sche sih that he so ferde,  
 Sche falleth with him into wordes,  
 And telleth him of sondri bordes,  
 And axeth him demandes strange,  
 Wherof sche made his herte change,  
 And to hire speche his Ere he leide  
 And hath merveile of that sche seide. 1680  
 For in proverbe and in probleme  
 Sche spak, and bad he scholde deme  
 In many soubtil question:  
 Bot he for no suggestioun  
 Which toward him sche couthe stere,  
 He wolde noght o word ansuere,  
 Bot as a madd man ate laste  
 His heved wepende away he caste,  
 And half in wraththe he bad hire go.  
 Bot yit sche wolde noght do so, 1690  
 And in the derke forth sche goth,  
 Til sche him toucheth, and he wroth,

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

sua ad ipsum in ob-  
scuro nauis, ubi jace-  
bat, producta est

1661 all(c) þe weies AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT 1683 many F many  
 a ALB<sub>1</sub>, B, W 1687 madd man S madd mad man F

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter, sicut deus  
destinauit, pater fi-  
liam inuentam recog-  
nouit.

And after hire with his hond P. iii. 332  
He smot : and thus whan sche him fond

Desesed, courtaisly sche saide,  
'Avoi, mi lord, I am a Maide ;  
And if ye wiste what I am,  
And out of what lignage I cam,  
Ye wolde noght be so salvage.'

With that he sobreth his corage 1700  
And put away his hevy chiere.

Bot of hem tuo a man mai liere  
What is to be so sibb of blod :  
Non wiste of other hou it stod,  
And yit the fader ate laste

His herte upon this maide caste,  
That he hire loveth kindely,  
And yit he wiste nevere why.

Bot al was knowe er that thei wente ;  
For god, which wot here hol entente, 1710  
Here hertes bothe anon descloseth.

This king unto this maide opposeth,  
And axeth ferst what was hire name,  
And wher sche lerned al this game,  
And of what ken that sche was come.  
And sche, that hath hise wordes nome,  
Ansuerth and seith, ' My name is Thaise,  
That was som time wel at aise :

In Tharse I was forthdrawe and fed,  
Ther lerned I, til I was sped, 1720  
Of that I can. Mi fader eke

I not wher that I scholde him seke ;  
He was a king, men tolde me : P. iii. 333  
Mi Moder dreint was in the See.'

Fro point to point al sche him tolde,  
That sche hath longe in herte holde,  
And nevere dorste make hir mone  
Bot only to this lord al one,

To whom hire herte can noght hele,  
Torne it to wo, torne it to wele, 1730

1710 hol B, F hole AB<sub>2</sub> 1713 was FW is ALB<sub>2</sub>, B 1715  
that om. AM, W

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Torne it to good, torne it to harm.  
 And he tho toke hire in his arm,  
 Bot such a joie as he tho made  
 Was nevere sen; thus be thei glade,  
 That sory hadden be toforn.  
 Fro this day forth fortune hath sworn  
 To sette him upward on the whiel;  
 So goth the world, now wo, now wel:  
 This king hath founde newe grace,  
 So that out of his derke place  
 He goth him up into the liht,  
 And with him cam that swete wiht,  
 His doghter Thaise, and forth anon  
 Thei bothe into the Caban gon  
 Which was ordeigned for the king,  
 And ther he dede of al his thing,  
 And was arraied realy.

1740

And out he cam al openly,  
 Wher Athenagoras he fond,  
 'The which was lord of al the lond:  
 He preith the king to come and se  
 His castell bothe and his cite,  
 And thus thei gon forth alle in fiere, P.iii. 334  
 This king, this lord, this maiden diere.  
 This lord tho made hem riche feste  
 With every thing which was honeste,  
 To plesse with this worthi king,  
 Ther lacketh him no maner thing:  
 Bot yit for al his noble array  
 Wifles he was into that day,  
 As he that yit was of yong Age;  
 So fell ther into his corage  
 The lusti wo, the glade peine  
 Of love, which noman restreigne  
 Yit nevere myhte as nou tofore.  
 This lord thenkth al his world forlore,  
 Bot if the king wol don him grace;

Qualiter Athenagoras Appolinum de nauī in hospiciū honorifice recollegit, et Thaisim, patre consenciente, in vxorem duxit.

1750

1760

1732 toke J, S, F tok (took) AEC, B 1750 þat lond AJM,  
 SA 1754 maiden] doughter B 1756 which was þo h. AM  
 1761 of yong] 3ong of E, B

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Appolinus  
vna cum filia et eius  
marito nauim ingredi-  
entes a Mitclena vs-  
que Tharsim cursum  
proposuerunt. Set  
Appolinus in somp-  
nis ammonitus versus  
Ephesim, vt ibidem in  
templo Diane sacri-  
ficaret, vela per mare  
diuertit.

He waiteth time, he waiteth place,  
Him thoghte his herte wol tobreke,  
Til he mai to this maide speke  
And to hir fader ek also  
For mariage: and it fell so,  
That al was do riht as he thoghte,  
His pourpos to an ende he broghte,  
Sche weddeth him as for hire lord;  
Thus be thei alle of on acord.

1770

Whan al was do riht as thei wolde,  
The king unto his Sone tolde  
Of Tharse thilke traiterie,  
And seide hou in his compaignie  
His doghter and himselven eke  
Schull go vengeance forto seke.

1780

The Schipes were redy sone,  
And whan thei sihe it was to done,  
Withoute lette of eny wente  
With Seil updrawe forth thei wente  
Towardes Tharse upon the tyde.  
Bot he that wot what schal betide,  
The hihe god, which wolde him kepe,  
Whan that this king was faste aslepe,  
Be nyhtes time he hath him bede  
To seile into an other stede:  
To Ephesim he bad him drawe,  
And as it was that time lawe,  
He schal do there his sacrificise;  
And ek he bad in alle wise  
That in the temple amonges alle  
His fortune, as it is befalle,  
Touchende his doghter and his wif  
He schal beknowe upon his lif.

P. iii. 335

1790

1800

The king of this Avisioun  
Hath gret ymaginacioun,  
What thing it signefie may;  
And natheles, whan it was day,  
He bad caste Ancher and abod;  
And whil that he on Ancher rod,

1790 þe king JC

1792 vnto H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdB, W

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

The wynd, which was tofore strange,  
 Upon the point began to change,  
 And torneth thider as it scholde.  
 Tho knew he wel that god it wolde, 1810  
 And bad the Maister make him yare,  
 Tofor the wynd for he wol fare  
 To Ephesim, and so he dede. P. iii. 336

And whanne he cam unto the stede  
 Where as he scholde londe, he londeth  
 With al the haste he máy, and fondeth  
 To schapen him be such a wise,  
 That he may be the morwe arise  
 And don after the mandement  
 Of him which hath him thider sent. 1820

And in the wise that he thoghte,  
 Upon the morwe so he wroghte;  
 His doghter and his Sone he nom,  
 And forth unto the temple he com  
 With a gret route in compaignie,  
 Hise yiftes forto sacrifie.  
 The citezeins tho herden seie  
 Of such a king that cam to preie  
 Unto Diane the godesse,  
 And left al other besinesse, 1830  
 Thei comen thider forto se  
 The king and the solempnete.

With worthi knyhtes environed  
 The king himself hath abandoned  
 Into the temple in good entente.  
 The dore is up, and he in wente,  
 Wher as with gret devocioun  
 Of holi contemplacioun  
 Withinne his herte he made his schrifte;  
 And after that a riche yifte 1840  
 He offreth with gret reverence,  
 And there in open Audience  
 Of hem that stoden thanne aboute, P. iii. 337  
 He tolde hem and declareth oute

Qualiter Appolinus  
 Ephesim in templo  
 Dianes sacrificans, vxo-  
 rem suam ibidem vela-  
 tam inuenit; qua se-  
 cum assumpta in Na-  
 uim, versus Tyrum re-  
 gressus est.

1836 he in F in he A . . . B<sub>1</sub>, S . . . Δ, WK 1842 euidence AdBT  
 1843 thanne aboute] al (alle) aboute AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdT þer aboute B



APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

His hap, such as him is befallē,  
 Ther was nothing foryete of alle.  
 His wif, as it was goddes grace,  
 Which was professed in the place,  
 As sche that was Abbesse there,  
 Unto his tale hath leid hire Ere : 1850  
 Sche knew the vois and the visage,  
 For pure joie as in a rage  
 Sche strawhte unto him al at ones,  
 And fell aswoune upon the stones,  
 Wherof the temple flor was paved.  
 Sche was anon with water laved,  
 Til sche cam to herself ayein,  
 And thanne sche began to sein :  
 ' Ha, blessed be the hihe sonde,  
 That I mai se myn housebonde, 1860  
 That whilom he and I were on !'  
 The king with that knew hire anon,  
 And tok hire in his Arm and kiste ;  
 And al the toun thus sone it wiste.  
 Tho was ther joie manyfold,  
 For every man this tale hath told  
 As for miracle, and were glade,  
 Bot nevere man such joie made  
 As doth the king, which hath his wif.  
 And whan men herde hou that hir lif 1870  
 Was saved, and be whom it was,  
 Thei wondren alle of such a cas :  
 Thurgh al the Lond aros the speche P. iii. 338  
 Of Maister Cerymon the leche  
 And of the cure which he dede.  
 The king himself tho hath him bede,  
 And ek this queene forth with him,  
 That he the toun of Ephesim  
 Wol leve and go wher as thei be,  
 For nevere man of his degre 1880  
 Hath do to hem so mochel good ;  
 And he his profit understod,

1854 aswowe AM aswoven B 1861 That] Which AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>,  
 AdBT 1877 þe queene AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT

And granteth with hem forto wende.  
 And thus thei maden there an ende,  
 And token leve and gon to Schipe  
 With al the hole felaschipe.

[APOLLONIUS OF  
 TYRE.]

This king, which nou hath his desir,  
 Seith he wol holde his cours to Tyr.  
 Thei hadden wynd at wille tho,  
 With topseilcole and forth they go,  
 And striken nevere, til thei come  
 To Tyr, where as thei havene nome,  
 And londen hem with mochel blisse.  
 Tho was ther many a mowth to kisse,  
 Echon welcometh other hom,  
 Bot whan the queen to londe com,  
 And Thaise hir doghter be hir side,  
 The joie which was thilke tyde  
 Ther mai no mannes tunge telle :

Qualiter Appolinus  
 vna cum vxore et filia  
 sua Thyrum applicuit.

1890

'Thei seiden alle, 'Hier comth the welle  
 Of alle wommannysshe grace.'  
 The king hath take his real place,  
 The quene is into chambre go : P. iii. 339  
 Ther was gret feste arraied tho ;  
 Whan time was, thei gon to mete,  
 Alle olde sorwes ben foryete,  
 And gladen hem with joies newe :  
 'The descoloured pale hewe  
 Is now become a rody cheke,  
 Ther was no merthe forto seke,  
 Bot every man hath that he wolde.

1910

The king, as he wel couthe and scholde,  
 Makth to his poeple riht good chiere ;  
 And after sone, as thou schalt hiere,  
 A parlement he hath sommoned,  
 Wher he his doghter hath coroned  
 Forth with the lord of Mitelene,  
 That on is king, that other queene :  
 And thus the fadres ordinance

Qualiter Appolinus  
 Athenagoram cum  
 Thaise vxore sua su-  
 per Tyrum coronari  
 fecit.

1890 topseil(e) cole H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBTΔ, W 1892 havene]  
 haue C, AdBT, W þe hauen B<sub>2</sub> 1911 what he w. X . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT  
 1912 ff. *margin* Qualiter—fecit *om.* BΔ

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Qualiter Appolinus  
a Tyro per mare ver-  
sus Tharsim iter arri-  
piens vindictam contra  
Strangulionem et Di-  
onisiā vxorem suam  
pro iniuria, quam ipsi  
Thaisi filie sue intule-  
runt, iudicialiter asse-  
cutus est.

This lond hath set in governance, 1920  
And seide thanne he wolde wende  
To Tharse, forto make an ende  
Of that his doghter was betrayed.  
Therof were alle men wel paied,  
And seide hou it was forto done :  
The Schipes weren redi sone,  
And strong pouer with him he tok ;  
( Up to the Sky he caste his lok,  
( And syh the wynd was covenable.  
Thei hale up Ancher with the cable, 1930  
The Seil on hih, the Stiere in honde,  
And seilen, til thei come alonde  
At Tharse nyh to the cite ; P. iii. 340  
And whan thei wisten it was he, .  
The toun hath don him reverence.  
He telleth hem the violence,  
Which the tretour Strangulio  
And Dionise him hadde do  
Touchende his dowhter, as yee herde ;  
And whan thei wiste hou that it ferde, 1940  
As he which pes and love soghte,  
Unto the toun this he besoghte,  
To don him riht in juggement.  
Anon thei were bothe asent  
With strengthe of men, and comen sone,  
And as hem thoghte it was to done,  
Atteint thei were be the lawe  
And diemed forto honge and drawe,  
And brent and with the wynd toblowe,  
That al the world it myhte knowe : 1950  
And upon this condicion  
The dom in execucion  
Was put anon withoute faile.  
And every man hath gret mervaile,

1920 lord B 1921 thanne] þat AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT 1924 Wher  
of (Wherof) H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT, W 1927 And FW A ACLB<sub>2</sub>,  
B 1928 Up to] Vpon AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT 1931 on honde  
AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT, W 1939 he herde AM, W 1940 wiste(n)  
how it AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT, W

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Which herde tellen of this chance,  
 And thonketh goddes pourveance,  
 Which doth mercy forth with justice.  
 Slain is the moerdrer and moerdrice  
 Thurgh verray trowthe of rihtwisnesse,  
 And thurgh mercy sauf is simplesse 1960  
 Of hire whom mercy preserveth;  
 Thus hath he wel that wel deserveth.

Whan al this thing is don and ended, P. iii. 341  
 This king, which loved was and frended,  
 A lettre hath, which cam to him  
 Be Schipe fro Pentapolim,  
 Be which the lond hath to him write,  
 That he wolde understonde and wite  
 Hou in good mynde and in good pes  
 Ded is the king Artestrates, 1970

Qualiter Artestrate  
 Pentapolim Rege mor-  
 tuo, ipsi de regno Epi-  
 stolas super hoc Ap-  
 polino direxerunt:  
 vnde Appolinus vna  
 cum vxore sua ibidem  
 aduenientes ad decus  
 imperii cum magno  
 gaudio coronati sunt.

Wherof thei alle of on acord  
 Him preiden, as here liege lord,  
 That he the lettre wel conceive  
 And come his regne to receive,  
 Which god hath yove him and fortune;  
 And thus besoghte the commune  
 Forth with the grete lordes alle.  
 This king sih how it was befalle,  
 Fro Tharse and in prosperite  
 He tok his leve of that Cite 1980  
 And goth him into Schipe ayein:  
 The wynd was good, the See was plein,  
 Hem nedeth noght a Riff to slake,  
 Til thei Pentapolim have take.  
 The lond, which herde of that tidinge,  
 Was wonder glad of his cominge;  
 He resteth him a day or tuo  
 And tok his conseil to him tho,  
 And sette a time of Parlement,  
 Wher al the lond of on assent 1990  
 Forth with his wif hath him corouned,

1967 In which AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT  
 H<sub>1</sub>EL, W wol(e) resceyue AdBT  
 was falle L

1973 wil (wol) conceyue  
 1978 is befalle AdB, W

[APOLLONIUS OF  
TYRE.]

Wher alle goode him was fuisouned.  
Lo, what it is to be wel grounded : P. iii. 342  
For he hath ferst his love founded  
Honesteliche as forto wedde,  
Honesteliche his love he spedde  
And hadde children with his wif,  
And as him liste he ladde his lif;  
And in ensample his lif was write,  
That alle lovers myhten wite 2000  
How ate laste it schal be sene  
Of love what thei wolden mene.  
For se now on that other side,  
Antiochus with al his Pride,  
Which sette his love unkindely,  
His ende he hadde al sodeinly,  
Set ayein kinde upon vengeance,  
And for his lust hath his penance.

Confessor ad Aman-  
tem.

Lo thus, mi Sone, myht thou liere  
What is to love in good manere, 2010  
And what to love in other wise :  
The mede arist of the servise ;  
Fortune, thogh sche be noght stable,  
Yit at som time is favorable  
To hem that ben of love trewe.  
Bot certes it is forto rewe  
To se love ayein kinde falle,  
For that makth sore a man to falle,  
As thou myht of tofore rede.  
Forthi, my Sone, I wolde rede 2020  
To lete al other love aweie,  
Bot if it be thurgh such a weie  
As love and reson wolde acorde. P. iii. 343  
For elles, if that thou descorde,  
And take lust as doth a beste,  
Thi love mai noght ben honeste ;  
For be no skile that I finde

1992 was him AM, Δ, W      1999 his lif was write A . . . B<sub>2</sub>,  
S . . . Δ as it is write FWK      2006 he hadde al] he hadde J,  
SΔ (had) hadde (had) AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT      2009 *margin* Confessor  
ad Amantem om. JEC, AdBT      Confessor B<sub>2</sub>, Δ, W

Such lust is noght of loves kinde.

    Mi fader, hou so that it stonde,  
 Youre tale is herd and understonde,  
 As thing which worthi is to hiere,  
 Of gret ensample and gret matiere,  
 Wherof, my fader, god you quyte.

Bot in this point miself aquite

I mai riht wel, that nevere yit

I was assoted in my wit,

Bot only in that worthi place

Wher alle lust and alle grace

Is set, if that danger ne were.

Bot that is al my moste fere:

I not what ye fortune acompte,

Bot what thing danger mai amonte

I wot wel, for I have assaied;

For whan myn herte is best arraied

And I have al my wit thurghsoght

Of love to beseche hire oght,

For al that evere I skile may,

I am concluded with a nay:

That o sillable hath overthrowe

A thousand wordes on a rowe

Of suche as I best speke can;

Thus am I bot a lewed man.

Bot, fader, for ye ben a clerk

Of love, and this matiere is derk,

And I can evere leng the lasse,

Bot yit I mai noght let it passe,

Youre hole conseil I beseche,

That ye me be som weie teche

What is my beste, as for an ende.

    Mi Sone, unto the trouthe wende

Now wol I for the love of thee,

And lete alle othre truffles be.

    The more that the nede is hyh,

    The more it nedeth to be slyh

[THE LOVER RE-  
 QUIRES COUNSEL.]

2030 Confessio Amantis,  
 vnde pro finali con-  
 clusione consilium  
 Confessoris impetrat.

2040

2050

P. iii. 344

2060

2047 skile] sike AdBT      2056 let S, F lete AJ, B  
 truffles AJC, S, F trifles (triffles) L, B travaux W

2062

[THE CONFESSOR  
REPLIES.]

4

Hic super Amoris  
causa finita confes-  
sione, Confessor Ge-  
nius Amanti ea que  
sibi salubrius expedi-  
unt, asno consilio fina-  
liter iniungit.

To him which hath the nede on honde.

I have wel herd and understonde,

Mi Sone, al that thou hast me seid,

And ek of that thou hast me preid,

Nou at this time that I schal

As for conclusioun final

2070

Conseile upon thi nede sette:

So thenke I finaly to knette

This cause, where it is tobroke,

And make an ende of that is spoke.

For I behihte thee that yifte

Ferst whan thou come under my schrifte,

That thogh I toward Venus were,

Yit spak I suche wordes there,

That for the Presthod which I have,

Min ordre and min astat to save,

2080

I seide I wolde of myn office

To vertu more than to vice

Encline, and teche thee mi lore.

P. iii. 345

Forthi to speken overmore

Of love, which thee mai availe,

Tak love where it mai noght faile:

For as of this which thou art inne,

Be that thou seist it is a Sinne,

And Sinne mai no pris deserve,

Withoute pris and who schal serve,

2090

I not what profit myhte availe.

Thus folweth it, if thou travaile,

Wher thou no profit hast ne pris,

Thou art toward thiself unwis:

And sett thou myhtest lust atteigne,

Of every lust thende is a peine,

And every peine is good to fle;

So it is wonder thing to se,

Why such a thing schal be desired.

2071 Conseile J, S, F Conseil (Counseil) AC, B  
(þy) cause A . . . B<sub>1</sub>, S . . . Δ where] þer B  
faile] auaile AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT (line om. R) 2095 sett] siþe (siþ,  
seþþe &c.) JH<sub>1</sub>ERLB<sub>1</sub>, AdBT, W sertein if Δ 2098 it is H<sub>1</sub>,  
FK is it AJMX . . . B<sub>1</sub>, S . . . Δ, W

2073 Thi

2086 noght

2095 sett] siþe (siþ,

2098 it is H<sub>1</sub>,

The more that a Stock is fyred, 2100 [THE CONFESSOR  
 The rathere into Aisshe it torneth ; REPLIES.]  
 The fot which in the weie sporneth  
 Fulofte his heved hath overthrowe ;  
 Thus love is blind and can noght knowe  
 Wher that he goth, til he be falle :  
 Forthi, bot if it so befalle  
 With good conseil that he be lad,  
 Him oghte forto ben adrad.  
 For conseil passeth alle thing  
 To him which thenkth to ben a king ; 2110  
 And every man for his partie  
 A kingdom hath to justefie,  
 That is to sein his oghne dom. P. iii. 346  
 If he misreule that kingdom,  
 He lest himself, and that is more  
 Than if he loste Schip and Ore  
 And al the worldes good withal :  
 For what man that in special  
 Hath noght himself, he hath noght elles,  
 Nomor the perles than the schelles ; 2120  
 Al is to him of o value :  
 Thogh he hadde at his retenue  
 The wyde world riht as he wolde,  
 Whan he his herte hath noght withholde  
 Toward himself, al is in vein.  
 And thus, my Sone, I wolde sein,  
 As I seide er, that thou aryse,  
 Er that thou falle in such a wise  
 That thou ne myht thiself rekevere ;  
 For love, which that blind was evèr, 2130  
 Makth alle his servantz blinde also.  
 My Sone, and if thou have be so,  
 Yit is it time to withdrawe,  
 And set thin herte under that lawe,  
 The which of reson is governed  
 And noght of will. And to be lerned,  
 Ensamples thou hast many on



[THE CONFESSOR  
REPLIES.]

Of now and ek of time gon,  
That every lust is bot a while;  
And who that wole himself beguile, 2140  
He may the rather be deceived.  
Mi Sone, now thou hast conceived  
Somwhat of that I wolde mene; P. iii. 347  
Hierafterward it schal be sene  
If that thou lieve upon mi lore;  
For I can do to thee nomore  
Bot teche thee the rihte weie:  
Now ches if thou wolt live or deie,

[THE CONTROVERSY.]

Hic loquitur de con-  
trouersia, que inter  
Confessorem et Aman-  
tem in fine confessio-  
nis versabatur.

Mi fader, so as I have herd  
Your tale, bot it were ansuerd, 2150  
I were mochel forto blame.  
Mi wo to you is bot a game,  
That fielen noght of that I fiele;  
The fieling of a mannes Hiele  
Mai noght be likned to the Herte:  
I mai noght, thogh I wolde, asterte,  
And ye be fre from al the peine  
Of love, wherof I me pleigne.  
It is riht esi to comaunde;  
The hert which fre goth on the launde 2160  
Not of an Oxe what him eileth;  
It falleth ofte a man merveileth  
Of that he seth an other fare,  
Bot if he knewe himself the fare,  
And felt it as it is in soth,  
He scholde don riht as he doth,  
Or elles werse in his degre:  
For wel I wot, and so do ye,  
That love hath evere yit ben used,  
So mot I nedes ben excused. 2170  
Bot, fader, if ye wolde thus  
Unto Cupide and to Venus  
Be frendlich toward mi querele, P. iii. 348  
So that myn herte were in hele

2198 agon (a goon) H<sub>1</sub>RCB<sub>2</sub>, AdBT, W      2153 That feelen noght  
of þat (om. I fiele) A      That feelen noght . be likned to þe herte M

Of love which is in mi briest,  
 I wot wel thanne a betre Prest  
 Was nevere mad to my behove.  
 Bot al the whiles that I hove  
 In noncertein betwen the tuo,  
 And not if I to wel or wo 2180  
 Schal torne, that is al my drede,  
 So that I not what is to rede.  
 Bot for final conclusion  
 I thenke a Supplicacion  
 With pleine wordes and expresse  
 Wryte unto Venus the goddesse,  
 The which I preie you to bere  
 And bringe ayein a good ansuere.  
 Tho was betwen mi Prest and me  
 Debat and gret perplexete : 2190  
 Mi resoun understod him wel,  
 And knew it was soth everydel  
 That he hath seid, bot noght forthi  
 Mi will hath nothing set therby.  
 For techinge of so wis a port  
 Is unto love of no desport ;  
 Yit myhte nevere man beholde  
 Reson, wher love was withholde,  
 Thei be noght of o governance.  
 And thus we fellen in distance, 2200  
 Mi Prest and I, bot I spak faire,  
 And thurgh mi wordes debonaire  
 Thanne ate laste we acorden, P. iii. 349  
 So that he seith he wol recorden  
 To speke and stonde upon mi syde  
 To Venus bothe and to Cupide ;  
 And bad me wryte what I wolde,  
 And seith me trewly that he scholde  
 Mi lettre bere unto the queene.  
 And I sat doun upon the grene 2210

2178 while AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT, W      2179 no certein AdBT  
 the] þo AM      2180 if] wher AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBT      2195 techinge  
 J, SΔ, FWK      touchynge (touching) AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, AdBTA      2203  
 þei (Jey) acorden AdBT

[THE SUPPLICATION.]

Fulfil of loves fantasie,  
 And with the teres of myn ye  
 In stede of enke I gan to wryte  
 The wordes whiche I wolde endite  
 Unto Cupide and to Venus,  
 And in mi lettre I seide thus.

Hic tractat formam  
 cuiusdam Supplica-  
 tionis, quam ex parte  
 Amantis per manus  
 Genii Sacerdotis sui  
 Venus sibi porrectam  
 acceptabat.

THE wofull peine of loves maladie,  
 Ayein the which mai no phisique availe,  
 Min herte hath so bewhaped with sotie,  
 That wher so that I reste or I travaile, 2220  
 I finde it evere redy to assaile  
 Mi resoun, which that can him noght defende :  
 Thus seche I help, wherof I mihte amende.

Ferst to Nature if that I me compleigne,  
 Ther finde I hou that every creature  
 Som time ayer hath love in his demeine,  
 So that the litel wrenne in his mesure  
 Hath yit of kinde a love under his cure ;  
 > And I bot on desire, of which I misse :  
 < And thus, bot I, hath every kinde his blisse. 2230

The resoun of my wit it overpasseth, P. iii. 350  
 Of that Nature techeth me the weie  
 To love, and yit no certein sche compasseth  
 Hou I schal spede, and thus between the tweie  
 I stonde, and not if I schal live or deie.  
 For thogh reson ayein my will debate,  
 I mai noght fle, that I ne love algate.

Upon miself is thilke tale come,  
 Hou whilom Pan, which is the god of kinde,  
 With love wrastlede and was overcome: 2240  
 For evere I wrastle and evere I am behinde,  
 That I no strengthe in al min herte finde,  
 Wherof that I mai stonden eny throwe ;  
 So fer mi wit with love is overthrowe.

2214 wol(c) AdBT      2220 or I trauaile J, S, F *the rest* or  
 trauaile      2228 a love] of loue AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT (Hap love of  
 kinde 3it Ad)      2240 was] is AdBT

[THE SUPPLICATION.]

Whom nedeth help, he mot his helpe crave,  
Or helpeles he schal his nede spille:  
Pleinly thurghsoght my wittes alle I have,  
Bot non of hem can helpe after mi wille;  
And als so wel I mihte sitte stille,  
As preie unto mi lady eny helpe:  
Thus wot I noght wherof miself to helpe.

2250

Unto the grete Jove and if I bidde,  
To do me grace of thilke swete tunne,  
Which under keie in his celier amidde  
Lith couched, that fortune is overrunne,  
Bot of the bitter cuppe I have begunne,  
I not hou ofte, and thus finde I no game,  
For evere I axe and evere it is the same.

I se the world stonde evere upon eschange, P. iii. 351  
Nou wyndes loude, and nou the weder softe; 2260  
I mai sen ek the grete mone change,  
And thing which nou is lowe is eft alofte;  
The dredfull werres into pes fulofte  
Thei torne; and evere is Danger in o place,  
Which wol noght change his will to do me grace.

Bot upon this the grete clerc Ovide,  
Of love whan he makth his remembrance,  
He seith ther is the blinde god Cupide,  
The which hath love under his governance,  
And in his hond with many a fyri lance 2270  
He woundeth ofte, ther he wol noght hele;  
And that somdiel is cause of mi querele.

Ovide ek seith that love to parforne  
Stant in the hond of Venus the goddesse,  
Bot whan sche takth hir conseil with Satorne,  
Ther is no grace, and in that time, I gesse,  
Began mi love, of which myn hevynesse  
Is now and evere schal, bot if I spede:  
So wot I noght miself what is to rede.

## [THE SUPPLICATION.]

Forthi to you, Cupide and Venus bothe, 2280  
 With al myn hertes obeissance I preie,  
 If ye were ate ferste time wrothe,  
 Whan I began to love, as I you seie,  
 Nou stynt, and do thilke infortune aweie,  
 So that Danger, which stant of retenue  
 With my ladi, his place mai remue.

O thou Cupide, god of loves lawe, P. iii. 352  
 That with thi Dart brennende hast set afyre  
 Min herte, do that wounde be withdrawe,  
 Or yif me Salve such as I desire: 2290  
 For Service in thi Court withouten hyre  
 To me, which evere yit have kept thin heste,  
 Mai nevere be to loves lawe honeste.

O thou, gentile Venus, loves queene,  
 Withoute gult thou dost on me thi wreche;  
 Thou wost my peine is evere aliche grene  
 For love, and yit I mai it noght areche:  
 This wold I for my laste word beseche,  
 That thou mi love aquite as I deserve,  
 Or elles do me plainly forto sterve. 2300

[VENUS REPLIES TO  
THE SUPPLICATION.]

Hic loquitur qualiter  
 Venus, accepta Aman-  
 tis Supplicatione, in-  
 dilate ad singula re-  
 spondit.

Whanne I this Supplicacioun  
 With good deliberacioun,  
 In such a wise as ye nou wite,  
 Hadde after min entente write  
 Unto Cupide and to Venus,  
 This Prest which hihte Genius  
 It tok on honde to presente,  
 On my message and forth he wente  
 To Venus, forto wite hire wille.  
 And I bod in the place stille, 2310  
 And was there bot a litel while,  
 Noght full the montance of a Mile,  
 Whan I behield and sodeinly  
 I sih wher Venus stod me by.  
 So as I myhte, under a tre P. iii. 353

2284 þis infortune AdBT þilke fortune B<sub>2</sub>, Δ that ilke infortune W  
 2294 gentile AJ, S, F gentil C, B 2298 wold J, S, F wolde AC, B

[VENUS REPLIES TO  
THE SUPPLICATION.]

To grounde I fell upon mi kne,  
 And preide hire forto do me grace :  
 Sche caste hire chiere upon mi face,  
 And as it were halvinge a game  
 Sche axeth me what is mi name. 2320  
 'Ma dame,' I seide, 'John Gower.'  
 'Now John,' quod sche, 'in my pouer  
 Thou most as of thi love stonde ;  
 For I thi bille have understonde,  
 In which to Cupide and to me  
 Somdiel thou hast compleigned thee,  
 And somdiel to Nature also.  
 Bot that schal stonde among you tuo,  
 For therof have I noght to done ;  
 For Nature is under the Mone 2330  
 Maistresse of every lives kinde,  
 Bot if so be that sche mai finde  
 Som holy man that wol withdrawe  
 His kindly lust ayein hir lawe ;  
 Bot sielde whanne it falleth so,  
 For fewe men ther ben of tho,  
 Bot of these othre ynowe be,  
 Whiche of here oghne nycete  
 Ayein Nature and hire office  
 Deliten hem in sondri vice, 2340  
 Wherof that sche fulofte hath pleigned,  
 And ek my Court it hath desdeigned  
 And evere schal ; for it receiveth  
 Non such that kinde so deceiveth.  
 For al onliche of gentil love P. iii. 354  
 Mi court stant alle courtz above  
 And takth noght into retenue  
 Bot thing which is to kinde due,  
 For elles it schal be refused.  
 Wherof I holde thee excused, 2350  
 For it is manye daies gon,

2319 agame AJMRL, AdT in game Δ in game W 2320  
 is] was A . . . B<sub>2</sub>, SBTΔ 2332 if] it AMXE . . . B<sub>2</sub>, B 2334  
 Hire B 2342 disteigned AH<sub>1</sub>XRLB<sub>2</sub> distreigned M  
 restreigned E

[VENUS REPLIES TO  
THE SUPPLICATION.]

That thou amonges hem were on  
Which of my court hast ben withholde ;  
So that the more I am beholde  
Of thi desese to commune,  
And to remue that fortune,  
Which manye daies hath the grieved.  
Bot if my conseil mai be lieved,  
— Thou schalt ben esed er thou go  
Of thilke unsely jolif wo, 2360  
Wherof thou seist thin herte is fyred :  
Bot as of that thou hast desired  
After the sentence of thi bille,  
Thou most therof don at my wille,  
And I therof me wole advise.  
For be thou hol, it schal suffise :  
Mi medicine is noght to sieke  
For thee and for suche olde sieke,  
Noght al per chance as ye it wolden,  
Bot so as ye be reson scholden, 2370  
Acordant unto loves kinde.  
For in the plit which I thee finde,  
So as mi court it hath awarded,  
Thou schalt be duely rewarded ;  
And if thou woldest more crave, P. iii. 355  
It is no riht that thou it have.'

iii. *Qui cupit id quod habere nequit, sua tempora perdit,  
Est ubi non posse, velle salute caret.  
Non estatis opus gelidis hirsuta capillis,  
Cum calor abcessit, equiperabit hiems ;  
Sicut habet Mayus non dat natura Decembri,  
Nec poterit compar floribus esse lutum ;  
Sic neque decrepita senium iuvenile voluptas  
Floret in obsequium, quod Venus ipsa petit.  
Conueniens igitur foret, ut quos cana senectus  
Attigit, ulterius corpora casta colant.* (10)

2367 f. Two lines om. S . . . Δ (ins. Λ) 2368 The which is  
holsom to þe seke H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>1</sub>

2369 f. Noght al as þou desire woldest  
Bot so as þou be resoun scholdest S . . . Δ

2371-2376 Six lines om. S . . . Δ  
Latin Verses iii. 8 obsequium] obsessum X . . . L obessum B<sub>1</sub>

Venus, which stant withoute lawe  
 In noncertein, bot as men drawe  
 Of Rageman upon the chance,  
 Sche leith no peis in the balance,  
 Bot as hir lyketh forto weie;  
 The trewe man fulofte aweie  
 Sche put, which hath hir grace bede,  
 And set an untrewen in his stede.  
 Lo, thus blindly the world sche diemeth  
 In loves cause, as tome siemeth:  
 I not what othre men wol sein,  
 Bot I algate am so besein,  
 And stonde as on amanges alle  
 Which am out of hir grace falle:  
 It nedeth take no witnesse,  
 For sche which seid is the goddesse,  
 To whether part of love it wende,  
 Hath sett me for a final ende  
 The point wherto that I schal holde.  
 For whan sche hath me wel beholde,  
 Halvyng of scorn, sche seide thus: **P. iii. 356**  
 'Thou wost wel that I am Venus,  
 Which al only my lustes seche;  
 And wel I wot, thogh thou beseche  
 Mi love, lustes ben ther none,  
 Whiche I mai take in thi persone;  
 For loves lust and lockes hore  
 In chambre acorden neveremore,  
 And thogh thou feigne a yong corage,  
 It scheweth wel be the visage  
 That olde grisel is no fole:  
 There ben fulmanye yeres stole  
 With thee and with suche othre mo,  
 That outward feignen youthe so

[VENUS REPLIES TO  
 THE SUPPLICATION.]

Hic in exemplum  
 contra quoscunque vi-  
 ros inveteratos amoris  
 concupiscentiam af-  
 fectantes loquitur Ve-  
 nus, huiusque Aman-  
 tis Confessi supplica-  
 tionem quasi dicens,  
 ipsum pro eo quod  
 senex et debilis est,  
 multis exhortationi-  
 bus insufficientem re-  
 darguit.

2379 ff. *margin* Hic in exemplum—redarguit] Hic narrat qualiter indignata Venus, amantis languidi infirmitatem inspiciens, ne quid amplius in curia sua attemptare presumat, ipsum insufficientem tanquam pro medicina pluribus exemplis exhortabatur S . . . ΔΔ 2386 tome S, F to me AJC, B 2387 wolde H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>, AdBT 2403 Mi loues AM, Δ My loue AdBT (Ad ends with this line) 2409 with om. AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT



[VENUS REPLIES TO  
THE SUPPLICATION.]

And ben withinne of pore assay.  
Min herte wolde and I ne may  
Is noght beloved nou adayes ;  
Er thou make eny suche assaies  
To love, and faile upon the fet,  
Betre is to make a beau retret ;  
For thogh thou myhtest love atteigne,  
Yit were it bot an ydel peine,  
Whan that thou art noght sufficient  
To holde love his covenant.

2420

Forthi tak hom thin herte ayein,  
That thou travaile noght in vein,  
Wherof my Court may be deceived.

I wot and have it wel conceived,  
Hou that thi will is good ynowh ;  
Bot mor behoveth to the plowh,  
Wherof the lacketh, as I trowe :

P. iii. 357

So sitte it wel that thou beknowe  
Thi fieble astat, er thou beginne  
Thing wher thou miht non ende winne.

2430

What bargain scholde a man assaie,  
Whan that him lacketh forto paie ?  
Mi Sone, if thou be wel bethoght,  
This toucheth thee ; foryet it noght :  
The thing is torned into was ;  
That which was whilom grene gras,  
Is welked hey at time now.

Forthi mi conseil is that thou  
Remembre wel hou thou art old.'

[THE COMPANIES OF  
LOVERS.]

Qualiter super deri-  
soria Veneris exhor-  
tacione contristatus  
Amans, quasi mortuus  
in terram corruit, vbi,  
vt sibi videbatur, Cupi-

Whan Venus hath hir tale told,  
And I bethoght was al aboute,  
Tho wiste I wel withoute doute,  
That ther was no recoverir ;  
And as a man the blase of fyr  
With water quencheth, so ferd I ;

2440

2428 sitte AJC, F sit B 2433 if þat þou wel beþought (be  
þought) X . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BTA if that thou wel the be thouht Hi 2436  
The which AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BTA (þat whilom was þe grene gras Δ)  
2437 as time now AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BTA 2441 Than I AM, BA  
Whan I Hi . . . B<sub>1</sub>, T 2442 And wist(e) wel AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BTA  
2445 ferd AJ, S, F ferde C, B

A cold me cawhte sodeinly,  
 For sorwe that myn herte made  
 Mi dedly face pale and fade  
 Becam, and swoune I fell to grounde.  
 And as I lay the same stounde,  
 Ne fully quik ne fully ded,  
 Me thoghte I sih tofor myn hed  
 Cupide with his bowe bent,  
 And lich unto a Parlement,  
 Which were ordeigned for the nones,  
 With him cam al the world at ones  
 Of gentil folk that whilom were  
 Lovers, I sih hem alle there  
 Forth with Cupide in sondri routes.  
 Min yhe and as I caste aboutes,  
 To knowe among hem who was who,  
 I sih wher lusty Youthe tho,  
 As he which was a Capitein,  
 Tofore alle othre upon the plein  
 Stod with his route wel begon,  
 Here hevedes kempt, and therupon  
 Garlandes noght of o colour,  
 Some of the lef, some of the flour,  
 And some of grete Perles were ;  
 The newe guise of Beawme there,  
 With sondri thinges wel devised,  
 I sih, wherof thei ben queintised.  
 It was al lust that thei with ferde,  
 Ther was no song that I ne herde,  
 Which unto love was touchende ;  
 Of Pan and al that was likende  
 As in Piping of melodie  
 Was herd in thilke compaignie  
 So lowde, that on every side  
 It thoghte as al the hevene cride  
 In such acord and such a soun  
 Of bombard and of clarion  
 With Cornemuse and Schallemele,

[THE COMPANIES OF  
LOVERS.]

2450 *dinem cum innumera  
 multitudine nuper  
 Amantum variis tur-  
 mis assistencium con-  
 spiciebat.*

P. iii. 358

2460

2470

2480

2446 And cold AM  
id est deus nature A . . . B<sub>1</sub>

2462 line om. B

2476 margin Pan

[THE COMPANIES OF  
LOVERS.]

That it was half a mannes hele  
So glad a noise forto hiere.  
And as me thoghte, in this manere  
Al freissh I syh hem springe and dance, P. iii. 359  
And do to love her entendance  
After the lust of youthes heste.  
Ther was ynowh of joie and feste, 2490  
For evere among thei laghe and pleie,  
And putten care out of the weie,  
That he with hem ne sat ne stod.  
And overthis I understod,  
So as myn Ere it myhte areche,  
The moste matiere of her speche  
Was al of knythod and of Armes,  
And what it is to ligge in armes  
With love, whanne it is achieved.

De nominibus illorum nuper Amantum, qui tunc Amanti spasmatō, aliqui iuuenes, aliqui senes, apparuerunt. Senes autem precipue tam erga deum quam deam amoris pro sanitate Amantis recuperanda multiplicatis precibus misericorditer instant.

Ther was Tristram, which was believed 2500  
With bele Ysolde, and Lancelot  
Stod with Gunnore, and Galahot  
With his ladi, and as me thoghte,  
I syh wher Jason with him broghte  
His love, which that Creusa hihte,  
And Hercules, which mochel myhte,  
Was ther berende his grete Mace,  
And most of alle in thilke place  
He peyneth him to make chiere  
With Eolen, which was him diere. 2510

Theseüs, thogh he were untrewē  
To love, as alle wommen knewe,  
Yit was he there natheles  
With Phedra, whom to love he ches :  
Of Grece ek ther was Thelamon,  
Which fro the king Lamenedon  
At Troie his doghter refte aweie, P. iii. 360  
Eseonen, as for his preie,  
Which take was whan Jason cam  
Fro Colchos, and the Cite nam 2520  
In vengeance of the ferste hate ;  
That made hem after to debate,

2497 It was AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT

[THE COMPANIES OF  
LOVERS.]

Whan Priamus the newe toun  
Hath mad. And in avisioun

Me thoghte that I sih also  
Ector forth with his brethren tuo ;  
Himself stod with Pantaselee,  
And next to him I myhte se,  
Wher Paris stod with faire Eleine,  
Which was his joie sovereigne ;  
And Troilus stod with Criseide,  
Bot evere among, althogh he pleide,  
Be semblant he was hevy chiered,  
For Diomede, as him was liered,  
Cleymeth to ben his parconner.  
And thus full many a bacheler,  
A thousand mo than I can sein,  
With Yowthe I sih ther wel besein  
Forth with here loves glade and blithe.

2530

And some I sih whiche ofte sithe  
Compleignen hem in other wise ;  
Among the whiche I syh Narcise  
And Piramus, that sory were.  
The worthy Grek also was there,  
Achilles, which for love deide :  
Agamenon ek, as men seide,  
And Menelay the king also  
I syh, with many an other mo,  
Which hadden be fortunéd sore  
In loves cause.

2540

P. iii. 361

And overmore  
Of wommen in the same cas,  
With hem I sih wher Dido was,  
Forsake which was with Enee ;  
And Phillis ek I myhte see,  
Whom Demephon deceived hadde ;  
And Adriagne hir sorwe ladde,  
For Theseüs hir Soster tok  
And hire unkindely forsok.  
I sih ther ek among the press  
Compleignende upon Hercules

2550

2560

2543 Priamus AM, B, W

[THE COMPANIES OF  
LOVERS.]

His ferste love Deyanire,  
Which sette him afterward afyre :  
Medea was there ek and pleigneth  
Upon Jason, for that he feigneth,  
Withoute cause and tok a newe ;  
Sche seide, ' Fy on alle untrewe !'  
I sih there ek Deydamie,  
Which hadde lost the compaignie  
Of Achilles, whan Diomede  
To Troie him fette upon the nede. 2570

Among these othre upon the grene  
I syh also the wofull queene  
Cleopatras, which in a Cave  
With Serpentz hath hirself begrave  
Alquik, and so sche was totore,  
For sorwe of that sche hadde lore  
Antonye, which hir love hath be: P. iii. 362

And forth with hire I sih Tisbee,  
Which on the scharpe swerdes point  
For love deide in sory point; 2580

And as myn Ere it myhte knowe,  
She seide, ' Wo worthe alle slowe !'  
'The pleignte of Progne and Philomene  
Ther herde I what it wolde mene,  
How Tereüs of his untrouthe  
Undede hem bothe, and that was routhe ;  
And next to hem I sih Canace,  
Which for Machaire hir fader grace  
Hath lost, and deide in wofull plit.

And as I sih in my spirit, 2590  
Me thoghte amonges othre thus  
The doghter of king Priamus,  
Polixena, whom Pirrus slowh,  
Was there and made sorwe ynowh,  
As sche which deide gulteles  
For love, and yit was loveles.

And forto take the desport,  
I sih there some of other port,

2573 graue BT      2575 Alquik F    Al quik AJ, SB, K      2598  
þere F    þer (þer) AJC, B

[THE COMPANIES OF  
LOVERS.]

And that was Circes and Calipse,  
That cowthen do the Mone eclipse, 2600  
Of men and change the liknesses,  
Of Artmagique Sorceresses ;  
Thei hielde in honde manyon,  
To love wher thei wolde or non.

Bot above alle that ther were  
Of wommen I sih foure there,  
Whos name I herde most comended : P. iii. 363  
Be hem the Court stod al amended ;  
For wher thei comen in presence,  
Men deden hem the reverence, 2610  
As thogh they hadden be goddesses,  
Of al this world or Emperesses.  
And as me thoghte, an Ere I leide,  
And herde hou that these othre seide,  
'Lo, these ben the foure wyves,  
Whos feith was proeved in her lyves :  
For in essample of alle goode  
With Mariage so thei stode,  
That fame, which no gret thing hydeth,  
Yit in Cronique of hem abydeh.' 2620

Penelope that on was hote,  
Whom many a knyht hath loved hote,  
Whil that hire lord Ulixes lay  
Full many a yer and many a day  
Upon the grete Siege of Troie :  
Bot sche, which hath no worldes joie  
Bot only of hire housebonde,  
Whil that hir lord was out of londe,  
So wel hath kept hir wommanhiede,  
That al the world therof tok hiede, 2630  
And nameliche of hem in Grece.

That other womman was Lucrece,  
Wif to the Romain Collatin ;  
And sche constreigned of Tarquin  
'To thing which was ayein hir wille,  
Sche wolde noght hirselves stille,  
Bot deide only for drede of schame P. iii. 364

[THE COMPANIES OF  
LOVERS.]

In keping of hire goode name,  
As sche which was on of the beste.

The thridde wif was hote Alceste, 2640  
Which whanne Ametus scholde dye  
Upon his grete maladye,  
Sche preide unto the goddes so,  
That sche receyveth al the wo  
And deide herself to yive him lif:  
Lo, if this were a noble wif.

The ferthe wif which I ther sih,  
I herde of hem that were nyh  
Hou sche was cleped Alcione,  
Which to Seyix hir lord al one 2650  
And to nomo hir body kepte;  
And whan sche sih him dreynt, sche lepte  
Into the wawes where he swam,  
And there a Sefoul sche becam,  
And with hire wenges him bespradde  
For love which to him sche hadde.

Lo, these foure were tho  
Whiche I sih, as me thoghte tho,  
Among the grete compaignie  
Which Love hadde forto guye: 2660  
Bot Youthe, which in special  
Of Loves Court was Mareschal,  
So besy was upon his lay,  
That he non hiede where I lay  
Hath take. And thanne, as I behield,

Me thoghte I sih upon the field,  
Where Elde cam a softe pas P. iii. 365  
Toward Venus, ther as sche was.  
With him gret compaignie he ladde,  
Bot noght so manye as Youthe hadde: 2670  
The moste part were of gret Age,  
And that was sene in the visage,

2646 Lo, if] See wher AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT 2650 Which Ceix  
(om. to) B Which to seke X Which for to se W 2653 wawe  
A . . . B<sub>1</sub>, S . . . Δ 2656 which] þat AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT 2664  
he lay X, BT (line om. Δ p. m.) 2670 manye] fele AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT  
2672 here visage AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BT

[THE COMPANIES OF  
LOVERS.]

And noght forthi, so as thei myhte,  
 Thei made hem yongly to the sihte :  
 Bot yit herde I no pipe there  
 To make noise in mannes Ere,  
 Bot the Musette I myhte knowe,  
 For olde men which souneth lowe,  
 With Harpe and Lute and with Citole.

The hovedance and the Carole, 2680  
 In such a wise as love hath bede,  
 A softe pas thei dance and trede ;  
 And with the wommen otherwhile  
 With sobre chier among thei smyle,  
 For laghtre was ther non on hyh.

And natheles full wel I syh  
 That thei the more queinte it made  
 For love, in whom thei weren glade.

And there me thoghte I myhte se  
 The king David with Bersabee, 2690

And Salomon was noght withoute ;  
 Passende an hundred on a route  
 Of wyves and of Concubines,  
 Juesses bothe and Sarazines,  
 To him I sih alle entendant :

I not if he was sufficient,  
 Bot natheles for al his wit P. iii. 366

He was attached with that writ  
 Which love with his hond enseleth,  
 Fro whom non erthly man appeleth. 2700

And overthis, as for a wonder,  
 With his leon which he put under,  
 With Dalida Sampson I knew,  
 Whos love his strengthe al overthrew.

I syh there Aristotle also,  
 Whom that the queene of Grece so  
 Hath bridled, that in thilke time

2675 pipes AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT piper Δ 2676 noise] mcrþe  
 AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT 2678 sowned AM . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT 2694 lusses  
 eek AM luesboþe (lues both) KW lewes (lues &c.) eek H<sub>1</sub> . . . B<sub>2</sub>,  
 BT 2696 wher he was AM wher(e) he were X . . . B<sub>2</sub>, BT  
 if he were H<sub>1</sub>, W 2701 no wonder B 2702 put AJ, F  
 putte C, B 2706 so] also E, BT þo Δ



[THE COMPANIES OF  
LOVERS.]

Sche made him such a Silogime,  
That he foryat al his logique ;  
Ther was non art of his Practique, 2710  
Thurgh which it mihte ben excluded  
That he ne was fully concluded  
To love, and dede his obeissance.

And ek Virgile of aqueintance  
I sih, wher he the Maiden preide,  
Which was the doghter, as men seide,  
Of themperour whilom of Rome ;  
Sortes and Plato with him come,  
So dede Ovide the Poete.

I thoghte thanne how love is swete, 2720  
Which hath so wise men reclaimed,  
And was miself the lasse aschamed,  
Or forto lese or forto winne  
In the meschief that I was inne :  
And thus I lay in hope of grace.

And whan thei comen to the place  
Wher Venus stod and I was falle, P. iii. 367  
These olde men with o vois alle  
To Venus preiden for my sake.

And sche, that myhte noght forsake 2730  
So gret a clamour as was there,  
Let Pite come into hire Ere ;  
And forth withal unto Cupide  
Sche preith that he upon his side  
Me wolde thurgh his grace sende  
Som confort, that I myhte amende,  
Upon the cas which is befalle.

And thus for me thei preiden alle  
Of hem that weren olde aboute,  
And ek some of the yonge route, 2740  
Of gentillesse and pure trouthe  
I herde hem telle it was gret routhe,  
That I withouten help so ferde.  
And thus me thoghte I lay and herde.

Cupido, which may hurte and hele  
In loves cause, as for myn hele

Upon the point which him was preid  
 Cam with Venus, wher I was leid  
 Swounende upon the grene gras.  
 And, as me thoghte, anon ther was  
 On every side so gret presse,  
 That every lif began to presse,  
 I wot noght wel hou many score,  
 Suche as I spak of now tofore,  
 Lovers, that comen to beholde,  
 Bot most of hem that weren olde :  
 Thei stoden there at thilke tyde,  
 To se what ende schal betyde  
 Upon the cure of my sotie.  
 Tho myhte I hiere gret partie  
 Spekende, and ech his oghne avis  
 Hath told, on that, an other this :  
 Bot among alle this I herde,  
 Thei weren wo that I so ferde,  
 And seiden that for no riote  
 An old man scholde noght assote ;  
 For as thei tolden redely,  
 Ther is in him no cause why,  
 Bot if he wolde himself benyce ;  
 So were he wel the more nyce.  
 And thus desputen some of tho,  
 And some seiden nothing so,  
 Bot that the wylde loves rage  
 In mannes lif forberth non Age ;  
 Whil ther is oyle forto fyre,  
 The lampe is lyhtly set afyre,  
 And is fulhard er it be queynt,  
 Bot only if it be som seint,  
 Which god preserveth of his grace.  
 And thus me thoghte, in sondri place  
 Of hem that walken up and doun  
 Ther was diverse opinioun :  
 And for a while so it laste,  
 Til that Cupide to the laste,

[CUPID AND THE  
LOVER.]

Hic tractat qualiter  
 2750 Cupido Amantis se-  
 nectute confracti vis-  
 cera perscrutans, ig-  
 nitasue concupiscencie  
 tela ab eo penitus ex-  
 traxit, quem Venus  
 postea absque calore  
 percipiens, vacuum  
 reliquit: et sic tandem  
 prouisa Senectus, ra-  
 cionem inuocans, ho-  
 minem interiorem per  
 prius amore infatua-  
 tum mentis sanitati  
 plenius restaurauit.

P. iii. 368

2760

2770

Nota.

2780

2769 benyce J, S, FK be nyce (by nice &c.) AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BTΔ, W  
 2775 margin Nota LB<sub>1</sub>, F Nota bene C om. A . . . R, SBTΔ, WK

[THE FIERY DART  
WITHDRAWN.]

Forth with his moder full avised,  
Hath determined and devised  
Unto what point he wol descende. P. iii. 369  
And al this time I was liggende  
Upon the ground tofore his yhen,  
And thei that my desese syhen 2790  
Supposen noght I scholde live ;  
Bot he, which wolde thanne yive  
His grace, so as it mai be,  
This blinde god which mai noght se,  
Hath groped til that he me fond ;  
And as he pitte forth his hond  
Upon my body, wher I lay,  
Me thoghte a fyri Lancegay,  
Which whilom thurgh myn herte he caste,  
He pulleth oute, and also faste 2800  
As this was do, Cupide nam  
His weie, I not where he becam,  
And so dede al the remenant  
Which unto him was entendant,  
Of hem that in Avision  
I hadde a revelacion,  
So as I tolde now tofore.

[THE HEALING OF  
LOVE.]

Bot Venus wente noght therfore,  
Ne Genius, whiche thilke time  
Abiden bothe faste byme. 2810  
And sche which mai the hertes bynde  
In loves cause and ek unbinde, /  
Er I out of mi trance aros,  
Venus, which hield a boiste clos,  
And wolde noght I scholde deie,  
Tok out mor cold than eny keie  
An oignement, and in such point P. iii. 370  
Sche hath my wounded herte enoight,  
My temples and my Reins also.  
And forth withal sche tok me tho 2820  
A wonder Mirour forto holde,

2796 pitte F putte AJC, SB 2809 whiche S, F which  
AJC, B 2819 *margin* Nota contra senes voluptuosos, quorum  
calor refrigesciente natura extinctus est SBTΔ (*om.* Δ)

[THE HEALING OF  
LOVE.]

In which sche bad me to beholde  
 And taken hiede of that I syhe;  
 ✓ Wherinne anon myn hertes yhe  
 I caste, and sih my colour fade,  
 Myn yhen dymme and al unglade,  
 Mi chiekes thinne, and al my face  
 With Elde I myhte se deface,  
 So riveled and so wo besein,  
 That ther was nothing full ne plein, 2830  
 I syh also myn heres hore.  
 Mi will was tho to se nomore  
 Outwith, for ther was no plesance;  
 And thanne into my remembrance  
 I drowh myn olde daies passed,  
 And as reson it hath compassed,  
 I made a liknesse of miselve  
 Unto the sondri Monthes twelve,  
 Wherof the yeer in his astat  
 Is mad, and stant upon debat, 2840  
 That lich til other non acordeth.  
 For who the times wel recordeth,  
 And thanne at Marche if he beginne,  
 Whan that the lusti yeer comth inne,  
 Til Augst be passed and Septembre,  
 The myhty youthe he may remembre  
 In which the yeer hath his deduit P. iii. 371  
 Of gras, of lef, of flour, of fruit,  
 Of corn and of the wyny grape.  
 And afterward the time is schape 2850  
 To frost, to Snow, to Wind, to Rein,  
 Til eft that Mars be come ayein:  
 The Wynter wol no Somer knowe,  
 The grene lef is overthrowe,  
 The clothed erthe is thanne bare,  
 Despuiled is the Somerfare,

Quod status hominis  
Mensibus anni equi-  
peratur.

2840

2850

2833 Outwip SA, FWK Out wip AJM, TA Therwip (Ther wip)  
 H1 . . . B2 On which B 2837 *margin* equipatur A equipatur  
 C, BT, F 2848 of flour of lef AM . . . CB2 and floure of leef L  
 2850 his time H1 . . . B2 2856 Somerfare S, F somer fare  
 AJC, B

[THE HEALING OF  
LOVE.]

That erst was hete is thanne chele.

And thus thenkende thoghtes fele,

I was out of mi swoone affraied,

Wherof I sih my wittes straied,

2860

And gan to clepe hem hom ayein.

And whan Resoun it herde sein

That loves rage was aweie,

He cam to me the rihte weie,

And hath remued the sotie

Of thilke unwise fantasie,

Wherof that I was wont to pleigne,

So that of thilke fyri peine

I was mad sobre and hol ynowh.

Venus behield me than and lowh,

2870

And axeth, as it were in game,

What love was. And I for schame

Ne wiste what I scholde ansuere;

And natheles I gan to swere

That be my trouthe I knew him noght;

So ferr it was out of mi thoght,

Riht as it hadde nevere be.

P. iii. 372

'Mi goode Sone,' tho quod sche,

'Now at this time I lieve it wel,

So goth the fortune of my whiel;

2880

Forthi mi conseil is thou leve.'

'Ma dame,' I seide, 'be your leve,

Ye witen wel, and so wot I,

That I am unbehovely

Your Court fro this day forth to serve:

And for I may no thonk deserve,

And also for I am refused,

I preie you to ben excused.

And natheles as for the laste,

Whil that my wittes with me laste,

2890

Touchende mi confession

I axe an absolucion

Of Genius, er that I go.'

2860 straied] frayed AM . . . B;  
2889 for to laste BT

2885 forth] for EC, BTA

The Prest anon was redy tho,  
And seide, 'Sone, as of thi schrifte  
Thou hast ful pardoun and foryifte;  
Foryet it thou, and so wol I.'

[THE ABSOLUTION.]

'Min holi fader, grant mercy,'  
Quod I to him, and to the queene  
I fell on knes upon the grene,  
And tok my leve forto wende.  
Bot sche, that wolde make an ende,  
As therto which I was most able,  
A Peire of Bedes blak as Sable  
Sche tok and heng my necke aboute;  
Upon the gaudes al withoute  
Was write of gold, *Por reposer.*

AMANS.

2900

[LEAVE TAKING OF  
VENUS.]

P. iii. 373

'Lo,' thus sche seide, 'John Gower,  
Now thou art ate laste cast,  
This have I for thin ese cast,

2910

That thou nomore of love sieche.  
Bot my will is that thou besieche  
And preie hierafter for the pes,  
And that thou make a plein reles  
To love, which takth litel hiede  
Of olde men upon the nede,  
Whan that the lustes ben aweie:

Forthi to thee nys bot o weie,  
In which let reson be thi guide;  
For he may sone himself misguide,

2920

That seth noght the peril tofore.  
Mi Sone, be wel war therfore,  
And kep the sentence of my lore  
And tarie thou mi Court nomore,  
Bot go ther vertu moral duelleth,  
Wher ben thi bokes, as men telleth,  
Whiche of long time thou hast write.  
For this I do thee wel to wite,

If thou thin hele wolt purchace,  
Thou miht noght make suite and chace,

2930

2899 the om. AM      2907 pur AM . . . Bz, B, W      pour Hi, T  
2925 moral vertu AM . . . Bz, W      vertu morar S      2926 Wher  
ben þe M, TA      Ther ben þe B

\* \*

H h

[LEAVE-TAKING OF  
VENUS.]

Wher that the game is nought pernabile;  
It were a thing unresonable,  
A man to be so overseie.  
Forthi tak hiede of that I seie;  
For in the lawe of my comune  
We be noght schape to comune,  
Thiself and I, nevere after this. P. iii. 374  
Now have y seid al that ther is  
Of love as for thi final ende:  
\* Adieu, for y mot fro the wende.' 2940  
And with that word al sodeinly, P. iii. 375

[LEAVE-TAKING OF  
VENUS.]

\* Adieu, for I mot fro the wende.  
And gret wel Chaucer whan ye mete, 2941\*  
As mi disciple and mi poete:  
For in the floures of his youthe  
In sondri wise, as he wel couthe,  
Of Ditees and of songes glade,  
The whiche he for mi sake made,  
The lond fulfild is overal:  
Wherof to him in special  
Above alle othre I am most holde.  
For thi now in hise daies olde 2950\*  
Thow schalt him telle this message,  
That he upon his latere age,  
To sette an cnde of alle his werk,  
As he which is myn owne clerk,  
Do make his testament of love,  
As thou hast do thi schrifte above,  
So that mi Court it mai recorde.'  
'Madame, I can me wel acorde,'  
Quod I, 'to telle as ye me bidde.'  
And with that word it so betidde, 2960\*

2931 pernabile J, SΔ, FK parnable W prouable (prouable)  
AM . . . B<sub>1</sub>, BTA 2938 *Here begins a new hand in F and ll. 2938-  
2966 are over an erasure.*

2941\* ff. *This conclusion is in first recension copies only, A . . . B<sub>1</sub> &c.  
But ll. 2941\*-2961\* also in A. All variations from A are noted.*  
2949\* moost A 2953\* eende A al J 2960\* world  
AMX betidde (bitidde) JH<sub>1</sub>ECB<sub>1</sub> by tydde (be tidde) AMRL

[LEAVE-TAKING OF  
VENUS.]

Enclosid in a sterred sky,  
 Venus, which is the qweene of love,  
 Was take in to hire place above,  
 More wiste y nought wher sche becam. P. iii. 376  
 And thus my leve of hire y nam,  
 And forth with al the same tide  
 Hire prest, which wolde nought abide,  
 Or be me lief or be me loth, P. iii. 377  
 Out of my sighte forth he goth, 2950  
 And y was left with outen helpe.  
 So wiste I nought wher of to yelpe,  
 Bot only that y hadde lore  
 My time, and was sori ther fore.  
 And thus bewhapid in my thought, P. iii. 378  
 Whan al was turnyd in to nought,  
 I stod amasid for a while,  
 And in my self y gan to smyle  
 Thenkende uppon the bedis blake,  
 And how they weren me betake, 2960  
 For that y schulde bidde and prete.  
 And whanne y sigh non othre weie  
 Bot only that y was refusid,  
 Unto the lif which y hadde usid  
 I thoughte nevere torne ayein :  
 And in this wise, soth to seyn,  
 Homward a softe pas y wente,  
 Wher that with al myn hol entente

Out of my sihte al sodeynly,  
 Enclosed in a sterred sky,  
 Up to the hevene Venus straghte,  
 And I my rihte weie cawhte,  
 Hom fro the wode and forth I wente,  
 Wher as with al myn hole entente,

[LEAVE-TAKING OF  
VENUS]

2942 sterred S 2945 wiste ST wist B, F 2946 hire  
 (hir) BTΔ, WK here S, F 2968 hol B, F hole S  
 2961\* sihte (sight) JR syht (sight) AMH:ECLB: 2963\* f.  
 straghte : cawhte AM strauhte : cauhte J straght(e) : caght(e) RL  
 straughte : caughte EC 2964\* righte (rihte) JEC riht (right)  
 AMH:R 2965\* Hoom AM and om. C 2966\* hole J hoole AM



Uppon the point that y am schryve  
I thenke bidde whil y live.

2970

[THE AUTHOR PRAYS  
FOR THE STATE OF  
ENGLAND.] -

iv. *Parce precor, Criste, populus quo gaudeat iste;  
Anglia ne triste subeat, rex summe, resiste.  
Corrige quosque status, fragiles absolute reatus;  
Vnde deo gratus vigeat locus iste beatus.*

Hic in anno quarto-  
decimo Regis Ricardi  
orat pro statu regni,  
quod a diu diuisum  
nimia aduersitate peri-  
clitabatur.

He which withinne daies sevene  
This large world forth with the hevene  
Of his eternal providence  
Hath mad, and thilke intelligence  
In mannys soule resonable  
Hath schape to be perdurable,  
Wherof the man of his feture  
Above alle erthli creature  
Aftir the soule is immortal,

Thus with mi bedes upon honde,  
For hem that trewe love fonde  
I thenke bidde whil I lyve  
Upon the poynt which I am schryve.

2970\*

[THE AUTHOR PRAYS  
FOR THE KING.]

iv.\* *Ad laudem Cristi, quem tu, virgo, peperisti,  
Sit laus Ricardi, quem sceptrum colunt leopardi.  
Ad sua precepta compleui carmina cepta,  
Que Bruti nata legat Anglia perpetuata.*

Hic in fine libri  
honorificos que virtu-  
osos illustrissimi Prin-  
cipis domini sui Regis  
Anglie Ricardi secun-  
di mores, sicut dig-  
num est, laude com-  
mendabili describens,  
pro eiusdem status  
salubri conseruacione

He which withinne dayes sevene  
This large world forth with the hevene  
Of his eternal providence  
Hath mad, and thilke intelligence  
In mannes soule resonable  
Enspired to himself semblable,  
Wherof the man of his feture  
Above alle erthly creature  
After the soule is immortal,

2970 lieue F    2971 The J, B    2973 ff. margin Hic in anno  
—perclitabatur SΔ, FK om. BTA, W  
2967\* f. hoonde : foonde AM  
Latin Verses iv.\* 3 ceptra AM  
2974\* mad J maad A    2978\* erply C eerpli AM erply JH, ERLB:

To thilke lord in special,  
 As he which is of alle thinges  
 The creatour, and of the kynges  
 Hath the fortunes uppon honde,  
 His grace and mercy forto fonde  
 Uppon my bare knes y preie,  
 That he this lond in siker weie  
 Wol sette uppon good governance.

2980 [THE AUTHOR PRAYS  
 P. iii. 379 FOR THE STATE OF  
 ENGLAND.]

For if men takyn remembrance  
 What is to live in unite,  
 Ther ys no staat in his degree  
 That noughte to desire pes,  
 With outen which, it is no les,  
 To seche and loke in to the laste,  
 Ther may no worldes joye laste.

2990

Ferst forto loke the Clergie,  
 Hem oughte wel to justefie  
 Thing which belongith to here cure,  
 As forto praie and to procure  
 Oure pes toward the hevene above,  
 And ek to sette reste and love

[EVIL OF DIVISION  
 IN THE LAND.]

3000

To thilke lord in special,  
 As he which is of alle thinges  
 The creatour, and of the kinges  
 Hath the fortunes upon honde,  
 His grace and mercy forto fonde  
 Upon mi bare knees I preye,  
 That he my worthi king conveye,  
 Richard by name the Secounde,  
 In whom hath evere yit be founde  
 Justice medled with pite,  
 Largesce forth with charite.  
 In his persone it mai be schewed  
 What is a king to be wel thewed,  
 Touchinge of pite namely :

2980\* [THE AUTHOR PRAYS  
 FOR THE KING.]  
 cunctipotentem deuo-  
 cius exorat.

2990\*

2987 Wol] Wel S      2989 liue BTA, W    lieue S, FK      2994  
 wordles F  
 2983\* f. hoonde : foonde AM      2987\* be J      2988\* byfounde A  
 by founde M

[EVIL OF DIVISION  
IN THE LAND.]

Among ous on this erthe hiere.  
For if they wroughte in this manere  
Aftir the reule of charite,  
I hope that men schuldyn se  
'This lond amende.

And ovyr this,  
'To seche and loke how that it is  
Touchende of the chevalerie,  
Which forto loke, in som partie  
Is worthi forto be comendid,  
And in som part to ben amendid, 3010  
That of here large retenue P. iii. 380  
The lond is ful of maintenue,  
Which causith that the comune right  
In fewe contrees stant upright.  
Extorcioun, kontek, ravine  
Withholde ben of that covyne,  
Aldai men hierin gret compleignte  
Of the desease, of the constreignte,  
Wher of the poeple is sore oppressid :

[THE KING  
COMMEDED.]

For he yit nevere unpitously  
Ayein the liges of his lond,  
For no defaute which he fond,  
Thurgh cruelte vengauce soghte ;  
And thogh the worldes chaunce in broghte  
Of infortune gret debat,  
Yit was he not infortunat : 3000\*  
For he which the fortune ladde,  
The hihe god, him overspradde  
Of his Justice, and kepte him so,  
'That his astat stood evere mo  
Sauf, as it oghte wel to be ;  
Lich to the Sonne in his degree,  
Which with the clowdes up alofte

3005 f. *Paragraph begins* And ouer þis S To seche FWK No  
Paragraph BT 3006 how þat is B howe it is W 3013  
comune (commune) SBT, F comyn W 3015 kontek FK  
contect SBT Contek W kontek and Magd contel and Δ  
2995\* f. loond : foond A 2998\* inbroughte JH<sub>1</sub> 3003\*  
kepte ECB<sub>1</sub> kept AJMH<sub>1</sub>RL 3005\* bee A

God graunte it mote be redressid.  
 For of knyghthode thordre wolde  
 That thei defende and kepe scholde  
 The comun right and the fraunchise  
 Of holy cherche in alle wise,  
 So that no wikke man it dere,  
 And ther fore servith scheld and spere :  
 Bot for it goth now other weie,  
 Oure grace goth the more aweie.

3020 [EVIL OF DIVISION  
IN THE LAND.]

And forto lokyn ovyrmore,  
 Wher of the poeple pleigneth sore,  
 Toward the lawis of oure lond,  
 Men sein that trouthe hath broke his bond  
 And with brocage is goon aweie,  
 So that no man can se the weie  
 Wher forto fynde rightwisnesse.

3030

And if men sechin sikernesse  
 Uppon the lucre of marchandie,  
 Compasement and tricherie  
 Of singuler profit to wyne,  
 Men seyn, is cause of mochil synne,  
 And namely of divisoun,  
 Which many a noble worthi toun

3040

P. iii. 381

Is derked and bischadewed ofte,  
 But hou so that it trowble in their,  
 The Sonne is evere briht and feir,  
 Withinne himself and noght empeired :  
 Although the weder be despeired,  
 The hed planete is not to wite.  
 Mi worthi prince, of whom I write,  
 Thus stant he with himselve clier,  
 And doth what lith in his power  
 Not only hier at hom to seke

[THE KING  
COMMENDED.]

3010\*

3023 comun B, F comune ST 3026 þer fore (þerfore) FK  
 þerof (þer of) SBTΔ, W 3037 machandie F merchandie S  
 3008\* bischadewed (byshadewed) AMH<sub>1</sub>E by schadewed (by  
 schadowed) RCLB<sub>2</sub> beschaded J 3009\* Bot JH<sub>1</sub> 3011\*  
 Wipin AM 3013\* hed (hede) JM heed A heued H<sub>1</sub>E . . . B<sub>2</sub>  
 3015\* f. clier : power J cleer : poweer A 3016\* doop AM  
 3017\* only hier at hom to seke J oonly heer athoom to seeke A

[EVIL OF DIVISION  
IN THE LAND.]

Fro welthe and fro prosperite  
Hath brought to gret adversite.  
So were it good to ben al on,  
For mechil grace ther uppon  
Unto the Citees schulde falle,  
Which myghte availle to ous alle,  
If these astatz amendid were,  
So that the vertus stodyn there 3050  
And that the vices were aweie:  
Me thenkth y dorste thanne seie,  
'This londis grace schulde arise.

[THE DUTY OF  
A KING.]

Bot yit to loke in othre wise,  
'Ther is a stat, as ye schul hiere,  
Above alle othre on erthe hiere,  
Which hath the lond in his balance:  
To him belongith the leiance  
Of Clerk, of knyght, of man of lawe;  
Undir his hond al is forth drawe 3060  
The marchant and the laborer;  
So stant it al in his power  
Or forto spille or forto save.  
Bot though that he such power have,  
And that his myghtes ben so large,  
He hath hem nought withouten charge,  
To which that every kyng ys swore:  
So were it good that he ther fore

[THE KING  
COMMEDED.]

Love and acord, but outward eke,  
As he that save his poeple wolde.  
So ben we alle wel beholde 3020\*  
To do service and obeyssaunce  
To him, which of his heyh suffraunce  
Hath many a gret debat appesed,

3046 mechil F mekull W mochil SBT 3054 oþre wise S, F  
oþer w. BTA, WK 3060 is al B 3063 forto . . . forto S  
for to . . . forto F for to . . . for to BT 3066 wipouten F  
wipoute SBT  
3018\* acord JER acorde AC eeke AEC 3020\* been AMC  
by holde AM 3022\* hihe H<sub>1</sub>RLB<sub>1</sub> hie J 3023\* a gret  
(agret) JCL a grete (agrete) AMH<sub>1</sub> &c.

[THE DUTY OF  
A KING.]

First un to rightwisnesse entende,  
 Wherof that he hym self amende 3070  
 Toward his god and leve vice, P. iii. 382  
 Which is the chief of his office;  
 And aftir al the remenant  
 He schal uppon his covenant  
 Governe and lede in such a wise,  
 So that ther be no tirandise,  
 Wherof that he his poeple grieve,  
 Or ellis may he nought achieve  
 That longith to his regalie.  
 For if a kyng wol justifie 3080  
 His lond and hem that beth withynne,  
 First at hym self he mot begynne,  
 To kepe and reule his owne astat,  
 That in hym self be no debat  
 Toward his god: for othre wise  
 Ther may non erthly kyng suffise  
 Of his kyngdom the folk to lede,  
 Bot he the kyng of hevene drede.  
 For what kyng sett hym uppon pride  
 And takth his lust on every side 3090  
 And wil nought go the righte weie,  
 Though god his grace caste aweie  
 No wondir is, for ate laste  
 He schal wel wite it mai nought laste,  
 The pompe which he secheth here.

---

To make his lige men ben esed;  
 Wherefore that his Cronique schal  
 For evere be memorial  
 To the loenge of that he doth.  
 For this wot every man in soth,  
 What king that so desireth pes,  
 He takth the weie which Crist ches: 3030\*  
 And who that Cristes weies sueth,

[THE KING  
COMMEDED.]

3081 beþ F ben (be) SBTΔ, WK 3085 oþre wise F oþrewise S  
 oþerwise BT othir wyse W 3094 nouȝt F noght S nought B  
 not T, W

3024\* been A 3027\* f. doop: soop AMR 3029\* f. pees: chees AMR

Bot what kyng that with humble chere  
 Aftir the lawe of god eschuieth  
 The vices, and the vertus suieth,  
 His grace schal be suffisant  
 To governe al the remenant  
 Which longith to his duite ;  
 So that in his prosperite  
 The poeple schal nought ben oppressid,  
 Wherof his name schal be blessid,  
 For evere and be memorial.

3100

P. iii. 383

[THE BOOK  
 COMPLETED.]

Hic in fine recapit-

And now to speke as in final,  
 Touchende that ~~y~~ undirtok  
 In englesch forto make a book

[THE KING  
 COMMENDED.]

It proveth wel that he eschueth  
 The vices and is vertuous,  
 Wherof he mot be gracious  
 Toward his god and acceptable.  
 And so to make his regne stable,  
 With al the wil that I mai yive  
 I preie and schal whil that I live,  
 As I which in subjeccioun  
 Stonde under the proteccioun,  
 And mai miselven not bewelde,  
 What for seknesse and what for elde,  
 Which I receyve of goddes grace.  
 But thogh me lacke to purchase  
 Mi kinges thonk as by decerte,  
 Yit the Simplese of mi poverté  
 Unto the love of my ligance  
 Desireth forto do plesance :  
 And for this cause in myn entente  
 This povere bok heer I presente  
 Unto his hihe worthinesse,  
 Write of my simple besinesse,

3040\*

3050\*

[THE AUTHOR PRE-  
 SENTS HIS BOOK TO  
 THE KING.]

3098 vertu B

3033\* f. vertuows: graciows AM 3036\* And for to CB: maake  
 A 3040\* Stoonde AM. the] his J 3041\* by welde AMH<sub>1</sub>  
 3042\* seknesse AMH<sub>1</sub>R 3045\* be J 3050\* bok J book AC  
 3052\* besinesse (besynesse) JH<sub>1</sub>RL besinesse A busynesse C

Which stant betwene earnest and game,  
 I have it maad as thilke same  
 Which axe forto ben excusid,  
 And that my bok be nought refusid  
 Of lered men, whan thei it se,  
 For lak of curiosite :  
 For thilke scole of eloquence  
 Belongith nought to my science,  
 Uppon the forme of rethorike  
 My wordis forto peinte and pike,  
 As Tullius som tyme wrot.  
 Bot this y knowe and this y wot,  
 That y have do my trewe peyne  
 With rude wordis and with pleyne,  
 In al that evere y couthe and myghte,  
 This bok to write as y behighte,  
 So as siknesse it soffre wolde ;  
 And also for my daies olde,

[THE BOOK  
 COMPLETED.]

3110

ulat super hoc quod in  
 principio libri primi  
 promisit se in amoris  
 causa specialius trac-  
 taturum. Concludit  
 enim quod omnis  
 amoris delectacio  
 extra caritatem nichil  
 est. Qui autem manet  
 in caritate, in deo  
 manet.

3120

So as seknesse it suffre wolde.  
 And in such wise as I ferst tolde,  
 Whan I this bok began to make,  
 In som partie it mai be take  
 As for to lawhe and forto pleye ;  
 And forto loke in other weye,  
 It mai be wisdom to the wise :  
 So that somdel for good aprise  
 And eek somdel for lust and game  
 I have it mad, as thilke same  
 Which axe forto ben excused,  
 That I no Rethorike have used  
 Upon the forme of eloquence,  
 For that is not of mi science ;  
 But I have do my trewe peyne  
 With rude wordes and with pleyne

[THE AUTHOR PRE-  
 SENTS HIS BOOK TO  
 THE KING.]

3060\*

3113 whanne F

3053\* seeknesse (seknesse) JC seeknesse (sekenesse &c.) AMH<sub>1</sub>R

3055\* book by gan to maake A 3056\* by taake A 3058\*

- looke A ooper AM 3060\* f. somdeel A 3061\* of game J

3062\* as AJM for H<sub>1</sub>XRCLB<sub>1</sub> 3063\* been A



[THE BOOK  
COMPLETED.]

That y am feble and impotent,  
I wot nought how the world ys went.  
So preye y to my lordis alle  
Now in myn age, how so befalle, 3130  
That y mot stonden in here grace: P. iii. 384  
For though me lacke to purchase  
Here worthi thonk as by decerte,  
Yit the symplesse of my poverté  
Desireth forto do plesance  
To hem undir whos governance  
I hope siker to abide.

[FAREWELL TO  
EARTHLY LOVE.]

But now uppon my laste tide  
That y this book have maad and write,  
My muse doth me forto wite, 3140  
And seith it schal be for my beste  
Fro this day forth to take reste,  
That y nomore of love make,

[FAREWELL TO  
EARTHLY LOVE.]

To speke of thing which I have told.  
But now that I am feble and old, 3070\*  
And to the worschipe of mi king  
In love above alle other thing  
That I this bok have mad and write,  
Mi Muse doth me forto wite  
That it is to me for the beste  
Fro this day forth to take reste,  
That I nomore of love make. /  
But he which hath of love his make  
It sit him wel to singe and daunce,  
And do to love his entendance 3080\*  
In songes bothe and in seyinges  
After the lust of his pleyinges,  
For he hath that he wolde have:  
But where a man schal love crave  
And faile, it stant al otherwise. /

3131 mot ST, W mote B, F

3069\* f. toold : oold A 3070\* Bot J 3072\* oo]er A  
3073\* book A &c. 3074\* doop AM 3076\* taake A 3077\*  
nomoore of loue maake A 3078\* Bot J maake A 3079\* sit J  
sitte AMRCLB, 3084\* Bot J 3085\* aloo]erwise A

[FAREWELL TO  
EARTHLY LOVE.]

Which many an herte hath overtake,  
 And ovyrturnd as the blynde  
 Fro reson in to lawe of kynde ;  
 Wher as the wisdom goth aweie  
 And can nought se the ryhte weie  
 How to governe his oghne estat,  
 Bot everydai stant in debat 3150  
 Withinne him self, and can nought leve. .  
 And thus forthy my final leve  
 I take now for evere more,  
 Withoute makynge any more,  
 Of love and of his dedly hele,  
 Which no phisicien can hele.  
 For his nature is so divers,  
 That it hath evere som travers  
 Or of to moche or of to lite,  
 That plainly mai noman delite, 3160  
 Bot if him faile or that or this. P. iii. 385  
 Bot thilke love which that is  
 Withinne a mannes herte affermed,  
 And stant of charite confermed,

---

In his proverbe seith the wise,  
 Whan game is best, is best to leve :  
 And thus forthi my fynal leve,  
 With oute makynge eny more,  
 I take now for evere more 3090\*  
 Of love and of his dedly hele,  
 Which no phisicien can hele.  
 For his nature is so divers,  
 That it hath evere som travers  
 Or of to moche or of to lite,  
 That fully mai noman delyte,  
 But if him lacke or that or this.  
 But thilke love which that is  
 Withinne a mannes herte affermed,

[FAREWELL TO  
EARTHLY LOVE.]

3147 *Hand in F changes again* 3150 euerydai F euery day  
 SBT 3160 noman F no man SBT  
 3087\* Whan game is beste A 3089\* f. moore : moore A  
 3091\* f. heele : heele AM 3097\* f. Bot J

[HEAVENLY LOVE.]

Such love is goodly forto have,  
 Such love mai the bodi save,  
 Such love mai the soule amende,  
 The hyhe god such love ous sende  
 Forthwith the remenant of grace ;  
 So that above in thilke place  
 Wher resteth love and alle pes,  
 Oure joie mai ben endeles.

3170

*Explicit iste liber, qui transeat, obsecro liber  
 Ut sine liuore vigeat lectoris in ore.  
 Qui sedet in scannis celi det ut ista Iohannis  
 Perpetuis annis stet pagina grata Britannis.  
 Derbeie Comiti, recolunt quem laude periti,  
 Vade liber purus, sub eo requiesce futurus.*

[HEAVENLY LOVE.]

And stant of charite confermed,  
 That love is of no repentaile ;  
 For it ne berth no contretaile,  
 Which mai the conscience charge,  
 But it is rather of descharge,  
 And meedful heer and overal.  
 Forthi this love in special  
 Is good for every man to holde,  
 And who that resoun wol beholde,  
 Al other lust is good to daunte :  
 Which thing the hihe god us graunte  
 Forth with the remenant of grace  
 So that of hevene in thilke place  
 Wher resteth love and alle pes,  
 Oure joye mai ben endeles.

3100\*

3110\*

3169 fforþwiþ F fforþ wiþ SBT

EXPLICIT 5 f. Last two lines om. AJCL 6 sub eo que recumbe S

3104\* Bot J 3106\* love om. AM 3107\* hoolde A 3108\*

wol byholde (biholde) ARCL wil biholde B<sub>1</sub> wel be holde J wel

byholde M 3110\* ous J 3113\* pees AMC 3114\* been

endelces AM At the end Amen MXERCLB<sub>1</sub>

**Epistola super huius opusculi sui complementum  
Iohanni Gower a quodam philosopho transmissa.**

Quam cinxere freta, Gower, tua carmina leta  
Per loca discreta canit Anglia laude repleta.  
Carminis Athleta, satirus, tibi, siue Poeta,  
Sit laus completa quo gloria stat sine meta.

Quia unusquisque, prout a deo accepit, aliis impartiri tenetur, Iohannes Gower super hiis que deus sibi sensualiter donavit villicationis sue rationem, dum tempus instat, secundum aliquid alleviare cupiens, inter labores et ocia ad aliorum noticiam tres libros doctrine causa forma subsequenti propterea composuit.

Primus liber Gallico sermone editus in decem diuiditur partes, et tractans de viciis et virtutibus, necnon et de variis huius seculi gradibus, viam qua peccator trans-  
gressus ad sui creatoris agnitionem redire debet, recto  
tramite docere conatur. Titulusque libelli istius Speculum  
Meditantis nuncupatus est.

Secundus enim liber sermone latino metrico compositus tractat de variis infortuniis tempore Regis Ricardi Secundi  
in Anglia contingentibus. Vnde non solum regni proceres

EPISTOLA huius operis sui AJECL huius operis vel opusculi sui  
XRB: huius opusculi Δ

QUIA VNUSQUISQUE ins. AJXERCLB, BTA, F om. SA, Magd  
(MHG, Ad, WKHs defective at the end)

1 Quia F 2 sensualiter] intellectualiter A . . . B 3 dum  
tempus instat om. BTA 4 ff. inter labores—composuit] tres precipue  
libros per ipsum dum vixit doctrine causa compositos ad aliorum  
noticiam in lucem seriose produxit. BTA

8 ff. necnon gradibus om. BTA 9 ff. viam—conatur] viam pre-  
cipue qua peccator in penitendo Christi misericordiam assequi poterit,  
tota mentis deuotione finaliter contemplatur BTA 11 Titulusque]  
titulus AX . . . B Speculum hominis A . . . B Speculum  
medantis B

13 ff. Secundus enim liber, sermone latino versibus exametri  
et pentametri compositus, tractat super illo mirabili euentu qui  
in Anglia (anglica J) tempore domini Regis Ricardi secundi  
anno regni sui quarto contigit, quando seruiles rustici impetuose  
contra nobiles et ingenuos regni insurrexerunt. Innocenciam tamen

et communes tormenta passi sunt, set et ipse crudelissimus rex suis ex demeritis ab alto corruens in foueam quam fecit finaliter proiectus est. Nomenque voluminis huius Vox Clamantis intitulatur.

Tercius iste liber qui ob reuerenciam strenuissimi domini 20  
sui domini Henrici de Lancastria, tunc Derbeie Comitis, Anglico sermone conficitur, secundum Danielis propheciam super huius mundi regnorum mutacione a tempore regis Nabugodonosor vsque nunc tempora distinguit. Tractat eciam secundum Aristotilem super hiis quibus 25  
rex Alexander tam in sui regimen quam aliter eius disciplina edoctus fuit. Principalis tamen huius operis materia super amorem et infatuatas amantum passiones fundamentum habet. Nomenque sibi appropriatum Confessio Amantis specialiter sortitus est. 30

dicti domini Regis tunc minoris etatis causa inde excusabilem pronuncians, culpas aliunde, ex quibus et non a fortuna talia inter homines contingunt enormia, euidencius declarat. Titulusque voluminis huius, cuius ordo Septem continet paginas, Vox clamantis nominatur A . . . B<sub>2</sub>

Secundus liber versibus exametri et pentametri sermone latino componitur, tractat de variis infortuniis tempore regis Ricardi secundi in Anglia multipliciter contingentibus, vbi pro statu regni compositor deuocius exorat. Nomenque voluminis huius, quod in septem diuiditur partes, Vox clamantis intitulatur BTA

20 ff. Tercius iste liber (liber iste J) Anglico sermone in octo partes diuisus, qui ad instanciam serenissimi Principis dicti domini Regis Anglie Ricardi secundi conficitur A . . . B<sub>2</sub> Tercius iste liber qui in octo partes diuisus ob reuerenciam stren. dom. sui dom. Henrici de Lanc. &c. BT 24 vsque in nunc T distingui B 25 Nectanabum et Aristotilem A . . . B<sub>2</sub> 26 regimine X . . . B<sub>2</sub> 26 f. eius disciplina—materia om. AX . . . B<sub>2</sub> eorum disciplina &c. J 27 operis] libri J 28 ff. super amorem et amantum condiciones fundamentum habet: vbi variarum Cronicarum historiarumque sentencie, necnon Poetarum Philosophorumque scripture ad exemplum distinccius inseruntur. Nomenque presentis opusculi Confessio Amantis specialiter intitulatur. A . . . B<sub>2</sub> (*but all except J have finem for sentencie*). 30 specialiter om. A

TO  
KING HENRY THE FOURTH  
IN PRAISE OF PEACE

*Electus Cristi, pie Rex Henrice, fuisti,  
Qui bene venisti cum propria regna petisti;  
Tu mala vicisti que bonis bona restituisti,  
Et populo tristi noua gaudia contribuisti.  
Est michi spes lata quod adhuc per te renouata  
Succedent fata veteri probitate beata,  
Est tibi nam grata gracia sponte data.*

O WORTHY noble kyng, Henry the ferthe,  
In whom the glade fortune is befalle  
The poeple to governe uppon this erthe,  
God hath the chose in comfort of ous alle :  
The worschipe of this lond, which was doun falle,  
Now stant upriht thurgh grace of thi goodnesse,  
Which every man is holde forto blesse.

The highe god of his justice allone  
The right which longeth to thi regalie  
Declared hath to stonde in thi persone, 10  
And more than god may no man justefie.  
Thi title is knowe uppon thin ancestrie,  
The londes folk hath ek thy riht affermed ;  
So stant thi regne of god and man confermed.

*The text is that of the MS. at Trentham Hall (T). Variations marked Th are those of the copy in Chaucer's Works, ed. 1532, ff. 375 v<sup>o</sup>—377.*

*No title in T* Iohan Gower vnto the worthy and noble kynge Henry the fourth Th

*Latin Verses placed at the end of the poem Th*

1 O Noble worthy kyng Th 3 uppon this] here vpon Th  
4 chosen Th 8 highe Th high T

\* \*  
\*

Ther is no man mai seie in other wise,  
 That god himself ne hath thi riht declared,  
 Whereof the lond is boun to thi servise,  
 Which for defalte of help hath longe cared :  
 Bot now ther is no mannes herte spared  
 To love and serve and wirche thi plesance, 20  
 And al is this thurgh godes pourveiance.

In alle thing which is of god begonne  
 Ther folwith grace, if it be wel governed :  
 Thus tellen thei whiche olde bookes conne,  
 Whereof, my lord, y wot wel thow art lerned.  
 Axe of thi god, so schalt thou noght be werned  
 Of no requeste which is resonable ;  
 For god unto the goode is favorable.

Kyng Salomon, which hadde at his axinge  
 Of god what thing him was levest to crave, 30  
 He ches wisdom unto the governynge  
 Of goddis folk, the whiche he wolde save :  
 And as he ches it fel him forto have ;  
 For thurgh his wit, whil that his regne laste,  
 He gat him pees and reste unto the laste.

Bot Alisaundre, as telleth his histoire,  
 Unto the god besoghte in other weie,  
 Of all the world to winne the victoire,  
 So that undir his swerd it myht obeie.  
 In werre he hadde al that he wolde preie, 40  
 The myghti god behight him that beheste,  
 The world he wan, and had it of conqweste.

Bot thogh it fel at thilke time so,  
 That Alisandre his axinge hath achieved,  
 This sinful world was al paiene tho,  
 Was non which hath the hihe god believed :  
 No wondir was thogh thilke world was grieved,  
 Thogh a tiraunt his pourpos myhte winne ;  
 Al was vengeance and infortune of sinne.

16 thi] the Th	17 bounde Th	21 this is Th	goddes
purueyaunce Th	godespourveiance T	30 to om. Th	31 the
om. Th	35 unto the] in to his Th	36 his storie Th	42 he
om. Th	45 paynem Th		

Bot now the feith of Crist is come a place 50  
 Among the princes in this erthe hiere,  
 It sit hem wel to do pite and grace;  
 Bot yit it mot be tempred in manere:  
 For as thei finden cause in the matiere  
 Uppon the point, what aftirward betide,  
 The lawe of riht schal noght be leid aside.

So mai a kyng of werre the viage  
 Ordeigne and take, as he therto is holde,  
 To cleime and axe his rightful heritage  
 In alle places wher it is withholde: 60  
 Bot other wise if god himsilve wolde  
 Afferme love and pes between the kynges,  
 Pes is the beste above alle erthely thinges.

Good is teschue werre, and natheles  
 A kyng may make werre uppon his right,  
 For of bataile the final ende is pees.  
 Thus stant the lawe, that a worthi knyght  
 Uppon his trouthe may go to the fight;  
 Bot if so were that he myghte chese,  
 Betre is the pees, of which may no man lese. 70

(Sustene) pes oghte every man alyve,  
 First for to sette his liege lord in reste,  
 And ek these othre men that thei ne stryve;  
 For so this world mai stonden ate beste.  
 What kyng that wolde be the worthieste,  
 The more he myghte oure dedly werre cesse,  
 The more he schulde his worthinesse encesse.

Pes is the chief of al the worldes welthe,  
 And to the heven it ledeth ek the weie;  
 Pes is of soule and lif the mannes helthe, 80  
 Of pestilence and doth the werre aweie.  
 Mi liege lord, tak hiede of that y seie,  
 If werre may be left, tak pes on honde,  
 Which may noght be withoute goddis sonde.

54 as om. Th      63 erthly Th      71 S . . . pes (erasure  
 after S) T To stere peace Th      eueriche on lyue Th      74 lande  
 may stande Th



With pes stant every creature in reste ;  
 Withoute pes ther may no lif be glad :  
 Above alle othre good pes is the beste,  
 Pes hath himself whan werre is al bestad,  
 The pes is sauf, the werre is evere adrad :  
 Pes is of alle charite the keie, 90  
 Which hath the lif and soule forto weie.

My liege lord, if that the list to seche  
 The sothe essamples that the werre hath wrought,  
 Thow schalt wiel hiere of wisemennes speche  
 That dedly werre turneth into noght.  
 For if these olde bokes be wel soght,  
 Ther myght thou se what thing the werre hath do,  
 Bothe of conqueste and conquerour also.

For vein honour or for the worldes good  
 Thei that whilom the stronge werres made, 100  
 Wher be thei now? Bethenk wel in thi mod.  
 The day is goon, the nyght is derk and fade,  
 Her crualte, which mad hem thanne glade,  
 Thei sorwen now, and yit have noght the more ;  
 The blod is schad, which no man mai restore.

The werre is modir of the wronges alle ;  
 It sleth the prest in holi chirche at masse,  
 Forlith the maide and doth hire flour to falle.  
 The werre makth the grete Citee lasse,  
 And doth the lawe his reules overpasse. 110  
 There is no thing wherof meschef mai growe  
 Which is noght caused of the werre, y trowe.

The werre bringth in poverté at hise hieles,  
 Wherof the comon poeple is sore grieved ;  
 The werre hath set his cart on thilke whieles  
 Wher that fortune mai noght be believed.  
 For whan men wene best to have achieved,  
 Ful ofte it is al newe to beginne :  
 The werre hath no thing siker, thogh he winne.

Forthi, my worthi prince, in Cristes halve, 120  
 As for a part whos feith thou hast to guide,  
 Ley to this olde sor a newe salve,  
 And do the werre awei, what so betide :  
 Pourchace pes, and set it be thi side,  
 And suffre noght thi poeple be devoured,  
 So schal thi name evere after stonde honoured.

If eny man be now or evere was  
 Ayein the pes thi preve counseillour,  
 Let god ben of thi conseil in this cas,  
 And put awei the cruel werreieur. 130  
 For god, which is of man the creatour,  
 He wolde noght men slowe his creature  
 Withoute cause of dedly forfeiture.

Wher nedeth most, behoveth most to loke.  
 Mi lord, how so thi werres ben withoute,  
 Of time passed who that hiede toke,  
 Good were at hom to se riht wel aboute ;  
 For everemor the werste is forto doute :  
 Bot if thou myghtest parfit pes atteigne,  
 Ther schulde be no cause forto pleigne. 140

Aboute a kyng good conseil is to preise  
 Above alle othre thinges most vailable ;  
 Bot yit a kyng withinne himself schal peise,  
 And se the thinges that ben resonable,  
 And ther uppon he schal his wittes stable  
 Among the men to sette pes in evene,  
 For love of him which is the kyng of hevене.

Ha, wel is him that schedde nevere blod,  
 Bot if it were in cause of rihtwisnesse :  
 For if a kyng the peril undirstod, 150  
 What is to sle the poeple, thanne y gesse,  
 The dedly werres and the hevynesse,  
 Wherof the pes distourbid is ful ofte  
 Schulde at som time cesse and wexe softe.

121	hast be gyde Th	122	Ley Th	Leic T	124	sette
TTh	126	euer TTh	127	euer TTh	129	Lete T
Th	130	put Th	putte T	148	neuer TTh	Lette

O kyng fulfild of grace and of knyghthode,  
 Remembre uppon this point for Cristes sake,  
 If pes be profred unto thi manhode,  
 Thin honour sauf, let it noght be forsake.  
 Though thou the werres darst wel undirtake,  
 Aftir reson yit tempre thi corage, 160  
 For lich to pes ther is non advantage.

My worthi lord, thenk wel, how so befalle,  
 Of thilke lore, as holi bokes sein,  
 Crist is the heved and we ben membres alle,  
 Als wel the subgit as the sovereign :  
 So sit it wel that charite be plein,  
 Which unto god himselve most acordeth,  
 So as the lore of Cristes word recordeth.

In tholde lawe, er Crist himself was bore,  
 Among the ten comandementz y rede 170  
 How that manslaghtre schulde be forbore ;  
 Such was the will that time of the godhede :  
 And aftirward, whanne Crist tok his manhede,  
 Pes was the ferste thing he let do crie  
 Ayein the worldes rancour and envie.

And er Crist wente out of this erthe hiere,  
 And stigh to hevene, he made his testament,  
 Wher he beqwath to his disciples there  
 And yaf his pes, which is the foundement  
 Of charite, withouten whos assent 180  
 The worldes pes mai nevere wel be tried,  
 Ne love kept, ne lawe justefied.

The Jewes with the paiens hadden werre,  
 Bot thei among hemself stode evere in pes :  
 Whi schulde thanne oure pes stonde out of herre,  
 Which Crist hath chose unto his oghne encres ?  
 For Crist is more than was Moïses,  
 And Crist hath set the parfit of the lawe,  
 The which scholde in no wise be withdrawe.

155 and knyghthode Th	162 penke T thynke Th	165 the
subgit] be subiecte Th	173 But afterwarde Th	175 Ayenst
Th	181 neuer TTh	183 paynyns Th
177 stighed Th		
185 erre Th		

To yive ous pes was cause whi Crist dide ; 190  
 Withoute pes may no thing stonde availed :  
 Bot now a man mai sen on everi side  
 How Cristes feith is every dai assailed,  
 With the Paiens destruid, and so batailed  
 That for defalte of help and of defence  
 Unethe hath Crist his dewe reverence.

The righte feith to kepe of holy chirche  
 The firste point is named of knyghthode,  
 And everi man is holde forto wirche 200  
 Uppon the point which stant to his manhode.  
 Bot now, helas, the fame is sprad so broode,  
 That everi worthi man this thing compleigneth,  
 And yit ther is no man which help ordeigneth.

The worldes cause is waited overal,  
 Ther ben the werres redi to the fulle ;  
 Bot Cristes oghne cause in special,  
 Ther ben the swerdes and the speres dulle ;  
 And with the sentence of the popes bulle,  
 As forto do the folk paien obeie,  
 The chirche is turned al an other weie. 210

It is to wondre above a mannys wit  
 Withoute werre how Cristes feith was wonne,  
 And we that ben uppon this erthe yit  
 Ne kepe it noght, as it was first begonne.  
 To every creature undir the sonne  
 Crist bad himself how that we schulden preche,  
 And to the folk his evangile teche.

More light it is to kepe than to make ;  
 Bot that we founden mad tofore the hond  
 We kepe noght, bot lete it lightly slake. 220  
 The pes of Crist hath altobroke his bond,  
 We reste ourselve and soeffrin every lond  
 To slen ech other as thing undefendid :  
 So stant the werre, and pes is noght amendid.

194 paynems Th      200 which] þat Th      202 worthi om. Th  
 203 is there Th      which] that Th      209 payne Th      211  
 a) any Th      216 how om. Th      219 the om. Th

## TO KING HENRY THE FOURTH

Bot thogh the heved of holy chirche above  
 Ne do noght al his hole businesse  
 Among the men to sette pes and love,  
 These kynges oughten of here rightwisnesse  
 Here oghne cause among hemself redresse :  
 Thogh Petres schip as now hath lost his stiere, 230  
 It lith in hem that barge forto stiere.

If holy cherche after the duete  
 Of Cristes word ne be noght al avysed  
 To make pes, acord and unite  
 Among the kinges that ben now devised,  
 Yit natheles the lawe stant assised  
 Of mannys wit to be so resonable,  
 Withoute that to stonde hemselfe stable.

Of holy chirche we ben children alle,  
 And every child is holden forto bowe 240  
 Unto the modir, how that evere it falle,  
 Or elles he mot reson desalowe :  
 And for that cause a knyght schal ferst avowe  
 The right of holi chirche to defende,  
 That no man schal the previlege offende.

Thus were it good to setten al in evene  
 The worldes princes and the prelatz bothe,  
 For love of him which is the king of hevene :  
 And if men scholde algate wexe wrothe,  
 The Sarazins, whiche unto Crist be lothe, 250  
 Let men ben armed ayein hem to fighte ;  
 So mai the knyht his dede of armes righte.

Uppon thre pointz stant Cristes pes oppressed :  
 Ferst holy cherche is in hirsilf divided,  
 Which oughte of reson first to be redresced ;  
 Bot yit so highe a cause is noght decided.  
 And thus, whan humble pacience is prided,  
 The remenant, which that thei schulden reule,  
 No wondir is though it stonde out of reule.

227 men] people Th      238 him selfe Th      241 euer Th  
 251 ayenst Th      254 is om. Th      hersilf T      her selfe Th

Of that the heved is siek, the limes aken : 260  
 These regnes that to Cristes pes belongen  
 For worldes good these dedly werres maken,  
 Whiche helpeles as in balance hongen.  
 The heved above hem hath noght undirfongen  
 To sette pes, bot every man sleeth other,  
 And in this wise hath charite no brother.

The two defaltes bringen in the thridde,  
 Of mescreantz, that sen how we debate,  
 Betwen the two thei fallen in amidde, 270  
 Wher now aldai thei finde an open gate.  
 Lo, thus the dedly werre stant algate ;  
 Bot evere y hope of King Henries grace  
 That he it is which schal the pes embrace.

My worthi noble prince and kyng enoight,  
 Whom god hath of his grace so preserved,  
 Behold and se the world uppon this point,  
 As for thi part that Cristes pes be served :  
 So schal thin highe mede be deserved  
 To him which al schal qwiten ate laste,  
 For this lif hiere mai no while laste. 280

See Alisandre, Ector and Julius,  
 See Machabeu, David and Josue,  
 See Charlemeine, Godefroi, Arthus,  
 Fulfid of werre and of mortalite.  
 Here fame abit, bot al is vanite ;  
 For deth, which hath the werres under fote,  
 Hath mad an ende of which ther is no bote.

So mai a man the sothe wite and knowe,  
 That pes is good for every king to have :  
 The fortune of the werre is evere unknowe, 290  
 Bot wher pes is, ther ben the marches save.  
 That now is up, to morwe is under grave ;  
 The mighti god hath alle grace in honde,  
 With outen him pes mai nought longe stonde.

263 helpples T	helplesse Th	269 Betwene TTh	276
Beholde TTh	283 Godfray and Arthus Th	288 mai]	
many Th	291 ben] is Th	294 pes] men Th	

## TO KING HENRY THE FOURTH

Of the Tenetz to winne or lese a chace,  
 Mai no lif wite er that the bal be ronne :  
 Al stant in god, what thing men schal pourchace,  
 Thende is in him er that it be begonne.  
 Men sein the wolle, whanne it is wel sponne,  
 Doth that the cloth is strong and profitable, 300  
 And elles it mai nevere be durable.

The worldes chaunces uppon aventure  
 Ben evere sett, bot thilke chaunce of pes  
 Is so behoveli to the creature,  
 That it above alle othre is pierles :  
 Bot it mai noght be gete natheles  
 Among the men to lasten eny while,  
 Bot wher the herte is plein withoute guyle.

The pes is as it were a sacrament  
 Tofore the god, and schal with wordes pleine 310  
 Withouten eny double entendement  
 Be treted, for the trouthe can noght feine :  
 Bot if the men withinne hemself be veine,  
 The substance of the pes may noght be trewe,  
 Bot every dai it chaungeth uppon newe.

Bot who that is of charite parfit,  
 He voideth alle sleightes ferr aweie,  
 And sett his word uppon the same plit,  
 Wher that his herte hath founde a siker weie :  
 And thus whan conscience is trewly weie, 320  
 And that the pes be handlid with the wise,  
 It schal abide and stonde in alle wise.

Thapostle seith, ther mai no lif be good  
 Which is noght grounded uppon charite,  
 For charite ne schedde nevere blod,  
 So hath the werre as ther no propreite :  
 For thilke vertu which is seid pite  
 With charite so ferforth is aqweinted,  
 That in hire may no fals semblant be peinted.

295 Off (*for* Or) T  
 al other peerles Th  
 329 here T her Th

301 neuer TTh  
 306 begete Th

305 That is aboue  
 321 the pes] these Th

Cassodre, whos wrtinge is auctorized, 330  
 Seith, wher that pite reigneth, ther is grace,  
 Thurgh which the pes hath al his welthe assised,  
 So that of werre he dredeth no manace.  
 Wher pite dwelleth, in the same place  
 Ther mai no dedly cruelte sojorne,  
 Wherof that merci schulde his weie torne.

To se what pite forth with mercy doth,  
 The cronike is at Rome in thilke empire  
 Of Constantin, which is a tale soth ;  
 Whan him was levere his oghne deth desire 340  
 Than do the yonge children to martire,  
 Of crualte he lasse the querele,  
 Pite he wroghte and pite was his hele.

For thilke mannes pite which he dede  
 God was pitous and mad him hol at al ;  
 Silvestre cam, and in the same stede  
 Yaf him baptisme first in special,  
 Which dide awai the sinne original,  
 And al his lepre it hath so purified,  
 That his pite for evere is magnified. 350

Pite was cause whi this emperour  
 Was hol in bodi and in soule bothe,  
 And Rome also was set in thilke honour  
 Of Cristes feith, so that the lieve of lothe,  
 Whiche hadden be with Crist tofore wrothe,  
 Resceived weren unto Cristes lore :  
 Thus schal pite be preised evermore.

My worthi liege lord, Henri be name,  
 Which Engeland hast to governe and righte,  
 Men oghten wel thi pite to proclame, 360  
 Which openliche in al the worldes sighte  
 Is schewed with the help of god almightie,  
 To yive ous pes, which longe hath be debated,  
 Wherof thi pris shal nevere ben abated.

331 ther om. Th  
 350 euer TTh

336 wei T way Th  
 356 were TTh

345 made Th



## TO KING HENRY THE FOURTH

My lord, in whom hath evere yit be founde  
 Pite withoute spot of violence,  
 Kep thilke pes alwei withinne bounde,  
 Which god hath planted in thi conscience :  
 So schal the cronique of thi pacience  
 Among the seintz be take into memoire 370  
 To the loenge of perdurable gloire.

And to thin erthli pris, so as y can,  
 Which everi man is holde to commende,  
 I, Gower, which am al thi liege man,  
 This lettre unto thin excellence y sende,  
 As y which evere unto my lives ende  
 Wol praie for the stat of thi persone  
 In worschipe of thi sceptre and of thi throne.

Noght only to my king of pes y write,  
 Bot to these othre princes cristene alle, 380  
 That ech of hem his oghne herte endite,  
 And see the werre er more meschief falle :  
 Sette ek the rightful Pope uppon his stalle,  
 Kep charite and draugh pite to honde,  
 Maintene lawe, and so the pes schal stonde.

**Explicit carmen de pacis commendacione, quod ad laudem et memoriam serenissimi principis domini Regis Henrici quarti suus humilis orator Iohannes Gower composuit. Et nunc sequitur epistola in qua idem Ioannes pro statu et salute dicti domini sui apud altissimum deuocius exorat.**

REX celi deus et dominus, qui tempora solus  
 Condedit, et solus condita cuncta regit ;  
 Qui rerum causas ex se produxit et vnum  
 In se principium rebus inesse dedit ;  
 Qui dedit vt stabili motu consisteret orbis

365 euer TTh      371 loenge] legende Th      378 and thy  
 throne Th      382 mor T

EXPLICIT 3 suis Th      4 Et nunc—exorat om. Th

*Instead of the Latin lines that follow Th has here the lines 'Electus Cristi—sponte data,' which in T stand at the beginning, and after these without a break, 'Henrici quarti—futura deus,' twelve lines which are written at the end of the Trentham MS.*

Fixus in eternum mobilitate sua ;  
 Quique potens verbi produxit ad esse creata,  
 Quique sue mentis lege ligauit ea ;  
 Ipse caput regum, reges quo rectificantur,  
 Te que tuum regnum, rex pie, queso, regat. 10  
 Grata superueniens te misit gracia nobis,  
 Quo sine labe salus nulla perante fuit.  
 Sic tuus aduentus noua gaudia sponte reduxit,  
 Quo prius in luctu lacrima maior erat :  
 Nos tua milicies pauidos releuauit ab ymo,  
 Quos prius oppressit ponderis omne malum :  
 Ex probitate tua, quo mors latitabat in vmbra,  
 Vita resurrexit clara que regna regit :  
 Sic tua sors sortem mediante deo renouatam  
 Sanat et emendat, que prius egra fuit. 20  
 O pie rex, Cristum per te laudamus, et ipsum  
 Qui tibi nos tribuit terra reuiuia colit.  
 Sancta sit illa dies qua tu tibi regna petisti,  
 Sanctus et ille deus qui tibi regna dedit.  
 Qui tibi prima tulit, confirmet regna futura,  
 Quo poteris magno magnus honore frui.  
 Sit tibi progenies ita multiplicata per eum,  
 Quod genus inde pium repleat omne solum.  
 Quicquid in orbe boni fuerit, tibi summus ab alto  
 Donet, vt in terris rex in honore regas : 30  
 Omne quod est turpe vacuum discedat, et omne  
 Est quod honorificum det deus esse tuum.  
 Consilium nullum, pie rex, te tangat iniquum,  
 In quibus occultum scit deus esse dolum.  
 Absit auaricia, ne tangat regia corda,  
 Nec queat in terra proditor esse tua.  
 Sic tua processus habeat fortuna perhennes,  
 Quo recolant laudes secula cuncta tuas :  
 Nuper vt Augusti fuerant preconia Rome,  
 Concina in gestis Anglia leta tuis. 40  
 O tibi, rex, euo detur, fortissime, nostro  
 Semper honorata scepra tenere manu :  
 Stes ita magnanimus quod, vbi tua regna gubernas,  
 Terreat has partes hostica nulla manus :

Augeat imperium tibi Cristus et augeat annos,  
Protegat et nostras aucta corona fores :  
Sit tibi pax finis, domito domineris in orbe,  
Cunctaque sint humeris inferiora tuis.  
Sic honor et virtus, laus, gloria, pax que potestas  
Te que tuum regnum magnificare queant. 50  
Cordis amore boni, pie rex, mea vota parauī ;  
Corpore cum nequii, seruiō mente tibi :  
Ergo tue laudi que tuo genuflexus honori  
Verba loco doni pauper habenda tuli.  
Est tamen ista mei, pie rex, sententia verbi,  
Fine tui regni sint tibi regna poli.

48 Cuncta que T    49 paxque T    50 Teque T    53 laudique T

## NOTES

### LIB. V. (*continued*)

1980. F has a stop after 'Avarice,' but see note on l. 3966.

1982 ff. The meaning seems to be that they make no distinction of day or night when there is work of this kind to be done.

2004. *overhippeth*, i.e. leaps over or omits something, so that he has not all that he desires. The word is used in *Piers Plowman*, xv. 379, of omitting passages in the services of the Church.

2015 ff. Cp. *Mirour de l'Omme*, 6253 ff.,

'Sicomme le Luce en l'eaue gloute  
Du piscon la menuse toute,  
Qu'il presde luy verra noer,  
Ensi ly riches,' &c.

2081 ff. The tale of Virgil's Mirror is from the French prose *Roman des Sept Sages*, as published by Le Roux de Lincy. It might easily be shown that Gower did not follow either the French metrical version or the Latin *Historia Septem Sapientum*. The English metrical version published by Weber is from a source similar to that of Gower's story, but it differs in some points. Gower seems to be responsible for the introduction of Carthage and Hannibal.

2099. *slepende a nykt*, i.e. while they slept.

2101. Cp. Prol. 182.

2115. *he his oghne body*, i.e. 'he himself.'

2150 f. This point is omitted in the English metrical version.

2157 f. The English metrical version is very similar, 'We schulle the ymage so undersette, That we ne schal hit nothing lette.'

2168. That is, the timber having been set up.

2198 ff. This about Hannibal is introduced here as if taken from a different source, 'For this I finde,' &c.

2238 f. Cp. *Mirour*, 10651, 'Plus que gaigners son augst attent.'

2278 ff. The tale of the Two Coffers is essentially the same story as that which we have in Boccaccio *Decam.* x. i, and essentially different from that which is told in *Vit. Barlaam et Josaphat*, cap. vi, as a sequel to the story of the Trump of Death. The story which we have here and in Boccaccio is not at all connected with the idea of choosing

by the outward appearance. The coffers are exactly alike, and the very point of the situation lies in the fact that the choice is a purely fortuitous one. The object was to show that they who complained were persons who had fortune against them, and that this was the cause of their having failed of reward, and not any neglect on the part of the king. I cannot say what the source was for Gower; certainly not Boccaccio, whose story is altogether different in its details.

2391 ff. With this story may be compared that in the *Gesta Romanorum*, 109, where by a choice between three pasties, one containing money, a decision is come to as to whether it is God's will that a certain sum shall be restored to its owner, who is a miser.

2476. *tall*, i. e. comely, elegant.

2481. Cp. Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*; D 259.

2507. *His thonkes*, 'of his own good will': cp. Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, A 1626, &c.

2543 ff. See *Hist. Alexandri Magni de Preliis*, f 1, ed. Argent. 1489.

2547 ff. *Rom. de Troie*, 23283 ff.

2563. Cp. ii. 2025.

2587. 'If men shall estimate her value.' The reading of the text is also that of S.

2643 ff. This story is to be found in the *Roman des Sept Sages*. Gower follows the same French prose version as before, 2031 ff.

2677. *it stod*. In this kind of expression the verb is usually subjunctive, as Prol. 481, i. 991, iv. 182, &c.

2752. *a weie*. This is also the reading of S.

2815 f. A rather more violent displacement than usual of the conjunction, 'And fled away with all the haste,' &c. Cp. l. 3947.

2835. *hele* seems here to mean 'profit,' in a worldly sense.

2872. According to the *New Engl. Dict.* this is the same as the Dutch 'heepe,' 'heep,' meaning a pruning-hook. 'As there is no cognate word in O. E., its appearance in Gower, and this apparently in a proverbial phrase, is not easy to account for.' In any case the phrase here seems equivalent to 'by hook or by crook.'

2937. F has punctuation after 'dai,' but this is clearly a case of the inverted order of the conjunction: cp. note on Prol. 155, and below on l. 3966.

2961 ff. The story is probably taken from Statius, *Achill.* i. 197 ff., where however it is told at much greater length. For Gower's acquaintance with the *Achilleis*, cp. iv. 1968 ff.

3002 ff. Cp. *Achill.* i. 338 ff.

3004 f. That is, howsoever his behaviour might be watched.

3082. *Protheüs*. According to Statius, *Achill.* i. 494 ff., Protesilaus rebuked Calchas for not having discovered Achilles, upon which Calchas revealed the truth. Perhaps the mention of Protesilaus suggested to Gower the idea of Proteus, of whom he had heard as one who could change his form at will, see l. 6672, and perhaps as

having prophesied the birth and greatness of Achilles (Ovid, *Metam.* xi. 221 ff.).

3119 *topseilcole*, see note on viii. 1890.

3138 f. Cp. *Achill.* i. 812 ff.

3247 ff. The first part of the story of Jason and Medea (ll. 3247-3926) is taken from Benoît (*Rom. de Troie*, 703-2062), and not from Guido, as may be easily shown by comparison of the texts. For example, Guido tells all the conditions of the enterprise, about the fire-breathing bulls, the serpent's teeth and so on, at the beginning of the story, whereas Benoît more dramatically introduces them into the instructions given to Jason by Medea (*Rom. de Troie*, 1337-1374, 1691-1748), and in this he is followed by Gower (3505-3540). Guido says nothing about the sleeplessness of the serpent (*Rom. de Troie*, 1357 f., *Conf. Am.* v. 3514), nor about repeating the charm 'cointre orient' (*Rom. de Troie*, 1700), nor does he mention the thanksgiving which Jason is to offer up to the gods after his victory and before he takes the fleece (*Rom. de Troie*, 1735 f., *Conf. Am.* v. 3626 ff.). The sleep of Jason after leaving Medea is omitted by Guido (*Rom. de Troie*, 1755 ff., *Conf. Am.* v. 3665 ff.), and also the bath which he took after his adventure (*Rom. de Troie*, 1999, *Conf. Am.* v. 3801). There is no need to multiply instances, which will be observed by every careful reader. We have seen on other occasions that Gower prefers Benoît to Guido, and not without excellent reasons. Guido indeed makes this story even more prosaic than usual, and combines it with matter-of-fact discussions about the magic powers of Medea and the virtues of the various stones which she used.

Gower, however, does not follow Benoît in a slavish manner. He omits or alters the details of the story very happily at times, and he adds much of his own. Thus he omits all mention of the evil motives of Peleus (or Pelias), and makes the proposal to seek the golden fleece come from Jason; he passes over the story of the dispute with Laomedon, which was necessary to the *Roman de Troie*, but not to the story of Jason taken separately; he adds the discourse of Jason with Oëtes on his arrival; he omits the details about Medea's hair and eyes, her arms and her chin (*Rom. de Troie*, 1254 ff.), and dwells rather upon the feelings which the two lovers had for one another at first sight (3376 ff.). When they are together at night, it is Medea, according to our author, and not Jason, who suggests that it is time to rise and to speak of what has to be done (3547 ff.); and Gower adds the scene of parting (3634-3659), the description of Jason's return over the sea and of Medea's feelings meanwhile upon her tower, and the sending of the maid to inquire how he did. Finally, he much improves the story by making the flight take place at once, instead of prolonging Jason's stay for a month.

Chaucer, who tells the story in a rather perfunctory manner, follows Guido (*Leg. of Good Women*, 1396 ff.).

3291. *And schop anon*, &c. This might be understood of Peleus,

\* \*

k k

who, according to the original story, gave orders for the building of the ship; but better perhaps of Jason, 'And schop' for 'And he schop,' cp. l. 4590 and vi. 1636.

3376. *herd spoke*: cp. 4485, 'I have herd seid.'

3388. That is, 'they took heed each of other.' For the plural verb cp. 3439.

3416. That is, 'he took St. John as his pledge' of a good issue, 'he committed himself to the care of St. John.' The expression was often used in connexion with setting out on a journey: cp. Chaucer, *Compl. of Mars*, 9.

3422. Cp. iv. 3273, vi. 2104. The expression in vi. 1621 f., 'to ful age, That he can reson and langage,' that is, 'till he is of full age and knows reason,' &c., is much of the same kind.

3488. *dede him helpe*. We must take this second 'helpe' as a substantive, otherwise the rhyme would not be good. The rule is that words identical in form can only be combined in rhyme when they have some difference of meaning.

3509. *to thyle*. The idea was that the golden fleece was guarded in a small island adjacent to the larger 'isle of Colchos.' See *Rom. de Troie*, 1791 ff.,

'Ilec li covient à passer,  
Ou voille ou non, un bras de mer;  
Mès estreiz est, ne dure mie  
Gaires plus de lieue et demie.  
De l'altre part est li isliax,  
Non mie granz, mès molt est biax.'

8533. *dethes wounde*, 'deadly wound': cp. iii. 2657, 'And smot him with a dethes wounde,' and also the genitives 'lyves' for 'living' and 'worldes' for 'worldly,' i. 1771, iv. 382, &c.

3573. *hold*, i. e. let him hold: cp. viii. 1128, 1420.

3579 ff. According to Benoît Medea gave him first the magic figure, 'une figure Fete par art et par conjure' (cp. 3580), then the ointment and the ring, and after that a writing, the words of which he was to repeat three times when he came to the place. Gower changes the order of things, and combines the writing with the 'heavenly figure,' describing it as written over with names which he is to repeat in the manner mentioned.

3632. *That thanne he were*, &c., that is, she prayed that he would soon be gone.

3654. 'It shall not be owing to any sloth of mine if I do not,' &c.

3665 ff. 'Dedanz son lit s'est tost cochiez  
Endormi sei en eslepas;  
Car tot esteit de veiller las:  
Et quant il ot dormi grant piece,  
Tant qu'il estoit ja halte tierce,  
Levez s'est,' &c. *Rom. de Troie*, 1756 ff.

'undren hih' is in the French 'halte tierce.'

3681. *recorde*, 'take note of.'

3688. The reading of X here, 'And forth with all his wey he fongeth,' is also that of GOAd.

3707. *scherded*: perhaps the word is suggested by Benoit's expression, 'Les escherdes hérice' (*Rom. de Troie*, 1905).

3711. A literal translation of *Rom. de Troie*, 1906, 'Feu et venin gitot ensemble.' With the lines that follow cp. *Rom. de Troie*, 1911 ff.

3731 ff. The picturesque elements here are perhaps partly suggested by *Rom. de Troie*, 1869 ff.

3747. *That he ne were*, expressing a wish: cp. iv. 3414, 'Helas, that I nere of this lif,' equivalent to 'why ne were I,' l. 5979.

3781 f. 'leyhe' seems to be modified in form for the sake of the rhyme, the usual form in Gower being 'lawhe.'

3786. *naght*, in rhyme for 'noght': cp. 'awht,' 'auht,' i. 2770, v. 6073.

3789. So Ovid, *Metam.* vii. 144 ff.,

'Tu quoque victorem complecti, barbara, velles,  
Obstitit incepto pudor,' &c.,

but it is also in Benoit, *Rom. de Troie*, 1991 f.

3793 ff. The sending of the maid, with the pretty touch in l. 3800, is an addition by Gower.

3890. Cp. i. 1516.

3904. *this was conseil*, 'this was a secret': cp. iii. 778, vi. 2326; so Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, C 819, 'Shal it be conseil?' cp. D 966, E 2431.

3927 ff. Benoit tells no more of Jason's life after his return to Greece, saying that Dares relates no more, and he does not wish to tell stories that may not be true, 'N'en velt fere acreire mençonge.' From this point then Gower follows Ovid, *Metam.* vii. 159-293, and it must be understood that the illustrative quotations in the notes are from this passage.

3947. 'And prayed her that by the magic art which she knew,' &c. For the order of words cp. 2815 f.

3957 f. Ovid makes it full moon, l. 180, but afterwards, l. 188, says 'Sidera sola micant.'

3962 ff. 'Egreditur tectis vestes induta recinctas,  
Nuda pedem, nudos humeris infusa capillos,  
Fertque vagos mediae per muta silentia noctis  
Incomitata gradus.' *Metam.* vii. 182 ff.

The comparison to the adder in l. 3967 is Gower's own.

3966. F has a stop after 'specheles,' there being a natural tendency even in the best copies to treat 'and' or 'for' as the beginning of a new clause: so (to take examples from the fifth book only) v. 231, 410, 444, 2318, 2937, 5096, in all which places F has apparently wrong punctuation in connexion with this kind of inverted order.

3971 ff. 'Ter se convertit, ter sumptis flumine crinem  
Irroravit aquis, ternis ululatibus ora  
Solvit': 189 f.



3981. The punctuation is that of F, but perhaps we ought rather to read,

‘Sche preide and ek hield up hir hond,  
To Echates and gan to crie.’

3986. *help*. For this use of the imperat. sing. (with ‘helpeth’ just above) see Introduction, p. cxviii.

3994. ‘Sublimis rapitur, subiectaque Thessala Tempe  
Despicit, et Creteis regionibus applicat angues:’ 222 f.

Gower very naturally understood this to mean that Medea visited Crete, and hence the confusion of geography. He could not be expected to know that Othrys and Olympus were mountains of Thessaly, and hence that the ‘Creteis’ or ‘cretis’ of his manuscript was probably a corruption.

4000 f. ‘et placitas partim radice revellit,  
Partim succidit curvamine falcis ahenae.’ 226 f.

4005. *Eridian*, i.e. Apidanus.

4006. ‘Necnon Peneus, necnon Spercheides undae  
Contribuere aliquid.’ 230 f.

4011. *the rede See*. Perhaps Gower read ‘rubrum mare’ for ‘refluum mare’ in *Metam.* vii. 258.

4031 ff. ‘statuitque aras e caespite binas,  
Dexteriore Hecates, at laeva parte Iuventae.’ 240 f.

4039. ‘verbenis, silvaque incinxit agresti,’ 242. Gower took ‘silva agrestis’ as the name of a herb and ingeniously translated it into ‘fieldwode.’

4052 f. ‘Umbrarumque rogat rapta cum coniuge regem,’ 249. Our author is able to supply the names correctly.

4064-4114. This picturesque passage is for the most part original.

4127 ff. ‘Nec defuit illic Squamea Cinyphii tenuis membrana chelydri,’ 272. Gower understood this to mean ‘the scales of Cinyphius (or Cimphius) and the skin of Chelidrus.’

4134. ‘novem cornicis saecula passae,’ 274.

4137. Ovid speaks of the entrails of a werwolf, ‘Ambigui prosecta lupi,’ &c.

4156. For omission of relative cp. l. 4205 and note on i. 10.

4175 ff. The story here is only summarized by Ovid, *Metam.* vii. 394-401. Gower of course knew it from other sources.

4219. ‘intrat Palladias arces,’ *Metam.* vii. 398. This means Athens, but it is misunderstood by Gower.

4251. *Philen*, i.e. Nephele. Hyginus tells this story much as it is told here (except that it was the mother of the children who provided the ram), but he gives the name in its Latin form, as ‘Nebula.’ Note the mistake as to this name in the margin, appearing in all MSS. except SΔΔ.

4299 ff. Note the confused construction of the sentence : cp. note on i. 98.

4391. The metaphor of hunting is still kept up : the gain which they pursue is started like a hare and driven into the net.

4399. *Outward*, that is, when he gives things out, cp. 'withinne' below.

4452. *I were a goddesshalf*. This seems to mean, 'I should be content,' that is, I should be ready to say 'In God's name let it be so.' For the expression cp. l. 5016, 'Thanne a goddes half The thridde time assaie I schal.' In the *New Engl. Dict.* ('half') it is said to be used 'to add emphasis to a petition, command, or expression of consent or resignation' : cp. Chaucer, *Book of the Duchess*, 370, 757.

4455. *I bide nevere . . . Bot, 'I demand only.'* In this expression 'biede' and 'bidde' have been confused, as often. Thus we have 'I bidde nevere a betre taxe,' i. 1556, 'That I ne bede nevere awake,' iv. 2905, in the latter of which 'bede' may be either pret. subj. of 'bidde,' or pres. ind. equivalent to 'biede,' and vi. 1356, 'He bede nevere fare bet' where 'bede' is apparently pret. subj. of bidde; while in the English *Rom. of the Rose*, 791, we have 'Ne bode I nevere thennes go,' in which 'bode' must be pret. subj. of 'biede.'

4465. *lete* : see note on i. 3365.

4549 ff. Cp. i. 42 ff.

4557 f. 'No law may control him either by severity or by mildness.' For the use of 'compaignie' in the sense of 'friendliness' cp. i. 1478, and below, l. 7759.

4583 ff. Ovid, *Metam.* iii. 362 ff., but the circumstances are somewhat modified to suit Gower's purpose. According to Ovid Echo's fault was that she talked too much and diverted Juno's attention, and her punishment was that her speech was confined to a mere repetition of what she heard. Here the crime is rather that she cunningly concealed in her speech what she ought to have told, and the punishment is that she is obliged to tell everything that comes to her ears.

4590. 'And through such brocage he was untrue,' &c. For the omission of the pronoun see note on i. 1895.

4623. *make it so queinte*, 'be so cunning' : cp. iv. 2314, where however 'queinte' has a different meaning.

4642. *hire mouth asape*, i. e. escape being repeated by her mouth.

4661. The aspiration of 'hem,' so as to prevent elision, is very unusual : cp. Introduction, p. cxxv.

4668 ff. 'I shall arrange in their due order those branches of Avarice on which no wealth is well bestowed,' that is, those which make no return for what is bestowed upon them, viz. Usury and Ingratitude.

4708. *of som reprise*, i. e. 'of some cost,' cp. i. 3414,

'Which most is worth, and no reprise  
It takth ayein,'

that is, it costs nothing.

4724. *with ydel hand*, 'with empty hand,' that is, without a lure. This seems to be the original meaning of the adjective: see *New Eng. Dict.* 'idle.'

4731. *the gold Octovien*. The treasures of Octovien (or Octavian) were proverbial: cp. *Rom. de Troie*, 1684 f.,

'Unques Oteviens de Rome  
Ne pot conquerre tel avoir,'

and again 28594,

'Se li tresors Octoviens  
Fust lor, si lor donassent il.'

The expression here seems to be in imitation of the French form without preposition, as in the latter of the above quotations.

The French *Roman d'Othevien*, found in the Bodleian MS. Hatton 100, and reproduced in two English versions, has nothing to do with the treasures of Octovien, for which see William of Malmesbury, *Gesta Regum*, ii. § 169 f. The treasures were supposed to be buried at Rome or elsewhere, and several persons, especially the Pope Silvester (Gerbert), were said to have seen them, but not to have been permitted to carry them away. They appear also in the *Roman des Sept Sages*.

4748. *eschu of*. The adjective is used by Chaucer with 'to' (or 'for to') and infin., *Cant. Tales*, E 1812, I 971. We may note the spelling here with reference to Chaucer's rhyme in the former passage.

4763. 'It may not by any means be avoided that,' &c.

4774. *as to tho pars*, 'as regards those matters': 'pars' is the French plural form, cp. *Mirour*, 7386, where apparently 'pars' means 'duties.'

4787. Cp. l. 7716, where the saying has a different application. The proverb is here used of those who are, as we say, penny wise and pound foolish. In the other passage it is applied to the opposite case of gaining the coat for the hood.

4808 ff. This story is founded on the so-called *Comedia Babionis*, one of those Latin elegiac poems in a quasi-dramatic form which were popular in the fourteenth century. Others of the same class are *Geta* and *Pamphilus*. In the original, Viola is Babio's step-daughter, with whom he is in love, and who is taken in marriage against his will by Croceus. The serving-man is Fodius, not Spodius, and most of the piece is concerned with an intrigue between him and the wife of Babio. See Wright's *Early Mysteries*, p. 65.

4899. *comth to londe*, 'appears': cp. l. 18.

4921. *who that it kan*, that is, as any one who knows it will witness: cp. l. 4927, 'For, as any one who observes may know, a beast is,' &c.

4937 ff. This story, which is of Eastern origin, is told near the end of the *Speculum Stultorum* (i.e. *Burnellus*), with which Gower was acquainted, as we know from the *Vox Clamantis*. The names there are Bernardus and Dryānus, and the animals are three, a serpent, an ape, and a lion. A similar tale is told by Matthew Paris, under the year 1195, as related by King Richard I in order to recommend

liberality in the cause of Christendom. In this the rich man is Vitalis, a Venetian, and the poor man's name is not given. The animals in the pit are a lion and a serpent. Vitalis thanks his deliverer, and appoints a time for him to come to his palace in Venice and receive the promised reward of half his goods; but when he comes, he is refused with contumely. The magic qualities of the gem which the serpent brings are not mentioned in the story of Vitalis.

5010 f. So in the *Speculum Stultorum*, 'Tunc ita Bernardus, Sathanae phantasmate lusum Se reputans, dixit,' &c.

5022. *blessed*, i.e. crossed himself. This ceremony plays a considerable part in the story of Vitalis, for by it he is preserved from the wild beasts while in the pit.

5025. *Between him and his Ass*, that is, he and his ass together: cp. l. 5381. The expression is imitated from the French, cp. *Roman de Troie*, 5837.

5098. There is a stop after 'Purs,' no doubt rightly, in F. On the other hand the stop after 'wil' in l. 5096 must be wrong.

5123 f. Cp. 4597 ff.

5215. *standt*. For this spelling cp. 'bidt,' iv. 1162.

5231 ff. The outline of this story might have been got from Ovid and from Hyginus, *Fab.* 40-43, but several points of detail suggest a different source. These are, for example, the idea that the son of Minos went to Athens to study philosophy, the statement of the number of persons sent as a tribute to Minos, the incident of the ball of pitch given by Ariadne to Theseus to be used against the Minotaur, and the name of the island where Ariadne was deserted. In the first and third of these Gower agrees with Chaucer, *Legend of Good Women*, 1894 ff, but his story is apparently quite independent, so that in regard to these matters we must assume a common source: cp. L. Berch in *Anglia*, v. 337 ff.

*as telleth the Poete*. The authority referred to here must be Ovid (cp. i. 386, ii. 121, v. 6713, 6804, &c.). He slightly mentions the death of Androgeus, *Metam.* vii. 458, and relates the war of Minos against Megara at some length (*Metam.* viii. 1 ff), very briefly summarising the remainder of the story. Chaucer follows Ovid more fully here, telling the story of Nisus, to which Gower does not think it necessary to refer.

5248. *dighte*. This is the form of spelling here in S as well as F: so also in l. 5352.

5264 f. Hyginus says seven persons each year: Chaucer seems to conceive it as one every third year. The usual account is seven youths and seven maidens either every year or once in nine years.

5302. *many on*. Perhaps we should read 'manye on' with S and F, as vii. 2191, 'manye an other.'

5319. This expression occurs also in ll. 5598 and 7553.

5860. *fuwht*. Elsewhere this verb has preterite 'foghte,' as iii. 2651, iv. 2095, but the strong form 'faught' is used by Chaucer, e.g. *Can't. Tales*, B 3519, and this in fact is the originally correct form.

5413. *Chyo*. Ovid says 'Dia,' that is Naxos.

5507. *His rihte name*: cp. *Mirour*, 409, 'par son droit noun Je l'oi nommer Temptacioun,' 4243, 'Si ot a noun par droit nommant,' &c. and other similar expressions.

5510. *as men telleth*: cp. l. 6045, 'men seith.'

5511. According to the margin Extortion is the *mother* of Ravine.

5550. *femeline*, used repeatedly both as adjective and as substantive in the *Mirour de l'Omme*.

5551 ff. The tale of Tereus is from Ovid, *Metam.* vi. 424-674, in some parts abbreviated and in others expanded, with good judgment usually in both cases, so that this is one of Gower's best-told tales. He omits the long account given by Ovid of the way in which Pandion was persuaded to allow Philomela to accompany Tereus (*Metam.* vi. 447-510), the incidents of the rescue of Philomela from her imprisonment, which no doubt he felt would be unintelligible to his readers (587-600), and many of the more shocking details connected with the death of Itys and the feast upon his flesh. On the other hand he has added the prayer and reflections of Philomene in her prison (ll. 5734-5768), the prayers of the two sisters (5817-5860), the words of Progne to Tereus (5915-5927), and especially the reflections on the nightingale and the swallow at the end of the story (5943-6029). This latter part is quite characteristic of our author, and as usual it is prettily conceived.

Chaucer, who tells the story in the *Legend of Good Women*, 2228-2393, was weary of it even from the beginning (2257 f.), and omits the conclusion altogether, either as too shocking or as not suiting with his design. So far as he goes, however, he follows Ovid more closely than Gower.

5555. See note on Prol. 460.

5598. So also ll. 5319, 7553.

5623. Ovid's comparison is to fire catching dry straw and leaves, *Metam.* vi. 456 f.

5643 ff. Ovid compares her state after the deed was done to that of a lamb hurt by a wolf and still trembling, or a dove which has escaped wounded from a bird of prey (527-530). Here, on the other hand, the idea is of being held fast, so that she cannot move or escape; while Chaucer, using the same similes as Ovid, applies the comparison less appropriately to her fear of the violence yet to come.

5651. Cp. *Metam.* vi. 531, 'Mox ubi mens rediit.'

5663 ff.

'si copia detur,

In populos veniam; si silvis clausa tenebor,

Implebo silvas, et conscia saxa movebo.' *Metam.* vi. 545 ff.

5670. I suspect the combination 'tale and ende' may have arisen from some such phrase as 'to sette tale on ende' (or 'an ende'), meaning to begin a speech: see *New Engl. Dict.* under 'ende.'

5676. *where is thi fere?* that is, 'where is thy fear of the gods?'

We must not take 'fere' in the sense of 'companion' or 'equal,' because in that case it could not properly rhyme with 'Ere.'

5690 f. 'comprehensam forcipe linguam  
Abstulit ense fero.' *Metam.* vi. 556 f.

Gower must be commended for omitting the tasteless lines which follow in Ovid about the severed tongue, and still more the shocking statement, which even Ovid accompanies with 'vix ausim credere,' of 561 f.

5709. *tyh*, preterite of 'ten,' from OE. 'tēon,' meaning 'draw,' and hence 'come.'

5724. The punctuation follows F, 'To hire' meaning 'in her case,' cp. l. 4182, vii. 4937. It would suit the sense better perhaps to set the comma after 'forsake,' and to take 'To hire' with what follows: cp. note on l. 3966, where it is shown that the punctuation of F is often wrong in such cases as this.

5726. *hir Sostres mynde*, 'her sister's memory.'

5730. *guile under the gore*, that is, deceit concealed, as it were, under a cloak: cp. l. 6680. The expression 'under gore' is common enough, meaning the same as 'under wedge,' and this alliterative form looks like a proverbial expression.

5734-5768. All this is original.

5787. *so grete a wo*: cp. l. 6452, and see Introduction, p. cx.

5778. 'nec scit quid tradat in illis,' *Metam.* vi. 580.

5793. 'Non est lacrimis hic, inquit, agendum, Sed ferro,' *Metam.* vi. 611.

5802 ff. According to Ovid this was done under cover of a Bacchic festival (587 ff.).

5816-5860. This is all original.

5840. *to lytel of me let*: see note on l. 1004.

5891 ff. Gower does well in omitting the circumstances of this which Ovid gives (619-646), and in partially covering the horror of it by the excuse of madness, but there is one touch which ought to have been brought in, 'Ah, quam Es similis patri!' (621).

5910 ff. Ovid says that Philomela threw the gory head into the father's face, and that Tereus endeavoured to vomit up that which he had eaten. Our author has shown good taste in not following him.

5915 ff. This speech is not in Ovid.

5943-6029. Nearly all this is Gower's own. Ovid only says, 'Quarum petit altera silvas: Altera tecta subit' (668 f.). We have already observed upon our author's tendency to make additions of this symbolical kind to the stories which he takes from Ovid: see note on i. 2355.

6020. The reading 'here' is given both by S and F, but 'hire' ('hir'), supported by AJMXGCB<sub>2</sub>, BT, W, seems to be required by the sense. She informs them of the falseness of her husband, that they also may learn to beware of them, that is of husbands. The combination of 'here'



with the singular 'housebonde,' meaning 'their husbands,' would be very harsh.

6041 ff. 'Ille dolore suo, poenaeque cupidine velox,  
Vertitur in volucrem, cui stant in vertice cristae,  
Prominet immodicum pro longa cuspidē rostrum.  
Nomen Epops volucris, facies armata videtur.'

*Metam.* vi. 671 ff.

The lapwing is identified with the hoopoe because of its crest. In the *Traitié*, xii, where this story is shortly told, Tereus is changed into a 'hupe,'

'Dont dieus lui ad en hupe transformée,  
En signe qu'il fuist fals et avoltier,'

while at the same time in the *Mirour*, 8869 ff., the 'hupe' is represented as the bird which tries to deceive those who search for its nest, a description which obviously belongs to the lapwing.

6047. Cp. Chaucer, *Parl. of Foules*, 347, 'The false lapwyng ful of trecherye.'

6053. *goddes forebode*: cp. Chaucer, *Leg. of Good Women*, 10,

'But goddes forbode but men schulde leve,'

where the second form of text has

'But god forbede but men shulde leve.'

We must take 'forebode' as a substantive.

6073. *auht*: modified to suit the rhyme: so 'awht,' i. 2770, and 'naght,' l. 3786, rhyming with 'straght.' The regular forms for Gower are 'oght,' 'noght.'

6145 ff. This is from Ovid, *Metam.* ii. 569-588. Gower has judiciously kept it apart from the story of Coronis and the raven, told by him in the second book, with which it is combined in rather a confusing manner by Ovid. The story is somewhat expanded by Gower.

6150. *wif to Marte*: cp. 1214 f.

6169. *And caste*: cp. l. 4590, and see note on i. 1895.

6197. 'mota est pro virgine virgo, Auxiliumque tulit,' *Metam.* ii. 579 f., but Ovid says nothing of any special prayer to Pallas for help, nor does he represent that Cornix was before in attendance upon that goddess.

6207 ff. This is original and characteristic of our author.

6225 ff. This story is from Ovid, *Metam.* ii. 409-507, but Gower evidently knew it from other sources also, for the name Calistona (or Callisto) is not given by Ovid, who calls her 'virgo Nonacrina' and 'Parrhasis.' Hyginus tells it in various forms, *Fab.* 177 and *Poet. Astr.* ii. 2..

6255. According to Ovid, Diana was quite ignorant of the fact, though the nymphs suspected it.

6258. *in a ragerie*, that is 'in sport': cp. Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*,

E 1847, and the use of the verb 'rage,' e.g. i. 1764 and *Cant. Tales*, A 257, 3273, 3958.

6275 ff. 'I procul hinc, dixit, nec sacros pollue fontes,' *Metam.* ii. 464.

6281. F has a stop after 'schame.'

6291 ff. This address is mostly original: cp. *Metam.* ii. 471 ff.

6334 ff. 'Arcuit omnipotens, pariterque ipsosque nefasque

Sustulit, et celeri raptos per inania vento

Imposuit caelo vicinaque sidera fecit.'

*Metam.* ii. 505 ff.

*Latin Verses*, x. The idea expressed is that though examples of virginity can only be produced through marriage, yet virginity is nobler than marriage, as the flower of a rose is nobler than the stock from which it springs. Marriage, in fact, replenishes the earth, but virginity heaven: cp. *Traité*, ii.

6359 ff. Cp. *Mirour*, 17119 ff., where the saying is attributed to Jerome, who says in fact that precedence was given in the streets to the Vestal Virgins by the highest magistrates, and even by victors riding in the triumphal car (*adv. Jovin.* ii. 41).

6372 ff. Cp. *Mirour*, 18301 ff. The anecdote is taken from Valerius Maximus, *Mem.* iv. 5, but the name in the original is 'Spurina,' and he does not thrust out his eyes, but merely destroys the beauty of his face. In the *Mirour* it is 'Coupa ses membres.'

6385 ff. 'So may I prove that, if a man will weigh the virtues, he will find that virginity is to be praised above all others.' The sentence is disordered for the sake of the rhymes: cp. ii. 709 ff.

6389. The quotation from the Apocalypse is given in the margin of SA and in *Mirour*, 17053 ff. The reference is to Rev. xiv. 4.

6398 ff. This also appears in *Mirour*, 17089 ff., and *Traité*, xvi. It may have been taken from the *Epistola Valerii ad Rufinum*.

6402. The margin makes him 'octogenarius,' and so it is also in the *Mirour* and *Traité*, as well as in the *Epistola Valerii*.

6435 ff. This shows more knowledge than could have been got from the *Roman de Troie*. The story is told by Hyginus, *Fab.* 121, but not exactly as we have it here. This 'Criseide doubter of Crisis' should be distinguished from the Criseide daughter of Calchas (Briseida in the *Roman de Troie*), who is associated with Troilus, if it is worth while making distinctions where so much confusion prevails.

6442. *dangerous*, that is, 'grudging' or 'reluctant': cp. Chaucer. *Cant. Tales*, D 1090, and see note on i. 2443.

6452. *So grete a lust*: cp. l. 5737 and Introduction, p. cx.

6498. *as a Peock doth*. It is difficult to see the appropriateness of the comparison, for to 'stalke' is to go cautiously or secretly, and that is evidently the meaning here, so that any idea of display is out of the question. The peacock was supposed to be ashamed of its

---

6395\* ff. Cp. *Mirour*, 17067 and note.



ugly feet, cp. *Mirour*, 23459, and in the *Secretum Secretorum* we actually have the expression 'humilis et obediens ut pavo,' translated by Lydgate (or Burgh) 'Meeke as a peacock.' Albertus Magnus says, 'Cum aspicitur ad solem, decorem ostentat, et alio tempore occultat quantum poterit' (*De Animalibus*, 23). There seems to have been a notion that it was liable to have its pride humbled and to slink away ashamed.

6526. *bile under the winge*, that is, concealed, as a bird's head under its wing: apparently proverbial.

6541. *I mai remene . . . mene*. This is apparently the reading of the MSS. The meaning of 'remene' is properly to bring back. It is used earlier, i. 279, with reference to the application of the teaching about vices generally to the case of love, and here it seems to have much the same sense. 'So that I may apply what has been said about this craft directly' ('Withouten help of eny mene') to the case of lovers, they being very evidently offenders in this way.

6581. *hire it is*: but in l. 4470, 'It schal ben hires.'

6608 ff. For the construction see note on i. 718.

6620. *Danger*: see note on i. 2443.

6634. *slyke*: cp. l. 7092\*, 'He can so wel hise wordes slyke.' The word means properly to smoothe, hence to flatter: cp. the modern 'sleek.'

6635. *Be him*, &c., i. e. by his own resources or by the help of any other.

6636. *To whom*: see note on i. 771.

6654. *a nyht*, i. e. by night, also written 'anyht,' ii. 2857.

6672. *Protheüs*, that is Proteus: cp. note on l. 3082.

6674. *in what liknesse*, 'into any form whatsoever.'

6680. *under the palle*, 'in secret,' like 'under the gore,' l. 5730.

6713 ff. From Ovid, *Metam.* iv. 192-255, but with several changes. In the original story the Sun-god came to Leucothoe by night and in the form of her mother. Clytie (not Clymene) discovered the fact (without the aid of Venus) and told it to the father; and it was an incense plant which grew from the place where Leucothoe was buried.

6757. For the expression cp. iii. 2555, 'Achastus, which with Venus was Hire priest.'

6779. This change into a flower which follows the sun is suggested by *Metam.* iv. 266 ff., where we are told that Clytie was changed into a heliotrope. Here it is a sun-flower apparently.

6807 ff. From Ovid, *Fasti*, ii. 305-358. The 'mistress' of whom Ovid speaks is Omphale, but Gower supposed it to be Iole. He gets 'Thophis' as the name of the cave from a misunderstanding of l. 317, and apparently he read 'Saba' for 'Lyda' in l. 356, out of which he has got his idea of a goddess Saba with attendant nymphs. This feature, though based on a mistake, is a decided improvement of the story, which is told by Gower in a spirited and humorous manner.

6848 ff. The reading of X in this passage is also that of GOAd.

6899. The punctuation is that of F.

6932. *al a route*: so iv. 2145, cp. l. 6257, 'al a compainie.'

7018. Cp. *Mirour*, 7181 ff.

7048. This is a nautical metaphor, 'so near the wind will they steer.' The verb 'love' is the modern 'luff,' meaning to bring a ship's head towards the wind. The substantive 'lof' (genit. 'loves') means in M.E. a rudder or some similar contrivance for turning the ship, and 'love' here seems to mean simply to steer. The rhyme with 'glove' makes 'love' from 'lufian' out of the question, even if it gave a satisfactory sense.

7140. *gon offie*. The ceremony of 'offering' after mass was one which involved a good deal of etiquette as regards precedence and so on, cp. Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, A 449 ff., and ladies apparently were led up to the altar on these occasions by their cavaliers.

7179. 'If I might manage in any other way,' like the expression '(I cannot) away with,' &c.

7195 ff. The story comes no doubt from Benoît, *Rom. de Troie*, 2851-4916, where it is told at much greater length. Guido does not differ much as regards the incidents related by Gower, but by comparing the two texts in some particular places we can tell without much difficulty which was Gower's source. For example, in the speech of Hector Benoît has,

'Veez Europe que il ont,                 \*  
La tierce partie del mont,  
Où sont li meillor chevalier.' 3791 ff.,

while Guido says, 'Nostis enim . . . totam Affricam et Europam hodie Grecis esse subiectam, quanta Greci multitudine militum sunt suffulti,' &c. See below, 7340 ff.

The story is told by Gower with good judgement, and he freely omits unnecessary details, as those of the mission of Antenor to Greece. The debate in Priam's parliament is shortened, and the speeches of Hector and Paris much improved.

7197 ff. Cp. 3303 ff.

7202. The sentence is broken off and resumed in a different form: see note on l. 98.

7015\* ff. Cp. *Mirour*, 7156 ff.

7083\*. *And that*, i. e. 'And provided that.'

7092\*. See note on l. 6634.

7105\* ff. The tale is told also in the *Mirour de l'Homme*, 7093-7128. It is to be found in the *Gesta Romanorum* (which however is not Gower's source), and in various other places. Cicero tells what is practically the same story of Dionysius of Syracuse (*De Nat. Deorum*, iii. 34), but the acts of sacrilege were committed by him in various places. The golden mantle was taken from the statue of Zeus at Olympia, and the beard from that of Aesculapius at Epidaurus, the justification in this latter case being that Apollo, the father of Aesculapius, was always represented without a beard. Those who repeated the anecdote in the Middle Ages naturally missed this point. We may note that Dyonis is the name given in the *Mirour*.

7213 ff. Cp. *Rom. de Troie*, 2779 ff.

7235 ff. *Rom. de Troie*, 3029 ff. Gower has judiciously cut short the architectural details.

7275. *Esionam*: see note on l. 6719.

7307. *in his yhte*, 'in his possession.' For the substance of these lines cp. *Rom. de Troie*, 2915-2950.

7372. *schape ye*, imperative, for *schapeth*; so 'Sey ye' in l. 7435.

7377. *Strong thing*, i. e. a hard thing to bear. This is apparently a translation of the French 'fort,' which was very commonly used in the sense of 'difficult': see the examples in Godefroy's Dictionary, e. g. 'forte chose est de çou croire,' 'fors choses est a toi guerroier ancontre moi.'

7390 ff. 'Ten men have been seen to deal with a hundred and to have had the better.'

7400. *Rom. de Troie*, 3842, 'L'autrier ès kalendes de Mai,' &c. The word 'ender' is an adjective meaning 'former,' originally perhaps an adverb. It is used only in the expressions 'ender day' and 'ender night.' The combination 'enderday' occurs in i. 98.

7420. *Rom. de Troie*, 3889 f.,

'Cascune conseilla à mei  
Privéement et en segrei,' &c.

7451 ff. For Cassandra as the Sibyl cp. Godfrey of Viterbo, *Pantheon*, p. 214 (ed. 1584).

7497 f. 'Molt est isnele Renommée,  
Savoir fist tost par la contrée,' &c.

*Rom. de Troie*, 4299 ff.

7555 ff. The further incidents of the embarkation and of the voyage home, *Rom. de Troie*, 4505-4832, are omitted.

7576 f. Cp. *Rom. de Troie*, 4867 ff.

7591 ff. This incident is related in the *Rom. de Troie*, 17457 ff. The occasion was an anniversary celebration at the tomb of Hector, and though the temple of Apollo is not actually named here by Benoît, it has been previously described at large as Hector's burial place.

7597 ff. The scene in Chaucer's *Troilus*, i. 155 ff., is well known. He took it from Boccaccio.

7612. In the treatment of Avarice Gower has departed entirely from the plan of fivefold division which he follows in the first three books, as throughout in the *Mirour*. In the sixth book he deliberately declines to deal with more than two of the branches of Gule (vi. 12 f.), and the treatment of Lechery is also irregular.

7651. *here tuo debat*, i. e. the strife of those two.

7716. *the Cote for the hod*: that is, he gets a return larger than the amount that he gave; a different form of the expression from that which we have in l. 4787.

7719. *hors*: probably plural in both cases.

7724. 'If a man will go by the safe way.'

7736 ff. This saying is not really quoted from Seneca, but from Caecilius Balbus, *Nug. Phil.* xi. It must have been in Chaucer's mind when he wrote 'Suffice unto thy good, though it be smal,' that is, 'Adapt thy life to thy worldly fortune.'

7830 f. I take this to mean, 'And suddenly to meet his flowers the summer appears and is rich.' For the meaning of 'hapneth' see the examples in the *New English Dictionary*.

7838. *be war*: written as one word in F and afterwards divided by a stroke.

## LIB. VI.

*Latin Verses.* i. 6. *ruit* seems to be transitive, 'casts down.'

i. 7. Rather involved in order: 'on the lips which Bacchus intoxicates and which are plunged in sleep.'

4. *mystymed*, 'unhappily produced.' In other places, as i. 220, iii. 2458, the word seems to mean to order or arrange wrongly. The OE. 'mistimian' means to happen amiss.

7. *dedly*, 'mortal,' i. e. subject to death.

34. *wext*, 'he waxeth': for the omission of the pronoun see note on i. 1895 and cp. ll. 149, 213, 367, below.

57. For the form of expression cp. i. 380, ii. 2437, and below, l. 106.

59. *sterie* is for 'stert,' pres. tense.

70. *in vers*, that is 'in order.' The word 'vers' is given in Coderoy's Dictionary with the sense 'state,' 'situation'; e.g. *Rom. de la Rose*, 9523 ff.,

'Malement est changies li vers,  
Or li vient li gieus si divers,  
Qu'el ne puet ne n'ose joer.'

71 f. Cp. *Mirour*, 8246 f.

84. *the jolif wo*: cp. i. 88, vii. 1910, and *Balades*, xii. 4, 'Si porte ades le jolif mal sanz cure.'

105. *of such a thew*, 'by such a habit' (i.e. of love), to be taken with 'dronkelew.'

144. *hovedance*, 'court dance': see *New Eng. Dictionary*.

145. *the newefot*: written thus as one word in S and F: it must be regarded as the name of some dance.

160. *it am noght I*: cp. Chaucer, *Leg. of G. Women*, 314, 'sir, hit am I,' *Cant. Tales*, A 1736, &c

188. *holde forth the lusti route*: perhaps simply, 'continue to be with the merry company.' See 'forth' in the Glossary.

218. *vernage*: the same wine that is called 'gernache' or 'garnache' in the *Mirour de l'Omme*, 'vernaccia' in Italian, but whether a wine of Italy or Greece seems uncertain.

221. *at myn above*: see note on iv. 914.

289. *the blanche fievere*: cp. Chaucer, *Troilus*, i. 916, with Skeat's note.

249. Cp. Chaucer, *Troilus*, i. 420, 'For hete of cold, for cold of hete, I dye.'

253. *of such reles*: this seems to men 'of such strength,' and 'relais' perhaps has a somewhat similar sense in *Mirour*, 3021,

'C'est droit qu'il sente le relais  
De la tempeste et de l'orage.'

As in the modern 'relay,' the idea of ceasing or of relaxation may be accompanied by the notion of fresh vigour taking the place of exhaustion, and so the word may stand simply for strength or freshness.

If this explanation is not admissible, we must suppose that 'reles' means here the power of relaxing or dissolving.

285 f. Cp. *Rom. de la Rose*, 4326 f.,

'C'est la soif qui tous jors est ivre,  
Yvrece qui de soif s'enyvre.'

290. *liste*: perhaps pret. subjunctive; so l. 606, and 'leste,' 357.

296. *be the bend*, i.e. 'by the band,' at his girdle.

311 f. 'This for the time alleviates the pain for him who has no other joy.' 'As for the time yit' means simply 'for the time,' cp. ll. 738, 893.

321. For 'men' with singular verb cp. ii. 659, v. 5510, 6045, vii. 1352, and Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, A 149, &c.

380 ff. Cp. viii. 2252 ff. and *Traitié*, xv. 2. The poet referred to in the margin is perhaps Homer, who is quoted in the *Rom. de la Rose* as authority for an arrangement somewhat similar to that described here:

'Jupiter en toute saison  
A sor le suel de sa maison,  
Ce dit Omers, deus plains tonneaus;  
Si n'est viex hons ne garçonneaus,  
N'il n'est dame ne damoisele,  
Soit vielle ou jone, laide ou bele,  
Qui vie en ce monde reçoive,  
Qui de ces deus tonneaus ne boive.  
C'est une taverne planière,  
Dont Fortune la tavernière  
Trait aluine et piment en coupes' &c. 6836 ff. (ed. Méon).

Gower has applied the idea especially to the subject of love, and has made Cupid the butler instead of Fortune. The basis in Homer is *Il.* xxiv. 527 ff.,

δοιοὶ γάρ τε πίθοι κατακείται ἐν Διὸς οὔδῃ, κ.τ.λ.

360. *trouble* is properly an adjective, cp. v. 4160. The corrupt reading 'chere' for 'cler' has hitherto obscured the sense.

399 ff. This story of Bacchus is told by Hyginus, *Poet. Astr.* ii, under the heading 'Aries.'

437. *a riche temple*. This was the temple of Jupiter Ammon.

439. 'To remind thirsty men' of the power of prayer.

485 ff. The story is from Ovid, *Metam.* xii. 210 ff.

502 f. *thilke tonne drouh, wherof*, &c., 'drew such wine for them

that by it,' &c. See note on i. 771 and cp. ll. 618 and 1249 of this book.

537. I do not know what authority is referred to.

598. *unteid*, 'set free,' so 'wandering abroad.'

609. The name of this second branch of Gluttony has not been mentioned before.

632 f. 'so long as he has wealth by which he may be provided with the means.' For the use of 'founde' cp. v. 2690 and Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, C 537, 'How gret labour and cost is thee to fynde!' (addressing the belly).

640. *for the point of his relief*, 'in order to please him,' so below 'he is noght relieved,' l. 678.

656. *take*, subjunctive, 'how he should take it.'

662. After this line a couplet is inserted by Pauli from the Harleian MS. 7184 (Hs),

'To take metes and drinkes newe,  
For it shulde alwey eschewe.'

The lines are nonsense and have no metre. They come originally from K, the copyist of which apparently inserted them out of his own head, to fill up a space left by the accidental omission of two lines (645 f.) a little above in the same column. He was making his book correspond column for column with the copy, and therefore discovered his mistake when he reached the bottom, but did not care to draw attention to it by inserting what he had omitted.

668. 'Physique' is apparently meant for the Physics of Aristotle, and something very like this maxim is to be found there, but the quotation, 'Consuetudo est altera natura,' is actually taken from the *Secretum Secretorum* (ed. 1520, f. 21).

684. The transposition after this line of the passage ll. 665-964, which occurs in MSS. of the second recension, is not accidental, as we see by the arrangements made afterwards for fitting in the passage (l. 1146). The object apparently was to lay down the principle 'Delicie corporis militant aduersus animam,' illustrated by the parable of Dives and Lazarus, before proceeding to the discussion of 'Delicacie' in the case of love, and this is perhaps the more logical arrangement; but the alteration, as it is made, involves breaking off the discussion here of the ill effects of change, and resuming it after an interval of nearly two hundred lines.

674. *Avisé hem wel*, i. e. 'let them take good heed.'

683. 'Without regard to her honour': cp. *Balades*, xxii. 4, 'Salvant toutdis l'estat de vostre honour.'

709. *abeched*, from the French 'abechier,' to feed, used properly of feeding young birds. The word 'refreched' is conformed to it in spelling.

728. The reading of Pauli, 'I say I am nought gilteles,' just reverses the sense. Berthelette has the text right here.

\* \*

L I

738. *for a time yit*: cp. 311, 'As for the time yit,' and 893, 'As for the while yit.'

770. 'Without wrinkle of any kind,' cp. *Mirour*, 10164, 'Car moult furont de noble grein'; or perhaps 'Without the smallest wrinkle,' 'grein' being taken to stand for the smallest quantity of a thing: cp. ii. 3310.

778. Cp. Chaucer, *Book of the Duchess*, 939 ff.

785. *schapthe*. For this form, which is given by S and F, cp. the word 'sseppe,' meaning 'creature' or 'form,' which occurs repeatedly in the *Ayenbite of Inwyt*.

800. 'And if it seemed so to all others.' The person spoken of throughout this passage as 'he,' 'him,' is the eye of the lover. This seems to itself to have sufficient sustenance by merely gazing on the beloved object, and if it seemed so to all others also, that is, to the other senses, the eye would never cease to feed upon the sight: but they, having other needs, compel it to turn away.

809. *as thogh he faste*: the verb seems to be pret. subjunctive, as 'syhe' down below.

817. *tireth*. This expresses the action of a falcon pulling at its prey: cp. Chaucer, *Troilus*, i. 787, 'Whos stomak foules tiren everemo.' The word is used in the same sense also in the *Mirour*, 7731.

845. *mi lady goode*, 'my lady's goodness.'

857. Lombard cooks were celebrated, and there was a kind of pastry called 'pain lumbard,' *Mirour*, 7809.

879. The romance of Ydoine and Amadas is one of those mentioned at the beginning of the *Cursor Mundi*. It has been published in the 'Collection des poètes français du moyen âge' (ed. Hippeau, 1863). Amadas is the type of the lover who remains faithful through every kind of trial.

891. *a cherie feste*: cp. Prol. 454. It is an expression used for pleasures that last but a short time: cp. Audelay's Poems (Percy Soc. xiv) p. 22,

'Hit fallus and fadys forth so doth a chere fayre'

(speaking of the glory of this world).

893. Cp. 311, 738.

897. *he*, i. e. my ear.

908. *me lacketh*: the singular form is due perhaps to the use of the verb impersonally in many cases.

961. *excede*, subjunctive, 'so as to go beyond reason.'

986 ff. This story furnishes a favourable example of our author's style and versification. It is told simply and clearly, and the verse is not only smooth and easy, but carefully preserved from monotony by the breaking of the couplet very frequently at the pauses: see 986, 998, 1006, 1010, 1016, &c.

995. We have remarked already upon Gower's fatalism, iii. 1348, &c. Here we may refer also to ll. 1026, 1613, 1702, for further indications of the same tendency.



1059. *is overronne*, that is, 'has passed beyond.'

1110. *descryve*, apparently 'understand,' 'discern,' perhaps by that confusion with 'descry' which is noted in the *New Engl. Dictionary*.

1149 f. These two lines are omitted without authority by Pauli.

1176. That is, though they had rendered no services for which they ought to be so distinguished.

1180. *sojorned*: the word is used in French especially of a horse kept in stable at rack and manger and refreshed for work: see *Mirour*, Glossary.

1216. 'So that that pleasure should not escape him.'

1245. *out of feere*, 'without fear.'

1262. *unwar*, here 'unknown': cp. Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, B 427, 'The unwar wo or harm that comth behinde'

1295. Originally geomancy seems to have been performed, as suggested in this passage, by marks made in sand or earth, then by casual dots on paper: see the quotations under 'geomancy' in the *New Engl. Dictionary*. Gower here mentions the four recognized kinds of divination, by the elements of earth, water, fire, and air.

1306 ff. It is practically certain that Gower was acquainted with the treatise ascribed to Albertus Magnus, called *Speculum Astronomiae* or *De libris licitis et illicitis* (*Alberti Magni Opera*, v. 655 ff.), since he seems to follow it to a great extent not only here, but also in his list of early astronomers (vii. 1449 ff.). There are however some things here which he must have had from other sources; for there is no mention in the above-mentioned treatise of 'Spatula,' 'Babilla,' 'Cernes,' 'Honorius.'

1312. *comun rote*, that is, apparently, 'common custom.' The word 'rote' is used also below, l. 1457, where it appears to mean 'condition.' It must be the same as that which appears in the phrase 'by rote,' and it is difficult to believe that it can be the French 'route,' as is usually said. The rhyme here and in l. 1457, as well as those in Chaucer (with 'cote,' 'note'), show that the 'o' had an open sound, and this would be almost impossible from French 'ou.' The expression 'par routine' or 'par rotine' is given by Cotgrave as equivalent to the English 'by rote,' but I am not aware of any use of such an expression in French as early as the fourteenth century. Many of the examples of the phrase 'by rote' seem to have to do with singing or church services (cp. Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, B 1712, *Piers Plowmans* (rede, 379), and Du Cange gives a quotation in which 'rotæ' seems to mean 'chants' or 'hymns' ('rota,' 6). From such a sense as this the idea of a regular order of service, and thence of 'custom,' 'habit,' might without much difficulty arise.

1314 ff. The following passage from the *Spec. Astronomiae*, cap. 10, gives most of the names and terms which occur in these lines: 'Ex libris vero Tox Graeci est liber de stationibus ad cultum Veneris, qui sic incipit: *Commemoratio historiarum* . . . Ex libris autem Salomonis est liber de quatuor anulis, quem intitulat nominibus quatuor discipulorum suorum, qui sic incipit: *De artis eulomica et ideica*, &c. Et liber



de nouem candariis . . . Et alius paruus de sigillis ad dæmoniacos, qui sic incipit: *Caput sigilli gendal et tanchil.*

1316. *Razel.* 'Est autem unus liber magnus Razielis, qui dicitur liber institutionum,' &c. In MS. Ashmole 1730 there is a letter to Dr. Richard Napier from his nephew at Oxford, speaking of a book of Solomon in the University Library called *Cephar Razel*, that is, he explains, 'Angelus magnus secreti Creatoris,' of which he proposes to make a copy, having obtained means of entering the library at forbidden hours. Again, in MS. Ashmole 1790 there is a description of this book.

1320. 'cui adiungitur liber Beleni de horarum opere,' *Spec. Astron.* p. 661. The seal of Ghenbal is the 'sigillum gendal,' mentioned in the former citation.

1321 f. *thymage Of Thebith.* Thebith (or Thebit) stands for Thabet son of Corah, a distinguished Arabian mathematician, to whom were attributed certain works on astrology and magic that were current in Latin. Thus we find *Thebit de imaginibus* very commonly in MSS., and a *Liber Thebit ben Corat de tribus imaginibus magicis* was printed in 1559 at Frankfort. In this latter book the author says, 'Exercentur quoque hae imagines in amore vel odio, si fuerit actor earum prouidus et sapiens in motibus coeli ad hoc utilibus.' Thebith is mentioned several times in the *Spec. Astronomiae*, e.g. p. 662, 'Super istis imaginibus reperitur unus liber Thebith eben Chorath,' &c. We must take 'therupon' in l. 1321 to mean 'more-over,' for it is not to be supposed that the image of Thebith was upon the seal of Ghenbal.

1338. The 'Naturiens' are those who pursue the methods of astrology, as opposed to those who practise necromancy ('nigromance') or black magic.

1356. *He bede nevere*: see note on v. 4455.

1359. *red*, originally written 'rede' in F, but the final letter was afterwards erased. See Introduction, p. cxiv.

1371 f. The rhyme requires that 'become,' 'overcome' shall either be both present or both preterite (subjunctive), and 'wonne' seems to decide the matter for preterite. The only difficulty is 'have I' for 'hadde I' in l. 1370, the latter being required also by the sense (for the reference is to the former time of youth), but not given by the MSS. 'So that I wonne' means 'Provided that I won.'

1391 ff. This story is from the *Roman de Troie*, 28571-28666, 29629-30092. Guido does not differ as to the main points, but there are several details given by Gower from Benoît which are not found in Guido. In particular the ensign carried by Telegonus is mentioned by Guido only in telling of the dream of Ulysses. Some of the passages which tend to show that Benoît was our author's authority are noted below.

1408. *al the strengthe of herbes*: a poem *De Viribus Herbarum* passed in the Middle Ages under the name of Macer.

1422. The mention of 'nedle and ston' in this connexion is a rather daring anachronism, for which of course Gower is responsible.

1424. (*illy*). Benoit says 'les isles d'Oloi,' and Guido 'in Eolidem insulam,' but Sicily has been mentioned shortly before.

1438 f. Cp. *Rom. de Troie*, 28594 ff. Guido does not mention it.

1441. 'S'el sot des arz, il en sot plus,' *Rom. de Troie*, 28641.

1445 ff. Benoit says nothing of this, but the story of the adventures of Ulysses was to some extent matter of common knowledge in the Middle Ages. Gower may have had it from Ovid, *Metam.* xiv. 277 ff. Guido says in a general way that Circe was in the habit of transforming those who resisted her power into beasts.

1457. *into such a rote*, that is, 'into such a habit' (or 'condition'). see note on l. 1312.

1467. *toswolle bothe sides*, 'with both her sides swollen': cp. *Rom. de Troie*, 28660 f.,

'Et si li lesse les costez  
Toz pleins, ço quit, de vif enfant.'

1474. *understode*: subj., see note on Prol. 460.

1481. *on of al the beste*, see note on iv. 2606.

1518 f. *margin*. This quotation is not from Horace, but from Ovid, *Pont.* iv. 3. 35. Cp. *Mirour*, 10948, where the same quotation occurs and is attributed as here to 'Orace.'

1524. The form 'stature' is required by the metre here, and is given by the best MSS. of the second and third recensions. In Prol. 891, where 'statue' occurs, it is reduced to a monosyllable by elision, and so it is in Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, A 975, 1955. The forms 'statura,' 'stature,' are found with this sense in the Latin and French of the time.

1541 ff. 'Et si me disoit: Hulxes  
Saiches, ceste conjuncions,  
Cist vouloir, ceste asembloisons,  
Que de moi et de toi desirres,  
Ce sunt dolors et mortex ires.'

*Rom. de Troie*, 29670 ff.

The prediction, however, that one of the two would have his death by reason of their meeting comes later, 29699, whereas Guido combines the materials here much in the same way as Gower.

1552 ff. This idea of a pennon embroidered with a device is Gower's own conception, constructed from the not very clear or satisfactory account of the matter given by his authority here and later, 29819 ff. The fact is that Benoit did not understand the expression used in the Latin book (the so-called 'Dictys Cretensis') which he was here following, the passage being probably corrupt in his copy, and consequently failed to make it intelligible to his readers. The original statement (made with reference to the ensign carried afterwards by Telegonus) is, 'Ithacam venit gerens manibus quoddam hastile, cui summita-

marinae turturis osse armabatur, scilicet insigne insulae eius in qua genitus erat.' The meaning apparently is that his spearhead was made of a sea-turtle's shell. Benoît, in recounting the vision, says that the figure which appeared bore upon the steel head of his lance a crown worked of the bone of a sea-fish,

'Portoit une coronne ovrée  
D'os de poisson de mer salée.' 29687 f.

Then afterwards, in telling of the departure of Telegonus to seek his father, he says that, to show of what country he was, he bore on the top of his lance the sign of a sea-fish worked like a tower,

'En semblance de tor ovrée.' 29822.

Guido apparently was not able to make much of this, and after saying, in the account of the dream, that at the top of the lance there appeared 'quedam turricula tota ex piscibus artificiose composita' (Bodl. MS. Laud 645, with variants 'craticula,' MS. Add. 365, 'curricula,' printed editions), he subsequently omitted mention of the recognisance.

1561 f. *A signe it is . . . Of an Empire.* Benoît has,

'Que c'iert d'ampire conoissance  
Et si aperte demostrance  
Que por ce seroient devis,' &c. 29695 ff.,

which may perhaps mean, 'that it was the cognisance of a kingdom and a sign that they should be divided.' In Guido, however, it is 'hoc est signum impie disiunccionis' (MS. Laud 645 and printed text), or 'hoc est signum impii et disiunccionis' (MS. Add. 365).

1567 f. Cp. 2296 ff.

1603 ff. For the order of the clauses here cp. ii. 709, iv. 3520 ff.

1622 ff. *That*, for 'Til that'; cp. iv. 3273, v. 3422.

1636. 'And he made himself ready forthwith.' For the omission of the pronoun even where the subject is changed cp. v. 3291, 4590.

1637 ff. Cp. *Rom. de Troie*, 29824 ff. Guido says nothing about it.

1643. That is, 'to avoid espial and wrong suspicions.'

1656. *Rom. de Troie*, 29801 f.,

'A Hulyxes, qui fut ses druz,  
Mande par lui v. c. saluz.'

Guido says nothing about this.

1660. *Nachaie*, a mistake for 'Acaie,'

'Tant qu'il vint droit en Acaie';

and this again seems to be from 'Ithaca.'

1685. *and welnyh ded*: cp. *Rom. de Troie*, 29906 f. Guido says only 'et ab illis est grauter vulneratus.'

1689. Gower has judiciously reduced the number from fifteen (*Rom. de Troie*, 29902).

1696. *for wroth*, that is, 'by reason that he was wroth': see note on iv. 1330. We can hardly take 'wroth' as a substantive.

1701. 'Se il ne fust un poi guenchiz,' *Rom. de Troie*, 29939.

1707. *With al the signe*, 'together with the signe,' like the French 'ove tout'; cp. *Mirour* 4 (note).

1745 f. *Rom. de Troie*, 30022 ff. Guido omits this.

1769 ff. For this repetition cp. 2095 ff.

1785. The 'Cronique imperial' is evidently the story itself, and not any particular book in which it is to be found.

1789 ff. The authority which is mainly followed by our author for this story is the Anglo-Norman *Roman de toute Chevalerie*, by Eustace (or Thomas) of Kent. The beginning of this, including all that we have to do with here, has been printed by M. Paul Meyer in his book on the Alexander romances, 'Bibliothèque française du moyen âge' vol. iv. pp. 195-216. Gower was acquainted, however, also with the Latin *Historia Alexandri de Preliis*, and has made use of this in certain places, as (1) in the account of Philip's vision (2129-2170) where he probably found the French unintelligible, and (2) in the story of the death of Nectanabus (2289 ff.), of which the Latin authority certainly gives the more satisfactory account.

The following are some of the points in which Gower agrees with the *Roman de toute Chevalerie* against the two Latin versions of the story, viz. the *Historia de Preliis* and the *Res Gestae Alexandri* of Valerius: (1) the celebration by Olympias of the festival of her nativity, when she rides out on a white mule and is first seen by Nectanabus, ll. 1823-1880; (2) the omission of the sealing of the queen's womb by Nectanabus, this being introduced only in Philip's vision; (3) the question of the queen as to how she shall procure further interviews with the god, and the answer of Nectanabus, ll. 2109 ff.; (4) the circumstances connected with the egg from which the serpent was hatched, ll. 2219 ff. The English metrical Romance of Alexander, printed by Weber, is also taken from the *Roman de toute Chevalerie*, and consequently the details of it are for the most part the same as those in Gower. It is certain, however, that Gower does not follow this. It would be quite contrary to his practice to follow an English authority, and apart from this there are many small matters here in which he agrees with the French as against the English, e.g. the name Nectanabus, which is Neptanabus in the English (Anectanabus in the *Hist. de Preliis*), the mention of the *nativity* of Olympias as the occasion of her festival, 'Grant feste tint la dame de sa nativité,' the use of the word 'artemage,' l. 1957, the incident of the dragon being changed into an eagle, l. 2200; and such points of correspondence as may seem to suggest a connexion between the two English writers, as in ll. 1844 f., 2231 f., are also to be found in the French. The English alliterative Romance of Alexander follows the *Hist. de Preliis*, and consequently it agrees with Gower in the two passages which have been referred to above.

1798. The sentence is broken off and finished in a different manner. See note on i. 98, and cp. vii. 3632.

1811. *Three yomen*, &c. This is an addition by Gower. According to

the original story Nectanabus was alone, and this would evidently be the better for his purpose.

1828. *list.* This may be present tense, 'it pleases.' Loss of the final *e* in the preterite would hardly occur except before a vowel: see Introduction, p. cxv. The French original lays stress here on the extravagant desire that women have to display themselves.

1881. *At after*, i. e. 'After,' used especially of meals, cp. l. 1181, and Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, B 1445, F 918 'at after diner,' E 1921 'At after mete,' F 302, 1219 'At after soper,' for which references, as for many others elsewhere, I am indebted to Prof. Skeat's very useful Glossary.

1844 f. The French has

'E tymbres e tabours ont e leur corns corné,' 130,  
and later

'Plus de mil damoisels ount le jur karolé,' 140.

The English version of the second line,

'There was maidenés carolyng,'

comes very near to Gower.

1924. *Bot if I sihe*, 'unless I should see,' pret. subj.

1943 ff. This promise is not in the French.

1959 ff. The astrological terms in these lines are due to Gower. The original says that Nectanabus laid the image in a bed with candles lighted round it, bathed it in the juice of certain herbs, and said his charms over it.

1997. *such thing . . . Wherof*: cp. ll. 502, 2398.

2005 f. 'Nectanabus idunc ses karectes fina.'

2062. *putte him*. We should rather read 'put him' with S and F: see Introduction, p. cxvi. The French romance here grotesquely represents Nectanabus as making up a disguise for himself with a ram's head and a dragon's tail, which he joins together with wax, 'e puis dedens se mist.' The Latin *Hist. de Preliis* says simply that he changed himself into a dragon.

2074 ff. The French has,

'Une pel de moton ouvec les cornes prist,  
Une coroune d'or sur les cornes assist.'

The punctuation after 'tok' is that of F, but I suspect that 'in signe of his noblesse' belongs really in sense to 2076 f., and refers rather to the crown than to the horns, in which case we ought to set a full stop after 'bar.'

2113. *seth hire grone*, that is, in child-bed.

2128 ff. The French romance, following Valerius in the main, gives a rather confused account of Philip's dream. Gower has turned from it to the *Historia de Preliis*.

2160. *Amphion*. The name apparently is got from 'Antifon,' which occurs below in connexion with the incident of the pheasant's egg.

2182. *rampende*. The French has 'mult fierement rampant.'

2199 ff. The transformation into an eagle is found in Valerius and the French romance, and not in the *Hist. de Preliis*. It may be noted, however, that the picturesque description which we have here of the eagle pruning himself and then shaking his feathers, so that the hall was moved as by an earthquake, is Gower's own.

2219 ff. The Latin accounts say that a bird, according to Valerius a hen, came and laid an egg in Philip's lap as he sat in his hall. The *Rom. de toute Chevalerie* makes the incident take place out in the fields, and the bird, as here, is a pheasant. The expression used, 'Un oef laissat chair sur les curs Phelippun,' seems to mean that the egg was laid in Philip's lap. There is nothing about the heat of the sun in the Latin versions.

2250 ff. These lines refer to the precautions taken by Nectanabus to secure that the child shall be born precisely at the right astrological moment: cp. *Rom. de toute Chevalerie*, 401-425. Gower has chosen to omit the details.

2274 *Calistre*, i. e. Callisthenes, who was reputed to be the author of the history of Alexander which Valerius translated.

2299 ff. The question of Alexander and the answer of Nectanabus is given as here in the *Hist. de Preliis*. In Valerius and the French romance Alexander throws Nectanabus down merely in order to surprise him, and the suggestion that Nectanabus knew that he should die by the hands of his son is not made till afterwards.

2368. *Zoraster*. The statement here about the laughter of Zoroaster at his birth is ultimately derived from Pliny, *Hist. Nat.* vii. 15. It is repeated by Augustine, with the addition 'nec ei boni aliquid monstrosus risus ille portendit. Nam magicarum artium fuisse perhibetur inventor; quae quidem illi nec ad praesentis vitae vanam felicitatem contra suos inimicos prodesse potuerunt; a Nino quippe rege Assyriorum, cum esset ipse Bactrianorum, bello superatus est' (*De Civ. Dei*, xxi. 14).

2381. 'Like wool which is ill spun': cp. i. 10.

2387. *Phitoness*, cp. iv. 1937.

2411. *betawht To Aristotle*, 'delivered over to Aristotle': 'betawht' is the past partic. of 'beteche,' which occurs afterwards, vii. 4234, and in Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, B 2114, 'Now such a rym the devel I beteche.'

2418. *Yit for a time*: to be taken as one phrase; cp. 'for a while yit,' &c., ll. 311, 738, 893.

## LIB. VII.

The account given in the earlier part of this book of the parts of Philosophy, that is, of the objects of human knowledge, represents in its essentials the Aristotelian system. The division into 'Theorique,'



'Rethorique,' and 'Practique' is in effect the same as Aristotle's classification of knowledge as Theoretical, Poetical, and Practical, and the further division of 'Theorique' into Theology, Physics, and Mathematics, and of 'Practique' into Ethics, Economics, and Politics, is that which is made by Aristotle. The statement of Pauli and others that this part of Gower's work is 'very likely borrowed' from the *Secretum Secretorum* is absolutely unfounded. This treatise is not in any sense an exposition of the Aristotelian philosophy, indeed it is largely made up of rules for diet and regimen with medical prescriptions. Gower is indebted to it only in a slight degree, and principally in two places, vii. 2014-2057, the discussion of Liberality in a king, and 3207\*-3360\*, the tale of the Jew and the Pagan.

The most important authority, however, for the earlier part of the seventh book has hitherto been overlooked. It is the *Trésor* of Brunetto Latini. This book is very largely based upon Aristotle, with whose works Latini was exceptionally well acquainted, and it is from this that Gower takes his classification of the sciences, though in regard to the place of Rhetoric he does not quite agree with Latini, who brings it in under the head of 'Politique,' making Logic the third main branch of philosophy. Gower takes from the *Trésor* also many of his physical and geographical statements and his reference to the debate on the conspiracy of Catiline. On the other hand his astronomy is for the most part independent of the *Trésor*, and so also is his method of dealing with the principles of Government, under the five points of Policy. Brunetto Latini does not treat of politics generally so much as of the practical rules to be observed by the Podestà of an Italian republic. It may be observed that Gower has drawn on the *Trésor* also in the sketch of general history given in the Prologue (ll. 727-820). I refer to pages of the edition of Chabaille, 1863.

26 ff. 'As to which Aristotle . . . declares the "intelligences" under three heads especially.' The meaning of 'intelligences' here and in l. 176, and of 'intelligencias' in the margin, l. 149, seems to be nearly the same as 'sciences,' that is to say, divisions or provinces of knowledge.

155. *Algorisme*. This stands properly for the decimal system of numeration, but the use of the word in the plural, l. 158, shows that Gower did not use it in this sense only. The association of the word 'Algorismes' below with the letters *a, b, c* ('Abece') seems to suggest some kind of algebraical expression, but this is perhaps due to a misunderstanding by Gower of the word 'abaque' (or 'abake') in the *Trésor*, p. 6: 'Et de ce sont li enseignement de l'abaque et de l'augorisme.'

183 ff. 'Ce est la science par laquelle li vii sage s'esforcierent par soutilice de geometrie de trover la grandeur dou ciel et de la terre, et la hautesce entre l'un et l'autre.' *Trésor*, pp. 6, 7.

207 ff. Cp. *Trésor*, p. 15, 'Cele matiere de quoi ces choses furent formées les desvance de naissance, non mie de tens, autressi comme li

sons est devant le chant, . . . et neporquant andui sont ensemble.' Cp. pp. 104, 105.

216. *Ylem*, this is 'hyle' (Gr. ὕλη), the Aristotelian term for matter. For what follows cp. *Trésor*, p. 105.

245. This comparison of the movement of water within the earth to the circulation of blood in the veins, is taken from the *Trésor*, p. 115: 'autresi comme li sangs de l'ome qui s'espant par ses vaines, si que il encherche tout le cors amont et aval.'

256 ff. Cp. *Trésor*, p. 117.

265 ff. This which follows about the Air seems to be partly independent of the *Trésor*, and the word 'periferie' is not there used. Aristotle divides the atmosphere into two regions only, that of *ἀρμῆς* or moist vapour, corresponding to the first and second periferies here, and that of exhalation (*ἀναθυμίασις*) or fiery vapour, corresponding to the third, *Meteor.* i. 3.

283 f. 'According to the condition under which they take their form.' I suppose the word 'intersticion' to be taken from 'interstitium,' as used with a technical sense in astrology. Albumasar, for example, says, 'Quicquid in hoc mundo nascitur et occidit ex quatuor elementis est compositum, tribus interstitiis educatum, scilicet principio, medio et fine, quae tria in illa quatuor ducta duodecim producant.' This is the cause, he says, why there are twelve signs of the zodiac, 'Praesunt siquidem haec signa quatuor elementis eorumque tribus interstitiis.' He then explains that the first 'interstitium' of each element is that condition of it which is favourable to production, growth and vigour, the second that which is stationary, and the third that which tends to decay and corruption, so that the word is almost equivalent to condition or quality. (Vincent of Beauvais, *Spec. Nat.* xv. 36.)

302. Cp. *Trésor*, p. 119, 'mais li fors deboutemenz dou vent la destraint et chace si roidement que ele fent et passe les nues et fait toner et espartir.'

307 ff. Cp. *Trésor*, p. 120.

323 ff. *Trésor*, p. 120, 'dont aucunes gens cuident que ce soit li dragons ou que ce soit une estele qui chiet.' What follows about 'exhalations' is not from the *Trésor*.

334. *Assub*. This word is used in Latin translations of Aristotle as an equivalent of 'stella cadens.'

339. *exalacion*. This stands for fiery vapour only, originally a translation of Aristotle's *ἀναθυμίασις*.

351 ff. The names 'Eges' and 'Daaly' (l. 361), must be taken originally from Aristotle's expression *δαλοί καὶ πύρες*, which he says are names given by some people to various forms of fire in the sky, *Meteor.* i. 4. Our author simply repeated the terms after his authorities and without understanding them. In fact, 'Eges' stands for the same as the 'Capra saliens' of the preceding lines.

389. The idea of the four complexions of man, corresponding to the



four elements, is not due to Aristotle, but we find it in the *Trésor*. The application to matters of love in ll. 393-440 is presumably Gower's own.

405 f. Aristotle says on the contrary, οἱ μελαγχολικοὶ οἱ πλείστοι λάγνοι εἶσιν, *Probl.* 30.

437. *To thenke*. For this use of 'may' with the gerund cp. ii. 510, 'I myhte noght To soffre.'

510. 'While the flesh has power to act,' that is during the life of the body.

521 ff. For the geography which follows cp. *Trésor*, pp. 151-153.

534. *the hevene cope*: cp. l. 1579, 'under the coupe of hevene,' where the spelling suggests the Latin 'cupa,' rather than 'capa,' as the origin of the word in this common phrase. The quality of the 'o' in Europe is perhaps doubtful.

536. *Begripeth*: used here as plural, cp. l. 1107: 'calleth' in l. 561 with 'men' (indef.) as the subject is not a case of the same kind.

545. *who that rede*: subj., cp. Prol. 460.

559. That is, presumably, double as much as either of the other two: cp. *Trésor*, p. 152, 'car Asie tient bien l'une moitié de toute la terre.'

566. *Canahim*: a mistake for 'Tanaim' (or 'Tanain'), see *Trésor*, p. 152, where the extent of Asia is said to be from the mouths of the Nile and the 'Tanain' (i.e. the Don) as far as the Ocean and the terrestrial Paradise.

593 ff. Cp. *Trésor*, p. 115.

597. Latini says that this is the explanation given by some people of the tides, but he adds that the astronomers do not agree with them (*Trésor*, p. 172).

611. Aristotle does in fact make of αἰθήρ a fifth element, of which the heaven and the heavenly bodies consist, but Gower takes this account of it and the name Orbis from the *Trésor*, p. 110, where also we find the comparison to the shell of an egg.

652 ff. 'Sapiens dominabitur astris,' an opinion which is developed in the *Vox Clamantis*, ii. 217 ff.

694. *Bot thorizonte*, 'beyond the horizon': so perhaps in the first text of v. 3306, 'But of his lond' stood for 'Out of his lond.' However, this use of 'but' is not clearly established in Southern ME. and perhaps the reading of the second recension, 'Be thorizonte,' may be right. As regards sense, one is much the same as the other: neither is very intelligible, unless 'thorizonte' means the ecliptic.

699. *thei*, that is the planets, not the signs.

725 ff. Cp. *Trésor*, p. 141.

831. *is that on*, i.e. 'is one,' or 'is the first.'

853. The sun's horses are named by Fulgentius, *Mythol.* ii, in the same order as we have here, 'Erythreus, Actæon, Lampos, Philogeus.' They are said there to represent four divisions of the day, Erythreus, for example, having his name from the red light of morning, and Philogeus from the inclination of the sun towards the earth at evening. Ovid gives a different set of names.

944. 'In whatever degree he shall exercise his powers.'

978. *as it appendeth*, 'as it is fitting,' lit. 'as it belongs': cp. 'appent,' *Mir.* 1535.

979. *natheles*. This word is frequently used by Gower with no sense of opposition, meaning 'moreover' or something similar: cp. i. 21, vii. 3877, &c.

983. It may be observed that (in spite of this reference and that in l. 1043) our author's statements about the number and arrangement of stars in the constellations of the zodiac do not at all correspond with those in the *Almagest*.

983 (margin). *produxit ad esse*, 'brought forth into existence': the infinitive is often used as a substantive in Gower's Latin: e.g. *Prolog. Lat. Verses*, iv. 4, v. 6.

989. *hot and drye*. According to the astrologers, Aries, Leo, and Sagittarius preside over the element of fire, and are hot and dry by nature; Taurus, Virgo, Capricornus over that of earth, being dry and cold; Gemini, Libra, Aquarius preside over air, and are hot and moist; while Cancer, Scorpio, and Pisces are moist and cold, having dominion over water (Albumasar, cited by Vincent of Beauvais, *Spec. Nat.* xv. 36).

991 f. Aries and Scorpio are the 'houses' or 'mansions' of Mars, Taurus and Libra of Venus, Gemini and Virgo of Mercury, Cancer of the Moon, Leo of the Sun, Sagittarius and Pisces of Jupiter, Capricornus and Aquarius of Saturn.

1021. *somdiel discordant*: the hot and moist Libra is more in accordance with her nature: see 1111 ff.

1036 f. This statement and the others like it below, 1073, 1089, 1127, 1147, 1198, 1222, may be taken to indicate that the division of the signs was very uncertain in our author's mind. It may be observed that the usual representation of Taurus in star-maps is with his head, not his tail, towards Gemini.

1085. *the risinge*: that is to say, Virgo is the 'exaltation' of Mercury, as well as one of his houses.

1100. For the sense of 'applied' cp. v. 913.

1115 f. Libra is the exaltation of Saturn.

1135. That is to say, Scorpio is the 'fall' of Venus, being the sign opposite to one of her houses, namely Taurus.

1155 f. Sagittarius is a house of Jupiter, and it is opposite to Gemini, which is one of the houses of Mercury.

1162. *The Plowed Oxe*, i.e. the ox that has ploughed the land.

1166. Then the swine are killed and the larder, or bacon-tub, comes into use.

1175. Capricorn is the 'fall' of the Moon, being opposite to her house, Cancer, as the next sign Aquarius is that of the Sun, see l. 1190.

1216. 'Piscis' is the reading of the MSS. here in text and margin, but 'Pisces' in l. 1253.

1229 ff. That is, Pisces is a house of Jupiter and the exaltation of Venus.

1289 ff. The reference is apparently to the *Introductorium* of Albu-masar, but the printed editions of this give an abbreviated text which does not help us here. A fuller translation of the original may be found in manuscript, e.g. MS. Digby 194, where something more or less corresponding to this may be found on f. 55, but the Arabic names of places make it difficult to follow.

1281 ff. This account of the fifteen stars with their herbs and stones is taken by Gower from a treatise called 'Liber Hermetis de xv stellis et de xv lapidibus et de xv herbis, xv figuris,' &c., which may be found in several manuscripts, e.g. MSS. Ashmole 341 (f. 123) and 1471 (f. 120v<sup>o</sup>): cp. l. 1437, where Hermes is mentioned as the authority. Some information as to the names of the stars here mentioned may be found in Ideler's *Untersuchungen über den Ursprung und die Bedeutung der Sternnamen*, 1809.

1292 ff. 'Et scias quod stelle fixe habent fortuna et infortunia quem-admodum et planete' (*Lib. Herm.*).

1317. 'anabulla seu titimallum.'

1329. *Algol*, or Caput Algol, the Arabic 'Ras el-ghûl' (devil's head), in Perseus.

1338. *Alhaiot*, probably for 'Alhaioc,' that is Capella, from the Arabic 'El-'aijûk.'

1343. 'prassium seu marrubium.'

1345. *Canis maior*, 'Alhabor,' i.e. Sirius.

1356. *Canis minor*, 'Algomeiza,' i.e. Procyon.

1362. *Primerole*: in the *Liber Hermetis* we have here 'solsecium, quam elitropiam vocant.'

1364. *Arial*, apparently 'Cor Leonis,' i.e. Regulus.

1367. *Gorgonza*: 'gregonza' in MS. Ash. 341.

1375. 'lappacium maius.'

1378. *gret riote*: 'color huius niger est, faciens hominem iratum, animosum et audacem et mala cogitantem et maledicentem . . . et faciens fugere demones et congregare.'

1379 ff. 'Nona stella dicitur Atimet Alaazel, . . . et est ex natura Veneris et Mercurii, et dicitur stella pulchritudinis et rationis,' &c. The name 'Atimet Alaazel' is from the Arabic 'El-simâk el-a'zal,' that is the star which we call Spica.

1385. *Salge*, Lat. 'salvia.'

1387. 'Decima vero stella Atimet Alrameth, et dicitur saltator, et est ex natura Martis et Iouis.' This is the Arabic 'El-simâk el-râmih,' which we call Arcturus.

1393. *Venenas*: 'Vndecima stella dicitur Benenais et est postrema de ii stellis que sunt in cauda urse maioris.' In Arabic 'Banat Na'sh.'

1401. *Alpheta*, 'Elfetah,' from the Arabic 'El-fak'ah' (the beggar's dish), meaning the constellation which we call the Northern Crown. Here the name stands for the principal star of that constellation, Gemma.

1419. *Botercadent*. The Latin says 'Vultur cadens,' that is perhaps

Vega; but 'Botercadent' would probably be a different star, namely that called in Arabic 'Batn-Kaitos' or Whale's belly.

1426. *Tail of Scorpio*: in the Latin 'Cauda Capricorni.'

1449 ff. These names of the chief authors of the science of astronomy seem to be partly taken from the treatise called *Speculum Astronomiae* or *De libris latis et illicitis*, cap. ii. (*Alberti Magni Opera*, v. 657): cp. note on vi. 1311 ff. The passage is as follows, under the heading 'De libris astronomicis antiquorum': 'Ex libris ergo qui post libros geometricos et arithmeticos inveniuntur apud nos scripti super his, primus tempore compositionis est liber quem edidit Nembroth gigas ad Iohathonem discipulum suum, qui sic incipit: *Sphaera caeli* &c., in quo est parum proficui et falsitates nonnullae, sed nihil est ibi contra fidem quod sciam. Sed quod de hac scientia vtius inuenitur, est liber Ptolemaei Pheludensis, qui dicitur Graece Megasti, Arabice Almagesti, . . . quod tamen in eo diligentiae causa dictum est prolixè, commodè restringitur ab Azarchele Hispano, qui dictus est Albategni in libro suo. . . . Voluitque Alpetragius corrigere principia et suppositiones Ptolemaei,' &c.

It would seem that, either owing to corruption of his text or to misunderstanding, our author separated the name 'Megasti' from its connexion with Ptolemy and the Almagest, and made of it a book called 'Megaster,' which he attributes to Nembrot.

1461. Alfraganus was author of a book called in Latin *Rudimenta Astronomica*.

1576 f. *out of herre . . . entriketh*, that is, 'involves (this world) in perplexity, so that it is disordered.'

1579. *coupe of hevene*, see note on l. 534.

1595 ff. The discussion in the Roman Senate on the fate of the accomplices of Catiline is here taken as a model of rhetorical treatment. The idea is a happy one, but it is borrowed from the *Trésor*, where Latini, after laying down the rules of rhetoric, illustrates them (pp. 505-517) by a report and analysis of the speeches in this debate, as they are given by Sallust. The 'Cillenus' mentioned below is D. Junius Silanus, who as consul-designate gave his opinion first. It is tolerably evident in this passage, as it is obvious in iv. 2647 ff., that Gower did not identify Tullius with Cicero, though Latini actually says, 'Marcus Tullius Cicero, cils meismes qui enseigne l'art de rectorique, estoit adonques consule de Rome.'

1615 ff. Cp. *Trésor*, p. 509, 'mais Jules Cesar, qui autre chose pensoit, se torna as couvertures et as mox dorez, porce que sa matiere estoit contraire,' &c.

1623. *after the lawe*. It may be observed as a matter of fact that the law was on the side of Caesar, and that this was his chief argument against the death penalty.

1706. *Fyf pointz*. The *Secretum Secretorum* recommends to rulers the virtues of Liberality, Wisdom, Chastity, Mercy, Truth, and afterwards of Justice, but there is no very systematic arrangement there,

nor in general does the treatment of the subject, except partly as regards Liberality, resemble Gower's. It has been already observed that the treatment of Politics in the *Trésor* is altogether different from that which we have here.

1783 ff. This story comes originally from 3 Esdras, ch. iii, iv. The names, however, of Arpaghes and Manachaz are not found in the text of that book, and the story of Alcestis, which Zorobabel tells, is of course a later addition, made no doubt by our author.

1809. 'Having his mind so disposed.'

1856. *behelde*, an archaic form, used here for the rhyme.

1884 ff. 3 Esdr. iv. 29, 'Videbam tamen Apemen filiam Bezacis, mirifici concubinam regis, sedentem iuxta regem ad dexteram,' &c.

1961 f. 'He that is true shall never rue,' or some such jingle. Cp. Shaksp. *K. John*, v. 7, 'Nought shall make us rue,  
If England to herself do rest but true.'

2000. *laste*, pret. 'lasted': cp. Prol. 672, iv. 2315.

2017 ff. This seems to be suggested by a passage in the *Secretum Secretorum*. 'Reges sunt quattuor. Rex largus subditis et largus sibi, Rex auarus subditis et auarus sibi, Rex auarus sibi et largus subditis, Rex largus sibi et auarus subditis.' This last is pronounced to be the worst, as the first is the best.

2081 ff. This refers to a passage in the *Secretum Secretorum* (ed. 1520, f. 8), which runs thus in the printed edition: 'Que fuit causa destructionis regni calculorum: vnde quia superfluitas expensarum superat redditus ciuitatum, et sic deficientibus redditibus et expensis reges extenderunt manus suas ad res et redditus aliorum. Subditi ergo propter iniuriam clamauerunt ad deum excelsum gloriosum, qui immittens ventum calidum afflixit eos vehementer, et insurrexit populus contra eos et nomina eorum penitus de terra deleuerunt.'

This is obviously corrupt, and it is evident that 'calculorum' stands for a proper name, which Gower read 'Caldeorum,' as it is in MS. Laud 708. Other Bodleian MSS. to which I have referred give 'Saldeorum' (Bodley 181), 'cangulorum' (Add. C. 12), 'singulorum' (Laud 645), 'Anglorum' (Digby 170). 'Nonne' is the reading of the MSS. for 'vnde,' and it seems that 'Que fuit' &c. is also a question.

2089. So in the *Secretum Secretorum* (shortly before the passage quoted above), 'Debes igitur dona dare iuxta posse tuum cum mensura, hominibus indigentibus atque dignis.'

2050. *of ken*, here apparently 'of quality.'

2061 ff. The basis of this story is to be found in Seneca, *De Beneficiis*, v. 24, 'Causam dicebat apud diuum Iulium ex veteranis quidam,' &c., but there is no question there of an advocate; the veteran simply gains his case by recalling his personal services. The story appears in a form more like that of Gower in the *Gesta Romanorum*, 87 (ed. Oesterley), but the name Julius is not there mentioned, only 'Quidam imperator.' It may be observed also in general, that

though many stories are common to the *Gesta Romanorum* and the *Confessio Amantis*, there is no instance in which Gower can be proved to have used the *Gesta Romanorum* as his authority. Indeed the tales are there so meagrely and badly told for the most part, that there would be little temptation to turn to it if any other book were available.

Such references as 'dicitur in gestis Romanorum' are not to this book but to Roman History.

Hoccleve tells this story much as we have it here, in his *Regement of Princes*, 3270 ff., e. g.

'Han ye forgote how scharp it with yow ferde,  
Whan ye were in the werres of Asie?  
Maffeith, your lif stood there in jupartie;  
And advocat ne sente I non to yow,  
But myself put in prees and for yow faght,' &c.

2115 ff. This anecdote is perhaps taken from the *Trésor*, where it occurs more appropriately as an example of hypocritical excuses for not giving, 'Li Maistres dit : Après te garde de malicieus engin de escon-dire, si comme fist le rois Antigonus, qui dist à un menestrier qui li demandoit un besant, que il demandoit plus que à lui n'aferoit; et quant il li demanda un denier, il dist que rois ne devoit pas si povre-ment doner. Ci ot malicieus escondit; car il li pooit bien doner un besant, porce que il estoit rois, ou un denier, porce que il estoit menestrel. Mais Alixandres le fist mieulx; car quant il dona une cité à un home, cil li dist que il estoit de trop bas affaire à avoir cité; Alixandres li respondit : Je ne pren pas garde quel chose tu dois avoir, mais quel chose je doi doner' (p. 412). This may serve as a rather favourable example of Latini's style.

2182. *is in manere* : cp. l. 4344. It seems to mean that the virtue of giving depends on the measure with which it is done : cp. *Praise of Peace*, 53.

2189. *To helpe with* : cp. i. 452, 2172, ii. 283, &c.

2194. *holden up his oyl* : cp. l. 2584, 'To bere up oyl.' The only other instance which I can quote of this expression is from Trevisa's translation of the *Polychronicon* (Rolls' Series, vol. iii. p. 447, a reference which I owe to Dr. Murray), 'There Alisaundre gan to boste . . . and a greet deel of hem that were at the feste hilde up the kynges oyl.' (In the Latin, 'magna convivantium parte assentiente.') In all these cases it is used of flatterers, and 'oil' seems to stand in this phrase for 'pride' or 'vainglory.' I am disposed to think it is simply the French 'oil,' meaning 'eye,' and getting its present sense from such Biblical expressions as 'oculi sublimium deprimentur,' 'oculos superbiorum humiliabis,' 'oculos sublimes, linguam mendacem'; but I can quote no examples of this meaning in French.

2217 ff. This story is based originally on an anecdote told by Valerius Maximus : 'Idem Syracusis, cum holera ei lavanti Aristippus dixisset, Si Dionysium adulari velles, ista non esses, Immo, inquit, si tu ista



esse velles, non adularere Dionysium' (*Mem.* iv. 3). It has been repeated often in a short form.

2268. *the worldes crok*, that is, the crooked way of the world. See the quotations in the *New Engl. Dictionary* under 'crook,' 12.

2279. *joutes*: see Godefroy's Dictionary, where an instance is quoted of the use of this word in a French version of this very story.

2302. F punctuates after 'pyke,' and no doubt rightly so. The word 'trewely' corresponds to the Latin 'certe' in the margin above.

2355 ff. The Roman Triumph as here related was a commonplace of preachers and moralists, cp. Bromyard, *Summa Praedicatorum*, T. v. 36, 'Triumphus enim secundum Isidorum dicitur a tribus: quia triumphator Romanus cum victoria versus civitatem veniens tres honores habere debuit,' &c. So l. 2366, 'Of treble honour he was certein.' It is also in the *Gesta Romanorum*, 30 (ed. Oesterley), but from neither of these could Gower have got his 'Notheos' (for Γνώθι σεαυτόν).

2416 ff. This custom is spoken of in Hoccleve's *Regement of Princes* with a marginal reference to the *Vita Iohannis Eleemosynarii*, where it is in fact mentioned (Migne, *Patrol.* vol. 73, p. 354).

2527 ff. From 1 Kings xxii. It will be seen that the story is told rather freely as regards order of events, as if from memory.

2531 (margin). *organizate*, used in a musical sense.

2553. *Godelie*: the person meant is Athaliah.

2584. *bere up oil*: see note on l. 2194.

2660. *astraided*. See *New Engl. Dict.* under 'astray,' *verb* and *adv.*

2698 (margin). No manuscript here gives the reading 'regiminis,' so far as I know; but it is required by the sense, and the reading 'regis' might easily arise from the abbreviation of 'regiminis,' as we find it in some MSS. at l. 3106 (margin). Note that S is defective here, and J, Ad, K omit the Latin margin. Δ attempts an emendation.

2726 f. *lete Of wrong to don*, i. e. 'abstain from doing wrong.'

2765 ff. From Godfrey of Viterbo (in *Monum. Germ. Hist.* xxii. p. 169), 'Quando voluit rectores dare provinciis . . . nomina eorum examinabat in populo, dicens: Si quis habet crimen contra eos, dicat et probet,' &c. This passage is not contained in the earlier redactions of the *Pantheon*, and consequently we may conclude that Gower's copy was one which contained the later additions: cp. notes on 4181 ff. and viii. 271 ff.

2771. *his name*, that is, his reputation: cp. 2774.

2780. *stod . . . upon*, 'rested upon,' 'was guided by.'

2783 ff. The saying by which this story is characterized, 'malle locupletibus imperare quam ipsum fieri locupletem,' is more properly attributed to M'. Curius Dentatus (Valerius Maximus, *Mem.* iv. 3. 5): but Fabricius also rejected gifts sent him by the Samnites.

2810. *bothe*: apparently both the men and their possessions.

2833 ff. This is probably Conrad II, of whom Godfrey of Viterbo says 'nulli violatori pacis parcebat.'

2845 ff. Originally taken from Valerius Maximus, who tells it,

however, with reference to Charondas, the supposed legislator of Thurii (*Mem.* vi. 5).

2864. *sete*: apparently a strong past participle formed from 'sette' by confusion with 'sitte': cp. 'upsete' rhyming with 'misgete,' viii. 244.

2883. *of dawwe*. equivalent to 'of this lif,' iv. 3414.

2889 ff. This is a story which we find very often repeated (originally from Herodotus), e.g. Valerius Maximus, *Mem.* vi. 3, *Gesta Romanorum*, 29 (without mention of Cambyses by name), Hoccleve's *Regement of Princes*, &c. In  $\Delta$  we find added to the marginal Latin.

'vnde versus,  
Sede sedens ista iudex inflexibilis sta,  
Sit tibi lucerna lux, lex, pellisque paterna,  
Qua resides natus pro patre sponte datus.  
A manibus reuoces munus, ab aure preces.'

It would seem that the last line should stand as the second.

2902. *Avise him*, 'Let him consider.'

*fitte*, 'turn aside,' cp. iv. 214; but also intransitive, v. 7076.

2917 ff. Another often repeated story. The *Gesta Romanorum* has it (169) with a reference to Trogus Pompeius (that is Justin, *Epit.* iii. 3). Gower makes the city Athens instead of Sparta (cp. 3089), and the god Mercury instead of Apollo.

3054 ff. This list of legislators is from the *Trésor*, p. 24, but the text which our author used seems to have been corrupt. The passage runs thus in the printed edition: 'Moyses fu li premiers qui bailla la loi as Hebreus; et li rois Foroneus fu li premiers qui la bailla as Grezois; Mercurus as Egypciens, et Solon à cels de Athenes; Ligurgus as Troyens; Numa Pompilius, qui regna après Romulus en Rome, et puis ses filz, bailla et fist lois as Romains premierement,' &c. If we suppose 'Solon' to have been omitted in the MS., the passage might read (with changes of punctuation) nearly as we have it in Gower.

3092. *on the beste Above alle other*: cp. iv. 2606, &c.

3187 ff. Cp. *Mirour de l'Omme*, 13921, and see also ii. 3204 ff. (margin).

3144. *Troian*: so given in all MSS. for 'Traian.' So also in the *Mirour*, 22168, and in Godfrey of Viterbo, *Spec. Reg.* ii. 14 (*Mon. Germ. Hist.* xxii. p. 74).

3181 ff. Valerius Maximus, *Mem.* v. 6: but he does not mention the Dorians as the enemy against whom Codrus fought. However, the story was a common one: cp. *Gesta Romanorum*, 41.

3201. *lemes*: cp. Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, A 3886.

3149\* f. The reference is to the Epistle of St. James ii. 13, 'Iudicium enim sine misericordia illi qui non fecit misericordiam.'

3157\*. That is, 'Blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.'

3161\* f. Cp. *Mirour de l'Omme*, 13918 ff., where the same is quoted.

3163\* ff. Quoted also in the *Mirour*, 13925 ff., and there also attributed to Tullius, but I cannot give the reference.



3210. *drawe*: the change to subjunctive marks this sentence as really conditional.

3215 ff. Valerius Maximus, *Mem.* v. 1. 9.

3217. *in jeupartie*, i. e. equally balanced, the result uncertain.

3267 ff. Justinian II is described by Gibbon as a cruel tyrant, whose deposition by Leontius was fully deserved, and who, when restored by the help of Terbelis, took a ferocious vengeance on his opponents: 'during the six years of his new reign, he considered the axe, the cord, and the rack as the only instruments of royalty.' Nothing apparently could be less appropriate than the epithet 'pious,' which Gower bestows upon him.

3295 ff. This again was a very common story: cp. *Gesta Romanorum*, 48 (ed. Oesterley). Hoccleve tells it with a reference to Orosius, *Regement of Princes*, 3004 ff. Gower probably had it from Godfrey of Viterbo, *Pantheon*, p. 181 (ed. 1584), where Berillus is given for Perillus, as in our text. He takes 'Phalaris Siculus' as the tyrant's name, and shortens it to Siculus.

3302. I take the preceding three lines as a parenthesis, and this as following l. 3298.

3341. 'Dionys' is a mistake for Diomedes, or rather Diomedes is confused with the tyrant Dionysius.

3355 ff. Cp. Ovid, *Metam.* i. 221 ff.

3359. *With othre men*, i. e. 'by other men': cp. viii. 2553.

3387 ff. This characteristic of the lion is mentioned by Brunetto Latini, *Trésor*, p. 224.

3417 ff. This story is told much as it appears in Justin, *Epit.* i. 8, and Orosius, *Hist.* ii. 7, but the name Spertachus (Spartachus) is apparently from Peter Comestor (Migne, *Patrol.* vol. 198, p. 1471), who gives this as the name of Cyrus in his boyhood. The same

3207\* ff. The tale of the Jew and the Pagan is from the *Secretum Secretorum*, where it is told as a warning against trusting those who are not of our faith. The differences are mainly as follows. No names of places are mentioned in the original; the 'pagan' is called 'magus orientalis,' and he rides a mule: the Jew is without provisions, and the Magian feeds him as well as allowing him to ride: the Jew is found not dead but thrown from the mule, with a broken leg and other injuries—there is no mention of a lion except in the entreaties of the Magian, 'noli me derelinquere in deserto, ne forte interficiar a leonibus.' The Magian is about to leave him to die, but the Jew pleads that he has acted only in accordance with his own law, and again appeals to the Magian to show him the mercy which his religion enjoins. Finally the Magian carries him away and delivers him safely to his own people. Probably our author thought that this form of the story unduly sacrificed justice to mercy, and therefore he killed his Jew outright.

3342\* ff. Note the subjunctive after 'who (that)' here and in ll. 3349, 3355: see note on Prol. 460.

authority may have supplied the name 'Marsagete,' for the histories named above call Thamyris only 'queen of the Scythians'; but Cornestor omits the details of the story.

3418. The name 'Spertachus' is given in full by F in the Latin summary, l. 3426 (margin). In the English text the first syllable is abbreviated in most copies, but A has 'Spartachus' and H: 'Spertachus.'

3539. *Pite feigned*: cp. l. 3835.

3581. The reference should be to Juvenal, *Sat.* viii. 269 ff.,

'Malo pater tibi sit Thersites, dummodo tu sis  
Aeacidae similis, Vulcaniaque arma capessas,  
Quam te Thersitae similem genuisset Achilles.'

Gower has here taken the point out of the quotation to a great extent, but it occurs in the *Mirour*, 23371 ff., in its proper form, though with the same false reference.

3627 ff. From the Book of Judges, ch. vii.

3632. For the anacoluthon cp. iv. 3201, vi. 1798, and note on i. 98.

3639. The reading of the second recension, 'hem,' seems clearly to be right here: 'against those who would assail them.'

3640 ff. The meaning apparently is that each single division of the three which the enemy had was twice as large as Gideon's whole army. The original text says nothing of the kind.

3752. *per compaignie*, 'together.'

3820 ff. 1 Samuel xv.

3860 ff. 1 Kings ii.

3877. *natheles*, 'moreover': cp. 4242 and note on Prol. 39.

3884. *that*, for 'to that': cp. Prol. 122.

3891 ff. 1 Kings iii.

4011. *propre*, i.e. 'in himself.'

4027 ff. 1 Kings xii.

4144. *can . . . mai*, used in their original senses, the one implying knowledge and the other active power.

4181 ff. The person meant is Antoninus Pius, of whom his biographer Capitolinus says that he loved peace 'eousque ut Scipionis sententiam frequentarit, qua ille dicebat, malle se unum civem servare quam mille hostes occidere' (*Hist. August.* ed. 1620, p. 20). Godfrey of Viterbo, in the text given by Waitz (*Mon. Germ. Hist.* xxi. pp. 75, 163), regularly calls him Antonius, and probably Gower had the saying from this source. It is one of the later additions to the *Pantheon*: cp. note on 2765 ff.

4195. *is due To Pite*. This seems to mean 'is bound by duty' to show mercy.

4228. *His trouthe plight*, 'the engagement of his faith.' Here we have the word 'plight' from OE. 'pliht,' to be distinguished from 'plht.'

4242. *natheles*: cp. l. 3877.

4245. *hihe*. note the definite form after the possessive genitive, as after a possessive pronoun.

4284. 'And even if it should chance that he obtained any friendliness from her.' For the use of 'compainie' cp. v. 4558.

4335. *Barbarus*: more properly Arbaces, but 'Barbatus' in the *Pantheon* (p. 165, ed. 1584).

4361 ff. Cp. Justin, *Epit.* i. 7, where however the expedient is said to have been used (as related by Herodotus) after Cyrus had put down a revolt.

4406 ff. Numbers xxv.

4408. *Amalech*: Balak is meant.

4464 ff. This means apparently that the later time of life will be as a dark night which is not illuminated by any sunshine of dawn; but it is not very clearly expressed.

4469 ff. 1 Kings xi.

4515. That is, 'Ahijah the Shilonite,' called 'Ahias Silonites' in the Latin version.

4559 ff. (margin). The quotation is from the *Secretum Secretorum*: 'O summe rex, studeas modis omnibus custodire et retinere calorem naturalem' (ed. 1520, f. 25 v<sup>o</sup>).

4574 f. Caracalla, son of Severus, is here meant. His name was Aurelius Antoninus, and he is called Aurelius Antonius in the *Pantheon* (*Mon. Germ. Hist.* xxii. p. 166). Caracalla is called by Orosius 'omnibus hominibus libidine intemperantior, qui etiam novercam suam Iuliam uxorem duxerit' (*Hist.* vii. 18), and this character of him is repeated in the *Pantheon*.

4593 ff. This story is from Ovid, *Fasti*, ii. 687-720. Gower's rendering of it is remarkable for ease and simplicity of style: see especially ll. 4667-4685, 4701-4717.

4598. Neither Aruns nor Sextus is mentioned by name in Ovid, who speaks only of 'Tarquinius iuvenis.' Gower gives to Aruns the place of Sextus throughout this and the following story.

4623. *schette*, intransitive, equivalent to 'were shut': cp. iii. 1453.

4701 ff. The sacrifice at which this portent occurred is here brought into connexion with the capture of Gabii, a construction which is not unnaturally suggested by Ovid's abrupt transition, l. 711.

4718 ff. 'Consulitur Phoebus. Sors est ita reddita: Matri

Qui dederit princeps oscula, victor erit.' *Fasti*, ii. 713 f.

Ovid means that a message was sent to Delphi; but our author understands it differently.

4739 f. 'Creditus offenso procubuisse pede' (720).

4754 ff. This again is from Ovid, where it occurs as a continuation of the last story, *Fasti*, 721-852. Chaucer, who tells this story in the *Legend of G. Women*, 1680 ff., also follows Ovid, and more closely than Gower, e.g. 1761 ff., 1805 ff., 1830 f.

4757. *unskilfully*, that is, 'unjustly,' without due 'skile' or reason.

4778 ff. 'Non opus est verbis, credite rebus, ait' (734).

4805 f. This is derived from a misunderstanding of *Fasti*, ii. 785,

'Accipit aerata iuvenem Collatia porta.'

Cp. l. 4911 below. Both Chaucer and Gower make the tragedy occur at Rome, though Chaucer professes to have Livy before him.

4902. 'audentes forsve deusve iuvat.'

4937. *To hire*; cp. v. 5724. It means here much the same as 'by her.'

5062. *sche myhte it noght*, 'sche could not help it.'

5088 ff. 'Illa iacens ad verba oculos sine lumine mouit,

Visaque concussa dicta probare coma.' *Fasti*, ii. 845 f.

5093 ff. This latter part is added from other sources, perhaps from Livy.

5131 ff. Chaucer tells the story of Virginia as the Tale of the Doctor of Physic, professing to follow Livy, but actually taking his materials chiefly from the *Roman de la Rose*, 5613 ff., from which he transcribes also the reference to 'Titus Livius.' His story differs from that of Livy in many respects, and the changes are not at all for the better. For example, Chaucer does not mention the absence of Virginius in the camp, and he makes him kill his daughter at home and carry her head to Appius. Gower follows Livy, or some account drawn from Livy, without material alteration. It may be observed that Chaucer (following the *Rom. de la Rose*) uses the name 'Apius' alone for the judge, and 'Claudius' for the dependent, while Gower names them more correctly 'Apius Claudius' and 'Marchus Claudius.' On the subject generally reference may be made to Rumbaur's dissertation, *Geschichte von Appius und Virginia in der engl. Litteratur*, Breslau, 1890.

5186. *Leuius Virginius*, a mistake for 'Lucius Virginius.'

5151. *Ilcius*, that is, Icilius.

5209. *till that he come*, 'till he should come,' the verb being pret. subjunctive.

5254 ff. The sentence is irregular in construction, but intelligible and vigorous: 'but as to that command, like the hunted wild boar, who when he feels the hounds hard upon him, throws them off on both sides and goes his way, so (we may say) this knight,' &c. The simile is due to Gower.

5281. *kepte*, 'waited for.'

5307 ff. From the Book of Tobit, ch. vi-viii. The moral of the story is given by vi. 17, where Raphael says to Tobias, 'Hi namque qui coniugium ita suscipiunt, ut Deum a se et a sua mente excludant, et suae libidini ita vacent sicut equus et mulus, quibus non est intellectus, habet potestatem daemonium super eos.' This, however, is absent from the English version (which follows the LXX), as are also the precepts which follow, about nights to be spent in prayer by the newly married couple. The same is the case with the five precepts given to Sara by her parents, which are mentioned in the *Mirour*, 17701 ff.

5390. This line, written in F as follows,

'Hov trewe · hou large · hou ioust · hov chaste,'

is enough to show that *v* and *u* are used indifferently in this kind of position: cp. *movpe*: *coupe*, 5285 f.

5408. *Do wey*, 'Have done': see *New English Dictionary*, 'do,' 52.

## LIB. VIII.

We may suppose that our author had some embarrassment as regards the subject of his eighth book. It should properly have dealt with the seventh Deadly Sin and its various branches, that is, as the *Mirour de l'Omme* gives them, 'Fornicioun,' 'Stupre,' 'Avolterie,' 'Incest,' 'Foldelit.' Nearly all of these subjects, however, have already been treated of more or less fully, either in the fifth book, where branches of Avarice are spoken of with reference to the case of love, or in the seventh, under the head of Chastity as a point of Policy. Even the author's commendation of Virginity, which might well have been reserved for this place, and which would have been rather less incongruous at the end than in the middle of the shrift, has already been set forth in the fifth book. There remained only Incest, and of this unpromising subject he has made the best he could, first tracing out the gradual development of the moral (or rather the ecclesiastical) law with regard to it, and then making it an excuse for the Tale of Apollonius (or Appolinus) of Tyre, which extends over the larger half of the book. The last thousand lines or so are occupied with the conclusion of the whole poem.

36. *upon his grace*, that is, free for him to bestow on whom he would.

44. Raphael is not named in Genesis.

48. *Metodre*, that is, Methodius, in whose *Revelationes* it is written, 'Sciendum namque est, exeuntes Adam et Evam de Paradiso virgines fuisse,' so that 'Into the world' in l. 53 must mean from Paradise into the outer world.

62 ff. This is not found in Genesis, only 'genuitque filios et filias,' but Methodius says that the sisters of Cain and Abel were Calmana and Debora.

110. For the hiatus cp. *Mirour*, 12241,

'De Isaäk auci je lis.'

158. *ne yit religion*. The seduction of one who was a professed member of a religious order was usually accounted to be incest: cp. *Mirour*, 9085 ff. and l. 175 below.

170. 'I keep no such booth (or stall) at the fair,' that is, 'I do no such trade.'

244. *upsete*: see Introduction, p. cxix, and cp. vii. 2864.

271 ff. Gower tells us here that he finds the story in the *Pantheon*. That is true, no doubt: it is told there in the peculiar kind of verse with which Godfrey of Viterbo diversified his chronicle, and a most useful text of this particular story, showing the differences of three redactions, is given by S. Singer in his *Apollonius von Tyrus*, Halle, 1895, pp. 153-177. There is ample evidence that Gower was acquainted with the *Pantheon*, but it is not the case that he followed it in this story, as has been too readily assumed. Godfrey tells the

tale in a much abbreviated form, and Gower unquestionably followed mainly the Latin prose narrative which was commonly current, though he thought the *Pantheon*, as a grave historical authority, more fit to be cited. The very first sentence, with its reference, 'as seith the bok,' is enough to indicate this, but a few more points may be mentioned here in which the story of the *Pantheon* differs from Gower and from the prose *Historia Apollonis Tyrri*. (1) Godfrey of Viterbo does not say what was the problem proposed by Antiochus, nor does he mention the period of thirty days. (2) He gives no details of the flight of Apollonius or of the mourning of his people, and he does not mention the incident of Taliart (or Thaliarchus). (3) The name Pentapolim is not introduced. (4) There is no mention in the *Pantheon* of the wooing of the daughter of Archistrates by three princes (or nobles) or of the bills which they wrote. (5) There is no mention of the nurse Lichorida being taken with Apollonius and his wife on shipboard, of the master of the ship insisting that the corpse should be thrown into the sea, or of the name of the physician, Cerimon. (6) The *Pantheon* says nothing of the vow of Apollonius in ll. 1301-1306. (7) The name Theophilus is not given. (8) There is no mention of the tomb of Thaise (or Tharsia) being shown to Apollonius. (9) In the *Pantheon* the punishment of Strangulio and Dionysia precedes the visit to Ephesus, and there is no mention of the dream which caused Apollonius to sail to Ephesus.

There are indeed some points in which Gower agrees with the *Pantheon* against the *Historia*, for example in making the princess ask for Apollonius as her teacher on the very night of the banquet instead of the next morning, and in representing that Apollonius went to his kingdom after leaving his daughter at Tharsis (cp. E. Klebs, *Die Erzählung von Apollonius aus Tyrus*, Berlin, 1899). Perhaps however the most marked correspondence is where Gower makes the wife of Apollonius 'Abbesse' of Diana's temple (l. 1849), which is evidently from Godfrey's line, 'Sic apud Ephesios velut abbatissa moratur': cp. also l. 1194 'warmed ofte.' These are both among the later additions to the *Pantheon*, and apparently were overlooked by Singer and Klebs when they pronounced that Gower probably knew only the earlier redaction: cp. notes on vii. 2765, 4181.

The Latin prose narrative has been printed in *Welseri Opera*, ed. 1682, pp. 681-704, and also in the Teubner series (ed. Riese, 1871, 1893). It is a translation from a Greek original, as is sufficiently indicated by the Greek words that occur in it, and by the Greek customs which it refers to or presupposes. Gower agrees with it pretty closely, but the story is not improved in his hands. It loses, of course, the Greek characteristics of which we have spoken, and several of the incidents are related by Gower in a less effective manner than in the original. For example, in the scene near the beginning between Antiochus and Apollonius, the king asks, 'Nosti nuptiarum conditionem?' and the young man replies, 'Novi et ad portam vidi,' to which there is nothing corresponding in Gower.



Again, at a later stage of the story, when the three young nobles send in their proposals to the daughter of Archistrates, the original story makes her reply in a note which declares that she will marry only 'the ship-wrecked man.' The king innocently inquires of the three young men which of them has suffered shipwreck, and finally hands the note to Apollonius to see if he can make anything of it. This is much better managed than by Gower. On the other hand our author has done well in dispensing with the rudeness and boastfulness of Apollonius on the occasion when the king's daughter plays the harp at the feast, and also in modifying the scenes at the brothel and excluding Athenagoras from taking part in them. The quotations given in the following notes are made from the Bodleian MS. Laud 247, a good copy of the twelfth century, which has a form of text more nearly corresponding to that which Gower used than that of any of the printed editions, and by means of which we can account for the names Thaise and Philotenne.

It can hardly be necessary to observe that the play of *Pericles, Prince of Tyre*, had another source besides Gower, and especially as regards its fourth and fifth acts. Marina is waylaid while going to visit the tomb of her old nurse, as in the original story, the scene of the pirates agrees more nearly with the original than with Gower, Lysimachus plays a part very like that which Gower took away from Athenagoras, and the scene between Cleon and Dionyza (iv. 4) seems to be suggested by the original. The story was current in English prose, as is well known.

386. *And seileth*: cp. v. 3291 and note.

395. *he moste*, 'that he might,' 'ut sibi liceret,' a common use of the word in older English (see examples in Bosworth and Toller's Dictionary).

405 ff. (margin). The riddle as given in the Laud MS. is, 'Scelere uehor. Materna carne uescor. Quero patrem meum matris mee uirum uxoris mee filiam, nec inuenio.' Most copies have 'fratrem meum' for 'patrem meum,' but Gower agrees with the Laud MS. I do not attempt a solution of it beyond that of Apollonius, which is, 'Quod dixisti scelere uehor, non es mentitus, ad te ipsum respice. Et quod dixisti materna carne uescor, filiam tuam intueri.'

484. *the Stwes*. For the spelling cp. 'Jwes,' v. 1713, 1808.

536. This is by no means in accordance with the original. Antiochus exclaims on hearing of the flight of Apollonius, 'Fugere modo quidem potest, effugere autem quandoque me minime poterit,' and at once issues an edict, 'Quicumque mihi Apollonium contemptorem regni mei uiuum adduxerit, quinquaginta talenta auri a me dabuntur ei: qui uero caput eius mihi optulerit, talentorum c. receptor erit' (f. 205 v<sup>o</sup>), and he causes search to be made after him both by land and sea. The change made by Gower is not a happy one, for it takes away the motive for the flight from Tarsus, where Apollonius heard of this proscription.

542 ff. In the original Apollonius meets 'Hellanicus' at once on landing, and is informed by him of the proscription. He makes an offer to Strangulio to sell his wheat at cost price to the citizens, if they will conceal his presence among them. The money which he receives as the price of the wheat is expended by him in public benefits to the state, and the citizens set up a statue of him standing in a two-horse chariot (biga), his right hand holding forth corn and his left foot resting upon a bushel measure.

603. *ferketh*, 'conveys,' from OE. 'fercian': cp. Anglo-Saxon Chron. 1009, *Hi fercodon 7 a scipo eft to Lundenne* (quoted in Bosworth and Toller's Dictionary).

624. 'But with cable and cord broken asunder... the ship' &c., past participle absolute, as ii. 791, viii. 1830.

640. *forlo mote To gete ayein*. Apparently this means 'to wish to get again,' a meaning derived from the phrase 'so mot I,' &c., expressing a wish. The infinitive is very unusual. For the gerund with 'to' which follows it cp. ii. 510, vii. 437, where we have this construction with 'mai,' 'mihte.'

679. The account in the original story is here considerably different. Gower did not understand the Greek customs. 'Et dum cogitaret unde uite peteret auxilium, uidit puerum nudum per plateam currentem, oleo unctum, precinctum sabana, ferentem ludos iuueniles ad gymnasium peruenientes, maxima uoce dicentem: Audite ciues, audite peregrini, liberi et ingenui, gymnasium patet. Apollonius hoc audito exuens se tribunario ingreditur lauacrum, utitur liquore palladio; et dum exercentes singulos intueretur, parem sibi querit et non inuenit. Subito Arcestrates rex totius illius regionis cum turba famulorum ingressus est: dumque cum suis ad pile lusum exercebatur, uolente deo miscuit se Apollonius regi, et dum currenti sustulit pilam, subtili uelocitate percussam ludenti regi remisit' &c. (f. 207 v°).

The story proceeds to say that the king, pleased with the skill of Apollonius in the game of ball, accepted his services at the bath, and was rubbed down by him in a very pleasing manner. The result was an invitation to supper.

Gower agrees here with the *Pantheon* in making the king a spectator only.

691. *Artestrathes*. The name is Arcestrates in the Laud MS.

706. *lefte it noght*, 'did not neglect it.'

720 f. 'Ingressus Apollonius in trichnium, contra regem adsignato loco discubuit.' Gower apparently sets him at the head of the second table. For 'beginne' cp. *Cant. Tales*, Prol. 52, with Skeat's note.

767 ff. In the original all applaud the performance of the king's daughter except Apollonius, who being asked by the king why he alone kept silence, replied, 'Bone rex, si permittis, dicam quod sentio: filia enim tua in artem musicam incidit, nam non didicit. Denique iube mihi tradi liram, et scies quod nescit' (f. 208 v°). Gower has toned this down to courtesy.



782. 'ita stetit ut omnes discumbentes una cum rege non Apollonium sed Apollinem estimarent.'

866 ff. In the original this incident takes place when the king is in company with Apollonius. The king replies that his daughter has fallen ill from too much study, but he bids them each write his name and the sum of money which he is prepared to offer as dowry, and he sends the bills at once to the princess by the hand of Apollonius. She reads them, and then asks whether he is not sorry that she is going to be married. He says, 'Immo gratulor,' and she replies, 'Si amares, doleres.' Then she writes a note, saying that she wishes to have 'the shipwrecked man' as her husband, adding 'Si miraris, pater, quod pudica uirgo tam imprudenter scripserim, scitote quia quod pudore indicare non potui, per ceram mandaui, que ruborem non habet.' The king having read the note asks the young men which of them has been shipwrecked. One claims the distinction, but is promptly exposed by his companions, and the king hands the note to Apollonius, saying that he can make nothing of it. Apollonius reads and blushes, and the king asks, 'Inuenisti naufragum?' To which he replies discreetly, 'Bone rex, si permittis, inueni.' The king at last understood, and dismissed the three young men, promising to send for them when they were wanted.

901 ff. 'cui si me non tradideris, amittis filiam tuam,' but this is afterwards, in a personal interview.

930 ff. There is no mention of the queen in the original. The king calls his friends together and announces the marriage. The description of the wedding, &c., ll. 952-974, is due to Gower.

1003 ff. In the original story it is here announced to Apollonius that he has been elected king in succession to Antiochus; but this was regarded by our author as an unnecessary complication.

1037 ff. The details of the description are due to our author.

1054 ff. So far as the original can be understood, it seems to say that the birth of the child was brought about by the storm and that the appearance of death in the mother took place afterwards, owing to a coagulation of the blood caused by the return of fair weather.

1059-1083. This is all Gower, except 1076 f.

1089 ff. Apparently the meaning is that the sea will necessarily cast a dead body up on the shore, and therefore they must throw it out of the ship, otherwise the ship itself will be cast ashore with it. The Latin says only, 'navis mortuum non suffert: iube ergo corpus in pelago mitti' (f. 211 v<sup>o</sup>).

1101. The punctuation is that of F.

1128. *tak in his mynde*, 'let him take thought': cp. v. 3573, and l. 1420 below.

1165. *the wisest*: cp. Introduction, p. cxi.

1184 ff. In the original it is not Cerimon himself, but a young disciple of his, who discovers the signs of life and takes measures for restoring her. She has already been laid upon the pyre, and he by

carefully lighting the four corners of it (cp. l. 1192) succeeds in liquefying the coagulated blood. Then he takes her in and warms her with wool steeped in hot oil.

1195. 'began' is singular, and the verbs 'hete,' 'flacke,' 'bete' are used intransitively: 'to flacke' means to flutter.

1219. 'In short, they speak of nothing': 'as for an ende' seems to mean the same as 'for end' or 'for an end' in later English: cp. *New English Dictionary*, 'end.'

1248. This daughter is apparently an invention of Gower's, who perhaps misread the original, 'adhibitis amicis filiam sibi adoptavit,' that is, he adopted her as his daughter.

1285. *his In*, 'his lodging,' in this case the house of Strangulio. Note the distinction made here by the capital letter between the substantive and the adverb: see Introduction, p. clix.

1293. *whiche*: note the plural, referring to Strangulio and his wife.

1295. The name here in the original is 'Tharsia,' given to her by her father's suggestion from the name of the city, Tharsus, where she was left; but the Laud MS. afterwards regularly calls her Thasia.

1311 ff. This is not in accordance with the Latin prose story. He is there represented as telling Strangulio that he does not care, now that he has lost his wife, either to accept the offered kingdom or to return to his father-in-law, but intends to lead the life of a merchant. Here the expression is 'ignotas et longinquas petens Egypti regiones.' On the other hand the *Pantheon* makes him proceed to his kingdom, apparently Antioch.

1337. *Philotenne*: the name in the Laud MS. is 'Philothemia,' but it is not distinguishable in writing from Philothenna. There is much variation as to this name in other copies.

1349 ff. Much is made in the original story of the death of this nurse and of the revelation which she made to Tharsia of her real parentage. Up to this time she had supposed herself to be the daughter of Strangulio. The nurse suspected some evil, and advised Tharsia, if her supposed parents dealt ill with her, to go and take hold of the statue of her father in the market-place and appeal to the citizens for help. After her death Tharsia visited her tomb by the sea-shore every day, 'et ibi manes parentum suorum inuocabat.' Here Theophilus lay in wait for her by order of Dionysiades.

1374. *cherles*. This is the reading of the best copies of each recension: cp. 'lyves' for 'liviss' i.e. living, 'worldes' for 'worldly,' 'dethes' for 'dedly,' iii. 2657, iv. 382, &c.

1376. *what sche scholde*, that is, what should become of her.

1391. *Scomerfare*. The first part of this word must be the French 'escumerie,' meaning piracy: see Du Cange under 'escumator,' e.g. 'des compaignons du pays de Bretagne, qui étaient venuz d'Escumerie.'

1393. *and he to go*, that is, 'and he proceeded to go,' a kind of historic infinitive: cp. Chaucer, *Troilus*, ii. 1108, 'And she to laughe,'

*Leg. of Good Women*, 653 'And al his folk to go.' (In *Piers Plowman*, A. Prol. 33, 'And somme murthes to make,' quoted by Mätzner, it is more probable that 'to make' is dependent on 'chosen.') In addition to these instances we have the repeated use of 'to ga' in Barbour's *Bruce*, e.g. viii. 251, ix. 263, which is much more probably to be explained in this way than as a compound verb. Cp. Skeat's *Chaucer*, vol. vi. p. 403, with C. Stoffel's note on *Troilus*, ii. 1108, which is there quoted.

1410. The Laud MS. has 'leno leoninus nomine,' but many copies give no name.

1420. *Lei down*, 'let him lay down': cp. l. 1128.

1423. There is an interesting touch in the original here which would not be intelligible to Gower. When Tharsia is led into the house, the character of which she does not know, she is bidden to do reverence to a statue of Priapus which stands in the entrance hall. She asks her master whether he is a native of Lampsacus, and he explains to her that his interest in this matter is not local but professional.

1424 ff. There is much in the original about the visit of Athenagoras and of other persons, who are successively so far overcome by the tears and entreaties of Tarsia, as not only to spare her but to give her large sums of money, while at the same time they make a jest both of themselves and of one another for doing so.

1451 f. The rhyme is saved from being an identical one by the adverbial use of 'weie' in the second line, 'mi weie' being equivalent to 'aweie.'

1513. In the original she is reproached by her husband for the deed, and this is the case in the play of *Pericles* also.

1518. *of record*, 'of good repute.'

1534 f. Cp. *Pericles*, iv. 4, 'The fairest, sweetest, best lies here,' but the rest of the epitaph compares unfavourably with Gower's.

1567 ff. Here we have a curious lapse on the part of our author. He represents that the king had no sooner held his parliament and celebrated the sacrifice in memory of his wife, than he began to prepare for his voyage to Tharsis. The story requires however that at least fourteen years should elapse, and this, according to the original narrative, has been spent by Apollonius in travelling about as a merchant, a matter of which Gower says nothing. Probably the *Pantheon*, which is not very clear on the matter, is responsible for the oversight.

1587. 'For she is continually changing with regard to him.'

1617. *besihe*, 'attended to.' The use of this verb was not very common in Gower's time except in the participle 'beseie,' 'besein.' The verb means (1) look, see, (2) look to, attend to, (3) provide, arrange: hence the participle is quite naturally used in the sense of 'furnished,' 'provided,' and we have 'unbesein of,' l. 153, for 'unprovided with.' It is usually explained by reference to its first sense, as having regard necessarily to appearance. 'Appearing in respect of

dress, &c., 'Appearing as to accomplishments, furnished' (so *New English Dictionary*), but it is more natural to take these meanings of the participle as from senses (2) (3) of the verb. It is doubtful whether even the phrase 'well besein' used of personal appearance means anything but 'well furnished.'

1636. *fordrive*, 'driven about' by storms, actually and metaphorically.

1670 ff. Her song is given in the original; it is rather pretty, but very much corrupted in the manuscripts. It begins thus,

'Per sordes gradior, sed sordis conscia non sum,  
Ut rosa in spinis nescit mucrone perire,' &c.

1681 ff. Several of her riddles are given in the original story and he succeeds in answering them all at once. One is this,

'Longa feror uelox formose filia silue,  
Innumeris pariter comitum stipata cateruis:  
Curro uias multas, uestigia nulla relinquens.'

The answer is 'Nauis.'

She finally falls on his neck and embraces him, upon which he kicks her severely. She begins to lament, and incidentally lets him know her story. The suggestion contained in ll. 1702 ff., of the mysterious influence of kinship, is Gower's own, and we find the same idea in the tale of Constance, ii. 1381 f.,

'This child he loveth kindly,  
And yit he wot no cause why.'

1880. 'And all other business having been left': cp. ii. 791.

1890. *With topseilcole*: cp. v. 3119,

'Bot evene topseilcole it blew.'

The word 'topseilcole' (written as one word in the best copies of each recension) does not seem to occur except in these two passages. It is evidently a technical term of the sea, and in both these passages it is used in connexion with a favourable wind. Morley quotes from Godefroy a use of the word 'cole' in French in a nautical sense, 'Se mistrent en barges et alerent aux salandres, et en prisrent les xvii, et l'une eschapa, qui estoit a la cole' Unfortunately, however, it is uncertain what this means. The vessels in question were in port when they were attacked, and therefore 'a la cole' might reasonably mean with sails (or topsails) set, and so ready to start. A topsail breeze would be one which was fairly strong, but not too strong to allow of sailing under topsails, and this is rather the idea suggested by the two passages in Gower.

It should be noted that in F and in some other MSS. there is a stop after the word 'topseilcole.'

1948. *forto honge and drawe*: the verbs are transitive, 'that men should hang and draw them' (i.e. pluck out their bowels).

1983. This must mean apparently 'They had no need to take in a reef.' The use of 'slake' with this meaning does not seem quite appropriate, but a sail or part of a sail is slackened in a certain sense when it is taken in, seeing that it is no longer subject to the pressure of the wind.

2055. *leng the lasse* : cp. iii. 71, 'the leng the ferre.' This form of the comparative is usual in such phrases, as Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, A 3872, 'That ilke fruit is ever leng the wers,' and perhaps also E 687, F 404, *Compl. unto Pite*, 95, where the MSS. gives 'lenger.' The form 'leng' is the original comparative adverb of 'long.'

2077. *toward Venus* : cp. v. 6757. Here it means 'on the side of Venus.'

2095. *sett*, imperative, like 'set case,' i.e. 'suppose that.' The reading 'sith' is certainly wrong.

2113. *his oghne dom*. The word 'dom' is used here in special reference to 'kingdom' in the line above. 'Every man has a royal rule to exercise, that is the rule over himself.'

2124 f. 'When he has not kept possession for himself of his own heart.'

2165. *And felt it* : we have here the elision-apocope in the case of a preterite subjunctive.

2194. *hath nothing set therby*, 'accounted it as nothing.'

2198. *withholde*, 'kept' (in service).

2212 f. Cp. iii. 298, *Vox Clam*. ii. 1.

2217 ff. This 'Supplication' is a finished and successful composition in its way, and it may make us desire that our author had written more of the same kind. The poem *In Praise of Peace*, which is written in the same metre and stanza, is too much on a political subject to give scope for poetical fancy. The nearest parallel in style is to be found in some of the author's French Balades.

2245. *Whom nedeth help*, 'He to whom help is needful' : cp. Prol. 800, i. 2446.

2253 ff. Cp. vi. 330 ff.

2259 ff. Cp. *Balades*, xx.

2265. *Danger* : see note on i. 2443.

2288. Cp. i. 143 ff.

2312. *a Mile* : cp. iv. 689. It means apparently the time that it takes to go a mile : cp. Chaucer, *Astrol*. i. 16, 'five of these degres maken a milewey and thre mileweie maken an houre.'

2319. *a game*, for 'agame' : cp. Chaucer, *Troilus*, iii. 636, 648. More usually 'in game,' as l. 2871.

2341. *fulofte hath pleigned* : as for example in the *Planctus Naturae* of Alanus de Insulis.

2365. 'And I will consider the matter' : practically equivalent to a refusal of the petition, as in the form 'Le Roy s'avisera.'

2367. *is noght to sieke*, 'is not wanting' : cp. i. 924, ii. 44, &c.

2378. 'In no security, but as men draw the chances of Ragman.'

To understand this it is necessary to refer to compositions such as we find in the Bodleian MSS., Fairfax 16, and Bodley 638, under the name of 'Ragman (or Ragmans) Rolle.' The particular specimen contained in these MSS. begins thus:

'My ladyes and my maistresses echone,  
Lyke hit unto your humble wommanhede,  
Resave in gre of my sympill persone  
This rolle, which withouten any drede  
Kynge Ragman me bad [me] sowe in brede,  
And cristyned yt the merour of your chaunce.  
Drawith a stryng and that shal streight yow lede  
Unto the verry path of your governaunce.'

After two more stanzas about the uncertainty of Fortune and the chances of drawing well or ill, there follows a disconnected series of twenty-two more, each giving a description of the personal appearance and character of a woman, in some cases complimentary and in others very much the reverse, usually in the form of an address to the lady herself, e.g.

'A smal conceyt may ryght enogh suffyse  
Of your beaute discripcion for to make;  
For at on word ther kan no wyght devyse  
Oon that therof hath lasse, I undertake, &c.

Apparently these stanzas are to be drawn for and then read out in order as they come, for the game ends with the last,

'And sythen ye be so jocunde and so good,  
And in the rolle last as in wrytyng,  
I rede that this game ende in your hood.'

Evidently the same kind of game might be played by men with a view to their mistresses. It is much the same thing as the 'Chaunces of the Dyse,' where each stanza is connected with a certain throw made with three dice: cp. note on iv. 2792. The name 'Ragman Rolle' seems to be due to the disconnected character of the composition.

2407. *olde grisel*: cp. Chaucer, *To Scogan*, 35: 'grisel' means grey horse.

2415. *upon the fet*, that is, when the time comes for action. The rhyme with 'retret' shows that this is not the plural of 'fet': moreover, that is elsewhere regularly spelt 'feet' by Gower.

2428. *sitle* for 'sit': cp. Introduction, p. cxiv.

2435. *turned into was*: the verb used as a substantive, cp. vi. 923.

2450 ff. The situation here has some resemblance to that in the Prologue of the *Legend of Good Women*, where the author has a vision of the god of Love coming to him in a meadow, as he lies worshipping the daisy, accompanied by queen Alceste, and followed first by the nineteen ladies of the Legend, and then by a vast multitude of other

\* \*

N N



women who had been true in love. The differences, however, are considerable. Here we have Venus and Cupid, the latter armed with a bow and blind (whereas Chaucer gives him two fiery darts and his eyesight), with two companies of lovers, both men and women, marshalled by Youth and Eld as leaders; and the colloquy with the poet has for its result to dismiss him with wounds healed from Love's service, as one who has earned his discharge, while in the case of Chaucer it is a question of imposing penance for transgressions in the past and of enlisting him for the future as the servant of Love. The conception of the god of Love appearing with a company of true lovers in attendance may be regarded as the common property of the poets of the time, and so also was the controversy between the flower and the leaf (l. 2468), which Chaucer introduces as a thing familiar already to his readers. If our author had any particular model before him, it may quite as well have been the description in Froissart's *Paradys d'Amours* (ed. Scheler, i. 29 f.) :

‘ Lors regardai en une lande,  
 Si vi une compagne grande  
 De dames et de damoiselles  
 Friches et jolies et belles,  
 Et grant foison de damoiseaus  
 Jolis et amoureux et beaus.  
 . . . . .  
 “ Dame,” di je, “ puis je sçavoir  
 Qui sont ceuls que puis là veoir ? ”  
 “ Oil,” dit ma dame de pris ;  
 “ Troïllus y est et Paris,  
 Qui furent fil au roi Priant,  
 Et cesti que tu vois riant,  
 C’est Laiscelos tout pour certain,” ’ &c.

and she proceeds to enumerate the rest, including Tristram and Yseult, Percival, Galehaus, Meliador and Gawain, Helen, Hero, Polyxena, and Medea with Jason.

I do not doubt that Gower may have seen the *Legend of Good Women*, but it was not much his practice to borrow from contemporary poets of his own country, however free he might make with the literature of former times or of foreign lands.

2461. *who was who* : cp. vii. 2001.

2468. Cp. Chaucer, *Leg. of G. Women*, 72, 188, &c.

2470. *the newe guise of Beawme*, that is, the new fashions of dress, &c., introduced from Bohemia by the marriage of Richard II in 1382.

2500 f. *which was believed With bele Ysolde*, ‘ who was accepted as a lover by Belle Isolde.’ Apparently ‘ believed ’ is here used in the primary sense of the verb, from which we have ‘ lief.’ For the use of ‘ with ’ cp. l. 2553. We may note here that the spelling ‘ believe ’ is regular in Gower, ‘ ie ’ representing ‘ ē.’

2502. *Galahot*, i.e. Galahalt, called by Mallory 'the haut prince.'

2504 ff. It may be noted that several of the lovers in the company of Youth are impenitent in their former faithlessness, as Jason, Hercules and Theseus, while Medea, Deianira and Ariadne are left to complain by themselves. Troilus has recovered Cressida, if only for a time. It is hard to say why Pyramus failed of Thisbe's company, unless indeed she were unable to pardon his lateness (cp. 2582).

2515 ff. Cp. v. 7213 ff.

2558. *with Ence*: cp. vii. 3359 and l. 2501.

2573 ff. It is likely enough that this idea of Cleopatra's death may have been a reminiscence of the *Legend of Good Women*, 696 ff. Chaucer apparently got it from some such account as that quoted by Vincent of Beauvais from Hugh of Fleury, 'in mausoleum odoribus refertum iuxta suum se collocavit Antonium. Deinde admotis sibi serpentibus morte sopita est.' From this to the idea of a grave full of serpents would not be a difficult step.

2582. *Wo worthe*: cp. l. 1334.

2668. I take 'lay' to mean 'law,' i.e. the arrangement of his company.

2687. Cp. iv. 2314.

2705 ff. An allusion to some such story as we have in the 'Lay d'Aristote' (Méon et Barbazan, iii. p. 96).

2718. The punctuation follows F.

2714 ff. This refers to the well-known story of Virgil and the daughter of the Emperor, who left him suspended in a box from her window.

2718. *Sortes*. It is impossible that this can be for 'Socrates,' with whose name Gower was quite well acquainted. Perhaps it stands for the well-known 'Sortes Sanctorum' (Virgilianae, &c.), personified here as a magician, and even figuring, in company with Virgil and the rest, as an elderly lover.

2799. Cp. i. 143 ff.

2823. *syke*, subj., 'should see.'

2828. *deface*: apparently intransitive, 'suffer defacement': cp. iv. 2844.

2838. *Outwith*, 'outwardly': so 'inwith' often for 'within,' 'inwardly.' Dr. Murray refers me to *Orm.* i. 165, 'utenn wiþþ,' and Hampole, *Prick of Conscience*, 6669, 'outwith.' The best MSS. have a stop after 'Outwith.'

2904. *A Peire of Bedes*: the usual expression for a rosary: cp. *Cant. Tales*, Prol. 158 f.,

'Of smal coral aboute hire arm she bar  
A peire of bedes gauded al with grene.'

2926 f. That is the *Speculum Hominis* and the *Vox Clamantis*.

2931. *pernable*. The best MSS. have this, and it is obviously suitable to the sense: 'Do not pursue when the game cannot be caught.' From 'prendre' Gower uses 'pernonis,' 'pernetz,' &c., in the *Mirour*.



2938. At this point begins a new hand in F, and for the rest of this leaf (f. 184) the text is written over an erasure (ll. 2938-2966). A note is written opposite l. 2938 for the guidance of the scribe, 'now haue &c.' It may be noted that l. 2940 has a coloured initial A as for the beginning of a paragraph, and this apparently belongs to the original writing, whereas in the first recension MSS. the paragraph begins at l. 2941. The next leaf (f. 185) is a substituted one, and the text is written still in the same hand.

The orthography of the new hand, in which ll. 2938-3146 are written, differs in some respects from the standard spelling which we have in the rest of the manuscript. The chief points of difference are as follows:

(1) *-id* (*-yd*) termination almost always in the past participle, as *enclosid*, *turnyd*, *bewhapid*, *blessid* (but *sterred*), *ip* frequently in the 3rd pers. sing. of verbs, *belongiþ*, *seruiþ*, *causiþ* (but *sechep*, *suieþ*), and *-in* (*-yn*) in 3rd pers. pl., as *takyn*, *sechin*, *hierin*, *schuldyn* (also *to lokyn*). (2) *-is* (*-ys*) in the genit. sing. and in the plural of substantives, as *londis*, *mannys*, *bedis*, *lawis*, *wordis* (but *þinges*, *myghtes*). (3) *-ir* (*-yr*) termination, as *aftir*, *ouyr*, *wondir* (but *siker*). (4) *y* for *i* (*I*) in many cases, especially as the pronoun of the first person (once *I*), also *ys* (sometimes), *hym*, *wiþynne*. (5) *gh* for *k* in such words as *sigh*, *sighte*, *myghte*, *knyghthode*. (6) *ou* for *o* in *nought*, *brought*, *poughte*, &c. (7) consonants doubled in *vpþon* and vowels in *maad* (also *mad*), *brook*, *goon*. (8) separation of words, as *in to*, *un to*, *hym self*, *þer fore*, *þer vpon*, *wher of*, *wiþ outen*.

It may be observed that something of the same tendency is observable at this point in the Stafford MS., but the differences appear in a much less marked manner, and chiefly in the terminations *-id*, *-ip*, *-is*, *-ir*. S does not give *y* for *I*, *ys* for *is*, nor *myghte*, *sigh*, *nought*, *oughte*, *vpþon*, *þer fore*, &c.

2974 (margin). *orat pro statu regni*. This marks exactly the stage reached in the second of the three versions which we have of Gower's account of his own works (p. 480,) 'vbi pro statu regni compositor deuocius exorat.' The first completely excuses and the third utterly condemns the king, but the second makes no mention of him either

---

2955 \*. *his testament of love*. There is no reason to suppose that this is a reference to any particular work which Gower may have known that Chaucer had in hand. It may be a general suggestion that Chaucer should before his death compose some further work on love, which should serve as his last testimony (or last will and testament) on the subject, as the shrift of the present poem was our author's leave-taking. To assume that the poem referred to must be the *Legend of Good Women*, and to argue from this that the *Confessio Amantis* was written before the *Legend* was given to the public, would be very rash. It is not likely that Usk's *Testament of Love* was known to Gower when he wrote this.

for praise or blame, and that is the line taken in this form of the epilogue.

3012. *maintenue*, that is, 'maintenance' of quarrels by the lords on behalf of their followers: cp. *Mirour*, 23732 ff., where the same subject is dealt with.

3081. *beth*: see Introd. p. cxiv: but it is the reading of F only.

3114. *curiosite*, 'artful workmanship': cp. Chaucer, *Complainte of Venus*, 81.

3147. Here, at the beginning of f. 186, the hand in F changes again and the rest of the manuscript, including the *Traité*, the Latin poems and the author's account of his books, is written in the hand which we have in the first leaf of the Prologue.

EXPLICIT, 5f. The following copies of the first recension contain these last two lines, XERB<sub>2</sub>Cath. Of the rest MH<sub>2</sub>YGODAr.Ash. are imperfect at the end, N<sub>2</sub> omits the Explicit altogether, and I have no note as regards this point about Ad<sub>2</sub>P<sub>1</sub>Q. Of the seven which I note as having the 'Explicit' in four lines only, three are of the revised and four of the unrevised group. All copies of the second and third recensions have the last two lines, except of course those that are imperfect here.

QUAM CINKERE FRETA, &c. The 'philosopher' who was the author of this epistle is no doubt responsible also for the lines 'Eneidos, Bucolis,' &c. (printed in the Roxb. ed. of the *Vox Clamantis*, p. 427), in which our author is compared to Virgil, the chief difference being that whereas Virgil had achieved fame in one language only, Gower had distinguished himself in three. The writer in that case also is 'quidam philosophus' (not 'quidam Philippus,' as he is called in the printed

2991\*. This quality of mercy, for which Richard is especially praised, seems to have been precisely the point in which he was afterwards most found wanting by our author, so that he finally earns the title of 'crudelissimus rex.' Matters had not gone so far as this when the second form of epilogue was substituted, in which these praises were simply omitted. Gower was then (in the fourteenth year of the reign) in a state of suspended judgement, expressed by the 'orat pro statu regni' of 2974 (margin). The subsequent events, and especially the treatment of the duke of Gloucester and his friends, finally decided his opinions and his allegiance, as we may see in the *Cronica Tripertita*.

3054\* ff. See Prol. 83\* ff.

3102\*. *no contretaille*, 'no retribution' afterwards: cp. *Traité*, vn. 3, 'De son mesfait porta le contretaille.'

3104\*. That is, it tends rather to set us free from evil consequences than to bring them upon us.

copy), and I suspect that he was the 'philosophical Strode' who is coupled with Gower in the dedication of *Troilus*.

3. 'tibi' belongs to the next line, 'siue satirus Poeta' being taken together.

QUIA VNUSQUISQUE, &c. The form here given is found in no manuscript of the *Confessio Amantis* except F and H<sub>2</sub> (copied from F), though some other third recension copies, as W and K, may probably have contained it. We have it, however, also in two manuscripts of the *Vox Clamantis*, the All Souls copy and that in the Hunterian Library at Glasgow.

It should be noted that whereas the first recension manuscripts regularly contain the Latin account of the author's three books in immediate connexion with the *Confessio Amantis*, in the second recension it is made to follow the *Traité*, and SΔ, which do not contain the *Traité*, omit this also, while in F it comes later still, following the Latin *Carmen de multiplici viciorum pestilencia*. Thus the form which we have in F must be regarded as later than the accompanying text of the *Confessio Amantis*, from which it is separated in the MS. both by position and handwriting, and the words 'ab alto corruens in foueam quam fecit finaliter proiectus est' seem to indicate that it was written after the deposition of Richard II.

11 f. 'Speculum hominis' in all copies of the first recension. 'Speculum meditantis' over an erasure in the Glasgow MS. of the *Vox Clamantis*.

25 ff. Note the omission here (of nine words which are necessary to the sense) in every first recension copy except J. Similarly below all except J have 'finem' for 'sentencie,' obviously from a mistaken reading of a contraction ('fiē'). These must be original errors, only removed by later revision, the first no doubt due to dropping a line.

## IN PRAISE OF PEACE.

The text of this poem is taken from the manuscript at Trentham Hall belonging to the Duke of Sutherland, which contains also the *Cinkante Balades*. Of this book a full description has been given in the Introduction to Gower's French Works, pp. lxxix ff. The present poem is the first piece in the book (ff. 5-10 v<sup>o</sup>), and is written in the same hand as the *Balades* and *Traité*, a hand which resembles that which appears in ff. 184, 185 of the Fairfax MS., though I should hesitate to say positively that it is the same. Evidently, however, the manuscript is contemporary with the author, and it gives us an excellent text of the poem. The date of its composition is doubtless the first year of king Henry IV, for the manuscript which contains it ends with some Latin lines (added in a different hand), in which the author

speaks of himself as having become blind in the first year of king Henry IV and having entirely ceased to write in consequence of this.

As a composition it is not without some merit. The style is dignified, and the author handles his verse in a craftsmanlike manner, combining a straightforward simplicity of language with a smooth flow of metre and a well-balanced stanza, the verse being preserved from monotony by variety of pause and caesura. Some stanzas are really impressive, as those which begin with ll. 99, 127, 148. The divisions of the poem, indicated in the MS. by larger coloured initials, have hitherto escaped the notice of editors.

The poem was printed first in the collected edition of *Chaucer's Works*, 1532, commonly called Thynne's edition (ff. 375 v<sup>o</sup>-378), and reprinted from this in the succeeding folio editions of Chaucer (e.g. 1561, f. 330 v<sup>o</sup>, 1598, f. 330 v<sup>o</sup>, 1602, f. 314). There was no attempt made in any of these to ascribe its authorship to Chaucer, Gower's name being always given as the author. It has been published also by J. Wright in his *Political Poems and Songs* (Rolls' Series), the text being taken from the Trentham MS., and it has been included by Prof. Skeat in his interesting collection of poems which have been printed with Chaucer's works (*Chaucerian and other Pieces*, pp. 205-216).

Thynne followed a manuscript which gave a fair text, but one much inferior to that of the Trentham copy, both in material correctness and in spelling, e. g.

'Kyng Salomon whiche had at his askyng  
Of god | what thyng him was leuest craue  
He chase wysedom vnto gouernyng  
Of goddes folke | the whiche he wolde saue  
And as he chase it fyl him for to haue  
For through his wytte while y his reigne last  
He gate him peace and rest in to his last'

All the material variations of Thynne are given in the critical notes, but not his differences of spelling. Wright's text is not to be trusted as a reproduction of the Trentham MS. He made several serious mistakes in copying from or collating it, and he has a good many trifling inaccuracies of spelling. The following are his worst errors:

l. 3 *om.* this      16 the *for* thi      71 To stere peace (*following Thynne*)      108 *om.* doth      tofalle *for* to falle      136 than *for* that  
173 But aftirwards      202 *om.* worthi      211 any *for* a      246 [good]  
*seeming to imply that it is not in the MS.*      263 Which helples  
278 reserved *for* deserved      289 man *for* king      292 [up]      306  
begete *for* be gete      356 Resteined *for* Resceived      363 deleated  
*for* debated      382 sese *for* see. In addition to these rather gross  
blunders, he has about a hundred smaller deviations from the manu-  
script which he professes to follow, as, for example, 7 *for* to *for*  
forto (*and so afterwards*)      16 him self *for* himself (*and so afterwards*)

19 But      27 request *for* requeste      39 might *for* myht      56 shal  
*for* schal      83 lefte *for* left      84 not *for* noght      90 charitie *for*  
charite      98 Both *for* Bothe      102 gone *for* goon      nygth *for*  
nyght      110 dothe      112 I      120 Crists      155 fulfilled      172  
wille      194 destrued      219 made      254 Ffirst      chirche      her silf  
260 sick      280 life      287 made an end      319 found      355 Which  
382 meschiefe      and a good many more.      He also omits in a very  
misleading manner the last lines of the rubric which follows the poem,  
‘Et nunc sequitur epistola’ &c., as well as the ‘epistle’ itself, ‘Rex celi  
deus’; and he makes it appear that the lines ‘Henrici quarti’ &c.  
follow at once, whereas they are at the end of the MS. and in  
a different hand.

I think it worth while to specify these instances because Wright's edition has been accepted by Prof. Skeat as an accurate reproduction of a manuscript which is not generally accessible, and if no notice were taken here of the readings given by Wright, it would still remain in doubt whether he or I represented the text more correctly. Especially in the cases where Wright has bracketed a word as not occurring in the manuscript, it might be supposed that his positive testimony was to be preferred.

Prof. Skeat has based his text on Thynne, making such alterations of spelling as seemed to him suitable, and giving the variants of Wright's edition as those of the Trentham MS. Misled by Wright, he has accepted in his text the readings ‘reserved’ in l. 278, and ‘cese’ in l. 382.

The text given by the Trentham MS. is apparently quite free from material error, except as regards the word erased in l. 71, and the points of spelling which require correction are very few in number. The orthography is not quite in accordance with the standard spelling of the Fairfax and Stafford MSS., and in some respects resembles that of the third hand of F, on which we have commented in the note on *Confessio Amantis*, viii. 2938. Here however there is only a slight tendency to use *i* for *e* in weak terminations. We have *distourbid* 153, *undefendid*: *amendid* 223f., *handlid* 321, *soeffrin* 222, *folwip* 23, *goddis* 32, 84, *mannys* 237, but elsewhere almost always the usual forms, as *affermed*, *cared*, *gouerned*, *aken*, *ledep*, *londes*, *mannes*. On the other hand the *-ir* termination is used almost regularly, as *vndir*, *wondir*, *astir*, *modir* (but *vnder* 286), and there is a tendency also to substitute *i* for *e* in other places also, as *first*, *chirche* (also *ferst*, *cherche*), *wirche*, *dide* (348), *proprite*, but *here* for *hire* 108, 329, cp. 254. For *I* (pers. pronoun) we have regularly *y*; *gh* usually for *h* in such words as *right*, *myghti*, *knyght*, *light*, *highe*, *stigh*, but also *riht*, *rihtwisnesse*, *knyht*; *vppon* for *upon*, *schulde* but also *scholde*. In addition to these points we may note the dropping of *-e* several times in *euer*, *neuer*, which hardly ever occurs in the Fairfax MS., and also in *heuen* 79, but we have also *euere*, *neuere*, *heuene*. The *-e* of the weak preterite form is dropped before a vowel in *myht* 39, *behight* 41,

*had* 42, *mad* 103, 345: -e is inserted in some imperatives, as *Leie* 122, *sette* 124, *Lete* 129, *putte* 130, *penke* 162, *Beholde* 276 (but *let* 158, *Kep* 367, 384, *draugh* 384). As regards the use of *þ* and *ȝ* the Trentham MS. agrees with F.

There is no title in the manuscript, and Prof. Skeat calls the poem 'The Praise of Peace,' a title suggested by Mr. E. W. B. Nicholson. I have adopted a modification of this, 'To King Henry the Fourth in Praise of Peace,' expressing also the substance of that given by Thynne.

8 ff. The threefold claim of Henry IV is given in this stanza, as in Chaucer's well-known Envoy, but the 'conquest' is here represented as a divine sanction.

50. *a place*, 'into place': cp. *Conf. Amantis*, v. 735, 'Hou suche goddes come aplace.'

53. *in manere*, 'in due measure': cp. *Conf. Amantis*, vii. 2132, 4344.

55. *what aftirward betide*, 'whatever may happen afterwards.'

71. The first word of the line is erased in the manuscript, only the initial S being left, with a space for five or six letters after it. The word which is suggested in the text is perhaps as likely as any other: for the form of it cp. 'Maintene,' l. 385. Thynne's reading, 'To sterc peace,' looks like a lame attempt on the part of a copyist to fill the gap.

78 ff. *Conf. Amantis*, iii. 2265 ff.

89. I write regularly 'evere' 'nevere' in accordance with Gower's practice: so 126, 127, 148, 241, 301, 350, 365.

90. *alle charite*. The MS. has 'al charite,' but the metre and the grammatical usage both require 'alle,' as in l. 293 and elsewhere.

94. *wisemenne*s: cp. 'wisemen,' *Conf. Amantis*, vii. 1792.

106 ff. Cp. *Conf. Amantis*, iii. 2273 ff.

113. *Conf. Amantis*, iii. 2294 f.

115. Cp. *Conf. Amantis*, Prol. 444.

121. 'Whose faith thou hast partly to guide.'

122. I correct the imperative form 'Leie,' and also 'sette' 124, 'Lete' 129, 'putte' 130, 'thenke' 162, 'Beholde' 276, as contrary to Gower's practice and in several cases disturbing the metre.

150. Strictly speaking, we ought to have the subjunctive, 'undirstode,' but the rhyme will not allow.

155. So Prol. 88 f.,

'The hyhe god him hath proclaimed  
Ful of knythhode and alle grace.'

157 f. 'Peace with honour' was a favourite thought of Gower's, 'pax et honor' in the *Vox Clamantis*, vii. 1415.

174. 'on earth peace, goodwill towards men.'

177 ff. 'Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you.'

204. *waited*, 'attended to.'

235. *devised*, 'divided': cp. *Conf. Amantis*, ii. 3264.



236 ff. 'nevertheless the law stands so reasonably established by man's wit, that they can stand firm without that' (i.e. without the help of the Church).

266. Cp. Prol. 795, 'The comun ryht hath no felawe,' that is, none to take its part.

278 f. *deserved To him*. The reading is right. It means 'earned by service rendered to him': cp. *Conf. Amantis*, iv. 3577, 'Thogh I no deth to the deserve.'

281 ff. For the nine worthies see Caxton's Preface to Mallory's *Morte d'Arthur*.

295 f. The question of winning a 'chase' at tennis is not one which is decided at once by the stroke that is made, but depends on later developments.

330 f. Cp. *Conf. Amantis*, vii. 3161\*.

337 ff. *Conf. Amantis*, ii. 3187 ff.

345. *at al*, 'altogether.'

354. *the lieve of lothe*, 'they who were now loved but had before been hated' (by God).

356. I read 'weren' for the metre. However the case may be with Chaucer, there is no instance elsewhere in Gower of elision prevented by caesura. The cases that have been quoted are all founded on misreadings.

365 f. Cp. *Conf. Amantis*, viii. 2988\*.

379. *of pes*, 'with regard to peace.'

382. *see the werre*, that is, 'look to the war': cp. ll. 137, 144, 281 ff. The reading 'sese' was invented by Wright.

REX CELI DEUS, &c. This piece is to a great extent an adaptation of the original version of *Vox Clamantis*, vi. cap. 18, as it stands in the Digby MS. The first eight lines are identically the same. Then follows in the *Vox Clamantis*,

'Ipse meum iuuenem conseruet supplico Regem,' &c.

Of the remainder, as we have it here, ll. 25 f., 31-33, 36-39, 41 f., 45-48 correspond with slight variations to lines in the *Vox Clamantis* version, but the arrangement of them is different.

10. *Te que tuum regnum*, 'Thee and thy kingdom,' a quite common position of 'que' in Gower's Latin. So below, ll. 49, 50, 53, and often elsewhere.

35. So also *Conf. Amantis*, vii, after l. 1984.

# GLOSSARY

## AND

### INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

THE general resemblance between Gower and Chaucer in the matter of language makes a comparison of their English vocabularies almost a matter of course. Chaucer's word-list is naturally much more extensive than Gower's, not only on account of the superior genius of the writer, but also because of the greater extent and variety of his work, Gower's English work being less than half of Chaucer's in amount, and consisting of verse only, while nearly a fourth part of Chaucer's is prose. We find, however, that Gower has more than six hundred words which are not used by Chaucer. Most of these are comparatively new formations from French or Latin, but there is also among them a fair sprinkling of old-established English words, some of which no doubt were falling into disuse. Such words are, for example *adryh*, *aghte*, *anele*, *arecche*, *areche*, *arere v.*, *beȝete*, *bysne*, *eldemoder*, *enderday*, *ferke*, *forȝite*, *forlie*, *forworȝe*, *frede*, *ȝeme*, *gladschipe*, *goodschipe*, *grede* (*gradde*, *griȝ*), *heveneriche*, *kingesriche*, *lere* (= loss), *lich* (= corpse), *metrede*, *miele*, *mon* (*g*, *mull*, *orf*), *orped*, *rowe v.* (= dawn), *sawht*, *skiere*, *spire v.*, *spousebreche*, *ȝarnes*, *tome s.*, *tote*, *tyh* (*pret*), *tyt adv.*, *wow*, *yhte*.

Of the rest the following (among others) are words for which no authority earlier than Gower is cited in the *New English Dictionary* (A—I): those for which Gower is the sole authority are printed in italics.

*abeche*, *ablaste*, *abord*, *abroche adv.*, *accidence*, *agrope*, *altemetrie*, *apostaswed*, *apparantie*, *approbacion*, *artificier*, *aspirement*, *assignement*, *assobre*, *assote v.*, *astraided*, *attempte v.*, *athited*, *avant adv.*, *avantance*, *babe*, *baldemoine*, *balke v.*, *baske*, *bass adj.* ('base'), *bedawe*, *bederke*, *befole* ('befool'), *belwinge*, *bethrowe*, *bewympled*, *bienvenue*, *bombard*, *brothell*, *brygantaille*, *calculacion*, *caliphe*, *carte* (= writing), *chacable*, *chace* (at tennis), *chance v.*, *chevance*, *circumference*, *client*, *couse*, *cokard*, *cokerie* ('cooking'), *compense*, *conclave*, *concordable*, *congelacion*, *congruite*, *contempt*, *contourbe*, *courbe s. and adj.*, *decas*, *deficacion*, *delaïement*, *delate* (= dilate), *depos s.*, *desclos adj.*, *desclose v.*, *desobeie*, *desobeissance*, *dispers*, *distillacion*, *doubtif*, *drunkeschipe*, *duistre*, *effeminat adj.*, *eloquent*, *enbrouderie* ('embroidery'), *enclin*, *encluyed*, *encourtined*, *enfile*, *enheritance*, *ensamplerie*, *entendable*, *entendence*, *entendant*, *epitaphe*, *esmaie*, *espeir*, *espleit* ('exploit'), *exalacion*, *excessif*, *excitacioun*, *excusment*, *expectant*, *faie adj.*, *fieversous*, *fixacioun*, *flacke*, *folhaste*, *folhastif*, *foreacche*, *forȝe s.*, *forstorned*, *forsuete*, *forthre* (= furtherer), *froise*, *gaignage*, *gamme*, *genitals*, *godward*, *gule*, *hepe* (= hook), *heraldie*, *hovedance*, *injustice*, *interruption*, *intersticion*, *intronize*.

Of these nearly half are used in the English of the present day.



For the remainder of the alphabet I content myself with calling attention to the following, without venturing on any statement about their earlier use :

justificacion, liberal, liberalite, lien (= bond), lugge, mathematique, matrone, mecanique, mecherie, menable, mineral, moevement, multitude, oblivion, obstinacie, occupacion, original, passible, perjurie, philliberd (= filbert), piercles, pilage, pleintif *adj.*, pointure, porte (= porthole), preparacion, presage, preserve, proclame, prophetesse, providence, purefie, raile *s.*, recepcion, recreacion, relacion, renounce, reptil, resemblance, restauratif, revelen, riff (= reef of a sail), sale, salvage, scharnebud, scisme, sculpture, seintefie, solucion, specifie, sprantlen, spume. stacion, studious, substitucion, supplante, supporte, temprure, tenetz (= tennis), terremote, tonsure, transpose, trompette.

In matters of vocabulary my obligations are first and principally to the *New English Dictionary*, then to Prof. Skeat's *Chaucer Glossary*, to Stratmann's *Middle Engl. Dictionary* (ed. Bradley), and to Halliwell's *Dictionary of Archaisms*. With reference especially to Gower I may mention the dissertation by G. Tietze (Breslau, 1889).

The following Glossary is meant to include all the words used in Gower's English Works, with their various forms of spelling and (where necessary) of inflexion, accompanied with such references as are required for verification of the forms given and for illustration of the different uses and meanings of the words. As a rule, when a word occurs more than once, at least two references are given, but this statement does not apply to inflexional forms. If a word presents any difficulty or is used in a variety of meanings, the number of references is proportionally increased. A complete set of references is given for proper names.

The *Confessio Amantis* is referred to by P., i, ii, iii, &c., P. standing for the Prologue, and the Roman numerals for the successive books. PP. stands for the poem *In Praise of Peace*. Word-forms which are not found in the Fairfax MS., or only in the latter part of it, which is written by a different hand, are sometimes enclosed in parentheses. These are also used occasionally to indicate variation of spelling: thus dissencoun (-on) means that the word is spelt either with '-oun' or '-on' termination, wher(e) indicates that 'wher' and 'where' are alternative forms. In all cases where 'y' is used to represent '3,' that fact is indicated by '(3)' placed after the word when it occurs in its place, as beyete(3).

The grammatical abbreviations are, *s.* substantive, *a.* adjective, *v.* verb, *v. a.* verb active, *v. n.* verb neuter, *v. a. n.* verb active and neuter, *3 s. pres.* 3rd person singular present tense, *pret.* past tense, *pp.* past participle, *def.* definite form of adjective, &c.

In many cases an explanation is given of the meaning of words for the convenience of readers, but no discussion as to their meaning or origin is admitted in the Glossary.

### A.

*a, interj.* iv. 3622, *see* ha.

*a, an, indef. art.* P. 18, 350, (=one) ii. 1169, 1261.

*a* (= Fr. à), *in a dieu, a fin, see* adieu, afyn.

*a, in a day, a doun, a ferr, a game, a goddeshalf, a morwe, a nyht, a place, a swoune, see* dai, doun, ferr, &c.

Aaron, P. 437, ii. 3047.

abaisht, abayssht, *pp.* iv. 1330, vi. 2329.

abak, *adv.* iii. 481, vii. 4363, back.

abandone, abandoune, *v. a.* P. 766, ii. 1596, 2772, v. 5378, viii. 1834, let go, give up, devote.

abate, *v. a.* ii. 3171, vi. 2354, vii. 1639; *v. n. tabate*, ii. 809.

Abbategnyh, vii. 1458.

abbesse, *s.* viii. 1849.

abbot, *s.* ii. 3056.

abece, vii. 158, a, b, c.

abeche, *v. a.* vi. 709, feed.

abedde, *adv.* P. 602, i. 1781, 2599.

abegge, *v. a.* iii. 1828, v. 7522, pay for: *cp.* aby.

abele, *see* aby.

Abel, viii. 61, 72.

abesse, *v. a.* i. 2063, abase.

abominable, *a.* ii. 3107, vii. 3337.

abide, abyde(n), *v. n.* i. 859, 1535, 1599, 2909, 3201, ii. 1501, PP. 285, wait, remain; *v. a.* ii. 2594, 2626, iii. 1616, viii. 900, wait for, endure: *3 s. pres.* abit, abitt, iii. 201, 1658, *pret.* abod, i. 151,

- imperf.* abyd, iv. 1777, *pp.* abide, vii. 2860.
- abie, *see* abyse.
- ablaate, *v. a. pret.* v. 3712, blew upon.
- able, *a. ii.* 98, 3258, iv. 267, 2561.
- Abner, ii. 3087.
- abord, *adv.* ii. 1138, alongside (of a ship).
- abouté, *adv.* P. 367, i. 403, ii. 1227.
- abouten, i. 2529, aboutes, vii. 2280, viii. 2460, round, round about; come about, bringe a., i. 2629, ii. 1531, 2282, iv. 61, 259; *prep.* iv. 1356.
- above, *adv.* P. 891, i. 467, 1610, 1860, 2491, iv. 1595, aloft, at advantage, before this; hier above, i. 1377; from above, i. 3278; *prep.* i. 810, aboven, P. 971, i. 2833; *as subst.* iv. 914, v. 2542, 7293, vi. 221, advantage.
- abregge, *v. a.* vii. 1990, cut short.
- abreid, *s. iv.* 588, start.
- abreide, *v. a.* vii. 2882, upbraid.
- abreide, *v. n. pret.* i. 155, 2851, ii. 3241, started.
- abroche, *adv.* v. 1677, abroach.
- abrod, *adv.* iv. 3102, v. 6891, abroad.
- absence, *s. ii.* 1321, 1647.
- absent, *a. iv.* 1797, vii. 5181.
- Absolon, ii. 3093, viii. 217.
- absolucoun (-on), *s. ii.* 1317, iii. 596, viii. 2892.
- abstinence, *s. P.* 327, vi. 634.
- abydinge, *s. vii.* 502.
- abye, able, *v. a. ii.* 3022, iii. 221, v. 5541, abele, iii. 306, 3 s. *pres.* abyth, v. 5516, abeith, vi. 1378, *pret.* aboghte, ii. 2153, viii. 217, *pp.* aboght, i. 381, 2614; pay for: *cp.* abegge.
- acale, *adv.* viii. 638, 847, acold.
- accept, *a. v.* 6394, acceptable.
- acceptable, *a. vii.* 4727, viii. 3035\*.
- accidence, *s. ii.* 3210, v. 763, *see notes*.
- accidie, *s. iv.* 539, sloth.
- accoun, *s. ii.* 388.
- acompte, accord, *see* acompte, acord.
- accuse, *v. a. P.* 487, iii. 2377.
- accusement, *s. ii.* 1703.
- Achab, vii. 2529 ff., *genit.* Achabbes, vii. 2552.
- Achaie, v. 1907.
- Achastus, iii. 2555.
- achates, vii. 1362, agate.
- Achelona, iv. 2068.
- Acheron, v. 1110.
- Achias, vii. 4515 ff.
- achieve, *v. a. P.* 92, i. 103, 700, 1257, ii. 1311, v. 1276, finish, attain to; to ben-  
achieved (=to succeed), ii. 2360, *cp.* ii. 3091; *v. n.* ii. 372, v. 2043, succeed.
- Achilles, ii. 2454, iii. 2642 ff., iv. 1694, 1800, 1970 ff., 2161, v. 2963 ff., 7591, viii. 2545, 2569, *acc.* Achillem, vii. 3583.
- Achilo, iii. 2566.
- Achitofell, ii. 3090.
- Acis, ii. 131 ff.
- acold, *adv.* iv. 247, vi. 1007.
- acompte, *s. ii.* 1715, iv. 292, 1653, *ac-*  
*oompte*, iv. 1062, 2243.
- acompte, *v. a.* iii. 1104, 2281, v. 2014; *v. n.* vii. 2226, *tacompte*, i. 650.
- acord, *s. P.* 1034, i. 849, 1789, *acord*, P. 85, iv. 2069; in *acord*, i. 1115; of thin *acord*, &c., i. 849, ii. 2536; in on *acord*, i. 2250.
- acordable, *a. v.* 2930, in accord.
- acordant, *a. i.* 455, 2436, iv. 1244; *adv.* iv. 498, v. 142, viii. 2371.
- acorde, *v. n. P.* 358, 878, i. 388, ii. 105; thei ben *acorded*, ii. 630, thus *acord-*  
*ed* (*pp. absol.*), i. 826; *refl.* i. 3386, vii. 3241; 2 s. *pret.* *acordest*, iii. 2058, *pres.*  
*part.* *acordende*, ii. 1612, iii. 603; agree.
- acordement, *s. vii.* 168.
- acquite, *see* aquite.
- acroche, *v. a.* iii. 1047, v. 5624, take hold of, gain.
- acte, *s. P.* 405.
- Acteon, i. 336 ff.
- Acteos, vii. 855.
- adaies, *adv.* iii. 828, at this time; now  
adaies, nou adayas, &c., P. 171, iv. 1228, *cp.* 'on daies nou,' iv. 1731: *see*  
*also* aday.
- Adam, i. 3304, iv. 2224, v. 1707 ff., 6964, vi. 5, viii. 26 ff.
- adamant, *s. vii.* 833, 1397.
- aday, *adv.* v. 2463, now (nou) aday, i. 655, iv. 2616, viii. 151, *cp.* a day, vii. 438, now a day, ii. 444: *cp.* adayas.
- addre, *see* oddre.
- adieu, viii. 2940, a dieu, ii. 2739, v. 3662.
- adoted, *pp.* vi. 79, infatuated.
- adoun, *adv.* i. 3280, a doun, iv. 2710, v. 385.
- adrad, *a. i.* 157, 2748, ii. 479, 3489.
- adresce, *v. a. i.* 1722, 2725, v. 1480, (*refl.*) v. 5021, *adresse*, iii. 2336, arrange, prepare.
- Adriagne, Adriane, v. 5332 ff., viii. 2556.
- Adrian (1), P. 745.
- Adrian (2), v. 4938 ff., *genit.* Adrianes, v. 5155.

**adryh**, *adv.* iv. 1330, aside.  
**adverse**, *a.* iv. 3403.  
**adverse**, *v. a.* ii. 1792, oppose.  
**adversite**, *s. v.* 2232, vii. 3340\*.  
**advocat**, *s.* vii. 2067.  
**aeremance**, *s.* vi. 1301, divination by air.  
**afaite**, *see* affaite.  
**afer**, *adv.* v. 318, *see* ferr.  
**afered**, *a. i.* 2124, iv. 600, a feerd, v. 7150\*.  
**affaite**, *v. a.* ii. 464, 2851, iv. 3337, afaite, iv. 1157, v. 6852, *pp.* affaited, i. 1259, 1671, afaited, v. 2000: prepare, train.  
**affeccioun** (-on), *s. i.* 2858, vi. 1350, thaffeccioun, P. 366, inclination.  
**afferme**, *v. a.* P. 189, ii. 2928, iv. 3421, v. 783, confirm, establish; *v. n.* v. 857, 2596, declare, affirm.  
**affohe**, *v. a.* v. 2520.  
**affle**, *v. a.* i. 678, iii. 516, iv. 3332, sharpen, prepare.  
**afflyhte**, **afflihte**, **afflihte**, *v. n. pret.* i. 2185, ii. 766, iv. 1438, 1556, was disturbed (with grief, joy or fear), was afflicted; *v. a.* iii. 1422, *pp.* affliht, afflyht, ii. 1518, v. 5438.  
**affraie**, *v. a.*, *pp.* affraied, iii. 57, iv. 3400, viii. 2859, startle, frighten.  
**affray**, *s.* iv. 3068, fright.  
**afire**, *adv.* *see* afyre.  
**afore**, *prep.* iii. 2547, v. 822; *adv.* i. 973, aform, vi. 927.  
**afote**, *adv.* iv. 2095.  
**after**, *prep.* P. 11, 54, 637. i. 809, iv. 1327, v. 1605, (affir, viii. 2979 ff.), after, according to: at after mete, &c., vi. 1181, 1831: after that, after, (= according as) P. 544, 708, ii. 1586, iii. 1074: *adv.* P. 634, i. 999, (affir, viii. 3073), ther after, v. 7030.  
**afteroast**, *s.* iv. 904, late throw (of the dice).  
**afterward**, *adv.* P. 74, i. 757, iv. 865, (affirward, PP. 55).  
**afyn**, *adv.* v. 2349, a fin, iv. 60, finally.  
**afyre**, ii. 149, 2292, v. 1485, afire, i. 1662.  
**Agag**, vii. 3823 ff.  
**Agamenon**, ii. 2452, iii. 1892 ff., 2186, v. 3101, 6435 ff., vii. 2546.  
**agaste**, *v. a. pret.* vii. 3716, *pp.* agast, iii. 420, iv. 2760, terrified.  
**agayn**, **again**, *adv.* v. 3790, 4413, back: *cp.* ayein.  
**age**, *s. i.* 488, 779, 2229, iii. 1237, iv. 604, v. 901, of age, iii. 1943, v. 1259.  
**aghte**, *s.* viii. 747, possession.

**ago**, *adv.* iv. 943, *cp.* agon, **ago**, *pp.* agon, *pp.* P. 875, ii. 1218, 2696, ago, P. 31, iv. 2918, 2960, gone, past.  
**agregge**, *v. n.* v. 7624, grow heavy.  
**agrise**, *v. a.* iii. 2160, *pp.* agrise, P. 598, v. 5908, terrify.  
**agrope**, *v. a.* and *n.* ii. 1356, 2814, v. 2858, examine, discover.  
**agulte**, *v. n.* vii. 3932, do wrong.  
**ai**, *see* ay.  
**air**, *see* air (1).  
**aise**, *see* ese.  
**aisshe**, *s.* viii. 2101, ashes.  
**ake**, *v. n.* PP. 260, ache.  
**akiele**, *v. n.* iv. 2671, grow cool.  
**al**, **all**, **alle**, *a.*, *sing.* al the, al this, al his, &c., P. 95, 104, 135, &c., all his, i. 2291, all the, viii. 784, the Cite all, ii. 3473; alle grace, alle thing, alle untrowthe, alle haste, alle wise, &c., P. 89, 433, i. 301, 747, 925 f., ii. 624, 1259, but al honour, i. 879, al untrowthe, ii. 1684, al Erthe, i. 2825, al Envie, ii. 168; *pl.* al my, al the, all these, &c., iii. 123, iv. 2377, 3165, v. 2685, &c., alle, P. 146, i. 992, 1481, 1930, 2877, alle othre, P. 734, i. 666, al othre, iv. 1532: as subst. al, i. 2247, ii. 704, 1027, *pl.* alle, P. 826, i. 1443, upon alle, P. 125, ii. 117, on all occasions, for al that, iv. 1348, 2278, *cp.* vii. 2677, at al, PP. 345, altogether.  
*adv.* al, P. 13, i. 640, 856, 1068, 1145, ii. 966, &c., all, ii. 608, v. 1935, with a.  
**al lene**, iv. 1344, al one, i. 351, 666, 1526, ii. 2410, &c., (*cp.* alone), al him one, i. 3144, al only, ii. 133, iv. 2083, all though, iv. 269, al be it so, iv. 2393, 2920, al were there, iii. 2557, al nere it, v. 997.  
**Ala Corvi**, vii. 1371.  
**Alaemel**, vii. 1380.  
**alarge**, *adv.* iii. 2139.  
**Albe**, ii. 1855.  
**Albert**, P. 780.  
**Albinus**, i. 2460.  
**Albumazar**, vii. 1239.  
**Alceone**, **Alceoun**, *v.* 2929 ff., 3121 ff., **Alcione**, viii. 2649.  
**Alceste**, vii. 1920 ff., viii. 2640.  
**aloonomie**, *s.* iv. 2459, 2578, alchemy.  
**aldai**, **alday**, *adv.* P. 15, 310, i. 2753, iii. 1178, al dai, ii. 1899.  
**Aldeboran**, vii. 1310.  
**ale**, *s.* iii. 433, 1626.  
**alegge**, *see* allegge.

- Alemaigne**, *s.* P. 804, **Alemaigne**, vii. 751.  
**Alemans**, *pl.* P. 810, **thalemans**, P. 821.  
**Alexandrine**, *a.* vii. 563, of Alexandria.  
**Alfraganus**, vii. 1461.  
**alfulli**, *adv.* ii. 501.  
**algate**, *adv.* P. 646, 894, i. 1296, ii. 2637, **algates**, i. 300, iii. 690, in any case, assuredly.  
**Algoi**, vii. 1329.  
**algorisme**, *s.* vii. 155, 158.  
**Alhaiot**, vii. 1338.  
**alheil**, *interj.* iii. 1261.  
**aliche**, **alyche**, *adv.* P. 932, i. 1298, ii. 3453, iii. 68, iv. 2392, 3330, **alich**, iv. 2253, **alike**, vi. 383.  
**alihte**, *v. n.*, see **alyhte**.  
**Alisandre**, **Alisaundre**, P. 693, ii. 1841, 2415, iii. 1227, 2366, 2440, v. 1454, 1571, 2545, 5535, vi. 2273 ff., vii. 5, 22, &c., 3168\*, 4234 ff., 5384, PP. 36, 44, 281.  
**Alisandre**, vii. 1255, Alexandria.  
**alite**, **alitel**, see **lite**, **litel**.  
**allaie**, *v. a.* vi. 310, vii. 5406, **alleviate**.  
**allas**, *interj.* v. 3910: *cp.* **helas**.  
**Allee**, ii. 722, 1228 ff.  
**allegge**, **allegge**, *v. a.* v. 7326, *pret.* **alleide**, i. 1453, iii. 2155, iv. 1920, vii. 2073; *v. n.* v. 6980. **allege**.  
**alloye**, *adv.*, see **alway**.  
**alliance**, *s.* ii. 1184, vii. 2549, viii. 139.  
**allied**, *a.* viii. 12.  
**allowe**, **alowe**, *v. a.* P. 154, i. 1283, 1590, ii. 539, iii. 1552, iv. 2282, v. 564, **approve**, **accept**.  
**allyhte**, *v. a.* v. 4520, **lighten**.  
**Almageste**, vii. 739, 983, 1460.  
**Almareth**, vii. 1387.  
**Almeene**, ii. 2466.  
**almeene**, *s.* P. 226, 742, i. 2935, ii. 1471, iii. 2233, **alms**, good deed.  
**Almeüs**, iii. 2564.  
**almost**, *adv.* vi. 414.  
**almyhte**, **almihte**, *a.* ii. 906, viii. 1384, (**almighte**, PP. 362).  
**almyhti**, **almyhty**, *a.* P. 585, v. 1737, 5741.  
**alohte**, *adv.* P. 921, i. 885, 2563, iii. 152, vii. 169, on high, aloud.  
**alonde**, *adv.* ii. 2212, v. 3747.  
**alone**, *a. or adv.* i. 839, 1523, (**allone**, PP. 8; **al one**, see **al**).  
**along**, *adv.* iv. 2817, **along on me**, on myself **along**, on myself **along**, &c., iv. 624, 952, 2818, v. 2327, 5881 f., **long on**, v. 2329.  
**alonge**, *v. n.* v. 3282, *pp.* **alonged**, vi. 1840, **desire**.  
**alowd**, **aloud**, *adv.* ii. 843, 1512, v. 3848.  
**Alpetragus**, vii. 1463.  
**Alpheta**, vii. 1401.  
**Alphonse**, i. 3393.  
**alquik**, *a.* viii. 2575, **alive**.  
**ala**, *adv.* P. 565, 1064, **ala faste** (at once), i. 414, ii. 1267, **als so faste**, &c., i. 1041, ii. 132, v. 2288: *cp.* **also**, **as**.  
**also**, *adv.* P. 4, &c., **ek also**, i. 3305, &c., **also wel**, i. 1316: *cp.* **ala**.  
**altetrie**, *s.* vii. 1468.  
**alter**, *s.* v. 4034, **aulter**, v. 4079, (**thalter**, vii. 4707).  
**alther best**, **altherbest**, *adv.* i. 1921, iv. 571, **alther worst**, i. 326.  
**althermest**, *adv.* i. 3102, v. 2897.  
**althertrewest**, *a.* ii. 499.  
**altherworst**, *adv.* vi. 238.  
**althogh**, *conj.* P. 157, &c., **all thogh**, iv. 269.  
**alto**, *adv.* i. 2415.  
**altobroke**, *v. a.*, *pp.* **altobroke**, viii. 624, PP. 221, **break asunder**.  
**altogedre**, *adv.* vii. 2962, *cp.* **togedre**.  
**alway**, **alwey**, **alwei**, *adv.* P. 832, i. 1840, iii. 1459, **allewey**, iv. 2587.  
**alyhte** (1), **alihte**, *v. n. inf.* ii. 423, iii. 182, iv. 3002, *pret.* i. 2227, iii. 2659, *pp.* **alyht**, v. 1782, **come down**, **alight**.  
**alyhte** (2), *v. a.*, *pret.* **alyhte**, v. 1670, *pp.* **alyht**, vii. 4708, **light**, **give light to**; *v. n.* vii. 3769, **be lighted up**.  
**alyve**, *a. or adv.* i. 2164, ii. 645, iv. 2169.  
**am**, **art**, &c., see **be**.  
**Amadas**, vi. 879.  
**Amadriades**, *pl.* v. 6236.  
**amaied**, *pp.* i. 2030, **a-maying**.  
**Amalech**, (1) vii. 3711.  
**Amalech**, (2) vii. 4408, (*for* **Balach**).  
**amased**, *pp.* iv. 579, 697, v. 5296, (**amasid**, viii. 2957).  
**Amasoine**, iv. 2166.  
**amblaunt**, (*pres. p.*) *a.* ii. 1506, **amblende**, iv. 1309, **ambling**.  
**amende**, *s.* v. 7287, *pl.* **amendes**, v. 688, vii. 1585.  
**amende**, *v. a.* P. 183, 254, *imperat.* **a-mende thee**, i. 2934, **god thamende**, i. 568, *pp.* **amended**, i. 1003, viii. 2608, (**amendid**, viii. 3010); *v. n.* i. 2431, 3350, viii. 1666.  
**amendement**, *s.* P. 83, iii. 2514, iv. 1768.  
**Ametus**, vii. 1917, viii. 2641.

- amiddes**, *prep. or adv.*, the wode a-  
 middes, &c., i. 112, 2819, **amiddes in**,  
 iii. 2074, iv. 1349, **amiddes of**, iv. 2871,  
**amidde**, iv. 1673, 3498, viii. 1038,  
**amidd**, *prep.* i. 361.  
**amirall**, s. ii. 1090.  
**amis**, **amys**, *adv.* P. 48, i. 1970, iii. 17,  
 vii. 2473.  
**amoeved**, *pp.* iii. 497, iv. 861, moved.  
**Amon** son of Lot), viii. 236.  
**Amon** (king), iv. 1509.  
**Amon** (nation), vii. 3712.  
**Amon** (son of David), viii. 214.  
**among**, *prep.* P. 5, i. 669, **amonges**, P.  
 40, i. 1372, **among**, during: **among**,  
*adv.* iv. 1209, v. 5984, **evere among**, i.  
 2333, ii. 1079, &c., **alwei among**, iii.  
 1459, meanwhile, at times.  
**Amonites**, *see* **Amonyte**.  
**amonte**, **amounte**, *v. n.* i. 3111, iv. 291,  
 1654, v. 1917, 2581, **avail**, mean.  
**Amonyte**, vii. 4507, *pl.* **Amonites**, viii. 242.  
**Amoreie**, vii. 3711.  
**amorous**, **amereus**, *a.* i. 1414, iii. 745,  
 iv. 921, v. 58, **amorous**, v. 1409, vii.  
 791.  
**amorwe**, *adv.* ii. 2657, iv. 3194, **amorwe**  
**day**, v. 2116, *cp.* viii. 820, **a morwe**, ii.  
 781, 890.  
**Amos**, vi. 1922 ff., (Jupiter) **Ammon**.  
**Amphion**, vi. 2160.  
**Amphioras**, iii. 2563.  
**Amphitrion**, ii. 2459 ff.  
**Amphrisos**, v. 4005.  
**amyraude**, s. vii. 1383, **emerald**.  
**an**, *see* **a**.  
**an**, *for* 'on,' v. 496.  
**anabulla**, vii. 1317, (a herb).  
**ancestre**, s. v. 1823, vii. 2884.  
**ancestrie**, s. PP. 12.  
**ancher**, **anker**, ii. 1136, viii. 606, 1805 f.,  
 anchor.  
**Anchises**, iv. 79, v. 1400.  
**and**, P. 2, 12, 155, &c.  
**Andragene**, v. 1398.  
**Andrew**, v. 1907.  
**Androchee**, v. 5233.  
**anele**, *v. a.* vii. 337, **melt**.  
**anemie**, *see* **enemie**.  
**angel**, s. P. 950, ii. 298, vi. 1530, *pl.*  
**anglia**, iii. 2256, **angles**, viii. 7 ff.  
**anger**, s. iii. 77 ff., **angre**, iii. 379, *pl.*  
**angres**, iii. 380.  
**angreliche**, *adv.* iii. 380.  
**angri**, *a.* iii. 30, 378.  
**angringe**, s. vii. 2665.  
**anguishe**, **anguisse**, s. vii. 5081, viii. 1054.  
**animalis**, *Lat. a.* iv. 2542.  
**anker**, *see* **ancher**.  
**annuied**, *pp.* iv. 1346.  
**anon**, *adv.* P. 160, 626, i. 1130, **anon**  
**ryht**, P. 1022, **anon forth**, i. 3353, **anon**  
**as**, i. 471, 1262, iv. 2758.  
**another**, P. 968: *see* **other**.  
**ansuere**, **answere**, *v. n.* i. 290, 1461,  
 1658, 3 s. *pres.* **answerth**, i. 1951, *pp.*  
*pl.* **ansuerde**, i. 3246.  
**ansuere**, **answere**, s. i. 1510, 1823, iii.  
 2407, **ansuer**, viii. 907.  
**Anthenor**, i. 1095, 1124, v. 1835 ff., 7274  
 ff., vii. 1562.  
**Anthonie**, **Antonie**, vii. 4574 ff., (Car-  
 calla).  
**Anthonius**, vii. 4181, **Antoninus**.  
**Anticrist**, v. 1807.  
**Antigonus**, vii. 2121.  
**Antioche**, vii. 1247, viii. 275, 387.  
**Antiochus**, v. 7012, viii. 274 ff., 2004.  
**Antonye**, viii. 2577, **Marcus Antonius**.  
**Anubus**, i. 836 ff.  
**any**, *see* **eny**.  
**anyht**, *adv.* ii. 2857, *cp.* **a nyht**.  
**apart**, *adv.* vi. 2311.  
**ape**, v. 4995 ff., vi. 1450.  
**Apemen**, vii. 1884.  
**aperceive**, *v. a.* i. 960, ii. 983, 2138,  
 perceive.  
**apert**, *a.* iv. 3205, **open**: **in apert**, ii.  
 686, **openly**.  
**Apis**, v. 1560 ff.  
**Apius**, vii. 5131.  
**aplace**, *adv.* i. 1888, v. 735, **a place**, i.  
 2377, iv. 2481, **into place**.  
**apointe**, **appointe**, *v. a.* ii. 791, iv. 273,  
 1692, v. 708, 4115, vi. 1973, *refl.* ii. 3204,  
**to ben apointed**, i. 2160; **fix**, **resolve**,  
**appoint**.  
**Apollo**, &c., *see* **Appollo**.  
**aportenant**, *see* **appourtenant**.  
**apostazied**, *a.* viii. 11, **rebellious**.  
**apostles**, s. *pl.* iii. 2499, v. 1797, *sing.*  
**thapostel**, P. 434, 881.  
**appaie**, **apaie**, *v. a.* i. 3429, ii. 594, 1433,  
 v. 146, *pp.* **appaied**, ii. 1433, **please**,  
**satisfy**.  
**appalle**, *v. n.* iv. 3160, **grow faint**.  
**apparant**, *a.* ii. 1320, 1552, vii. 5278.  
**apparant**, *a.* ii. 1711, **heir apparent**.  
**apparantie**, s. i. 636, **appearance**.  
**apparence**, *see* **thapparence**.  
**appartiene**, *v. n.* vii. 1063.  
**appel**, s. (1) v. 7414, vi. 5, **apple**.



**appel**, *s.* (2), *see* **appell**.  
**appele**, *v. n.* vii. 3171\*, 3305\*, viii. 2700, *appeal*.  
**appeled**, *pp.* iii. 1601, *accused*.  
**appell**, **appel**, *s. ii.* 3418, vii. 5233, *apeel*, vii. 3177\*, *appeal*.  
**appende**, *v. n.* vii. 978, *belong*.  
**appese(n)**, *v. a.* P. 191, i. 1351, iii. 133, vii. 2006.  
**appetit**, *s. iv.* 3013, 3544, v. 257.  
**appiere**, *v. n.* i. 838, 1198, ii. 3337.  
**applied**, *pp.* i. 577, iv. 2607, v. 913, *assigned*.  
**appointe**, *see* **apointe**.  
**Appolinus**, viii. 375 ff.  
**Appollo**, v. 918, 1072, 5845, 7594, vii. 3189, **Apollo**, v. 7111\* ff., **Apollinis** (*genit.*), v. 7109\*.  
**appourtenant**, *a. ii.* 2508, iv. 64, 3131, v. 1496, **appourtienant**, vii. 1019, **aportenant**, v. 4318.  
**apprise**, **aprise**, *s. i.* 81, 293, iii. 2764, iv. 2332, viii. 812, *teaching*.  
**approbacion**, *s. iv.* 2519.  
**appropre**, *v. a.* vii. 430, *pp.* **appropried**, iv. 3223, vii. 499.  
**aproche**, *v. n.* ii. 40, v. 5623; *v. a.* iii. 96, viii. 388, **naproche**, iv. 1135.  
**apropriacioun**, *s. ii.* 2396.  
**Aquarius**, vii. 1187 ff., 1253.  
**aqueint**, *pp.* vi. 265, *quenched*.  
**aqueintance**, *s. i.* 2400, ii. 1178, iv. 85.  
**aqueinte**, *v. refl. and n.* ii. 3506, iv. 2313, *pp.* **aqueinted**, iv. 2137, (**aqweinted**, PP. 328).  
**aquite**, **aquyte**, **acquite**, *v. a.* i. 1594, 2772, iii. 2578, iv. 967, v. 2385, *set free*, *acquit*; i. 1054, *remit*; iv. 195, *satisfy*; iii. 2671, vii. 3030, *requite*; *pp.* **acquit**, iii. 2460, iv. 967, **acquited**, i. 1054.  
**ar**, *adv.* ii. 2141, iv. 1422; *cp.* **er**.  
**Arabe**, *s. iv.* 2627, **Arabic** (*language*).  
**Arachel**, vii. 1457.  
**aral**, **araled**, *see* **arral**, **arraled**.  
**arawhte**, *pret. of arecche* (OE. **areccan**), v. 1826, *explain*.  
**Araxarathen**, iv. 3675.  
**Aroenne**, **Aroennus**, ii. 1332 ff., 1534.  
**arocennicoum**, *s. iv.* 2483.  
**Arohade**, iii. 2317, v. 1007, vii. 3555.  
**Archas**, v. 6283.  
**Ardea**, vii. 4760 ff.  
**areche**, (OE. **arēcan**), *v. a.* i. 3207, ii. 666, v. 387, *pret.* **arauhte**, vi. 457, *attain*, *reach to*: *v. n.* i. 3024, iii. 2247, *reach up*, *extend*.

**arede**, *v. a. n.* P. 601, v. 928, vii. 3703, *pret.* **aradde**, P. 626, i. 2854: *explain*, *give explanation*.  
**arere**, *adv.* iii. 1082, *behind*.  
**arere**, *v. a.* iv. 1938, vi. 437, 1107, *raise up*.  
**areste**, *v. a.* i. 1644, ii. 162, 2745, iii. 609, *delay*, *keep in check*, *arrest*.  
**arewe**, *see* **arowe**.  
**argue**, *v. n.* vii. 1847, 4196.  
**argument**, *s. iv.* 1798, v. 7028, *pl.* **arguments**, vii. 1823.  
**argumenten**, *v. n.* P. 370.  
**Arial**, vii. 1364.  
**Aries**, vii. 980 ff., 1266.  
**arht**, *adv.* i. 2847, ii. 724, iv. 2993.  
**Arion**, P. 1054.  
**arise**, **aryse**, *v. n.* P. 1041, i. 1909, iii. 2503, 3 s. *pres.* **arist**, P. 504, 545, ii. 474, *pret.* **arou**, i. 2957, *pp.* **arist**, ii. 228, **arise**, v. 5907; *v. a.* (?) v. 1745.  
**Aristippus**, **Arisippe**, **Arisippes**, vii. 2231 ff.  
**Aristarchus**, iv. 2640.  
**ariste**, *s. iii.* 1224, iv. 1285, *rising*.  
**aristologie**, *s. vii.* 1413, *birthwort*.  
**Aristotle**, **Aristote**, **Aristotiles**, vi. 99, 2274, 2412, vii. 4 ff., 50 ff., 3333\* ff., 3544, 4257, 5403, viii. 2705.  
**arivaille**, **arryvaille**, *s. ii.* 1032, iv. 94, 1927.  
**arive**, *see* **aryve**.  
**arm**, *s. ii.* 2486, iv. 1141, *pl.* **armes**, P. 607, i. 912, ii. 2481.  
**arme**, *v. a.* v. 3181, *pp.* **armed**, i. 1171, 1998, iv. 1701, v. 3686.  
**Armene**, v. 1397.  
**Armenye**, **Armenie**, iv. 1245, vii. 1251, **Ermenie**, vii. 3218.  
**armes**, *s. pl.* P. 213, i. 1413, 3528, v. 3627 (*feat of arms*), *men of armes*, ii. 2998, iv. 1625.  
**(sal) armoniak**, iv. 2480.  
**armonie**, *s. vii.* 165.  
**arowe**, **arewe**, *adv.* i. 255, ii. 2038, v. 6955.  
**Arpaghes**, vii. 1800 ff.  
**arral**, **array**, **aral**, **aray**, *s. i.* 901, 2512, 2705, iv. 1393, v. 1312, 7488.  
**arraie**, **araie**, *v. a.* i. 1748, 2029, ii. 1836, vi. 641, *array*, *prepare*; *arraied of* (*provided with*), ii. 2556.  
**arrive**, **arryve**, *see* **aryve**.  
**Arrons**, vii. 4598 ff.  
**arryvaille**, *see* **arivaille**.  
**arsmetique**, *s. vii.* 149, *arithmetic*.  
**art**, *s. iv.* 933, 2607.  
**artemage**, *s. vi.* 1957, *magic art*.  
**Artestrathes**, **Artestrates**, viii. 691, 1970.

Arthus, PP. 283.

artificier, s. vii. 1691.

artmagique, s. viii. 2602.

arwe, s. ii. 2236, v. 1266, arrow.

aryse, *see* arise.

aryve, arive, arrayve, arrive, v. a. ii. 717, 1905, bring to land; v. n. iii. 1043, iv. 81, 1917, vii. 3269, come to land, come.

as, P. 50, 60, 233, i. 847, ii. 2205, (=as if) i. 666, 1358, ii. 1047, as it were, i. 1800, as who seith, P. 43, i. 1381 &c., as he which &c., P. 186, 1020, i. 369, as him which, iii. 1276, as of (as regards), P. 492, i. 557, 1969, iii. 1479, as to, P. 199, i. 300, iii. 2283, as forto, P. 31, i. 107, 2379, as tho, ii. 213, iv. 375, as in (=in), i. 1707, 1940, as be (=be), i. 1334, as me thenketh (=me thenketh), iv. 1649, als . . . as, P. 1064: *cp.* als.

aschape, v. a. i. 1552, 2882 (aschape, v. 7033\*), eschape, vi. 1017; v. n. i. 517, ii. 1982, iv. 2107, eschape, vii. 3466.

ascendent, s. vi. 1963.

aschamed, a. i. 979, iv. 1885.

ascrie, v. n. vi. 1690, vii. 3751, raise a cry.

asery, s. v. 7546, vii. 3722.

asende, v. a., *pret.* asente, i. 2138, *pp.*

asent, i. 1493, 1743, assent, i. 3222, sent for.

aside, *adv.* P. 879, i. 1536, 2534, ii. 1426, iv. 2512, asyde, v. 4512, gon aside, vii. 2388 (go wrong).

Asie, vii. 533, 554 ff.

aske, askinge, *see* axe, aringe.

aslepe, *adv.* i. 1180, ii. 825, rocke aslepe, ii. 1081, broght aslepe, iv. 3347.

Asmod, vii. 5335 ff.

aspect, s. i. 3009, vii. 904.

aspidis, s. i. 463.

aspie, s. i. 1172, ii. 1830, iii. 2087, v. 1997, upon aspie, iv. 1473: spy, watch.

aspie, v. a. i. 312, ii. 305, *pp.* aspyd, iv. 1858; v. n. ii. 100, 515, v. 675, *pret.*

aspide, ii. 135.

aspirement, s. vii. 256, breathing.

assaie, v. a. i. 1080, 1758, 3028, iii. 647, 1066; v. n. i. 3430, v. 2680: try, attempt, experience.

assaile, assaille, v. a. i. 1999, iii. 154, 1904, the feld a., ii. 1838, 2620; v. n. P. 727, v. 5526, vi. 1308: attack, attempt.

assay, assai, s. i. 690, 791, ii. 3261, iii. 717, v. 273, 4156, trial, proof; at alle assaies, P. 172, ii. 2447, v. 4883, in every way.

asse, s. i. 2248, iv. 2009, vii. 3251\*.

assemble, v. n. ii. 2621, iv. 1953, engage in battle, iii. 189, associate (together); v. a. ii. 1765, iii. 368, v. 686, 1772, gather together, join.

assent, s. i. 1125, 3380, thassent, ii. 1479, of on assent, i. 1494, of his a., i. 1744, to hire a., i. 2623.

assente, v. n. ii. 2816, iii. 1976, iv. 3488, thel ben assented, ii. 2539, *cp.* viii. 818.

asseure, *see* assure.

assigne, v. a. i. 234, ii. 1337, iv. 271.

assignement, s. v. 7154, vi. 401.

Assire, v. 1541, vii. 4316.

assise, assisee, v. a. P. 66, i. 1468, 3050, ii. 636, iii. 1866, iv. 280, place, appoint, arrange.

assisee, assisee, s. v. 788, 1986, 2878, viii. 778, thassisee, P. 148, order, condition, manner.

assobre, v. n. vi. 291, grow sober; v. a. vi. 460, sober.

assoile, v. a. iii. 2570, viii. 364; v. n. *pret.* assoilede, iii. 2556: absolve, solve (a question).

assote, v. n. i. 508, 781, 2596, ii. 2269, behave foolishly, dote; v. a. iv. 697, v. 6841, vii. 4319, make foolish, besot.

assuage, v. n. i. 1438, iii. 1614; v. a. ii. 3208, vi. 587.

Assub, vii. 334.

assure, assuree, v. a. ii. 902, 2013, 2467, iii. 1773, 2202, iv. 3526, assure, satisfy, betroth, pledge.

astat, estat, s. P. 105, i. 599, 2764, iv. 229, viii. 3149, thastat, i. 2100, thestat, P. 202, estatiz (*pl.*), v. 1849.

astellabre, s. vi. 1890, astrolabe.

asterte, v. a. i. 658, 722, 1934, 3381, iii. 163, 240, 566, escape from, elude; v. n. iv. 724, 1304, v. 808, 5821, escape, be avoided, v. 707, come to pass.

astone, v. n. vi. 1584, be at a loss.

astoned, a. P. 277.

astraid, *pp.* v. 145, vii. 2660, astray.

Astrathen, vii. 4501.

astray, *adv.* vii. 2679.

Astrices, vii. 826.

astrologie, s. vii. 680.

astronomie, s. iv. 3246, vi. 1347.

astronomien, s. v. 3083, vii. 348.

**aswoune**, *adv.* ii. 1347, 3237, iv. 3632, a swoune, viii. 1060.

**asyde**, *see* aside.

**at**, *prep.* P. 34, (= to) ii. 2648, iv. 914, (= by) v. 611: ate, ii. 59, ate laste, P. 369, 702, ate dees, i. 54, ate feste, i. 2501.

**atake**, *pp.* v. 6291, overtaken.

**Athemas** (1), iii. 1764, 1807.

**Athemas** (2), v. 4249.

**Athenagoras**, viii. 1622, 1749.

**Athene**, **Athenea**, **Athenys**, **Athenis**, iii. 1984, 2131, v. 5235, 5250 ff., 5554, vii. 2221, 2315, 2919 ff., 3058, 3184.

**Athlans**, i. 424, Atlas.

**atir**, *see* atyr.

**Atropos**, iv. 2756.

**attache**, *v. a.* viii. 2698, arrest.

**atteigne(n)**, *v. a.* i. 754, 1621, ii. 184, 2553, *pres.* atteinte, v. 3698; *v. n.* i. 2690, iv. 949, *pp.* atteingt, v. 2224.

**atteint**, *pp.* iii. 2213, v. 7102\*, viii. 1947, convicted.

**attempre(n)**, *v. a.* i. 1354, iii. 236, 1857, iv. 2554.

**attempte**, *v. a.* viii. 1419, try.

**attitled**, *pp.* v. 882, 1312, 1331, vii. 1004.

**atwinne**, *adv.* iii. 2750, v. 5942.

**atwo**, **atuo**, *adv.* iv. 431, v. 73.

**atyr**, **atir**, *s. i.* 1753, 1758, v. 4118, preparation, attire.

**auctor**, *see* auctor.

**auctorite**, *s. i.* 800, iv. 2628, autorite, ii. 2925.

**auctorize**, *v. a.* vii. 2415, vouch for; *pp.* auctorised, vii. 1480, PP. 330, held in repute.

**auctour**, **auctor**, *s. i.* 2412, v. 947, vi. 1314, vii. 1456.

**audience**, *s. P.* 452, i. 2556, 3330, viii. 1842.

**auditour**, *s. v.* 1919.

**Aufrique**, v. 1195, vii. 533, 578, 2088.

**Augst**, vii. 1100, viii. 2845, August.

**augurre**, *s. i.* 2404, augur.

**auht**, *see* oght.

**aalter**, *see* alter.

**aunter**, *s.*, in aunter if, P. 480, i. 189, ii. 480, in aunter forto, iii. 992, per aunter, v. 3351, *pl.* auntres, v. 5879; venture, adventure.

**auntre**, *v. n.* iv. 339, *refl.* v. 6522, venture.

**Aurora**, iv. 3190.

**autorite**, *see* auctorite.

**availle**, *v. n.* P. 270, 1074, i. 1082, 3114, (avayle, P. 77\*, availle, viii. 3048); *v. a.* ii. 91, 265, v. 229, *pp.* availed, PP. 191.

**avale**, *v. n.* ii. 2353, v. 387, descend; *v. a.* iii. 505, viii. 1619, lower.

**avance**, *v. a.* i. 2652, ii. 16, 2589, iv. 2116, v. 3006, avaunce, iv. 2780.

**avancement**, *s. v.* 2279.

**avant**, *adv.* iii. 1082, in front.

**avant**, *s. i.* 2427, ii. 2952, boast.

**avantage**, *s. i.* 1575, 2711, ii. 3158, iv. 2358, thavantages, v. 1978.

**avantance**, *s. i.* 2399, boasting.

**avantarie**, *s. i.* 2407, avanterie, i. 2438, boasting.

**avante**, *see* avaunte.

**avarice**, P. 315, v. 8, 21 &c.

**avaunte**, **avante**, *v. refl.* i. 2389, 2567, 2655, 2961, boast (oneself).

**avenant**, *a.* vii. 834, comely.

**aventure**, *s. P.* 212, 619, i. 1416, ii. 260, 3297, iii. 2016, peril, chance, case; put (sette) in aventure, i. 3212, iv. 322, per (par) aventure, i. 1521, 2350, iv. 1101.

**aventurous**, *a.* i. 1523.

**Averil**, v. 5968, vii. 1029.

**averous**, *a.* v. 61, 4676, thaverous, v. 57, avaricious.

**Avicen**, iv. 2610.

**Avinoun**, *see* Avynoun.

**avis**, *s. i.* 501, iii. 1804, iv. 1333, v. 1202, avys, i. 1471, opinion, advice.

**avise**, *v. a.* i. 1736; *v. n.* iii. 1067, observe; *refl.* P. 520, i. 436, 748, 2680, ii. 525, 790, viii. 2365, consider, beware; be avised, P. 65, i. 996, 1543, avised with, ii. 635, (avyse, PP. 233).

**avisement**, *s. i.* 3121, iii. 751, up avise-ment, iv. 1002.

**avisoun** (-on), *s. i.* 845, ii. 3479, vi. 1928.

**avoi**, *interj.* viii. 1696.

**avou**, *s. i.* 964, iii. 1014, iv. 1511, 1549, 3133, promise.

**avouterie**, *s. v.* 873, 1045, 1164, adultery.

**avowe**, *v. a.* i. 717, iv. 3438, v. 124, vii. 3163\*, PP. 243, declare, justify, vow.

**Avynoun**, **Avinoun**, P. 331, ii. 3001.

**await**, *s.* iii. 955, 1016, v. 666, watch, ambush: *cp.* wait.

**awaite**, **awayte**, *v. a.* i. 1260, 1672, ii. 463, iii. 1368, iv. 263, 808, v. 3004, watch for, attend to; *v. n.* i. 907, ii. 2332, 2869, iv. 2119, v. 207, watch, wait.

**awake**, *v. a.* i. 887, 1782, 2087, iv. 3228, v. 424, wake, keep awake; *v. n.* ii. 2896, iv. 2905, *pres.* awok, i. 121, ii. 843, v. 5435, vii. 3717.

**awarde**, *v. a.* viii. 2373.



**aweie**, *adv.* P. 132, 849, i. 1110 &c.,  
**aweye**, i. 53, **away**, P. 1069, i. 1323,  
 2472, **awai**, iii. 1711, iv. 1277, **away**,  
**awai**, ii. 1466, iii. 547, iv. 1186, v. 4024;  
**schal nevere aweie**, iv. 2394, **myhte**  
**noght aweie**, could not avail, i. 1110,  
*cp.* iii. 349, v. 7179.

**aweiward**, *adv.* i. 141.

**awher**, *adv.* ii. 393, v. 6585.

**awhile** (= a while), i. 1842, 2810.

**awht**, *see* oght.

**awroke**, *pp.* v. 7268, avenged.

**awry**, *adv.* ii. 442.

**axe**, **aske**, *v. a.* P. 268, 960, i. 170, 694,  
 1461, 2149, v. 5472, *imperat.* **axe**, i.  
 3344; *v. n.* i. 160, 881, 1875, ii. 1232,  
 iii. 2747: ask, ask for, demand.

**axeltre**, *s.* iii. 1209.

**axinge**, *s.* i. 1480, ii. 339, iv. 2128, *pl.*

**axinges**, i. 3295, vii. 3911, **askinge**, iv.  
 3494.

**ay**, *adv.* ii. 395, 3125, iv. 286, **ai**, v.  
 6419\*.

**ayein** (3), *prep.* P. 679, 713, i. 1137, 1141,  
 1284, 2340, ii. 1438, **ayeins**, v. 6413,  
 against, contrary to, opposite, to meet;  
**ayein the day**, i. 930, toward morning,  
*cp.* v. 4954, **ayein the dai**, i. 2511, with  
 a view to the day.

**ayein**, **ayein** (3), *adv.* P. 185, i. 861, 1057,  
 2090, iii. 1243, iv. 1137, again, back, in  
 reply: *cp.* **agayn**.

**ayeincomynge** (3), *s.* iv. 102.

**ayeinward** (3), *adv.* i. 1792, ii. 132.

**ayer** (3), *adv.* viii. 2226, in the year.

## B

**babe**, *s.* ii. 3238, iii. 320.

**Babel**, P. 1019.

**babel**, *s.* vii. 3955, bauble.

**Babilla**, vi. 1325.

**Babiloine**, **Babiloyne**, P. 665, 675, 681,  
 i. 2955, iii. 2452, **Babeloine**, vii. 3212\*.

**Bablo**, v. 4808 ff., 4851.

**bachite**, *v. a.* ii. 411.

**bachitinge**, **bakbitinge**, *s.* ii. 451, 558,  
 1605, 1609.

**bachelor**, *s.* i. 2594, 3373, ii. 125, 2658,  
 iii. 1343, **bachillier**, ii. 2658.

**Bachus**, v. 141, 166 ff., 1051, 1469, 3138,  
 6837 (*genit.*), vi. 396 ff., 502.

**back**, **bak**, *s.* P. 400, i. 2069, ii. 393, 1651,  
 iv. 1344.

**badde**, *a.* i. 1246, ii. 513, iii. 1562, iv. 1350,  
*as subst.* vi. 351.

**bagge**, *s.* v. 83, 129, 4701.

**Baiard**, vi. 1280.

**baillez ca**, vi. 60.

**baillie**, *s.* P. 220, i. 783, ii. 1870, v. 1012,  
 vii. 1071, charge, property.

**bait**, *s.* iii. 956.

**bak**, **bakbitinge**, *see* **back**, **bachbitinge**.

**bake**, *v. a.* *pp.*, v. 2408.

**bal**, *s.* PP. 296.

**Bala**, viii. 130.

**Balaam**, vii. 4413.

**balade**, *s.* i. 2709, 2727.

**Balamuz**, vi. 1320.

**balance**, *s.* P. 541, i. 3, 42, ii. 1418, 3244,  
 iii. 559, 2506, scales, danger.

**baldemoine**, *s.* i. 1704, gentian.

**bale**, *s.* iii. 1496, vi. 67, viii. 589.

**balke**, *v. n.* iii. 515, *see* *note*.

**balsme**, *s.* viii. 1198.

**Baltazar**, P. 685, v. 7022.

**banere**, *s.* ii. 1835, iv. 3220, **baner**, v.  
 492.

**Bangor**, ii. 905.

**banke**, *s.* P. 508, ii. 144, 720, *pl.* **banokes**,  
 iv. 2726.

**banne**, *v. a.* iv. 877; *v. n.* iv. 2834, curse.

**baptesme**, *s.* ii. 609, 899, 3470, v. 1779,  
 (baptisme, PP. 347).

**baptized**, *pp.* viii. 143.

**Barbarie**, ii. 599, 612, 1172, 1181.

**Barbarus**, vii. 4335.

**Bardus**, v. 4956 ff.

**bare**, *a.* P. 936, i. 935.

**bareigne**, *a.* iii. 2319, v. 824.

**bargain**, *s.* v. 2876, 4414, viii. 2431.

**barge**, *s.* P. 45\*, 234, ii. 1902.

**barli**, *as a.* vii. 3705 ff., of barley.

**barm**, *s.* iii. 302, vi. 227, bosom.

**barnage**, *s.* ii. 2982, baronage.

**baronie**, *s.* P. 104.

**baske**, *v. refl.* iii. 315, bathe.

(**baskle**, *v. refl.* iii. 315, *v. l.*)

**bass**, *a.* i. 1678, low.

**bataille**, *s.* P. 214, i. 1081, iii. 2650, **bat-**  
**aile**, v. 3429.

**bataille**, *v. n.* iii. 1903; *v. a.* **bataille**, PP.  
 194.

**bataillous**, *a.* v. 1211, vii. 889, warlike.

**bath**, *s.* i. 1747, *pl.* **bathe**, v. 3801, viii.  
 484.

**bathe**, *v. n.* i. 364, iii. 312; *v. a.* ii. 3206.

**Bathuel**, viii. 115.

**be**, **ben**, *v.* P. 44, 65, 78, 147, 1 *s.* *pres.*  
**am**, P. 52, 2 *s.* *art.* i. 154, 3 *s.* *is*,

- P. 4 (ye, viii. 2990), we ben, P. 3, be we, i. 2212, 3 *pl. pres. be(n)*, P. 78 &c., (beth, viii. 3081), are(n), vii. 1490, 1718, ar, iv. 1375, *pret. was*, P. 3, 2 s. were thou, iv. 600, *pl. were(n)*, P. 37, 45, weere, v. 6836, wer, ii. 2147, *subj. were*, i. 1662, 2545, 3335, iv. 343, weere, iv. 1324, wer, v. 2555, *pp. be(n)*, P. 582; be so (that), i. 187, 1458, ii. 1177, be he . . . be he, ii. 254.
- be, *prep.* P. 36, i. 175, 761, 794 &c., be name, i. 806, be nyhte, i. 823, be me (in my case), i. 1963, be cause that, ii. 2771, (by, v. 7021\*): *cp. by*.
- beau, *a.*, beau retret, viii. 2416.
- besute, *s.* i. 771, 1837, ii. 123.
- Beawme, viii. 2470, Bohemia.
- beblede, *v. a. pp. bebled*, ii. 700, iii. 1406, stain with blood.
- beclippe, *v. a. i.* 1790, ii. 2550, iv. 2783, v. 2003, *pp. beclipt*, i. 912, embrace, contain.
- become, *v. n.* P. 303, 3 *s. pret. becom*, i. 932, 2967, becam, ii. 1189, v. 4949, 3 *pl. become*, P. 738.
- bedawe, *v. n.* v. 1982, dawn.
- bedd, bed, *s.* i. 876, ii. 828, 856, to bedde, i. 1780, ii. 822, goth to bedde to, i. 2604, beddes side, ii. 833.
- beddafere, *s.* v. 3056, beddafere, vi. 1916, bedfellow.
- beddeshed, *s.* iii. 445.
- bede, *s.* P. 273, i. 667, ii. 1472, iii. 2148, iv. 3484, bedes, iv. 717, (bedis, viii. 2959), paire of bedes, viii. 2904: prayer, command, bead.
- bederke, *v. a. i.* 1169.
- bedroppe, *v. a.* vii. 4832, cover with drops.
- beerdles, *a. v.* 7202\*.
- beere, *s.* vii. 5098, hier.
- befalle, *v. n.* P. 26, 501, i. 55, 1397, vii. 655, *pret. befell*, P. 702, i. 67, (bifal, P. 35\*), 3 *s. pres. subj. befalle*, P. 69\*, i. 1397, 3 *s. pret. subj. befelle*, iv. 2773.
- beflain, *v. a. pp.* vii. 2897, flayed.
- befole, *v. a.* P. 200, vii. 4293.
- before, *prep.* i. 2054, ii. 1048, befor, ii. 573; *adv.* i. 1228, ii. 569, before tyme, P. 848, befor, P. 843.
- befrose, *pp.* ii. 1820.
- begert, *pp.* vii. 2863.
- begote, *v. a., pret. begat*, v. 900, beyat (3), v. 1396, *pp. begate(n)*, iv. 3249, v. 3194, 7313, vii. 5137.
- begge, *v. a. v.* 1785\*, buy: *cp. bele*.
- beggere, begger, *s.* i. 2249, iv. 2249, v. 2414, *pl. beggers*, v. 2395.
- beginne, *v. a. n.* P. 266, 659, 835, i. 2331, begynne, P. 404, 3 *s. pres. beginth*, vi. 760, *pret. s. began*, P. 667, 973, i. 13, *pl. begunne*, iii. 742, 1128, begonne, iv. 1045, *pp. begonne*, P. 688, iii. 1260, begunne, i. 1138; beginne of, i. 2550, 2562, began to, i. 1446; I am to beginne, ii. 512, *cp. iii.* 1320, iv. 956.
- beginnyng(e), *s.* vii. 79, 596.
- bego, *v. a., pp. bego(n)*, i. 3252, iv. 556, 606, work upon, furnish; *pp. with adv.* iii. 1157, vi. 1553, wel begon of, ii. 1323, wel b. with, iv. 1313, *cp. v.* 2335, wo bego(n), iv. 3394, v. 4348.
- begrave, *v. a. i.* 2348, *pp. begrave*, ii. 887, 2649, iv. 2171, bury; *pp. begrave*, i. 2541, engraved.
- begripe, *v. a.* vii. 536, encompass.
- begrowe, *pp.* v. 6831, grown over.
- beguile, *v. a. i.* 677, 705, ii. 651, iii. 2180, deceive, betray.
- behelde, *see* beholde.
- behaste, *s.* P. 81\*, i. 1100, 1270, PP. 41, promise, assurance.
- behete, behiete, behihte, *see* behote.
- behinde, behynden, *prep.* i. 2069, ii. 483: *adv.* i. 227, ii. 282, behynde, v. 2706.
- beholde(n), *v. a.* P. 35, 840, i. 199, &c. (biholde, vii. 3156\*), behelde, vii. 1856, 3 *s. pres. beholt*, i. 2700, ii. 2434, 3 *s. pret. behield*, i. 414, v. 5441.
- beheld, ii. 1833, *pl. behielde*, iv. 3090, *pret. subj. behelde*, iv. 574, *pl. behielden*, P. 360, *imperial. behold*, P. 551, ii. 771.
- beholde, *pp.* v. 94, vii. 4175, bound.
- behonge, *v. a. v.* 7489, vi. 1839.
- behote, *v. a. n. inf.* iv. 1824, 1 *s. pres. behote*, i. 1233, 2678, behete, behiete, iv. 638, 3144, 3470, v. 6701, 3 *s. behet*, i. 1954, 3 *pl. behote*, ii. 1664, *pret. behihte*, i. 1565, iii. 1014, iv. 1555, v. 1476, 4979, behyhte, v. 7014, (behighte, behight, viii. 3124, PP. 41), *pp. behyht*, behiht, i. 1694, vii. 3286\*; promise, assure, pronounce, dedicate.
- behove, *s.* P. 358, ii. 1674, vii. 1332, advantage.
- behove, *v. n.* iii. 640, 1114, vii. 1711, 2025, viii. 2426, behoveth nede, vii. 1353: be needful, help, ought.
- behovely (-li), *a. i.* 2393, iii. 1330, v. 1757, PP. 304, (bihovely, vii. 3159\*), be-

- hovellich(e), v. 4012, vii. 1975; profitable, helpful.
- beie, v. a. ii. 3061, iii. 639, 3 s. *pres.*
- beith, v. 4396, *pret.* boghte, ii. 2397, 2736, iii. 380, *pp.* boght, iii. 894, 2066, buy, pay for, avenge; *cp.* begge.
- beinge, s. vii. 90 ff.
- bajape, v. a. i. 2363, ii. 2489, iv. 900, v. 3207, 6216, deceive, mock.
- beknowe(n), v. a. n. i. 593, 1376, ii. 275, vi. 1390, *pp.* beknowe(n), P. 1039, i. 550, v. 6466, *imperat.* beknow, ii. 883, make known, confess. I am beknowe ... this, ii. 236, *cp.* v. 2855.
- Bel, v. 1556 f.
- Bele Ysolde, vi. 472, viii. 2501.
- beleve, v. n. P. 10, i. 1516, ii. 2524, iv. 2816, *pret.* belefte, v. 5698, remain: is beleft, was beleft, ii. 2569, 3458, is belaft, vi. 2346.
- (belle), v. a., 3 *pl.* *pret.* beleie, v. 7581, *pp.* belein, i. 1993, iii. 1757, 2046, iv. 2147, besiege.
- believe, v. a. n. P. 284, i. 580, 1215, 2012, ii. 629, 2136, iii. 2222, viii. 2500, beleve, v. 6124; believe, believe in, trust.
- believe, bilieve, s. P. 91, i. 699, 894, 1216, ii. 3396, iii. 967, beleve, vi. 62, *pl.* believes, v. 748, 951; belief, faith, religion.
- belle, s. i. 1949, 2391, ii. 1728, iv. 346.
- beloke(n), *pp.* ii. 3393, iv. 3667, shut up.
- belonge, v. n. P. 67, 259, i. 691, 2345, 2904, iv. 2293, 3307, 13 s. *pres.* belongith, viii. 2997 ff.), belong, be fitting.
- beloved, a. P. 38, i. 1920, v. 4365.
- Belus, v. 1546, 1556.
- belwe, v. n. iv. 2113, bellow.
- belwinge, s. vii. 3322, bellowing.
- Belzebub, v. 1557.
- bemene, v. a. i. 1540, iii. 1983.
- bench, s. v. 4383.
- band, s. vi. 296, band.
- bende, v. a. n., *pret.* bende, ii. 2235, vii. 4749, *pp.* bent, iii. 449, viii. 2453.
- bene, s. v. 4408, bean.
- Benedab, vii. 2539 ff.
- benedicite, *interj.* i. 205.
- benefice, s. P. 316, *pl.* benefices, ii. 2338.
- beneficoun, s. iii. 939.
- benethe, *adv.* P. 931, i. 2527; *prep.* vii. 721.
- benigne, a. iii. 215.
- bente, a. *pl.* vii. 4418, arched.
- benyce, v. *refl.* viii. 2769, befool (oneself).
- benyme, v. a., 2, 3 s. *pres.* benymst, benymth, iii. 1309, v. 7002, *pp.* benome, vi. 36, take away.
- beqwath, v. a. *pret.* PP. 178.
- berd, beard, s. i. 2045, v. 7113\*, 7149\*, viii. 1303, beard.
- bere, s. ii. 160, vi. 1450, bear.
- bere, v. a. P. 294, 492, i. 850, 3 s. *pres.*
- berth, i. 467, iii. 1784, *pret.* s. bar, P. 908, i. 434, *pl.* bere, beere, i. 2795, iv. 1323, 1376, vii. 1796, *pret. subj.* beere, iv. 2749, *pp.* bore, i. 773, 2788, ii. 933, 2635, boren, ii. 976, ybore, ii. 499; bar (berth) on hond, iii. 664, iv. 32, v. 546, berth an hond, v. 496.
- berained, *pp.* i. 2915, vii. 1234.
- Berenger, P. 780.
- bereve, v. a. P. 411, vii. 3245\*, *pret.* beraste, P. 744, vii. 3840, berast, v. 5647, *pp.* berast, viii. 209.
- beried, *pp.* iii. 293.
- berille, vii. 1349.
- Berillus, vii. 3309.
- berke, v. n. ii. 1796, 3 s. *pret.* bark, ii. 1861.
- berne, s. ii. 86, v. 4907, barn.
- Bersabee, vi. 97, viii. 2690.
- berate, v. n. viii. 1068.
- bertha, s. iv. 2231, v. 827.
- besant, s. v. 1930.
- Besaxis, vii. 1884.
- beschade, v. a. iv. 3207, vii. 743, 809; *cp.* bischadewe.
- beschrewe, v. a. i. 1036, iii. 810, curse.
- beschrewed, a. i. 640, iii. 480, evil-disposed.
- beachyne, v. a. vii. 4465, shine upon.
- (be-se), v. a., *pret. pl.* besihe, viii. 1617, look after, prepare: *pp.* bessein, besseie, P. 559, i. 358, 2360, iv. 1384, wo bessein, ii. 262, bessein of, iii. 1844, bessein to, iv. 180, provided, equipped, prepared.
- beseche, v. a. n. i. 589, 1339, 1985, 2174, 2259 &c., besiesche, viii. 2912, besseke, ii. 960, v. 916, 1355; *pret.* besoghte(n), i. 1808, 2640, ii. 108, 1212, 1483, v. 1459, besoughte, v. 3440, besoughten (*pl.*), P. 198, *pp.* besoght, v. 6230, *imperat.* besech, i. 2937.
- beseke, *see* besesche.
- beseme, v. a. i. 2013, ii. 2935, iv. 745.
- besette, v. a. i. 3237, iv. 1482, *pp.* beset, i. 2538, 2736, ii. 3252, iv. 1567, v. 555, besett, iv. 496, set, employ, bestow.

**besi**, *besy*, *a.* ii. 1764, iv. 235, 509, 953.  
**beside**, *besyde*, *prep.* i. 2305, iii. 294, 530, vii. 2242, *besiden*, *v.* 7311, *beside*, *contrary to*: *adv.* P. 446, 801, ii. 60, 1993, *by the side*, *aside*, *as well*: *faile and go beside*, iv. 2862, *cp.* v. 2428, vi. 1248, vii. 4458.

**besten**, *v. refl.* iv. 1183, 1230.

**besiliche**, *adv.* i. 373, iv. 57, 1235, *besily*, iv. 2185.

**business**, *s.* i. 1130, ii. 460, 1074, iv. 513, viii. 3052\*, *besynesse*, P. 49\*, *bisnesse*, P. 63, (*businessse*, PP. 226).

**besischipe**, *s.* iv. 1119.

**beaswed**, *pp.* i. 2044, vi. 1498.

**besowed**, *pp.* viii. 1114, *sewn up*.

**besprade**, *v. a.* vii. 1150, *pres. bespradde*, viii. 2655, *pp.* *bespred*, v. 6917.

**best**, *a.* i. 1525, *the beste*, i. 768, *pl.* iii. 500; *as subst. for the beste*, *to the beste*, i. 997, 1748, 2488, *thi beste*, i. 1603: *adv.* *best*, P. 337, ii. 2676.

**bestad**, *pp.* i. 1049, 2584, ii. 69, 922, 1149, iii. 77, vii. 3228\*, *situated*, *engaged*, *troubled*.

**bestalle**, *s.* v. 331, 1022, *cattle*.

**beste**, *s.* P. 909, i. 976, 2828, *beast*.

**besters**, *v. refl.* ii. 3196, viii. 609.

**bestial**, *a.* i. 2913.

**bestly**, *a.* i. 3025.

**bestowe**, *v. a.* iv. 2472.

**beswike**, *v. a.* i. 498, 760, *deceive*.

**beswinke**, *v. a.* v. 6085, *pp.* *beswunke*, i. 2646, *labour for*.

**besyde**, *see beside*.

**bet**, *a.* v. 4715: *adv.* i. 1976, 2514, iii. 349, 2239; *for bet for wers*, iv. 673: *cp.* *betre*.

**betake**, *v. a.* iv. 1431, 3 *s. pres.* *betakth*, iii. 1978, *pres.* *betok*, iv. 3327, *imperat.* *betaketh*, ii. 1036, *pp.* *betake(n)*, P. 309, i. 80, vii. 1335, viii. 2960; *give*, *deliver*, *commend*: *betaken* (*pp.*), v. 743, *taken*.

**bete**, *v. a. n.* P. 428, i. 1155, ii. 2356, *pres.* *bet*, iii. 997, vii. 4615, *pp.* *bete(n)*, iii. 974, v. 1960, vii. 4635, *beat*.

**beteoche**, *v. a.* vii. 4234, *pres.* *betawhte*, *betauhte*, *betaghte*, iii. 1940, v. 3575, viii. 748, *pp.* *betawht*, vi. 2411, viii. 120, *deliver*.

**bethenke**, *v. a. n.* PP. 101, *pres.* *bethoghte*, vi. 1165, *pp.* *bethoght*, iv. 142, *think of*, *remember*; *refl.* *he him bethoghte*, i. 798, *cp.* i. 2116, *bethoughte hire*, v. 3423; *I am bethoght*, i. 1267,

*this I am bethoght*, iii. 1250, *bethoght*, ii. 2906.

**Bethincia**, *v.* 1141.

**bethrowe**, *pp.* vi. 114.

**betide**, *betyde*, *v. n.* i. 149, 2265, iv. 1024, 1779, 3 *s. pres.* *betitt*, ii. 1997, *pres.* *betidde*, *betydde*, ii. 2463, vi. 1607, *betidd*, vii. 4381, *pp.* *betid*, P. 182, v. 2101, *betidd*, iii. 473, v. 6254, *happen*, *come to pass*.

**betokne**, *v. a.* P. 594, 628, i. 2888, ii. 731, vii. 1757 ff.; *v. n.* ii. 1804, vii. 4518.

**betraie**, *v. a.* i. 1079, ii. 1181, viii. 1923.

**betrappe**, *v. a.* iii. 1358, vii. 4915.

**betre**, *bettre*, *a.* P. 352, i. 1556, 2424, iv. 37; *subst. the betre*, v. 7393: *adv.* P. 543, i. 720, *the betre*, i. 1543: *cp.* *bet*.

**betwen**, *betuen*, *prep.* P. 18, i. 2164, ii. 411, 653, v. 5025, 5718, *ham betwene* (*betuene*), P. 790, 1000, v. 3062: *adv.* *betwene*, ii. 942.

**betyde**, *see betide*.

**bewake**, *v. a.* v. 3498, 6611, *watch*, *watch through*.

**bewar**, *v. imperat.* (= *be war*), ii. 571, iii. 1496, 1738, v. 6048.

**beware**, *v. a.* P. 394, ii. 3066, 3359, iii. 2219, vii. 2518, *spend*, *employ*.

**beweile**, *v. refl.* i. 972, iv. 2958.

**bewelde**, *v. refl.* iii. 990, vii. 510, viii. 3041\*, *have power over* (*oneself*).

**bewepe**, *v. a.* iv. 1565, vii. 2888.

**bewhape**, *v. a.* vi. 80, vii. 4267, viii. 2219, (*pp.* *bewhapid*, viii. 2955), *bewilder*, *amaze*.

**bewounde**, *v. a. pp.* v. 5008, viii. 1178.

**bewrele**, *v. a.* ii. 1530, v. 701, 2940, viii. 454, *pp.* *bewreld*, v. 6785, *reveal*, *expose*.

**bewympled**, *pp.* v. 6913.

**beyelpe** (3), *v. refl.* vii. 2096, *boast* (*oneself*).

**beyende** (3), *prep.* i. 424.

**beyete** (3), *s.* P. 304, 784, i. 1194, 2684, ii. 2355, iv. 1709, *gain*, *property*, *possession*.

**bible**, *s.* P. 354, i. 2788, iv. 1960, 2655, v. 7025, vii. 2527, 3624, viii. 224.

**bidde**, *v. a. n.* P. 458, i. 884, 934, 1556, *bidde his bede*, v. 6985, 3 *s. pres.* *bit*, i. 1310, iv. 1161, *bidt*, iv. 1162, 2802, *pres.* *bad*, P. 45\*, i. 157, 1535, 2902, ii. 1140, *badd*, vi. 1735, *pl.* *bede*, i. 2048, iii. 750, *biede*, viii. 1507, *pres. subj.* *bede*, iv. 2905, vi. 1356, *imperat.* *bid*, iv.



- 1434, v. 7588, *pp.* bede, i. 813, 841, iii. 1557, *beden*, i. 2520; *bid*, command, invite, ask for, pray: *cp.* blede, with *whi. h* *bidde* has been confused.
- biddinge**, s. i. 2552.
- bide**, v. n., *pres.* bod, viii. 519, 2310, stay.
- biēde**, v. a. v. 4455, *pp.* bode, P. 244, i. 2865, command, demand: *cp.* bidde.
- bienfait**, s. iii. 758, *bienfet*, vii. 3029.
- bienvenue**, s. ii. 1503.
- bille**, s. iv. 2710, 3108, v. 6526.
- bilieve**, *see* believe, s.
- bille**, s. viii. 875, 889, 2324, writing.
- blme**, *see* byme.
- binde**, *bynde*, v. a. n. i. 1623, v. 3606, viii. 2811, 3 s. *p.* bint, vi. 72, *pres.* s.
- bond**, v. 853, 5056, *pl.* bounden, v. 151, *pp.* bounde(n), i. 2538, ii. 540, iii. 2095.
- blschadewe**, v. a. viii. 3008\*.
- businessse**, *see* besinease.
- bisschop**, *bisshop*, ii. 904, 936.
- bisschopriches**, s. *pl.* P. 208.
- bisse**, s. vi. 990, fine linen.
- bite**, v. n. iii. 119, *pres.* bot, vi. 5.
- Biten**, v. 1402.
- biter**, a. vi. 250, *def.* biter, vi. 371, bitter, viii. 2256; the *bitre* (as *subst.*), i. 1708.
- biternessse**, s. vi. 344.
- bitterswete**, s. viii. 191: *cp.* vi. 250.
- blad**, *bladd*, s. iii. 252, iv. 927.
- blak**, a. iv. 1343, v. 4045, *blake*, *def.* i. 1167, *voc.* iv. 2842, *pl.* iv. 2494.
- blame**, s. i. 630, 1017, 2074, 3056; as a. i. 2405.
- blame(n)**, v. a. P. 60\*, i. 3053, to *blame(n)*, P. 538, i. 3054, v. 5210.
- blameles**, a. vii. 3816.
- blaminge**, s. v. 1455.
- blanche**, a. (*fem.*) vi. 239.
- blase**, v. n. ii. 2949.
- blase**, s. v. 3510, 4089, viii. 2444.
- blast**, s. i. 1069, 2411, iii. 419.
- bleche**, a. v. 2477, wan.
- blede**, v. n. ii. 840, vi. 1746.
- blenchinge**, s. vi. 205, 1867.
- blende**, v. a., 3 s. *pres.* blent, v. 2492, *pres.* blente, v. 3467, *pp.* blent, i. 1126, v. 2165, blind, conceal.
- blesse**, v. a. i. 3418, v. 1236, (*pp.* blessid, viii. 3104); v. n. i. 620, v. 5022, cross oneself.
- blessead**, a. vii. 3260.
- blesseinge**, s. ii. 3317, v. 1281.
- blew**, a. as *subst.* iv. 1317, vii. 2188, blue.
- blind**, *blynd*, a. i. 47, ii. 355, 759, v. 980, *blinde*, P. 139, *def.* i. 621, 2490, ii. 1822, *pl.* i. 228, 927, iii. 1465, v. 2959; the *blinde* (*blynde*), as *subst.* P. 536, i. 2952, v. 536, *cp.* vii. 2470: blind, deceitful.
- blindly**, *adv.* viii. 2385.
- blisse**, s. i. 1771, v. 544, viii. 33.
- blithe**, *blythe*, a. ii. 18, 657, v. 6140, viii. 929.
- blookes**, s. *pl.* iii. 1033.
- blod**, s. i. 2235, 3170, vi. 840, vii. 4132, blood, vii. 423.
- blodi**, a. P. 757, iii. 1400, *bloody*, ii. 861.
- blowe**, v. a. n. P. 923, i. 1065, 2133, 2411, ii. 1122, 2134, v. 1818, *pres.* blew, *bleu*, i. 2143, iii. 1025, v. 5409, *blewh*, ii. 2892, *pl.* blew, vi. 2263, *pp.* blowe, i. 2298, iv. 735, vii. 3041.
- blowinge**, s. iv. 2484.
- blythe**, *see* blithe.
- blyve**, *blive*, *adv.* iii. 1044, viii. 515, quickly; also (as) *blyve*, iv. 1854, v. 3318, *cp.* vi. 1430: forthwith.
- boe**, *see* bok.
- bode**, v. a. i. 3282, proclaim.
- bodi**, *body*, s. P. 474, 995, ii. 977, *pl.* bodies, iv. 1320, 2463.
- bodili**, *bodily*, *bodely*, a. ii. 3256, v. 193, 1775, *bodiliche*, ii. 3344, vi. 397: *adv.*
- bodily**, ii. 2969 (= in person), iii. 767.
- bodely**, iv. 975.
- boiste**, *see* buiste.
- bok**, s. P. 18, ii. 868 (book, viii. 3108), *boe*, vii. 480, in *boke*, iv. 978, *pl.* *bokes*, P. 2, i. 2458.
- boke**, v. P. 51\*, iv. 2664, viii. 1328, record, write books, teach with books.
- hold**, a. ii. 1690, iii. 1846, iv. 2192, *pl.* *holde*, vii. 4355.
- bole**, s. iv. 2112, vii. 1017, 3313, bull.
- bombard**, s. viii. 2482, (a musical instrument).
- bon**, s. i. 1531, ii. 2291, iii. 463, *pl.* bones, ii. 2302, vi. 2309.
- bond**, s. ii. 2112, iv. 894, *pl.* *bondas*, P. 502, ii. 3027, iv. 2105.
- bonde**, a. vi. 74, bond (slave).
- bondeman**, s. viii. 1358.
- bone**, s. ii. 768, 1430, vii. 3899, petition, boon.
- Bonaface**, *Bonefas*, ii. 2940, 2950 ff.
- bor**, s. vii. 5255, boar.
- bord**, s. i. 2111, ii. 689, iv. 400, viii. 720, *pl.* *bordas*, i. 2529, ii. 1426, iv. 3018, board, table; iv. 1741, side (of a ship), *schipes bord*, v. 3922, viii. 987, overboard, viii. 1140.

- borde**, *s.* iii. 741, *pl.* **bordes**, vii. 4799, viii. 1676, *jest*.  
**bordel**, *s.* v. 1054, viii. 1411 ff., *brothel*.  
**bordeller**, *s.* viii. 1415.  
**borwe**, *v. a. n.* iv. 10, v. 6640, 7665.  
**borwe**, *s.*, *to borwe*, iv. 774, 960, v. 3416.  
**boast**, *s.* iii. 2083, v. 2142, vii. 3482, *boast*.  
**bot**, *s.* P. 44°, i. 1960, ii. 1108, *be bote*, P. 40°, *to bote*, v. 3731; *boat*.  
**bot**, *prep.* vii. 694, *beyond*: *conj.* P. 12, 56, 73 &c., *but*, P. 63° f., 168, *bot* (= only), P. 454, i. 675, (= unless) P. 144, i. 1543, ii. 374, v. 473, *ne . . . bot*, i. 264, *noght . . . bot*, ii. 1587, *bot if*, P. 345, i. 441, 1546, *bote* (except), ii. 2392, (but) v. 2015.  
**bote**, *s.* i. 28, 2232, ii. 2051, iv. 133, *do bote*, ii. 2274, iii. 2272: *remedy*, *help*.  
**botaler**, *s.* i. 2593, vi. 295 ff.  
**Botercadent**, vii. 1419.  
**bothe**, *s.* viii. 170, *booth*.  
**bothe**, *a. pl.* P. 159, i. 317, *bothe tuo*, P. 1068, i. 851, *bothen*, i. 1829, vii. 2469, *oure herte bothe*, iii. 1473, *bothe also*, iii. 1471; *as adv.* i. 1106, iv. 1874.  
**botme**, *s.* i. 1961, *bottom*.  
**bouele**, *s.* v. 4137.  
**boun**, *a.* viii. 1407, PP. 17, *ready*.  
**bounde**, *s.* iv. 2506, vi. 634.  
**bounde**, *v. a.* ii. 1754, vii. 560.  
**bounte**, *s.* v. 2595, *goodness*.  
**bowe**, *s.* i. 1967, ii. 151, 2234, 2956, iv. 2983, *bow*.  
**bowe**, *v. n.* P. 153, i. 718, 1238, 1248, 1284, ii. 3225, iv. 1130, *bow*, *bend*, *turn aside*, *submit*.  
**bowh**, *s.* iv. 856, 1331, *pl.* **bowes**, i. 2824, 2902, *bough*.  
**Bragmans**, *pl.* v. 1453.  
**brale**, *v. n.* i. 3027.  
**brain**, *s.* i. 2568, iv. 107, *brayn*, v. 1463.  
**branche**, *s.* P. 346, iv. 3688, v. 1965, *braunche*, i. 2311.  
**Branchus**, i. 1428, 1456.  
**Brangwein**, vi. 473.  
**bras**, *s.* P. 610, i. 1087, iv. 236, 2472.  
**breche**, *s.* v. 332.  
**bred**, *s.* ii. 1856, iii. 446.  
**brede**, *s.* iii. 1963, v. 5661, *breadth*.  
**brede**, *v. a.* i. 542, iii. 1322, v. 7700.  
**breide**, *v. a.* vii. 4332, *braid*.  
**breide**, *v. a.*, *pret.* iii. 1429, viii. 1377, *drew*.  
**bragge**, *s.* v. 2205, vii. 2242, *bridge*.  
**brake**, *v. a.* P. 148, i. 1303, 1334, 1512; *v. n.* i. 1248, 1700, ii. 3008: *pret.* **brak**, ii. 3008, iv. 847, v. 1710, *pp.* **broke**, P. 653, ii. 3394.  
**brenne**, *v. a. n.* P. 329, i. 323, ii. 5, 23, iv. 820, 3 *s. pret.* **brende**, ii. 2302, v. 1100, **brente**, v. 1667, 3 *pl.* **brenden**, i. 1184, *pp.* **brant**, i. 2006, *def.* **brante**, v. 7210, *burn*.  
**brennynge**, *s.* vi. 2232.  
**brere**, *s.* P. 409, 413, *briar*.  
**breast**, *s.* P. 607, i. 662, 1327, iii. 2011, v. 1384, **brist**, viii. 2175, *breast*, *heart*.  
**Bretaigne**, vii. 752.  
**breth**, *s.* i. 119, 2127, ii. 530, iii. 289, iv. 2758.  
**brewe**, *v. a.* ii. 246, iii. 1626.  
**Brerelda**, ii. 2455.  
**brid**, *s.* i. 101, 2703, **bridd**, i. 2088, *pl.* **briddes**, i. 111, 1728.  
**bridel**, *s.* i. 1697, ii. 3009, iii. 1629, iv. 1203, **brydal**, iv. 1434.  
**bridlen**, *v. a.* i. 2037, viii. 2707.  
**briht**, **bryht**, **bright**, *a. v.* 3110, vii. 734, *def.* **bryhte**, v. 3169, **brighte**, v. 2783, *pl.* **brihte**, iv. 988, **bryghte**, iii. 1039.  
**brihte**, **bryhte**, *adv.* v. 36, 3732, **bryht**, vii. 1857, *compar.* **bryhtere**, **brihtere**, iv. 1322°, vi. 1525.  
**brimme**, *s.* v. 4968.  
**bringe**, *v. a.* P. 348, i. 1318, 1447, 3 *s. pres.* **bringth**, P. 1082, *pret.* **broghte**, P. 760, ii. 1246, iv. 2951, **broughte**, v. 3934, *pp.* **broght**, P. 623, i. 788, **brought**, iii. 604, *imperat.* **bring**, vi. 1728; **bringen forth**, iv. 3119, **forth broghte**, ii. 1245, **broght aboute**, iv. 2352.  
**bringers**, *s.* v. 345.  
**brinke**, *s.* i. 2310, 2980, iii. 1408.  
**brocage**, *s.* v. 341, 4426, 4590, viii. 3033.  
**broche**, *s.* v. 6173, *brooch*.  
**broccour**, *s.* v. 4387 ff., 4573.  
**brod**, **brood**, *s.* ii. 383, v. 4375, *brood*.  
**brod**, *a.* iv. 3164, v. 6792, *pl.* **brode**, i. 1729, 1749, v. 1266, **broad**: *adv.* v. 1086, (**broode**, PP. 201).  
**brond**, *s.* v. 1485, 4089.  
**brothell**, *s.* vii. 2595, *worthless fellow*.  
**brother**, *s.* P. 1050, i. 2071, PP. 266, *genit.* i. 2139, ii. 1197, iv. 2944, *pl.* **brethren**, v. 799, vi. 1077.  
**browe**, *s.* i. 1589, 1678, vii. 4418.  
**brustle**, *v. n.* iv. 2732.  
**Brut**, P. 38°.  
**brutel**, *s.* P. 877, *brittle*.  
**Brutus**, vii. 4735 ff.  
**bryd**, *s.* i. 1788, *bride*.  
**brygantaille**, *s.* P. 213, *irregular troops*.

bryht, *see* briht.  
 buck, *s.* iv. 1300, 1978.  
 buille, buile, *v. n.* iii. 431, *v.* 1487, 4121, *pres. p.* buillende, *v.* 2221.  
 buissh, *s.* i. 359, 2984, ii. 2356, bussh, i. 2044.  
 buisshelles, *s. pl.* v. 2204.  
 buisshement, *s.* iii. 2089.  
 buiste, boiste, *s.* v. 3594, viii. 507, 2814, box.  
 Bulgarie, vii. 3291.  
 bulle, *s.* ii. 2825, 2978, PP. 208, (pope's) bull.  
 burel, *a.* P. 52, simple.  
 burgeis, *s.* v. 7255, viii. 543, citizen.  
 burgh, *s.* P. 794, *v.* 3125, vii. 1690.  
 Burgoigne, vii. 770.  
 burned, *a.* i. 2540, *v.* 3110, 4339, polished.  
 buxom, *a.* P. 153, *v.* 2807, obedient.  
 buxomly, *adv.* iii. 546, *v.* 3030.  
 buxomnesse, *s.* i. 1355.  
 by, *adv.* i. 1802, iv. 1172, *v.* 4517, vii. 4955, bi, iv. 397, by and by (in order), iii. 557, *v.* 5503, 7280, faste by, *v.* 298: *cp.* be, *prep.*  
 byme, bime (=by me), ii. 2016, iii. 892 (against me), 2702 (for me), iv. 1182, 1423 (to me), 3369, *v.* 4484.  
 bysne, *a.* ii. 771, blind.

## C

ca, vi. 60.  
 caban, *s.* viii. 1051, 1601.  
 cable, *s.* i. 1068, *v.* 443, viii. 624.  
 cacche, *v. a.* iv. 3283, *pret.* cawhte, ii. 1349, 1441, iii. 1461, cauhte, *v.* 3924, *pp.* cawht, i. 1654, 2277, caght, ii. 1746; *v. n.* ii. 3192.  
 cadence, *s.* iv. 2414.  
 Cadme, Cadmus, i. 339, iv. 2401, *v.* 4273.  
 cage, *s.* iv. 1191.  
 caitif, *s.* i. 161, *v.* 2801.  
 cake, *s.* vii. 3705 ff.  
 Calcas, i. 1085.  
 calcedoine, *s.* vii. 1431.  
 calcinacion, *s.* iv. 2518.  
 calculacion (-oun), *s.* v. 3085, 6459, 7163\*.  
 Caldee (country), P. 666, 717, *v.* 750, 781, 1592, Chaldee, vii. 2031; Caldee (language), iv. 2627.  
 Caldeus, *pl.* v. 787.  
 caldron, caldroun, *s.* v. 4117, 4141.

Caleph, *v.* 1687.  
 Calidoyne, iv. 2047.  
 Caligula, viii. 202.  
 caliphe, *s.* (1), ii. 2549, caliph.  
 caliphe, *s.* (2), *v.* 3915, (a kind of vessel).  
 Calipsa, Calipse, vi. 1427, viii. 2599.  
 Calistona, *v.* 6228 ff.  
 Calistre, vi. 2274, vii. 20.  
 calle, *v. a. n.* P. 126, i. 2459, 3146, ii. 937, iii. 1436.  
 calm, *a.* vii. 4113.  
 Calmana, viii. 65, 71.  
 Calvus, P. 775.  
 Cam, *see* Cham.  
 Cambises, P. 680, vii. 2893.  
 camelion, *s.* i. 2698.  
 camused, *a.* v. 2479, flat-nosed.  
 can, *see* conne.  
 Canace, iii. 147 ff., viii. 2587.  
 Canahim, vii. 566.  
 Cancer, vii. 1051 ff., 1249, in Canoro, iv. 3242.  
 Candace, *v.* 1571, 1575, 2543.  
 Candalus, *v.* 1574.  
 candarie, vi. 1317.  
 canele, *s.* i. 1704, cinnamon.  
 Canis maior, vii. 1345.  
 Canis minor, vii. 1356.  
 canonized, *pp.* ii. 2821, viii. 144, installed, appointed by canon.  
 Capadoce, ii. 1332.  
 Capaneüs, i. 1980.  
 capitein, capitain, *s.* i. 1428, iii. 2421, vii. 5210, *fem.* capiteine, *v.* 1972.  
 capoun, *s.* v. 2408.  
 Capra saliens, vii. 347.  
 Capricorn, Capricornus, iv. 3222, vii. 1170, 1199, 1252.  
 carbuncle, *s.* i. 466, *v.* 7121\*, carbunculum, vii. 1316.  
 cardinal, *s.* ii. 636, 2811, 2832.  
 care, *s.* i. 2516, iii. 1794, *pl.* cares, iii. 299.  
 care, *v. n.* ii. 226, iv. 1774, PP. 18, feel trouble, be distressed.  
 carecte, *s.* i. 470, *v.* 3588, vi. 2006, karecte, vii. 1571, charm, conjuration.  
 carie, *v. a.* ii. 2648, iv. 3292, *v.* 1197.  
 Carmente, iv. 2637.  
 Carmidotoire, vii. 2848.  
 carole, *s.* i. 2730, *v.* 3146, karole, iv. 251, carolles, *pl.* i. 2708.  
 carole, *v. n.* iv. 2779, vi. 868, 1845.  
 carolinge, *s.* iv. 1530, vi. 144.  
 carpe, *v. n.* vii. 3277\*, converse; *v. a.* viii. 1488, utter.  
 Cartage, iv. 81, *v.* 2048 ff., vii. 2221, 2235.

- carte, *s.* (1) P. 444, ii. 1974, iv. 987, 3233, vii. 816 ff., (cart, PP. 115), the carte weie, iii. 2074; car, chariot.  
 carte, *s.* (2) vii. 1359, writing.  
 cas, *s.* P. 438, 746, i. 646, 2600, per cas, iv. 39, 1239, in cas that, iv. 1917.  
 Cassandra, Cassandre, Cassaundra, v. 7441, 7451, 7569.  
 Cassodra, vii. 3161\*, PP. 330.  
 cast, *s.* ii. 2374.  
 caste, *v. a.* i. 40, 1322, 1 *s. pres.* caste, i. 1965, cast, iv. 560, 3 *s. cast.* i. 663, casteth, iii. 80, *pret.* caste, i. 122, 1575, 2159, cast, i. 152, *imperial.* *s. cast.* i. 438, *pl.* casteth, i. 3160, *pp.* cast, ii. 1666, viii. 2909, throw, defeat, conjecture, plan, calculate.  
 castell, castel, *s.* i. 1423, ii. 719, iv. 741.  
 cat, *s.* iii. 1643, iv. 1108.  
 catel, *s. v.* 25, catell, vii. 3252\*, goods.  
 Cateline, vii. 1601.  
 Catoun, vii. 1599, 1612.  
 cause, *s.* P. 16, 190, 905, i. 3437, whos cause, i. 1040 (for the sake of which), be this c., i. 1053, be c. that, ii. 343, 2771, for c. of, ii. 3285, be c. of, iii. 1433, v. 1158; be cause (*as conj.*), iii. 2319.  
 cause, *v. a.* P. 348, i. 1987, ii. 3078, iv. 2845 (3 *s. pres.* causith, viii. 3013).  
 cautele, *s.* vii. 1639, trick.  
 cave, *s.* iv. 2991, v. 1573, 6813, viii. 2573.  
 cedre, *s.* i. 359.  
 ceinte, *s.* iv. 857, girdle.  
 Ceix, iv. 2928, Seyix, viii. 2650.  
 celee, *a. n.* 1953, secret (*s. e.* apt to keep secrets).  
 celestial, *a.* viii. 780.  
 Celestin, ii. 2824.  
 celidoine, vii. 1370.  
 celier, *s.* vi. 332, viii. 2254, cellar.  
 Cellion, ii. 3350.  
 celles, *s. pl.* v. 1463.  
 cendal, *s. t.* 1787.  
 Centaurus, iv. 1971 ff., 1988, *pl.* Centauri, vi. 522.  
 centre, *s.* vii. 233.  
 Cephalus, iv. 3189, 3253 ff.  
 Ceramius, vii. 826.  
 cercle, *s.* iv. 3237, v. 4093.  
 Cereres, v. 1233, 1278, 1489, Ceres, v. 1237, 4288.  
 cernea, vi. 1327.  
 certefie, *v. a.* ii. 963.  
 certain, *a.* i. 237, 1459, iv. 2919 (true), viii. 828, certain, iv. 2506, a certain man, i. 2130, iv. 435, certain thinges, viii. 365, *as subst.* in certain, i. 3215, ii. 1738, v. 7819, in certain, ii. 498.  
 certain, certain, *s.* P. 140, v. 200, vii. 4754, certainty, fixed point.  
 certeinete, *s.* i. 48.  
 certainly, *adv.* ii. 1111, iv. 180, certein-lohe, iv. 942.  
 certes, *adv.* i. 128, 1295, iv. 1726.  
 Cerymon, viii. 1166 ff., 1874.  
 Cesar, P. 714, v. 7107\*, vii. 2449, 2470.  
 cesse, *v. n.* P. 1035, ii. 2903, v. 1852; *v. a.* iv. 230, v. 5366, PP. 76: come to an end, retire; bring to an end.  
 chaoable, *a.* v. 1269.  
 chace, *s.* i. 345, 2296, ii. 2634, iv. 1989, (at tennis) PP. 295.  
 chaced, *see* chase.  
 chaf, *s.* P. 844, ii. 85, 2127, iv. 1710.  
 chaffare, *s.* v. 4522, 6114, merchandise.  
 chaliere, *s.* P. 307, v. 2214, vii. 1208, chaler, viii. 762.  
 Chain, viii. 60, 71.  
 Chaldee, *see* Caldee.  
 chalk, *s.* P. 416, ii. 2346.  
 Cham, Cam, iv. 2396, vii. 546, 577, viii. 83.  
 chamberere, *s.* iii. 826, iv. 1193.  
 chamberlein, *s.* ii. 726, 1232, iv. 2705.  
 chambre, *s.* i. 954, 1737, 2572, 2983.  
 Chamos, vii. 4506.  
 (champartie, iii. 1173, *v. l.*)  
 champion (-oun), *s.* vii. 3252, 3538.  
 chance, chaunce, *s.* P. 70, i. 1583, 1670, ii. 207, iii. 2720, iv. 722, 2792, *pl.* chances, vii. 2362, par (par) chance, ii. 1644, iii. 2604.  
 chance, *v. n.* vii. 2326.  
 chancelierie, *s.* v. 1921.  
 change, *s.* vii. 3274\*.  
 change, *v. a.* P. 119, 208, i. 2696, iv. 1444, chaunge, v. 7123; *v. n.* P. 32, 628, i. 3030, chaunge, PP. 315.  
 chapelet, *s.* v. 7066.  
 chapelle, chapele, *s.* iv. 1137, v. 7110.  
 chapitre, *s.* v. 1959, vi. 617.  
 chapman, *s.* v. 5115, *pl.* chapmen, ii. 3059.  
 chapmanhod(e), *s.* ii. 3067, iv. 2447.  
 char, charr, *s.* i. 2029 ff., iv. 1000, 1205, vii. 851, *genit.* chares, iv. 1208, carriage, car.  
 charge, *s.* P. 301, i. 2822, ii. 1691, 2114,



- iii. 173, iv. 1495, v. 826; no charge (no matter), ii. 1068, *yaf in charge*, iv. 1052.
- charge, *v. a. i.* 1223, ii. 1030, v. 7772, viii. 3103°, command, burden, trust; iv. 2242, blame.
- charge, *s. viii.* 3066, duty.
- charite, *s. P.* 110, i. 2049, 3371, Charite. ii. 3173, vii. 3167, *pl.* charitees, i. 3360.
- charitous, *a. ii.* 3329.
- charke, *v. n. iv.* 2996, creak.
- Charlemeine, *P.* 748, PP. 283, Charles, P. 752.
- charme, *s. v.* 3580, 4067.
- charr, *see* char.
- chartre, *s. i.* 3357.
- chase, *v. a. vii.* 302, *pp.* chased, vii. 5255.
- chaste, *a. P.* 328, i. 847, vii. 4244.
- chastellein, *s. ii.* 725.
- chastete, *s. vii.* 4240, 5387, chastite, *P.* 472.
- chastie, *v. a. i.* 2117, 2900, ii. 38, punish, correct.
- chastement, *s. vii.* 2498.
- chastise, *v. a. iv.* 1242, vi. 2217.
- chastisinge, *s. iv.* 1276.
- chastite, *see* chaastete.
- Chatemua, *vii.* 1462.
- Chaucer, *viii.* 2941°.
- chaunce, *see* chance.
- cheke, *s. i.* 1680, iv. 185, 385, *chieke*, v. 2471, viii. 2827, cheek.
- chela, *s. iii.* 121, v. 7195°, vii. 638, chill.
- Chelidre, *v.* 4129.
- chenes, *s. pl. v.* 151, 681, chains.
- chep, *s.*, good *chep*, v. 1241.
- cherche, *s. P.* 225, 246, &c., iii. 2275, (*chiroche*, PP. 107, 239), *genit.* the *cherche kete*, *P.* 212, v. 1868, *pl.* *cherches*, ii. 3477.
- chere, *see* chiere.
- cherie, *see* chirie.
- cherl, *s. iii.* 1252, v. 148, viii. 1367, *charles knape*, viii. 1374.
- chese, *s. P.* 416, ii. 2346, iii. 502, vi. 644.
- chese, *v. a. n. i.* 1196, 1311, 1819, *pret.* *s. ches*, i. 3281, ii. 2457, *pl.* *choses*, *P.* 805, *imperat.* *ches*, i. 1829, *pp.* *choses(n)*, i. 101, 2088, iv. 2091.
- cheste, *s. P.* 215, iii. 417 ff., v. 541, contention (in words).
- chevanoe, *s. v.* 4424, 6106, profit.
- chide, *chyde*, *v. n. iii.* 492, 534, 553, *pp.* *chidd*, iii. 474, 552.
- chidings, *s. iii.* 443, 565.
- chief, *a. ii.* 2501, vi. 308, *def. pl.* *chief*, v. 1112.
- chief, *s. P.* 149, iii. 2265, chief thing; ii. 1778, iv. 4, leader.
- chieke, *see* cheke.
- chiere, *chere*, *s. P.* 155, i. 141, 341, 619, 1384, 3172, ii. 991, iii. 1081, iv. 1408, *chier*, viii. 2684, face, looks, welcome: *frendly chiere*, i. 2423, *hevy c.*, i. 2871, 3148, *feigned c.*, i. 724, *cp.* ii. 2061, *tok c. on honde*, i. 1767, *make c.*, *P.* 155, ii. 218, iv. 747, 1194, *without lyves chiere* (*i. e.* lifeless), v. 1501.
- chiered, *a.*, *hevy chiered*, viii. 2533.
- chievere, *v. n. vi.* 240, shiver.
- chiewe, *v. n. iii.* 1629, vi. 930.
- child, *s. ii.* 3206, 3258, *chyld*, iv. 1842, 1982, *with childe*, i. 916, ii. 919, of *childe*, v. 1255, *pl.* *children*, i. 2163, ii. 3219.
- childhode, *s. ii.* 793, viii. 319.
- childings, *s. i.* 805, iv. 461, v. 829, child-birth.
- childly, *a. v.* 3020.
- chiminee, *s. vii.* 3951, fire-place.
- chin, *chyn*, *s. i.* 1682, vi. 775, vii. 1892, unto the *chinne*, ii. 3450, v. 372.
- chinche, *v.* 4814, miser.
- chippes, *s. pl. i.* 1918.
- chirie, *cherie*, *s.*, *chirie feire*, *P.* 454, *charie feste*, vi. 891.
- Chiro, *iv.* 1971 ff.
- chitre, *v. v.* 5700, 6011, twitter.
- chivalerie, *s. P.* 723, i. 784, 2462, ii. 1826, iv. 1520, (*chevalerie*, viii. 3007), cavalry, army, prowess.
- chivalerous, *a. i.* 1414, ii. 2517, v. 653.
- chois, *s. i.* 1827, ii. 3391, viii. 70.
- chyme, *v. n. iv.* 547.
- Chymerie, *iv.* 2987.
- Chyo, *v.* 5413.
- Cicorea, *vii.* 1400.
- cilence, *see* sillence.
- Cillene, Cillenius, *vii.* 1599, 1607, Silanus.
- Cillenius, *v.* 143, Silenus.
- Cilly, *vi.* 1424.
- Cimphelus, *v.* 4127.
- Cinichua, *vii.* 2119.
- Ciplo, *vii.* 4187.
- Ciroes, *vi.* 1427, 1461 ff., viii. 2599.
- circumference, *s. vii.* 188.
- circumstance, *s. ii.* 619, iii. 2745, v. 4293.

- Cirophanes**, v. 1525, 1529.  
**Cirus**, P. 679, vii. 1889, 4367.  
**cit**, s. P. 836, city.  
**cite**, **oltee**, s. P. 106, 665, ii. 1344, iii. 459.  
**citesein**, s. P. 842, i. 1007, ii. 680, *fem.*  
**citeseine**, i. 1006.  
**Cithero**, iv. 2648, vii. 1597.  
**citole**, viii. 829, 1487, 2679.  
**Civile**, ii. 83, the civil law.  
**Cizile**, i. 1841, v. 967, 972, 1279, Sicily.  
**Cladyne**, iv. 2407.  
**clamor**, s. P. 514, v. 2394, viii. 2731.  
**claper**, s. iv. 347.  
**clappe**, v. i. 2391, v. 4640.  
**clare**, v. a. viii. 1544, declare.  
**clarion**, s. viii. 2482.  
**Claudius** (Apius), vii. 5132 ff.  
**Claudius** (Marchus), vii. 5167 ff.  
**clause**, s. vii. 85.  
**clawe**, v. n. iv. 2725.  
**(cle)**, s., *pl.* **cles**, i. 2994, iv. 1109, claws.  
**cleime**, *see* **cleyme**.  
**Clemenee**, iv. 985, **Clymene**, v. 6756.  
**clane**, a. ii. 3447: *adv.* i. 587, ii. 1413, vi. 119, **cleane**, iii. 2762.  
**clennesse**, s. iv. 2558, vii. 4447.  
**clense**, v. a. ii. 3463.  
**Cleopatras**, viii. 2573.  
**clepe**, v. a. n. P. 126, 436, i. 744, ii. 849, 3049, v. 1790, *pret.* **clepede**, iv. 842, v. 951, **cleped**, i. 1535.  
**cler**, *see* **clier**.  
**clergesse**, s. vi. 980, clergy: *cp.* **Mirour**, 5546.  
**clergie**, s. P. 281, 955, ii. 3351, iv. 236, learning, clergy.  
**clergoun**, s. ii. 2850.  
**clerk**, **clero**, s. P. 52, i. 2274, iv. 234, *pl.* **clerkes**, P. 194, i. 1856.  
**cleve**, v. n. ii. 577, 2293; v. a., *pp.* **cleft**, v. 4085.  
**cleym**, s. ii. 2706.  
**cleyme(n)**, v. a. ii. 1025, iii. 1973, **cleime**, PP. 59; v. n. ii. 2380, claim.  
**client**, s. iii. 160.  
**clier**, **cler**, a. P. 925, ii. 1888, vi. 431, *def.* **clere**, vii. 1329, *pl.* **cliere**, ii. 195, vii. 2643; *as subst.* vi. 360 f.: *superl.* the **cliereste**, vii. 1311: *adv.* **cler**, vii. 745.  
**cliere**, v. n. viii. 1147, become clear.  
**climat**, s. P. 137, vii. 799, *pl.* **climats**, vii. 684.  
**Climestre**, iii. 1909 ff.  
**clippe** (1), v. a. v. 5591, *pret.* **clipte**, v. 4998, embrace.  
**clippe** (2), v. a. v. 5690, cut.  
**clos**, a. ii. 684 (*def.*), 1346, iv. 2755, in **clos**, i. 1730: *adv.* ii. 469, 3197, iii. 769, iv. 1331.  
**close**, v. a. i. 1275, iv. 2655, 3371, v. 340.  
**closest**, s. i. 897.  
**Clota**, vii. 1320.  
**cloth**, s. i. 2111, 2997, iv. 1534, 2431, 2436, v. 283, 2759, *pl.* **clothes**, iii. 695, iv. 1536.  
**clothe(n)**, v. a. P. 466, i. 612, ii. 1377, *pret.* **cladde**, viii. 652, *pp.* **clothed**, ii. 302, 2271, &c., **clad**, iv. 27, 1306; *refl.* iii. 966; v. n. P. 317, iv. 2236: **clothe**; *be* **clothed**.  
**clothing(e)**, s. v. 214, vi. 989.  
**Cloto**, iv. 2762.  
**cloude**, s. iv. 3063, 3211, v. 1668, viii. 1039, (*pl.* **clowdes**, viii. 3007\*).  
**clowdy**, **cloudy**, a. P. 925, iv. 2843.  
**clue**, s. v. 5343.  
**clymbe**, v. n. ii. 241, 1630, iv. 2726.  
**Clymene**, *see* **Clemenee**.  
**coo**, **cock**, *see* **cock**.  
**Cochitum**, v. 1110.  
**Codrus**, vii. 3183.  
**coevere** (1), *see* **covera**.  
**coevere** (2), v. n. viii. 1201, recover.  
**coffre**, **cofre**, **cophra**, s. P. 314, ii. 2257, v. 33, 2079.  
**coign**, s. v. 335, coin.  
**coigne**, v. a. iv. 2448, coin.  
**coise**, s. i. 1734.  
**coo** (1), **cook**, s. iv. 3003, v. 4099, viii. 159, **cock**.  
**coo** (2), **coo**, s. v. 4072, vi. 641, 716, *pl.* **ookes**, vi. 623, **cook**.  
**cockard**, s. v. 2803, fool.  
**cookerie**, s. iv. 2433.  
**cockel**, **cockel**, v. 1881, 1884.  
**colblak**, a. iii. 808.  
**Colchos**, v. 3265 ff., 4244, 4354, 6609, 7199, viii. 2520.  
**cold**, a. ii. 1966, *def.* **cold**, iv. 422, vii. 1205, *pl.* **colds**, iii. 299, iv. 405.  
**cold**, s. P. 977, i. 2421, iv. 1090.  
**cold**, v. n. vi. 241, grow cold.  
**cole**, s. v. 6204, coal.  
**Collacea**, vii. 4806, 4911.  
**collacioun**, s. ii. 2328, iv. 1144, conference, contrivance.  
**Collatin**, vii. 4775 ff., viii. 2633.  
**colour**, s. i. 606, 692, 1113, 2701, ii. 1874, iii. 2394, iv. 2981, colour, kind, pretence.  
**coloure**, v. a. vii. 1625.

colre, *s. vii.* 431, 459, *choler.*  
**comande**, *v. a. n. i.* 1275, 3240, *iii.* 2064, 2288, *comaunde*, *P. 30\**, *iv.* 2794.  
**commandement**, *s. P.* 84, *i.* 2790, *ii.* 3200.  
**commandinge**, **comandynge**, *P. 54\**, *i.* 1335.  
**combes**, *s. pl. i.* 1749.  
**come(n)**, *v. n. P.* 11, 419, *i.* 902, &c., *2 s. pres. comst*, *v.* 3448, *3 s. pres. cometh*, *P. 853*, *comth*, *i.* 193, *pret. i.* 3 *sing. com*, *P. 1017*, *ii.* 2073, *cam*, *P. 236*, *i.* 1185, *2 s. come*, *viii.* 2076, *pl. come(n)*, *i.* 835, 2048, *iv.* 1307, *imperial. com*, *i.* 197, 1617, *pp. come(n)*, *P. 703*, 731, *iv.* 1283.  
**comelihiede**, **comlihied**, *s. v.* 2598, 6734.  
**comely**, *a. ii.* 441, *superl. def. comelieste*, *v.* 3048.  
**comendacioun**, *s. vii.* 1779.  
**comende**, **commende**, *v. a. P.* 493, *i.* 3361, *iii.* 2264, *iv.* 1794, *v.* 6358, 7677, (*pp. comendid*, *viii.* 3009).  
**cominge**, *s. ii.* 800, *iv.* 819, 1529, *comynge*, *i.* 1599, *ii.* 1336, *iv.* 2961.  
**comlihied**, *see comelihiede*.  
**commandement**, *see commandement*.  
**commende**, *see comende*.  
**commooved**, *pp. vii.* 3361, *moved*.  
**commun**, **commune**, *see comun*, &c.  
**compaignie**, *s. P.* 288, *i.* 735, 1478, 1780, *ii.* 306, *v.* 4558, *compainie*, *v.* 2081, 7759, *compainie*, *vii.* 1674, *company*, *friendliness: per compaignie*, *vii.* 3752, *together*.  
**comparisoun** (-on), *s. P.* 916, *i.* 2283, *v.* 6598.  
**compas**, *s. ii.* 2341, *contrivance*, *vii.* 229, *circle*.  
**compasse**, *v. a. n. P.* 58\*, *i.* 5, 518, 1893, *ii.* 409, 806, *vii.* 3464, 4076, *surround*, *contrive*, *achieve*.  
**compassement**, *s. ii.* 2323, *iii.* 889.  
**compassioun** (-on), *s. iii.* 2722, *vi.* 170.  
**compense**, *v. a. iii.* 2554, *v.* 4505.  
**compiled**, *pp. vi.* 1382.  
**compleigne**, *v. a. i.* 114, *ii.* 188, 1301, *iv.* 1586; *refl. v.* 1903, *viii.* 2541; *v. n. i.* 965, 1380, *ii.* 264: *mourn for*, *mourn*, *murmur*, *complain*.  
**compleignte**, *s. P.* 516, *i.* 1345.  
**compleignynge**, *s. iii.* 1425.  
**complexioun** (-on), *s. P.* 975, *i.* 1498, *ii.* 3256, *v.* 2647, *vii.* 383 ff.  
**compone**, *v. a. iv.* 2643, *vii.* 1590.  
**composicioun**, *s. P.* 814, *agreement*.

**comprehende**, *v. a. pp. v.* 1735, *vi.* 2435, *vii.* 33, *contain*, *include*.  
**compte**, *v. a. i.* 1567, *vi.* 1268.  
**comun**, **commun**, *a. P.* 124, 377, 1082, *i.* 2695, *v.* 1117, 2235, *comune*, *vi.* 2432, *vii.* 1991, (*common*, *PP.* 114).  
**comune**, *s. P.* 499, *i.* 651, *ii.* 1844, *comun*, *P. 1066 f.*, *v.* 3759, *common* *people*, *commonalty*.  
**comune**, **commune**, *v. a. i.* 70, 775, *iv.* 754, *v.* 984, *vii.* 2709; *v. n. i.* 652, *vi.* 606, 2431, *vii.* 2200: *join*, *communicate*, *share*; *associate*, *converse*, *share*.  
**comunliche**, *adv. i.* 803, *ii.* 3058, **comunly**, *i.* 1352, *ii.* 367.  
**comynge**, *see cominge*.  
**conceite**, **conoeipte**, *s. P.* 113, *ii.* 2311, *vii.* 1554, 1807.  
**conceive**, *v. a. n. i.* 830, *ii.* 2902, *iv.* 2561, *v.* 458.  
**concele**, *v. v.* 4635.  
**conclawe**, *s. ii.* 2812.  
**conclude**, *v. n. i.* 250, *iv.* 2316; *v. a. ii.* 777, *viii.* 2048, 2712.  
**conclusioun** (-on), *s. P.* 575, *i.* 249, 3085, *iii.* 1816.  
**concordable**, *a. ii.* 2799, *iii.* 2438, *suitable*.  
**concubine**, *s. v.* 6757, *vii.* 4495, *viii.* 2693.  
**concupiscence**, *s. vii.* 5223, *viii.* 293.  
**condicioun** (-on), *s. P.* 805, 1029, *i.* 846, 1373, 2284, *ii.* 314, 1318, 3271, *iv.* 1784, *v.* 386, 4380, *condition*, *state of things*, *disposition*.  
**conduit**, *r.* *sauf conduit*, *v.* 994.  
**confesscion**, *s. vi.* 654.  
**conferme(n)**, *v. a. P.* 811, *ii.* 388, *viii.* 3164.  
**confesse**, *v. refl. and n. i.* 1393, 1952, *ii.* 219, 738, 1734.  
**confessioun**, **confession**, *s. i.* 202, 1374, *v.* 4379, *viii.* 2891.  
**confirmacion**, *s. ii.* 2938.  
**conforme**, *v. a. ii.* 608, *iv.* 216, 3110.  
**confort**, *s. ii.* 261, 1562, *iv.* 800, 2568, (*comfort*, *PP.* 4).  
**conforte**, *v. a. i.* 916, 1001, *ii.* 1065, *vii.* 2143; *refl. v.* 3653, *viii.* 1214.  
**confortinge**, *s. viii.* 336.  
**confounde**, *v. a. P.* 290, *i.* 3093, *iv.* 300.  
**confusioun**, *s. P.* 852, *i.* 3086.  
**congele**, *v. a. v.* 3306, 7202, *dismiss*.  
**congelacion**, *s. iv.* 2514.  
**congele**, *v. a. vii.* 338.

**congruite**, *s.* iv. 2646, vii. 1531.  
**conjoint**, *a.* vii. 502, 1259, joined.  
**conjunction**, *s.* vi. 1961.  
**conjure**, *s.* v. 3580.  
**conjure**, *v. n.* vi. 1976.  
**conne**, *konne*, *kunne*, *v.* ii. 1215, v. 928, 2909, i, 3 *s. pres.* oan, kan, ii. 3496, iv. 2334, vii. 4144, 2 *s. canst.* v. 4623, *pl.* **cunne**, *kunne*, iv. 2390, v. 5544, *subj.* **conne**, i. 264, *pref.* **cowthe**, **couthie**, ii. 1214, iv. 374, vi. 1441, 2 *s. couthest*, **couthist**, vii. 2298, 2301; **cowthe him thonk**, ii. 1007; **know**: i, 3 *s. pres.* can, P. 60, i. 28, *pl.* **conne**, i. 506, 1505, ii. 2116, iii. 2297, **cunnen**, vii. 2172, *pref.* **cowthe**, **couthie**, P. 1073, i. 30, 536, **cowde**, **coude**, iv. 1255, 1540, **know how to**, be able to.  
**connyng**, *s.* vii. 671.  
**connoissance**, *s.* vi. 1638.  
**conquere**, *v. n.* iii. 1649.  
**conquerour**, *s.* iii. 1286, vii. 893.  
**conqueste**, *s.* P. 709, v. 3413, (**conqwaste**, P. 42).  
**Conrade**, vii. 2833.  
**conseile**, *see* **conseile**.  
**consailer**, *see* **consellour**.  
**conscience**, *s.* P. 297, i. 595, 1236, 2429, ii. 2390, 2844, iii. 11, 1504, iv. 792, v. 1847, feeling, conscience, sense of guilt.  
**conseil**, **consail**, P. 146, 156, i. 609, 888, 1018, 1097, 1395, ii. 687, 1891, 3415, v. 3904 (secret), vii. 2076 (advocate); **in conseil** (secretly), vi. 2326, hold **conseil** (be silent), iii. 778, **prive conseil**, ii. 1917, **conseil hous**, vii. 2851, **conseile**, viii. 2071, (**counsell**, P. 129).  
**conseile**, **conseile**, **conseille**, *v. a. n.* i. 1123, 2950, ii. 1457, 1685, 2708, iii. 1163, iv. 3430, 3464 (ask advice); *refl.* iii. 2727, vii. 3188.  
**consellour**, **conseller**, **consailer**, *s.* iii. 1538, v. 2861, vii. 3148, (**counsellour**, P. 128).  
**consente**, *v. n.* iv. 2797.  
**conserve**, *s.* vi. 636, vii. 54, **conserve**, preserver.  
**consideracion**, *s.* vii. 2749.  
**consistoire**, *s.* ii. 2908.  
**conspire**, *v. n.* i. 1206, ii. 2170, 2834, ii. 2945; *v. a.* i. 1173, 1504, ii. 2329: **conspire**; agree upon, contrive.  
**conspirement**, *s.* ii. 1704.  
**Constance**, ii. 597 ff., **Constantine**, ii. 706.

**constance**, *s.* vii. 1757, steadfastness.  
**Constantin** (1), **Constantinus**, P. 743, ii. 3188, 3339, 3449, vii. 3137, PP. 339, **Constantine the Great**.  
**Constantin** (2), ii. 590, **Tiberius Constantinus**.  
**Constantin** (3), P. 740, **Constantine V.**  
**Constantinople**, vii. 1261.  
**constellacion** (-oun), *s.* P. 532, i. 393, 1506, iv. 3247, v. 755, vi. 2253.  
**constreigne**, *v. a.* iii. 347, iv. 486, 3529.  
**constreignte**, *s.* viii. 3018.  
**consul**, ii. 1775, vii. 1598, 2785.  
**contak**, *s.* iii. 1093 ff., 2735, (**contekt**, viii. 3015).  
**contemplacion** (-oun), *s.* v. 7126, viii. 1838.  
**contempt**, *s.* ii. 1722.  
**contenance**, **contienance**, **contenaunce**, *s.* i. 698, ii. 1419, iii. 2404, iv. 380, 1180, 3155, v. 476, 694, **continance**, ii. 3116; bearing, expression, self-control.  
**contrepeise**, *see* **contrepeise**.  
**continence**, *s.* P. 472.  
**continuance**, *s.* iv. 187, 368, v. 1565.  
**continue**, *v. n.* iv. 508.  
**continuinge**, *s.* vii. 5003.  
**contourbed**, *pp.* i. 222.  
**contraire**, *a.* i. 2356, iv. 1803; **in contraire**, i. 631, 3416, iii. 2400; *as subst.* the **contraire**, P. 554, 979.  
**contraire**, *s.* vii. 4025, trouble.  
**contrariende**, *pres. part.* P. 555.  
**contre**, *s.* P. 729, ii. 1453, iii. 1312, *pl.* **contres**, iii. 1843, (**contreses**, viii. 3014).  
**contrefet**, *a.* i. 832, 1127, feigned, false.  
**contrefete**, *v. a.* ii. 2476, *pp.* **contrefet**, ii. 982.  
**contrepeise**, **conterpeise**, *v. a.* vii. 1505, 3118.  
**contretalle**, *s.* viii. 3102\*.  
**contrevaille**, **contrevaille**, *v. a.* P. 728, ii. 3313.  
**contricoun**, *s.* i. 214.  
**controeve**, *v. n.* iv. 936, 2454, **contrive** (to); *v. a.*, *pref. pl.* **controeveden**, vii. 187, *pp.* **controved**, ii. 1708, **devise**.  
**controvinge**, *s.* vi. 2372.  
**conveie**, *v. a.* ii. 1125, iv. 203, viii. 2986\*.  
**convenient**, *a.* v. 7190\*, vii. 1982, fitting.  
**converten**, *v. a.* ii. 601, 639, iv. 1676, (*pp.* **convert**, v. 1906\*.)  
**coope**, *s.* iv. 1315, 2979, vii. 534, **coupe**, vii. 1579, cloak, covering, vault.  
**coper**, *s.* iv. 2473.  
**coppe**, *see* **coupe**.



**Cor Scorpionis**, vii. 1410.  
**corage**, *s.* P. 111, 448, i. 780, 833, ii. 1338, iv. 391, heart, spirit, disposition.  
**corde**, *s.* iv. 2431, 3592, v. 4989.  
**corn**, *s.* P. 844, iv. 2376, *pl.* **cornes**, iv. 2442, v. 1244.  
**cornemuse**, *s.* viii. 2483, bagpipe.  
**Cornide**, iii. 785, 801.  
**Cornix**, v. 6183.  
**coronal**, *s.* iv. 1326.  
**corone**, *s.* P. 33\*, i. 2461, iv. 1323.  
**corone**, **coroune**, *v. a.* P. 765, ii. 1595, iii. 2171.  
**corps**, *s.* iv. 2499, 3657, **cors**, iii. 2075, *pl.* **corps**, v. 2207, body.  
**corrant**, *a.* vii. 352, running.  
**corrupcioun**, *s.* P. 986.  
**corrupt**, *a.* P. 922, ii. 1732, v. 765.  
**cors**, *see* **corps**.  
**corse**, *see* **curse**.  
**cortaisly**, *see* **courtaisly**.  
**Corvus**, iii. 796.  
**cost**, *s.* (1), i. 3105, ii. 363, 2347, **cost**.  
**cost**, *s.* (2), *see* **coste**.  
**costage**, *s.* i. 3104.  
**coste**, *v. n.* i. 3273.  
**coste**, **cooste**, *s.* i. 499, viii. 619, **cost**, vii. 885, coast, country.  
**costeiant**, *a.* ii. 2551, bordering.  
**costne**, *v. n.* i. 3313, **cost**.  
**cote**, *s.* i. 2999, ii. 2270, iv. 1355, v. 7716, coat.  
**cotidian**, *a.* v. 464.  
**couard**, *a.* iv. 611; *subst.* iv. 2301.  
**couardie**, *s.* iv. 1934, vii. 1860.  
**couche**, *s.* iv. 3015, v. 160, viii. 1193.  
**couche**, *v. n.* i. 1261; *v. a.* iv. 2710, *pp.* **couched**, viii. 2255.  
**coude**, *see* **conne**.  
**coupable**, *a.* P. 582, ii. 275, iii. 1120, iv. 1503.  
**coupe**, *see* **cope**.  
**couple**, *s.* vii. 4437.  
**coupled**, *v. a. pp.* v. 657, viii. 277.  
**courbe**, *s.* v. 956, hump.  
**courbe**, *a.* i. 1687, bent.  
**cours**, *s.* i. 509, 2637, iii. 1031, iv. 1270.  
**courser**, *s.* vi. 1188, **coursier**, vii. 856.  
**court**, *s.* P. 219, i. 1410.  
**courtaisly**, **cortaisly**, *adv.* i. 2108, viii. 1695.  
**courteis**, **curteis**, *a.* iv. 2300, v. 155, vi. 1992.  
**courteour**, *s.* i. 1410, v. 7125\*.  
**courtesie**, **curtesie**, *s.* ii. 1214, v. 169, 5397.

**courtins**, *s. pl.* i. 1787, curtains.  
**cousin**, *s.* P. 778, vii. 4776, viii. 106, *fem.* **cousine**, ii. 1201, viii. 106.  
**cousinage**, *s.* i. 1437, v. 4672, viii. 104.  
**Couste**, ii. 1163, 1401 ff., **Custe**, ii. 1219.  
**couth**, *a. see* **cowth**.  
**couth**, *v. see* **conne**.  
**coveite**, *v. a. n.* ii. 238, v. 262, 6379.  
**coveitise**, *s.* P. 263, iii. 2308, v. 223, **covoitise**, v. 1976 ff., vii. 2013, covetousness.  
**coveitous**, *a.* ii. 317, *def.* **covoitouse**, vii. 2168, *pl.* **coveitouse**, v. 4800, the **coveitous** (*subst.*), ii. 335.  
**covenable**, *a.* v. 2675, 6112, suitable.  
**covenant**, *s.* i. 686, 948.  
**cover**, **coever**, *v. a.* i. 432, iv. 2092.  
**covert**, *a.* ii. 2033, vii. 4942, *pl.* **coverte**, iv. 1606; in **covert**, iv. 3206, v. 1666: *adv.* v. 6499.  
**coverture**, *s.* i. 645, ii. 1939, iv. 1102.  
**covine**, *s.* i. 29, 819, ii. 676, 683, 1895, 2115, iii. 2267, (**covyne**, vii. 2335\*, viii. 3016), company, agreement, device, conspiracy.  
**covined**, *pp.* i. 1102, agreed.  
**covoitise**, **covoitous**, *see* **coveitise**, &c.  
**cow**, *s.* iv. 3323 ff.  
**cowde**, *see* **conne**.  
**cowth**, **couth**, *a.* ii. 432, iii. 2109, iv. 2543, v. 389, *pl.* **cowthe**, i. 2862, known.  
**cowthe**, *v. see* **conne**.  
**crabbe**, *s.* vii. 1053.  
**craft**, *s.* i. 1136, 1749, ii. 1849, iv. 925, **craftes**, iv. 1048, 2667.  
**crafteliche**, *adv.* i. 1755.  
**craftl**, *a.* i. 1091, skilful.  
**crake**, *v. n.* vii. 305, burst.  
**Crassus**, v. 2069.  
**crave**, *v. a.* i. 1362, 3343, ii. 329, iii. 1306, iv. 3290, v. 189; *v. n.* iv. 54, vii. 2427: ask for, ask.  
**creacion**, *s.* v. 933, vii. 203.  
**creance**, *s.* ii. 754, iii. 2505, v. 783.  
**creatour**, *s.* ii. 3436, v. 778.  
**creature**, *s.* P. 911, i. 1529, v. 779.  
**crede**, *s.* iii. 478, v. 2912, 7119.  
**credence**, *s.* i. 533, 707, ii. 867, iv. 2921, v. 743, belief, faith.  
**credible**, *a.* P. 574, vii. 128, 2528.  
**Creon**, v. 4195.  
**crepe**, *v. n.* v. 1893\*, 5109, *pret.* **crepte**, i. 908, *pp.* **crope**, ii. 1141.  
**(Fa) crere**, ii. 2122 ff.  
**cesce**, *v. n.* viii. 29, increase.  
**creste**, *s.* v. 6044.

**Cresus**, iv. 1325 (*genit.*), v. 4730.  
**Crete**, iii. 1939, 1968, v. 845, 981, 1169, 1222, 3994, 4018, 5232 ff.  
**Creusa**, v. 2540, 4196, 4203, viii. 2505.  
**cri**, **cry**, s. i. 375, 2188, iii. 545, 1055, iv. 3600.  
**crie(n)**, v. a. n. i. 955, 1369, iii. 222, iv. 3066, vii. 3649, **crye**, viii. 1417, 3 s. *pres.*  
**orith**, i. 2338, iv. 3619, *pres.* **oride**, i. 2326, 3167, *pp.* **oryd**, iv. 1857, **orid**, viii. 679, **cry**, lament, pray for, proclaim.  
**cringe**, s. vii. 3323.  
**Crise**, i. 1085, **Crisea**, v. 6444.  
**Criseide** (1), v. 7597, viii. 2531, **Criseida**, ii. 2456.  
**Criseide** (2), v. 6444.  
**crisolitus**, vii. 1422.  
**Crist**, *genit.* **Cristes**, P. 165, 237 ff., 749 ff., 1032, i. 664, ii. 587 ff., 1597, 2503, 3354, 3466, iii. 1121, 2288, 2494 ff., 2547, iv. 1662 ff., v. 747, 1752 ff., 6390, 7001, 7106\*, vi. 975 ff., vii. 3157\*, viii. 141, 3030\* f., PP. 50, 120, 156 ff.  
**cristall**, s. iv. 1322\*, v. 5066, vii. 1325.  
**cristendom**, s. ii. 746, 3454, Christianity.  
**cristene**, s. *pl.* P. 898, Christians: a. PP. 380; *superl.* the **cristeneate**, ii. 1598.  
**cristne**, v. a. ii. 908, 3474.  
**Croceus**, v. 4835, 4860.  
**croia**, s. ii. 770, 3392, v. 1722.  
**crok**, s. v. 2872, vii. 2268, 4892, **crook**, crookedness, device.  
**croke**, v. a. v. 522, bend.  
**croked**, a. iii. 440.  
**croket**, s. v. 7065, curl.  
**cronique**, **cronique**, P. 101, i. 759, 1994, 3059, *pl.* **croniques**, iv. 2395.  
**crop**, s. P. 118, *pl.* **croppes**, vii. 4678, top.  
**Cropheon**, iii. 2022.  
**crossen**, v. a. i. 1165, set (sails).  
**crouche**, s. ii. 390, cross.  
**crowe**, v. a. iv. 3003, announce by crowing.  
**crowe**, s. iv. 3001, v. 6206.  
**crualte**, s. P. 49, iii. 235, 2149, (**crualte**, viii. 2997\*).  
**cruel**, a. iii. 15, 2000, iv. 1509.  
**crumme**, s. vi. 1003.  
**cry**, *see* **cri**.  
**cunne**, *see* **conne**.  
**cunnyng**, a. vi. 2437, skilled.  
**Cupide**, i. 124, ii. 39, iii. 169, 1351, 1463, 1695, iv. 488, 496, 1242, 1265, 1275, 1471,

1684, 1692, 3558, v. 1405, 1419, 1485, 4802, 4827, 5819, 5843, vi. 345, viii. 2172 ff., 2453 ff., **Cupido**, ii. 2470, iii. 907, iv. 1733, viii. 2745.  
**cupps**, **coppe**, s. P. 343, i. 2474, ii. 699, iv. 399, v. 285.  
**cure**, s. P. 211, i. 132, 1507, 3211, ii. 1083, 3054, iv. 1744, v. 1492, 1915, 2655, charge (of parish, &c.), care, help, remedy.  
**cured**, a. P. 211, with spiritual charge.  
**curiosite**, s. viii. 3114, artful skill.  
**curious**, a. i. 1524, iv. 922, v. 6816, vii. 760, careful, inquisitive.  
**course**, v. n. i. 1369, iv. 2834; v. a. v. 557, **coorse**, v. 7354.  
**curse**, s. v. 6989, **curse**.  
**cursinge**, s. P. 274, ii. 2979.  
**curteis**, *see* **courteis**.  
**curtesie**, *see* **courtesie**.  
**oua**, s. v. 6558, kiss.  
**custumance**, s. v. 1117.  
**custumme**, **custume**, s. vi. 532, viii. 685, 1616.  
**custummer**, s. ii. 1928.  
**Cusy**, ii. 3092.  
**cutte**, *see* **kutte**.

## D

**Daily**, vii. 361.  
**Dace**, v. 884.  
**dai**, **day**, s. P. 59, 163, i. 812, 1991, **al dai**, ii. 1899, **to day**, iv. 2216, **fro dai** **to dai**, v. 1586, **be daie**, iii. 148, v. 1265, **have good day**, iv. 2814, **now a day**, ii. 444, *cp.* **aday**, *genit.* **daies**, i. 1470, 1812, *pl.* **daies**, P. 36, i. 761, 2273, **on daies nou**, iv. 1731, **nou on d.**, v. 4913, *cp.* **adaies**: *see also* **dawe**.  
**Daires**, *genit.* v. 1063.  
**Daires**, *see* **Darius**.  
**dale**, s. i. 356, iv. 1583.  
**Dalida**, viii. 2703.  
**dame**, s. i. 2551, ii. 749, **ma dame**, i. 168, iv. 1374.  
**damoiselle**, s. v. 1352.  
**dampnacion**, s. v. 1360.  
**dampne**, v. a. i. 1032, ii. 880, v. 4922, condemn.  
**dance**, *see* **daunce**.  
**danger**, *see* **daunger**.  
**dangerous**, a. v. 6442, reluctant.

- Daniel, P. 590 ff., 1039, i. 2859 ff., vi. 1405.  
 dansinge, s. iv. 1530.  
 Dante, vii. 2329.  
 dante, *see* daunte.  
 Danubie, ii. 1819.  
 dang, s. i. 3395, vii. 50, 1459, (used as a title).  
 Daphne, iii. 1686 ff.  
 dar, v. n. i. s. *pres.* i. 1222, 2765, 2 s. darat, iv. 617, 3 *pl.* dar, iv. 345, 350, *pres. subj.* dore, iv. 2825, *pret.* dorste, i. 3157, iii. 196, iv. 3485, dorat, ii. 1633, *pret. subj.* durste, iii. 486, 1622, 2 s. duretest, iv. 40: dare.  
 Darius, P. 691, Daires, vii. 1785.  
 dart, s. i. 144, iii. 1700, iv. 1994, *pl.* dartes, iv. 1274.  
 daunce, v. n. iv. 2779, vi. 143, dance, viii. 2467, 2682.  
 daunger, danger, s. i. 2443, ii. 1110, iii. 1537 ff., iv. 1149, 1641, 2813, 2903, 3589, v. 1389, 6620 ff., viii. 2264: *see note on* i. 2443.  
 daunsinge, s. v. 3143.  
 daunte, v. a. i. 469, 2390, 2562, iii. 177, iv. 2072, dante, v. 7220, tame, conquer.  
 David, ii. 3088, vi. 95, vii. 3860 ff., 4345, viii. 2690, PP. 282.  
 dawe, s. i. 2125, of dawes, vii. 2883 (dead), *pl.* dawes, i. 2794, iv. 3318: *cp.* dai.  
 de (Langharet), ii. 2995.  
 debat, s. P. 106, 567, i. 2920, ii. 1907, strife, dispute.  
 debate, v. n. P. 928, i. 2453, iii. 2731; v. a. P. 998, vii. 1640, 1744: contend; contend for, contend against.  
 debonaire, a. P. 553, i. 231, iii. 601, v. 176, vi. 863.  
 decas, s. P. 837, destruction.  
 deceipte, s. P. 541, i. 676, 753, iii. 184, deceite, P. 114.  
 deceivable, a. ii. 1698, deceived; ii. 2202, 3018, deceitful.  
 deceivant, a. i. 1214, iv. 2076; *as subst.* ii. 1875.  
 deceive, v. a. i. 417, 751, viii. 2344: v. n. i. 1207.  
 Decembre, vii. 1281, 4301.  
 decerte, s. i. 614, 1354, 3277, iii. 2293, iv. 1605, *pl.* decertes, vii. 2049, service, merit.  
 decerve, *see* deserve.  
 deceas, s. v. 3253, vii. 4516.  
 decide, v. a. P. 334, vii. 52, PP. 256.  
 declaracion, s. iv. 2228.  
 declare, v. n. i. 3436, iv. 312, v. 1380; v. a. i. 73, v. 7399.  
 ded, a. i. 982, 3115, ii. 1855, *def.* dede, ii. 840, 2647, iv. 2890, the dede, (*as subst.*), i. 1445, *pl.* dede, P. 9, i. 1037, iv. 1959, dead, killed.  
 Dedalion, iv. 2933.  
 Dedalus, iv. 1039, v. 5286.  
 dede, s. P. 228, i. 634, 1851, in dede, i. 2933, iii. 329.  
 dedly, dedli, a. P. 904, i. 577, ii. 2571, iii. 274, iv. 2163, vi. 7, dedlich (*def.*), vii. 5089, viii. 1355; *adv.* iii. 1579, v. 6759.  
 deduit, s. viii. 2847, delight.  
 dee, s. v. 2437, *pl.* dees, i. 54, iv. 1095, 1778, 2792, die, *pl.* dice.  
 def, a. iv. 585.  
 deface, *see* desface.  
 defalte, s. P. 502, i. 1510, ii. 1856, iv. 1253, in mi defalte, in thi d., iv. 3482, 3588, defaulte, v. 537, vi. 271, defaute, vii. 260, failure, want, fault.  
 defame, s. v. 5925, vii. 2055.  
 defence, defense, s. P. 218, 388, ii. 1806, iv. 1026, v. 1710, 5638, prohibition, protection.  
 defende, v. a. P. 421, i. 567, ii. 3411, iii. 2263, 2769, iv. 1672, 2338, protect, forbid.  
 defie (1), defye, v. a. n. i. 1043, iii. 503, vi. 723, 1203 ff., dissolve, digest.  
 defie (2), deffie, v. a. iv. 2848, vii. 2246, viii. 1066, defy.  
 defloure, v. a. v. 5812.  
 defoule, v. a. i. 977, 2835, iii. 2534, v. 2197, vi. 574; v. n. iii. 586, pollute, destroy, outrage.  
 degre, degree, s. P. 50, 798, 930, i. 751, 1256, 2234, ii. 1224, v. 1688, condition, state, manner; *be* degrees (degrees), i. 258, iv. 2490, in gradation.  
 Deianire, Deianyra, ii. 2154 ff., iv. 2048 ff., Deyanire, viii. 2561.  
 Deidamie, v. 3046 ff., Deydamie, viii. 2567.  
 dela, *see* dye.  
 deificacion, s. v. 934, 1173.  
 deifle, v. a. v. 776, 1148, 1494.  
 deigne, v. n. vi. 293, 1002; *impers.* i. 2099, iv. 3564.  
 deinte, *see* deynite.  
 deintefull, a. vi. 813.  
 del, *see* diel.  
 delale, dealaie, v. a. 1434, iv. 1755, 3399, vii. 5042, viii. 445; v. n. ii. 1020.

- delalement**, *s.* iv. 226, v. 5088.  
**delate**, *v. a.* vii. 3103, set forth.  
**delay**, *s. n.* 824, 3418.  
**Delbora** (1), iv. 2437.  
**Delbora** (2), viii. 66, *acc.* Delboram, viii. 72.  
**dele**, *v. n.* i. 1225, 2762, ii. 3202, iii. 69, iv. 333, have to do, deal, consult.  
**deliberacioun**, *s.* viii. 2302.  
**delicacie**, *s. P.* 325, iv. 2434, vi. 608 ff.  
**delicat**, *a.* vi. 666 ff., vii. 909.  
**delice**, *s.* vi. 795, *pl.* **delices**, i. 2673, iv. 1671, v. 876, delight.  
**delicious**, *a.* vi. 671, 957, delightful, delicate.  
**delit**, *s. i.* 442, iv. 384, 3014, v. 187 ff., pleasure, charm.  
**delitable**, *a.* v. 2676.  
**delite**, *v. n. and refl.* i. 2688, iv. 3357, vi. 510, (*delyte*, viii. 3096\*).  
**deliverance**, *s. i.* 1524, v. 1657.  
**delivere**, *a.* vii. 1855, viii. 681, active; *adv.* vii. 458, readily.  
**delivere**, *v. a.* v. 3549, *pp.* **delivered** (of childbirth), ii. 935, iii. 202, iv. 459.  
**Delos**, v. 1256.  
**Delphos**, v. 1071.  
**delve**, *v. a. n.* P. 352, i. 3256, v. 2159, dig, dig for.  
**demande**, *s. i.* 3071, ii. 2973, iv. 2793, viii. 1489.  
**deme**, *dieme*, *v. a.* P. 537, i. 1892, 2014, iii. 2101, iv. 1770; *v. n.* iii. 340, 750, 1216, v. 5152, **deeme**, vii. 2311: judge of, think good, condemn; decide, be judge.  
**demeine**, *s.* viii. 2226, *pl.* **demeynes**, v. 1332, possession.  
**demene**, *v. a.* ii. 1101, deal with.  
**Demophon**, iii. 1764, 1807, iv. 731 ff 2555.  
**Demetrius**, ii. 1619 ff.  
**demeynes**, *see* **demeine**.  
**demonstracioun** (-on), *s. v.* 7164\*, vi. 1346.  
**dendides**, vii. 842, (name of a stone).  
**dep**, *a.* v. 4947, **depe**, (*def.*) iv. 1715, (*pl.*) i. 3069: *subst.* the **depe**, ii. 1035.  
**departe(n)**, *v. a.* P. 468, 643, i. 2935, iv. 1317, v. 602, 1689, divide, distribute; *v. n.* P. 169, ii. 2645, iii. 2750, iv. 2833, be separated, depart.  
**departings**, *s.* ii. 320.  
**depe**, *adv.* i. 1679; *comp.* **deppere**, ii. 2070.  
**depos**, *s.* ii. 1757, *see note*.  
**depose**, *v. a.* ii. 1017, 2750, vii. 3225, depose, put down.  
**depthe**, *s.* vii. 180.  
**deputacion**, *s.* vii. 2750.  
**dere**, *v. a.* i. 1997, 2766, vii. 3803, **derie**, vi. 1520, injure.  
**dere**, *a.* *see* **diere**.  
**derie**, *see* **dere**.  
**derk**, *a.* P. 941, iii. 984, *def.* **derke**, ii. 1892, iv. 815, 2843, *vol.* i. 956, *pl.* **derke**, i. 634: *as subst.* the **derke**, v. 1893, viii. 1691.  
**derke**, *v. n.* viii. 604, grow dark; *v. a.* viii. 967, 3008\*, **darken**.  
**derne**, *a.* i. 1932, secret.  
**derthe**, *s.* v. 4284.  
**desallowe**, *v. a.* i. 1237, **desalowe**, PP. 242.  
**descencion**, *s.* iv. 2515.  
**descende**, *v. n.* v. 4579, viii. 2787.  
**descente**, *s.* vii. 1789, 3432.  
**deserve**, *see* **deserve**.  
**descharge**, *s.* viii. 3104\*.  
**descharge**, *v. a.* P. 302, set free.  
**deselos**, **diselos**, *a.* iii. 192, 770, made known: *adv.* v. 6724, openly.  
**desclose**, *v. a.* i. 3401, iii. 435, v. 4030, **disclose**, viii. 1237.  
**descoovere**, **discoovere**, **discovers**, *v. a.* i. 2630, ii. 2054, 2384, iii. 778, 794.  
**descoloured**, *a.* viii. 1908.  
**desconfit**, *v. a.* *pp.* iii. 2467, vii. 2579, 3827, **disconfit**, vii. 4428, defeated.  
**descord**, **discord**, *s.* P. 121, 1046, iii. 1162, iv. 1734.  
**descordable**, *a.* v. 2929, out of accord.  
**descordant**, *a.* vii. 1020, 2314.  
**descorde**, **discorde**, *v. n.* ii. 1893, v. 2926, vii. 398, viii. 2024.  
**deseres**, *s.* vii. 2054.  
**descripcioun**, *s.* vii. 1760.  
**descrive**, *v. a.* i. 1690, iii. 468, iv. 2406, **descryve**, vi. 1110.  
**desdeign**, *s.* i. 2058, 2359, ii. 1714, iv. 2332, v. 6453.  
**desdeigne**, *v. a.* i. 1243, v. 4804, viii. 2342.  
**desert**, *a.* vii. 585, *pl.* **deserte**, vii. 2164.  
**desert**, *s.* iv. 2056, v. 1665.  
**deserve**, *v. a. n.* P. 71\*, 708, i. 170, 738, 1119, 2132, ii. 1279, 3268, iv. 3577, PP. 278, **decerve**, v. 4575, **deserve**, vii. 3934, earn, deserve.  
**desese**, *s.* P. 178, 1007, i. 2881, ii. 50.



- disease, *iv.* 1475, (*desease*, *viii.* 3018), trouble.  
 desese, *v.* *a.* *ii.* 3010, *vi.* 64, *pp.* *deseesed*, *i.* 1352, *ii.* 248, *iv.* 209.  
 desespeir, *s.* *iv.* 3687, *vii.* 3727, *despeir*, *viii.* 945.  
 desesperance, *s.* *iv.* 3499.  
 deseface, deface, *v.* *a.* *iv.* 1322, *v.* 6308; *v.* *n.* *iv.* 2844, *viii.* 2828.  
 desguise, *v.* *a.* *P.* 364, *i.* 2702 ff., *iv.* 3333.  
 deshonoured, *pp.* *v.* 5811, 7262.  
 desir, *s.* *i.* 599, 684, *iv.* 2567, *v.* 965.  
 desire, *v.* *a.* *P.* 221, *i.* 1205, 1481, *ii.* 1423; *v.* *n.* *P.* 292, 682, *i.* 3289, *ii.* 2160, *iv.* 122.  
 desirous, *a.* *i.* 1413, *ii.* 2518.  
 deslaie, *see* *delaie*.  
 desobeia, *v.* *a.* *n.* *i.* 1315, *iii.* 1762.  
 desobeissauce, *s.* *i.* 1307.  
 desobeissant, *a.* *i.* 1392, *ii.* 2507.  
 desolat, *a.* *ii.* 2651.  
 despeire, *v.* *n.* and *ref.* *ii.* 3347, *iv.* 3506, 3541.  
 despeired, *a.* *ii.* 1846, *iii.* 74, 1144, *viii.* 3012\*, in despair, hopelessly bad.  
 despence, *s.* *v.* 4838, *vii.* 2066.  
 despende, *v.* *a.* *P.* 73, *i.* 1004, 1904, 3018, *ii.* 1126, *iii.* 877, *pret.* *despente*, *v.* 1054.  
 despenne, *v.* *a.* *iii.* 2553.  
 despine, *v.* *a.* *i.* 1356, 1978, *iii.* 564, *iv.* 2870, scorn, hate.  
 despit, *s.* *i.* 990, 2580, insult.  
 desplaie, *v.* *a.* *ii.* 1835, *displaie*, *v.* 492.  
 desplese, *v.* *a.* *i.* 1387, *iii.* 528, *displese*, *vii.* 4816.  
 desport, *s.* *iv.* 1188, 3100, *v.* 1425.  
 desporte, *v.* *a.* and *ref.* *i.* 1002, 2294.  
 despose, *v.* *a.* *vii.* 1809.  
 despreise, *v.* *a.* *i.* 2119.  
 despulle, *v.* *a.* *i.* 2206, 2906, *viii.* 2856, strip.  
 desputeisoun (-on), *s.* *i.* 1440, *vii.* 1821, *di.* *puteisoun*, *vii.* 1635.  
 desputen, *v.* *n.* *ii.* 310, *iv.* 812; *v.* *a.* *iv.* 619.  
 destance, distance, *s.* *iii.* 611, 2695, *vii.* 2926, difference.  
 destelgne, *v.* *a.* *i.* 696, 966, *ii.* 2245, *iv.* 838, stain, disfigure.  
 destine, *s.* *i.* 1835, *iv.* 1915.  
 destourbanse, *s.* *ii.* 642, 1951, *destorbanse*, *iii.* 2465, *vii.* 2836.  
 destourbe, destorbe, *v.* *a.* *i.* 221, 1688, *iii.* 373, (*pp.* *distourbid*, *PP.* 153.)  
 distraucht, *see* *distraght*.  
 destresse, *s.* *iii.* 1605, *iv.* 462, *v.* 828, *distresse*, *distresse*, *ii.* 3266, *viii.* 1609.  
 destruccoun, destruccoun, *s.* *i.* 1105, *iii.* 973, *iv.* 1067.  
 destruis, *v.* *a.* *i.* 2836, *iii.* 1520, *pret.* *destruide*, *v.* 2212, *pp.* *destruid*, *i.* 3185, *ii.* 3355, *iv.* 225, 976, *v.* 1070.  
 determine, *v.* *n.* *ii.* 3204, *viii.* 2786; *v.* *a.* *vii.* 63.  
 deth, *s.* *P.* 704, *i.* 1054, *genit.* *dethes* (deadly), *iii.* 2657, *v.* 3533, *to deth*, *i.* 1448, *ii.* 1292, *fro deth*, *ii.* 3399, *fro deth*, *i.* 1593, *ii.* 1525.  
 detracoun, *s.* *ii.* 387, 534.  
 dette, *s.* *iii.* 2214, *iv.* 2588, *v.* 1552.  
 devel, *iii.* 663, *vi.* 1352, *genit.* *daveles*, *ii.* 3148, *cp.* *dieules*.  
 devide, *see* *divide*.  
 devise, *v.* *a.* *P.* 464, *i.* 1544, 2178, *ii.* 1390, *iii.* 1208, *divise*, *P.* 822, *vii.* 988, 1130, tell, contrive; *devise himself*, *i.* 1817, *decide*.  
 devocoun (-on), *s.* *i.* 213, 801, *ii.* 3433.  
 devolte, *a.* *i.* 636, *devoute*, *i.* 669.  
 devoure, *v.* *a.* *P.* 314, *i.* 654, 1189, *ii.* 1842, *iii.* 327.  
 dew, *s.* *vii.* 4832, *pl.* *dewes*, *vii.* 282.  
 deynte, deinte, *a.* *P.* 475, *vi.* 702.  
 deynte, *s.* *v.* 3838, *vi.* 741.  
 deys, deis, *s.* *vi.* 2187, *vii.* 1886, high table, seat of state.  
 diademe, *s.* *P.* 765, *ii.* 2936.  
 Diana, Diane, *i.* 363, *iv.* 3238, *v.* 1250 ff., 6244 ff., *viii.* 1269, 1829.  
 diob, *s.* *v.* 7249, *vi.* 1281, 2324.  
 Dido, *iv.* 87, 141, *viii.* 2552.  
 diel, del, *s.* *P.* 137, *v.* 212, portion; *no del*, *no diel*, *P.* 418, *i.* 2434, nothing: *as adv.* *nevere a diel*, *P.* 578, not at all.  
 dieme, *see* *dame*.  
 diere, dere, *a.* *i.* 162, 3147, *ii.* 250, *v.* 1241 (of price): *adv.* *i.* 381, *iii.* 880, *iv.* 2133, *dears*, *v.* 6729.  
 diere, *s.* *vi.* 1915.  
 diete, *s.* *i.* 1707, *vi.* 252.  
 (a) dieu, *ii.* 2739.  
 dieules, *s.* *genit.* *vi.* 2345: *cp.* *devel*.  
 difference, *s.* *P.* 451, *v.* 744.  
 differred, *v.* *a.* *pp.* *ii.* 3074, put aside.  
 dignite, dignete, *s.* *P.* 210, *iii.* 2170, *vii.* 4249, *pl.* *dignitees*, *ii.* 2338.  
 dihte, *v.* *a.* *i.* 1131, *pret.* *dihte*, *v.* 1200, 1364, 4252, *dighte*, *v.* 5248, *pp.* *diht*, *ii.* 2774, *iv.* 130, *dyht*, *ii.* 822, *v.* 554, prepare, set in order.  
 dike, *v.* *n.* *P.* 352.

- diligence, *s.* iv. 1075, 1792, 2584.  
 diligent, *a.* iv. 1126.  
 diminucoun, vii. 160.  
 dimme, *adv.* v. 4967, faintly (of voice):  
*cp.* dymme, *a.*  
 Dindimus (1), iv. 2641.  
 Dindimus (2), v. 1453.  
 Diogenes, Diogene, iii. 1203 ff., vii. 2229 ff.  
 Diomedes, Diomede, ii. 2458, v. 3099, 7601, viii. 2534, 2569.  
 Dionise, viii. 546, 1345 ff.  
 Dionys, vii. 3341.  
 disciple, *s.* vii. 1453, viii. 1167, 2942\*.  
 discipline, *s.* i. 942, iv. 294, v. 5326.  
 disclos, disclose, *see* descloe, &c.  
 disconfit, *see* desconfit.  
 discord, *see* descord.  
 discovere, discoveere, *see* descovere.  
 discrecioun (-on), *s.* v. 264, vii. 2116.  
 disoreace, *v.* n. v. 1851.  
 discrete, *a.* (*pl.*), vii. 2443.  
 discretly, *adv.* vii. 3342\*.  
 disme, *s.* P. 269, 111he.  
 discour, *s.* vii. 2424.  
 dispers, *a.* v. 1497, 1729, vii. 2658.  
 displaie, *see* desplaie.  
 disples, *see* desples.  
 disposed, *a.* i. 1253, 3785.  
 disposicioun (-on), *s.* P. 943, i. 1497, ii. 3255, iv. 2740.  
 disputesoun, *see* desputisoun.  
 dissencoun (-on), *s.* P. 781, iii. 595, 740, v. 3307.  
 dissevere, *v.* a. ii. 2229, iii. 1573; *v.* n. iv. 2838.  
 dissh, *s.* ii. 699, v. 3853, disch, v. 285.  
 dissimilacion, *s.* i. 957.  
 distance, *see* destance.  
 distempre, *v.* a. iii. 58, 1858.  
 distillacion, *s.* iv. 2513.  
 distille, *v.* a. P. 62\*.  
 distraht, destrauht, *pp.* ii. 1745, iii. 7, vii. 6.  
 distreigne, *v.* a. ii. 1302, torment.  
 distresse, *see* destresse.  
 ditee, *s.* viii. 2945\*.  
 diverse, *v.* n. P. 677, vii. 972, change;  
*pp.* diversified, P. 29, vii. 1270, changed,  
 made different.  
 diverse, *a.* P. 365, i. 426, 2463, ii. 2547, iii. 2101, vii. 3436, divers, iii. 2290, vi. 69, different, perverse, evil.  
 diverseliche, *adv.* v. 218, 5940.  
 diverseite, diversete, *s.* P. 988, v. 490, 1373.  
 divide, *v.* a. P. 127, 706, devide, vii. 147; *v.* n. P. 880, v. 1661.  
 divin, *s.* v. 142, divinity, vii. 651, theologian.  
 divin, *a.*, divine, (*def. or fem.*), ii. 3243, dyvyn, v. 1058.  
 divine, *v.* a. i. 2861.  
 divinite, *s.* vii. 122.  
 divise, *see* devise.  
 divised, *pp.* ii. 3264, vii. 1241, (*devised*, PP. 235), divided.  
 divisoun (-on), *s.* P. 576, 967, ii. 1743, vii. 4539.  
 do, don, *v.* a. (*n.*) P. 63, 271, (do, doon, P. 28\*, 49\*), to (forto) done, P. 141, 483, i. 691, 995, 3 *s. pres.* doth, P. 286, 761, i. 1913, *pres. dede*, P. 226, i. 561, 2579, ii. 2283, iii. 924, 1049, (*dide*, PP. 348), *imperat.* *s.* do, i. 2936, *pl.* doth, i. 127, *pp.* do, don, P. 857, i. 2599, ii. 770, 1234: doth restore, P. 761, doth ous forto wite, P. 286, let do make, ii. 1286, hath do slain, ii. 1799, *cp.* iv. 816, doth to seme, i. 614, do that ther be, iv. 2520, on dede, ii. 2283, dede upon, iv. 2979, v. 3556, do aweie, iv. 71, do wey, vii. 5408: do, cause, make, put.  
 do, doo, *s.* iv. 1300, 1928, doe.  
 doaire, *s.* vii. 1257, province.  
 doelful, *a.* viii. 483.  
 doinge, *s.* v. 4631, 5743.  
 dole, *s.* iv. 252, vi. 356, vii. 1213, distribution.  
 dom, *s.* i. 1050, 1647, ii. 1732, vi. 2171, viii. 2113, (*doom*, vii. 3152\*), judgement, dominion: day of dome, vii. 3560.  
 domb, *see* doumb.  
 domesdal (-day), *s.* v. 1905, vi. 806.  
 Domilde, ii. 947.  
 dominus, i. 215.  
 Donat, iv. 2641.  
 dore, *s.* P. 1083, ii. 2130, iv. 903.  
 Dorrence, vii. 3185.  
 Dorus, v. 1337.  
 dotard, *s.* vi. 2307.  
 double, *a.* P. 130, i. 635 (*deceitful*), ii. 341, 3343; *as subst.* ii. 333.  
 double, *v.* a. ii. 349.  
 doubt, *see* doute.  
 doubtif, *a.* vi. 2171.  
 doubtful, *a.* vii. 3524.  
 doumb, domb, *a.* iv. 345, 585, vi. 447.  
 doun, *s.* iv. 3021, down.  
 doun, down, *adv.* P. 570, i. 1155, up so doun, ii. 1744, iii. 80, a doun, iv. 2710.

- dounes, *s. pl.* iv. 1583, hills.  
 downward, *adv.* vii. 5073.  
 doute, *v. a.* i. 404, v. 3602, *doubte*, i. 2892; *v. n.* iv. 62: fear.  
 doute, *s.* P. 562, i. 2222, 3124, v. 181.  
 doubte, iv. 1022, *stant no d.*, ii. 2124, iv. 2118, *cp.* iii. 2536.  
 dowhter, *douhter*, *s.* i. 1841, iv. 1535, *doghter*, ii. 638, *doughter*, ii. 663, *gent.* *dowhter*, i. 3208, ii. 1469, *dowhtres*, i. 3231, iii. 218, *pl.* *dowhtres*, *douhtres*, i. 391, v. 7310, *doghtres*, v. 3049.  
 dowhterles, *a.* viii. 903.  
 dragon, *dragoun*, *s.* v. 3718, 3989, vi. 1984.  
 drake, *s.* vii. 362, dragon  
 drawe, *v. a. n.* P. 69, i. 1745, ii. 519, iii. 946, viii. 1948, 3 *s. pres.* *drawth*, P. 1002, *draweth*, i. 2336, 3 *s. pres.* *drawh*, *drouh*, P. 792, i. 819, ii. 1580, 2695, iii. 2084, iv. 35, v. 4046, *drogh*, iv. 3192, *pl.* *drowe(n)*, *drowhe*, i. 1041, 1136, iii. 1040, iv. 2026, vii. 3346\*, *imperial.* *draugh*, PP. 384, *pp.* *drawe*, v. 5457, vii. 4625.  
 drawhte, *drauhte*, *s.* iii. 2057, v. 4167, vi. 253, *draught*.  
 drecche, *v. a.* i. 621, 2097, iv. 2896, *drecche*, iv. 1185; *v. n.* iv. 102, vii. 5009, viii. 755: deceive, torment, while away, debase: delay.  
 drecchinge, *s.* iv. 3476, tormenting.  
 drecchinge, *a.* v. 3975.  
 drede, *v. a. n.* *pl.* and *n.* P. 500, i. 2245, iii. 180, 1321, *pres.* *dradde*, i. 1668, v. 2814, 5003, *drad*, viii. 1368, *dredde*, v. 3355, *imperial.* *dred*, i. 2246.  
 drede, *s.* P. 1082, i. 1987, *pl.* *dredes*, vii. 411, *withoute drede*, ii. 2388, v. 68 (doubtless).  
 dredful(l), *a.* i. 435, 2133, iv. 3382, vii. 3131, terrible: ii. 2622, timorous.  
 drele, *a.* i. 2042, ii. 2224, v. 1664, *drie*, *drye*, v. 4143, vii. 379, *dry* *cp.* *drye*.  
 dreie, *v. a.* iii. 695.  
 dreint, *dreynte*, *see* *drenche*.  
 drem, *s.* P. 599, ii. 3376, iv. 2729, *pl.* *dremes*, iv. 3575.  
 dreme, *v. n.* iii. 51, iv. 2722, 3285.  
 drenche, *v. a. n.*, vii. 4277, *pres.* *dreynte*, iv. 1030, 3061, *pp.* *dreint*, *dreynt*, ii. 1122, 1826, v. 1342, 1870, 4352, *def.* *dreinte*, iv. 3093: drown.  
 drery, *a.* vii. 3312\*.  
 Driades, v. 1333.  
 drink, *drinke*, *s.* ii. 3099, iii. 2611, iv. 1719, *pl.* *drinkes*, v. 1472.  
 drinke n, *v. a. n.* P. 318, i. 1390, 2309, vii. 3513, *drynke*, iii. 1402, 3 *s. pres.* *drinkth*, i. 1708, *drynkth*, vi. 72, *drinketh*, v. 253, *pres.* *drank*, iii. 895, *dronk*, ii. 1008, *pl.* *drunke*, i. 2645, vi. 472, *dronken*, vi. 591, *imperial.* *drink*, i. 2551, *pp.* *drunken*, vi. 374, 388.  
 drinkeles, *a.* vi. 57, without drink.  
 drive, *see* *dryve*.  
 dronkelew, *a.* vi. 106, *drunken*.  
 drope, *s.* v. 4147, 4752.  
 droppe, *v.* vi. 1043, vii. 5263.  
 druerie, *s.* iv. 2713, vi. 1290, courtship.  
 drunke(n), *a.* P. 343, ii. 1010, v. 145, vi. 73 ff.  
 drunkenesse, *s.* vi. 585.  
 drunkenhiede, *s.* vi. 566.  
 drunkeschipe, *dronkeschipe*, *s.* v. 150, vi. 15.  
 drye, *dryhe*, *v. a.* iv. 2836, 3474, vi. 1085, endure.  
 drye, *drale*, *s.* P. 977, vii. 271, 445.  
 dryve, *v. a. n.* ii. 712, 718, 1906, iv. 1853, *drive*, ii. 729, *dryve forth*, spend (time), P. 374, ii. 1309, iv. 3390, *pres.* *drof*, iii. 1048, iv. 1020, *pp.* *drive*, P. 578, iv. 1027.  
 duale, *s.* vi. 388, narcotic draught.  
 due, *duck*, *see* *duk*.  
 due, *a.* P. 457, ii. 2928, iv. 510, 3247, vii. 4195 (dewe, PP. 196), owing, fitting, bound (?).  
 duelliche, *duely*, *adv.* vii. 4570, viii. 2374.  
 duelle(n), *dwelle*, P. 2, 142, 818, i. 147, ii. 1265, iii. 1338, vii. 2960, *pres.* *duelte*, i. 2488, v. 2084, remain, dwell.  
 duellinge, *s.* iv. 1979, vii. 458.  
 duete, *s.* P. 258, iv. 3204, (duite, viii. 3101).  
 duistre, *s.* i. 1027, guide.  
 duk, *duc*, *duck*, *s.* i. 782 ff., 2644, iii. 1987, iv. 1525, vii. 1917, 3747, *gent.* *dukes*, i. 2639, *dukes*, iv. 477, *duke*, leader.  
 dull, *a.* v. 1948, vi. 150, *pl.* *dulle*, iv. 947, PP. 207.  
 dulle, *v. a.* P. 14.  
 durable, *a.* PP. 301.  
 duresce, *s.* P. 411.  
 dwelle, *see* *duelle*.  
 dwyne, *v. n.* iv. 3440, pine away.  
 dyamant, vii. 1333.  
 dyohe, *v. a.* i. 3256: *cp.* *dike*.

**dyches**, *s. pl.* v. 19.  
**dye**, *dia*, *deia*, *v. n.* P. 978, 990, i. 127, 1333, 1972, ii. 701, 1858, iv. 3065, *pret.*  
**deide**, ii. 692, 1161, v. 1079, *deiede*, iv. 1593, *dyde*, P. 705, *dide*, PP. 190, *pres.*  
*part.* *deyings*, i. 1710.  
**dyht**, *see* *dihta*.  
**dymme**, *a. pl.* viii. 2826: *cp.* *dimme*.  
**Dyon**, v. 1049.

## E

**ease**, *see* *ese*.  
**ebbe**, *v. n.* P. 933.  
**abbes**, *s. pl.* vii. 723.  
**Echo**, v. 4618, 4644.  
**ecclesiaste**, vii. 4491.  
**ech**, *pron.* P. 375, i. 817, iv. 500, *eehe*, P. 516, i. 2061, *ech* *other*, i. 2489.  
**Echates**, v. 3981, 4035.  
**echedaies**, *s. genit.* v. 512.  
**echon**, *pron.* P. 1049, i. 1854, iv. 2094.  
**eclipse**, *v. n.* P. 919, v. 769, viii. 2600.  
**Ector**, *see* *Hector*.  
**edde**, *s. iv.* 2109, *addre*, v. 3967, *thaddre*, v. 3528.  
**Edwyn**, ii. 1319.  
**eem**, *see* *em*.  
**eere**, *see* *ere*.  
**effect**, *s. iii.* 2395, vi. 931, *theeffect*, iv. 1759.  
**effeminat**, *a.* vii. 4304.  
**eft**, *ette*, *adv.* i. 160, 963, ii. 2570, iv. 2111, 2858, v. 5789*f.*, vii. 2334, *after*, *again*.  
**eftsone**, *adv.* ii. 1305, iv. 806, *eftsones*, iv. 2830.  
**Eges**, vii. 351.  
**Egeus**, iii. 2561, v. 5255, 5259.  
**eggetol**, *s. v.* 3708.  
**Egiona**, iii. 2173, 2185.  
**Egipcienes**, &c. *see* *thegipcienes*.  
**Egipte**, ii. 2549, 2628, v. 789, 814*ff.*, 1592, 1653, vi. 1797*ff.*, vii. 924.  
**Egistus**, *Egiste*, iii. 1906*ff.*, 2029*ff.*  
**eagle**, *s. vi.* 2200, vii. 630, *eagle*.  
**eight**, *num.* vii. 1110*ff.*, *eyhte*, viii. 81.  
**eile**, *eyle*, *eille*, *v. n.* i. 971, ii. 1348, iii. 2296, v. 7444, vi. 172, *impers.* vi. 386, *ail*.  
**eir** (1), *air*, *s.* P. 921, vi. 943, vii. 255*ff.*, *their*, *thair*, iii. 1215, v. 3993: *air*.  
**eir** (2), *v. see* *heir*.  
**either**, *pron.* *a.* ii. 630, v. 1662, *eyther*, vii. 1193.

**ek**, *eke*, *adv.* P. 154, 913, i. 865, ii. 2931.  
**ek** *also*, ii. 1233, (*eek*, P. 57\*, vii. 3180\*).  
**ekinge**, *s. iv.* 622.  
**Elda**, ii. 726*ff.*  
**elde**, *s. v.* 4183, viii. 2828, (person) viii. 2667.  
**eldemoder**, *s. iv.* 2251.  
**eldeste**, *a. superl. def.* v. 3047, vii. 557.  
**eleborum**, vii. 1336.  
**eleccioun** (-on), P. 365, 435, vi. 1167, vii. 46.  
**Eleine**, *see* *Heleine*.  
**element**, *s. vii.* 372, *pl. elements*, v. 773, vii. 218*ff.*, *thelements*, v. 759.  
**elitropius**, *s. vii.* 841, (name of a stone).  
**elixir**, *elixer*, *s. iv.* 2522, 2577.  
**ellefthe**, *a.* vii. 1393, *eleventh*.  
**elles**, *adv.* P. 290, 477, i. 1574, 2344, ii. 3382, (*ellis*, viii. 3078), *elles* *where*, ii. 1979, iii. 2079.  
**elleswhere**, *adv.* P. 9, iv. 164, *see* *elles*.  
**ellevene**, *num.* vii. 1186.  
**eloquence**, *s. iii.* 440, iv. 2651, *pl. eloquences*, vii. 1631.  
**eloquent**, *a.* vii. 37, viii. 393.  
**em**, *s. i.* 1517, v. 3289, *eem*, vi. 474, *genit.*  
*emes*, i. 1489, *uncle*.  
**embatallied**, *pp.* ii. 1837, 2619.  
**embrace**, *enbrace*, *v. a.* P. 90, i. 1286, ii. 2082, iv. 58, 409, v. 24, *embraseth*, iii. 1483, *take in hand*, *embrace*, *obtain*; i. 431, *put on the arm*.  
**embrouded**, *enbrouded*, *pp.* iv. 1319, vi. 1554, *embrouded*, i. 2511.  
**embuissched**, *pp.* ii. 3007.  
**embuisschement**, *see* *thembuisschementz*.  
**Emilius**, ii. 1776.  
**empere**, *v. a.* P. 453, iii. 1143, iv. 3505; *v. n.* P. 833, ii. 367, 3068: *damage*, *make worse*; *become worse*.  
**emperelement**, *s. v.* 2161, vii. 1158, *harm*.  
**emperesse**, *s.* viii. 2612.  
**emperour**, *s. P.* 726, iii. 2393, *themperour*, i. 762, *genit.* *emperoures*, ii. 1219.  
**empire**, *s. P.* 681, 721, i. 2793, ii. 2709, *thempire*, P. 767.  
**emprise**, *s. P.* 1018, i. 2066, ii. 2358, iii. 1017, iv. 1898, v. 905, vii. 1850, 4251, 4778, viii. 174, *boldness*, *valour*, *worth*, *object*.  
**emty**, *a.* i. 1681.  
**enbrouded**, *see* *embrouded*.  
**enbrouderie**, *s. iv.* 1175.



- encense**, *encense*, *s.* v. 1568, vii. 4509.  
**enchantement**, *s.* i. 477, iv. 765.  
**enchanteing**, *s.* iv. 648.  
**enchante, v.** *a.* i. 470, ii. 481, 2492, iii. 178.  
**encheson**, *s.* i. 2440, 2747, v. 7354, occasion.  
**enclin**, *a.* ii. 3177, vi. 585.  
**encline**, *v.* *a.* iv. 3565; *v.* *n.* v. 1637, viii. 2083. **enclined**, *pp.* ii. 271.  
**enclose**, *v.* *a.* iii. 1333, v. 21, 4029, (*pp.* **enclosid**, viii. 2942.)  
**encluyed**, *pp.* iv. 1345, **enclowed**, viii. 1113, hurt with a nail, nailed.  
**encombre**, *v.* *a.* ii. 1770, vii. 5219, **endanger**, harass.  
**encourtine**, *v.* *a.* i. 877, curtain.  
**encresse**, **encresse**, *v.* *a.* *n.* P. 1036, i. 672, ii. 3428, iv. 782, v. 6476, vi. 2272.  
**enores**, *s.* i. 3342, ii. 1666, v. 3, 7712, **enores**, viii. 74, increase, advancement.  
**ende**, P. 162, 556, i. 1067, 1616, ii. 2753, iii. 1380, v. 5670, viii. 697, 1219, **thende**, P. 883.  
**ende**, *v.* *a.* *n.* P. 74, i. 2110, iv. 2900, v. 194, vi. 1781.  
**endeles**, *i.* 2717, iii. 2466; *adv.* P. 662, ii. 3429.  
**enderday**, *s.* i. 98, **ender day**, v. 7400.  
**endite**, *v.* *a.* *n.* P. 22, ii. 412, 2046, iii. 270, PP. 381, compose, accuse, examine.  
**enditour**, *s.* iv. 2411.  
**endlong**, *prep.* ii. 689, iii. 1031; *adv.* iii. 1209: along.  
**endure**, *v.* *a.* *n.* i. 131, ii. 259, iv. 2105.  
**endying**, *s.* vi. 2376.  
**Eneas**, **Enee**, *i.* 1095, 1124, iv. 78 ff., 2183, v. 1400, viii. 2553.  
**emie**, *s.* *fem.*, v. 6753, **emie**, viii. 1355.  
**enemy**, *s.* iii. 12, 1532, iv. 2186, *pl.* **enemys**, **enemis**, iv. 1953, v. 7397.  
**enfile**, *v.* *a.* vii. 4333, thread.  
**enformacion** (-oun), *s.* i. 2270, ii. 2783, v. 593.  
**enforme**, *v.* *a.* *n.* i. 276, 1340, 1974, 3229, ii. 2121, 2499, iv. 923, relate, instruct, enform.  
**Engelond**, P. 24, ii. 1581, vii. 753, PP. 359.  
**engendre**, *v.* *a.* *n.* P. 987, ii. 2841, 3176.  
**engin**, **engyn**, *s.* ii. 1956, iv. 2438, 2637, v. 2156, disposition, ingenuity, device.  
**engine**, *v.* *a.* i. 878, 1101, ii. 2116, deceive, entrap.  
**enginous**, *a.* vii. 433, quick-witted.  
**english**, *s.* P. 23, iii. 21, **Engleish**, vi. 985, (**englesch**, viii. 3108).  
**englue**, *v.* *a.* iii. 1553, iv. 3363, fasten, ensnare.  
**enhabite**, *v.* *a.* iii. 1335, viii. 93.  
**enheritance**, *s.* v. 5553.  
**enke**, *s.* iii. 298, 1070, viii. 2213, ink.  
**enlumined**, *pp.* vii. 64.  
**enoignte**, *v.* *a.* v. 3601, *pp.* **enoynt**, v. 3599, **enolnt**, vii. 4247, **enoignted**, vi. 1974.  
**enquare**, *v.* *a.* ii. 488, vii. 2771.  
**ensamplaire**, *see* **essamplaire**.  
**ensample**, *s.* P. 196, i. 1405, iv. 2339, (**essample**, PP. 93).  
**ensamplein**, *v.* *a.* P. 47; *refl.* iv. 3684, v. 5159, vii. 4441; **essampled**, P. 7.  
**ensamplerie**, *s.* P. 496, v. 4935, **essamplerie**, vi. 1385.  
**ensele**, *v.* *a.* viii. 2699, scal.  
**enspire**, *v.* *a.* v. 2200, vii. 4003, viii. 2976\*.  
**entaille**, *s.* i. 1088, 1252, iv. 374, v. 1499, 2442, **entaille**, iv. 2990, form, fashion, sculpture.  
**entame**, *v.* *a.* i. 709, wound; v. 3482, begin.  
**entencion**, *s.* iv. 2270, 2516.  
**entendable**, *a.* vii. 2146.  
**entendance**, *s.* viii. 2488, service.  
**entendant**, *a.* ii. 1623, v. 1352, viii. 2695.  
**entende**, *v.* *n.* P. 253, 376, ii. 3412, iii. 2347, iv. 1735, pay attention, undertake.  
**entendement**, *s.* i. 3122, ii. 584, iv. 1767, vii. 609, 1701, understanding, meaning, instruction.  
**entente**, *s.* P. 668, 1023, i. 60, 825, 1121, 1770, ii. 1002, 2669, meaning, purpose, thought.  
**enterdit**, *s.* ii. 2979, 3013.  
**entermette**, *v.* *refl.* ii. 66, interfere.  
**enterrement**, *s.* v. 5727, viii. 1523.  
**entre**, *s.* i. 1144, ii. 2131, 3033.  
**entrecomune**, *v.* *n.* ii. 3249.  
**entren**, *v.* *n.* vii. 3215\*.  
**entrike**, *v.* *a.* iii. 2340, iv. 3042, 3298, vii. 1577, ensnare, entangle.  
**entronise**, *v.* *a.* vii. 2416, **intronise**, ii. 2822, **intronised**, viii. 6.  
**envenime**, **envenyme**, *v.* *a.* ii. 2237, iii. 2457, vi. 3, **envenom**, poison.  
**envie**, *s.* P. 347, i. 3083, 3441, ii. 10 ff., (**envye**, P. 58\* ).  
**envie**, *v.* *a.* ii. 2828, 3104.  
**envious**, *a.* ii. 223, 318, **thenvious**, i. 1728; *as subst.* ii. 345.

- environne**, *v. a.* vi. 2239, vii. 240, *encompass*.  
**envioun**, *adv.* ii. 1474, vi. 2236.  
**eny**, *pron.* P. 387, i. 3419, &c.; *any*, i. 14, *pl.* *eny*, v. 2039, *enye*, v. 921: *eny thing as adv.* ii. 2057.  
**Eolen**, **Eole**, ii. 2263 ff., v. 6808 ff., 6884 ff., viii. 2510.  
**Eolus**, iii. 143, iv. 735, v. 968, *pl.* **Eoli**, v. 978.  
**Epheaim**, viii. 1156, 1793 ff.  
**Ephiloquorus**, iv. 2409.  
**epitaphe**, s. iv. 3359, 3670, **epitaffe**, viii. 1531.  
**Epius**, i. 1091.  
**equacion**, s. vi. 1959.  
**equite**, s. ii. 3327, vii. 2816.  
**er**, *adv.* ii. 1995, vii. 2285, *err*, vii. 687, *ar*, ii. 2141, iv. 1422. *prep.* *er this*, P. 513, i. 610, *er dai*, v. 2182, *or this*, i. 1944: *er*, *conj.* P. 503, i. 911, 1122, (*or that*), iv. 2068.  
**ere**, s. P. 236, i. 2181, &c.; *eere*, P. 10, *ear*.  
**ere**, *eere*, *v. a. n.* i. 3257, v. 819, *plough*.  
**Ericon**, v. 1401.  
**Eridian**, v. 4005.  
**eringe**, s. v. 1228, *ploughing*.  
**Eriphile**, iii. 2565.  
**Eritheña**, vii. 853.  
**erl**, s. i. 3376.  
**eridom**, s. i. 3354.  
**erli**, *erly*, *a. vi.* 1605: *adv.* i. 2176, iv. 1829, *erliche*, v. 2313.  
**Ermenle**, *see* **Armenye**.  
**ernew**, s., *ernew and game*, &c., P. 462, ii. 528, iii. 549, iv. 50, viii. 856.  
**erre**, *v. n.* P. 355, ii. 2963, v. 1893.  
**errour**, s. P. 511, v. 812, 1620.  
**erst**, *adv.* iii. 376, iv. 805, v. 1778.  
**erthe**, P. 40, 614, i. 2796, 3251, *therthe*, i. 3265, *earth*, *clay*.  
**erthly**, **erthli**, *a.* P. 201, i. 2889, iv. 1322, **ertheli**, **erthely**, iii. 2520, PP. 63.  
**eschange**, s. P. 207, i. 2330, viii. 2259.  
**eschape**, *see* **ascape**.  
**eschete**, s. i. 3354.  
**eschu**, *a. v.* 4748, *shy*.  
**eschule**, *v. a. n.* i. 945, 1212, 2255, 2667, ii. 3250, iii. 1674, **teschule**, vii. 3247, **eschue**, P. 458, v. 7002, *avoid*, *escape*.  
**Esculapius**, v. 1059 ff.  
**Esdraa**, iv. 2407.  
**ese**, s. i. 3052, ii. 49, 3122, iv. 1814, v. 3629, *aise*, viii. 1352, 1718, *pl.* **eses**, vii. 4359, **esses**, iv. 1089.  
**ese**, *v. a. n.* ii. 247, 3183, vi. 893, vii. 2616.  
**esely**, *adv.* v. 5027, *gently*.  
**Esiona**, v. 7215, *acc.* **Esionam**, **Esonen**, v. 7275, viii. 2518.  
**esmale**, *v. refl.* v. 3348; *pp.* **esmaled**, iii. 58, iv. 1372.  
**Eson**, v. 3255, 3931 ff.  
**espeir**, s. ii. 1551, 3147, iii. 2707, *hope*.  
**espiaille**, s. vi. 1643.  
**espleit**, s. v. 3924, *success*.  
**esposaille**, s. iv. 1498, **espousaille**, v. 5815.  
**essamplaire**, **ensamplaire**, s. iv. 887, vii. 3143, 4026.  
**essampled**, **essamplerie**, *see* **ensample**, &c.  
**essoine**, s. i. 1778, *excuse*.  
**estat**, *see* **astat**.  
**estre**, s. ii. 3370, *abode*.  
**estrete**, s. i. 1344, *extraction*, *origin*.  
**estward**, *adv.* ii. 1088, vii. 569.  
**esy**, **esi**, *a.* vii. 1540, viii. 2159.  
**ete**, *v. a. n.* P. 318, i. 2844, v. 2405, 3 s. *pres. ett*, vi. 1139, *pret. eet*, i. 2977, ii. 3029, v. 851, *pl.* **ete**, vi. 1173, *pp.* **ete(n)**, iii. 1401, v. 5902.  
**eternal**, *a.* viii. 2973.  
**eternie**, *a.* P. 586.  
**eth**, *a. i.* 544, *easy*.  
**Ethiope**, iv. 649.  
**Ethna**, P. 329, ii. 20, 163, 2837, v. 1289.  
**etique**, s. vii. 1651, *ethics*.  
**Eurico**, ii. 2267.  
**Europe**, v. 7340, vii. 533, 579.  
**eutonye**, vi. 1318.  
**evangile**, s. PP. 217.  
**Eve**, iv. 2225, viii. 28 ff.  
**eve(n)**, s. i. 858, ii. 2888, vi. 368, *even* *liht*, iv. 2804.  
**evel**, *a.* iii. 1272, *def.* **evele**, v. 2331: *adv.* **evele**, iv. 3266, v. 146, **eval** *mouthed*, v. 519.  
**evel**, s. v. 4926, **evele**, vii. 1549.  
**evene**, *a. as subst.*, in **evene**, i. 2, iv. 3294, v. 1702, *hir* **evene**, v. 3386: *adv.* i. 2819, ii. 175, 3401, v. 75, **evene** *liche*, iii. 2397, vii. 3033.  
**evenynge**, *see* **thevenynge**.  
**evere**, *adv.* P. 38, 335, i. 1641, *for* **evere**, ii. 1581, **evere** *in on*, i. 1795.  
**everich**, *pron.* vi. 171, *each one*.  
**everich**, *a.* *see* **every**.  
**evermore**, **everemore**, *adv.* i. 1330, ii. 442, **evermor**, **everemor**, P. 980, i. 34, v. 671, PP. 138, **everemo**, i. 1381, iv.

3590, evermo, i. 1852, (evare mo, viii. 3004\*), for everemo, i. 1161, vii. 3843.  
**every**, *pron.* a. P. 28, i. 1202, (everi, PP. 199), everich (everyoh) on, ii. 2020, vii. 1305, 4419; *cp.* everychon.  
**everychon**, **everichon**, *pron.* i. 246, 2103, iv. 714, 1311; *cp.* every.  
**everydel**, **everydiel**, s. P. 641, iii. 836, 929; *adv.* P. 828, ii. 1253.  
**evidence**, s. P. 332, i. 1074, 1160, iv. 3054, in evidence, i. 1857, ii. 2678, *pl.* evidences, iv. 2665.  
**evident**, a. vii. 3859.  
**exalacion**, s. vii. 330.  
**examinacioun**, s. ii. 313.  
**examine**, v. a. iv. 293.  
**excede**, v. a. i. 541, iv. 3525, v. 247.  
**excellence**, s. PP. 375.  
**excepte**, v. a. vii. 2745, accept.  
**excercise**, s. vi. 532.  
**excess**, s. v. 4457.  
**excessif**, a. vii. 2722.  
**excitacioun**, s. vi. 567.  
**excite**, v. a. vii. 509, vii. 4276.  
**excluide**, v. a. viii. 2711.  
**excusable**, a. i. 1029.  
**excusacioun**, s. iv. 330, v. 7094\*.  
**excuse(n)**, v. a. P. 488, 522, i. 733, 2102, 2723, vi. 121, (*pp.* excusid, viii. 3111), excuse, give as excuse.  
**exousement**, s. i. 1022.  
**excusinge**, s. i. 1929.  
**execucioun** (-on), s. vii. 3081, viii. 1952.  
**execut**, *pp.* ii. 1742.  
**exil**, s. v. 1221, vii. 3012.  
**exile**, v. a. P. 280, i. 1055, ii. 1845, iii. 2179, v. 862.  
**expectant**, a. ii. 1712.  
**expence**, s. vii. 2027.  
**experience**, s. i. 217, 1073, v. 321, thexperience, P. 331.  
**expert**, a. vii. 27.  
**exponde**, v. a. P. 663, 823, 873, expounde, i. 2867.  
**exposicioun** (-on), s. i. 2932, iv. 2739.  
**expresse**, a. v. 3220, viii. 2185.  
**expressly**, *adv.* iii. 2331.  
**extorcion** (-oun), s. v. 5511, vii. 2190, viii. 3015.  
**extremite**, s. iv. 2489, v. 7641, thextremetes, iv. 2565.  
**ey**, s. i. 2545, vi. 2225, vii. 617, egg.  
**eyhte**, *see* eighte.  
**eyhtetiens**, *num.* i. 1803, vii. 1025.  
**eyther**, *see* either.

## F

**Fa crere**, ii. 2122 ff.  
**fable**, s. P. 864, ii. 2800, v. 1270.  
**Fabricius**, vii. 2784.  
**face**, s. P. 130, i. 966, i. 3327.  
**faconnde**, **faconde**, s. v. 3126, vii. 36, eloquence.  
**fade**, a. ii. 403, iii. 310, viii. 637, PP. 102; *adv.* i. 2043.  
**fade**, v. n. ii. 2738, iv. 3454, vii. 3046; **faded**, *pp.* iv. 3208, vii. 744.  
**fader**, s. i. 216, &c., **fadre**, ii. 2519, iii. 1946, *gent.* fader, i. 2557, 3334, ii. 1463, 1625, &c., **fadres**, iii. 263, vi. 401.  
**faderhode**, s. iv. 527.  
**fais**, **faye**, a. i. 2317, ii. 1019, iv. 1321, v. 3769; *as subst.* v. 4105.  
**falerie**, s. ii. 964, 1593, v. 5003, 7073.  
**faile**, v. n. P. 650, i. 896, 1968, iv. 934, 1722, **faillie**, iii. 2184, vi. 751, **faillen** of, i. 1059.  
**faile**, s. P. 1032, i. 3113, ii. 2534.  
**fain**, a. i. 2759, iii. 1666; *adv.* **fain wolde**, i. 1433, ii. 1415, **fayn**, ii. 491, v. 3789.  
**fair**, a. i. 362, 779, 1100, 1899, (*feir*, viii. 3010\*), *pl.* **faire**, i. 353; *comp.* **fairer**, **fairere**, ii. 1247, v. 4810; *superl.* **def.** i. 767, 1804.  
**faire**, *adv.* P. 600, i. 1131, 3415.  
**faiterie**, s. i. 179, false pretence.  
**faitour**, s. i. 174, 689.  
**fal**, **fall**, s. P. 336, ii. 227, v. 4950.  
**fallas**, s. i. 645, ii. 2509, vii. 2186.  
**falle(n)**, v. n. P. 372, 528, 972, i. 39, 683, v. 3654, 3 s. *pres.* **faith**, P. 545, i. 24, **falleth**, v. 5485, *pret.* **fel**, **fell**, P. 619, 692, i. 761, ii. 2160, *pl.* **fellen**, P. 782, i. 2083, *subj.* **felle**, i. 3151, vii. 4253.  
**fals**, a. i. 3063, *def.* **fals**, P. 739, i. 680, ii. 404, **false**, i. 1107, ii. 824, *voc.* **false**, iii. 1252, *pl.* **false**, i. 871, *as subst.* v. 7392; *superl.* **falseste**, v. 6047; *adv.*, **false tunged**, ii. 1750.  
**false(n)**, v. a. n. ii. 2150, v. 5182, violate, break faith.  
**falshed**, **falshede**, **falshiede**, s. i. 1009, ii. 857, 1692, v. 927, 2956, **falshod(e)**, ii. 1755, v. 6012, vii. 1533.  
**falsly**, *adv.* ii. 1280, 2765, **falsliche**, v. 5920.  
**falssemblant**, s. ii. 1876 ff.  
**falswitness**, s. v. 2863 ff.  
**falte**, s. vi. 286, want.  
**fame**, s. P. 100, i. 1415, 2412, iii. 1019.  
**familiar**, a. vii. 3147.

- famine, famyne, s. iii. 2268, v. 4284, viii. 551.  
 famous, a. iii. 2373, v. 7125\*.  
 fantasie, s. ii. 1408, iii. 126, v. 441, *pl.* fantasies, ii. 2808.  
 fantosme, s. v. 5011, vii. 2589.  
 fare, *v. n. P.* 646, i. 110, 1976, ii. 2040, 2 s. *pres.* farst, iv. 626, 3 s. *pres.* farth, iii. 1079, vii. 1288, fareth, iv. 244, *pres.* ferde, i. 97, 910, ii. 111, ferd, viii. 2445, *pp.* ferd, i. 445, fare(n), iii. 2692, v. 3797, viii. 1555 f., *imperial.* fare (wel), iii. 105, iv. 1378, (*cp.* farewell), *pres.* *p.* (wel) farende, v. 3381.  
 fare, s. i. 2291, iv. 440, v. 1379, 1611, 1987, doing, condition, business.  
 farewell, v. 4218, vi. 1654, farwel, v. 7758.  
 fast, a. iv. 903.  
 faste, *adv.* P. 370, i. 473, 984, 2302, fast, vii. 3325, *als* faste, i. 414, 474, quickly; fast aslepe, ii. 2870; faste, ii. 1089, close, faste by, i. 897, ii. 756, iv. 666, *cp.* fasteby.  
 faste, s. vi. 850.  
 faste, *v. n.* i. 660, ii. 244, iv. 814.  
 fasteby, *adv.* vi. 1993, vii. 4758; *cp.* faste, *adv.*  
 fastnen, *v. n.* v. 3598.  
 fat, a. P. 474, v. 1947, *pl.* fatte, iv. 1310.  
 fate, s. v. 1159.  
 faucon, s. iii. 2430, vii. 1842.  
 Faunus, v. 6833 ff.  
 favorable, a. ii. 1697, iv. 443, vii. 3976, partial, favourable.  
 favour, s. vii. 2789, 2844.  
 favoure, *v. n.* iv. 2254; *v. a.* v. 5328.  
 faye, *see* faie.  
 Februer, vii. 1234.  
 fecche, *v. a.* vii. 5010; *cp.* fette.  
 fede, *v. a. and refl.* P. 466, i. 2823, fiede, v. 2009, feeds, vi. 632, *pres.* fedde, i. 2830, 5301, *pp.* fedd, fed, ii. 244, v. 1719, vi. 792.  
 Fedra, v. 5395, 5481, Phedra, viii. 2514.  
 fee, s. vii. 543, property; *pl.* fees, i. 53, iv. 1096, wages.  
 feer, *see* ferr.  
 feere, feerful, *see* fere, ferful.  
 feigne, *v. a. n. P.* 416, i. 166, 595, 1103, 2197, ii. 654, v. 928 (*refl.*), feyne, P. 60\*, feine, PP. 312, *pp.* feigned, i. 797, 1084, v. 3051 (disguised), vii. 3539.  
 feihten(n), *v. n.* P. 1020, i. 1427, ii. 2177, iv. 1674, feighte, iv. 2081, 2111, fihthe, fyhte, P. 215, iii. 1648, iv. 1508, v. 1475, (fihthe, PP. 251), *pres.* foghte, iii. 2651, iv. 2095, fawht, v. 5360.  
 feint, a. i. 1217, v. 4351, *def.* feinte, v. 6945, *pl.* feinte, iv. 118, false, sluggish, faint.  
 feintise, s. i. 175, feigning.  
 feir, *see* fair.  
 feire, s. P. 454, i. 301, ii. 3067, v. 565, fair.  
 feith, s. P. 237, i. 707, 2216; in good feith, i. 727, iv. 665; make his feith (give his assurance), v. 2897, 2924.  
 felaschipe, s. P. 1015, i. 1163, ii. 326, iv. 1958, felaschip, ii. 1217.  
 felawe, s. P. 795, i. 1244, 3042, ii. 2031, 2366, felaw, ii. 333, vii. 2292, felawh, ii. 1965, fela, ii. 318, v. 2420, fellow, sharer, equal.  
 feld, s. P. 838, i. 2469, ii. 1838, 2593, v. 5964, field, iv. 1832, 2091, 2377, v. 3745, field, battle.  
 fela, a. *pl.* iii. 828, v. 208; *as subst.* iv. 1069, v. 6970, many.  
 felicite, s. i. 206, vii. 933.  
 fell, a. i. 68, iii. 2655, *pl.* felle, v. 2744, cruel.  
 fell, s. v. 3816, 4243, skin.  
 felle (1), *see* fille.  
 felle (2), *v. a.* i. 2903, ii. 2298, fell.  
 felonie, s. ii. 215, 884, iii. 336, iv. 3580.  
 feloun, a. vii. 1123, viii. 1393.  
 felt, felte, *see* fiele.  
 felthe, s. ii. 422, filth.  
 femele, a. *as subst.* iv. 1301, vii. 4215.  
 femeline, a. v. 5550.  
 Feminee, iv. 2140, v. 2548.  
 fend, s. ii. 705, v. 1582, 4885, vii. 5335, fiend.  
 fenele, s. vii. 1327, fennel.  
 fennes, s. *pl.* viii. 160, fens.  
 fer, a. *see* ferr.  
 fer, s. *see* fyr.  
 ferde, ferd, *see* fare.  
 fere, s. (1), P. 57\*, i. 462, 1439, 2205, ii. 46, iii. 1524, v. 5676, feere, ii. 696, iii. 1396, fear.  
 fere, s. (2), *see* fiere.  
 fere, feere, *v. a.* ii. 578, fear; *refl.* feere, iii. 454, be afraid.  
 ferforth, *adv.* P. 29\*, i. 2690, ii. 1596, iv. 2139.  
 ferforthli, *adv.* n. 77, viii. 1229.  
 ferful(1), feerful, a. ii. 360, v. 1860, vii. 306, 3561.  
 ferke, *v. a.* viii. 603, convey.  
 ferme, ferm, a. vii. 3175, viii. 1109.  
 ferr, fer, feer, a. P. 261, i. 2378, iii. 68,



- v. 1507, vii. 311, *def. ferre*, iii. 1901, far, distant: *adv.* P. 565, i. 1042, 1313, iii. 878, iv. 831, 931, *feer*, i. 570; *compar. ferre*, iii. 71: *a ferr*, i. 2335, iii. 1039, *afer*, v. 318.
- ferst*, *a.*, *def. ferste*, i. 580, ii. 1307, 1676, (*firste*, v. 7017°, PP. 198), *ferst*, iii. 27, *ate ferste*, P. 522, iv. 895: *adv.* P. 198, i. 998, *ferste*, iv. 2601, vii. 1530, (*first*, viii. 3082).
- ferthe*, *a.*, *def.* ii. 1875, iv. 2482, PP. 1, fourth.
- ferthest*, *adv.* iv. 13.
- feet*, *s.* ii. 468, *fiist*.
- feate*, *s.* i. 2499, iv. 1483, v. 1018.
- fat*, *s.* viii. 2415, deed, *feat*.
- fethere*, *s.* iv. 107, *pl. fetheres*, *fethers*, iv. 1049, v. 6204, 6209.
- fethrebed*, *s.* iv. 3020.
- fette(n)*, *v. a.* i. 2548, iv. 646, viii. 1413, *pret. fette*, v. 2779, *pp. fet, fett*, i. 2549, ii. 2686, iv. 1851, *fetch*, *get*.
- feture*, *s.* iv. 380, v. 2598, viii. 2977, *pl. fetures*, vii. 4877, *feature*, *make*.
- fewe*, *a. pl.* P. 22, i. 1424, *as subst.* iv. 2614; *a fewe*, ii. 1507, iv. 1286.
- fieble*, *a.* P. 887, iii. 269, iv. 1392, (*feble*, viii. 3127), *sup. fieblest*, vii. 4296; *as subst.* P. 615.
- fieble*, *v. a.* vi. 373.
- fieblesoe*, *s.* ii. 2272.
- fiede*, *see fede*.
- fiedinge*, *s.* vi. 746, 941.
- field*, *see feld*.
- fieldwode*, *s.* v. 4039, *see note*.
- fiels*, *v. a. n.* ii. 3015, iii. 2730, v. 1043, *pret. felte*, i. 2497, *felt*, viii. 2165, *pp. felt*, i. 210, *feel*, *think*.
- fielinge*, *s.* P. 951, vi. 344.
- fieroe*, *see fiers*.
- fiers*, ii. 349, companion; in *fiers*, in *fere*, i. 993, ii. 710, viii. 1753, together.
- fiers*, *a.* vii. 899, *pl. fiores*, v. 3517.
- fievere*, *s.* v. 464 ff., 5995.
- fieverous*, *a.* v. 589.
- fiſte*, *a. def.* ii. 2320, vii. 611.
- fiſtene*, *num.* vii. 1304.
- fight*, *s.* PP. 68.
- figure*, *s.* P. 620, i. 1530, iv. 2563, *pl. figures*, P. 918.
- figure*, *v. a.* vii. 1016, 1032, shape, *figure*.
- fihte*, *fyhte*, *see felhte*.
- ſille*, *felle*, *s.* iii. 2609, v. 255, 1680, *ſill*.
- ſille*, *felle*, *v. a.* ii. 3448, v. 2205, vi. 590, viii. 34, *ſill*.
- ſin*, *a.* P. 606, vi. 1891, *pl. ſine*, v. 1548, *ſyne*, iv. 2554.
- a ſin*, iv. 60, at last: *cp. aſyn*.
- ſinal*, *a.* P. 982, i. 1647, iii. 1816, (*ſynal*, viii. 3088°), *in ſinal*, viii. 3106.
- ſinali*, *ſinaly*, *adv.* i. 1956, ii. 1050, iii. 75, v. 595.
- ſinde*, *fynde*, *v. a.* P. 94, 572, iii. 2056, 3 s. *pres. ſint*, *ſynt*, ii. 394, 2129, iv. 3403, *pret. ſond*, i. 113, 2337, v. 2690, vii. 3300, *pl. ſounde(n)*, P. 812, i. 1109, *pp. ſounde(n)*, i. 2399, v. 6814, vi. 633; *ſind*, *invent*, *provide*.
- finger*, *s.* iv. 653, v. 7118°, *finger ende*, vi. 1064, *pl. ſingres*, iv. 1177.
- ſire*, *v. see fyre*.
- ſirmament*, *s.* P. 959, iv. 1032.
- ſiry*, *see fyri*.
- ſiſch*, *ſieſch*, *s.* vi. 1264, *pl. ſiſches*, i. 491, ii. 3456, iii. 957.
- ſiſhere*, *s.* iii. 956, viii. 646.
- ſive*, *see fyve*.
- ſixacion* (-oun), *s.* iv. 2520, 2574.
- ſlaſke*, *v. n.* viii. 1196, *flutter*.
- ſlamme*, *s.* P. 345, v. 3508.
- ſlaterende*, *pres. p. as a.* vii. 2652.
- ſlateria*, *s.* vii. 2168 ff., 2515 ff.
- ſlatour*, *s.* vii. 2179 ff., 2330°.
- ſle*, *ſlen* (1), *v. a. n.* P. 203, i. 1223, 1701, iii. 600, iv. 1990, *ſlee*, ii. 3161, vii. 3528, *pret. ſledde*, i. 2636, ii. 152, *pp. ſledd*, vii. 3570; *escape*, *flee*, *avoid*.
- ſle* (2), *v. n.* iv. 1050, vi. 2225, 3 s. *pres. ſleth*, i. 1727, ii. 151, iii. 2430, *ſleith*, i. 2673, *pret. ſlyh*, *ſlih*, iii. 2108, v. 6206, *subj. ſlyhe*, vii. 358, *pp. ſlowe(n)*, v. 3750, 6129; *fly*.
- ſle* (3), *v. a.* v. 4692, *ſlay*.
- ſlees*, *s.* v. 46, 3272.
- Flegeton*, v. 1109.
- ſleisſchly*, *ſleisſchly* (-li), *ſleyſſchly*, *a.* vii. 4211, 4237, 4348, 4395, *ſleisſchly*, v. 6402°.
- ſleisſch*, *s.* i. 2235, v. 1940, *ſleisſch*, i. 1531, *ſleasch*, v. 6395° ff.
- ſlets*, *s.* ii. 1134, iii. 1036, *flect*.
- ſlets*, *v. n.* iii. 1628, vi. 335, *ſlietende*, iv. 3083, *float*.
- ſleume*, *s.* vii. 414, 451.
- ſlihte*, *see flyhte*.
- ſliht*, *s.* v. 4692.
- ſlitte*, *v. a. n.* v. 7076, vii. 2902, *ſlitt*, iv. 214, *move*, *turn aside*.
- flook*, *s.* P. 391, 421.
- flood*, *s.* i. 364, ii. 719, v. 1605, viii. 79, *pl. fiodes*, P. 1013.

- flor**, *s.* iv. 2785, v. 4148, viii. 1855, floor, ground.  
**Florent**, *i.* 1411 ff.  
**florin**, *s.* v. 335, 2410, vii. 2095.  
**flour**, *s.* i. 3261, v. 278, *pl.* **floures**, *P.* 937, viii. 2943\*.  
**floure**, *v. n.* v. 4144, 7626.  
**flowe**, *v. n.* *P.* 39\*, 933, ii. 1881.  
**flyh**, *see* **flie** (2).  
**flyhte**, **flhte**, *s.* iv. 1055, 2342, **flyht**, *iv.* 1058, v. 5975.  
**fo**, *s.* ii. 3354, iii. 284, iv. 3408; *as a. v.* 7252.  
**fode**, *s.* i. 2975, ii. 87, v. 325, **foode**, *vi.* 846.  
**fol**, *a.* i. 442, 2269, **fool**, *vi.* 569, vii. 4271, foolish.  
**fol**, *s.* i. 2214, ii. 3248, iv. 3347, vii. 3953 ff., **fol**, *i.* 1967, **fool**, *vi.* 19, *pl.* **foles**, *iv.* 625, v. 322, **foolea**, *vi.* 535; **fool**.  
**folde**, *s.* *P.* 390, 439, ii. 3055, **fold**: *v.* 2784, embrace.  
**fole**, *s.* viii. 2407, **foal**.  
**folhaste**, *s.* iii. 1430 ff., 2735, **folhaast**, *iii.* 1096.  
**folhaastif**, *a.* iii. 1635, 1795, vii. 899.  
**folhaastifnesse**, *s.* vii. 435.  
**folie**, *s.* i. 520, 2357, iii. 141.  
**folk**, *s.* *P.* 467, i. 2033, ii. 1770, iii. 185.  
**folwe**, *v. a. n.* *P.* 443, i. 261, 3 *s. pres.*  
**folweth**, *ii.* 3503, **folwith**, *iv.* 671, *PP.* 23.  
**fom**, *s.* iv. 1666, v. 4008, *vi.* 1469.  
**foman**, *s.* v. 6418\*, *pl.* **fomen**, *i.* 2877, *iv.* 1523, **foomen**, *vii.* 3334\*.  
**fonde**, *v. a. n.* *P.* 62, 80\*, i. 3198, ii. 929, *iv.* 3109, v. 1421, attempt, try.  
**fonge**, *v. a. n.* 2558, iii. 1111, *iv.* 2294, take.  
**for**, *prep.* *P.* 16, i. 844, 1683, ii. 1856, *iv.* 1090 f., **for al that &c.**, *i.* 192, 1055, *iii.* 334, *vii.* 2677: *cp.* **fore**.  
**for**, *conj.* *P.* 12, 40, i. 598, 1012, 1466, **for that**, *P.* 22, i. 1784, since, because, in order that.  
**forbare**, *v. a.* i. 244, 1602, 3119, 3163, ii. 538, 1768, iii. 138, 411, 754, 2321, *iv.* 1496, 2344, v. 6309; *v. n.* i. 1279, iii. 754, v. 563: leave out, spare, prevent, forbear, avoid.  
**forbiede**, *v. a. n.* v. 394, god forbiede &c., ii. 3064, iii. 1121, god forbiede, iii. 477, *pres. forbade*, v. 1636, *pp.* **forbade**, i. 3408, iii. 2253.  
**forblowe(n)**, *pp.* ii. 25, viii. 1402, blown about.  
**forboght**, *pp.* ii. 1573, bought off.  
**foracocha**, *v. a.* *P.* 409, drive out.  
**foracast**, *pp.* v. 1193, cast away.  
**forde**, *s.* ii. 2166, vii. 1236, **ford**.  
**fordo**, *v. a.* *P.* 326, i. 2415, ii. 3172, *pp.* **fordo**, v. 7576, destroy.  
**fordrive**, *v. a.* *pp.* viii. 1636, driven about.  
**fore**, *adv.*, come fore, travaille fore, &c., *iv.* 1723, v. 3345, viii. 992.  
**forebode**, *s.* v. 6053, prohibition.  
**forein**, *a.* iii. 5, v. 973, vii. 2975, far removed.  
**forest**, *s.* i. 351, 1528, 2292, iii. 324.  
**forestempne**, *s.* iii. 994, man at the prow (?).  
**forestokne**, *s.* i. 2812.  
**forward**, *s.* iii. 507, v. 7004, engagement.  
**forfare**, *pp.* i. 109, worn out (with travel).  
**forfet**, *s.* iii. 1798, vii. 2721, 4583, transgression, forfeit.  
**forfete**, *v. a.* v. 5477.  
**forfature**, **forafature**, *iii.* 1500, v. 780, 1764, 4214, offence, punishment.  
**forge**, *s.* i. 1088, v. 963, workmanship, forge.  
**forge**, *v. a. d.* 1087, *iv.* 237, *vi.* 1958.  
**forgnawe**, *pp.* iii. 1406, gnawed to pieces.  
**forgon**, *v. a. v.* 7284, go without.  
**forjuggle**, *v. a.* vii. 3171\*, condemn.  
**forlete**, *v. a.* *pp.* vii. 584, viii. 1434, abandoned, left alone.  
**forlie**, *v. a.*, 3 *s. pres.* **forlieth**, *PP.* 108, *pres.* **forlai**, **forlay**, *iii.* 2031, v. 802, viii. 215, **forliih**, *viii.* 300, *pp.* **forlein**, **forlain**, *iii.* 198, 2276, v. 3189; lie with, violate.  
**forlore**, *v. a.* *pp.* i. 2947, ii. 1242, v. 2825, **forlorn**, v. 1882, lost.  
**forme**, *s.* *P.* 53\*, 871, i. 576, 1339, 2670, ii. 2473, *iv.* 2211, v. 1872, *pl.* **formes**, *iv.* 2501.  
**forme**, *v. a.* ii. 1012, 3245.  
**formel**, *a.* vii. 157.  
**Foroneüs**, *vii.* 3060.  
**fors**, *s.*, no fors, v. 7720, no matter.  
**forsake**, *v. a.* *P.* 166, i. 1012, iii. 680, *iv.* 1592, 3 *s. pres.* **forsakth**, *ii.* 2450, **forsok**, *iii.* 2031, *pl.* **forsake(n)**, *P.* 809, i. 611, *imperat.* **forsak**, *vii.* 3675, *pp.* **forsake**, *i.* 210, 3128, *ii.* 157; deny, give up, avoid, desert.  
**forschape**, *v. a.* *iv.* 2108, *pres.* **forschop**, *i.* 370, 1846, *pl.* **forschopa**, *vi.* 1446, *pp.* **forschape**, *i.* 416, *iii.* 377, transform.  
**forsafature**, *see* **forfature**.  
**forsfet**, *pp.* ii. 1039.  
**forslowthen**, *v. a.* *iv.* 2319, v. 1887, neglect by sloth.

- forsemit**, *pp.* viii. 1000, smitten (to death).  
**forstormed**, *pp.* ii. 25, viii. 1402, driven by storms.  
**forseue**, *v. n.* i. 1028, vii. 3928, 5369, go wrong.  
**forsewre**, *v. a. v.* 2870, *pp.* **forsewre**, ii. 875, v. 3229.  
**forth**, *adv.* (of place) i. 826, iv. 799, vii. 4362, (of time) P. 818, i. 949, v. 1724, **forth therupon**, i. 2503, **forth after**, iii. 2103, **forth over**, i. 3431, **forth riht**, ii. 1270; **forth** (= continually), P. 931, **axeth forth** (go on asking) i. 2668, **dryve forth**, P. 374, **spend (time): as prep. forth with**, P. 680, i. 680, 2936, ii. 927, 1479, iii. 310, **forthwith**, ii. 699, 1034, **together with, with; forth withal**, ii. 791.  
**forth**, *s. i.* 3314, *course*.  
**forthbringe**, *v. a.* vii. 2213, *pp.* **forthbrought**, v. 1257.  
**forthdrawe**, *v. a. v.* 330, *pp.* **forthdrawe**, ii. 1395, 2697, iv. 471, 1569, 1616, (**forth drawe**, viii. 3060), **draw out, bring forth, bring up, breed**.  
**forthdrawere**, *s. iv.* 3381, **breeder**.  
**forthdrawinge**, *s. v.* 1021, **breeding**.  
**forthkenke**, *v. a.* iii. 2614; *impers.* iii. 139, 630, *pret.* **forthoghte**, ii. 796, 2398: **repent; it repents (me), it is displeasing**.  
**forthere**, *adv.* *see* **further**.  
**forthermor**, *e*, *see* **furthermor(e)**.  
**forthest**, *a. i.* 1199, ii. 3150: *cp.* **further**.  
**forthferde**, *v. n. pret.* i. 98, **went forth**.  
**forthgon**, *v. n.* iv. 1850.  
**forthi**, *adv.* P. 5, i. 1638, (**forthy**, viii. 3152, **for thi**, viii. 2950\*), **therefore: noht forthi**, i. 1901, ii. 398, **nevertheless**.  
**forthren**, *v. a.* ii. 2045, vi. 353.  
**forthrare**, *s.* vii. 804.  
**forthriht**, *adv.* v. 7118\*, **straight**.  
**forthringe**, *s. ii.* 661, 2048, vii. 2957, **furtherance**.  
**forthrowe**, *pp.* viii. 1154, **thrown about**.  
**forthwith**, *adv.* ii. 359, 1204, v. 643, **at once, moreover: prep. see forth**.  
**forto**, P. 31, 208, i. 804, &c., **for to**, P. 209, 339.  
**fortrede**, *v. a.*, *pp.* **fortrode**, v. 6054, **tread to death**.  
**fortunat**, *a.* vii. 917.  
**fortune**, *s.* P. 70, i. 1670, 2625, ii. 1477.  
**fortune**, *v. a.* P. 584, i. 1859, iii. 2365, iv. 188, viii. 2549, **bring about, deal with, regulate, make fortunate**.  
**forwacohed**, *pp.* v. 5421, **wearied with want of sleep**.  
**forwakid**, *pp.* iv. 404, **wearied with want of sleep**.  
**forwept**, *pp.* iv. 404, **worn out with weeping**.  
**forwhy and**, *conj.* ii. 2025, v. 2563, **provided that**.  
**forworthe**, *v. n.* vi. 280, **perish**.  
**foryete** (3), *v. a.* i. 224, iv. 576, 3 *s. pres.* **foryet**, iv. 544, *pret.* **foryat**, iv. 654, *imperat.* **foryet**, viii. 2434, *pp.* **for-yete(n)**, P. 311, i. 2015, v. 5239; *v. n.* i. 3426.  
**foryetel** (3), *a.* vii. 415, **forgetful**.  
**foryetelnesse** (3), *s.* iv. 541, 629.  
**foryiste** (3), *s.* viii. 2896, **forgiveness**.  
**foryive** (3), *v. a. n.* i. 2384, iii. 898, iv. 3427, vii. 4071, *pp.* **foryive**, i. 2253, 3334, **foryove**, i. 2136, **forgive, give**.  
**foryivenesse** (3), *s.* iv. 3491, vi. 2213.  
**fostre**, *v. a.* P. 326, ii. 437.  
**fostringe**, *s.* vii. 2174.  
**fo**, *s.* P. 357, i. 2053, 2539, **under fote**, P. 117, iii. 1167, **under foote**, vii. 3335\*, **on fote**, v. 1664, **at hia fot**, iii. 233, *pl.* **fest**, P. 612, i. 2300; **fot hot**, iv. 3350.  
**foul**, *foughl*, *s. see* **fowhl**.  
**foul**, *a. i.* 1532, *def.* **foule**, i. 1734, iii. 2252, *pl.* iii. 431, vi. 573; *compar.* **foulere**, i. 1759; *sup.* **the fouleste**, i. 1718.  
**foule**, *adv.* v. 5708.  
**founde**, *v. a.* P. 289, 824, ii. 3476, viii. 1994, 3 *pl. pret.* **foundeden**, v. 904.  
**foundement**, *s.* vii. 703, 4197.  
**foundour**, *s. v.* 1002.  
**foure**, *num.* ii. 1037, iv. 2464, vii. 2371, **fowre**, iv. 2477.  
**fourtenyht**, *s.* iv. 1418.  
**fourtiene**, *num.* i. 3134, viii. 1539.  
**fourty**, *num.* iv. 1563.  
**fowhl**, *foughl*, **foul**, *s.* iii. 2605, v. 7072, vii. 140, *pl.* **fowhles**, **foules**, iii. 2601, iv. 1298, v. 1025.  
**fox**, *s.* ii. 3033, *pl.* **foxes**, iv. 1836.  
**France**, P. 747, ii. 2966, 3011 ff., vii. 770.  
**franchise**, *s.* P. 761, ii. 3483, iii. 2699, (**fraunchise**, viii. 3023), **freedom, privilege, liberality**.  
**franchised**, *pp.* ii. 3263, **privileged**.  
**fraternite**, *s. v.* 1775.

- fraude**, *s.* ii. 2151, 3046, iii. 1068.  
**fre**, *a.* i. 752, 1930, ii. 2112, iii. 2236, v. 4728 (liberal): *adv.* ii. 3253.  
**frede**, *v. a.* iv. 3511, *pret.* **fredde**, *v.* 7167, *fecl.*  
**Frederik**, *v.* 2392.  
**freish**, **freyash**, *a.* i. 779, iv. 1362, *def.* **freishe**, **fresshe**, *i.* 3353, iii. 1390, *v.* 6736, **freish**, *vii.* 5000, *pl.* **freishe**, **freyshe**, *i.* 353, 2355; *comp.* **freishere**, *vi.* 768.  
**freish**, *adv.* viii. 2487.  
**frele**, *a.* i. 773, viii. 289, 834, *frail.*  
**frely**, *adv.* v. 2847, **freliche**, *v.* 4769.  
**friend**, *s.* iii. 274, vii. 1574 f., *pl.* **friendes**, *i.* 992, 2147.  
**friended**, *pp.* viii. 1964.  
**friendliche**, *adv.* vii. 4920.  
**friendliche** (-hiede), *s.* iii. 946, *v.* 4755.  
**friendly**, **friendlich**, *a.* i. 2423, *v.* 4833, viii. 2173.  
**franschipe**, *s.* ii. 2179, 2461, **franschipe**, *iii.* 1060.  
**franesie**, *s.* iii. 210, *v.* 848.  
**Frensohe**, *a.* *def.* P. 770; *subst. pl.* **Frensche**, *ii.* 2993.  
**frere**, *s.* vi. 138, *friar.*  
**frese**, *v. n.* iv. 613, 1092, *vi.* 249.  
**fressh**, *see* **freish**, *a.*  
**frete**, *v. a.*, 3 *s. pres.* **fret**, *vii.* 412, *consume.*  
**frette**, *s. v.* 3015, *ornament.*  
**freyne**, *v. a.* v. 7471, *question.*  
**friday**, *s. v.* 81.  
**Frigelond**, **Frige**, *v.* 147, 272.  
**Frigidilles**, *iv.* 2408.  
**Frixus**, *v.* 4254 ff.  
**fro**, *prep.* P. 169, *i.* 395, 2895, *mi ladi* **fro**, *iv.* 558, *cp.* v. 3639, **from**, *v.* 6250: *adv.* P. 569, *i.* 457, 1791, *iv.* 2877.  
**froise**, *s.* iv. 2732, *pancake.*  
**fronce**, *see* **frounce**.  
**front**, **frount**, *s.* i. 1685, *iv.* 1349, *v.* 6305, *forehead.*  
**frozen**, (*pp.*) *a.* vi. 245.  
**frost**, *s.* vii. 282, viii. 2851.  
**frostl**, *a.* vii. 1205.  
**frounce**, **fronce**, *s.* ii. 392, *vi.* 770, *vii.* 1594, *wrinkle, obstruction.*  
**frounce** (up), *v. a.* i. 1589, *wrinkle.*  
**froward**, *prep.* P. 863, *away from.*  
**fruit**, *s.* i. 2822, *v.* 278, **fruyt**, *v.* 374.  
**fuisoune**, *v. a.* viii. 1992, *supply in abundance.*  
**fulfille**, *v. a.* i. 856, 1290, *v.* 256, *pret.* **fulfelde**, *v.* 1246, *pp.* **fulfeld**, *i.* 895, *ii.* 909, **fulfelt**, *viii.* 2211; *v. n.* vii. 1584: *fill, perform; suffice.*  
**fulgrowe**, *a.* i. 2818.  
**fulhard**, *a.* viii. 2777.  
**full**, *a.* P. 399, 558, **ful**, *P.* 89, *ii.* 598, *def.* **fulle**, *iv.* 3705, **full**, *i.* 1629, *pl.* **fulle**, *v.* 822, 2204.  
**full**, **ful**, *adv.* P. 451, 787, *i.* 1171, 1178, *ii.* 607.  
**fulle**, *s.* ii. 2826, *iv.* 948, 2896.  
**fully**, **fulli**, *adv.* i. 1292, 2047, 2769, **fulliche**, *i.* 1757, *ii.* 1326, **fullich**, *iii.* 2661.  
**fulmanye**, *a.* viii. 2408, *very many.*  
**fulofte**, *adv.* P. 507, &c., **fullofte**, *i.* 662, **fulofte tyme**, *i.* 1382, *cp.* iii. 41, **fulofte**, *P.* 463, **full ofte**, *ii.* 2330.  
**fulsore**, *adv.* vii. 3153\*.  
**fulwoful**, *a.* i. 3000.  
**fulwonne**, *v. a.* *pp.* vii. 736, *fully won.*  
**funke**, *s.* vi. 512, *spark.*  
**furgh**, *s.* iv. 1846, *v.* 3527, *furrow, (furlong).*  
**furlong**, *s.* v. 1991.  
**furred**, *a.* i. 627.  
**further(e)**, *adv.* i. 105, 2447, *ii.* 78, *iii.* 81, **forther(e)**, *ii.* 1191, *iii.* 2747, *vii.* 3648.  
**furthermor(e)**, **forthermor**, *adv.* ii. 626, 1164, *iii.* 942, *iv.* 2858, **forthere mor**, *iii.* 885.  
**fy**, *interj.* i. 616, *iv.* 610.  
**fyf**, *see* **fyve**.  
**fyhte**, *see* **fehte**.  
**fynde**, *see* **finde**.  
**fyne**, *v. a.* iv. 2456, *refine.*  
**fyne**, *a.* *see* **fin**.  
**fyr**, *s.* P. 344, *ii.* 164, *on fyre*, *iii.* 16, **be the fyr**, *iv.* 2724, **fer**, *iii.* 694, *pl.* **fyres**, *iii.* 1039.  
**fydrake**, *s.* vii. 323, *fiery dragon.*  
**fyre**, *s.* ii. 150, *bolt (of a crossbow).*  
**fyre**, **fire**, *v. a.* P. 222, *i.* 1174, *ii.* 2946, *iv.* 2088, *viii.* 2775, *set on fire.*  
**fyri**, **firy**, *a.* i. 144, 2002, *iv.* 1020, 1274.  
**fyve**, **five**, *num.* i. 296, 545, 2163, **fyf**, *vii.* 1706.

## G

- gabbe**, *v. n.* ii. 1937, *lie.*  
**Gable**, *vii.* 4621 ff.  
**Gabiens**, *pl.* vii. 4612 ff.  
**gadre**, *v. a.* v. 1287, 3999; *pres. part.* **gaderende**, *v. n.* iii. 858.  
**gaignage**, *s.* iii. 2347, *harvest.*  
**Galahot**, *viii.* 2502.  
**Galathe(e)**, *ii.* 108 ff.



Galba, vi. 538, 563.  
 galele, s. ii. 2543, v. 3915, vii. 3300, viii. 513.  
 galle, s. iii. 703, v. 1481, vi. 341, vii. 461 ff.  
 galled, *pp.* iv. 1344.  
 game, s. P. 462, i. 1542, ii. 269, iii. 44, viii. 678, 2931, 3087\*, *gamen*, i. 347, v. 6314, viii. 680, *diverse game*, vi. 1849, *in game*, ii. 528, iii. 549, *on pure g.*, iii. 733, *a game*, viii. 2319.  
 gamme, s. vii. 172, *scale (of music)*.  
 gan, *see* ginne.  
 gape, *v. n.* vii. 3320.  
 gardin, s. i. 3144, vii. 2279.  
 garlandes, s. *pl.* viii. 2467.  
 garnement, s. i. 2510, v. 7189\*.  
 gaspe, *v. n.* v. 3975, 4064.  
 gastly (-li), *a. v.* 2745, 5062, vii. 4721, *fearful*.  
 gate, s. P. 439, i. 299, 2134, iv. 1001, v. 3329 f., vii. 3313\*, *gate tre*, iv. 3593; *gate, way*.  
 gaudes, s. *pl.* viii. 2906.  
 gay, *a. i.* 2704, v. 3106.  
 Gayus Caligula, viii. 202.  
 Gayus Fabricius, vii. 2784.  
 geant, s. ii. 155, 2167, iv. 2075, *pl. geantz*, v. 1091.  
 Geber, iv. 2608.  
 Gebuz, vii. 1463.  
 Gedeon, vii. 3633 ff.  
 Gelboë, iv. 1952.  
 Gemini, vii. 1031 ff., 1267.  
 generacion, s. iv. 2227.  
 general, *a. P.* 384, ii. 2804, 3084, v. 1700, *in general*, P. 431, i. 1502.  
 Genesi, v. 1602, viii. 42.  
 genitals, s. *pl.* v. 855.  
 Genius, i. 196, iv. 2771, vii. 1, viii. 2306, 2809, 2893.  
 gentil, *a. P.* 61\*, i. 2665, ii. 1180, iv. 206, 2223, *gentile*, v. 2713, viii. 2294: s. *the gentils*, iv. 2199, v. 1271.  
 gentillesse, -esce, s. i. 1436, 1721, iii. 2699, iv. 2202, *gentillesse*, viii. 730.  
 geomance, vi. 1295, *divination by earth*.  
 geometrie, s. vii. 151.  
 Geptes, *pl.* i. 2466.  
 gerarchie, s. vii. 1773, *rule*.  
 gerdil, s. v. 6866.  
 gere, s. i. 1996, v. 2984, 3663.  
 gert, *pp.* v. 3965.  
 gesse, s. i. 1889, vii. 3548, *al to gesses*, v. 840, *without gesses*, v. 1136.

gesse, *v. a. n. P.* 64, i. 896, iv. 282, 881, vi. 1592.  
 gest, s., *pl. gestes*, v. 493, *guest*.  
 geste, s. v. 5275, *pl. gestes*, v. 6359, vii. 4313, *story*.  
 Geta, Gete, ii. 2477 ff.  
 gete(n), *v. a. (n.) P.* 312, i. 628, 793, iv. 2124, *get, (inf.)* ii. 60, 3 s. *pres. get*, v. 6086, *pret. gat*, i. 3420, iv. 136, *pp. gete*, ii. 977, 1813, *get, beget*.  
 getinge, s. vii. 2309.  
 Ghenbal, vi. 1320.  
 gibet, s. iii. 2104.  
 Gibliere, vi. 1323.  
 gilt, *see* gult.  
 ginne, *v. n.*, 3 s. *pres. ginth*, v. 6010, *pret. gan*, i. 110, 114, 199, &c., *pl. gonnen*, v. 3764.  
 gknaue, *see* gnawe.  
 glad, *a. P.* 55\*, i. 158, *gladd*, v. 495, *pl. glade*, P. 299, i. 1114; *compar. gladder*, iv. 1543, *gladder*, v. 5373; *sup. gladdest*, vii. 2422.  
 glade(n), *v. a. i.* 2767, iv. 3199; *v. n. i.* 2738, ii. 2737, vi. 1211; *refl. i.* 2532, vii. 2605: *gladden*; *rejoice*.  
 gladly, *adv.* ii. 284, 2032.  
 gladnesse, s. i. 90, ii. 223, iv. 2784.  
 gladschipe, s. i. 3128, ii. 229, *gladschip*, iii. 72.  
 glas, s. ii. 1921, v. 2154, *mirror*.  
 glede, s. iii. 39, *hot coal*.  
 glistre, *v. n. i.* 1137, v. 3734, vii. 815.  
 Glodeside, i. 2575 ff.  
 gloire, s. P. 262, i. 2677, 2720.  
 glorious, s. v. 6815, vii. 890.  
 glose, s. i. 271, vii. 2171, *comment, flattery*.  
 glose, *v. a. i.* 1254, vii. 3786, *explain, conceal*; *v. n. v.* 6537, vii. 2172, 2531, 3973, *flatter, cajole*.  
 glotonie, s. vi. 543, 1161.  
 glotoun, s. v. 1058, 1469.  
 glove, s. P. 357, iii. 2154, v. 7047.  
 glu, s. v. 3603.  
 glyde, *v. n. v.* 5062, vii. 326, *pret. glod*, v. 3967.  
 gnawe, gknaue, *v. a. n. ii.* 520, vi. 372, *pp. gnawe*, iii. 2014.  
 go, gon, *v. n. P.* 17, 697, i. 1444, 1514, iv. 1583, &c., *refl. i.* 1619, 2177; 3 s. *pres. goth*, P. 269, i. 933, 1619, *geth*, ii. 1804, 2616, iii. 2300, *imperat. go*, i. 1261, *go we*, i. 1769, *goth*, v. 2343, *pp. go, gon*, P. 132, i. 87, (*goon*, viii. 3033, PP. 102), *time go*, iv. 297, *go, gon (=ago)*, i. 64, ii. 2096.

god, *s.* P. 27, 72, i. 836, *godd*, i. 921, 1903,  
*genit.* *goddes*, i. 855, *godes*, i. 2718,  
 (goddia, PP. 32), *pl.* *goddes*, ii. 190.  
*goddess*, *s.* i. 125, iii. 753, v. 839, 1151,  
*godesse*, i. 235, 369, 805.  
 a *goddeshalf*, v. 4452 (*see note*), *cp.* v.  
 5016.  
*Godefroi*, PP. 283.  
*Godelie*, vii. 2553.  
*godespourveiance*, *s.* PP. 21 (MS.).  
*godhede*, *godhiede*, *s.* P. 192, 498, iii.  
 2523, v. 1102.  
*godward*, i. 869.  
*gold*, *s.* P. 205, i. 1101, 2537, iii. 1701.  
*golde*, *a.* P. 631, v. 6780.  
*goldhord*, *s.* v. 2118, hoard of gold.  
*goldring*, *s.* ii. 2607, v. 2202.  
*gone*, *v.* *n.* v. 4064, gape.  
*good*, *a.* P. 4, 88\*, 146, &c., *def.* *goode*, P. 459,  
 i. 1257, *good*, i. 2764, *voc.* *goode*, i. 3147,  
*pl.* *goode*, P. 42, i. 2976; *as subst.* v. 3831.  
*good*, *s.* P. 249, i. 1183, v. 4926, *pl.* *goodes*,  
 i. 628, v. 4984, wealth, kindness.  
*goode*, *s.* P. 237, i. 1150, 2773, iv. 2369,  
 goodness, advantage.  
*goodlihiede*, *s.* iv. 608.  
*goodly*, *goodli*, *a.* i. 152, 2422, 3137, ii.  
 19, *goodlych*, ii. 2026; *adv.* *goodliche*,  
 ii. 787, *goodli*, *goodly*, iv. 152, vii. 5362.  
*goodnesse*, *s.* P. 485.  
*goodschipe*, *s.* iv. 2173, vi. 1474.  
*gore*, *s.* v. 5730, cloak, cover.  
*Gorgones*, i. 402.  
*gorgonaa*, vii. 1367 (name of a stone).  
*goshawk*, *s.* iv. 2935, v. 5644.  
*gospell*, *gospel*, *s.* P. 967, iii. 2492, v.  
 1794.  
*goat*, *s.* iv. 574.  
*gostly*, *gostli*, *a.* P. 420, ii. 2818, v. 1948,  
*gostliche*, v. 1855; *adv.* *gostli*, v. 1874.  
*got*, *s.* vii. 345, 1171, goat.  
*governance*, *s.* P. 108, i. 3391, v. 971,  
*governaunce*, P. 187.  
*governe*, *v.* *a.* *n.* P. 721, i. 43, 2009, viii.  
 947, *refl.* i. 2621.  
*governour*, *s.* iii. 2729, v. 1016.  
*governynge*, *s.* PP. 31.  
*Gower*, viii. 2321, 2908, PP. 374.  
*grace*, *s.* P. 89, i. 732, 859, 1684, 2158, ii.  
 2630, *pl.* *graces*, i. 51, grace, favour,  
 pardon.  
*gracious*, *a.* i. 137, ii. 562, 3080, v. 409,  
 favourable, kind, favoured.  
*gradde*, *v.* *n.* *pret.* iii. 1692, v. 5004; *v.* *a.*  
 vi. 445: cried out, cried out for.  
*gramaire*, *s.* vii. 1528 ff.

*grame*, *s.* iii. 48, 734, trouble.  
*grant*, *graunt*, *s.* i. 793, 1449, ii. 1505, v.  
 969, permission, gift.  
*grantdame*, *s.* i. 1445.  
*grante(n)*, *v.* *a.* *n.* P. 92, i. 1828, 2597,  
*graunte*, ii. 1463, viii. 3110\*.  
*grant merel* (-y), i. 1832, 1902, ii. 2313,  
 3366, thanks.  
*grape*, *s.* v. 1230, viii. 2849.  
*gras*, *s.* i. 352, 2844, vii. 1306, *grass*, vii.  
 289, *pl.* *grases*, i. 2976, grass, herb.  
*grase*, *v.* *n.* i. 2974.  
*grave*, *s.* i. 1838, ii. 1525.  
*grave(n)*, *v.* *a.* *pp.* i. 555, iii. 2078, iv. 3672,  
 engraved, buried.  
*gravel*, *s.* v. 311.  
*Graec*, P. 717, i. 1108, ii. 1644, iii. 1828,  
 2310, 2547, iv. 1872, v. 817, 1337, 1560,  
 1592, 3247, 3359, 3685, 3902, 3927,  
 4022, 4249, 7199 ff., vii. 887, viii. 2515,  
 2631, 2706.  
*Graec*, *see* *Grek*.  
*grede*, *see* *gradde*.  
*gredi*, *a.* v. 2006.  
*gredily*, *adv.* v. 2240, *griedili*, v. 2017.  
 (*greede*, *v.* *n.* v. 394\*, desire.)  
*Gregels*, *a.* v. 3311; *cp.* *Gregois*.  
*Gregoire*, P. 284, 945, v. 1746 ff., 1901,  
 6396\*.  
*Gregois*, *s.* iv. 2401, Greek (language), *pl.*  
*Gregois*, *Gregels*, i. 1117, 1162, iii. 970  
 ff., 1759, iv. 1819, 2147, v. 3074, 3753,  
 3778, 7580, vii. 3059, *Greeks*; *cp.* *Grek*.  
*greis*, *greys*, *a.* *pl.* v. 2473, 6305, vii.  
 4418.  
*grein*, *s.* P. 320, ii. 3310, v. 1885, vi. 770,  
 grain, condition.  
*greine*, *v.* *n.* v. 823, 7626, bear corn,  
 ripen.  
*Grek*, *s.* iv. 2627, Greek (language), vi.  
 1314, viii. 2544; *pl.* *Greks*, *Graec*, P.  
 696, i. 1080, ii. 1807, iii. 1889 ff., 2677,  
 iv. 1699, v. 1056 ff., 1304 ff., 3148, 7356.  
*Grekes*, v. 1365, 1455, 3355.  
*grene*, *a.* P. 935, i. 113, 778, ii. 496, vii.  
 4618, 5040, *greene*, iv. 1491, 2309,  
 green, fresh.  
*grene*, *s.* i. 682, 2348, *griene*, iv. 3325,  
 green field; *greens*, vii. 1168, green-  
 ness.  
*gret*, *a.* P. 226, iv. 1837, *greta*, iv. 453, v.  
 5737, *def.* *greta*, P. 748, ii. 588, *pl.* P.  
 78, i. 2683; *as subst.* i. 3365; *compar.*  
*grettere*, iv. 1459, *gretere*, vi. 2219;  
*sup.* *greteate*, ii. 599.  
*greta*, *v.*, *see* *griete*.

gretli, gretly, *adv.* P. 164, ii. 2834, iii. 1321.  
 grevable, *a.* iv. 309, grievous.  
 grevance, *s.* i. 1308, 1500, ii. 1657, iii. 296, grievance, vi. 969, harm, grief.  
 greve, *s.* v. 4015, v. 5965, grove.  
 greven, *v.*, *see* grieve.  
 grevous, *a.* v. 469, vii. 3258.  
 griedili, *see* gredily.  
 grief, *s.* ii. 210, iii. 2724.  
 griste, *v.* *a.* v. 5583, 3 *s.* *pres.* gret, vi. 1742, *pret.* grette, vii. 4520, *imperat.*  
 griet, i. 2433, gret, viii. 2941<sup>o</sup>, greet.  
 grietinge, *s.* i. 2425.  
 grievance, *see* grevance.  
 grieve, greve(n), *v.* *a.* *n.* P. 283, i. 326, ii. 119, iii. 10, vi. 367; *impers.* P. 1086, i. 2011, ii. 54: hurt, vex, do injury, be vexed.  
 grinde, *v.* *a.*, 3 *pl.* *pret.* grounde, iii. 3.  
 gripe, *s.*, *genit.* gripees, i. 2545, griffin.  
 grisel, *s.* viii. 2407.  
 grith, iii. 1847, protection.  
 grom, *s.* ii. 3408, servant.  
 grone, *v.* *n.* iv. 3170, v. 539, vi. 2113.  
 grope, *v.* ii. 3015, v. 103, viii. 2795.  
 Grossteete, iv. 234.  
 grouchoe, *see* gruchoe.  
 ground, *s.* P. 1062, i. 473, ii. 3432, to grounde, i. 119, 2051, upon grounde, i. 2300, upon the ground, i. 2830, fro the grounde, v. 160, fro the ground, v. 5702, unto the grounde, v. 5007.  
 grounded, *pp.* ii. 1753, iv. 1966, vii. 1433, viii. 1993, based, composed, disposed.  
 groundles, *a.* vii. 4827, bottomless.  
 growe, *v.* *n.* P. 163, 511, ii. 46, iv. 3006, *pret.* *pl.* grewe, i. 2084, *pp.* grownen, i. 553, iii. 152.  
 growinge, *s.* P. 952.  
 gruchoe, *v.* *n.* i. 1264, 1349, v. 545, 4852, gruchoe, vii. 2193, complain.  
 gruochinge, *s.* ii. 2222.  
 guide, *s.* P. 145, 391, ii. 1328.  
 guide, guye, *v.* *a.* P. 128, ii. 1884, 7702, direct, carry on.  
 gule, guye, *v.* *a.* vii. 1673, 1774, viii. 2660.  
 gulle, *s.* i. 890, ii. 479, (guyle, PP. 308).  
 guile, *v.* *a.* *n.* ii. 1915, v. 3204.  
 Guilliam de Langharet, ii. 2995.  
 guillour, *s.* vi. 1381, 2015.  
 guise, *s.* i. 2696, 2706, viii. 676, fashion.  
 gule, *s.* vi. 10, 629, gluttony.

gulion, *s.* v. 6861, tunic, garment.  
 gult, gilt, i. 1880, 3334, ii. 1935, iv. 886, 1223, guilt.  
 gulte, *v.* *n.* ii. 3294, be guilty.  
 gultes, *a.* ii. 1702, 2153, iii. 870, gylteles, vi. 728.  
 gultif, gultyf, *a.* i. 558, 2448, ii. 873, guilty.  
 Gunnore, viii. 2502, Guinevere.  
 Gurmond, i. 2466, *genit.* Gurmondes, Gurmondnes, i. 2474 ff.  
 guye, *see* guile.  
 gylteles, *see* gultes.

## H

ha, *interj.* i. 1659, iii. 462, ha lord, i. 2207, Ha mercy, iii. 225, A godd, iv. 3622.  
 habit, *s.* iv. 2575.  
 habitable, *a.* vii. 586.  
 Habraham, *genit.* Habrahammes, v. 1628, 1650, vi. 1023 ff., vii. 1473, viii. 98 ff.  
 haft, *s.* iv. 936.  
 hall, *s.* vii. 296.  
 hale, *v.* *a.* *n.* ii. 2354, v. 5023, 5431, vii. 273.  
 half, halve, *s.* P. 133, 395, i. 1062, ii. 2787, iii. 1071, iv. 241, side, half; a goddes half, v. 5016, in God's name, *cp.* v. 4452, in Cristes halve, PP. 120, for Christ's sake: *adv.* half, ii. 1955, iv. 1857.  
 halfdæde, *a.* *pl.* vi. 594.  
 halfdrunk, *a.* vi. 58.  
 halfwode, *a.* vi. 513, half mad.  
 haliday, *s.* v. 7058.  
 halle, *s.* i. 2113, 2201, iv. 1325.  
 hala, *s.* v. 2914, neck.  
 halsen, *v.* *a.* iv. 3074, explain (as an omen).  
 halten, *v.* *n.* iii. 917, v. 1348, *pret.* halted, iv. 1345, go lame.  
 haltres, *s.* *pl.* iv. 1357 ff.  
 halve, *see* half.  
 halvendel, *s.* v. 2109, 4985, half.  
 halvinge, halvyng, *adv.* iv. 1885, viii. 2319, 2397, halfvinge, vii. 3398.  
 halwe, *v.* *a.* v. 7051, *pp.* halwed, v. 7028<sup>e</sup>.  
 hand, *see* hond.  
 handle, *v.* *a.* P. 65<sup>e</sup>, iii. 1956, (*pp.* handlid, PP. 321).  
 hange, honge, *v.* *n.* i. 1479, 1682, 2181,

- iii. 1555, 2105, iv. 303, *pret. pl. hyngen*, iv. 1358; *v. a. v.* 6560, *pret. hyng*, iii. 2181, iv. 860, *heng*, ii. 3094, viii. 2905, *pl. hings*, v. 1722, *pp. honged*, v. 2811, vi. 1514.
- hansell**, *s. v.* 7160.
- Hanybal**, *v.* 2054, 2198.
- hapne**, *v. impers.* ii. 2234, iii. 2652, iv. 734; *pers. v.* 7831: happen, appear.
- happ**, i. 1717, iii. 70, *hap*, i. 67, *pl. happes*, ii. 2547, v. 2249, fortune, chance.
- happe**, *v. n. v.* 2336, viii. 1127; *impers.* ii. 718, iii. 1357: *cp. hapne*.
- happi**, *a. iv.* 367.
- hard**, *a. P.* 640, i. 2330, iv. 3583, v. 452, *def. harde*, i. 2985, *pl. harde*, ii. 3027, iv. 2105; *superl. hardest*, *P.* 733.
- harde**, *adv.* i. 1050, ii. 1821.
- hardl**, *hardy*, *a. ii.* 2621, iii. 539, 2404, iv. 161.
- hardlesce** (-esse), *s. iv.* 2015, 2088, vii. 1861.
- hardinesse**, *s. iv.* 1966.
- hardnesse**, *s. iv.* 2495, 2557.
- hars**, *s. P.* 1061, iv. 2720, vii. 3776.
- harm**, *s. P.* 344, ii. 370, iii. 757, v. 716, *pl. harmes*, iv. 881, v. 3360.
- harme**, *v. a. vii.* 1135, 4354.
- harneis**, *s. v.* 3109, vi. 1652, vii. 3326\*, suit of armour, trappings.
- harpe**, *s. P.* 1055, iv. 2418, viii. 758.
- harpe**, *v. P.* 1073, v. 922, viii. 1670.
- haste**, *s. P.* 650, i. 2201, ii. 1542.
- haste(n)**, *v. n. ii.* 1541, iii. 1652, iv. 290; *refl.* i. 2302, ii. 1831; *v. a. iii.* 1656, 1723, v. 3342.
- hastely**, *adv.* v. 4044.
- hastifesse**, *s. v.* 1482.
- hastihiede**, *s. v.* 3532.
- hastyf**, *hastif*, *a. iv.* 1629, v. 6286.
- hat**, *s. ii.* 1872.
- hate**, *s. P.* 128, i. 1844, iii. 285.
- hate(n)**, *v. a. P.* 927, 997, i. 2454, iii. 935.
- hatte**, *v. see hote*.
- hauberk**, *s. v.* 3170.
- hawk**, *s. i.* 2672, v. 4725, 6129.
- haunte**, *v. a. i.* 2656, ii. 482, v. 1956, practise.
- have**, *v. P.* 61, i. 3344, v. 2839, 2 *s. pres.* *hast*, i. 176, 3 *s. hath*, *P.* 88, 130, 3 *pl. have*, i. 1361, &c., *han*, i. 1021, *pret. hadde(n)*, *P.* 227, &c., *hade*, iv. 650, viii. 1430, *had*, v. 5865, *pp. had*, *P.* 62, *hadd*, i. 129, v. 113.
- haveles**, *a. v.* 2506, 6968, destitute.
- havene**, *s. iii.* 1038, v. 7557, viii. 1275.
- havings**, *s. vii.* 2274, possession.
- he**, *pron.* *P.* 69, *him*, *P.* 15, 88, *hem* (*pl. obl.*) *P.* 1, 155, 415, *him* (= himself), *P.* 676, i. 26, (*hym*, viii. 3089), *hem* (= themselves), i. 625.
- habenus**, *s. iv.* 3017.
- Hebren**, *s. iv.* 2398, 2653, Hebrew (language); *Hebreus*, vii. 4417, viii. 138, *chebreus*, vii. 3054.
- Hector**, iv. 2141, v. 2550, 7332, *Ector*, viii. 2526, *PP.* 281.
- Hecuba**, *v.* 7308.
- hed**, *s. (1)* *P.* 605, i. 2535, iii. 1212 (of a cask), iv. 236, *heved*, *P.* 152, i. 1536, *hefd*, i. 199, on *hede*, vii. 846, on *hevede*, vii. 1108, of *hed*, iv. 3439 (*see note*), *pl. hefdes*, vii. 4694, *hevedes*, viii. 369; *head*: *as a.* vii. 811, viii. 3013\*, chief.
- hed**, *s. (2)* ii. 2066, condition (?).
- helere**, *see hih.*
- hehte**, *heyhte*, *s. i.* 2820, vii. 180, on (upon) *hehte*, *P.* 1019, i. 467, 2673, upon *hehte*, iv. 2124, vii. 1121.
- heil**, *a. i.* 703, 2122, healthy, wholesome.
- heir**, *s. i.* 1429, ii. 1320, *air*, iii. 2708, *hair*, ii. 2578, iv. 1252.
- helas**, *interj.* i. 974, 3183, iii. 1472: *cp. alas*.
- hale**, *s. P.* 278, 397, i. 1821, 2761, v. 2835, *soule hale*, *P.* 749, ii. 1313; health, salvation, profit.
- hele**, *v. a. (1)* *P.* 398, *heele*, vii. 1568, *heal*.
- hele**, *v. a. (2)*, ii. 1955, iii. 779, 2756, v. 4033; *v. n. ii.* 2056: conceal, cover.
- Helaine** (1), *Heleyne*, *v.* 3073, 7472 ff., *Eleine*, viii. 2529, *Helen* (of Troy).
- Heleine** (2), ii. 3471, (mother of Constantine).
- Heleine** (3), ii. 1200, 1437.
- Helenus**, *v.* 7461, 7569.
- hell**, *hel*, *s. i.* 424, ii. 163, iv. 1980, 2991, vii. 3721, *hull*, *P.* 618, v. 1573, vii. 3706, *pl. helles*, iii. 1035, *hulles*, v. 3996, *hill*.
- helle**, *s. P.* 456, i. 3410, ii. 3135, v. 29, *helle king*, iv. 2851.
- Hellen**, *v.* 4257.
- Hellican**, viii. 575.
- Helmege**, i. 2592 ff.
- helpe**, *help*, *s. P.* 801, i. 2639, ii. 1329, 1516, iv. 986.
- helpe(n)**, *v. a. n. i.* 25, 820, iv. 2291, *pret. halp*, i. 421, 1947, *imperat. help*, v. 4970.
- helpeles**, *a. ii.* 1394, viii. 1125, *PP.* 263.
- helpinge**, *s. v.* 4695.
- helplich**, *a. iii.* 503, vi. 1324.



- helthe, *s.* P. 96, 1052, *i.* 2496, health, salvation.  
 himself, *pl.* P. 302, 682, *i.* 1016, ham-selve(n), P. 351, *ii.* 98, *vii.* 2436.  
 hen, *s.* v. 4101, *pl.* hennes, *viii.* 159.  
 hende, *a.* as *subst.* *iv.* 644, graceful creature.  
 Henri, P. 87, PP. 358, Henry, PP. 1, *genit.* Henries, PP. 272.  
 hente, *v.* *a.* *iv.* 2798, 2890, *pret.* hente, *i.* 144, *ii.* 1274, *pp.* hent, *i.* 3379, take, seize.  
 hep, *s.* *iv.* 3008, great quantity.  
 hepe, *s.* v. 2872, hook.  
 hepehalt, *a.* v. 957, lame.  
 her, *s.* *i.* 2181, v. 3964, *pl.* heres, *i.* 2999, hair.  
 her, *pron.* see here.  
 herald, *s.* *i.* 2403, *pl.* heralds, *i.* 2526, *iv.* 1632.  
 heraldie, *s.* *ii.* 399, see note.  
 herbage, see tharbage.  
 herbe, *s.* v. 3802, *vi.* 1408, *vii.* 1317 ff.  
 herber, *s.* *iv.* 833.  
 herbergage, *s.* *ii.* 1337, *iv.* 82, *vii.* 1069, lodging.  
 herbergour, *s.* *ii.* 1329.  
 Hercules, *ii.* 2154 ff., *iv.* 2057 ff., v. 1083, 1474, 3294, 3470, 3668, 3878, 6808 ff., 7198, 7217, *vii.* 3348, *viii.* 2506, 2560.  
 here, *v.* see hiera.  
 here, her, *pron. poss.* P. 51, 154, &c., their: here tuo, v. 7651, of them two.  
 Heredot, *iv.* 2413.  
 heresia, *s.* P. 350.  
 heringe, hieringe, *s.* *i.* 449, *vi.* 909, *vii.* 3770.  
 heritage, *s.* *i.* 2619, *ii.* 1025, *pl.* heritages, *vii.* 2008.  
 herke, *v.* *imperat.* *ii.* 1226, herk, v. 5878, listen.  
 herkne, *v.* *a.* *n.* *i.* 96, 329, 1596, 2780, *ii.* 1999, 2037, listen to, listen.  
 Hermes, *iv.* 2606, *vii.* 1437, 1476.  
 Hermyngheld, Hermyngheld, *ii.* 749 ff.  
 herre, *s.*, out of h., P. 962, *ii.* 2964, *iii.* 72, PP. 185, off the hinges, out of order.  
 hert, *i.* 371, 2299, *iv.* 1300, hart.  
 herte, *s.* P. 85, 382, *genit.* herte, *i.* 145, hertes, *i.* 774, *pl.* hertes, *i.* 2087, but oure herte, here herte, *sing.* *iii.* 1473, *iv.* 1377, tok to herte, v. 807.  
 herted, *a.* *ii.* 640.  
 hertelos, *a.* *iv.* 349, *vi.* 254.  
 hertly, *a.* *ii.* 2734, v. 4177, hertely, *vi.* 2026.  
 herto, *adv.* *ii.* 2215.  
 Herupua, *iv.* 1246.  
 hervest, *s.* v. 2240.  
 heste, *s.* P. 910, *i.* 813, *pl.* hestes, *i.* 1335, command.  
 hete, *s.* *i.* 3353, *ii.* 2740, heete, *vii.* 3213°, *pl.* hetes, *iv.* 2521, heat.  
 hete, *v.* *n.* *viii.* 1195, grow hot.  
 hethen, *a.* *ii.* 1090, 3435, *vii.* 3693, the  
 hethen, *pl. subst.* *iv.* 1659.  
 have, *v.* *a.* v. 381, *vi.* 146, lift.  
 heved, see hed.  
 hevene, *s.* P. 141, (heven, PP. 79), *genit.* hevene, P. 66°, *ii.* 2058, *iii.* 2286.  
 heavenly, heavenly, *a.* P. 918, *i.* 834, 3136, v. 774, havenelich(e), *i.* 2848, *vi.* 1529.  
 heveneliche, *s.* *ii.* 3150, *vii.* 3034.  
 heveneward, *adv.* v. 730.  
 hev, *a.* *i.* 1384, 2871, v. 6600, hev  
 ohlered, *viii.* 2533.  
 hevynesse, hevynesse, *s.* *ii.* 224, *iv.* 2936, *viii.* 729, PP. 152.  
 hewe, *v.* *a.* *i.* 2903, *pret.* hiewh, v. 4072, hieu, v. 5897, *imperat.* hew, *i.* 2834; v. *n.* *i.* 1917.  
 hews, *s.* (1), *i.* 701, 2699, *ii.* 2738, *iv.* 2981, hue.  
 hewe, *s.* (2), *ii.* 404, fellow.  
 hewed, *a.* *i.* 2043.  
 hey, *s.* *viii.* 2437, hay.  
 heyher, heyhte, see hih, heihte.  
 hide, hyde, *v.* *a.* *i.* 1784, 2388, *ii.* 434, *pret.* hedde, *ii.* 2889, v. 1254, 1930, hidde, v. 1845, *imperat.* hyd, *i.* 166, hyde, *iii.* 1502, *pp.* hid, hidd, P. 181, *i.* 607, *ii.* 1874, hedd, *iii.* 1920, *pl.* hidde, v. 6789.  
 hider, hidir, *adv.* *iv.* 1788, *vi.* 1070.  
 hideous, *a.* *vii.* 4710.  
 hie, *v.* *n.* *ii.* 814, *iii.* 1288, v. 5040, hye, *ii.* 2233, v. 3995 (*refl.*), hasten: *cp.* hye, *s.*  
 hiede, *s.* P. 497, *i.* 1211, 2192, &c., hede, *iii.* 67, *iv.* 447, heede, *ii.* 74, heed.  
 hiele, *s.* P. 443, v. 2484, *viii.* 2154, heel.  
 hierafter, *adv.* *i.* 77, *ii.* 2326.  
 hierafterward, *adv.* P. 26, *i.* 1869.  
 hierde, *s.* P. 415, *iii.* 1820, keeper (of sheep, &c.).  
 hiero, *v.* *a.* *n.* P. 156, *i.* 532, 2760, here, P. 482, *iv.* 2795, (3 *pl. pres.* hierin, *viii.* 3017), *pret.* herde, P. 1063, *i.* 1008, herd, *iii.* 2082, *pp.* herd, P. 86°, *i.* 446, herde, v. 4231, *imperat.* hier, *i.* 197.  
 here, *adv.* P. 5, 1011, hier, *i.* 1587, here,

- iv. 1292, *her*, vii. 278, (*heer*, viii. 3030\*),  
*hier tofore*, v. 65, *here above*, iv. 2190,  
*h. and there*, iv. 2117, v. 689.  
*hieringe*, *see heringe*.  
*hierof*, *adv.* i. 850, 2448, iv. 1791.  
*hih*, *hyh*, *a. i.* 1026, *hihe*, ii. 2425, (*highe*,  
 PP. 256), *def. hihe*, *hyhe*, P. 88, 188,  
 (*highe*, PP. 8), *hih*, iv. 2064, v. 6428\*,  
 (*heyh*, viii. 3022\*), *pl. hyhe*, i. 1678;  
*on hyh*, *on hih*, P. 307, i. 2832, ii.  
 870, 2959, *upon hy*, vii. 273; *the hihe*  
*See*, iii. 1063, *hyh midday*, iv. 3273;  
*comp. helere*, vi. 404, *heyher*, vii. 253;  
*sup. the heyeste*, vii. 935, *hyest*, vii.  
 2451, *helheest*, vii. 3442.  
*hihe*, *hyhe*, *adv.* i. 1917, 2280, *hye*, iv.  
 1037.  
*hihe*, *v. n.* viii. 587, *go higher*; *pp. hyed*,  
 vii. 1115, *exalted*.  
*hihe*, *hye*, *s. i.* 227, vii. 864, viii. 913, *haste*.  
*hihte*, *see hote*.  
*hilte*, *s. iii.* 1445.  
*himself*, *himselfe(n)*, *pron.* P. 157, 177,  
 i. 326, 1133, 1897, v. 3592, viii. 2527,  
 (*himselfe*, PP. 61), *him self*, P. 244.  
 (*hym self*, viii. 3070 ff.).  
*hinde*, *hynde*, *s. P.* 1059, iv. 1300, 1978.  
*hindre*, *v. a. ii.* 283, 1572, iii. 891.  
*hindrere*, *s. iii.* 1526, iv. 2866, vii. 803.  
*hindringe*, *s. i.* 315, 2096, iii. 913, *hind-*  
*rynge*, iv. 1876.  
*hire*, *hir*, *pers. pron.* i. 181, 365 ff., 3188,  
 iv. 766, *her*; i. 364, 866, 1693, *herself*.  
*hire*, *hir*, *poss. pron.* P. 130, i. 188, 1678 ff.,  
*her*; *disj. hirea*, v. 4770, *hire*, v. 6581,  
*hers*.  
*hirsself*, *hireself*, *pron.* i. 972, 2601, ii.  
 1034, (*hirsself*, PP. 254), *sohe hirsself*,  
 iv. 3618, *hirsselfe(n)*, *hireselven*, ii.  
 1142, iv. 860, v. 3737.  
*his*, *poss. pron.* P. 71, 95, *pl. hise*, P. 190,  
 i. 669, &c., *his*, P. 607, &c.; *disj. his*,  
 ii. 2445, *of his*, ii. 2525.  
*histoire*, *s. iv.* 660, 2360, vi. 885.  
*hit*, *see it*.  
*hit*, *v. a. 3 s. pres.* iii. 450, *hits*.  
*ho*, *interj.* iv. 1682, v. 2219, vii. 571, 5438,  
*stop!*  
*hod*, *s. i.* 627, v. 4787, 7716, *hood*.  
*hol*, *a. P.* 91, 722, *hool*, vii. 1943, *def.*  
*hole*, i. 981, 1828, *hol*, P. 668, *whole*:  
*adv.* i. 867, 2623, *hole*, vii. 3773.  
*hold*, *s. ii.* 1689, 2745, iv. 3024, *strong-*  
*hold*, *prison*.  
*holde(n)*, *v. a. n. P.* 389, 531, i. 1696, iii. 1824,  
 3 *s. pres.* *holt*, ii. 468, v. 507, *halt*, i.  
 1927, ii. 1903, *hald*, v. 1981, *pret. s. hield*,  
 P. 723, i. 1730, *hild*, v. 1438, *pl.*  
*hielden*, i. 3238, *hield*, vii. 3574,  
*pret. subj. hielde*, v. 82, *imperat. 2 s.*  
*hold*, iii. 608, 3 *s. holde*, v. 1944, *pp.*  
*holde(n)*, P. 102, 224, 363; *hold*,  
*stand firm*, *possess*, *consider*.  
*holdinge*, *s. v.* 7655.  
*hole* *s. (1)*, iii. 1371.  
*hole* *s. (2)*, v. 4451, *whole*.  
*holl*, *holy*, *a. P.* 225, 267, iii. 2500, *holl*  
*lond*, vii. 905.  
*holl*, *holy*, *holly*, *adv.* i. 943, iv. 91,  
 2737, v. 7109, *wholly*.  
*holinesse*, *s. i.* 831, 1129, ii. 220.  
*holsome*, *a. (pl.) vii.* 2277.  
*hom*, *s.* at *hom*, ii. 925, 1342, iii. 1207,  
 at *home*, ii. 782, iii. 1140, iv. 1828, *fro*  
*home*, iii. 1905, iv. 167; *hom*, *as*  
*adv.* i. 861, 953, *home*, ii. 814, iv.  
 227.  
*homage*, *s. ii.* 2687, *hommage*, ii.  
 2968.  
*homicide*, *s. iii.* 1093, 1589.  
*homward*, *adv.* i. 938, iii. 981, 1021, 2451,  
 iv. 219.  
*hond*, *s. P.* 356, 768, *hand*, i. 2, 1807, *in*  
*honde*, P. 205, *on (upon) honde*, P.  
 61, 242, i. 1542, 2517, v. 3748, *out*  
*of h.*, P. 808, iii. 326, *to honde*, i.  
 788, ii. 2614, *bere on hond*, iii. 664, iv.  
 32, v. 546, *cp. v.* 496, *be the hond*, i.  
 3225, *tofor the hond*, &c., i. 518, iv.  
 893, v. 4292, *his oghne hond*, iii. 2742,  
*cp. iv.* 2436; *pl. hondeas*, P. 190, &c.,  
*handes*, i. 2994, v. 1505, *his oghne*  
*hondes*, i. 1427, iii. 2011, v. 2306.  
*honeste*, *a. P.* 216, i. 868, 975, ii. 1283,  
 vii. 930, *honourable*, *good*.  
*honestely*, *honesteliche*, *adv.* i. 843, vii.  
 5075, viii. 1995 f., *honourably*.  
*honestete*, *s. vii.* 1671, 5388.  
*honge*, *see hange*.  
*honoehinus*, vii. 1377.  
*Honorius*, vi. 1331.  
*honour*, *s. P.* 221, i. 879, iv. 1865,  
*thonour*, i. 1719.  
*honourable*, *honorable*, *a. ii.* 1460, 3017,  
 iv. 2030.  
*honours*, *v. a. P.* 313, ii. 1841, 2986, v.  
 792.  
*hony*, *s. v.* 4049, vi. 928.  
*hool*, *see hol*.  
*hope*, *s. P.* 71\*, i. 893, 1654.  
*hope*, *v. n. P.* 160, iii. 531.  
*hoppe*, *v. n. v.* 6042.

hor, *a.* iii. 1801, *pl.* hore, i. 1685, 1750, hoary.  
 hord, *s.* vii. 2094, treasure.  
 Horestes, iii. 1958 ff.  
 horn, *s.* i. 374, *pl.* hornes, i. 343, 2298, iv. 2116.  
 horned, *a.* v. 4131.  
 horrible, *a.* i. 1045, iii. 235.  
 hors, *s.* i. 1087, 1724, *genit.* horse (side, heved), P. 1085, i. 1536, 2301, horse bak, ii. 3007, (*cp.* horsebak), horse haltres, iv. 1357, horse knave, iv. 1399, *dat.* on horse, ii. 1497, to horse, vii. 4995, *pl.* hors, i. 2036, iv. 996, v. 6055, vii. 3343 ff.  
 horsebak, *s.* vii. 4908.  
 horsmen, *s.* *pl.* ii. 1824.  
 hose, *s.* vii. 4306, stocking.  
 host, *s.* P. 754, ii. 1765, army.  
 hostage, *s.* ii. 632.  
 hoste, *s.* vii. 3357, vii. 1289, host, guest.  
 hot, *a.* i. 2004, ii. 10, v. 6600, hoot, vii. 3250\*, *pl.* hote, i. 2977, iii. 22, fot hot, iv. 3350; *as subst.* P. 977; *comp.* hotere, vi. 210; *sup.* hotest, vii. 1887, the hoteste, *as subst.* i. 2492, ii. 415.  
 hote, *adv.* i. 2595, ii. 132, hot, iii. 526.  
 hote, *v.* n. (*a.*), v. 1327 (be called, 2865 (command), *pret.* hihte, hyhte, P. 679, i. 401, 765, hatte, ii. 975, v. 1082, vii. 347, *pp.* hote, i. 337, 782, 1234.  
 hou, how, *adv.* and *conj.* P. 41, i. 184, how that, P. 195, i. 799, how... that, iv. 235, how so that, howso that, ii. 3482, iii. 1368, how evere that, how evere, how so evere, hou as evere (that), P. 425, 481, i. 991, iv. 182, 1691, how so, ii. 441, iii. 1364, how, hou (=how so), iv. 415, 1848.  
 houle, *v.* n. v. 4132.  
 hound, *s.* P. 1061, i. 343, ii. 84, iii. 2077.  
 heure, *s.* iii. 29, iv. 241, 277.  
 hous, *s.* iii. 88, 1208, to (into) house, iii. 444, 657, in house, v. 4799, of house, vii. 4921; hous (in astronomy), iv. 3223 ff., vii. 991 ff., *pl.* houses, vii. 1173.  
 house, *v.* n. P. 318; *v.* a. vi. 498.  
 housebonde, *s.* i. 857, v. 2818, vii. 4801, housbonde, v. 4627, *pl.* housebondes, vii. 5347.  
 household, *s.* ii. 438, 1895, vii. 1675.  
 housinge, *s.* v. 6662.  
 hove, *v.* n. i. 1538, ii. 3006, iii. 1233, vi. 1848, *imperat.* hove (out of), iii. 1307, stay.

hovedance, *s.* vi. 144, vii. 2680.  
 how, howso, *see* hou.  
 huge, *a.* ii. 2300.  
 huissaher, *s.* ii. 2130.  
 hull, *see* hell.  
 hully, *a.* P. 651.  
 Humber, ii. 720.  
 humble, *a.* i. 674, 2183, vii. 4036.  
 humble, *v.* a. i. 2065.  
 humblesoe, humblesae, *s.* i. 2256, vii. 4501.  
 humillite, *s.* P. 223, i. 2050.  
 hundred, *num.* iii. 29, iv. 3329, hundrid, iv. 2706.  
 Hungaria, i. 2022.  
 hunger, *s.* ii. 1856, 3028, v. 280.  
 hungeratorven, *pp.* vi. 810.  
 hungre, *v.* n. vi. 760, *impers.* vi. 822.  
 hungred, *a.* vi. 1007.  
 hungri, *a.* v. 1998.  
 hunte, *s.* v. 919, 6126, huntsman.  
 hunte, *v.* n. i. 348, 2294.  
 hunting(e), huntynge, *s.* i. 345, iv. 2429, v. 4941.  
 hurte, *v.* a. iii. 117, viii. 2745, *pp.* hurt, vi. 1685.  
 hurtes, *s.* *pl.* vii. 4618.  
 hy, *see* hihi.  
 hyde, *s.* iv. 3454.  
 hyde, *v.*, *see* hide.  
 hye, *v.* n., *see* hihi.  
 hys, *s.* *see* hihi, *s.*  
 hyed, *see* hihi, *v.*  
 hyhte, *see* hote.  
 hyre, *s.* iii. 2024, viii. 2291.  
 hyre, *v.* a. ii. 391.

## I

I, *pers. pron.* P. 17, &c., it am I, iv. 3622, *cp.* vi. 160, (y, viii. 2938 ff., PP. 25 ff.).  
 Iante, iv. 478 ff.  
 Icharus, iv. 1040 ff.  
 iconomique, *s.* vii. 1670, economics.  
 idelschipe, *see* ydelschipe.  
 idoles, *see* thidoles.  
 if, *conj.* P. 93, i. 2203, if that, P. 16, if (*interrog.*), ii. 14.  
 ignorance, *s.* v. 1891, vi. 2314, vii. 4480.  
 ile, *see* yle.  
 Ilcius, vii. 5151 ff.  
 ilke, *a.* P. 908, i. 919, 1338, same.  
 illusion, *s.* v. 1359.

immortal, *a.* viii. 2979.  
 imperial, *a.* vi. 1785, vii. 866.  
 impossible, *a.* v. 772, 4027, incapable, impossible.  
 impotent, *a.* viii. 3127.  
 impresee, *v.* *a.* ii. 2900, iii. 50, iv. 542.  
 impression, *s.* iv. 389, vii. 270.  
 improperlich(e), *adv.* P. 537, v. 51.  
 in, *s.* v. 2733, vii. 4919, lodging, abode.  
 in, *prep.* P. 5, 782, 805, iii. 2526, in, on, into: *adv.* P. 1082, i. 2037, viii. 1169: *cp.* inne, into.  
 incantacioun, *s.* vi. 1309.  
 incurable, *a.* iv. 3509.  
 inderly, *adv.* ii. 2010, inwardly.  
 indigence, *s.* vii. 2028.  
 indrowh, *v.* *a.* *pret.* ii. 3085.  
 infernal, *a.* v. 4052.  
 infortunat, *a.* viii. 3000\*.  
 infortune, *s.* ii. 1843, iv. 769, *pl.* infortunes, ii. 3190.  
 injustice, *s.* vii. 4587.  
 inly, *adv.* i. 3324, ii. 1216, inwardly.  
 inne, *adv.* P. 1010, i. 303, 969, &c., wher inne, i. 2030, which . . . inne, ii. 565, iv. 1868.  
 innocence, *s.* i. 596, 852, vii. 4915.  
 innocent, *a.* *as subst.* ii. 465, v. 6341.  
 inobedience, *s.* i. 1234 ff.  
 inquisitif, *a.* ii. 1987, viii. 410.  
 insiht, *s.* iii. 181, iv. 2341, v. 660, 5893, 6838, viii. 576, insyhte, vi. 1275, perception, note, feeling, care.  
 inspeccion, *s.* vii. 456.  
 instance, *s.* vii. 2600.  
 instrument, *s.* vii. 167.  
 intelligence, *s.* vii. 28, 176, viii. 2974.  
 interpretacioun, *s.* i. 3070.  
 interrupcioun, *s.* P. 985.  
 intersticion, *s.* vii. 283, condition.  
 into, *prep.* P. 69, 580, i. 739, iii. 290, in to, P. 93, 691, viii. 2944, into, unto.  
 intronize, inthronize, *see* entronize.  
 invisible, *a.* v. 3574, 4028.  
 invocacioun, *s.* vi. 1329.  
 inward, *adv.* i. 634, iv. 2998.  
 Iphis (1), iv. 467 ff.  
 Iphis (2), iv. 3517.  
 ipoocrisie, *see* ypoocrisie.  
 ipotacie, vi. 486.  
 Irahel, Israel, P. 551, vii. 2530 ff., 3628, 4123, 4411, viii. 136, 245, Israel.  
 ire, *s.* iii. 15, 2726, vii. 3279.  
 iren, yren, *s.* iv. 2425, 2470, viii. 1133, iron.  
 irous, *a.* vii. 434, wrathful.

Isaão, viii. 110, 120.  
 Isirus, Isre, v. 798 ff.  
 Isis, *see* Ysis.  
 issue, *s.* iii. 2422, v. 2357, viii. 58.  
 it, *pron.* P. 8, &c., hit, P. 779.  
 Itheous, iv. 3044.  
 Ithis, v. 5887.  
 iwias, *see* ywiss.

## J

jacinotus, *s.* vii. 842, jacinth.  
 Jacke, v. 7752 ff.  
 Jacob, viii. 121.  
 Jadahel, iv. 2427.  
 jalousie, *see* jelousie.  
 James, vii. 3149\*.  
 Janever, vii. 1205, January.  
 jangle, *v.* *n.* ii. 398, 526, iii. 832, v. 6532, vii. 4774, talk, speak evil, dispute.  
 janglerie, *s.* ii. 425, v. 519 ff., *pl.* janglers, iii. 887, talker, evil speaker.  
 janglerie, *s.* ii. 452, (evil) talk.  
 janglingie, *s.* P. 69\*, iv. 1474.  
 Janus, vii. 1207.  
 jape, *s.* i. 2241, ii. 2933, iii. 378.  
 jape, *v.* *n.* v. 6870, vii. 1894.  
 Japhet, vii. 546, 579, viii. 83.  
 jargoun, *s.* v. 4103, note (as of a bird).  
 jargoun, *v.* *n.* v. 5700.  
 Jason, v. 3241, 3256 ff., 4360, viii. 2504, 2519, 2564, Jasoun, v. 7198.  
 jaspie, jaspe, *s.* vii. 841, 1391, jasper.  
 jaspre (stones), *pl.* iv. 3666.  
 Jebuseie, vii. 3712.  
 jelous, *a.* v. 627, *as subst.* the jelous, v. 534, 591.  
 jelousie, *s.* v. 442 ff., jalousie, v. 511, vi. 2249.  
 Jepte, iv. 1507.  
 Jeroboas, Jeroboam, vii. 4127, 4520 ff.  
 Jerom, iv. 2654.  
 Jerusalem, v. 7019.  
 jeueals, *see* juel.  
 jeupartie, *s.* i. 1477, 3237, iii. 1173, vii. 3217, 5274, division, contention, danger.  
 Jew, *s.* vii. 3239\* ff., *pl.* Jewes, iv. 1505, v. 1731, Jwes, v. 1713, 1808, Juys, vi. 2384.  
 Jhesu, v. 1790.  
 Joab, ii. 3086, vii. 3863.  
 Joachim, ii. 3056.  
 Job, v. 2505.  
 John (St.), i. 656, v. 3416.

John (Gower), viii. 2321 f., 2908.  
 jole, joye, *s. P.* 38\*, 1042, i. 1138, 1853,  
*pl.* joies, joyes, i. 2683, ii. 648.  
 joiefull, joiful(1), *a.* ii. 273, 934, 3384.  
 joignt, *s.* viii. 1197, joint.  
 joint, joynt, *pp.* ii. 2791, iv. 2464, joined.  
 jolif, *a.* i. 88, i. 2703, vi. 84, vii. 1910.  
 Jonathas, iv. 1945.  
 Joram, vii. 2551.  
 Josaphas, Josaphat(h), vii. 2546 ff.  
 Josephus, iv. 2410.  
 Josuë, v. 1687, PP. 282.  
 journe, iii. 1979.  
 joust, vii. 5390, just.  
 jouste, *v. n.* i. 2514, vi. 1850, viii. 965.  
 joustinge, *s.* i. 2509.  
 joutes, *s. pl.* vii. 2279, vegetables, (properly 'beet').  
 Jove, vii. 1331, 1411, viii. 2252.  
 Jubal, iv. 2418.  
 Judas, i. 657.  
 Judee, i. 2858, vii. 2547, 3628, viii. 245,  
 Judeam, v. 1906.  
 juel, *s.* v. 1841, 6097, jeueals, (*pl.*) v.  
 2149, viii. 1120, jewel.  
 jueler, *s.* v. 5086.  
 Juerie, vii. 3292\*.  
 Juesse, *s.* viii. 2694.  
 jugge, *s.* i. 1031, ii. 1697.  
 jugge, *v. a. n.* vii. 2825, 2906.  
 juggement, jugement, *s. P.* 518, 960, i.  
 1458, vii. 1484, *pl.* juggementz, vii. 681.  
 Juil, *see* Juyl.  
 Juin, vii. 1065.  
 juise, *s. P.* 1042, i. 1047, do juise, iii.  
 322, take the j., iii. 2008; judgement,  
 punishment.  
 Julien (St.), iii. 34.  
 Julius, *P.* 714, vii. 1597, 1615, 2065 ff.,  
 PP. 281.  
 Juno, iii. 738 ff., 983, iv. 2966 ff., v. 871,  
 1146, 1172 ff., 1251, 1484, 4332, 4355,  
 4585 ff., 6285, 7413.  
 Jupiter, ii. 291, iii. 738 ff., 821, iv.  
 3318, v. 645, 852, 870 ff., 981, 1044,  
 1064, 1105, 1165, 1169 ff., 1245, 1404,  
 3485, 4588, 5741, 6249, 6286, vi. 330,  
 399, 416, vii. 2372, 3360; (the planet)  
 iv. 2472, vii. 909, 920, 1155, 1230, 1340,  
 1389: *genit.* Jupiteres, v. 1119.  
 jus, *s.* v. 4120, juice.  
 justefie, justifie, *v. a.* i. 1250, v. 775,  
 4557, vii. 1244, 1634, set right, prove, rule.  
 justice, *s. P.* 102, i. 2451, do justice, i.  
 1010.  
 justificacion, *s.* ii. 296.

Justinian (1), v. 5127.  
 Justinian (2), vii. 3271 ff.  
 Jutorne, iii. 821.  
 Juvente, v. 4037.  
 Juyl, Juil, vii. 1079, 4300, July.  
 Juys, *see* Jew.

## K

kacle, *v. n.* v. 4101, cackle.  
 Kaire, ii. 2558, 2648, iv. 1658, vii. 3212\*.  
 kalende, *s.* vii. 1139, beginning.  
 kan, *see* conne.  
 karecte, *see* carecte.  
 Karle (Calvus), *P.* 775.  
 karole, *see* carole.  
 karpe, carpe, *v. n.* v. 921, vii. 3277\*,  
 speak, converse.  
 keie, *s. P.* 272, i. 2661, v. 1853, keye, *P.* 212.  
 kempde, *v. a. pret.* v. 3809, *pp.* kembd,  
 kempt, v. 7065, viii. 2466, combed.  
 ken, kin, *s.* v. 2470, viii. 146 ff., *dat.*  
 kinne, v. 4180, kin, quality.  
 kende, *see* kinde.  
 kenne, *v. a. n.* ii. 1331, iv. 831, v. 5443:  
*cp.* conne.  
 kepe, *s. P.* 179, i. 1179, kep, i. 156, v.  
 3672, care.  
 kepe(n), *v. a. n.* *P.* 150, 475, i. 746, ii. 803, 3 *s.*  
*pres.* kepeth, *P.* 321, kepth, v. 4691, *pret.*  
 kepte, *P.* 596, i. 2052, v. 5754, vii. 5261,  
 kept, ii. 181, *imperat.* kep, i. 1227, iii.  
 1498, PP. 367, *pp.* kept, *P.* 147: keep,  
 hold, take care of, regard, wait for;  
 take care, expect.  
 kepere, *s.* v. 4675, vii. 2659, *pl.* kepers,  
 ii. 941.  
 keping(e), i. 2131, v. 1467, viii. 2638.  
 kerf, *s.* v. 757, carving.  
 kerse, *s.* iii. 588, 1652, cress.  
 kertell, *s.* v. 6915, *pl.* kertles, iv. 1315.  
 kerve, *v. a.* vi. 66, cut.  
 kesse, *see* kisse.  
 keye, *see* keie.  
 kid, kidd, *pp.* iii. 206, v. 2957, 5124,  
 known.  
 kiele, *v. n.* v. 6908, grow cool; *v. a.* vi.  
 736, 1065, cool, allay.  
 kin, *see* ken.  
 kinde, kynde, *s. P.* 535, 733, i. 11, 31,  
 917, 1624, kende, v. 4637; lawe of  
 kynde, i. 2231, kinde of man, v. 2:  
 nature, manner, race.  
 kinde, *a.* iii. 2597, 2706, iv. 502, vii. 4298,  
 kind, natural.



**kindely**, *adv.* ii. 1381, naturally.  
**kindeschi**, *s.* ii. 325, v. 4910.  
**kindly**, *a.* ii. 2740, vii. 1094, natural.  
**king**, **kyng**, *s.* P. 25, 186, 256, i. 1094, 2062, 2141.  
**kingdom**, *s.* i. 2968, vii. 4316, viii. 2112, kyngdom, viii. 3087.  
**kingeshalve**, *s.* ii. 1042, king's behalf.  
**kingesriche**, *s.* v. 4202, kingdom.  
**kinghede** (-hode), *s.* vii. 1714, 1765, 3530.  
**kinled**, *pp.* vii. 340, kindled.  
**kisse**, **kesse**, *v.* a. iii. 169, iv. 2824, *pret.* **keste**, P. 109, i. 2053, ii. 1522, **kiste**, i. 912, ii. 1441, **kist**, v. 3777, **kest**, vi. 1746, *pp.* **kest**, iv. 500.  
**kiste**, *s.* v. 83, 2306, viii. 1230, chest.  
**kiththe**, *s.* v. 4180, vi. 123, 2087, **kith**, knowledge.  
**knape**, *s.* viii. 1374, knave.  
**Knarensburgh**, ii. 943 ff., 1264 ff.  
**knave**, *s.* iii. 1782, v. 114, 201, vii. 1836, servant; **knave child**, iv. 432, v. 4255, boy.  
**kne**, *s.* P. 609, ii. 772, v. 6566, *pl.* **knea**, **knea**, i. 213, 3145, iii. 223.  
**knele**, *v.* n. i. 935, 3027, iv. 1172.  
**knette**, *v.* a. i. 1420, vii. 1592, *pret.* **knette**, iv. 858, **knet**, v. 6866, *pp.* **knet**, v. 4966, fasten together, bind, combine.  
**knif**, **knyf**, *s.* ii. 830, iii. 1108, v. 4001.  
**kniht**, **knythode**, &c., *see* **knyht**, &c.  
**knowe(n)**, *v.* a. n. P. 72, 140, i. 1579, *pret.* **knew**, i. 1009, 2341, **kneu**, v. 2665, 5410, **knlew**, iv. 1838, **knewh**, ii. 3891, 2 s. **knewe**, vi. 2313, *pl.* **knewe(n)**, P. 106, ii. 3210, *pret. subj.* **knewe**, i. 1312, *imperat.* **know**, vii. 2389, *pp.* **knowe**, i. 1191, 2134; **knowende** of, iii. 864, vi. 1398, **knowe** of, v. 5356, acquainted (with).  
**knowleching(e)**, *s.* P. 860, i. 1483, ii. 1282, v. 2992, **knowleching(e)**, iv. 3202, vi. 982, *pl.* **knowlechinges**, vii. 137.  
**konne**, *see* **conne**.  
**knyf**, *see* **knif**.  
**knyht**, **kniht**, *s.* P. 707, i. 316, ii. 587, (knight, **knyght**, vii. 3169\*, viii. 3059, PP. 243).  
**knythode**, **knihtode**, *s.* P. 89, ii. 1640, 2513, **knythod**, **knihtod**, i. 1436, v. 2057, (knyghthode, viii. 3021, PP. 155), knighthood, valour.  
**knyhtlihiade**, *s.* vii. 3592.  
**knyhtly** (-li), **knihtly** (-li), *a.* ii. 727, 2625, v. 661, vi. 95.

**krepel**, *s.* vii. 1854, cripple.  
**kressette**, *s.* vii. 3743, cup (for a light).  
**kutte**, **cutte**, *v.* a. *pret.* ii. 831, iii. 823, **kut**, vii. 4525, *pp.* out, v. 6520.  
**kynde**, *see* **kinde**.  
**kyng**, **kyngdom**, *see* **king**, **kingdom**.

## L

**Laar**, iii. 819.  
**Laban**, viii. 122.  
**laborious**, *a.* iv. 2636.  
**labour**, *s.* i. 3252, iii. 665, iv. 2396.  
**laboure**, *v.* n. iv. 242, 1691; *v.* a. iv. 970.  
**labourer**, *s.* iv. 2440, vi. 136, **laborer**, viii. 3061.  
**laoche**, *v.* a. P. 410, ii. 109, seize.  
**lachesse**, **lachesse**, *s.* iv. 4, 281.  
**Lachesis**, iv. 2761.  
**lacke**, **lack**, *s.* P. 393, i. 1988, iv. 335, 1070, v. 6077, want, fault: *cp.* **lak**.  
**lacke**, *v.* n. P. 428, i. 1366, 2396, 3023, **lakke**, ii. 2392, *imperat.* **laoketh**, viii. 2427 ff., *cp.* vi. 908, be wanting: *v.* a. ii. 530, iii. 2630, iv. 343, want.  
**laden**, *pp.* viii. 469.  
**ladi**, **lady**, *s.* i. 162, 317, *genit.* **ladi**, **lady**, i. 924, 1263, ii. 40, iv. 1437, *pl.* **ladis**, **ladye**, iv. 1307, v. 3139.  
**ladischi**, *s.* i. 2577, iv. 1120, 1730, vi. 271, 1946, ladyship, honour.  
**ladiward**, ii. 255, iii. 508.  
**Ladon**, v. 1015.  
**ladre**, *s.* viii. 1644, ladder.  
**laghtre**, *s.* viii. 2685, laughter.  
**lak**, *s.* i. 1691, ii. 394, iii. 561, iv. 128, v. 6290, fault.  
**lame**, *a.* v. 2709.  
**Lamedon**, v. 3303, 7197 ff., **Lamenedon**, viii. 2516.  
**lampe**, *s.* iv. 258, viii. 2776.  
**Lampes**, vii. 856.  
**Lancastre**, P. 87.  
**lance**, *s.* viii. 2270.  
**lancegay**, *s.* viii. 2798.  
**Lancelot**, iv. 2035, viii. 2501.  
**langage**, *s.* P. 1023, iv. 315.  
**Langharet**, ii. 2995.  
**lanterne**, *s.* iv. 817.  
**Laodomie**, iv. 1905.  
**lapacia**, vii. 1375.  
**lape**, *v.* n. vii. 3671, **lap**.  
**lapis**, iv. 2535 ff.  
**lappe**, *s.* iv. 303.

- lappe**, *v. a.* v. 4207, 5774, wrap.  
**lappewincke**, *s. v.* 6041.  
**larder**, *s. v.* 5513, vii. 1166.  
**large**, *a.* P. 239, i. 876, 2821, wide, liberal ;  
 at large, P. 46\*, ii. 994, iii. 174, iv. 829.  
**largely**, *adv.* ii. 953, **largeliche**, vii. 2052.  
**largesse**, **largesce**, *s.* P. 225, v. 409, 1958, 7633 ff., vii. 1989 ff., liberality, gift.  
**las**, *s.* vii. 4332, lace.  
**lasse**, *a. comp.* P. 20, 57\*, 947, i. 476, ii. 2260, **lesse**, *v.* 2529 ; *as subst.* iii. 93, iv. 2240 : *adv.* **lasse**, P. 629, i. 263, 1927, **lesse**, i. 1925, v. 4739 : less.  
**lasse**, *v. a.* P. 56, i. 1836, 2401 ; *v. n.* iv. 782 : make less ; grow less.  
**last**, *a.* P. 642, vii. 1215, *def.* **laste**, P. 826 : *as subst.* my **laste**, iii. 304, ate l., P. 369, i. 1820, to the l., P. 250, i. 983, viii. 2784, *as for the l.*, viii. 2889.  
**laste**, *adv.* iv. 3383, **last**, vii. 4098.  
**laste(n)**, *v. n.* P. 249, 662, iii. 289, v. 279, *pret.* **laste**, P. 672, iv. 2315, **last**, endure.  
**late**, *a.* ii. 345, iv. 878, **thoghte al to late til**, ii. 1538 ; *comp.* **latere**, viii. 1323.  
**late**, *adv.* i. 1645, iv. 1421, **late** ; i. 1843, iii. 219, **lately**.  
**Latewar**, iv. 252 ; *cp.* iv. 1421.  
**laththe**, *s.* iii. 84.  
**Latin**, *s.* ii. 3187, iv. 2638, 2656, Latin (language) : the **Latins**, iv. 2634 : *a.* **latin**, vi. 981.  
**Latona**, *v.* 1249 ff.  
**latoun**, *s.* ii. 1850, viii. 569, bronze.  
**laude**, *s.* vii. 1384, praise.  
**launde**, *s.* iv. 1290, viii. 2160.  
**lave**, *v. a.* viii. 1856.  
**laverock**, *s. v.* 4100.  
**Lavine**, iv. 2187.  
**lawe**, *s.* P. 102, i. 809, 2793, (*pl.* **lawis**, viii. 3031) : *cp.* **lay**.  
**laweles**, *a.* ii. 2962, vi. 1256.  
**lawhe**, *v. n.* ii. 245, iv. 641, **lawghe**, *v.* 479, **laghe**, viii. 2491, **leyhe**, *v.* 3781, 3 *s.* *pret.* **lowh**, **lauh**, i. 1766, ii. 3320, vi. 2034, **low**, P. 1071, 3 *pl.* *pret.* **lowhen** (to scorne), *v.* 696, 6931 ; **laugh**.  
**lay**, *s.* (1), iv. 109, v. 1191, lake.  
**lay**, *s.* (2), vii. 1046, viii. 1670, song.  
**lay**, *s.* (3), ii. 3354, viii. 2663, law.  
**Lazar**, vi. 1037 ff.  
**lazre**, *s.* vi. 996, leper.  
**leche**, *s.* ii. 3220, 3296, vi. 866, viii. 1209, physician, remedy.  
**lecherie**, *s. v.* 1046, 1493, vii. 799.  
**lecherous**, *a. v.* 1410, *def.* **lecherouse**, vii. 4994.  
**lechour**, *s. v.* 872.  
**lecoun**, *s.* iii. 1377, iv. 562.  
**led**, *s.* iii. 1705, iv. 2471, viii. 1109.  
**lede(n)**, *v. a.* P. 793, i. 784, 2090, iii. 179, 341, iv. 987, *pret.* **ladde**, P. 712, 771, i. 763, iii. 332, v. 1247, **ledde**, iii. 2178, v. 677, *pp.* **lad**, i. 1050, ii. 759, **ledd**, vi. 870 ; **lead**, guide, manage, take.  
**ledere**, *s. v.* 2055, *pl.* **ledera**, *v.* 7616, leader.  
**ledinghe**, *s.* vii. 5156, 5297.  
**leese**, *s.* P. 408, meadow.  
**lef**, *s.* i. 2884, iv. 586, *pl.* **leves**, P. 935, i. 354, leaf.  
**left**, *s.* iii. 301, left hand.  
**legges**, *s.* *pl.* P. 611.  
**lelancee**, *s.* viii. 3058, allegiance.  
**lele**, **lein**, *v. a.* i. 500, iv. 1747, v. 2889, 3 *s.* *pres.* **leith**, P. 382, i. 472, **leyth**, P. 276, 3 *pl.* **leyn**, P. 476, *pret.* **leide**, **leyde**, i. 1017, 2312, iv. 240, *pp.* **leid**, **leyd**, P. 48\*, i. 892, v. 7596, **laid**, v. 4512, *imperat.* **ley**, **lei**, i. 3434, ii. 1926, viii. 1420 ; **lay**, set, apply.  
**leisir**, **leiser**, *s.* iii. 1907, iv. 2799, v. 158, 3435, 7035, time, convenience, opportunity.  
**lemes**, *see* **lime**, *s.*  
**lemman**, *s.* vii. 1899.  
**lene**, *a.* iv. 1344, lean.  
**lene**, *v. a.*, *pret.* **lente**, i. 423, *pp.* **lent**, v. 4128, **lend**.  
**leng**, *adv. comp.* iii. 71, viii. 2055.  
**lengere**, *adv. comp.* i. 1516, ii. 1434, 2602, **lenger**, i. 147.  
**lengthe**, *s.* iii. 1963, iv. 3255.  
**Leo** (emperor), P. 739.  
**Leo** (sign of the zodiac), vii. 1067 ff., 1249.  
**Leoncius**, **Leonce**, vii. 3268 ff.  
**leonesse**, *s.* iv. 1976.  
**Leonin**, viii. 1410 ff.  
**leoun**, **leon**, *s.* P. 1059, i. 2248, ii. 3035, **lyon**, *v.* 5684.  
**lepard**, *s.* iv. 1977.  
**lepe**, *v. n.* iii. 916, vi. 187, *pret.* **lepta**, i. 2051, ii. 2301, *imperat.* **lep**, vii. 4782.  
**lepre**, *s.* ii. 3192 ff., PP. 349, leprosy.  
**lere**, **liere**, *v.* P. 868, i. 454, 2123, v. 2029, **learn**, teach.

- lere, s. i. 1509, viii. 610, loss.  
 lered, a. viii. 3113, learned.  
 lerne, v. a. n. i. 44, 2010, ii. 1851, iii. 601,  
 v. 3852, 6836, vii. 3146: teach, inform,  
 learn.  
 lerned, a. vii. 635, PP. 25.  
 les, s. v. 782, vii. 2684, falsehood.  
 Leeson, v. 6436.  
 lese, v. a. n. P. 415, i. 1332, 1809, ii. 32,  
 3 s. *pres.* lest, ii. 256, iv. 1494, *pref.*  
 les, vi. 1772, vii. 3658; lose.  
 lesinge, lesynge, s. i. 679, 2268, ii. 409,  
*pl.* lesinges, v. 946, lying.  
 lesse, *see* laase.  
 lest, v. *imperat.* i. 827, 1876, listen.  
 lest, v. *see* list.  
 lest, a. i. 3249, *def.* leste, vii. 1459; ate  
 leste, i. 277, 3259; least.  
 lest, *adv.* i. 1070, 2362, leste, i. 3296.  
 let, s. *see* lette.  
 lete, v. a. n. i. 6, 3366, ii. 2253, iii. 2664,  
 iv. 643, 3 s. *pres.* let, P. 509, ii. 1906,  
 leteth, vii. 390, 3 s. *pref.* let, P. 2020, i.  
 1011, ii. 2480, v. 5840, *imperat.* let, lett,  
 i. 220, 1618, 2834, leta, vi. 450, *pp.* lete,  
 P. 440, ii. 3228 (*shed*), iv. 454; let  
 make, let do, &c., P. 1020, i. 1011, iv.  
 490, leta by, v. 1004 (*valued*), *cp.* v.  
 5840: leave, release, omit, let, cause.  
 Lethes, Lethen, iv. 3011, v. 1109.  
 lette, v. a. n. i. 38, 780, ii. 94, iii. 1873,  
 2213, iv. 795, 1481, *pref.* lette, ii. 2240,  
*pp.* let, P. 308, ii. 128, iii. 2044; hinder,  
 delay, put off.  
 lette, s. ii. 93, 2129, iii. 2298, iv. 2000,  
 let, v. 3900, vii. 2779, hindrance.  
 lettre, s. P. 209, i. 2423, ii. 3038, iv. 2401,  
 letter, writing.  
 lettyng, s. vii. 236, hindrance.  
 Leuchotoe, v. 6726.  
 leve, s. i. 857, 1162, 1469, 1807, ii. 113,  
 iv. 1160, token leve, i. 1162, *cp.* ii.  
 2780, iv. 1381: leave.  
 leve(n), v. a. n. P. 404, i. 1311, 1558,  
 1808, 2693, 2940, iii. 1179, iv. 1159, vii.  
 2881, leeveth, iv. 3428, *pref.* lefte, P.  
 743, i. 1673, v. 2389, lafte, PP. 342,  
*pp.* laft, v. 4056, left, v. 4222, *imperat.*  
 lef, ii. 571, v. 5223; leave, leave off, omit.  
 leve, v. n. P. 412, iv. 1382, *pref.* lefte(n),  
 P. 695, vii. 3682, remain.  
 levestful, *see* lieffull.  
 levein, s. iii. 446, leave.  
 levne, s. vi. 2267, flash (of lightning).  
 levero, a. *comp.* P. 37, ii. 6, hath (*hadde*)  
 I., i. 1511, ii. 1582, iii. 479, were I., ii.  
 530, iii. 762, iv. 1657: *as subst.* ii. 2449,  
 v. 546: *adv.* iv. 1337: dearer, rather.  
*cp.* lief, lievest.  
 levest, *see* lievest.  
 lewed, a. i. 274, ii. 3423, iii. 479, un-  
 learned, ignorant.  
 leyhe, *see* lawhe.  
 leyt, leyte, s. vii. 303, 308, flame.  
 leyte, v. n. vii. 307, blaze.  
 liberal, a. vii. 876.  
 liberalite, s. v. 7646.  
 liberte, s. vii. 2815.  
 Libra, vii. 1102 ff., 1258.  
 libraire, s. P. 321.  
 lich, s. viii. 1076, corpse.  
 lich, liche, a. P. 113, 634, ii. 3245, iv. 3649,  
 v. 1550, lich, v. 29; lik, i. 488, ii. 1794,  
 v. 615: *adv.* lich, P. 951, i. 2672, ii.  
 3033, 3456, lik, i. 1950.  
 Lichacon, Lichao, v. 6225, 6298, vii. 3355.  
 liche, s. i. 2277, 2791, iii. 2588, v. 7318,  
 like, lyke, i. 2315, 2995, 3139, ii. 3037;  
 likeness, match.  
 Lichomede, v. 2976 ff.  
 Lichorida, Lychoride, viii. 1033, 1350.  
 liche, v. a. vi. 928, 1015.  
 leuchia, vii. 824 (name of a stone).  
 Liddos, vii. 4369.  
 lie, s. *see* lye.  
 lie, lye, v. n. P. 124, i. 725, 1512, 2437, ii.  
 1603, iii. 1252, speak falsely.  
 Lie, viii. 125, Leah.  
 lie, v. n., 3 s. *pres.* lith, lyth, P. 336, i.  
 161, 2429, 3 s. *pref.* lay, lai, P. 602, i.  
 1788, 2728, 3 *pl.* lthe, lyhen, ii. 1456,  
 vii. 1797, lele(n), iv. 479, v. 974,  
 2 s. *pref. subj.* leye, iv. 2849, *imperat.* ly,  
 vi. 2311, *pp.* lele, iv. 2914, lein, vii.  
 2597; lie, be situated: *cp.* ligge.  
 lief, a. ii. 209, vii. 4628, lief . . . loth,  
 i. 1627, ii. 999, iv. 669, lieve . . . lothe,  
 ii. 3229, iv. 778, *def. as subst.* lieve, iii.  
 1901, *pl.* ii. 3395, *voc.* lieve, iv. 1702,  
 dear, pleasant: *cp.* levare, lievest.  
 lief, s. i. 1203, ii. 2449, 2486, loved one.  
 lieffull, a. iii. 2208, levestful, v. 7053.  
 lawful.  
 ligance, ligeance, ligance, s. P. 25\*,  
 iii. 1822, v. 2673, vii. 2698, allegiance,  
 rule.  
 liege, a. P. 27\*, i. 2075, ii. 2762, iv. 201,  
 (lige, viii. 3024), *pl.* here oghne liege,  
 iii. 1760.  
 liege, s. iii. 1767, iv. 1904, vii. 3094, 4177,  
 (lige, viii. 2995\*), subject.  
 lien, s. iii. 242, bond.



lieutenant, *s.* i. 947, ii. 1319.  
 lieve, *v. a. n.* i. 44, 727, 1063, ii. 471, iii. 1315, believe, trust: god lieve, vii. 3069, God grant.  
 lievest, *a. superl.* ii. 329, iv. 1501, v. 186, levest. PP. 30: *adv.* i. 1608: *cp.* lief.  
 lif, *s.* P. 96, i. 36, 1477, ii. 1225, v. 2297, *genit.* lyves, lives, i. 1821, 2685, *pl.* lyves, iv. 2353, viii. 81; to lyve, ii. 1525, on lyve, v. 7102, al my lyve, iii. 886, a lyves creature, iv. 382: life, person.  
 liffish, *a.* v. 4920, vii. 257, living.  
 liflode, *s.* v. 4961, vi. 798, livelihood.  
 lifte, *s.* ii. 3488, sky.  
 ligance, *see* liegance.  
 Ligdus, iv. 451.  
 lige, *see* liege.  
 ligge, *v. n.* ii. 1138, iv. 2132, *pres. part.* liggende, i. 885, ii. 839, ligende, i. 2346.  
 lignage, *s.* i. 3335, ii. 2849, *pl.* lignages, v. 1600, vii. 4117, descent, tribe.  
 Ligurgius, iv. 738, vii. 2918 ff., 3058.  
 liht, *s.* *see* lyht.  
 liht, *a.* (1) *see* lyht.  
 liht, lyht, *a.* (2), i. 3078, iii. 518, (light, PP. 218), *pl.* lyhte, v. 831; *comp.* lihtere, v. 4692: light, easy.  
 lihte, *v. a.* iv. 258, kindle.  
 lihte, *v. n.* v. 7072, 3 *s.* *pres.* liht, v. 1580, *pret.* lihte, i. 2310, vii. 3273\*, alight.  
 lihtly (-li), lyhtly, *adv.* i. 1063, ii. 2085, iv. 538, viii. 2776, (lightly, PP. 220), lihtliche, i. 2650, easily.  
 lik, *see* lich.  
 like, lyke, *s.* *see* liche.  
 like, lyke, *v. n. impers.*, i. 70, 652, 756, 950, iii. 634, iv. 1182, 2150, lyketh, v. 7079, vii. 522; *pers.* ii. 1377, viii. 378, lyke, P. 21, vii. 2298; likende, viii. 2476, is to like, iv. 2419: please, be pleased, like.  
 liking(e), likynge, *s.* i. 496, 1709, iv. 1868, v. 649, 7737, *pl.* likinges, vi. 1214, pleasure.  
 likinge, *a.* iii. 186, v. 3840, pleasant.  
 liklihiede, *s.* v. 596, comparison.  
 likned, *pp.* ii. 2118, viii. 2155, compared.  
 liknesse, *s.* P. 908, i. 370, iv. 2109, viii. 2601.  
 lilie, *s. as a.* vii. 4678, of lilies.  
 lime, *v. a.* ii. 574, besmear (with birdlime).  
 lime, *s.* iv. 275, *pl.* limes, lemes, v. 1476, vii. 3201, limb.

linde, *s.* i. 2304, iv. 1341.  
 line, lyne, *s.* iv. 2623, v. 1082, 4054, viii. 105.  
 lippe, *s.* i. 1683, iii. 119, iv. 386.  
 liquour, *s.* viii. 1199.  
 liase, *v. a.* iii. 1361, vi. 2419, vii. 5401, relieve; *v. n.* vi. 311, give relief.  
 list, *v. impers.* i. 1403, 1822, iii. 1110, iv. 907, lest, i. 37, 1922, lusteth, v. 2577, *pres. subj.* liste, v. 505, *pret. (ind. or subj.)* liste, i. 932, 1984, leste, i. 720, vi. 357, list, iii. 2446, please: *pers.* i. 2741, iii. 1 (if thou lest), 111, iv. 3147, viii. 486, (lust, P. 85\*), like, desire.  
 lite, *see* lyte.  
 litel, *a.* P. 957, i. 357, ii. 1151: *adv.* i. 615, iv. 2617, alitel, iv. 1339.  
 lith, *s.* i. 1691, limb.  
 live(n), *v. n.* P. 171, i. 127, 189, 1710, ii. 1723, lyve, iv. 1930.  
 livere, *s.* vii. 457 ff., liver.  
 livinge, lyvyng, *s.* v. 1615, vii. 1657, 1934.  
 Livius (Virginus), vii. 5136, 5204.  
 lo, *interj.* P. 234, 918.  
 lock, *s.* iv. 2879, v. 6621, lokes (*pl.*), v. 6632, lock (of a door).  
 lockes, *s. pl.* i. 1685, viii. 2403, locks (of hair).  
 lode, *s.* v. 4962, load.  
 lodesman, *s.* iii. 996, helmsman.  
 loenge, loange, *s.* iv. 1548, vii. 3924, viii. 3027\*, PP. 371, praise.  
 lofte, *s.* vii. 300, height.  
 logged, loged, *pp.* v. 2114, 6659, lodged.  
 logginge, *s.* vi. 1817.  
 logique (-qe), *s.* vii. 1528 ff., viii. 2709.  
 lok, *s.* i. 122, 2313, ii. 1350, look, gaze.  
 loke(n), *v. n.* P. 328, 449, i. 1686, 2811, 2992, ii. 3075, v. 624, (lokyn, viii. 3029), *imperat.* lok, i. 1225, loke, i. 1703, v. 1220, look, take care, keep watch; *v. a.* P. 52\*, ii. 733, vi. 1959 ff., examine, watch.  
 loke(n), *v. a. pp.* ii. 358, 1868, 1996, v. 33, shut up.  
 lokes, *see* lock.  
 lokinge, lokynge, *s.* i. 680, 1785, iii. 763, looking, sight.  
 lollardie, *s.* P. 349, v. 1807, 1819.  
 lomb, *s.* i. 604, vii. 4983.  
 Lombard, Lumbard, P. 207, 778, vi. 857, *pl.* Lombardz, Lombars, Lombardes, P. 772 ff., i. 2459, ii. 2101 ff.  
 Lombardie, P. 755, i. 2461, vii. 800.

- lond**, *s.* P. 123, 959 (*gen.* *londia*, viii. 3053), *pl.* *londes*, P. 501; to *londe*, i. 1170, ii. 1828, v. 18, 4899, into *londe*, i. 3288, of *londe*, i. 2240, in *londe*, iii. 1818, be *londe*, iv. 1627, out of *londe*, iii. 878, over *londe*, v. 923, fro the *londe*, ii. 179.  
*londe*, *v. n.* ii. 2545, iv. 736, 1927.  
**londflodes**, *s. pl.* vii. 1235.  
**lone**, *s. v.* 4697, loan.  
**long**, *a. P.* 55, i. 2870, *def.* *longe*, i. 171, ii. 817.  
**longe**, *adv.* P. 62, i. 1645, iii. 1888, iv. 943, 1490, 1782, *long*, v. 1086, vii. 4999; *comp.* (no) *longer*, ii. 1038; *long on*, *see* *along*.  
**longe**, *v. n.* (1), ii. 1424, v. 7030, desire: *impers.* iii. 2760, v. 2526, 3688.  
**longe**, *v. n.* (2), P. 80, i. 254, 1480, v. 972, vii. 1064, (3 *s. pres.* *longith*, viii. 3079), belong.  
**lope**, *s.* iii. 916, leap.  
**lord**, *s. P.* 86, i. 816, *ha lord*, v. 2397, *pl.* *lordes*, i. 2032, v. 7332, (*lordia*, viii. 3129).  
*lorde*, *v. n.* ii. 3267, be *lord*.  
**lordschipe**, *s. i.* 2959, ii. 1484.  
**lore**, *s. P.* 19, 323, i. 1338, 2665, *pl.* *lores*, i. 2768, vii. 23, teaching, learning.  
**lore**, *pp.* i. 974, 2008, iii. 188, lost: *cp.* *lose*.  
**lorer**, *s.* iii. 1716, laurel.  
**loresman**, *s. v.* 1005, teacher.  
**los**, *s.* iii. 2144, v. 996, 5334, fame.  
**los**, *a., def.* *lose*, i. 2660, loose.  
**lose**, *v. a. v.* 697, vii. 1592, set free: *pres.* *loste*, P. 686, i. 3304, *lost*, ii. 2290, v. 3465, *pp.* *lost*, P. 44, i. 1742, *lose*: *cp.* *lese*.  
**lost**, *s. P.* 762, i. 3106, ii. 2348, iv. 1485, loss.  
**lot**, *s. v.* 5309, vii. 1337.  
**Loth**, viii. 227.  
**loth**, *a. i.* 2876, ii. 962, iv. 1186, *pl.* *lothe*, i. 2282, v. 4277, *lieft* . . . *loth*, i. 1203, ii. 999, 2227, *lieve* . . . *lothe*, ii. 3229, iv. 778, v. 770, *hem thoghte lothe*, iv. 1041: unwilling, unpleasing, hateful.  
**lothe**, *v. a. v.* 4650, vii. 3274, hate, make hateful; *v. n.* v. 5767, vii. 3724, be hateful.  
**lothly**, *a. i.* 1530, v. 647, vi. 2199; *sup.* the *lothlieste*, i. 1676.  
**loude**, *see* *lowde*.  
**lourde**, *a. v.* 657, clumsy.  
**loure**, *v. n.* i. 172, ii. 245, iii. 30, v. 479, frown.  
**loute**, *v. n.* i. 720, 2333, iii. 127, iv. 1169, bow, yield (to): *cp.* *lute*.  
**love**, *s. P.* 75, i. 811, 1863, *genit.* *lovea*, i. 689, ii. 188, iii. 131, *love drinke*, vi. 333; *love*, loved one.  
**love(n)** (1), *v. a. n.* P. 389, 1050, i. 752, 1936, ii. 502.  
**love** (2), *v. n. v.* 7048, (luff), steer.  
**loveday**, *s. P.* 1047.  
**lovedrunke**, *s. vi.* 111, 307, *love drunkenness*.  
**loveles**, *a. ii.* 2961, v. 2505.  
**lovers**, *s. iv.* 554, *pl.* *lovers*, i. 673, ii. 237.  
**low**, *lou*, *a. i.* 2256, iv. 3521, *lowe*, iii. 606, vii. 740, *pl.* *lowe*, P. 924; *superl.* the *lowest*, vii. 224.  
**low**, *lowh*, *v.*, *see* *lawhe*.  
**lowde**, *loude*, *a. pl.* i. 2808, ii. 309, iv. 3064; *adv.* iii. 452, v. 5673.  
**lowe**, *adv.* i. 718, 1066, iv. 1004; *sup.* *lowest*, i. 704.  
**lowe**, *v. a. n.* iv. 1273, viii. 587, lower, go lower.  
**Lowis** (emperor), P. 777.  
**Lowys** (king of France), ii. 2966.  
**Lubie**, vi. 410, 1922, **Lubye**, vi. 2069.  
**luse**, *s. v.* 2015, pike.  
**Luois**, ii. 905, Lucius.  
**Lucifer**, i. 3299, v. 1701, viii. 10, *genit.* *Luciferes*, viii. 22.  
**Lucius** (1), v. 7124\* ff.  
**Lucius** (2), vii. 3946.  
**lucre**, *s. i.* 1706, iii. 2360, iv. 2590.  
**Lucrece**, vii. 4809, 4985 ff., viii. 2632.  
**lugge**, *v. a.* vii. 1893.  
**Lumbard**, *see* *Lombard*.  
**lunge**, *s.* vii. 452, 465.  
**lure**, *s.* iv. 285.  
**lurke**, *v. n.* v. 6746.  
**lust**, *s. P.* 19, 230, i. 443, 754, ii. 1109, *pl.* *lustes*, i. 778, 1241, 2517, iv. 1318; pleasure, desire, charm.  
**lust**, *v.* *see* *list*.  
**lustl**, **lusty**, *a. P.* 937, i. 317, 1581, 2167, 2306, pleasant.  
**lustles**, *a. ii.* 2024, iv. 3262, 3455.  
**lute**, *s.* viii. 2679.  
**lute**, *v. n.* i. 1933, *lurk*: *cp.* *loute*.  
**luxura**, *s.* vii. 4561, *lust*.  
**lye**, *v.* *see* *lie*.  
**lye**, *lie*, *s. P.* 504, iii. 895, dregs.  
**lyht**, **liht**, *s. i.* 633, 1168, ii. 836, iii. 920, be *lyhte*, v. 6517, *pl.* *lyhtes*, iv. 3221, *liht*.  
**lyht**, **liht**, *a.* (1) P. 941, i. 2176, vi. 1982, vii. 956, *pl.* *lihte*, iii. 783, bright.

lyht, *a.* (2), *see* lht.  
 lyhte, *adv.* v. 4076, brightly.  
 lyththynge, *s.* viii. 1000, lightning.  
 lyke, *see* liche.  
 lym, *s.* v. 7233, vi. 1594, lime, (mortar).  
 lyn, *s.* iv. 2437, v. 1203, flax.  
 lyne, *see* line.  
 lyon, *see* leoun.  
 lyte, *a.* ii. 429, v. 6627, *as subst.* a lyte,  
   a lite, i. 264, 2687, ii. 2045, (*often in*  
   MSS. alite, alyte, *as* i. 2687, ii. 2045,  
   vii. 4092); to lite, iii. 581, *see* tolite.  
 lyvyng, *see* livinge.

## M

ma dame, i. 168, iv. 1374.  
 macched, *pp.* v. 5422.  
 mace, *s.* v. 6865, viii. 2507.  
 Macedoyn, Macedoine, ii. 1616, iii.  
   2451, vi. 1809, vii. 3211<sup>a</sup>; *as* a. ii.  
   1840.  
 Macer, vi. 1408.  
 Machabeu, PP. 282.  
 Machaire, iii. 146 ff., viii. 2588.  
 macon, *s.* vii. 2427, mason.  
 madd, mad, *a.* i. 130, v. 496, 5891.  
 Madian, vii. 3710.  
 madle, *a.* *as subst.* iv. 1301, vii. 4215,  
   male.  
 mageste, *see* majeste.  
 magicien, *s.* v. 3084, vi. 1337.  
 magique, *s.* iv. 2077, vi. 1402; *a.* v.  
   3947, vi. 1434.  
 magnifie, magnifie, *v. a.* P. 44, 886, i.  
   2998, ii. 2827, iv. 2608.  
 mai, *v. see* mowe.  
 maide(n), mayde(n), i. 2481, 2573 ff.  
   3327, v. 3476, a maide child, viii.  
   1058, *pl.* maidenen, iv. 255, maidena,  
   iv. 1464, 1575; *cp.* may.  
 maidehiede, *s.* v. 6384.  
 maidenhod(e), maidenhiede (-hede),  
   maydenhiede (-hede), *s.* iv. 1566,  
   1585, v. 3068, 6181, 6219, vii. 5145,  
   maidenhed, v. 6769.  
 Mail, i. 100, 2026, vii. 1045, May, vii.  
   2276, *genit.* Males, i. 2089, May.  
 malle, *s.* v. 3111.  
 main, *s.* vi. 90, strength.  
 mainteneue, *s.* viii. 3012, maintenance.  
 maintiene, *v. a.* i. 3285, meintiene, iv.  
   3433, maintene, PP. 385.  
 maister, *s.* i. 35, 1260, ii. 1134, v. 56, *pl.*  
   maistres, v. 434.  
 maistred, *v. a.* *pp.* iv. 3518.  
 maistrefull, *a.* iii. 212.  
 maistresse, *s.* i. 1825, iii. 170, viii. 2331.  
 maistrie, *s.* iii. 1566, 2768, vi. 2341, vii.  
   1358, *pl.* maistries, v. 2061, mastery,  
   great deed.  
 majeste, mageste, *s.* ii. 1058, v. 1510, 1737.  
 majorane, *s.* vii. 1433.  
 make, *s.* (1), i. 101, 2088, iii. 2612, v.  
   4275, mate, match.  
 make, *s.* (2), v. 2296, fashion.  
 make(n), *v. a.* P. 23, 155, viii. 3143,  
   2, 3, *s. pres.* maket, makth, i. 774, iv.  
   2844, *pres.* made, P. 207, 816, ii. 858,  
   1265, mad, ii. 310, v. 3822, *pp.* mad,  
   P. 347, i. 2427, (maad, viii. 3110),  
   made (*pl.*), P. 300, maked, v. 680.  
 makere, *s.* ii. 916, vii. 1508.  
 makings, makynge, *s.* v. 1022, 1203,  
   viii. 3089<sup>a</sup>, 3154, making, composing  
   (poetry).  
 maladie, maladye, *s.* i. 128, ii. 9, 3221,  
   viii. 2642.  
 male, *s.* iv. 546, wallet.  
 Malebouche, ii. 389.  
 malencolle, *s.* P. 1069, iii. 27 ff., vii. 402.  
 malencolien, *a.* iii. 33, 241.  
 malencolious, *a.* iii. 87.  
 malengin, *s.* v. 344, evil device.  
 malgracious, *a.* v. 647.  
 malgre, *s.* v. 6481, 6946, ill-will; *adv.* i.  
   789, 1329, in spite of the will; malgre  
   myn, iv. 59, m. hem, iv. 1233, *cp.* vi.  
   524.  
 malice, *s.* P. 62<sup>a</sup>, i. 605, vii. 939.  
 malicious, *a.* iii. 1634, vii. 2852.  
 man, *s.* P. 21, iii. 1249 ff., *genit.* mannes,  
   P. 14, i. 2412, (mannys, viii. 2975), to  
   manne, iii. 1967, viii. 308, *pl.* men, P.  
   12, 167, i. 768, *genit.* mennes, i. 1995;  
   man, servant.  
 manace, *s.* i. 1598, iii. 1832.  
 manace, *v. a.* ii. 1525, 1533, vi. 1680.  
 Manachas, Manachas, vii. 1801 ff.  
 mandement, *s.* viii. 1819, command.  
 Mane, v. 7023.  
 manere, *s.* P. 362, i. 793, iv. 1281, such  
   a maner wise, &c., P. 83<sup>a</sup>, i. 1086,  
   1360, ii. 1072, *cp.* i. 1977, in manere,  
   vii. 2132, 4344, PP. 53.  
 Manes, *pl.* v. 1363.  
 manfull, *a.* vii. 2881.  
 manhod(e), *s.* P. 260, ii. 1639, 2514, iii.  
   1964, manhiede, manhed(e), i. 1212,

- 3044, iv. 325, 2033; man's nature, manliness, race of men.  
**mankinde**, s. ii. 3108, iv. 2443.  
**manlich**, a. vii. 5093.  
**manna**, s. v. 1673.  
**manneekinde**, s. v. 4110.  
**mannysch**, a. vi. 1528.  
**manslawhte**, s. iii. 2544, (*manslaghtre*, PP. 171).  
**mantel**, **mantell**, s. v. 3557, 4201, 6890, vii. 4524, 5067.  
**many**, **mani**, a. *sing.* P. 857, ii. 89, 447, iv. 1619, *many a*, P. 75, i. 1958, *many an*, vii. 2191, *many (many) on*, v. 5302, *pl.* *many*, *manie*, P. 299, 672, i. 2530, iv. 1629, *many*, v. 2904, 4015, 5147; *as subst.* *many*, i. 3238, v. 4001.  
**manyfold**, *adv.* iii. 1702, 1952, iv. 125, *be manyfold*, v. 1778.  
**manyon**, *pron.* i. 416, 655, 2441, *pl.* *manion*, ii. 1272; *cf.* *many*.  
**mappemounde**, s. vii. 530.  
**marbre**, s. iv. 3666 ff., v. 2035.  
**Marc**, vi. 474.  
**March**, v. 5968, vii. 1008, **Marche**, viii. 2843, **Mars**, viii. 2852, **March**.  
**marchandie**, s. ii. 600, vii. 917.  
**marohant**, s. v. 952, 2689, vii. 1687.  
**marche**, s. P. 720, i. 1417, ii. 2521 ff., vii. 555, PP. 291, border, territory.  
**Marche**, *see* **March**.  
**marche**, v. n. iv. 2987, border.  
**Marchus Claudius**, vii. 5167 ff.  
**mareschall**, **mareschal**, s. viii. 714, 2662.  
**mariage**, s. i. 1763, ii. 625, v. 1260.  
**Marie**, i. 3278, v. 1782\*.  
**married**, *pp.* v. 509.  
**marked**, *pp.* vii. 1144.  
**market (place)**, s. v. 1535, vii. 5101.  
**marrement**, s. vii. 3310\*, trouble.  
**marrubium**, vii. 1343, (name of a herb).  
**Mars (1)**, **Mart**, **Marte**, v. 651 ff., 883 ff., 1215, 1477, 3506, 6150; (the planet) iv. 2470, vii. 889 ff., 992, 1136, 1314, 1323, 1360, 1374, 1389, 1411.  
**Mars (2)**, *see* **March**.  
**Marsagete**, vii. 3444.  
**martire**, s. PP. 341.  
**mased**, a. vi. 132.  
**Maaphat**, iv. 1533.  
**masse**, *see* **messe**.  
**maet**, s. i. 1068, viii. 617.  
**mat**, a. iii. 114, vi. 34, 730, weak, dejected.  
**mathematique**, vii. 72, 145 ff., 623.  
**matiere**, s. P. 6, 984, iv. 565, v. 572, matter, cause.  
**matina**, s. v. 7111.  
**matrimoine**, s. i. 1777.  
**matrone**, s. i. 1657.  
**may**, v. *see* **mowe**.  
**may**, s. iv. 30, v. 3438: *cf.* **maide**.  
**mayde**, *see* **maide**.  
**Maximin**, vii. 2766.  
**me**, *pron.* P. 30\*, i. 117, 567, *me*, myself.  
**mea culpa**, i. 661.  
**mechanique**, s. vii. 1693.  
**mecherie**, *see* **mieherie**.  
**mechil**, *see* **moechel**.  
**mede**, s. i. 795, 1554, ii. 2727, v. 4720, *meede*, v. 7133\*, vii. 129.  
**Mede**, vii. 4335, 5313.  
**Medee**, **Medea**, iii. 2559, v. 2539, 3241, 3368 ff., 4361, viii. 2563.  
**medicine**, s. i. 30, 167, ii. 3203, medicine, healing.  
**meditacioun**, s. ii. 2876.  
**medle**, v. a. i. 1709, 3014, *pp.* **medled**, P. 858, **medlid**, iv. 1475; v. n. vii. 1586: *mingle*.  
**Meduse**, **Medusa**, i. 401 ff., 551.  
**medwe**, s. v. 4151, 5964.  
**meedful**, a. viii. 3105\*.  
**meel**, s. vi. 720, meal.  
**meene**, *see* **meno**.  
**meete**, *see* **mete**.  
**Megaster**, vii. 1455.  
**meind**, *see* **meynd**.  
**meintiene**, *see* **maintiene**.  
**meke**, **mieke**, a. v. 2472, 5395, vii. 916.  
**meke**, v. *refl.* i. 866, v. 7386, submit.  
**meknesse**, s. i. 126, n. 1486.  
**melk**, s. v. 4048.  
**melle**, v. n. v. 2833, *cf.* **medle**.  
**melled**, a. vii. 4899, mingled.  
**melodie**, s. i. 494, v. 1030.  
**melte**, v. n. iv. 1057, *pret.* **malt**, iv. 1065.  
**membre**, s. P. 153, v. 1457, PP. 164.  
**memoire**, s. P. 1002, i. 1775, ii. 1421.  
**memorial**, s. iv. 532, 563, 2042, memory.  
**memorial**, a. viii. 3026\*, 3105, remembered.  
**man**, *indef. pron. sing.* ii. 659, v. 5510, viii. 2926, people.  
**menable**, a. i. 1067, ii. 1123, iii. 390, vii. 2762: *see* note on i. 1067.  
**menage**, s. v. 4809.  
**Menander (1)**, iv. 109.  
**Menander (2)**, iv. 2409.  
**mencioun**, s. ii. 428, iii. 739.  
**mende**, *see* **mynde**.  
**meno**, **meene**, v. a. n. i. 15, 280, 926, 1210, ii. 2465, iii. 2761, iv. 1859, *pret.*



- mente, P. 667, 1024, minte, vii. 5043;  
mean, intend, speak.  
mene, meene, *a. v.* 3895, 5330.  
mene, *s. v.* 6542.  
Menelay, iii. 2136, v. 3072, viii. 2547.  
Menesteüs, iii. 2145.  
meninge, *s. ii.* 1599, menynges, vii. 4837.  
menstral, *s. vii.* 2423.  
menstre, *s. v.* 7059, minster.  
mercerie, *s. ii.* 3059.  
merci, mercy, *s. i.* 1832, 1902, 1936, iii.  
222, thanks, mercy.  
merciable, *a. iii.* 1514, iv. 3426, vii. 3276,  
merciful.  
Mercurial, *a. vii.* 1357.  
Mercurie, Mercurius, i. 422 ff., iv. 2053,  
3332 ff., v. 938, 1399, 1465, 7411, vii. 2967,  
3056; (the planet) iv. 2474, vii. 757 ff.,  
1087, 1156, 1382, 1421, 1427.  
merel, *s. P.* 430, vii. 3266, lot.  
merle, merye, *a. i.* 2081, 2734, iv. 504, v.  
6128: *adv. v.* 3779.  
merite, *s. P.* 301, v. 4893, merit, v. 1725.  
meritoire, *a. P.* 465.  
merthe, *s. i.* 2531, iv. 3149, *pl.* merthes,  
i. 102, vii. 4799.  
merveille, merveille, *v. n. ii.* 774, 1347,  
iv. 1266, vi. 171, mervalle, i. 2226;  
*impers. v.* 4481, vi. 385.  
merveille, merveille, *s. i.* 3234, iii. 1422,  
vii. 3998, mervalles (*pl.*), v. 309, iv.  
2059, mervalle, mervalle, iv. 1480,  
vii. 2456.  
merveilled, *a. v.* 2060, filled with wonder.  
merveilous, *a. iv.* 2990, v. 5292.  
meschief, *s. P.* 150, ii. 1029, iii. 2387,  
(meschef, PP. 111), mischief, iii. 137.  
meschieved, *pp.* iv. 15.  
mescreance, *s. v.* 1444, vi. 2366.  
mescreants, *s. pl.* PP. 268.  
Mese, iii. 2645, iv. 3516.  
message, *s. i.* 834, ii. 816, iii. 255, message,  
embassy.  
messenger, *s. ii.* 943, v. 1185, vii. 4681,  
messagier, i. 2505; *fem.* messagere,  
iv. 2972.  
messe, masse, *s. i.* 660, iv. 1133, v. 7037,  
7111.  
mestier, *s. vii.* 1692, occupation.  
mesure, *s. P.* 1056, 1080, i. 2402, iv. 3305,  
viii. 768.  
mesure, *v. a. iv.* 3306, v. 7638.  
metall, metal, *s. P.* 735, iv. 2449 ff.  
Metamor, Methamor, i. 389, v. 6711.  
mete, *s. P.* 475, i. 812, 2843, ii. 1363, iii.  
183, meat.  
mete, meete, miete, *v. a. n. (1), i.* 2599, ii.  
457, iii. 52, iv. 2902, v. 5584, *pref.* mette,  
P. 42\*, i. 85, *pp.* met, iv. 2094, meet.  
mete, meete, *v. a. n. (2), iii.* 51, iv. 2901,  
*pref.* mette, iv. 2910, 3065, vi. 1980,  
dream.  
mete, meete, *a. and adv. ii.* 458, vii. 2899,  
fit, fitly.  
Methamor, *see* Metamor.  
Metodre, viii. 48.  
metre, *s. iv.* 2414.  
metrede, *s. vi.* 2003, dream.  
meynd, meind, *a. P.* 615, v. 2311, 4049,  
mingled.  
mi, min, *see* my.  
Micoena, Micenes, iii. 2039, 2081.  
Micheas, vii. 2595 ff., Michee, vii. 2667.  
micherie, mecherie, *s. v.* 6296, 6495,  
6754, 6944, thievishness.  
michinge, *s. v.* 6525, thieving.  
midday, *s. iv.* 3273.  
middel, *a. P.* 17, v. 7691, viii. 720.  
middel, *s. iv.* 1356, vi. 786, vii. 1058,  
waist, middle.  
middelerthe, middilerthe, *s. i.* 3305, vii.  
287.  
Mide, Myde, v. 153 ff., 412.  
midmorwe, *s. viii.* 665.  
midnyht, *s. ii.* 2891.  
mieke, *a. see* meke.  
miele, *s. vi.* 590, bowl.  
miete, *see* mete.  
miht, mihte, *v. see* mowe.  
miht, *s. see* myht.  
milde, mylde, *a. P.* 1058, i. 915, ii. 1056,  
vi. 1918, viii. 1030.  
mile, myle, *s. ii.* 1474, a ten mile, iv.  
1707, thritty mile, v. 2036, (of time)  
iv. 689, viii. 2312.  
million, *s. v.* 2613.  
minde, *see* mynde.  
mine, *s. see* myn.  
mineral, *s. iv.* 2559.  
minerall, *a. iv.* 2552.  
Minerve, *s. i.* 1120, 1147, v. 1189, 1460,  
1831, 7413, vii. 1922, 1933.  
ministre, *v. n. i.* 808; *v. a. vii.* 1030.  
ministres, *s. pl. i.* 583.  
Minotaurus, Minotaure, iv. 1043, v.  
5277, 5291 ff.  
minte, *see* mene.  
minut, mynut, *s. iv.* 241, 642, vi. 2257.  
mir, *see* myr.  
miracle, *s. iv.* 522, 3661, vii. 662.  
mirour, *s. P.* 496, iii. 1076, v. 2033, viii. 2821.  
mirre, *s. i.* 1705.

**mis**, **mys**, *s. i.* 3311, vi. 2359, wrong.  
**mis**, **mys**, *adv. i.* 2403, ii. 559, vii. 5429, amiss.  
**misbegat**, *v. a. pret.* vi. 2357.  
**misbelieve**, *s. ii.* 1569, v. 833, 1593.  
**misbelieved**, (*pp.*) *a. v.* 739.  
**misbere**, *v. refl.* vii. 5279, misbehave (oneself).  
**misbore**, *pp.* ii. 971.  
**miscaate**, *v. a. iii.* 110.  
**mischief**, *see* **meschief**.  
**misconte**, *v. n. i.* 3112.  
**misdede**, *s. iii.* 1931, 2614.  
**misdespended**, *v. a. pp.* i. 298.  
**misdo**, *v. a. n. i.* 3443, *pret.* **misdede**, iii. 227, *pp.* **misdo**, i. 2385, ii. 3513.  
**miselwe(n)**, **miself**, *pron. i.* 62, 192, 556, myself, iv. 853, (my self. viii. 2958).  
**misericorde**, *s. iii.* 2628, 2712, vii. 3303.  
**misfalle**, *v. n.*, *pret.* **misfell**, vi. 2362.  
**misfare**, *v. n. ii.* 694, iv. 3387, *pret.* **misferde**, iv. 3602, vii. 4437, *pp.* **misferd**, ii. 2432, go wrong, transgress.  
**misgate**, *v. a. pp.* viii. 243.  
**misgovernance**, *s. ii.* 2965, v. 693.  
**misguide**, *v. a. vii.* 2920.  
**mishandlinge**, *s. v.* 1869.  
**mischap(p)**, *s. iii.* 814, vi. 2358.  
**misshappe**, *v. n. iv.* 304, vii. 4916, fare ill, unfortunately happen.  
**mislede**, *v. a. vii.* 1678, 4310.  
**misledere**, *s. ii.* 3021.  
**mislike**, *v. n. v.* 7054, be displeasing.  
**mislok**, *s. i.* 334.  
**misloke**, *v. n. i.* 418, sin in looking.  
**mislokyngs**, *s. i.* 445.  
**mispaie**, *v. a. iii.* 648, *pp.* **mispaied**, **mispaied**, ii. 549, viii. 1582, displease.  
**mispeche**, *s. ii.* 545.  
**mispeke**, *v. a. n. ii.* 535, 548, 2008, iii. 562, speak amiss.  
**misreule**, *v. a. vii.* 2508, viii. 2114.  
**misse**, *v. n. iii.* 1362, viii. 2229, fail; *v. a. vi.* 312, *pret.* **miste**, iv. 836, lose.  
**misserve**, *v. a. vii.* 3933.  
**misseye**, *v. n. P.* 480, say amiss.  
**misfit**, *v. n. 3 s. pres.* v. 5213, is unfitting.  
**mist**, **myst**, *s. v.* 1666, vii. 281.  
**mistake**, *v. a. iv.* 1001.  
**misteppe**, *v. n. v.* 473, go wrong.  
**misthrowe**, *v. a. i.* 549.  
**mistime**, *v. a. i.* 220, iii. 2458, viii. 196, **mystyme**, vi. 4, disorder, bring about wrongly.  
**mistorne**, *v. a. n. P.* 957, i. 427, v. 6304, vii. 4468.

**mistriste**, *v. n. i.* 3165.  
**mistrowinge**, *s. vi.* 1643.  
**mistrust**, *s. ii.* 53.  
**misuse**, *v. a. P.* 521, v. 4538.  
**miswende**, *v. a. n. iii.* 1548, *pret.* **miswente**, vi. 2361, *pp.* **miswent**, P. 517, i. 395, v. 5288.  
**Mitelene**, viii. 1405, 1610, 1917.  
**mitre**, *s. ii.* 2936.  
**mo**, *a. pl.* i. 922, 1272, iv. 1357; *cp.* **nomo**.  
**Moab**, viii. 235.  
**Moabite**, vii. 4503, viii. 241.  
**moche**, *a. i.* 224; *as subst.* to **moche**, iii. 581, *cp.* **tomoch**: for **als moche**, i. 272, *cp.* vi. 349.  
**moche**, *a. P.* 342, i. 1568, iii. 1619, (**mocheil**, **mechil**, viii. 3040, 3046); *adv.* i. 1412, 1983, ii. 2251, iii. 908.  
**mod**, *s. ii.* 2734, iv. 1280, PP. 101, mood, mind.  
**modifie**, **modifis**, *v. a. vii.* 2153, 4210, 5379, limit.  
**moder**, *s. P.* 852, ii. 644, vii. 4731, (**modir**, PP. 106, 241), *gent.* **moder**, iii. 313, 2175, *pl.* **modres**, ii. 3223.  
**moderhed(e)**, *s. ii.* 1073, v. 5893.  
**moerdre**, *s. ii.* 3293, iii. 1883, murder.  
**moerdre**, *v. a. iii.* 1935 ff., viii. 1382, murder.  
**moerdre**, *s. viii.* 1958.  
**moerdre**, *s. iii.* 2003, viii. 1958, murderer.  
**move**(n), *v. a. ii.* 190, 1379; *v. n. iii.* 1273, vii. 677: move.  
**moevment**, *s. vii.* 674.  
**Moises**, P. 306, iii. 2254, v. 1656, 1682, 6967, vi. 1092, vii. 1475, 3054, PP. 187, **Moises**, iv. 648.  
**moist(e)**, *s. P.* 977, vii. 271, 379, 445, moisture.  
**moiste**, **moyste**, *a. ii.* 3123, vii. 413, 1061 ff., **moist**, vii. 1287.  
**moisture**, *s. vii.* 730.  
**molde**, *s. i.* 1607, ii. 1737, iv. 1844, vii. 5017, earth; iv. 1112, fashion.  
**Moloch**, vii. 4509.  
**moltoun**, *s. P.* 1060, sheep.  
**monarchie**, *s. P.* 673, i. 763.  
**mone**, *s. (1)*, i. 2180, 3143, ii. 703, iii. 556, moan, lament.  
**mone**, *s. (2)*, P. 142, 484, i. 1168, v. 1447, vii. 721 ff., moon.  
**mone**, *s. (3)*, i. 1634, companion.  
**moneie**, **monois**, *s. iv.* 2448, v. 11, 610, 1834, 4377, money.  
**monelyht**, *s. vii.* 733.

- monkes**, *s. genit.* iv. 2732.  
**monstre**, *s. i.* 404, v. 1091, 5275.  
**mont**, *s. ii.* 3350, 3378, *pl.* **monts**, P. 755, iv. 1952.  
**montaine**, **montaigne**, **montaine**, *s. iii.* 365, v. 1048, 1288, 1331.  
**montance**, *s. viii.* 2312, amount.  
**monthe**, *s. i.* 100, 2026, *pl.* **monthes**, iv. 2960, a **monthe** (two **monthes**) day, iv. 776, 2955.  
**mor** (1), *s. iv.* 2786, moor.  
**mor** (2), *see* more.  
**Moral**, P. 945, (Gregory's) *Moralia*.  
**moral**, *a. iv.* 2321, v. 1852, viii. 2925.  
**More**, i. 1686, Moor.  
**more**, *a. P.* 158, v. 5889; *as subst.* P. 20, 324, 762, **mor**, ii. 996, iv. 1650; *cp.* **mo**: *adv.* P. 640, i. 1263, iv. 122, **mor**, i. 1951, 2703, ii. 1736, **the more**, P. 55\*, i. 2322, **more yit** (moreover), iv. 2446.  
**more**, *v. a. v.* 1614, vii. 1841, 4846, increase.  
**morgage**, *s. vii.* 4228.  
**Morien**, iv. 2609.  
**Moris**, ii. 937, 975, 1365 ff.  
**Morpheus**, iv. 3039, 3057.  
**morscel**, *s. vi.* 6, **morsell**, viii. 195.  
**mortalite**, *s. PP.* 284.  
**mortiel**, *a. iii.* 1532, 2027.  
**morwe**, *s. i.* 2169, 2852, ii. 2713, iii. 2616, be the m., v. 3415, a **morwe**, ii. 781; *as a. iv.* 1829.  
**morwetyde**, *s. iii.* 1221.  
**most**, *a. superl.* i. 1194, 2074, *def.* **moste**, ii. 46, iii. 2678, iv. 959, greatest, chief: *adv.* **most**, P. 120, ii. 2336, v. 233, **moste**, i. 307, v. 3103.  
**mote**, *v. n. viii.* 640, 1, 3 *s. pres.* **mot**, P. 650, i. 1296, 2102, **mote**, vii. 3536, 3604 ff., viii. 255, 2 *s. most*, ii. 206, *pl.* **mote(n)**, P. 698, ii. 3225, iii. 1030, *pret.* **moste**, (*as pres.*) P. 525, 646, i. 261, 1333, 2700, v. 526, (*as pret.*) P. 729, i. 2309, *pres. subj.* (expressing a wish), **mot**, **mote**, P. 92, 340, i. 2878, 3347: **must**, **may**.  
**mote**, *s. ii.* 576.  
**mounte**, **monte**, *v. n. i.* 3065, iv. 1061.  
**mous**, *s. iii.* 1643, vii. 3572.  
**mowe**, *s. iv.* 900, v. 1926, grimace.  
**mowe**, *v. n. inf.* iv. 38, **mow**, ii. 1670, 1, 3 *s. pres.* **mai**, **may**, P. 21, 249, i. 174, 689, 987, 1545, vii. 111, 4144, 2 *s. miht*, **myht**, i. 247, 710, 2242, ii. 2085, (**myght**, PP. 97), 2 *pl.* **mow ye**, iv. 2788, 3 *pl.* **mow**, v. 6768, *pret.* **mihte**, **myhte**, P. 203, 728, i. 1412, 2261, 2332, vii. 5062, (**myghte**, viii. 3048, PP. 76), **miht**, iii. 1356, **myht**, PP. 39, **myhte**... **to**, ii. 510, *cp.* vii. 437, be able (to), have power, (may, might).  
**mowe**, *v. a. ii.* 2375, reap.  
**mowth**, **mouth**, *s. i.* 1275, ii. 431, **to mowthe**, **to mouthe**, **be mowthe**, i. 1642, 2433, ii. 485, vii. 5285, *pl.* **mouthes**, v. 3609, vii. 2653.  
**muable**, *a. P.* 581, v. 444, viii. 585, changing, easily moved.  
**mue**, *s. iii.* 1412, cage.  
**muk**, *s. v.* 4855.  
**mule**, *s. ii.* 1506, vi. 1835.  
**mull**, *s. v.* 2310, rubbish.  
**multeplie**, **multiplie**, *v. a. n. iv.* 2460, v. 133, 1651, 6423, viii. 29, increase.  
**multiplacioun** (-on), *s. iv.* 2573, vii. 159, viii. 86.  
**multitude**, *s. ii.* 1810, v. 2201.  
**Mundus**, i. 783.  
**murmur**, *s. i.* 1345.  
**muse**, *v. n. i.* 3091, iii. 75, 1219, vii. 4270, reflect, gaze.  
**Muse**, *s. viii.* 3074\*, 3140.  
**musette**, *s. viii.* 2677, (a musical instrument).  
**musike**, **musiqe**, **musique**, *s. i.* 497, iv. 2416, 3335, vii. 150.  
**musinge**, *s. vi.* 126.  
**must**, vii. 1165.  
**my**, **mi**, **myn**, **min**, *poss. pron.* P. 63, 85, i. 2, 74 ff., *pl.* **my**, **myn**, **min**, i. 228, iii. 60, iv. 3219; *disj.* **myn**, i. 950, iii. 896, *pl.* **myne**, vii. 2333\*: **al myn one**, i. 115, *see* one.  
**mydnyht**, *a. v.* 3961.  
**myht**, **miht**, *s. P.* 655, i. 2848, ii. 1155, vii. 2120, *pl.* **mihtes**, **myhtes**, i. 2917, iii. 1112, (**myghtes**, viii. 3065).  
**myht**, **myhte**, *v. mowe*.  
**myhtely**, *adv.* vii. 242.  
**myhti(-y)**, **mihty**, **mihti**, *a. P.* 378, i. 940, 2792, 3013, ii. 1639, (**myghti**, **mighti**, PP. 41, 293); *sup.* **myhtiest**, *def.* **myhtieste**, P. 736, i. 1098, vii. 1826.  
**mylde**, *see* milde.  
**myle**, *see* mile.  
**myn**, *pron.* *see* my.  
**myn**, *s. v.* 86, 2155, **myne**, **mine**, iv. 2455, 2553, mine.  
**mynde**, **minde**, *s. P.* 93, i. 918, 1618, ii. 2226, v. 5726, viii. 1559, **mende**, iv. 643, 1961, vii. 1200, mind, memory, mention.  
**myne**, *v. n. v.* 2121, mine.  
**myne**, *s.* *see* myn.

**Mynitor**, v. 897.  
**Mynos**, v. 5231 ff.  
**mynour**, s. v. 2121, miner.  
**mynut**, *see* minut.  
**myr**, ii. 1974, iii. 1631, iv. 2723, *mir*, i. 683, mire.  
**mys**, *see* mis.  
**mysbefalle**, v. *impers.* i. 459.  
**mysdrawe**, *pp.* P. 430, wrongly drawn.  
**myst**, *see* mist.  
**mystyme**, *see* mistime.  
**myswreynnt**, *pp.* v. 1869, wrongly twisted.  
**myte**, s. v. 4412.

## N

**Nabal**, vii. 4530.  
**nabeith** (=ne abeith), vi. 1378.  
**Nabugodonosor**, P. 595, i. 2786, v. 7018.  
**Nabusardan**, v. 7013.  
**Nachaie**, vi. 1660.  
**naclon** (-oun), s. i. 394, iv. 1451, viii. 85, 91, kind, race.  
**nagher(e)**, *adv.* ii. 1244, 1260, v. 6240, nowhere: *cp.* nowher.  
**nacht**, *see* nocht.  
**Naiades**, v. 1334.  
**naked**, a. i. 363, 1781, iii. 248 &c., *nakid*, ii. 709, iii. 1429, iv. 403, *def. nakede*, iv. 421.  
**nam** (=ne am), i. 743, 2751.  
**nam**, v. a. *pres.* i. 1738, ii. 1438, iii. 1447, *nom.* P. 758, *pp.* *nome*, P. 982, i. 443, 901, 3264, took, taken: thurgh *nome*, v. 3635, penetrated.  
**name**, s. P. 99, 294, i. 806, 2096, name, honour.  
**name**, v. a. P. 87, i. 3394, iii. 1599, iv. 2477, *pres.* *namede*, iv. 468.  
**namely**, *adv.* P. 144, iii. 63, 2633, *namly*, ii. 47, *nameliche*, i. 2370, v. 6345, *namliche*, iv. 1449, especially.  
**Namplus**, iii. 1002 ff., *cp.* **Nauplus**.  
**naprocha** (=ne aproche), iv. 1135.  
**Narcisus**, i. 2285, *Narcisse*, viii. 2542.  
**nargh**, a. i. 1685, narrow.  
**nase**, s. i. 1678, iv. 2544, vii. 3273, nose.  
**nassote** (=ne assote), vii. 4254.  
**natheles**, P. 36, i. 21, 988, vii. 3877, nevertheless, moreover.  
**nativite**, s. i. 392, iv. 2764.  
**nature**, s. ii. 1376, iii. 175, 350 ff., viii. 2224 ff., *pl.* *natures*, vii. 108.  
**nature**, v. a. vii. 393, fashion.

**naturel**, a. i. 1498, iii. 2581, iv. 2399, vii. 1301.  
**naturien**, s. vi. 1338, vii. 649, 1471, follower of natural magic.  
**Nauplus**, iv. 1816 ff., *cp.* **Namplus**.  
**navels**, s. i. 489.  
**navie**, s. i. 528, 1171, iv. 80, vi. 1445.  
**navye**, ii. 1128.  
**nawher(e)**, *see* nowher.  
**nay**, *adv.* P. 373, i. 740, iii. 55.  
**nayled**, *pp.* vii. 2900.  
**ne**, *adv.* i. 733, iii. 936, iv. 2855, *ne...no*, P. 179, i. 159, 792, *ne...nocht*, i. 166, iii. 570, *that...ne*, P. 990, i. 788, 2093, *ne...bot*, i. 264, *non...ne*, iv. 1400; *ne* (=nor), i. 25, 794, 1082, *ne...ne*, viii. 2451, *nocht...ne nocht ne*, i. 2722: *ne hadde he* (if he had not), iv. 2184, *ne hadde be that*, vi. 1755, *that I nere, that he ne were*, (O that I were, &c.), iv. 3414, v. 3747.  
**Neabole**, v. 1435.  
**necessaire**, a. vii. 1504.  
**necessite**, s. P. 797, vii. 1704.  
**neeglignee**, *negligence*, s. iv. 889 ff.  
**neoglilent**, a. iv. 962, 1031.  
**necke**, s. P. 605, i. 1687.  
**Nectanabus**, v. 6671, vi. 1796 ff., vii. 1296.  
**neddra**, s. vii. 1010, *adder*: *cp.* *eddra*.  
**nede**, s. P. 227, i. 1988, 2239, *ned*, iv. 3449, *pl.* *nedes*, ii. 3414; *ste nede*, iii. 1772, *mot nede*, *nedes mot*, *moete nedes*, &c., P. 574, i. 1714, ii. 778, iii. 352.  
**nedeles**, a. i. 3267, without need (of help).  
**nedeth**, *needeth*, v. n. 3 s. *pres.* P. 800, i. 2446, iii. 1311, viii. 2245; *impers.* P. 33, i. 283, ii. 1897, 3364: is necessary, (it) is needful.  
**nedle**, s. vi. 559, *nedle and ston*, vi. 1422, viii. 541.  
**nedly**, *adv.* iv. 1168.  
**nedy**, a. v. 7757.  
**negligence**, *see* *neoglignee*.  
**neisshe**, *see* *neysahe*.  
**Nembrot**, *Nembroth*, P. 1018, v. 1547, vii. 1452.  
**Neptunus**, *Neptune*, i. 1152, ii. 180, v. 983 ff., 1146, 6162 ff., vi. 1406, viii. 623, 1595, 1614.  
**nere** (=ne were), iv. 3414.  
**Nereides**, v. 1345.  
**Nero**, vi. 1155 ff.  
**nerr**, a. and *adv. comp.* i. 2323, iii. 1040, iv. 1705, vii. 312, *ner*, ii. 2286, v. 5050; as *prep.* iii. 694: nearer.  
**Nessus**, ii. 2168 ff.



- nest, *s.* iv. 1669.  
 nest, *adv.* see next.  
 Nestor, iii. 1801 ff.  
 net, *s.* iii. 183, iv. 2428.  
 netherdes, *s. pl.* v. 1006, neatherds.  
 nettle, *s.* ii. 401.  
 Neuma Pompilius, vii. 3057.  
 nevere, *adv.* P. 660, i. 1532, 2324.  
 neveremo, *adv.* iv. 2266, neveremor(e),  
 v. 2813, 4474, nevermor, ii. 1304.  
 nevoeu, *s.* i. 1409, nephew.  
 newe, *a.* P. 349, 659, i. 2083, *as subst.*  
 P. 1003, i. 1202; of newe, P. 6, uppon  
 newe, PP. 315.  
 newe, *adv.* P. 163, i. 1665.  
 newe, *v. a.* P. 92\*, i. 2700, vi. 1497, renew,  
 produce; *v. n.* P. 59, viii. 1587, change.  
 newefongel, *a.* v. 4367.  
 newefot, *s.* vi. 145, (name of a dance).  
 next, *adv.* i. 256, 1230, 1964, neat, vii. 1075.  
 nexte, *a. def.* ii. 3149.  
 neyhe, *v. n.* v. 3782, draw near.  
 neyssehe, neiashe, *a.* iv. 3681, v. 4693, soft.  
 nice, see nyce.  
 Nicolas, ii. 2809.  
 Nigargorus, v. 1521.  
 nigromaunce, *s.* v. 6673, vi. 1308.  
 niht, see nyht.  
 Nil, vii. 561.  
 nimphe, *s.* i. 365, 2317, *pl.* nimphe, i.  
 2343, v. 1182, 1328 ff., nimphe, v. 6932.  
 Ninus, v. 1541.  
 nis (= ne is), i. 618, 3382, nys, i. 443, ii.  
 2946.  
 no, *a.* P. 106, i. 152, no thing, iii. 1824;  
*cp.* non.  
 no, *adv.* i. 712, ii. 1931, iv. 2746, no lenger,  
 v. 5082.  
 noble, *a.* P. 633, i. 3351; *sup.* noblest, i. 465.  
 noblete, *s.* i. 2032, vii. 813.  
 nobles, *s. pl.* v. 3758, vii. 2376.  
 noblesce, noblesse, i. 2100, ii. 2820, v.  
 7648.  
 Noë, P. 1015, v. 1605, vii. 542, 1452, viii.  
 79, 84.  
 noght, *s.* P. 624, i. 2197, (nought, viii.  
 3078), at noght, i. 1567, 1896, for n.,  
 ii. 2696, al to n, iii. 580, as n ne were,  
 iv. 696, 1925, for n. he preide &c., ii.  
 1164, 2974, al to noghtes, vii. 412.  
 noght, *adv.* P. 124, 221, 270 &c., nought,  
 P. 33, 70\*, naght, v. 3786, not, vii.  
 2198, viii. 3017\*.  
 noghwhere, see nowher.  
 noise, *s.* i. 375, 1733, noyse, ii. 3239.  
 noise, *v. a.* iv. 3004, disturb.  
 noide (= ne wolde), vi. 1366, viii. 1603.  
 nom, see nam.  
 noman, P. 41, i. 21 &c., (no man,  
 PP. 11).  
 nomaner, iii. 173.  
 nombre, *s.* vii. 155, number.  
 nombre, *v. a.* ii. 1769, vii. 1122.  
 nome, see nam.  
 nomo, *s. pl.* i. 1898, ii. 133, no mo, i. 1272.  
 nomore, nomor, *a.* ii. 1526, iv. 603;  
*subst.* i. 270, 1605, 3439; *cp.* nomo:  
*adv.* P. 1086, i. 1226, 2101.  
 non, *a.* P. 207, 901, i. 890, iv. 505, 1543;  
*pl.* none, P. 201, iv. 691, 1446, non,  
 i. 1336, 1386; in none wise, v. 1637,  
 viii. 949; *cp.* no: *pron.* P. 176, ii.  
 1828, no one: *adv.* i. 137, 1329, iii.  
 2443, not.  
 non, *s.* viii. 668, noon.  
 Nonarcigne, v. 1009.  
 noncertein, *s.* viii. 2179, 2378, uncerte-  
 tainty.  
 nones, i. 2538, ii. 1130, iv. 1353, 3009.  
 nonne, *s.* viii. 175, nun.  
 norrice, *s.* i. 618, ii. 1076, iii. 1936, iv.  
 1087, vii. 3573, nurse, nurture.  
 north, *s.* viii. 1039.  
 Northumberland, ii. 717.  
 not (= ne wot), P. 254, i. 56, iii. 124,  
 nost (= ne wost), iv. 1779, nyete  
 (= ne wyste), i. 914, iii. 998.  
 not, *adv.* see noght.  
 note, *s.* (1), P. 1058, iv. 434, 699, *pl.* notes,  
 i. 496, note (of music), mark.  
 note, *s.* (2), iv. 566, nut.  
 note, *v. a. n.* iv. 698, 2415, v. 1346, vii.  
 2340.  
 notefe, *v. a.* ii. 2825.  
 notetre, *s.* iv. 867, nut-tree.  
 nother, see nouthur.  
 nothing, *s.* i. 909, ii. 1166 &c., no thing,  
 iii. 1824; *adv.* P. 214, i. 3029 &c.  
 nouche, *s.* i. 2420, v. 7066, vi. 1134,  
 brooch.  
 nought, see noght.  
 noughte (= ne oughte), viii. 2991.  
 nouthur, nowther, *a.* iv. 2254; *as conj.*  
 i. 271, 2470, ii. 1412, v. 2849 nother,  
 iv. 1268; neither.  
 novellerie, *s.* v. 3955.  
 Novembre, vii. 1167.  
 now, nou, *adv.* P. 27 &c., now . . . now,  
 nou . . . nou, P. 569 f., i. 90, as now,  
 i. 546, tyme now, i. 2379, viii. 2437,  
 on daies nou, iv. 1731 (*cp.* nowadaies);  
*as subst.* P. 843, iv. 2772, v. 4501.

**nowher**, *adv.* ii. 31, **noghwhere**, vii. 1514, **nawher(e)**, iv. 1044, v. 3269: *cp.* **naghere**  
**nowhider**, *adv.* v. 520.  
**nowther**, *see* **nouthor**.  
**nyee**, *nice*, *a* i. 1224, 2016, 2276, ii. 1866, iv. 610, v. 1038, 2618; *as subst.* v. 4725: foolish, fastidious, delicate.  
**nyoete**, *s.* v. 462, vi. 176, *folly*.  
**nygard**, *s.* v. 4850.  
**nygardie**, *s.* v. 4805.  
**nyh**, *a* P. 261; *adv.* P. 884, i. 1527; *prep.* i. 2322, ii. 1115: *cp.* **nerr**.  
**nyht**, **niht**, *s.* P. 939, i. 1167, ii. 2656, **nyght**, PP. 102, *gen.* **nyhtes**, i. 860, vii. 358; **be nyhte**, **be nihte**, i. 823, ii. 2681, iii. 148, iv. 420, **be nyht**, iii. 1541, iv. 3057, **at nyht**, i. 870, **on nyht**, i. 1811, **a nyht**, v. 2099, 6507, **to nyht**, i. 944.  
**nyhte**, *v. n.* v. 4955, *become night*.  
**nyhtingale**, *s.* i. 355, iv. 2872, v. 5944.  
**nyle** (= *ne wyle*), iii. 961.  
**nyne**, *num.* iii. 1521, v. 4019.  
**nytho**, *a.* vii. 1141, 1379.  
**nya**, *see* **nia**.  
**nyate**, *see* **not**.

## O

**O**, *interj.* i. 124, v. 5677.  
**o**, *pron.* *a.* i. 1505, v. 2252, 2296, **that o**, P. 981, v. 2255, **that o...** **that other**, v. 2306 ff., *cp.* **on pron.**  
**obedience**, *s.* i. 1301, 1858.  
**obedient**, *a.* i. 1291, iv. 1125.  
**obeie**, *v. a. n.* P. 729, i. 510, 1269, 1281, 2236, ii. 2612, v. 6364; *refl.* iii. 265; **to obeied (to)**, ii. 1529: *obey*, *submit*, *do obeisance*.  
**obeissauce**, *s.* P. 107, i. 2606, viii. 2713, (**obeyssaunce**, viii. 3021\*), *obedience*, *homage*.  
**obeissant**, *a.* i. 2502, 2795, iv. 425, v. 1351, *obedient*.  
**oblivion**, *s.* iv. 651.  
**observance**, *s.* i. 881, 1869, 2605.  
**observe**, *v.* *a.* P. 72\*, iv. 3252, vii. 4214.  
**obstacle**, *s.* ii. 1546, iv. 521.  
**obstinacie**, *s.* iv. 3434.  
**obstinat**, *a.* iv. 3442, v. 1704.  
**oceane**, *s.* vii. 592.  
**occident**, *s.* iv. 3235, vii. 582, **thooctident**, P. 720, *the West*.

**occupacioun (-on)**, *s.* iv. 212, 1257, v. 197.  
**Octobre**, vii. 1139.  
**Octovien**, v. 4731.  
**odde**, *a* vii. 1580.  
**Oēnes**, iv. 2045.  
**Oētes**, v. 3321.  
**of**, *prep.* P. 1, 3, 235, i. 825, 1212, 2237, 2737, ii. 2285, iv. 3414, v. 1998, *of*, *from*, *by reason of* *as regards*, *by*: **of that** (= *since*), P. 333, i. 417, 1128, 2566, **of tolde**, **speke of**, &c., i. 2866, iv. 2466: *adv.* i. 1745, 2471, *off*.  
**offence**, *s.* i. 2072, iii. 104, 614, iv. 505.  
**offende**, *v. n.* P. 422; *v. a.* vii. 3243, PP. 245.  
**office**, *s.* P. 80, i. 2410, iii. 2004, 2218, **thoffice**, i. 242.  
**officer**, **officier**, *s.* i. 647, 2506.  
**offre**, *v. a.* i. 1122, 1159; *v. n.* iii. 1990.  
**offrende**, *s.* i. 936, v. 1638, viii. 956, **offringe**, iii. 1995, v. 830.  
**ofherkne**, *v. n.* ii. 2007.  
**ofte**, *adv.* P. 14, i. 620, **often**, P. 502, **ofte** **sithes (time)**, i. 118, ii. 2015, **often times**, v. 4777.  
**oftetime**, *adv.* vi. 1248.  
**oghne**, *a.* P. 86, i. 951 &c., **oughne**, i. 1948, v. 588, **owne**, viii. 1248, **owne**, viii. 2954.  
**oght**, *s.* P. 846, iv. 673, 1765, 3487, **ought**, i. 1287, ii. 1930, iv. 1745, **auht**, v. 6073: *adv.* i. 549, ii. 274, **awht**, i. 2770.  
**oght**, *v. 3 s. pres.* iii. 2474, *pret.* **oghte**, i. 462, 2238, v. 4984, **oughte**, v. 2607, **owhte**, ii. 549, **thou oghtest**, iv. 1794: *impers.* ii. 2142, iii. 704, 1666: **ought**, **owe**, **own**.  
**oignement**, *s.* v. 3596, viii. 2817.  
**oil**, *s.* vii. 2194, 2584 (*see note*).  
**oile**, *s.* *see* **oyle**.  
**old**, *a.* P. 1003, i. 1072, *def.* **olde**, i. 2693, 2696, *pl.* **olde**, P. 7, i. 3390, (*as subst.*) v. 3930; **of (be) olde ensample**, iii. 782, 1683, **be olde tyde**, v. 139: *cp.* **eldeste**.  
**Olimpe**, v. 3997.  
**Olimpias**, vi. 1824, 1965.  
**olyve**, *s.* v. 4142.  
**Omellie**, v. 1901, *Homilies*.  
**on**, *prep.* P. 28, 789, i. 350, 697, 1677, iv. 624, 1632; *adv.* i. 1273: **on**, *in*.  
**on**, *num.* P. 125, i. 194, 1274, 1793, **one**; **in on**, P. 159, *united*; **in on**, **evere in on**, P. 523, i. 1795, iii. 526, v. 375, *in the same way*, *without ceasing*; **on and**

- Pallant**, v. 1209.  
**Pallas**, i. 420 ff., v. 1207 ff., 4219, 6149 ff.  
**palle**, *v. a. n.* v. 5486, vi. 342, weaken, grow weak.  
**palle**, s. v. 6680, covering.  
**Pan**, v. 1007, viii. 2239, 2476.  
**panche**, s. vi. 1000, belly.  
**Pandas**, iv. 2410.  
**Pandion**, v. 5556.  
**Pandulf**, iv. 2408.  
**panne**, s. i. 2472, iv. 2733.  
**Pantasilee**, iv. 2139 ff., v. 2547, **Pantaselee**, viii. 2527.  
**Panthasas**, iv. 3049.  
**Pantheon**, viii. 272.  
**papacie**, s. P. 364, ii. 2895.  
**papal**, *a.* ii. 2925.  
**papat**, s. ii. 2833, papacy.  
**paper**, s. iv. 198.  
**Paphos**, iv. 435.  
**Paphus**, iv. 434.  
**pappes**, s. *pl.* iii. 2010, 2073.  
**par**, *prep.* see *per*.  
**paradis**, s. P. 1005, i. 3303, iv. 682, v. 1707, vi. 207, **paradys**, i. 502.  
**parage**, s. i. 3336, viii. 351, equal rank, rank.  
**parail**, s. vii. 1038.  
**paramour**, s. iv. 1269, 1470.  
**Parasie**, v. 1011.  
**parconner**, s. viii. 2535, partner.  
**pardoun**, s. i. 2174, viii. 2896.  
**parfit**, *a.* iii. 2496, v. 2032, *def.* **parfit**, iv. 2522, **parfite**, iv. 2624; *as subst.* the **parfit**, iv. 2363, v. 1723; *adv.* v. 1714.  
**parfitly**, **parfitli**, *adv.* ii. 755, iv. 2497, v. 2136, **parfhtliche**, v. 1732.  
**parforne**, *v. a.* vii. 1373, viii. 2273, perform.  
**Paris**, v. 7374 ff., viii. 2529.  
**park**, s. i. 1566, iv. 1288.  
**parlement**, s. ii. 1549, 2653, iii. 2130, v. 484.  
**part**, s. P. 64, i. 321, 1376, ii. 174, 1447, *pl.* **pars**, v. 4774, **partz**, v. 7704.  
**parte**, *v. a.* P. 170, 467, v. 73, divide, distribute: *v. n.* ii. 1578, v. 131, 3639, 6175, 7582, part (from, with), depart, share.  
**parti**, *a.* iii. 983, variegated.  
**parti**, s. ii. 1740, v. 7341, part, party.  
**partie**, s. P. 43, 792, 956, ii. 230, part, party: **stant partie**, iii. 1160.  
**partinge**, s. vii. 2008, division.  
**pas**, **pass**, s. i. 1421, ii. 2205, v. 6090, pass, passage; i. 2183, vi. 1197, pace, foot's pace, the **grete pas**, ii. 988, v. 3178, vii. 3283\*, (the) **softe pas**, ii. 1509, vii. 4970.  
**Pasiphe**, v. 5279.  
**passage**, s. ii. 1885, 2194, 2209, 3036, iv. 1902, passage, passing away.  
**passe(n)**, *v. a.* i. 332, 651, 1849, 2175, iv. 1666, viii. 2692, pass, pass through, pass over, surpass; *v. n.* P. 689, i. 142, 499, 1534, 2247, ii. 944, 2810, iv. 2239, v. 5954, vii. 4762, pass, happen, pass away.  
**passible**, *a.* v. 771, liable to suffer.  
**passioun (-on)**, s. P. 915, iii. 2721, vi. 169.  
**past**, s. iii. 447, vi. 620, paste, pastry.  
**paste**, s. v. 2407, pasty.  
**pasture**, *v. n.* i. 2915.  
**paternoster**, s. v. 7119.  
**path**, s. v. 1990.  
**patriarch**, s. v. 1635, vi. 1040, *pl.* **patriarkes**, viii. 134.  
**patrimoine**, s. P. 741.  
**Paul (Emilius)**, **Paulus**, ii. 1776 ff.  
**Pauline**, i. 765 ff.  
**paved**, *pp.* viii. 1855.  
**pay**, s. vi. 1208, satisfaction.  
**payene**, see **paiene**.  
**peine**, s. P. 509, i. 1209, 1367, ii. 2586, (**peyne**, viii. 3121), *pl.* **peines**, i. 2900, punishment, pain: **do mi peine**, &c. ii. 507, v. 658, endeavour.  
**peine**, **peyne**, *v. refl.* iv. 414, viii. 2509, suffer, take pains; **peined**, *pp.* i. 2916, ii. 26, troubled.  
**peinte**, *v. a.* i. 284, 1346, 2729, ii. 2854, iv. 2138, PP. 329, paint, embellish.  
**peinture**, s. vi. 1894.  
**peire**, s. v. 5691, p. of **bedes**, viii. 2904.  
**peis**, s. vii. 3119, viii. 2380, weight.  
**peise**, *v. a.* P. 540, i. 3377, iii. 2403; *v. n.* v. 232, viii. 1169: weigh, feel by weight.  
**Pelage**, ii. 1316.  
**Peleüs (1)**, iii. 2550.  
**Peleus (2)**, v. 3249 ff., 4187, **Pelias**.  
**pelote**, s. v. 5349, ball.  
**pelrinage**, s. i. 803, ii. 1315, iv. 1199.  
**penance**, **penaunce**, s. P. 471, i. 1669, ii. 2316, viii. 477.  
**Penele**, v. 4006.  
**penne**, s. iii. 271.  
**Penolope**, iv. 152 ff., 1822, vi. 1471, viii. 2621.  
**penon**, s. vi. 1650.  
**penonceal**, s. viii. 988.  
**pensel**, s. vi. 1553, 1733, **pennon**.  
**Pentapolim**, viii. 658, 1966 ff.  
**peny**, s. vii. 2125.

- per**, **par**, *prep.* P. 42\*, i. 1521, 2049, 2225, ii. 1644, iii. 2604, iv. 39, 964, 1101, 1239, v. 3351.
- peraunder**, *adv.* ii. 563, perchance.
- perce**, *v. a.* iii. 451, iv. 2881, 3030, v. 1678, pierce.
- Perce**, *see* **Perse**.
- perceive**, *v. a.* i. 471, 899; *v. n.* v. 2086.
- perdurable**, *a.* vii. 520, viii. 2976, eternal.
- perfeccioun**, *s. P.* 436.
- periferie**, *s.* vii. 265 ff.
- peril**, *s. P.* 381, i. 1076, iii. 185.
- perjurie**, *s. v.* 3225, **perjura**, *v.* 7617.
- perle**, *s.* iv. 1313, v. 3015, vii. 4334.
- perled**, *a.* i. 2510.
- pernable**, *a.* viii. 2931.
- Peronelle**, i. 3396.
- perpetuel**, *a.* vii. 98.
- perplexete**, *s.* viii. 2190.
- perrie**, *s. i.* 2997, v. 7117\*, vi. 1135, vii. 1397, precious stones, stone.
- Perse** (1), **Perce**, P. 678 ff., ii. 2548, 2629 ff., iii. 2312, vii. 1784, 3433 ff., 4366 ff., Persia.
- Perse** (2), *see* **Perseus** (2).
- Perse** (3), ii. 1784 ff., (name of a dog).
- Perseus** (1), i. 419.
- Perseus** (2), **Perse**, ii. 1620, 1647 ff., (king of Macedon).
- Persiana**, *pl.* P. 697.
- persons**, *s. P.* 71, i. 840, ii. 1098, iv. 160.
- pes**, *s. P.* 109, i. 1103, iv. 2046, PP. 62.
- pees**, P. 1061, PP. 35, peace, protection.
- pece**, *s. v.* 4409, pea.
- pestilence**, *s. P.* 279, ii. 1648, v. 1070.
- pet**, *s. i.* 2981, v. 4945 ff., **pitt**, i. 1908, *pl.* **pettes**, v. 1114, 4047, **puttes**, v. 4043, **pit**.
- Peter**, i. 656, ii. 3335, 3478, v. 1871, 1904, *gentl.* **Petrea**, P. 234, PP. 230.
- Petornius**, v. 1520.
- Petro**, i. 3395.
- Phara**, vii. 3697.
- Pharao**, v. 1654.
- Phares**, v. 7023.
- Pharisee**, P. 305.
- Phebe**, iv. 3254.
- Phebus**, iii. 783 ff., 1688 ff., iv. 979 ff., 3197, 3243 ff., v. 6447 ff., 6740 ff., vii. 4704 ff., **Phebum** (*acc.*), v. 6719.
- Phedra**, *see* **Fedra**.
- phesant**, *s.* vi. 2223.
- Pheton**, iv. 983 ff.
- Philemenia**, iv. 2151.
- Philemon**, iv. 2405.
- Philen**, v. 4251.
- Philerem**, v. 1163.
- Philippe** (1), **Philipp**, vi. 2112, 2221.
- Philippe** (2), ii. 1616.
- philliberd**, *s.* iv. 869, **filbert**.
- Phillis**, iv. 743, 866 ff., viii. 2554.
- Philogetia**, vii. 857.
- Philomene**, v. 5561 ff., viii. 2583.
- philosophie**, *s.* iii. 1219, iv. 2399, vi. 1404.
- philosophre**, *s.* ii. 2674, iii. 1201, iv. 2453, **philisophre**, v. 2080.
- Philotenne**, vii. 1337.
- Phinees**, vii. 4432.
- phisicien**, *s.* viii. 1164, 3156.
- phisique**, *s.* ii. 3163, iv. 2420, 3304, vi. 663, 1409, vii. 71, 135; medicine, treatment, physical science.
- phisonomie**, *s.* vi. 109.
- phitonesse**, *s.* iv. 1937, vi. 2387.
- Phocus**, iii. 2551.
- Photeus**, *s.* iii. 2023 ff.
- Phorceus**, i. 390.
- Phyrins**, v. 6372.
- pieh**, *s.* v. 2176, 5349, viii. 1109, pitch.
- Pithagoras**, vi. 1410.
- pie**, *s.* iv. 3001, v. 1998, magpie.
- piece**, *s.* v. 1338, **al to pieces**, iii. 465, 1048.
- pier**, *s.* i. 3337, iii. 1344, vii. 2461; *as a.* i. 3365: peer, equal.
- piereles**, *a.* viii. 286, PP. 305.
- pietous**, *a.* vii. 3159, 3271, merciful.
- pigne**, *s.* v. 1010, pine.
- pike**, **pyke**, *v. a. n.* i. 698, 2568, iii. 500, iv. 2650, v. 6633, 6681, vii. 1590, 2282, **pick**, choose, assume.
- pilage**, *s.* v. 2071, 6172, vii. 2035, plunder, plundering.
- plie(n)**, *v. a. n.* P. 401, iii. 2359, vii. 4053, **plunder**.
- pilgrin**, *s.* i. 2041, pilgrim.
- Pileon**, iv. 1980.
- piler**, *s.* iv. 2054, v. 1670, pillar.
- pilour**, *s.* iii. 2372, robber.
- pilwa**, *s.* i. 2986, iv. 3021, v. 540, pillow.
- piment**, *see* **pyment**.
- pinnacle**, *s.* iv. 3662.
- pipe**, **pype**, *s.* iv. 3334, 3342, v. 1032, viii. 2675.
- pipe**, *v. n.* v. 3343, v. 95, 1032.
- pipinge**, *s.* iv. 3345, viii. 2477.
- Piramus**, iii. 1376 ff., 1660, viii. 2543.
- pire**, *v. n.* vi. 818, peer.
- piromance**, *s.* vi. 1298, divination by fire.
- Pirotia**, vi. 489.
- Pirrus**, iv. 2161, v. 3195, viii. 2593.

**Piscia**, vii. 1216. **Places**, vii. 1253.  
**pitance**, s. vi. 877, portion (of food).  
**pite**, s. P. 320, i. 2203, ii. 3174, vii. 3107, ff., **pitee**, vii. 3177\*, mercy, pity.  
**pitous**, a. i. 122, 680, 979, vii. 3125.  
**pitoualy**, *adv.* iii. 1663, iv. 3621, **pitousliche**, iv. 2810.  
**pitouanesse**, s. vii. 3526.  
**pitt**, *see* **pet**.  
**place**, s. i. 136, 1314, 1513, a **place**, i. 2377, iv. 2451, *cp.* **aplace**.  
**planemetrie**, s. vii. 1469.  
**planeta**, s. iii. 1216, iv. 2467, v. 753, vii. 637 ff.  
**planisperie**, s. vii. 1464.  
**plante**, v. a. PP. 368.  
**plantaine**, s. vii. 1391.  
**plat**, *adv.* i. 472, 1495, ii. 2047, vii. 4084, flatly, plainly.  
**plate**, s. v. 3111, 7113\*.  
**Plato**, vi. 1404, viii. 2718.  
**plaunte**, s. ii. 2370.  
**plede**, v. n. vii. 2069.  
**pledour**, s. ii. 3416.  
**ple**, **plea**, s. n. 3416, vii. 2068, **plea**.  
**pleie**, v. n. i. 54, 348, 1764, 1854, 2031, v. 6786, vii. 2423, **pleye**, P. 85\*, viii. 3057\*, *ref.* i. 364, iii. 151; v. a. iv. 904.  
**pleiafferes**, s. *pl.* iv. 482.  
**pleigne**, v. n. P. 183, 747, i. 999, ii. 446, 1650, **pleine**, iv. 3180, complain.  
**pleignte**, **pleinte**, s. i. 3026, ii. 293, iii. 1983, iv. 117, complaint.  
**plein**, a. (1), iv. 1539, vii. 931, *def.* **pleine**, i. 864, full.  
**plein**, a. (2), P. 184, 408, i. 282, 736, vii. 2350, viii. 1982, *def.* **pleine**, v. 5251, *pl.* **pleyne**, viii. 3122, level, simple, plain, smooth.  
**plein**, *adv.* i. 1490, 1656, ii. 1452, iv. 39, vii. 1594, fully, plainly.  
**pleine**, **plein**, s. i. 113, 357, ii. 1498, v. 1287.  
**plainly**, **pleinli**, *adv.* P. 473, i. 127, ii. 1238, 2789, **pleinliche**, i. 211, fully, plainly.  
**pleinte**, *see* **pleignte**.  
**pleintif**, a. iv. 154.  
**plenerliche**, *adv.* P. 527, i. 1278, **plenerly**, vii. 525, fully.  
**plente**, s. P. 97, v. 2218.  
**plentivous**, **plentevous**, a. v. 2147, vii. 931, abundant.  
**plesance**, s. i. 882, 1499, 2617, ii. 1177.  
**pleasant**, a. i. 1503, v. 1295.

**plese(n)**, v. a. P. 192, i. 1698, 3051, ii. 1450, v. 4761.  
**plesir**, s. v. 501.  
**pley**, s. P. 85\*, vi. 1852, viii. 692.  
**pleye**, *see* **pleie**.  
**pleyinge**, s. viii. 3082\*.  
**Pliades**, vii. 1320.  
**plie**, v. a. i. 578, 1249, ii. 3419, **plye**, vii. 3871, bend; v. n. i. 1779, iii. 871, iv. 3564, bend, submit; ii. 3146, strive.  
**plight**, s. vii. 4226, engagement.  
**plihite**, **plyhte** (1), v. a. iii. 1508, *pret.* **plihite**, **plyhte**, i. 822, ii. 1205, *pp.* **plihit**, iv. 757, engage.  
**plihite** (2), v. a. *pret.*, to **plihite**, v. 850, tore in pieces.  
**plit**, s. P. 57, 296, i. 989, 1663, 2579, ii. 692, v. 2031, **plyt**, ii. 2980, condition, state of things, manner.  
**plover**, s. vi. 943.  
**plowh**, **plouh**, s. i. 1566, 3257, iii. 514, v. 3720, **plough**, iv. 2383, **plough**, **ploughed** land.  
**plowed**, a. vii. 1162, of the **plough**.  
**plowman**, s. ii. 3422.  
**Pluto**, iv. 2851, v. 1104, 1146, 1290, 4052.  
**plye**, *see* **plie**.  
**plyhte**, *see* **plihite**.  
**pooock**, s. v. 6498.  
**poepie**, s. P. 107, i. 1193.  
**poesie**, s. iv. 1038, 2668, v. 6806.  
**poete**, s. i. 386, ii. 121, viii. 2719.  
**point**, i. 73, 1229, iii. 308, viii. 2579 f., (*poynt*, vii. 3157\*), *pl.* **points**, i. 288, vii. 1706; in the **point** as (as soon as), P. 268, in p. to, ii. 1016, in good p., ii. 2792, *cp.* vii. 4654, out of p., i. 1304; **point**, condition, manner.  
**pointura**, s. vii. 1048, prick.  
**policed**, *pp.* i. 2543, polished.  
**policie**, s. iii. 459, vii. 1683, 1986, &c.  
**Poliphemus**, **Polipheme**, ii. 107 ff.  
**Polixenen**, iv. 1696, **Polixena**, v. 7593, vii. 2593.  
**pomel**, iii. 307, 1443.  
**pompe**, s. P. 304, i. 2685, ii. 1773.  
**Pompele**, v. 5533, vii. 3215 ff.  
**Pompilius**, *see* **Neuma**.  
**Pontsorge**, ii. 3003.  
**pope**, s. P. 371, 745, ii. 635, 2809 ff., PP. 383.  
**popi**, s. iv. 3007, poppy.  
**por reposer**, viii. 2907.  
**porchace**, *see* **pourchace**.  
**pore**, *see* **povere**.  
**porpartie**, *see* **pourpartie**.  
**porpos**, *see* **pourpos**.



**poursuite**, *see* **poursuite**.

**port**, *s.* (1), i. 674, 3429, iv. 1187, v. 1426, viii. 2195, bearing, behaviour, kind.

**port**, *s.* (2), viii. 387, harbour.

**porte**, *s.* ii. 1114 ff., porthole.

**porveaunce**, *see* **pourveance**.

**positif**, *a.* P. 247, iii. 172.

**possessioun (-on)**, *s.* P. 684, ii. 3480, v. 64, v. 1685.

**pot**, *s.* iii. 656, vii. 3742, *pl.* **pottes**, P. 614, vi. 914.

**potestat**, *s.* iv. 3522.

**poudre**, *see* **pouldre**.

**pouer**, P. 144, i. 2892, ii. 928, iii. 1779. (*power*, viii. 3062 ff.).

**Poul**, ii. 3335, 3478, v. 1910.

**pouldre**, **poudre**, *s.* P. 623, i. 2003, vii. 354, powder.

**Poulins**, iv. 2420.

**pound**, *s.* iv. 2591, v. 2719.

**pourchace**, **purchace**, *v. a.* i. 816, iii. 1484, iv. 1996, **purchase**, P. 129, viii. 3132, **porchace**, *v.* 4684, procure, seek after; *v. n.* i. 2157, ii. 3504, v. 2001, vi. 1944, endeavour, make gain, succeed.

**pourchas**, *s.* v. 6089, gain.

**poure**, *v. a.* i. 679, v. 2222, **pour**.

**pourpartie**, *s.* i. 406, v. 7000, **porpartie**, v. 1691, share.

**pourpos**, *s.* i. 642, 1178, **porpos**, v. 3363.

**pourpose**, *v. a. n.* ii. 2528, **purpose**, P. 53; *refl.* v. 1988.

**pourpre**, *s.* vi. 990, purple.

**pours**, **purs**, *s.* ii. 2683 ff., v. 5093 ff., purse.

**poursuant**, *s.* ii. 2552, *pl.* **poursuivants**, ii. 239, suitor.

**poursuite**, *v. a.* i. 946, iv. 2685, **poursewe**, iv. 3453, pursue, attain to; *v. n.* ii. 255, 2630, iii. 1673, vi. 2406, make pursuit, continue.

**poursuite**, **pouruite**, *s.* iv. 28, v. 4423.

**pourtrelle**, *v. a.* vii. 4876.

**pourtreture**, *s.* iv. 2421, v. 757.

**pourveance**, *s.* P. 585, i. 1916, 2028, v. 926, 5539, **porveaunce**, **porveance**, P. 188, v. 2674, providence, foresight, provision.

**pourveie**, *v. a.* i. 843, iv. 204, *pp.* **pourveid**, v. 4021, **pourveied**, vii. 1681; *v. n.* ii. 1327; *impers.* vii. 24: provide, ordain.

**pourveour**, *s.* v. 1997, procurer.

**povere**, *a.* P. 227, i. 2098, 3010, **pore**, viii. 2411; *as subst.* P. 317, vi. 1004; *superl.* the **povereste**, iv. 2238.

**poverte**, *s.* P. 303, i. 1353, iv. 2219.

**power**, *see* **pouer**.

**practique**, *s.* iv. 2612, vii. 41, 1648 ff., method, moral science.

**pranos**, *v. n.* vi. 1191.

**preche(n)**, *v. a.* ii. 3433, iii. 2500, v. 3361 (admonish); *v. n.* P. 231, i. 1277.

**preching**, *s.* v. 1906.

**prechour**, *s.* ii. 3356.

**precious**, *a.* v. 1549, *pl.* **preciousse**, iv. 1354.

**preferre**, *v. a.* ii. 3073, 3254, iv. 1806, vii. 2824.

**preie**, *s.* iii. 1393, 2605, prey.

**preie**, *v. a. n.* P. 231, i. 804, 3195, iv. 369, **prafe**, ii. 1933, viii. 2998. (**preye**, P. 31\*, 66\*), **prai** (1 *s. pres.*) i. 220, 3 *s.*

**pres.** **preith**, P. 748, **pret.** **preide**, P. 600, i. 1549, ii. 1120, iv. 398, 1368,

**preyde**, iv. 192, *pp.* **preid**, v. 4241, *imperat.* **prel**, i. 2937, vi. 451; pray to, pray for, pray.

**preiere**, *s.* i. 794, iii. 135, iv. 172, 3231, prayer.

**preise**, *v. a. n.* P. 539, i. 2120, ii. 394, v. 231.

**preisinge**, *s.* ii. 407.

**preinyge**, *s.* vi. 426.

**prelacie**, *s.* P. 287, v. 1902.

**prelat**, *s.* P. 294, vii. 4246, *pl.* **prelats**, v. 1850, PP. 247.

**prenostik**, *s.* ii. 1793, presage.

**preparacion**, *s.* vii. 1429.

**pres**, **pressa**, **presso**, *s.* iv. 148, 2162, v. 4, 2440, 7253, viii. 904, 2751, crowd, eagerness: in **presse**, iv. 2849, down below (*cf.* Chaucer, *Troilus*, i. 559).

**presage**, *s.* ii. 1790.

**presence**, *s.* i. 1635, 2071, ii. 757, v. 1069.

**present**, *s.* v. 4204, in **present**, v. 3595, *pl.* **presens**, vi. 1497, gift.

**present**, *a.* P. 587, ii. 1368.

**presents**, *v. a.* v. 1911, viii. 2307; *refl.* v. 2093.

**preserve**, *v. a.* vii. 3856, viii. 1961.

**press**, **presso**, *s.* *see* **pres**.

**presso**, *v. a.* ii. 462, 1733; *v. n.* viii. 2752.

**prest**, **priest**, *s.* i. 193 ff., iii. 2275, 2556, *pl.* **prestes**, i. 810.

**presthod(e)**, *s.* P. 259, viii. 2079.

**presumpcioun**, *s.* i. 1989.

**pretolre**, *s.* vii. 2847.

**Priamus**, iii. 975, 1890, v. 7226 ff., viii. 2523, 2592.

- pricke, s. P. 396, i. 3311, iii. 116.  
 pride, s. P. 224, i. 581 &c.  
 pride, pryde, *v. refl.* i. 2372, ii. 1811; *pp.*  
 prided, PP. 257.  
 prie, *v. n.* iv. 1176, v. 7078, pryhe, v.  
 470.  
 priente, s. i. 555, vi. 2149, print.  
 prieve, *see* prove, proeve.  
 prike, *v. a. n.* i. 2036, iv. 997, vi. 1191,  
 spur, ride.  
 prime, s. v. 3880.  
 primrose, s. vii. 1214, 1362, primrose.  
 prince, s. P. 45, ii. 633, iii. 1005.  
 prinche, *v. n.* v. 4854.  
 principal, a. i. 307, 581, iv. 2489, v. 1115;  
*as subst.* iii. 1282, v. 1995, 6446, in  
 principal, vii. 29.  
 prioress, s. v. 891.  
 pris, s. P. 42, i. 848, 1900, 2525, 2755,  
 3304, 3329, vii. 3966, prias, vii. 4364,  
 value, prize, fame, praise: sette pris  
 of, i. 3068, iii. 1454, iv. 908, value,  
 stonde in p., iv. 2632, v. 1708, *cp.* ii.  
 278, be valued, be praised.  
 prisoner, s. iii. 2375, v. 7212, vii. 2374.  
 prisoun (-on), s. ii. 1854, iv. 1042 ff., v.  
 5734, prisone, vii. 2630.  
 prive, pryve, *v. a.* vii. 3270, 4040, de-  
 prive.  
 prive, a. i. 815, 1738, ii. 2858, vii. 121,  
 privi, v. 7621, (preve, PP. 128), in  
 prive, ii. 686; secret.  
 prively (-li), *adv.* i. 898, 2069, v. 2143,  
 privelich(e), ii. 1695, v. 1247.  
 privete, privite, s. i. 1660, ii. 1416, 1651,  
*pl.* privetes, i. 2806.  
 privilege, privilegge, P. 103, v. 7173,  
 vii. 1989, (previllege, PP. 245).  
 probleme, s. i. 3071, viii. 1681.  
 proceeds, *v. n.* P. 405, 1025, iv. 1.  
 process, s. viii. 269.  
 processoun, s. i. 1140, v. 7560.  
 proclame, *v. a.* P. 88, ii. 3039, iv. 2478.  
 procurour, s. v. 2862.  
 prodegalite, s. v. 7645, vii. 2026.  
 proeve(n), prove(n), *v. a. n.* P. 556, 926,  
 948, i. 61, 758, 1851, iii. 2311, prieve,  
 vii. 126, try, prove, appear.  
 professed, *pp.* v. 890, 1805, viii. 1848,  
 bound by vow.  
 professioun (-on), s. ii. 2383, viii. 1266.  
 profit, s. P. 295, ii. 346, iii. 2468, v.  
 188.  
 profitable, a. ii. 2201, PP. 300.  
 profite, *v. n.* iv. 2298, 2572.  
 profre, *v. a. n. and refl.* iii. 1988, iv. 1130,  
 3 s. *pres.* proferth, i. 1693, profreth,  
 i. 1772, v. 5322, 6923, offer.  
 profre, s. iii. 1989, v. 4745, offer.  
 progenis, s. ii. 592, iv. 2701.  
 Progne, v. 5559 ff., viii. 2583.  
 prolacioun (-on), s. ii. 2875, vii. 173,  
 utterance.  
 prolificacion, iv. 3248, fruitfulness.  
 prologe, s. P. 66.  
 promission, s. v. 1686, promise.  
 Promotheus, iv. 2422, v. 1523.  
 pronounce, *v. a.* ii. 391, v. 7321.  
 prophecie, s. P. 588, ii. 1857, iii. 764.  
 prophecie, *v. a.* v. 1167.  
 prophete, s. v. 1693, vi. 1093, vii. 2560.  
 prophetesse, s. ii. 1802.  
 proportion, s. v. 2531, 7245.  
 propre, a. P. 258, 335, i. 3393, ii. 2365, iii.  
 2361, iv. 2543, proper, own, appropriate;  
*adv.* vii. 4011, for (his) own part.  
 properly (-li), *adv.* i. 299, ii. 289, v.  
 1328, vii. 1268, properly, P. 947, pro-  
 prieshe, iv. 5.  
 proprete, s. P. 929, ii. 2377, iii. 2326, v.  
 1336, (proprite, PP. 326), *pl.* propretes,  
 i. 257, iii. 1225, propretes, vii. 63.  
 Proserpine, Proserpina, iv. 2850, v.  
 1277, 4053.  
 prosperite, s. i. 2802, iv. 1213.  
 proteccioun, s. v. 2573, viii. 3040\*.  
 Protheselai, iv. 1901.  
 Protheus, v. 3082, 6672.  
 proud, a. P. 347, 712, v. 198, *def.* proude,  
 P. 222, i. 1980; *sup.* proudest, i.  
 1996.  
 proudly, *adv.* i. 1912.  
 prouesse (-esse), P. 98, i. 1083, ii. 2580,  
 iv. 2302.  
 prove, *v. see* proeve.  
 prove, s. ii. 1673, prieve, ii. 2022, vi.  
 1924, trial.  
 Provence, ii. 3004.  
 provende, s. P. 210, prebend.  
 proverbe, s. P. 786, v. 6631, vi. 448, vii.  
 1961.  
 providence, s. ii. 1322, iv. 863, vii.  
 3941.  
 province, s. vii. 2770.  
 provisour, s. v. 2905.  
 prudence, s. iv. 2652, v. 2289.  
 prune, *v. refl.* vi. 2203, trim (oneself).  
 Prus, iv. 1630.  
 pryhe, *see* prie.  
 pryve, *see* prive, v.  
 Pseudo, v. 1879.  
 Puile, v. 2064 ff., 2646.

**pulson**, **puyson**, *s. i.* 2645, *ii.* 565, *iii.* 2457, *vi.* 2246, **poison**.  
**pulle**, *v. a.* P. 400, *ii.* 1788, *imperf.* **pull**, *iv.* 723.  
**purchace**, *see* **pourchace**.  
**pure**, *a.* P. 742, *i.* 1721, 1987, *iii.* 2214; *sup.* the purest, P. 921; **pure**, *merc.* absolute.  
**pure**, *v. a.* *iv.* 2555.  
**purefie**, **purifie**, *v. a.* *i.* 1044, *ii.* 3460.  
**purgatoire**, *s. i.* 1776, 2682.  
**purge**, *v. a.* *i.* 1039.  
**purifie**, *see* **purefie**.  
**purpose**, *see* **pourpose**.  
**purs**, *see* **pours**.  
**pusillamite**, *s. iv.* 314, 707, *vii.* 3527.  
**put**, *s. see* **pet**.  
**pute(n)**, *v. a. imperf.* *i.* 462, *ii.* 1551, *iii.* 547, 2648, *iv.* 1641, **putte**, *iv.* 2288, **put**, *i.* 1578, 3213, *ii.* 93, *i s. pres.* **put**, *i.* 732, *v.* 2951, *3 s. put*, *i.* 690, *ii.* 2493, *3 pl. pres. (subj.) putte, *v.* 608, *pres. putte*, P. 1069, *i.* 2797, **pitte**, *viii.* 2796, **put**, P. 683, 693, 718, *i.* 1013, 1807, **putt** (*pl.*), *v.* 7417, *imperf.* **sing. put**, *ii.* 3154, *pl. putteth*, *ii.* 1033.  
**pyke**, *see* **pike**.  
**pyl**, *s. ii.* 390, **pile** (*as in the phrase 'cross or pile'*).  
**Pymaleon**, *iv.* 372.  
**pymment**, **piment**, *s. vi.* 218, 337.  
**pyne**, *s. v.* 4020, **pain**.*

## Q

**quake**, *v. n.*, *pres. quok*, **qwok**, *iii.* 258, *vi.* 2206.  
**qualite**, *s. P.* 954.  
**quant**, *see* **tant**.  
**quarel**, *s. v.* 7239, **bolt**.  
**queene**, **queen**, **quen**, *see* **qwene**.  
**queint**, **queynte**, *see* **quenche**.  
**queinte**, **qweinte**, *a. i.* 283, 2730, *ii.* 2853, *iv.* 2314, *v.* 4623, *viii.* 2687, **cunning**, **curious**, **gentle**.  
**queintise**, *s. i.* 906, *ii.* 2403, **cunning**.  
**queintise**, *v. a.* *viii.* 2472, **adorn**.  
**quelle**, *v. a.* *v.* 5357, **kill**.  
**qume**, *see* **qweme**.  
**quenche**, *v. a.* *ii.* 1627, *vi.* 452, *pres.* **queynte**, *v.* 3697, *pp. queint*, **queynt**, *ii.* 1556, 1748, *v.* 3223.  
**querale**, *s. P.* 277, *i.* 134, 1822, *ii.* 16, *v.*

2066, **querelle**, *ii.* 2703, 2967, **cause**, **quarrel**, **enterprise**.  
**querale**, *v. n.* *vii.* 3172°.  
**queste**, *s. v.* 2878.  
**questioun** (-on), *s. i.* 1013, 1460, 3098, *iii.* 2245, **question**, **torture**.  
**quik**, **quyk**, **qwik**, *a. v.* 6774, *vii.* 2898, *viii.* 2451, *def. qwike*, *ii.* 2779, *pl. s. qwike*, *ii.* 3405, **alive**, **living**.  
**quikselver**, *s. iv.* 2475.  
**quit**, **qwyt**, *a. i.* 1664, *ii.* 691, *iii.* 1588, *iv.* 661, *pl. quyte*, *iii.* 2577, **free**, **unpunished**.  
**quite**, **quyte**, *v. a. i.* 3347, *iii.* 1608, *v.* 7184°, *viii.* 1255, (**qwiten**, P. 279), *pp. quit*, *iii.* 2194, *v.* 7729; **pay for**, **requite**, **acquit**.  
**quod**, *v. pres.* *i.* 183, 1273, 1557, 3183, **said**.  
**qwed**, **qued**, *s. iii.* 1534, *v.* 3568, **bad thing**, **villain**.  
**qweinte**, *see* **queinte**.  
**qweme**, **queme**, *v. a. n.* *ii.* 197, *iii.* 902, *v.* 4366, **queeme**, *vii.* 2312; *imperf.* *iv.* 746, 966; **please**, **be pleasing**.  
**qwene**, **qweene**, *s. i.* 139, 1914, 2601, **queene**, *i.* 132, **queen**, *viii.* 1896, **qwon**, **quen**, *v.* 2543 ff.  
**qwik**, *see* **quik**.  
**qwok**, *see* **quake**.  
**qwyt**, *see* **quit**.

## R

**racchea**, *s. pl. v.* 4388, **hounds** (**hunting by scent**).  
**Rachel**, *viii.* 127.  
**rage**, *s. P.* 1079, *i.* 2620, 2945, *ii.* 910, 1275, *pl. rages*, *vii.* 3410.  
**rage**, *v. n. i.* 1764, **sport**.  
**Rageman**, *s. viii.* 2379, *see note*.  
**ragerie**, *s. v.* 6258, **sport**.  
**Rages**, *vii.* 5313.  
**ragged**, *a. v.* 1509.  
**ragges**, *s. pl. i.* 1723.  
**Raguel**, *vii.* 5315.  
**ralle**, *s. vi.* 2201.  
**ramage**, *a. iii.* 2430, **wild**.  
**Ramoth Galaath**, *vii.* 2541.  
**rampe**, *v. n. vi.* 2182, 2230, *vii.* 2573.  
**rancoun**, *s. v.* 1755, *vii.* 3426.  
**rancour**, *iii.* 2730, *vii.* 3443.  
**ransake**, *v. a. v.* 6094.  
**rape**, *s. iii.* 517, 1625, **haste**.



- reverence**, *s.* P. 298, i. 218, 3291, ii. 1358, 2843, v. 322.  
**revers**, *a* ii. 222, 2105, v. 7658, vi. 1418; *subst.* iii. 2289: opposite, contrary.  
**reversed**, *pp.* P. 30.  
**revile**, *v. a.* v. 2806, vii. 4635, debase, abuse.  
**revolucion**, *s.* iv. 1783.  
**reward**, *s.* iii. 345, iv. 2024, v. 4978, regard, reward.  
**rewardes**, *v. a.* v. 171, 4471, viii. 2374.  
**rewardinge**, *s.* iii. 1596, v. 5195.  
**rewe**, *v. a. n.* P. 164, 1004, iii. 1610, 1625, v. 5760, vii. 3233, repent, be sorry, have pity.  
**rewe**, *s.* see **rowe**.  
**reyn**, see **rein**.  
**reynne**, see **reine**.  
**reynl**, **reynny**, *a.* i. 692, iii. 988, iv. 2979, rainy.  
**ribald**, *s.* vii. 2383 ff.  
**Richard**, P. 25, viii. 2987\*, *genit.* **Richardes**, P. 24\*.  
**riche**, *a.* P. 633, i. 814, 2537; *as subst.* vi. 1072; *sup.* richest, the richest, i. 1098, v. 2612.  
**riche**, *s.* i. 2278, domain.  
**riche**, *v. a.* iv. 2265, v. 2398, 7744, enrich.  
**richeliche**, *adv.* iv. 1371.  
**richesse**, *s.* P. 97, ii. 737, iv. 514, 2208, *pl.* riches, vi. 633.  
**ride**, **ryde(u)**, *v. a. n.* i. 350, 2035, ii. 945, 3194, iv. 1106, v. 7404, vi. 1188, *pret.* **sing.** **rod**, i. 348, ii. 1136, *pl.* **riden**, ii. 1272, v. 1293, *imperat.* **ryd**, i. 1562, *pp.* **rida**, vii. 2859; *cam rida*, &c., i. 350, iv. 1307: ride, make expedition, lie at anchor.  
**riedes**, *s. pl.* v. 1031, reeds.  
**rif**, *a.* ii. 1618, rife, current.  
**riff**, *s.* viii. 1983, reef (of a sail).  
**rifle**, *v. a.* iii. 2384, v. 6521.  
**rigole**, *v. a.* v. 1436, delight (wantonly).  
**riht**, *a.*, **rihte**, vii. 1312, *def.* **rihte**, **ryhte**, P. 232, i. 33, 1052, ii. 947, (righte, viii. 3091), **riht**, iii. 300: *adv.* **riht**, **ryht**, P. 682, 829, i. 639, 1862, 3362, ii. 1789, **right**, P. 50, righte, v. 5351, vii. 545.  
**riht**, **ryht**, *s.* P. 271, 795, **right**, P. 251, viii. 3023, **ryhte**, v. 898, be righte, vii. 2137, at alle rightes, v. 3530.  
**rihte**, **ryhte**, *v. a.* ii. 589, iv. 821, v. 3058, vii. 2728, (righte, PP. 252), *pret.* **rihte**, vii. 5072, direct, arrange; *v. n.* ii. 3071, go right.  
**rihtful**, **rihtfull**, *a.* vii. 2833, 2918, 3814, 4122, (rightful, PP. 59, 383, just, true.  
**rihtwiesse**, **ryhtwiesse**, *s.* P. 109, i. 2936, v. 1645, (rightwiesse, viii. 3035), rightcoaisness.  
**rime**, *s.* iv. 2414, rhyme.  
**rime**, *v. a.* v. 1370, put in rhyme.  
**rinde**, **rynde**, *s.* i. 3261, v. 324, 4123, bark.  
**ring**, *s.* i. 2420, ii. 2614, **ryng**, v. 7119\*.  
**ringe**, *v. a.*, *pp.* **runge**, ii. 1728, iii. 452.  
**riote**, *s.* v. 1217, 5240, 5278, vii. 1378, riot, v. 7131\*, riot, disorder.  
**riote**, *v. refl.* vii. 4320.  
**ripe**, *a.* i. 2822, ii. 2579.  
**rise**, **ryse**, *v. n.* P. 544, v. 7135\*, *pret.* **ros**, iv. 436, *pp.* **rise**, ii. 1427.  
**risinge**, *s.* vii. 1085.  
**rissehe**, see **reissehe**.  
**rivage**, *s.* vi. 1435, viii. 1615, landing place.  
**rivele**, *v. n.* i. 1681, be wrinkled; *pp.* **riveled**, viii. 2829.  
**rivere**, *s.* i. 1043, ii. 2161, v. 1014.  
**ro**, *s.* iv. 2786, **roe**.  
**robbe**, *v. a. n.* v. 207, 993, 6107.  
**robberie**, *s.* iii. 2212, v. 6083 ff, 6142.  
**Roboas**, vii. 4029, 4128.  
**roche**, *s.* i. 2305, iii. 1048, v. 6814, *pl.* **rockes**, iii. 1034, 1054, **rock**.  
**rocke**, *v. a.* ii. 1081.  
**rockes**, *s. pl.* see **roche**.  
**rodd**, *s.* i. 2898, iv. 1276.  
**rode**, *s.* (1), i. 1730, iv. 1629, journey, raid.  
**rode**, *s.* (2), vi. 773, ruddy colour.  
**rode**, *s.* (3), ii. 1161, rood.  
**Rodes**, iv. 1630.  
**rodi**, **rody**, *a.* iv. 385, v. 2471, viii. 1909, ruddy.  
**Rodopele**, iv. 734.  
**rof**, *s.* ii. 2947, roof.  
**rolle**, *v. n.* iii. 313, vii. 3707.  
**romance**, *s.* vi. 878.  
**Romanie**, ii. 2638, vii. 5155.  
**rome**, *a. n.* v. 6502.  
**Rome**, P. 715 ff., 845, i. 763 ff., ii. 588 ff., 1195 ff., 1315 ff., 1448 ff., 1638 ff., 2502 ff., 2803, 3039, 3189, 3476 ff., iii. 100, iv. 2647, v. 904, 1067, 1435, 2031 ff., 2196, 2393, 4939, 5020, 5125, 6359 ff., 6811, 7104\* ff., vii. 1598, 2061, 2347, 2361 ff., 2448, 2767, 2785, 2882 ff., 3145, 3216 ff., 3269 ff., 3946, 4188, 4636 ff., 5131 ff., viii. 199, 2717, PP. 353; **Rome lond**, P. 715, **Rome gate**, ii. 1537.

Romein, *a.* ii. 1406, 1829, 2565, iv. 2639;  
*subst.* P. 768, i. 764, ii. 2554 ff., vii. 2846,  
 4594, Romain, viii. 2633, *pl.* Romeins,  
 P. 737, 841, ii. 679, 1774 ff., 2777, v.  
 1068 ff., 1307, 2199 ff., vii. 2336, 3061,  
 4697 ff.  
 Romelond, ii. 2544.  
 Romeward, ii. 1173, v. 2190.  
 Romulus, v. 900, vii. 3061.  
 rondeal, *s.* i. 2709, 2727.  
 ronne, *see* renne.  
 rooted, *a.* i. 1319.  
 roré, *v. n.* ii. 160, roar.  
 roré, *s.* vi. 2183.  
 rose, *s.* i. 603, ii. 402.  
 Rosemounds, i. 2481.  
 roaine, *s.* v. 2176, rosin.  
 Rosiphalee, iv. 1249.  
 rosmarine, *s.* vii. 1407.  
 rote, *s.* (1), P. 118, i. 145, 2838, iv. 134,  
 roots, vii. 3336\*, root.  
 rote, *s.* (2), vi. 1312, 1457, custom, con-  
 dition.  
 rote, *s.* (3), viii. 829, (a musical instru-  
 ment).  
 rother, *s.* ii. 2494, rudder.  
 round, *a.* iv. 1147, vi. 777, *pl.* rounde, vi.  
 1327: *adv.* i. 358, 2829, iv. 3005.  
 rouné, *v. n.* ii. 45, 1944, iv. 407, v. 478;  
*v. a.* v. 2460: whisper.  
 rounge, *v. n.* ii. 520, nibble.  
 route, *s.* P. 793, i. 2734, ii. 2997, iii. 2389,  
 v. 1910, 5054, company, quantity: *al*  
*a route*, iv. 2145, v. 6932.  
 route, *v. n.* iv. 2731, 3272, v. 6895, snore.  
 routhe, *see* rowthe.  
 rovere, *s.* iii. 2369.  
 rowe, *s.* ii. 1960, iv. 26, 2238, rewe, viii.  
 998, row, company; *be rowe*, vi. 1315,  
 in order: *cp.* arowe, arewe.  
 rowe, *v. n.* (1), P. 40\*, i. 1961, iv. 1781;  
*v. a.* ii. 1905: row.  
 rowe, *v. n.* (2), iii. 1057, dawn.  
 rowthe, routhe, *s.* i. 182, 1200, iii. 1597,  
 v. 5394, pity.  
 rucke, *v. n.* iv. 1669, crouch.  
 ruide, rude, ii. 173, iv. 946, v. 2571, viii.  
 3122.  
 ruine, *s.* P. 837, v. 1706.  
 rule, *see* reule.  
 runge, *see* ringe.  
 rust, *s.* iv. 2494, 2557.  
 rusti, *a.* viii. 1378.  
 ryde, *see* ride.  
 ryht, ryhtwianessa, *see* riht, &c.  
 ryve, *s.* vi. 1429, viii. 516, shore.

S

Saba, v. 6833, 6932.  
 sable, *s.* viii. 2904.  
 sacre, *v. a.* vii. 4510, worship.  
 sacrament, *s.* PP. 309.  
 sacrifice, sacrificie, *s.* i. 1120, 1141, iii.  
 1995, iv. 2966.  
 sacrifie, *v. a. n.* i. 1128, iv. 1519, viii.  
 1826, sacrifice, offer.  
 sacrilege, *s.* v. 6979 ff., sacrilege, v.  
 7016\*, 7090.  
 sadd, *a.* vii. 226, firm.  
 sadel, *s.* iv. 1202, *pl.* sadles, iv. 1312.  
 sage, *a.* v. 7455.  
 saghte, *see* sawht.  
 Sagittarius, Sagittaire, vii. 1143, 1150,  
 1258.  
 sai, sain, saide, &c., *see* seie.  
 sail, *see* seil.  
 saintuaire, *s.* P. 322.  
 sake, *s.* P. 24, i. 209, 2474, ii. 585.  
 sal armoniak, *s.* iv. 2480.  
 Salamyne, iv. 3652.  
 sale, *s.* v. 5084.  
 safly, *see* saufly.  
 salge, *s.* vii. 1385.  
 saliens, *see* Capra.  
 Salomon, iv. 2340, vi. 93, 1317, 1407, vii.  
 3594, 3865, 3891 ff., 4027, 4477 ff., viii.  
 2691, PP. 29.  
 salt, *s.* iv. 1837.  
 salte, *a.* iv. 1666, 3092, v. 1342, *pl.* v.  
 1347.  
 salus, *v. a.* ii. 1504, greet.  
 Salustes, Saluste, ii. 1199, 1220.  
 salvacion, *s.* ii. 3361, v. 1795.  
 salvage, *a.* iv. 2262, vii. 4112, wild.  
 salve, *s.* P. 134, 396, ii. 2788, viii. 2290,  
 cure.  
 salvely, *see* saufly.  
 Samarie, iv. 1938, vi. 2387, vii. 2554.  
 same, *a.* i. 1585; *as subst.* P. 461, i. 629,  
 3032.  
 same, *adv.* v. 3375, together.  
 Samele, v. 1044.  
 Sampnites, *pl.* vii. 2787.  
 Sampson, vi. 94, viii. 2703.  
 Samuel, iv. 1936 ff., vii. 3821 ff.  
 sanguin, *a.* vii. 455.  
 sanz, *prep.* iii. 1550, v. 508.  
 saphir, *s.* vii. 1342.  
 sapience, *s.* v. 1205.  
 Sarasin, *s.* iii. 2489, iv. 1679, vii. 3702 ff.,  
 4412, PP. 250; *fem.* Sarasine, ii. 705,  
 vii. 4496, viii. 2694.

**Sardana Pallus**, vii. 4314, **Sardanapalus**.  
**sardis**, vii. 1416, **sard**.  
**Sarra**, vii. 5315.  
**Satiri**, *pl.* v. 1327.  
**satureie**, *s.* vii. 1423, **savory**.  
**Saturnus**, **Saturne**, **Satorne**, iv. 2445, v. 845 ff., 1133 ff., 1221, 1388, vi. 1293; (the planet) iv. 2471, 3223, vii. 937, 1115, 1174, 1188, 1330, 1340, 1374, 1427, viii. 2275.  
**sauf**, *a.* P. 104, ii. 181, iv. 917, **sauf conduit**, v. 994, **saulf**, P. 1016, *pl.* **save**, ii. 1157, iv. 1453, 2172, **safe**: *adv.* ii. 935, 2188, **safely**: *as prep.* i. 432, **save**, i. 1271, **salve**, v. 1359, **save**, except; **save . . . that**, iv. 3497.  
**saufly**, **saufli**, *adv.* i. 1469, 3152, ii. 3309, v. 2159, **saufliche**, v. 3617, **salvely**, v. 2932, **salfly**, v. 2965, **safely**.  
**Säul**, iv. 1935 ff., vi. 2384, vii. 3821 ff.  
**saundres**, *s.* *pl.* ii. 1961.  
**save**, *v. a.* P. 470, i. 941, 1300, iii. 927.  
**save**, *prep.*, *see* **sauf**.  
**saveine**, *s.* vii. 1353.  
**savinge**, *s.* v. 2794, vii. 3383.  
**savour**, *s.* iv. 2495, v. 587.  
**sawe**, *s.* ii. 588, 1396, iii. 431, iv. 2684, saying, speech.  
**sawht**, *pp. a.* iii. 2742, **reconciled**, **saghte** (*pl.*), viii. 1149, at peace.  
**Saxon**, ii. 723, **Saxoun** (language), ii. 1405.  
**say**, *s.* ii. 2090, trial.  
**scales**, *see* **skales**.  
**scars**, *see* **skars**.  
**scarsly**, *see* **skarsly**.  
**scarsnesse**, *see* **skarsnesse**.  
**sceptre**, *s.* ii. 589, PP. 378.  
**schake**, *v. a.*, *pp.* v. 570, *pret.* **schok**, vi. 2205.  
**schal**, *v.* 1, 3 *s. pres.* P. 15, 93, i. 1711, iv. 377, 2823, 2 *s.* **schalt**, P. 589, *pl.* **schulle(n)**, i. 2251, 2558, **schul(l)**, i. 3197, 3246, v. 1914, **schule**, v. 3529, **schol**, P. 1034, *pret.* **scholde(n)**, P. 43, 153, 275, 362, 421, &c., **schold**, ii. 578, **schulde(n)**, P. 317, v. 5357, viii. 2961, (**schuldyn**, viii. 3004): shall, must, may.  
**schale**, *s.* iv. 566, (nut) shell.  
**schallemele**, *s.* viii. 2483, shawm.  
**schame**, *s.* i. 274, 1668, ii. 3062, 3355, iv. 871.  
**schame**, *v. a.* iii. 2200, v. 723.  
**schameles**, *a.* vii. 1964, free from shame.

**schanckes**, *s.* *pl.* iv. 2725, legs.  
**schape(n)**, *v. a. n. and refl.* P. 387, i. 297, 820, 1514, 1551, 3342, *pret.* **schop**, P. 706, ii. 2855, iii. 1206, **schope**, v. 4278, *pl.* **schope(n)**, i. 1105, 2627, *pp.* **schape(n)**, i. 1195, 1509, 1544; **shape**, appoint, contrive, prepare, bring about.  
**schaply**, *a.* ii. 3112.  
**schappe**, *s.* i. 1736, shape.  
**schapthe**, *s.* vi. 785, shape.  
**scharnebud**, *s.* ii. 413, dung-beetle.  
**scharpe**, *a.* P. 396, iii. 252, iv. 2417, vii. 170.  
**scharpnesse**, *s.* P. 1084.  
**schave**, *v. a.* viii. 1303.  
**schawe**, *s.* iv. 1293, v. 6133, wood.  
**sche**, *pron.* P. 853, i. 148, &c., **scheo**, i. 160.  
**schede(n)**, *v. a.* iii. 2243, vii. 3493, *pret.* **shedde**, PP. 148, *pp.* **schad**, iv. 1661, PP. 105.  
**schedinge**, *s.* iii. 1105, 2534.  
**scheete**, *s.* viii. 1194.  
**scheld**, *see* **schield**.  
**schelle**, *s.* vi. 2228, vii. 615, viii. 2120.  
**schenche**, *v. a.* ii. 3098, pour out.  
**schent**, *v. a. pp.* i. 1292, iii. 450, iv. 554, v. 728, harmed, ruined.  
**schep**, **schiep**, *s.* P. 399, v. 3271, *pl.* P. 414, iv. 2894.  
**scheperdesse**, *s.* v. 6115.  
**schepherde**, *s.* P. 394, 1064, iii. 2257.  
**scherved**, (*pp.*) *a.* v. 3707.  
**scherdes**, *s.* *pl.* vi. 1985, scales.  
**schere**, *v. a.* v. 4001, *pp.* **schore**, i. 1751, cut, crop.  
**scheres**, *s.* *pl.* v. 5691.  
**scherte**, *s.* i. 2171, ii. 2243, **schortes** (*pl.*), i. 2179.  
**schete**, *v. n.*, 3 *s. pres.* **schet**, ii. 2957, *pret.* **schote**, v. 4862, shoot.  
**schette**, *v. a.* ii. 2130, *pret.* **schette**, vi. 1587, *pp.* **schet**, ii. 2807, iii. 2043; *v. n.* iii. 1453, vii. 4623: shut.  
**schewe(n)**, *v. a.* P. 112, i. 84, 1035, ii. 603, *imperat.* **schew**, **schew**, i. 185, v. 6190, show; *v. n.* P. 46, 834, i. 626, ii. 1921, iii. 809, 857, appear, be evident.  
**schield**, **scheld**, *s.* i. 421, 1998, 2470, ii. 2594.  
**schiep**, *see* **schep**.  
**schifte**, *v. a.* iii. 1310, v. 3166, 4668, vii. 1518, viii. 556, arrange, dispose of, turn.  
**schilde**, **schylde**, *v. a.* P. 67\*, ii. 714, iv. 2753, v. 6334, vi. 1244; *v. n.* 266: protect, defend.

**schip**, *s.* i. 1065, ii. 24, **be schipe**, *P.* 1016, iv. 731, **to (into) schipe**, i. 1164, ii. 1108, **to schip**, viii. 1573.  
**schipman**, *s.* i. 500, iii. 991, viii. 1084.  
**schode**, *v. a.* i. 1750, vii. 1534, **divide**.  
**schof**, *see* **schowve**.  
**scholde**, *see* **schal**.  
**schoo**, **schō**, *s.* *P.* 356, vii. 4306, **shoe**.  
**schort**, *a.* i. 1687, iv. 1709, **schorte**, vii. 5201, *pl.* **schorte**, ii. 903, iii. 874.  
**schortly**, **schortli**, *adv.* i. 1690, v. 2603.  
**schote**, *s.* ii. 2238, **shot**.  
**schour**, *s.* vii. 290, *pl.* **schoures**, v. 4173, 7829, **shoures**, *P.* 938.  
**schovels**, *s.* v. 16, **shovel**.  
**schowve**, *v. a.* ii. 2340, *pret.* **schof**, ii. 174, iv. 108, *pp.* **schoven**, vii. 3280, **push**, **thrust**.  
**schreden**, *v. a.* i. 2837, **tear**.  
**schrewe**, *s.* iii. 798, 2220, v. 959, vii. 44, **rascal**, **scoundrel**.  
**schrewed**, *a.* vi. 2098, **villainous**.  
**schrifte**, *s.* i. 197, 818, v. 1385.  
**schrive(n)**, **schryve**, *v. a. n. and refl.* i. 208, 219, 546, iii. 1127, v. 7101, *pret.* **schrof**, iv. 519, *imperat.* **scrif (thee)**, i. 587, 2718; *pp.* **schrive(n)**, i. 190, 2383, iv. 1772, **schryve**, viii. 2969, **confess**, **hear in confession**, **absolve**.  
**schrunken**, *pp.* i. 1683.  
**schryhte**, *v. n. pret.* viii. 1383, **shrieked**.  
**schuldre**, *s.* *P.* 607, i. 1687, ii. 2220, **shoulder**.  
**schydes**, *s. pl.* iii. 1033, **split pieces (of wood)**.  
**schylde**, *see* **schilde**.  
**schyne**, *v. n.* iii. 1308, iv. 980, *pret.* **schon**, iv. 3551.  
**science**, *s.* iv. 974, 2413, *pl.* **sciences**, iv. 2666, vii. 27.  
**scisme**, *s.* *P.* 348, **schism**.  
**sclaudre**, **selandre**, **sklaudre**, *s.* ii. 881, v. 712, 5536, 7570, vii. 3083.  
**sclaudre**, *v. a. n.* 864, **slander**.  
**scole**, *s.* *P.* 199, i. 2665, ii. 436, iv. 3373, **school**.  
**scomerfare**, *s.* viii. 1391, **piracy**.  
**score**, *s.* ii. 500, iv. 1356, 2891.  
**scorn**, *s.* viii. 2397, **to scorn**, **to skorne**, v. 696, 6931, vii. 3992.  
**scorne**, *v. a. v.* 6217.  
**Scorpio**, vii. 1123 ff., 1259, 1403, **tall of Scorpio**, vii. 1426.  
**scorpioun (-on)**, *s.* vii. 1124, 4091.  
**scottes**, *pl.* ii. 929.  
**scribe**, *s.* *P.* 305.

**scripture**, *P.* 872, iv. 2626, **writing**.  
**scrivein**, *s.* iii. 1070, **writer**.  
**sculpture**, *s.* iv. 2422, vi. 1343.  
**se**, **sen**, *v. a. n.* *P.* 28, 134, 610, i. 1132, (see, *PP.* 281 ff., 382), 2 *s. pres.* **sest**, ii. 1059, 3 *s.* **seth**, i. 2804, ii. 224, *pret.* **sih**, **syh**, *P.* 603, 617, i. 795, &c., **sawh**, i. 138, iii. 1604, **sihe**, v. 5810, (sigh, viii. 2962), 2 *s.* **sihe**, ii. 234, iii. 2629, *pl.* **syhe(n)**, **sihen**, iii. 970, vii. 1798, 4745, *pret. subj.* **syhe**, **sihe**, i. 664, 904, *imperat.* **seth**, ii. 861, *pres. part.* **seende**, ii. 1808, *pp.* **san**, *P.* 342, **sene**, *P.* 789, 936, **seene**, iv. 1492, **seie**, ii. 967, v. 2374, **sein**, **seyn**, i. 2883, ii. 170, iii. 757.  
**seal**, *s.* i. 1474, 1487, ii. 3217.  
**seche**, *v. a. n.* *P.* 173, 899, i. 570, 1285, 2278, ii. 3219, iv. 3463, (3 *pl. pres.* **sechin**, viii. 3036), **sieche**, viii. 2911, **seke**, **sieke**, i. 1074, 3072, ii. 928, 1455, iv. 1604, *pret.* **soghte(n)**, i. 425, 1144, ii. 2474, iv. 2163, **soughte**, *P.* 197, v. 3933, **sowhte**, iv. 3548, *pp.* **soght**, ii. 3128, **sought**, v. 4003, *imperat.* **sech**, v. 7605; **al to seche**, **noght to s.**, &c., i. 924, ii. 44, 2276, iv. 2963.  
**seconde**, *a.* i. 2601, ii. 1, iv. 2479, v. 2127, **seconde**, i. 1233, v. 2129, **following**, **second**.  
**secre**, *a.* ii. 2132, **in secre**, i. 617.  
**secret**, *s.* vi. 1573.  
**secretaire**, *s.* iv. 888, **private counsellor**.  
**seete**, *s.* *P.* 349, v. 1643, vii. 1572, **religion**, **kind**.  
**seculers**, *s. pl.* i. 648.  
**sed**, *s.* iv. 3007, v. 4014, **seed**.  
**Sedeahie**, vii. 2566 ff.  
**see**, **se**, *s.* (1) *P.* 306, v. 1944, vi. 1037, **seat**.  
**see**, **se**, *s.* (2) *P.* 933, i. 486, ii. 145, 2531, iii. 86, **sea**: **see foul**, vi. 2129, *cp.* **se-foul**.  
**seewolf**, *s.* v. 4138, **shark**.  
**sefne**, *see* **sevene**.  
**sefnthe**, *a.* vii. 1363.  
**sefoul**, *s.* viii. 2654.  
**Segne**, v. 1113.  
**seie** (1), **sein**, **sain**, *v. a. n. inf.* *P.* 431, i. 281, 2760, (seye, seyn, *P.* 86, viii. 2966), **say**, **sai**, i. 2750, v. 5198, 2 *s. pres.* **seist**, **saiet**, i. 176, ii. 555, 3 *s.* **seith**, *P.* 43, &c., 3 *pl.* **sein**, **sain**, *P.* 12, 56, **seie**, *P.* 442, *pret.* **seide**, **saide**, i. 153, 768, 2740, 3218, **sayde**, v. 1756, **seid**, i. 3188, v. 4309, *imperat.* **sey**, **sei**, **say**, **sai**, i. 184, 1822, 2418, ii. 1871, iii. 932, **seie**,

- vii. 4084, *pp.* seid, said, P. 335, i. 585, 1229, 3323, iii. 931, vii. 150; *as who* seith, P. 43, i. 2794: say, name.
- seie (2), *see* se.
- seil, s. i. 704, 1165, ii. 2152, iii. 1555, sail, v. 3313, 3923, sail.
- seile(n), saile, v. n. i. 511, iv. 1741, v. 991, *pres. part.* sailende, seilende, ii. 1210, iv. 733, v. 5407, seilinge, i. 524.
- sein, *pp.* *see* se.
- seint, a. ii. 3335, *fem.* seinte, iv. 964.
- seint, s. viii. 2778, *pl.* seints, v. 1813.
- seintefie, v. a. vii. 4247, viii. 1269.
- seisine, *see* sesine.
- sek, siek, a. i. 703, 1703, ii. 15, v. 586, viii. 873, sik, v. 616, *def.* sike, vi. 1012, *pl.* seke, P. 914; *as subst.* the sike, ii. 1202, *pl.* seke, ii. 3163, sieke, viii. 2368: sick, sick man.
- seke, *see* seche.
- seker, *see* siker.
- sekerliche, *see* sikerliche.
- sekernesse, *see* sikernesse.
- seknesse, s. P. 61, i. 2571, v. 410, sieknesse, i. 185, 713, siknesse, ii. 3249, iii. 280, sickness.
- selde(n), *adv.* P. 787, iii. 1636, iv. 61, sielde(n), iv. 1472, 2282, v. 4420; sielde whanne, iv. 2734, sielde wher, vii. 4240, selde if, v. 6595, seldom whanne . . . if, vii. 4328: seldom.
- seli, a. iii. 658, simple.
- selk, s. iv. 857, v. 5770, silk.
- selle, v. a. ii. 3061, v. 243, *pret.* solde, iii. 2546, *pp.* sold, ii. 1662.
- Selonites, vii. 4515.
- selve, a. i. 200, ii. 51, 2064; *as subst.* that selve, i. 1247.
- selver, s. P. 608, iv. 2460, viii. 823.
- Sem, vii. 546, 557, viii. 83.
- semblable, a. i. 646, iii. 2595, v. 1545.
- semblance, semblaunce, s. ii. 3273, iv. 379, v. 1534, 6674.
- semblant, s. P. 114, i. 1213, ii. 1912, vi. 707, appearance; feigne semblant, ii. 187, 2015, 2196, make pretence.
- seme(n), v. n. and *impers.* P. 559, i. 614, 903, sieme, i. 1891, viii. 2386, me (him, you) semeth, iii. 2344, iv. 965, 1774.
- Semiramis, iii. 1332, v. 1432.
- semly, semlich, a. i. 1899, viii. 708.
- sempiterne, a. vii. 104.
- senatour, s. ii. 1195, 1330.
- sende, v. a. n. P. 86, 161, *pret.* sende, P. 1013, i. 851, 992, sente, i. 3095, ii. 613, v. 1072, *pp.* sent, P. 588, send, v. 5236.
- Senec, ii. 3095, v. 7735.
- senne, sinne, s. P. 457, 920, 1017, i. 2929, ii. 3063, iii. 2033, 2546, v. 1739 ff., (synne, viii. 3040), sin.
- sensible, a. vii. 127.
- sentence, s. i. 2153, ii. 2978, 3417, vii. 1620.
- Septembre, vii. 1117, viii. 2845.
- Septemtrion, vii. 1264.
- sepulture, s. i. 2349, iii. 2015.
- Serapis, v. 1564 ff.
- serpent, s. i. 396, *pl.* serpents, viii. 2574.
- servage, s. ii. 2981, vii. 4096, servitude.
- servant, s. i. 251, ii. 3300, *pl.* servants, iii. 18, servantes, vii. 2333\*.
- serve(n), v. a. P. 707, i. 737, 860, 2521, ii. 35, 1297, iii. 502, iv. 531; v. n. i. 169, 1245, 2131, iii. 1291, iv. 1407, (3 s. *pres.* servith, viii. 3026).
- servicable, a. v. 762.
- service, servise, s. P. 78\*, i. 176, ii. 2971, iv. 1036.
- servitude, s. v. 1655.
- seze, v. a. i. 1697, 2479, 3357, ii. 3009, iii. 2646, seize, take possession of, deliver as a possession.
- sesine, seisine, s. v. 5527, vii. 564, possession.
- sesoun (-on), s. iii. 693, vii. 1014, season.
- set, s. vii. 4913, setting (of the sun).
- sete, seete, s. v. 846, vi. 1041, vii. 2900, seat.
- sette(n), v. a. n. P. 357, i. 2, 3 s. *pres.* set, i. 637, 1724, sett, viii. 3089, *pret.* sette, P. 41\*, i. 201, ii. 2226, vii. 4624, set, ii. 2220, v. 3691, *imperat.* sett, viii. 2095, *pp.* set, sett, P. 116, 245, i. 1486, iii. 647, sette, vi. 10, sete, vii. 2864; sette . . . of, v. 2498, set . . . therby, viii. 2194; set, appoint, suppose, account, plant, make attack.
- sevene, num. P. 804, i. 577, ii. 320, sefne, i. 2916, vii. 692.
- seventy, num. viii. 91.
- Severus, vii. 4575.
- sewe, s. v. 5900, seasoned dish.
- sex, sexe, num. v. 7246, vii. 5347, viii. 126.
- sexe, a. vii. 908, 1082.
- sextenthe, a. P. 25.
- sextiene, num. vii. 1055.
- seyinge, s. viii. 3081\*.
- Seyix, *see* Ceix.
- shoures, *see* schoures.
- sibb, a. viii. 1703, related.



- Sibelez, Sibele, *v.* 1135 ff.  
 Sibille, *v.* 7454.  
 sibrede, *s.* viii. 139, 266, kindred.  
 sich, *see* such.  
 Sieulus, vii. 3296.  
 side, syde, *s.* P. 28, 146, 392, 1085, i. 2381, 3424, iii. 1503, iv. 1308, 3227, (ride) on side, iv. 1311.  
 Sidoyne, vii. 4499.  
 sieche, *see* seche.  
 siege, *s.* i. 1082, iii. 1759.  
 sieged, *v.* a. *pp.* iii. 2046, besieged.  
 siek, siekness, *see* sek, sekness.  
 sieke, *v.* *see* seche.  
 sieelde(n), *see* seelde(n).  
 sighe, syghen, *v.* n. iv. 3170, v. 3670, 5729, sigh.  
 sighte, *see* sihte.  
 signal, *s.* vi. 1668, sign.  
 signe, *s.* i. 2544, iii. 2227; (of the zodiac) iv. 3222, v. 752, vii. 695, 968 ff.  
 signet, *s.* v. 5775.  
 signifie, signifie, *v.* a. P. 885, iii. 814, v. 914, vii. 4717.  
 sihte, syhte, *s.* i. 427, 437, 665, 1728, 2221, ii. 3072, sighte, vii. 1228, viii. 2950, sight.  
 slk, *see* sek.  
 sike, syke, *v.* n. i. 697, 1726, 2996, 3140, ii. 1350, iv. 1150, sigh.  
 silar, seker, *a.* P. 568, ii. 2422, 3153, iv. 1003, v. 664, 2427; *superl.* sikereest, ii. 2469, the sekereste, vi. 1599; *adv.* i. 3048, 3339, iv. 911: sure, secure; surely.  
 silarliche, sekerliche, *adv.* i. 1564, 2145, silarly, iii. 1427, silarly, iv. 2498, surely, assuredly.  
 sikerness, sekerness, *s.* i. 1890, iv. 937, v. 205, vi. 232, security.  
 sikness, *see* sekness.  
 silence, *s.* i. 1302, cillence, iv. 3206, vi. 1872.  
 sillable, *s.* viii. 2049.  
 silogims, *s.* viii. 2708.  
 Silvestre, P. 742, ii. 3351 ff., PP. 346.  
 Simon (Magus), P. 204, 241, 439 ff., ii. 3055.  
 simple, *a.* iv. 1187, v. 2589, viii. 3052\*.  
 simplece (-esse), *s.* P. 217, i. 832, 2099, (symplece, P. 76\*, symplease, viii. 3134), simplicity, humility.  
 sinful(l), *a.* iii. 2569, PP. 45; *as subst.* iv. 3490.  
 singe, *v.* n. i. 111, ii. 3012, iii. 330, *pres.* song, P. 1057, ii. 1080, sang, i. 2732, *pl.* songs, i. 2034, sunge, *v.* 1468, *pp.* sunge, ii. 1300.  
 singulier, singuler, *a.* vii. 1996, 2931, private.  
 snake, *v.* n. i. 1309, v. 2938, snake, iii. 1628, *pres.* sank, ii. 2070, *pp.* sunke, vi. 1115.  
 sinne, *see* senn.  
 sire, *s.* P. 722, i. 2878, ii. 54, 2710, lord, sir.  
 Sirenes, *pl.* i. 484.  
 sithe, sythe, *s.* v. 3590, ofte sithe (sithes), fulofte sythe, &c. i. 118, 318, 1400, ii. 658, iii. 458, time, times.  
 siththe(n), *adv.* P. 832, i. 1842, vi. 2351; *conj.* siththe, sith, sithe(n), P. 973, i. 13, iii. 66, vi. 1073, sithen that, i. 2244: since.  
 sitte, *v.* n. P. 337, i. 2397, 2 *s.* *pres.* sist, v. 5742, sitteest, vii. 2462, 3 *s.* sit, sitt, i. 1317, v. 6121, sitteth, iv. 2724, vii. 2286, *pres.* sat, i. 1675, iv. 653, satte, vii. 2282, *pl.* seten, i. 2524, ii. 2913, iii. 2163, siete(n), iii. 1809, v. 3339, seete, vi. 1174, sit, be seated: *impers.* (it) sit, i. 273, 745, 1211, iii. 1674, sitte, viii. 2428, sits, is fitting.  
 sive, *s.* iii. 433, sieve.  
 skales, scales, *s.* *pl.* ii. 3456, v. 4128.  
 skar, *s.* P. 507, crack.  
 skarcete, *s.* v. 4857, stinginess.  
 skars, scars, *a.* v. 4712, 4728, sparing.  
 skarsc, *v.* n. viii. 1146, diminish.  
 skarsly, scarsly, *adv.* iv. 552, v. 4412.  
 skarness, scarsness, *s.* v. 394, 4674 ff., 4740, stinginess.  
 skiers, *v.* (*ref.*) i. 478, ii. 472, v. 1424, defend.  
 skile, *s.* P. 380, 402, i. 36, 1866, iii. 2165, skyle, iii. 2360, *pl.* skiles, ii. 2770, reason, reasoning: *asa* iii. 397, reasonable.  
 skille, *v.* n. viii. 2047, reason.  
 skyn, skyn, *s.* i. 1681, v. 2469, 6862.  
 skippe, *v.* n. iv. 2784, vii. 345, *pres.* skipte, iv. 2110, v. 4997.  
 sklaundre, *see* solaundre.  
 skorne, *see* scorne.  
 skulke, *v.* a. iv. 2720.  
 skulle, *s.* i. 2544 ff.  
 sky, *s.* i. 2001, iii. 984, iv. 825, 1436, viii. 2942, *pl.* skyes, v. 3993, cloud, sky.  
 skyn, *see* skyn.  
 slades, *s.* *pl.* iv. 2727.  
 slake, *v.* a. iv. 2812, viii. 1983, slacken, appease; *v.* n. PP. 220.

- slawhte**, *s.* iii. 2058, 2483, slaying.  
**sle(e)**, **alen**, *v. a. n.* i. 1439, 2590, iii. 261, 3 *s. pres.* **sleth**, ii. 2623, iii. 957, (**sleeth**, PP. 265), *pret.* **slowh**, **slouh**, **slow**, **slou**, i. 434, v. 3727, 4045, 5897, *pl.* **slowhe**, i. 377, v. 1722, **slowen**, i. 1181, *subj.* **slowe**, PP. 132, *pp.* **slain**, **slayn**, P. 685, i. 527, 1427, **slawe**, i. 514, ii. 770.  
**sleihte**, **sleyhte**, *s.* i. 468, 688, 797, 1085, 1111, **sleighte**, iv. 2082, 2123, v. 2111, *pl.* **sleyhtes**, ii. 1873, skill, device, trickery.  
**slep**, *s.* i. 155, 1782, **a slepe**, v. 2177, to **slepe**, ii. 3333, to **slep**, iv. 2819, **Slep**, **Slepes hous**, god of **Slep**, iv. 2973 ff.  
**slepe(n)**, *v. n.* P. 310, 476, i. 884, *pret.* **slepte**, P. 595, **slep**, v. 2762, *pp.* **slepe**, iv. 2914, v. 158.  
**slepi**, *a.* iv. 2731, 2848, vi. 1405.  
**slider**, *a.* vi. 378, slippery.  
**slieve**, *s.* v. 2575, 7669.  
**slih**, *see* **slyh**.  
**slipte**, *v. n. pret.* iv. 2109.  
**slitte**, *s.* P. 338, cleft, separation.  
**slombre**, *v. n.* iv. 3032.  
**slow**, **slou**, **slowh**, **slouh**, *a.* iv. 54, 245, 1281, v. 1949, vii. 415, 761, *voc.* **slowe**, iv. 843, *pl. (as subst.)* **slowe**, iv. 137, 356, 1082; *superl.* **the sloweste**, iv. 1082.  
**slowh**, *s.* i. 2981, marsh.  
**slowthe**, **slouthe**, *s.* P. 321, 342, iii. 2758, iv. 3 &c., sloth.  
**slowthe**, *v. a.* iv. 19, lose by sloth; *v. n.* iv. 1796, 3420, be slothful.  
**sluggardie**, *s.* iv. 2714, 3177, **slugardie**, iv. 2752.  
**slyde(n)**, *v. n.* iv. 41, v. 4158, vi. 1792, vii. 4457.  
**slyh**, **slih**, *a.* P. 262, v. 2303, vii. 4936, *def.* **slyhe**, ii. 2374, **slyh**, ii. 2341, *pl.* **slyhe**, **slihe**, ii. 2199, v. 3213, vii. 3257\*; *superl. def.* **slyheste**, **slyeste**, i. 1442, ii. 2102: cunning.  
**slyhli (-ly)**, *adv.* i. 2629, v. 677, 7145\*.  
**slyke**, *v. a.* v. 7092\*, smoothe; *v. n.* v. 6634, flatter.  
**slym**, *s.* vii. 338.  
**slype**, *v. refl.* v. 6530, sneak along.  
**smal**, *a.* iv. 463, 1147, *def.* **smale**, v. 1990, *pl.* **smale**, P. 81, i. 1679; *as subst. pl.* P. 426: slender, small.  
**smale**, *adv.* v. 4535.  
**smaragdine**, *s.* vii. 840, emerald.  
**smarte**, *adv.* vii. 848, quickly.  
**smelle**, *v. n.* iv. 2546; *v. a.* vii. 2794.  
**smite**, *see* **smyte**.  
**smith**, *s.* v. 644, 962.  
**smok**, *s.* i. 2171.  
**smoke**, *s.* ii. 1556.  
**smyle**, *v. n.* ii. 1404, iv. 388, v. 3012.  
**smyte**, *v. a. n.* P. 424, iii. 910, 3 *s. pres.* **smit**, P. 1085, *pret. sing.* **smot**, i. 2003, 2342, ii. 874, iv. 3349, **smette**, ii. 2239, *pp.* **smite(n)**, iii. 911, v. 334, vii. 4695.  
**snake**, *s.* vii. 1010.  
**snoute**, *s.* iii. 128, 1400, iv. 2749.  
**snow**, *s.* vii. 293, viii. 2851, **snow whyt**, iii. 807.  
**so**, *adv.* P. 8, 29, i. 1695, ii. 139; **who so**, P. 1002, **how so**, i. 1455, **be so**, **so be**, i. 187, 1652, **up so doun**, ii. 1744, iii. 80, iv. 561.  
**sobbe(n)**, *v. n.* iii. 303, v. 5729.  
**sobbinge**, *s.* i. 2182.  
**sobre**, *a.* P. 239, iii. 140, viii. 2684, 2869.  
**sobre**, *v. a.* viii. 1700.  
**socour**, *s.* iii. 2670, v. 4953.  
**socoure**, *v. a.* i. 653, ii. 2882, iii. 328.  
**Socrates**, iii. 640, 701.  
**sode**, *pp.* v. 4281, boiled.  
**sodein**, *a.* P. 619, i. 1069, ii. 688, iii. 335, **soudein**, v. 4942, sudden: *adv.* iii. 862.  
**sodeinliche**, **soudeinliche**, *adv.* P. 503, i. 2963, v. 7830, vi. 211, **sodeinly (-li)**, P. 1038, i. 911, iv. 573, **soudeinly**, vi. 1423, (**sodeynly**, viii. 2961\*).\*  
**soffrance**, **suffrance**, *s.* P. 773, iii. 1639, 1672, v. 4267, (**suffraunce**, viii. 3022\*).\*  
**soffre**, **suffre**, *v. a. n.* P. 698, 788, i. 1371, 2380, 2570, 2941, ii. 206, 3023, v. 7378, 3 *s. pres.* **soffreth**, **soeffreth**, **suffreth**, iii. 2431, iv. 1428, v. 574, (1 *pl.* **soeffrin**, PP. 222); suffer, allow, leave, permit.  
**softe**, *a.* i. 619, 1220, 2564, **soft**, iii. 2734, *pl.* **softe**, i. 915, ii. 309; **the softe pas**, iii. 1386; gentle, quiet: *adv.* P. 476, i. 1725.  
**softly**, *adv.* iv. 2885.  
**sojorne**, **sojourne**, *v. n.* iv. 740, 3224, v. 1078, vii. 1173, viii. 1286, dwell, remain: *pp.* **sojorned**, vi. 1180, vii. 294, kept.  
**solas**, *s.* vii. 1900, pleasure.  
**soldan**, *see* **souldan**.  
**solein**, **soulein**, *a.* iii. 1220, iv. 448, vi. 135, *fem.* **soleine**, v. 1971, alone, lonely, strange.  
**solempne**, **sollempne**, *a.* v. 1317, vii. 4703, viii. 1561.

- solempnite, sollempnite**, *s.* i. 1157, iv. 3651, **solempnete, sollempnete**, iii. 2169, vi. 1825, vii. 2405, celebration, ceremony.  
**sollempneliche**, *adv.* viii. 1617.  
**solution**, *s.* iv. 2515.  
**Solyas, Solins**, iii. 2600, iv. 2410, Solinus.  
**som**, *a.* P. 6, i. 1499, v. 2469 ff., **som while, som time**, iii. 2624, iv. 649, viii. 3119, **som man**, vii. 643 f.; *pl.* **some**, i. 1265, **somme**, P. 355, **alle and some**, v. 7320, **som man**, P. 529, iii. 2113: *as subst.* **som**, vi. 384, *pl.* **some, somme**, P. 432, i. 2034 ff., ii. 1362, 2510, iii. 2112.  
**somdiel, somdel**, *a.* P. 613, iii. 697, iv. 800; *adv.* P. 286, 612, i. 1003: **some**, somewhat.  
**somer**, *s.* iv. 1091, viii. 2853, **somer dai**, ii. 732, **somer floures**, P. 937; summer.  
**somerfare**, *s.* viii. 2856, condition of summer.  
**somertide**, *s.* v. 6009, **somer tyde**, v. 6819.  
**somme**, *s.* iii. 2568, vii. 161, viii. 1119, sum.  
**somouna, sommona**, *v. a.* vii. 5182, viii. 1551, 1915, summon.  
**sompnolence**, *s.* iv. 2703, 2770 ff.  
**somtime**, *adv.* iv. 810 f., 1131, 2799, **somtyne**, iv. 3304, **som time, som tyme**, iv. 649, viii. 3119.  
**somwhat**, *pron.* i. 1297, iii. 2332, iv. 2829; *adv.* P. 19.  
**somwho**, *pron.* P. 345, **some one**.  
**sond**, *s.* v. 4009, vi. 1294, sand.  
**sonde**, *s.* ii. 324, 1567, iii. 247, iv. 799, viii. 1859, sending, message, decree.  
**sondre**, *v. n.*, **to sondre**, iii. 986, part asunder.  
**sondri, sondry**, P. 29, 501, i. 2530, ii. 1476, iii. 2210, v. 1458, **sundri**, v. 7437, separate, several, various.  
**sondrily**, *adv.* vii. 1305.  
**some**, *s.* P. 740, i. 206 &c., **to some**, v. 806; son.  
**some**, *adv.* i. 996, 1633, 2091, ii. 357, also **sons**, i. 3079; soon.  
**soned**, *see* **sonne**.  
**song**, *s.* ii. 3012, iv. 3346, **songe**, i. 2745, *pl.* **songes**, i. 2739.  
**sonne**, *s.* P. 919, iii. 1307, iv. 979, **sonne lyht**, v. 2790, **sonnes l.**, vi. 559, **sunne**, ii. 3452, sun.  
**sopp**, *s.* v. 3807.  
**sor**, *s.* P. 134, ii. 22, 2789, **sora**, v. 2858, hurt, sore.  
**sooreesse**, *s.* vi. 1434, viii. 2602.  
**soorie**, *s.* iv. 2077, v. 940, vi. 1289, 1768 ff.  
**sore**, *adv.* P. 598, i. 475, 2245, **sor**, vii. 5256.  
**sora**, *v. n.* i. 2672, vii. 1842, soar.  
**sora**, *s.*, *see* **sor**.  
**sorgful(l)**, *a.* ii. 1303, iii. 1481, sorrowful.  
**sorgfully, sorwfulli**, *adv.* i. 3173, ii. 69.  
**sorghe**, *see* **sorwe**.  
**sori, sorry**, *a.* i. 989, 2182, ii. 2307, iii. 2203, iv. 1347, wretched, unhappy.  
**sort**, *s.* i. 673, iv. 450, 3099, kind, lot.  
**Sortes**, viii. 2718.  
**sorwe**, *s.* i. 971, 1665, ii. 48, iv. 1212, **sorghe**, ii. 165, v. 513, sorrow.  
**sorwe**, *v. n.* i. 1814, 3182, ii. 745; *v. a.* PP. 104.  
**sostar**, *s.* i. 399, 3155, iii. 165, iv. 1383, **sustar**, iv. 1369, *genit.* **sostres**, v. 5726.  
**sosterhoda**, *s.* v. 4205, 5398, viii. 103, **sosterhiede**, viii. 96.  
**soth**, *a.* P. 12, 534, i. 1955, *def.* **sothe**, iii. 1270, *pl.* **sothe**, PP. 93, in **soth**, iii. 1078.  
**soth**, *s.* ii. 58, **the sothe**, P. 834, 850, i. 981, *pl.* **sothes**, vii. 2351, truth.  
**sothfastnesse**, *s.* i. 2268, vii. 3303\*.  
**sothly, sothli**, *adv.* ii. 522, iv. 3496, v. 244, **sothliche**, ii. 2021, truly.  
**sothsawe**, *s.* v. 2935, truth.  
**sothselere**, *s.* iii. 761, vii. 2348.  
**sothe**, *s.* i. 539, 2320, iv. 1887, **sothe**, vi. 223, folly.  
**soubgit**, *a.* P. 675, iv. 3523, v. 1726, **sougit**, vi. 1507; *subst.* **soubgit**, iii. 1277, v. 55, **subgit**, PP. 165: subject.  
**soubtil, soutil**, *a.* ii. 2125, iv. 2076, vi. 1443, **soubtiel**, v. 1026.  
**soubtilite**, *s.* ii. 2378, 3046, **soutilite**, v. 2138.  
**souche**, *v. n.* i. 314, ii. 1969, suspect.  
**soudein**, *see* **sodein**.  
**soudeinliche**, *see* **sodeinliche**.  
**sougit**, *see* **soubgit**.  
**souke**, *v. n.* ii. 3227, suck.  
**souldan, soldan**, *s.* ii. 613 ff., 2548 ff., vii. 1784.  
**souldour**, *s.* iii. 2356, soldier.  
**soule**, *s.* P. 453, *genit.* P. 749, ii. 1313.  
**soulein**, *see* **solein**.  
**soulphre**, *see* **sulphre**.  
**soun**, *s.* i. 2217, iii. 453, iv. 346, sound.  
**sound**, *a.* ii. 2223, v. 5371, vi. 1488, *pl.* **sounde**, v. 4164.



- soune**, *v. n.* i. 2807, ii. 2875, iii. 60; *v. a.* v. 5699, **soned**, (*pp.*), iv. 2644: sound.  
**soupe**, *v. n.* i. 2114, v. 6872, vii. 4766, have supper.  
**souper**, *s.* i. 2112, v. 3835, 6871, **souper time**, viii. 705.  
**soupertime**, *s.* viii. 711.  
**souple**, *v. a.* vii. 4890, (bend), influence.  
**sour**, *a.* vi. 1127, viii. 194, **the soure**, vi. 336; *adv.* **soure**, ii. 246.  
**source**, *s.* i. 148, iii. 611.  
**soure**, *v. a.* iii. 447, make sour; *v. n.* i. 1190, turn sour.  
**south**, *s.* vi. 862.  
**southward**, *adv.* vii. 1255.  
**soutillete**, *see* **soubtilite**.  
**soverein**, **sovereign**, *a.* P. 186, i. 1609, iv. 1518, vii. 1776, *fem.* **sovereine**, ii. 3507, vii. 1392, viii. 2530: *subst.* i. 862, v. 1133, **soverain**, v. 1464.  
**soverainete**, *s.* i. 1847.  
**sowe**, *v. a. n.* P. 320, v. 819, *pret.* **slew**, **sieu**, **sew**, iv. 1837, v. 1883, 3722, *pp.* **sowe**, ii. 2376.  
**sowinge**, *s.* v. 1228.  
**sowke**, *s.* ii. 1079, suck.  
**space**, *s.* iv. 615, 679, v. 3439, 3843.  
**spade**, *s.* v. 16.  
**Spaine**, **Spaigne**, i. 3390, ii. 1088, vi. 539, 569.  
**spanne**, *s.* i. 1112, span.  
**spare**, *v. a.* ii. 693, 3360, iii. 2220, PP. 19; *v. n.* iii. 2217, iv. 439, to spare, v. 7826.  
**sparinge**, *s.* v. 4785.  
**sparke**, *s.* ii. 2946, iv. 2995.  
**spatula**, *s.* vi. 1311.  
**specefie**, *see* **specifie**.  
**speche**, *s.* P. 174, i. 923, 1278, iv. 875, **spieche**, iv. 144.  
**specheles**, *a.* i. 1293, v. 3966.  
**special**, *a.*, in **special**, P. 120, i. 1501.  
**specifie**, **specefie**, *v. a. n.* P. 33, 866, i. 572, ii. 1407, iv. 2534.  
**sped**, *s.* i. 107, 1379, ii. 115, iv. 3450, **spied**, i. 1956, iv. 301, success, advantage.  
**spede**, **spiede**, *v. n.* i. 687, 796, 2654, iv. 2280, *pret.* **spedde**, iv. 2178, succeed, be advanced; *v. a. and refl.* ii. 103, 2232, iii. 2198, *pret.* **spedde**, ii. 624, v. 3866, *pp.* **sped**, i. 1557, vi. 2095, **spedd**, v. 1720, advance, help, hasten.  
**speke(n)**, *v. n.* P. 31, i. 10, 204, 1520, 3 *s. pres.* **spekth**, i. 656, *pret.* **spak**, i. 294, 818, *pl.* **spieke(n)**, ii. 959, 1456, 2264, v. 622, vii. 1611, **speeke**, viii. 749, *imperat.* **spek**, iii. 850, *pp.* **spoke**, i. 537, 1178, **speke**, v. 5035.  
**spekere**, *s.* v. 945, 1466.  
**spekinge**, *s.* v. 7129\*, *pl.* **spekynges**, i. 239.  
**spelle**, *v. a.* iv. 570.  
**spellinge**, *s.* v. 4067.  
**spende**, *v. a.* iv. 2591, *pret.* **spente**, v. 7787.  
**Spercheldos**, v. 4006.  
**spere**, *s.* i. 1998, ii. 3195.  
**Spertachus**, vii. 3418.  
**spiece**, *s.* vii. 888, *pl.* **spieces**, **spioes**, i. 2977, 3446, iii. 466, v. 5898, vi. 856, kind, spice.  
**spille**, *v. a.* i. 1192, 2850, vii. 3493, *pret.* **spilde**, ii. 948, **spilte**, iii. 1446, *pp.* **spilt**, ii. 3285, viii. 570, destroy, spill, waste; *v. n.* iii. 264, iv. 2586, perish, fail.  
**spinne**, *v. a. n.* v. 1283, *pp.* **sponne**, vi. 2381, PP. 299.  
**spire**, *v. n.* ii. 1146, 1999; *v. a.* viii. 1472: inquire, inquire for.  
**spirit**, *s.* ii. 3137, iv. 2364, viii. 2590, *pl.* **spirits**, iv. 2464.  
**spirital**, **spiritiel**, *a.* ii. 2987, v. 1915; *as subst.* P. 855, ii. 3492.  
**splen**, *s.* vii. 449 ff.  
**Spodius**, v. 4817.  
**spoke**, *s.* vii. 815.  
**spore**, *s.* P. 1084, i. 2301, iii. 1235, spur.  
**sporne**, *v. a.* iv. 2115, vi. 429, kick against; *v. n.* iv. 1279, vi. 464, vii. 4739, stumble.  
**spot**, *s.* iv. 609, PP. 366.  
**spousaile**, *s.* ii. 642, *pl.* **spousailles**, viii. 975.  
**spouse**, *s.* iii. 658, v. 6017.  
**spouse**, *v. a.* vi. 497.  
**spousebreche**, *s.* iii. 2158, v. 6014, adultery.  
**spoute**, *s.* vii. 1193.  
**sprantlende**, *v. n. pres. part.* iv. 111.  
**spriede**, **sprede**, **spreede**, *v. a. n.* i. 2824, ii. 504, vi. 895, 3 *s. pres.* **sprat**, ii. 417, **sprede**, v. 7679, *pret.* **spradde**, ii. 684, iv. 1526, v. 1458, **sprede**, v. 6891, *pp.* **sprad**, iv. 3082, **sprede**, v. 2316; spread.  
**spring**, *s.* v. 6239, **daies spring**, iv. 2852.  
**springe(n)**, *v. n.* P. 347, i. 353, iii. 428, *pret.* **sprong**, i. 2306, iii. 1921, *pl.* **spronge**, i. 2085, **sprungen**, v. 1595, *pp.* **sprongen**, vii. 4679.  
**spume**, *s.* v. 4122.  
**square**, *a.* vi. 1327.

- squeler, s. ii. 254, *pl.* *squeler*, v. 2275.  
 stable (dore), s. iv. 903.  
 stable, a. iv. 268, 444, vii. 4202; *adv.* iv. 3671.  
 stable, v. a. PP. 145, set firmly.  
 stacion, s. vii. 204, place.  
 staf, s. P. 420, v. 536, 4991.  
 stage, s. P. 603, iv. 2977, vii. 741.  
 stake, s. ii. 3094, iv. 2431, vi. 191.  
 stalke, v. n. i. 910, ii. 828, v. 3861, 6498, go stealthily.  
 stalle, s. PP. 383, place.  
 stalle, v. a. vii. 1162.  
 stalon, s. viii. 160, stallion.  
 stanche, staunche, v. a. P. 345, i. 2312, 2838, 3308, vi. 303, 422, quench, satisfy, heal.  
 stare, v. n. iv. 1832, vi. 178.  
 stark, *adv.* iv. 3082.  
 stat, s. ii. 2992, iii. 1998, (*staat*, viii. 2990): *cp.* *astat*.  
 statue, s. P. 891.  
 stature, s. i. 2166, 3135, iv. 744, vii. 981, stature, form; vi. 1524, statue.  
 statut, s. ii. 1741, v. 4551, viii. 360.  
 stede, s. (1) P. 274, 1074, i. 842, iii. 923, iv. 3483, *pl.* *stedes*, iv. 718, v. 2087, place; in stede of, P. 128, 396, i. 1669, in the stede, ii. 2684, in hire stede, i. 2602, iii. 1558.  
 stede (2), *see* *stiede*.  
 stedefast, a. vii. 906.  
 stel, *see* *stiel*.  
 stole, v. a. n. iv. 3333, v. 207, 3873, *pres.*  
 stal, stall, iv. 3351, v. 3900, 6750, *pp.*  
 stole(n), iv. 902, v. 6558, steal.  
 Stellibon, i. 398.  
 stelthe, s. i. 644, v. 6296, 6495 ff.  
 stepmoder, s. i. 1844.  
 stere, v. a. ii. 447, iii. 137, iv. 337, 2085, 3124, v. 1854; v. n. v. 3064: stir, move.  
 steringe, s. ii. 3141, motive.  
 sterne, a. i. 2127, iii. 2444, iv. 2065, sturne, viii. 403.  
 sterre, s. iv. 1348, v. 879, 912, vii. 1303 ff.  
 sterred, a. vii. 1060, viii. 2942.  
 sterreles, a. vii. 1024, 1126.  
 sterrelht, s. v. 3958, 6508, *sterre lyht*, i. 1168.  
 sterte, v. n. iv. 336, vi. 59, vii. 3656, *pres.*  
 sterte, ii. 850, iv. 2102, *pp.* *stert*, i. 372, start, rush, move.  
 sterve(n), v. n. i. 3263, ii. 36, iv. 797, *pres. sing.* *starr*, ii. 885, *pp.* *sterve(n)*, iii. 1509, v. 1999; die.  
 stevano, s. i. 493, 3025, iv. 847, voice, promise.  
 steward, *see* *stieward*.  
 steayne, v. ii. 1963, stain.  
 sticke, s. v. 4959, 5054, 5972.  
 stiede, stede, s. i. 2508, iv. 901, vi. 1280, steed.  
 stiel, s. P. 611, vi. 1814, stel, iv. 2425, steel.  
 stiere, s. i. 560, 2943, ii. 709, helm, guidance.  
 stiere, v. a. P. 234, 1088, i. 506, 1064, 2394; v. n. iii. 993.  
 stiereles, a. ii. 1393, without rudder.  
 stieresman, s. v. 3122.  
 stieward, steward, ii. 1091, 2760, v. 2669 ff., vii. 3948.  
 Stige, v. 1113, Styx.  
 stigh, *see* *styh*.  
 stike, v. n. iii. 1631, iv. 2723, stick.  
 stille, s. i. 8.  
 stille, a. i. 1289, iii. 932, 2738, iv. 3009, silent, quiet: *adv.* P. 478, i. 886, 952, 1794, 2617, iii. 1719, quietly, in silence, always.  
 stille, v. a. P. 61\*, vii. 1583, viii. 2636, keep still, silence, satisfy.  
 Stinfalides, v. 1019.  
 stinge, v. a. vii. 1048.  
 stink, s. iv. 2557.  
 stinte(n), v. n. iii. 1612, iv. 3453, *pres.*  
 stinte, ii. 1132, *imperat.* *stynt*, viii. 2284, cease; v. a. iv. 132, vi. 2005, make to cease.  
 stock, s. iii. 585, v. 1513, viii. 239, stok, iv. 2868.  
 stod, s. vii. 3345, viii. 161, stud.  
 stoke(n), v. a. *pp.* i. 538, iv. 584, vii. 5019, shut.  
 stol, s. vii. 3954, *pl.* *stoles*, P. 336, iv. 626, stool.  
 stomak, stomach, s. v. 1487, vi. 162, vii. 479.  
 stomble, v. n. iv. 621.  
 ston, s. P. 618, i. 1794, iv. 2523 ff., *pl.*  
 stones, P. 953, i. 2537.  
 stonde, v. n. P. 84, i. 428, 1313, 3233, 3 s. *pres.* *stant*, P. 30, 118, 170, &c., *standt*, v. 5215, *pres. subj.* *stonde*, P. 481, i. 1458, *stond*, i. 3416, *pres.* *stod*, P. 95, 214, ii. 2513, (*stood*, viii. 3004\*), *pl.*  
 stode(n), P. 50, 233, 798, 3 s. *pres. subj.*  
 stode, P. 41, iii. 1580, (3 *pl.* *stodyn*, viii. 3050), *imperat.* *stond*, iv. 3244, *pp.* *stonde(n)*, i. 2930, vii. 2629; stand, remain, depend.

stoppe(n), *v. a.* i. 475, 522, *v.* 3516.  
 stor, *s.* ii. 2363, store.  
 storie, *s.* v. 6002.  
 stormes, *s. pl.* i. 2987, *v.* 3298.  
 stormy, *a.* P. 938, iii. 686.  
 storve, *see* sterve.  
 stounde, *s.* i. 1425, ii. 2, 877, iv. 3632, time, period.  
 stoute, *a. (pl.)*, *v.* 3507, 7282.  
 straght, *adv.* P. 1044, ii. 1482, strawht, strauht, *v.* 3327, 3665.  
 straied, *pp.* viii. 2860.  
 strange, *a.* P. 604, i. 1416, 3029, ii. 2060.  
 strange, *v. a.* iv. 1489, *v.* 1890, 6040; *v. n.* v. 4103: estrange, change; grow strange.  
 strangle, *v. a.* v. 6531, vii. 3323\*.  
 Strangulio, viii. 545, 1290 ff.  
 strauht, *a.* vi. 772, straight.  
 strauht, strawht, *adv.* *see* straght.  
 straw, *see* stree.  
 strecoche, *v. a. and refl.* i. 1, 622, *pret.* strawhte, strauhte, ii. 1056, iii. 1407, *v.* 5029, straghte, i. 2820, viii. 1150, stretch, direct; *v. n. pret.* strawhte, strauhte, straghte, i. 2820, iii. 1939, *v.* 3338, 3923, reach, go.  
 stree, stre, *s.* iii. 85, 667, iv. 1716, straw, *v.* 2310, *pl.* stres, i. 2993, straw.  
 streit, *a.* v. 7655, close.  
 streite, streyte, *adv.* ii. 237, 1638, *v.* 261, vi. 1374, near, closely, strictly.  
 streite, *v. a.* v. 6380, diminish.  
 strem, *s.* P. 509, ii. 195, iv. 2730, stream.  
 strengere, strengest, *see* strong.  
 strengthe, *s.* P. 704, i. 787, ii. 2413, vi. 1595, strength, force, stronghold.  
 strengthe(n), *v. a.* ii. 1077, 3157, vi. 1598, vii. 2546, strengthen.  
 strete, *s.* i. 938, iii. 1338, street.  
 streyte, *see* streite.  
 strif, *s.* P. 248, 993, iii. 650.  
 strike, *v. a.* v. 3318; *v. n.* viii. 1891.  
 strok, *s.* P. 426, iv. 2099, *v.* 2565.  
 stronde, *s.* i. 1169, ii. 758, iv. 741, shore.  
 strong, *a.* P. 716, ii. 1740, *v.* 7377, *def.* stronge, P. 314, *v.* 2050, *pl.* i. 1155, ii. 48, iii. 1112, iv. 2103; *comp.* strengere, vii. 4087; *superl.* strengest, vi. 1593: *as subst.* the stronge, P. 615, vii. 4296.  
 strowed, *v. a. pp.* iv. 3022, strewn.  
 stryve, *v. n.* iii. 26, 1651, PP. 73.  
 studie, *v. n.* P. 323, i. 3091, vii. 2245.  
 studie, *s.* iv. 2662, *v.* 3090.  
 studious, *a.* vii. 759.  
 sturdi, *a.* viii. 403, harsh.

sturne, *see* sterne.  
 stwes, *s. pl.* viii. 484, stews.  
 styh, *v. n.* 3 *s. pret.* ii. 3401, *v.* 3991, (stigh, PP. 177), ascended.  
 subfumigacioun, *s.* vi. 1310.  
 subgit, *see* soubgit.  
 subjeccioun (-on), *s.* P. 683, i. 2857, ii. 3272, *v.* 6409.  
 sublimacion, *s.* iv. 2517.  
 substance (-aunce), *s.* P. 199, iv. 2465, 2563, PP. 314.  
 substancial, *a.* vii. 226.  
 substitucion, *s.* vii. 2769.  
 such, *pron. a.* P. 8, i. 175, 1624, ii. 2241, iii. 2421, swich, *v.* 377, swiche, iv. 1429, sloh, viii. 1110, *pl.* suche, i. 853, swiche, ii. 504: *as subst.* swich, ii. 566, *pl.* suche, swiche, P. 233, 299, iv. 1236: *as adv.* such, P. 735.  
 sucre, *s.* i. 1705, *v.* 2833, sugar.  
 suete, *see* swete.  
 sufficoance, *s.* i. 4, 1915, *v.* 4819, ability, sufficiency.  
 sufficient, *a.* i. 1183, ii. 2700, iii. 1779, viii. 2696, (suffisant, viii. 3099), sufficient.  
 suffice, suffice, *v. n.* P. 324, i. 1399, iii. 321, iv. 790, 1129, *v.* 320, vii. 5092, suffice, be able, endure.  
 suffrance, suffice, *see* soffrance, &c.  
 suggestioun (-on), *s.* i. 1014, viii. 364, 1684.  
 sule, *v. a.* i. 2256, ii. 256, (sue, viii. 3031\*); *v. n. pres. p.* suiende, ii. 1591, 3526, iv. 2482, suinge, vi. 2371: follow.  
 suite, *s.* ii. 1378, iv. 27, 1306, *v.* 4385 f., viii. 2930: fashion, livery; pursuit.  
 sulphre, soulphe, sulphur, *s.* iv. 2481, *v.* 2176, vii. 355.  
 Sulpices, iv. 2407.  
 sundri, *see* sondri.  
 suore, suote, *see* swere, swete.  
 superfluite, *s.* v. 2217, vi. 267.  
 superiour, *a.* iii. 2447.  
 supplant (-aunt), *s.* ii. 2368, 2374.  
 supplantacioun (-on), *s.* ii. 2327, 2937.  
 supplantarie, *s.* ii. 2322.  
 supplante, supplaunte, *v. a.* ii. 2369, 2385 ff., *pret.* supplan'tede, ii. 2453.  
 supplicacion (-oun), *s.* viii. 2184, 2301.  
 supplantour, *s.* ii. 2437, 3024.  
 support, *s.* vii. 3207\*.  
 supporte, *v. a.* vii. 2144.  
 suppose, *v. a. n.* i. 226, 879, 2196, ii. 1018, 1174, vi. 2300; *impers.* v. 22: conjecture, think; seem.  
 supposinges, *s. pl.* v. 3848, conjectures.  
 surfet, *s.* vii. 4561, excess.

surgerie, *s. v.* 1061, vi. 1411.  
 surgien, *s. viii.* 1163.  
 Suriale, *i.* 399.  
 Surie, *see* Surrie.  
 surmonte, *v. a. ii.* 1716, v. 6738, rise  
 above, surpass.  
 surquiderie, *s. i.* 1877, 2358.  
 surquidous, *a. i.* 2257.  
 surplus, *s. vi.* 682, rest.  
 Surrie, *vi.* 2375, *Surie.* vii. 2539.  
 suspecion (-oun), *v.* 578, 7093\*.  
 sustenance, sustenance, *s. ii.* 1851, iv.  
 2443, v. 122.  
 sustiens(n), *v. a. vii.* 476, 704, (sustene,  
 PP. 71).  
 swalwe, *s. v.* 6005.  
 swan, *s. iii.* 797, iv. 105.  
 swelle, *v. n. iii.* 671, (*pref.* awal, i. 368\*).  
 sword, *s. P.* 242, i. 1189, iii. 3.  
 swere, *v. a. n. i.* 1462, 2765, *pref. s.*  
 swor, i. 985, suor, v. 5930, *pp.* swore,  
 i. 1227, 1513, ii. 2536, suore, v. 5178,  
 sworn, v. 4306.  
 swere, *s. iv.* 859, neck.  
 swerve, *v. n. P.* 862, ii. 2406, iv. 1216;  
*v. a. i.* 366, iv. 1408, vii. 4569.  
 swete, *v. n. iv.* 1092, sweat.  
 swete, suete, *a. P.* 325, v. 1861, swote,  
 suote, *i.* 113, iv. 1297, v. 3999; *as*  
*subst.* i. 1190, 1708, iv. 637, 3469, v.  
 668; sweet.  
 swetnesse, *s. iv.* 1671, vi. 395.  
 swevene, *s. P.* 596, i. 2815, iv. 3023,  
 swefne, i. 2851, dream.  
 swich(e), *see* such.  
 swift, *a. v.* 6005, *pl.* swifts, i. 2300, iii.  
 2107; *superl.* swiftest, i. 705; *adv.*  
 swift, vii. 859.  
 swimme, *v. n. iv.* 3096, *pref.* swam, v.  
 4338, viii. 2653.  
 swinke, *v. n. iv.* 2440, v. 6964, labour.  
 swithe, *adv. vi.* 1655, vii. 848, viii. 930,  
 swiftly.  
 swot, *s. i.* 1390, sweat.  
 swote, *see* swete.  
 swoune, *adv. viii.* 2449, in a swoon.  
 swoune, *v. n. i.* 983, ii. 846, iii. 233, v.  
 4351, 6006.  
 swoune, *s. viii.* 2859, in swoune, on  
 swoune, v. 3647, 5788, a swoune, viii.  
 1060, *cp.* aswoune.  
 swyn, *s. (pl.) v.* 6894, vii. 1166.  
 syh, syhte, *see* se, sihte.  
 syke, *see* aike.  
 Synon, *i.* 1172.  
 sythe, *see* nithe.

## T

tabate (=to abate), *n.* 809.  
 table, *s. iv.* 3672, viii. 630, tablet,  
 plank.  
 tacompte (=to accompte), *i.* 650, 2241.  
 tall, *s. i.* 475, vii. 987 ff.  
 taillage, *s. vi.* 1501, vii. 4045, taxa-  
 tion.  
 taille, *s. v.* 1923, tally.  
 take(n), *v. a. P.* 122, 497, i. 1011, iii.  
 1970, 3 *s. pres.* takth, P. 205, tath, v.  
 48, vii. 1074, (3 *pl.* takyn, viii. 2988),  
*pref.* tok, P. 229, i. 421, ii. 2243, 2 *s.* tok,  
 i. 2421, *pl.* toke(n), P. 810, i. 1162, tok,  
 v. 7534, *pref. subj.* toke, i. 383, *imperat.*  
 tak, i. 447, 1317, take, v. 6429, *pp.*  
 take(n), P. 130, i. 1107, take, give;  
*v. n. P.* 54, prevail; *refl. and n.* iii.  
 1063, iv. 2385, v. 1262, betake (one-  
 self).  
 takel, *s. iii.* 989, viii. 470, tackle.  
 tale, *s. P.* 82, 573, i. 650, *pl.* tales, i.  
 1283, ii. 312, tale, reckoning, speech.  
 tale(n), *v. n. P.* 425, ii. 47, iv. 1178, v.  
 3772, speak.  
 talent, *s. v.* 7136, inclination.  
 Taliart, viii. 505, 513.  
 talke, *v. n. ii.* 2093.  
 tall, *a. v.* 2476, comely.  
 Taltabius, iii. 1928.  
 tame, *a. P.* 1058, i. 3031, v. 1017.  
 tame, *v. a. iv.* 1886, v. 1024, vii.  
 1844.  
 tant ne quant, ii. 2430.  
 Tantaly, v. 365.  
 tapinage, *s. v.* 1810, skulking.  
 tarie, *v. a. i.* 452, iv. 1499, 3450, viii.  
 2924, vex, delay; *v. n. i.* 1645, ii. 825,  
 iv. 8, delay.  
 tarding, tarynge, *s. iv.* 35, 1184, v.  
 3633.  
 Tarquinius, Tarquin, vii. 4595 ff., viii.  
 2634.  
 Tartarie, *s. iv.* 1631.  
 tasse, *s. v.* 4400, 4958, collection, heap.  
 tasse, *v. a. vii.* 4484.  
 tast, *s. i.* 1191, v. 7144, taste, touch.  
 taste, *v. a. n. iv.* 2546, v. 7792, vii. 1944,  
 viii. 1186, taste, perceive, try.  
 tastinge, *s. vi.* 302, 942.  
 Taurus, vii. 1015, 1267.  
 taverna, *s. ii.* 3098.  
 taxe, *s. i.* 1556, engagement.  
 taxe, *v. a. P.* 267, i. 3108, ii. 334, vii.  
 3905, viii. 361, tax, appoint.

teche, *v. a. n.* P. 417, i. 229, 2260, *pret.*  
 tawhte, tauhte, ii. 754, iii. 2543, v.  
 3583, tawht, iii. 176, taghte, P. 361,  
 viii. 663, *pp.* tawht, tauht, i. 2253, v.  
 6074, taught, v. 7015\*.  
 Techel, v. 7023.  
 techer, *s.* vii. 1520.  
 techyng, techinge, i. 1592, v. 611.  
 teene, tene, *s.* i. 3399, iii. 772, v. 5483,  
 sorrow.  
 Tegea, v. 6242.  
 teide, *v. a. pret.* i. 2311, *pp.* told, v. 52,  
 tied.  
 teise, *v. a.* v. 6331, stretch.  
 telle(n), *v. a. n.* P. 82, 168, i. 66, 400,  
 3297, iii. 450, iv. 1693, 3 *s. pres.* telth,  
 v. 6126, *pret.* tolde(n), P. 599, i. 2109,  
 vii. 1622, told, i. 3187, ii. 884, *imperat.*  
 tell, i. 164, 1254, *pp.* telleth, i. 1395;  
 tell, say, speak, name.  
 tellinge, *s.* iii. 506.  
 tempeste, *s.* i. 2142, ii. 1907, iii. 2739, iv.  
 3063.  
 tempeste, *v. a.* v. 1184, disturb.  
 temple, *s.* i. 800, iii. 1993, v. 1313, the  
 temple flor, viii. 1855.  
 temples, *s. pl.* viii. 2819, temples (of the  
 head).  
 temporal, *a.* ii. 2988, vii. 94; *as subst.*  
 P. 854, ii. 3491.  
 tempre, *v. a.* i. 23, ii. 3178, v. 3802, viii.  
 778, *pp. as adj.* tempred, iv. 2521;  
 mingle, temper, restrain, tune.  
 temprure, *s.* P. 1055, viii. 832, harmony,  
 tuning.  
 tempte, *v. a.* ii. 3139, iii. 711, vii.  
 5337.  
 Temse, P. 39\*, Thames.  
 ten, *num.* P. 526, ii. 52, 2063, iv.  
 475.  
 tendre, *a.* i. 779, ii. 3175, iv. 1362, vi.  
 1514, tender, vii. 3382, tender, deli-  
 cate.  
 tendre, *v. a.* i. 2172, soften; *v. n.* ii.  
 3289, grow tender.  
 tendresse (-esse), ii. 1073, 2165, vii.  
 4975, affection, care, softness.  
 tene, *see* teene.  
 tenetz, *s.* PP. 295, tennis.  
 tente, *s.* ii. 2635, iv. 2431.  
 tenthe, *a.* vii. 1169, 1387.  
 tere, *v. a.* iii. 2010, *pp.* tore, P. 413, i.  
 1154, tear.  
 teres, *s. pl.* i. 1680, vii. 4835, tears.  
 Tereüs, v. 5569 ff., viii. 2585.  
 terme, *s.* iii. 2411.

Termegis, iv. 2408.  
 termine, *v. a.* ii. 272, bring to a conclu-  
 sion.  
 terremote, *s.* vi. 2207, 2261.  
 Tersites, vii. 3585.  
 teschuie (=to eschuie), vii. 3247, teschue,  
 PP. 64.  
 testament, *s.* P. 245, vii. 3860, viii.  
 2955\*, PP. 177.  
 tete, *s.* ii. 3227, teat.  
 text, *s.* i. 271.  
 thaddre (=the addre), v. 3528.  
 thaffeccioun (=the affeccioun), P. 366.  
 thair (=the air), v. 3993.  
 Thaise, Thayse, Taise, viii. 1295 ff.,  
 Thaisis, viii. 1536.  
 thalemans (=the Alemans), P. 821.  
 thalter (the alter), vii. 4707.  
 Thamar, viii. 215.  
 thamende (=thee amende), i. 568.  
 Thameris, vii. 3445.  
 thank, *see* thonk.  
 thankworth, *a.* i. 2405.  
 thanne, than, *adv.* P. 48, i. 183, *as*  
 thanne, iii. 2005, then; *conj.* P. 57,  
 i. 973, 1927, than.  
 thapocalips (=the apocalips), v. 6389.  
 thapostel (=the apostel), P. 434, v. 1953,  
 thapostle, vii. 3149\*.  
 thapparence (=the apparence), iv.  
 3053.  
 thar, *impers.* ii. 2430, vii. 2344, it be-  
 hoves; *pers.* tharst, iv. 1774, thar, iv.  
 3180, ought.  
 Tharbis, iv. 650 ff.  
 tharmes, *s. pl.* P. 608, intestines.  
 Tharse, viii. 542 ff.  
 Tharsiens, *pl.* viii. 597.  
 thassay (=the assay), v. 3239.  
 thassent (=the assent), ii. 1479.  
 thassise (=the assise), P. 148.  
 thastat (=the astat), i. 2100.  
 thastronomie (=the astronomie), vi.  
 1403.  
 that, *dem. pron. and a.* P. 122, 689, 725,  
 that on . . . that other, P. 649, i. 397,  
 that Remus, that Diane, v. 899,  
 1249, that(=that which), P. 3, 21, i. 298,  
 603, &c.; *pl.* tho, P. 48, i. 299, 1273,  
 that ilke tuo, i. 1271: *relat.* P. 1, 15,  
 39, 42: *conj.* P. 4, 8, 13, 20, i. 439,  
 ii. 2640, if that, P. 16, whan that, P.  
 37, who that, what that, P. 13, 460,  
 iii. 1879, that (=take care that), ii.  
 2872, that I ne hadde, &c. (a wish),  
 iv. 1422, v. 3747.



- thavantages (=the advantages), v. 1978.  
 thaverous (=the averous), v. 57.  
 the, *def. art.* P. 2, 72, 260, &c., the more, the betre, &c., P. 55\*, i. 1543, 2322 f.  
 Thebes, i. 338, 1992.  
 Thebith, vi. 1322.  
 thebreus (=the Hebreus), vii. 3054, 4421.  
 theder, *see* thider.  
 theeffect (=the effect), iv. 1759.  
 thefte, s. v. 944, 6088.  
 Theges, iv. 2403.  
 thegipoiens (=the Egipcienes), v. 811, 821, thegipoiens, vii. 3055.  
 thei, they, *pron.* P. 159, 424, &c.  
 their (=the eiri), iii. 1215, viii. 3009\*.  
 Thelacuse, iv. 452.  
 Thelamacus, Thelamachus, iv. 1851, vi. 1757 ff., Thelamachum, vi. 1587.  
 Thelamon, v. 7216, viii. 2515.  
 Thelaphus, Telaphus, iii. 2642 ff.  
 thelement, thelements (=the element, &c.), v. 759, vii. 441.  
 Thelogonus, vi. 1619 ff.  
 Thelous, ii. 1092.  
 thembuisschements (=the embuisschements), vii. 3476.  
 themperour (=the emperour), i. 762, ii. 1196.  
 thempire (=the empire), P. 767, i. 1482.  
 thenoress (=the encess), v. 3941.  
 thende (=the ende), P. 883.  
 thenemis (=the enemis), vii. 4355.  
 thenke (1), v. n. P. 23, 77, 193, 1076, think, v. 213, vi. 198, 3 s. *pres.* thinkth, i. 2687, thenketh, i. 657, *pres.* thoghte, i. 811, 1571, 2106, (thoughte, viii. 2965), *imperat.* thank, iii. 225, v. 5217, thenke, iii. 1083; v. a. ii. 2195, (*cp.* i. 657), iii. 559: think.  
 thenke (2), *impers.* 3 s. *pres.* thinkth, P. 260, i. 1700, thenketh, i. 569, thinketh, v. 254, *pres.* thoghte, P. 603, i. 346, 929, ii. 1374; seem.  
 thenne, fro thenne, *adv.* i. 2637, iv. 98, vi. 1046, thence.  
 thensample (=the ensample), vii. 3552.  
 thesamplerie (=the ensamplerie), vii. 3858.  
 thenvious (=the envious), ii. 1728.  
 theologie, s. vii. 70, 131.  
 Theophilus, Theophile, viii. 1359, 1500.  
 theorique, s. vii. 31, 134 ff., 624.  
 ther, there, *adv.* P. 46, 115, i. 725, iii. 60, 236, there, in that matter: *conj.* P. 389, i. 1317, 1732, iii. 311, 807, iv. 169, where, whereas; ther(e) as, i. 1282, ii. 114, ther while, iv. 760.  
 therabout, *adv.* vii. 4761, about it.  
 therat, *adv.* i. 600, therate, iv. 1534, vi. 1674.  
 therayein (3), *adv.* i. 1018, iii. 357, against it.  
 therbage (=the herbage), s. iii. 1397.  
 Therbellis, vii. 3291.  
 therby, *adv.* i. 330, iii. 400, therbi, iv. 1462, ther by, iii. 768.  
 there, *see* ther.  
 therfore, P. 2, i. 1514, ii. 1454, therfor, ii. 534, therefore, vii. 796, (ther fore, viii. 2954 ff.).  
 therfro, *adv.* iii. 960, iv. 1216.  
 therinne, *adv.* i. 824, 2192, thrinne, iii. 315, v. 7345, ther inne, iv. 1658.  
 therof, *adv.* P. 120, i. 732, 1315.  
 theroute, *adv.* i. 2818, iii. 2472, therout, v. 4158, out there, out.  
 therthe (=the erthe), i. 3265, v. 825.  
 therto, *adv.* P. 1056, i. 421, 1291, 2055, ii. 1635, to it, moreover.  
 therupon, *adv.* P. 815, i. 841, 2697, vi. 1321, (ther uppon, viii. 3046).  
 therwhile, *adv.* iv. 1708, meanwhile; *conj.* P. 962, ii. 2716, therwhiles that, P. 673, v. 3474, ther while(s), ther whyles, iii. 1903, vi. 1478, vii. 2965, while.  
 these, *see* this.  
 Thesëus, v. 5310 ff., viii. 2511, 2557.  
 Thessaile, v. 4018.  
 thesamplerie (=the essamplerie), vii. 2318.  
 thestat (=the estat), P. 202.  
 Thetia, v. 2961 ff.  
 Theucer, iii. 2645 ff., iv. 3516.  
 thevangile (=the evangile), vi. 977.  
 thevenynge (=the evenynge), v. 3886.  
 thew, s. vi. 105, *pl.* thewes, vii. 43, habit, manner.  
 thewed, a., wel thewed, i. 273, 639, vii. 3788, of good disposition.  
 thexperience (=the experience), P. 331, v. 764.  
 thextremetes (=the extremetes), iv. 2565.  
 thi, thin, *poss. pron.* i. 165, 449, iv. 3220; *disj.* thin, i. 949, thyne (*pl.*), i. 168.  
 thider, *adv.* ii. 707, 789, &c., theder, v. 7476.  
 thiderward, *adv.* iii. 1044, 1622.  
 thidoles (=the idoles), v. 1955.

**thief**, *s.* i. 319, iii. 2388, *pl.* thieves, v. 603.  
**thikke**, *a.* v. 5971, vii. 186; thick.  
**thilke**, *pron.* P. 16, i. 804, 2410, ii. 3056; *as subst.* i. 2548.  
**thing**, *s.* P. 34, 686, i. 792, thyng, P. 930, *pl.* thinges, P. 255, i. 1265, &c., alle thinge, ii. 557, v. 1246, 3885, vii. 80, othre thing, i. 574.  
**thinke**, *see* thenke.  
**thinne**, *a.* i. 1787, viii. 2827, thin.  
**thinspeccion** (= the inspeccion), vi. 1349.  
**this**, *pron. and a.* P. 11, 27, 276, 481, iv. 1365, *pl.* these, P. 7, 900, &c., thes, ii. 475, 3319.  
**thiself**, *pron.* i. 1615, ii. 2441, iv. 267.  
**tho**, *pron.* *see* that.  
**tho**, *adv.* P. 3, 94 ff., i. 809, iv. 1358, then : *conj.* viii. 1466, when.  
**Thoas**, v. 1831 ff.  
**Thobie**, vii. 5357 ff.  
**thoccident** (= the occident), P. 720.  
**thoffice** (= the office), i. 242, v. 1921.  
**thogh**, *conj.* P. 61, 402, &c., *as* thogh, P. 270, i. 2013, though, i. 1283, ii. 962, all thogh, iv. 269, *cp.* althogh.  
**thoght**, *s.* i. 195, 1568, thought, ii. 66, *pl.* thoghtes, i. 721, thoughtes, vi. 198.  
**tholde** (= the olde), v. 7007.  
**thole**, *v. a.* v. 6770, suffer.  
**Tholome**, Tholomeüs, vi. 1403, vii. 1043, 1201, 1459, Ptolemy (the astronomer).  
**Thomas** (the apostle), v. 1909.  
**thombe**, *s.* ii. 468.  
**thonder**, thondre, thunder, *s.* i. 2002, iii. 455, vii. 4401, viii. 1000.  
**thonderstrok**, *s.* vii. 307.  
**thondre**, *v. n.* iii. 985.  
**thonk**, *s.* P. 72\*, i. 738, 816, 1119, 2650, thank, ii. 60, 2012, gratitude, thanks, reward : his thonkes, v. 2507, by his own will.  
**thonke**, *v. a. n.* i. 961, 2664, 3346, ii. 773, 1517, thank, give thanks.  
**thonkinge**, *s.* ii. 3317, vii. 1933.  
**thonkles**, *a.* vii. 2134, without thanks.  
**thonour** (= the honour), i. 1719, iv. 2142.  
**Thophis**, v. 6817.  
**thordre** (= the ordre), viii. 3021.  
**thorghsese**, *v. a.* iv. 210, take hold of.  
**thorient** (= the orient), P. 719.  
**thorizonte** (= the orizonte), vii. 694.  
**thorn**, *s.* i. 603, vi. 928, *pl.* thornes, P. 412.  
**thorst**, *see* thurst.

**Thoss**, vi. 1314.  
**thother** (= the other), ii. 1740, vii. 378 (*pl.*).  
**thou**, thow, i. 124, 174, *obl.* the, thee, i. 436, 448, 1545.  
**though**, thought, *see* thogh, thoght.  
**thousand**, thousand, *num.* i. 1153, ii. 500, iii. 59, iv. 720, 3034.  
**thousandel**, *s.* i. 728, iii. 468, thousandth part, thousand times.  
**thousandfold**, iv. 3023, v. 2602, vii. 3438.  
**thral**, *s.* v. 54, vi. 74.  
**thre**, *num.* i. 406, 3097.  
**thred**, *s.* i. 1419, v. 5343, thread.  
**threde**, *v. a.* vi. 558.  
**threste**, *v. a. pret.* iv. 135, v. 6381, thrust.  
**threte**, *v. a.* iii. 2124, threaten.  
**thretty**, *see* thritty.  
**thridde**, *a.* i. 400, 1884; *as subst.* iv. 552.  
**thries**, *adv.* ii. 2897, v. 3593, thrice.  
**thrift**, *s.* vii. 3161, prosperity.  
**thrinne**, *see* therinne.  
**thritiene**, *num.* vii. 1410, thirteen.  
**thritty** (-tl), *num.* v. 7311, vii. 3637, thretty, viii. 438, thirty.  
**throghe**, *see* throwe, *s.* (2).  
**throne**, *s.* vii. 2418, 2449, PP. 378.  
**throng**, *v. a. pret.* vii. 5069, thrust.  
**throstle**, *s.* i. 355.  
**throte**, *s.* ii. 831, v. 1470, throat.  
**throwe**, *s.* (1) P. 566, i. 117, 410, 2297, ii. 1587, time, short time.  
**throwe**, *s.* (2) iii. 1130, iv. 97, *pl.* throwes, vii. 3559, throghe, vii. 5401, throe, pang.  
**throwe(n)**, *v. a.* iii. 788, iv. 1274, v. 3609, *pret.* threw, i. 145, *pp.* throwe(n), i. 27, ii. 243, 2158.  
**thryve**, *v. n.* iv. 2345, 2592, vii. 262, 2799.  
**thunchaste** (= the unchaste), vii. 5301.  
**thunder**, *see* thonder.  
**thunkinde** (= the unkinde), viii. 222.  
**thunsemlieste** (= the unsemlieste), *a. superl.* i. 1625.  
**thurgh**, *prep.* P. 49, i. 827, 2952, through, by reason of : *adv.* v. 3581, 3635, all over, thoroughly.  
**thurghknowe**, *pp.* i. 2847, thoroughly known.  
**thurghout**, *prep.* ii. 2748, 2873, through; *adv.* ii. 2245, v. 3655, thoroughly.  
**thurghseche**, *v. a.*, *pp.* thurghsoght, thorghsoght, i. 1895, iv. 636, viii. 2045, 2247; seek through, penetrate, resolve.  
**thurghsmite**, *v. a. pp.* vii. 4853.  
**thurst**, thorst, *s.* i. 2308, v. 377, vi. 237, *pl.* thurstes, vi. 394.  
**thurste**, *v. n.* vi. 262; *impers.* v. 254, 384.

- thursti, *a.* vi. 439.  
 thus, *adv.* P. 52, i. 761.  
 thyle (= the yle), *v.* 1071.  
 thymage, thymages (= the ymage, &c.),  
*v.* 5791, 7541.  
 thyne, *see* thi.  
 Tiberie Constantin, ii. 590.  
 Tiberius (1), i. 762.  
 Tiberius (2), vii. 3281.  
 Tibre, i. 1042, *v.* 2206.  
 tide, tyde, *s.* P. 27, i. 150, 860, 1731,  
 2715, ii. 1883, iii. 1024, *v.* 139, vii. 972,  
 time, tide, season.  
 tidinge, tyding(e), *s.* i. 450, iii. 444, iv.  
 2962, *v.* 3322, *pl.* tidinges, tidynge, i.  
 2761, iv. 178.  
 tigre, *s.* iv. 1977, vi. 1450, vii. 4944.  
 til, *prep.* ii. 902, vii. 397, vii. 2841, *to*;  
*conj.* P. 597, i. 1333, til that, P. 677,  
 iv. 2890, til whanne, iv. 1262, until.  
 tile, *v.* *a.* iv. 2441, *v.* 328, till.  
 tilinge, *s.* *v.* 1227, tilling.  
 tilthe, *s.* *v.* 1238, 1882, 4304, crop, cultivation.  
 timber, tymber, *s.* *v.* 2158, 2168.  
 timberwerk, *s.* *v.* 2179.  
 time, tyme, *s.* P. 5, 701, i. 839, 2379, 2846,  
 ii. 805, iv. 615, 3401, *v.* 3641.  
 time, *v.* *a.* ii. 2238, aim.  
 tirannie, tirannys, *s.* P. 49, ii. 1721, *v.*  
 5921, tyrannyes, (*pl.*) *v.* 988, tirandie,  
 tiraundie, P. 756, iii. 1117, (tirandise,  
 vii. 3076).  
 tirannyssh, *a.* vii. 4594, tirannysshe,  
 vii. 4889.  
 tirant, *a.* *v.* 5627, vii. 1889, (*subst.*  
 tiraunt, PP. 48).  
 tire, *v.* *n.* vi. 817, pull.  
 Tiresias, iii. 363, 749.  
 Tisbee, iii. 1374 ff., 1663, viii. 2578.  
 title, *s.* PP. 12.  
 titled, *v.* *a.* *pp.* iv. 2468, assigned.  
 to, *prep.* P. 10, 67, i. 1554, ii. 158, *v.* 5724;  
*with gerund.* P. 33, 133, ii. 511, iv. 2373,  
 viii. 1393, *cp.* forto:  
*adv.* (1) *to* . . . fro, P. 569, i. 1571,  
 2067; (2) P. 81, i. 1063, too; *cp.*  
 tomoche, tolite.  
 to, *prefix, see* to plihthe.  
 tobete, *v.* *a.* *pp.* iii. 122, beaten to pieces.  
 toblowe, *v.* *a.* *pp.* viii. 1949, blown about.  
 tobreide, *v.* *a.* *pref.* iv. 1535, rent.  
 tobreke, *v.* *a.* i. 1068, 1420, 2650, *pref.*  
 tobrak, ii. 1825, *pp.* tobroke, P. 390, i.  
 1154, break in pieces; *v.* *n.* iv. 359, 3  
*s. pres.* tobrekth, P. 505, *pref.* tobrak,  
 vi. 2226, *pl.* tobriecken, vii. 3476, break  
 (in pieces), break forth.  
 toclef, *v.* *n.* *pref.* viii. 626, parted asunder.  
 todrawe, *v.* *a.*, 3 *pl. pref.* todrowhe, i.  
 378, *pp.* todrawe, i. 513, iii. 1405, tear  
 asunder.  
 tofore, *prep.* P. 1, i. 2134, iii. 2052, &c.,  
 tofor, i. 518, iii. 2053, 2375, before, in  
 presence of: *adv.* P. 822, i. 2948, ther  
 tofore, i. 1153, hier t., i. 2787, now t.,  
 i. 1867, tofor, ii. 2128, before, former-  
 ly.  
 togedre, *adv.* P. 648, i. 1102, ii. 137, al  
 togedre, P. 984.  
 tohewe, *v.* *a.* iv. 1547, toheewe, (*pp.*) *v.*  
 5899, hew in pieces.  
 tokne, *s.* P. 638, i. 873, 1174, 2211, iii.  
 804, that in tokne, P. 907.  
 tokne, *v.* *a.* P. 601, betoken.  
 tokninge, *s.* *v.* 5765.  
 tolyte, tolite, *s.* i. 19, iv. 2621, vii. 3847,  
 to lite, iii. 581, too little.  
 tombe, *see* tumble.  
 tome, *s.* ii. 2680, (leisure), opportunity.  
 tome (= to me), i. 294, ii. 3160, viii. 2386.  
 tomoche, *s.* i. 19, iv. 2621, *v.* 7689, to  
 moche, iii. 591, too much.  
 tomorwe, *adv.* iii. 2399, *v.* 9, vii. 3668.  
 tonge, *see* tunge.  
 tonne, *s.* P. 504, iii. 1210, *v.* 1677, vi. 333,  
 tunne, viii. 2253.  
 tonsure, *s.* viii. 482.  
 too, *s.* *v.* 472, *pl.* ton, P. 876, toe.  
 toose, *v.* *a.* P. 400, shear.  
 Topasion, vii. 1406.  
 to plihthe, *v.* *a.* *pref.* *v.* 850, pulled in  
 pieces.  
 topsellocle, *s.* *v.* 3119, viii. 1890.  
 topulled, *v.* *a.* *pp.* i. 565, pulled asunder.  
 torahe, *s.* iv. 3651, *v.* 3846.  
 tormenta, *v.* *a.* i. 2989, iv. 412.  
 torne, *v.* *a.* P. 273, i. 1537, 2267, 2408,  
 (*pp.* turnyd, viii. 2956); *refl.* i. 1792,  
 iv. 2112; *v.* *n.* P. 463, 591, i. 3265,  
 v. 312, (turne, PP. 95): turn, return.  
 torneie, tourneie, *v.* *n.* i. 2515, vi. 1850,  
 tourney.  
 tornement, *s.* i. 2509.  
 torninge, tornynge, *s.* P. 138, iii. 85.  
 torof, *v.* *n.* *pref.* viii. 617, was torn to  
 pieces.  
 to sondre, *see* sondre.  
 tosprad, *pp.* *v.* 3964.  
 toswal, *v.* *n.* *pref.* *v.* 6252, *pp.* toswolle,  
 vi. 1467.  
 tote, *v.* *n.* *v.* 470, vi. 819, spy, gaze.



toth, *s.* P. 325, *pl.* teeth, teth, ii. 411, v. 3523, tooth.  
 tothe (= to the), iv. 1875.  
 tothrowe, *v. a.* vii. 5257, throw aside.  
 totore, *pp.* P. 414, i. 1723, iv. 1355, torn in pieces.  
 touche, touch, *s.* v. 269, 315, 6278, 7147.  
 touche, *v. a.* P. 58, i. 313, ii. 2057, iv. 667, v. 275, touch, concern; touchende, i. 742, 3441, concerning: *v. n.* i. 241, ii. 527, iv. 3016, have concern, treat; touchende of, P. 481, i. 1232, (as) touchinge of, i. 2721, viii. 2993\*, touchende to, i. 1338, 1971, concerning.  
 touchinge, *s.* iii. 84.  
 toun, *s.* P. 839, i. 802, iii. 454, 1380, to toune, ii. 1354, in toune, ii. 2103.  
 tour, *s.* P. 1019, ii. 3027, iv. 818, tower.  
 tourneie, *see* torneie.  
 tow, *s.* v. 5623.  
 toward, *prep.* i. 456, 638, 1136, 2103, 2284, 3032, ii. 1384, viii. 2077, towardses, P. 78, i. 747, iii. 1090, to, towards, with regard to, near: toward Troie, iii. 2643, on the way to T.  
 towh, *a.* vi. 722, tough.  
 Trace, *v.* 1198, 5569, 5832, Thrace.  
 trace, *v. a.* vi. 1328.  
 traiteresse, *s.* v. 4620.  
 traiterie, *s.* iii. 2211, viii. 1779, treason.  
 trance, traunce, *s.* i. 1800, iii. 1457, viii. 1367, 2813.  
 trance, *v.* iv. 2115, trample (?).  
 transforme, *v. a.* i. 2971, ii. 194, iv. 501.  
 translate, *v. a.* ii. 3044, 3 *pl. pret.* translateden, iv. 2660, change, translate.  
 transpose, *v. a.* iv. 2656, translate.  
 trapped, *v. a. pp.* i. 1133, v. 2708, furnished with trap-doors, entrapped.  
 traunce, *see* trance.  
 travail(l), *s.* ii. 1009, iv. 1105, 1604 ff., travaille, iv. 2663, labour.  
 travaille, *v. n.* P. 78\*, i. 2658, ii. 266, 641, 2533, viii. 1050, labour, travail; *refl.* iii. 584, v. 110; labour, strive: *v. a.* ii. 3314, iv. 428, 1893, trouble, cause to labour, iii. 1205, travel about.  
 travers, *s.* viii. 3158, obstacle.  
 tre, tree, *s.* i. 1319, 2818, iv. 3593, *pl.* tres, trees, P. 935, ii. 2298.  
 treble, *a.* vii. 1755, 2366.  
 trede, *v.* viii. 2682.  
 tregetour, *s.* ii. 1873, juggler.  
 treigne, *s.* vii. 4456, snare.  
 treine, *s.* iv. 621, train (of a robe).  
 treis, *s.* i. 2963, three, (or one, two, three).

tremble, *v. n.* ii. 2622, iii. 190; *v. a.* vii. 5104.  
 tresced, *a.* vii. 4881.  
 tresces, tresses, *s. pl.* v. 5464, 5686.  
 treson, tresoun, *s.* i. 1659, ii. 1185, 2945, vii. 1563.  
 tresor, *s.* P. 316, i. 2633, v. 69, tresour, ii. 3305, treasure.  
 tresorer, *s.* ii. 3304.  
 tresorie, *s.* v. 134, 1922.  
 trespas, *s.* vii. 3327.  
 tresses, *see* tresces.  
 trete(n), *v. n.* P. 77, i. 7, 1099, ii. 3201, iii. 1831; *v. a.* ii. 1686: treat, deal, deal with.  
 tretee, *s.* v. 5258, treaty.  
 tretour, *s.* iii. 2096, viii. 1937, traitor.  
 trewe, trew, *a.* P. 184, i. 702, 1198, iii. 2228, 2346, v. 2877, 7391, true; *superl.* the treweste, ii. 1282.  
 trewes, *s. pl.* iv. 2708, truce.  
 trewly, trewli, treuly, i. 1650, iii. 66, iv. 921, v. 2536, 3454, trewely, ii. 2018, iv. 1649, trewliche, i. 1336, truly.  
 trewman, *s.* vii. 1640.  
 tribe, *s.* vii. 4118, viii. 136.  
 tribut, *s.* i. 2795, iv. 2159, v. 5365.  
 tricherie, *s.* i. 828, ii. 812, iv. 2078.  
 tricherous, *a.* ii. 3019.  
 Tricolonius, *v.* 1239.  
 trie, trye, *v. a.* ii. 3420, iv. 2456, v. 2895, vi. 1204, vii. 42, separate, purify, test.  
 trinite, *s.* i. 3276, vii. 77.  
 triste, *v. a. n.* i. 1947, ii. 492, 1160, truste, v. 2898, *pret.* triste, i. 1983, 2573, 2874, troste, i. 1739, truste, v. 3894; trust.  
 tristesse, *s.* iv. 3396, 3432.  
 Tristram, *vi.* 471, viii. 2500.  
 Triton, *v.* 1192.  
 Trocinle, *iv.* 2928.  
 Troian, *vii.* 3144, Trajan.  
 Troie, i. 1078 ff., ii. 2452, iii. 974 ff., 1757, 1885 ff., 2643, iv. 81, 147 ff., 772 ff., 1696, 1820 ff., 1903 ff., 2143, 2152, v. 1003, 1833, 2551, 3071, 3303, 5281, 6455, 7197 ff., vi. 1391, 1416, vii. 3585, viii. 2517, 2570, 2625; newe Troye, P. 37\*, tale of (bok of) T., i. 483, iii. 971, v. 3245, vii. 1559.  
 Troiens, *pl.* v. 1839, 7211, vii. 3056.  
 Troieward, *iv.* 732, v. 6450.  
 Troilus, *ii.* 2457, iv. 2795, v. 7597, viii. 2531.  
 trompe, *s.* i. 2128, ii. 2866, vii. 3763.  
 trompen, *v. n.* i. 2139, sound a trumpet.  
 trompette, *s.* vii. 3744, trumpet.  
 trosse, *see* trusse.

trouble, *a. v.* 4160; *as subst. vi.* 360: turbid.  
 trouble, *v. a. vi.* 362; *v. n.* *trouble*, viii.  
 3009\*.  
 trowe, *v. a.* P. 512, v. 580, 1925, believe;  
*v. n. i.* 1925, 2691, iii. 531, believe,  
 think.  
 trowthe, trouthe, *s. P.* 154, 488, i. 746,  
 1559, 1588, iv. 2747, v. 4363, vi. 2285,  
 vii. 1724 ff., trouthe plight, vii. 4228,  
*pl.* trowthes, i. 822: truth, assurance,  
 loyalty.  
 truage, *s. iv.* 2175, v. 1553, 1726, tribute,  
 subjection.  
 truandise, *s. iv.* 2767, laziness.  
 truants, *s. pl. iv.* 342, idlers.  
 truffle, *s. viii.* 2062, trifle.  
 truasse, *v. a. i.* 2634, iv. 1398, pack.  
 truasse, troasse, *s. v.* 4966, v. 5056, vii.  
 3253\*, bundle.  
 trust, *s. P.* 91, i. 3154, ii. 769, iii. 281,  
 triat, iii. 2754, v. 2133.  
 truiste, *see* triste.  
 Tubal, *iv.* 2425.  
 tuelsthe, *see* twelfthe.  
 tuelve, *see* twelve.  
 Tullius, *iv.* 2648, vi. 1401, vii. 1589, 3163\*,  
 viii. 3119.  
 tumba, tombe, *s. iv.* 3665, viii. 1527,  
 1581, tomb.  
 tun, *s. viii.* 830, tune.  
 tunder, *s. ii.* 1274, tinder.  
 tunderstonde (= to understonde), *ii.* 815.  
 tunge, *s. P.* 61\*, i. 678, ii. 1602, iv. 2639,  
 tonge, iii. 1799, tongue, language.  
 (false) tungen, *a. ii.* 1751.  
 tunne, *see* tonne.  
 tuo, two, *num. P.* 336, i. 810, 2041, v.  
 188, bothe tuo, P. 1068, i. 851.  
 turne, *see* torne.  
 Turne, *iv.* 2186.  
 turves, *s. pl. v.* 4031.  
 tweie, *num. P.* 18, i. 1344, v. 3610, tweine,  
 tueine, ii. 3472, v. 4040, two.  
 twelfthe, tuelsthe, *a. vii.* 1215, 1402.  
 twelve, tuelve, *num. P.* 158, 526, i.  
 1134, ii. 97.  
 twenty, *num. iv.* 1356, vii. 1227.  
 twinklinge, twinclinge, *s. i.* 3033, v. 5935.  
 twinne, *v. a. iii.* 423; *v. n. ii.* 2293:  
 separate, be separated.  
 twinnes, *s. pl. vii.* 1033, twins.  
 two, *see* tuo.  
 twyes, *adv. v.* 4094, twice.  
 tyde, *s. see* tide.  
 tyde, *v. n. v.* 3755, happen.  
 tyding(e), *see* tidinge.

tye, *s. v.* 3559, case.  
 tyh, *v. n. pret. v.* 5709, came.  
 tymber (1), *see* timber.  
 tymber (2), *vi.* 1844, timbrel.  
 tyme, *see* time.  
 tymliche, *adv. iv.* 3163.  
 Tymolus, *v.* 6831.  
 Typhon, *v.* 798 ff.  
 Tyr, *viii.* 375 ff.  
 tyrannye, *see* tirannie.  
 tyt, *adv. v.* 5769, vi. 1751, quickly.

## U

Ulurea, UHrea, Ulire, *i.* 516 ff., *iv.* 147,  
 1818 ff., *v.* 3099 ff., 3201, *vi.* 1392 ff.,  
 viii. 2623.  
 umbreide, *v. a. v.* 5034, reproach.  
 unable, *a. vii.* 585, 3275, useless, incap-  
 able.  
 unaffled, *a. i.* 2287, untrained.  
 unansuerd, *a. ii.* 2706.  
 unaperceved, *a. v.* 6271, unaparceved,  
 v. 7147\*.  
 unaquit, *a. ii.* 3332, unrewarded.  
 unarme, *v. a. v.* 3803.  
 unarmed, *a. vii.* 3589.  
 unarraied, *a. vii.* 2659, in disorder.  
 unawanced, *a. v.* 2328.  
 unavised, *a. or adv. i.* 2701, iii. 1097, *iv.*  
 1241, unwise, unwisely.  
 unbegunne, *a. viii. 1.* without beginning.  
 unbehovely, *a. vii.* 1134, viii. 2884, un-  
 profitable, unfit.  
 unbende, *v. a. pret. i.* 1967, unbent.  
 unbesein, *a. viii.* 153, devoid.  
 unbinde, *v. a. viii.* 2812, *pp.* unbounde,  
 v. 159.  
 unbore, unborn, *a. i.* 3164, *iv.* 3221, *v.*  
 1748.  
 unbounde, *a. v.* 7734.  
 unbuxom, *a. i.* 1255, 1272, disobedient.  
 unbuxomly, unbuxomliche, *adv. i.*  
 1368, vii. 3569, rebelliously.  
 unbuxomnesse, *s. i.* 1394, disobedience.  
 unchaate, *see* thunchaste.  
 unclene, *a. ii.* 575, unclean.  
 unclennesse, *s. vii.* 474.  
 unclose, *v. a. v.* 2376, open.  
 unclothe, *v. refl. v.* 3494.  
 uncoupled, *v. a. pp. i.* 2298.  
 uncouth, *a. v.* 5694.  
 undefendid, *a. PP.* 223, not forbidden.  
 under, *prep. P.* 108, i. 27, 1104, undur,

- v. 1573, (undir, viii. 3060, PP. 39): *adv.* P. 76, i. 2237, ii. 418.
- underfonge**, *v. a.* P. 68, iv. 206, viii. 1486, *pret.* **underfing**, v. 7182\*, *pp.* **underfonge**, i. 63, ii. 1751, iv. 418, (undirfongen, PP. 264), receive, accept.
- undergete**, *v. pp.* ii. 1133, come under.
- underling**, *s.* vi. 2350, vii. 1294.
- undernethe**, *prep.* ii. 2933; *adv.* v. 3130.
- undersette**, *v. a.* v. 2157, support.
- understonde**, *v. a. n.* P. 206, 481, i. 46, *pret.* **understod**, i. 1798, (undirstod, PP. 150), *pret. subj.* **understode**, P. 460, i. 2774, *imperat.* **understond**, i. 1882, ii. 3132, *pp.* **understonde**, P. 34\*.
- understandinge**, *s.* iii. 1950, vi. 972, understanding, significance.
- undertake**, *v. a. n.* i. 2020, 3232, iv. 1967, v. 2340, (undirtake, PP. 159), *pret.* **undertok**, v. 2130, (undirtok, viii. 3107), *pl.* **undertoke**, v. 2077, *pp.* **undertake**, P. 241, i. 1108, undertake, take in hand, declare.
- undeserved**, *a.* i. 51, vi. 358.
- undo(n)**, *v. a. n.* i. 2855, iii. 690, *pret.* **undede**, v. 2380, *imperat.* **undo**, ii. 2483, *pp.* **undo**, ii. 1016, v. 7450.
- undoinge**, *s.* vii. 4099.
- undren**, *s.* v. 3669.
- unenvied**, *a.* P. 115.
- unethes**, *adv.* P. 846, i. 1221, **unethe**, iii. 2536, **noght (ne)** . . . **unethes**, iv. 570, 3478, **unnethes**, vii. 5033, hardly.
- unevene**, *a.* P. 803, v. 4547: *adv.* P. 170, iii. 14.
- unfolde**, *v. a.* iv. 686.
- ungentilesce**, *s.* iv. 845.
- unglad**, *a.* ii. 234, 3117, *pl.* **unglade**, ii. 3287.
- unglade**, *v. a.* v. 5680.
- ungoode**, *a. pl.* P. 489, viii. 239.
- ungoodly**, *a.* v. 6136, **ungoodlich**, v. 6293; *superl. def.* **ungoodlieste**, iii. 422.
- unhapp**, *s.* ii. 3085, iii. 1466, *pl.* **unhappes**, iv. 1024.
- unhappely**, *adv.* i. 376.
- unhappi**, *a.* ii. 2280, iii. 1390, v. 5685, unfortunate, ill-omened.
- unholpe**, *a.* v. 1862, unhelped.
- unholy**, *a.* v. 7021\*.
- unhorsed**, *v. a. pp.* iii. 2658.
- unite**, *s.* P. 987, vii. 78, unity.
- universiel**, **universal**, *a.* vi. 2261, vii. 215.
- unjoynted**, *v. a. pp.* iv. 274.
- unkemd**, vii. 5023, uncombed.
- unkendeli**, *a.* ii. 3124, unnatural: *cp.* **unkindeliche**.
- unkest**, *a.* ii. 467, **unkist**, iv. 2712, unkissed.
- unkinde**, **unkynde**, *a.* i. 2565, iii. 374, 2055, iv. 849, **thunkinde**, viii. 222, unnatural, ungrateful.
- unkinde**, *s.* viii. 222.
- unkindeliche**, *adv.* iii. 375, 2066, **unkindely**, iii. 2065, viii. 2005, 2558, unnaturally, unkindly.
- unkindenesse**, *s.* v. 5141.
- unkindeschipe**, *s.* ii. 3103, v. 4699, 4887 ff.
- unkist**, *see* **unkest**.
- unknet**, *v. a. pp.* ii. 2372, v. 556, vii. 4828.
- unknowe(n)**, *a.* P. 319, ii. 467, v. 1251, unknown; ii. 1105, v. 3148, not knowing.
- unliche**, **unlich**, **unlike**, *a.* v. 4415, vi. 1862, vii. 133, unequal, unlike, superior.
- unliered**, **unlered**, *a.* P. 233, iv. 611, untaught.
- unloke**, *v. a. pp.* P. 654, iii. 425, viii. 424, unlocked.
- unlust**, *s.* viii. 481, sorrow.
- unlusti**, *a.* ii. 1308, unhappy.
- unmerciabie**, *a.* iii. 216, unmerciful.
- unmete**, **unmeete**, *a.* ii. 122, iii. 1100, iv. 3573, vii. 5030, unequalled, unworthy, far apart: *adv.* v. 2140, beyond comparison.
- unmyhti**, *a.* v. 1502, unable.
- unmylde**, *a.* i. 1242.
- unpeysed**, *a.* P. 64\*, unweighed.
- unpike**, *v. a.* v. 6509, unfasten.
- unpinned**, *pp.* iii. 424, unconfined.
- unpitous**, *a.* vii. 3411.
- unpitously**, *adv.* viii. 2994\*.
- unplein**, *a.* i. 1058, dishonest.
- unpreised**, *a.* ii. 2078.
- unprisone**, *v. a.* vii. 3293, free from prison.
- unprofitable**, *a.* ii. 3108.
- unpurse**, *v. a.* v. 558, take from the purse.
- unreasonable**, *a.* v. 761, viii. 2932.
- unriht**, *a.* ii. 2773, iii. 1247, wrong.
- unrihte**, *v. a.* ii. 506, v. 6744, set wrong, undo.
- unrihtwisnesse**, *s.* vii. 4724, 5270.
- unsauhte**, *a.* (*pl.*), vii. 2034, out of accord.
- unschette**, *v. n.* iv. 2997, vii. 4968, open.

unseen, *a. v.* 3572, unseen.  
 unsely, *a. i.* 88, *v.* 459, viii. 2360, unhappy.  
 unsemlieste, *see* thunsemlieste.  
 unserved, *a. iii.* 2277.  
 unsittende, *a. vii.* 1736, unfitting.  
 unskilfully, *adv.* vii. 4757, unjustly.  
 unsofte, *a. iii.* 123.  
 unsowed, *v. a. pp.* viii. 1183.  
 unspeid, *a. viii.* 532, without success.  
 unstable, *a. P.* 863, ii. 1226.  
 unstoken, *pp.* v. 34, opened.  
 untame, *a. iii.* 245, wild.  
 unteid, *a. iii.* 830, iv. 3462, vi. 598, unrestrained, wandering.  
 unthewed, *a. i.* 3040, wrongly disposed.  
 unthryve, *v. n.* v. 2508, be unprosperous.  
 untill, *prep.* i. 2061, iv. 3058, unto.  
 unto, *prep.* P. 80, 152, i. 2162, iv. 684, &c., un to, P. 339, viii. 3069.  
 untome (= unto me), iii. 99.  
 untoward, *prep.* iv. 559, v. 2622, towards.  
 untrenly, untrewly, *adv.* v. 5814, vii. 5239, untrewely, v. 6976.  
 untrewe, *a. P.* 536, i. 1201.  
 untrist, untrust, *s. v.* 585, 717, mistrust.  
 untrowthe, untrouthe, *s. i.* 926, ii. 852, 2750, v. 5683.  
 untruwe, *v. a. v.* 4988, unload.  
 unwaked, *a. vii.* 4966, asleep.  
 unwar, *a. ii.* 1041, iv. 15, vi. 1262, *pl.* unaware, P. 393, ignorant, careless, unknown.  
 unwarli, *adv.* vii. 4784.  
 unwedded, *a. ii.* 785, v. 6436.  
 unweide, *a. iii.* 989, vii. 1855, unmanageable, helpless.  
 unwarred, *a. iii.* 2317, free from war.  
 unwis, *see* unwys.  
 unworschipe, *s. vii.* 2130, dishonour.  
 unworthely, *adv.* vii. 2479.  
 unwys, *a. ii.* 208, iv. 3529, unwis, viii. 2094, *def.* unwise, iii. 1799, *pl.* unwise, v. 742.  
 up, *prep.* ii. 3469, iv. 1002, 1342, v. 160, upon: *adv.* P. 570, i. 339, 1184, v. 3530; *cp.* uppe: up so down, ii. 1744, iii. 80, iv. 561.  
 upbere, *v. a. pp.* upbora, v. 1814, viii. 405, 631.  
 upcaste, *v. a. pret.* iv. 3032, viii. 1156, *pp.* upcast, i. 697.  
 updrawe, *v. a. pp.* ii. 794, v. 3313, viii. 599, brought up, drawn up.  
 upheld, *v. a. pret.* i. 985.

upleste, *v. a. pret.* i. 1674, vii. 2264, upliste, i. 198, lifted up; *v. n.* upleste, P. 696, was raised.  
 upon, *prep.* P. 27, 61, 781, i. 968, 1000, 1197, 1599, 2673, ii. 2899, iii. 2425, iv. 236, 2080, 3101, (uppon, viii. 2959); *adv.* v. 3556, hier upon, v. 7206: on, upon, into, with regard to, by reason of.  
 uppe, *adv.* P. 344, i. 2570, iv. 1831: *cp.* up.  
 upriht, upryht, *a. and adv.* P. 147, 656, 1028, i. 746, ii. 253, vii. 5282.  
 uprihtes, upryhtes, *adv.* P. 940, i. 2918, iii. 2634.  
 upriste, *s. i.* 2198, rising.  
 upset, *v. a. pp.* v. 2316, set up, upsete, viii. 244, overthrown.  
 upward, *adv.* i. 663, v. 3978.  
 us, *s. P.* 359, i. 2695, v. 137, use, usage.  
 usage, *s. v.* 7542, vi. 664.  
 usance, *s. i.* 2027, vi. 569, custom.  
 use(n), *v. a. P.* 397, i. 342, 1373, 2101, v. 6578, (*pp.* used, viii. 2964), use, practise; *v. n.* ii. 400, v. 38, be wont.  
 usure, *s. v.* 4384 ff.

## V

vailable, *a. vii.* 1526, 3176, PP. 142, serviceable.  
 vaillant, *a. iv.* 1633, valiant.  
 valle, *v. n.* vii. 144, profit.  
 Valentinian, v. 6398.  
 Valerie, Valeire, v. 6360, vii. 3181.  
 vallie, *s. v.* 1013, vii. 3320, valley.  
 value, *s. ii.* 3410, iii. 2765.  
 vanite, *s. i.* 451, 2784, v. 215, vii. 2410.  
 vanyesht, *v. n. pp.* v. 3959.  
 variance, *s. P.* 542, vii. 1758.  
 vasselage, *s. v.* 902, 6435, prowess.  
 vecke, *s. i.* 1675, hag.  
 Vegetius, v. 885.  
 vegetabilia, iv. 2535.  
 veile, *v. a.* viii. 1261.  
 vein, *a. ii.* 1713, *def.* vein, P. 221, i. 599, *fem.* veine, P. 262, i. 2677, *pl.* veine, i. 2689; in vein, i. 1946, 2736, ii. 2253.  
 veines, veynes, *s. pl.* ii. 3123, iv. 3463, v. 4164, viii. 1186, veins.  
 veneison, *s. iv.* 1996, game (in hunting).  
 Venenas, vii. 1393.  
 venerie, *s. v.* 1262, hunting.

**venerien**, *a.* vii. 795, 1347.  
**vengable**, *a.* iv. 3510, apt to take vengeance.  
**vengance**, *s.* i. 378, 1433, (*vengaunce*, viii. 2997\*).  
**venge(n)**, *v. a. and refl.* i. 991, 2578, ii. 1285, iii. 1013, vii. 2891, *avenge*.  
**vengement**, *s.* i. 1457, viii. 220, *vengeance*.  
**Venus**, *i.* 124, 235 ff., 2491, iii. 1462, 2555, iv. 419, 824, 1262, 1467, 1787, 3558, 3658, v. 650, 859, 917, 1388 ff., 1493, 4827, 4861, 5819, 5843, 6715, 6753, 7413, 7479 ff., vi. 506, 614, 639, 2425, vii. 20, viii. 2172 ff.; (the planet) iv. 2473, 3245, vii. 773, 797, 1020, 1113, 1135, 1231, 1315, 1382, 1395, 1421.  
**venym**, *s.* P. 858, ii. 2294, 3490.  
**Ver**, vii. 1014.  
**Verconius**, iv. 2433.  
**vernage**, *s.* vi. 218, (a kind of wine).  
**verrai**, **verray**, *a.* P. 978, i. 1450, 2451, ii. 3397, iv. 2275, **veray**, **verai**, iv. 2519, v. 1774, *true*.  
**verrailliche**, **verrally**, *adv.* i. 904, vi. 116, 866.  
**vers**, *s.* vi. 70, *order*.  
**vertu**, *s.* P. 79, 360, iv. 2327, vii. 1545, *virtue*, *power*.  
**vertue**, *v. refl.* iii. 2766, *endeavour*.  
**vertules**, *a.* vii. 1319, *without virtue*.  
**vertuous**, *a.* P. 39, ii. 7, iv. 2635, vii. 1327, 1548, *virtuous*, *powerful*.  
**verveyne**, *s.* v. 4039.  
**Vesper**, iv. 3209.  
**vessel(l)**, *s.* ii. 1133, 3445, vii. 3500.  
**Veste**, v. 892.  
**vestment**, *s.* v. 7135.  
**viage**, *s.* ii. 2528, iv. 218, 1948, viii. 1540, *journey*.  
**vicair**, *s.* ii. 2804.  
**vice**, *s.* P. 79, i. 577, 647.  
**violous**, *a.* vii. 792.  
**victoire**, *s.* P. 1001, i. 2476, iii. 2681.  
**vigile**, *s.* iv. 3252.  
**vil**, *a.* P. 887, i. 2098.  
**vilein**, *a.* iii. 1182, v. 7203, *pl.* **vileins**, P. 738, *worthless*, *cowardly*: *subst.* iii. 1244, iv. 2300, vii. 3062, *boor*, *commoner*.  
**vilenie**, **vileinie**, *s.* i. 2408, v. 170, viii. 1431, *worthlessness*, *unworthy deed*.  
**vinés**, *s. pl.* iv. 2441, v. 1229.  
**vinour**, *s.* vii. 1875, *vine-grower*.  
**Viola**, v. 4811, 4849.  
**violence**, *s.* ii. 2977, iii. 24, iv. 607.  
**violent**, *a.* vii. 946, 4551.  
**virelai**, *s.* i. 2709, 2727.

**Virgile**, v. 2032, vi. 98, viii. 2714.  
**virgine**, *s.* v. 1773 ff., 6363 ff., viii. 52.  
**virginite**, *s.* v. 6243, 6340 ff., viii. 204.  
**Virginus**, vii. 5136.  
**Virgo**, vii. 1081 ff., 1249.  
**visage**, *s.* P. 112, i. 1684, ii. 1789, iii. 1784, vii. 4046, *face*, *appearance*, *pretext*.  
**viser**, *s.* i. 637, ii. 2081, *mask*.  
**visioun**, *s.* v. 7410.  
**visite**, *v. a.* ii. 917.  
**vitaille**, *v. a.* ii. 711, 1031, *victual*.  
**Vitellus**, **Vitelle**, vi. 538, 563.  
**voide**, *a.* iv. 2098, v. 1914, viii. 36, *empty*, *clear*.  
**voide**, **voyde**, *v. a.* i. 1890, ii. 2125, iv. 2084, PP. 317, *empty*, *drive away*.  
**vois**, *s.* i. 495, 1828, v. 995, 1721, *voice*, *rumour*, *vote*.  
**voisdie**, *s.* vii. 3739, *cunning*.  
**voluptuosite**, *s.* viii. 156.  
**vou**, *s.* v. 5816.  
**vouche**, *v. a.* iii. 486, iv. 668, *affirm*.  
**vowe**, *v. a.* i. 3021.  
**Vulcanus**, v. 642 ff., 956.

## W

**wacche**, *v. n.* ii. 110, *watch*.  
**wacche**, **wachoe**, *s.* iv. 2808, v. 2241, *watch*.  
**wade**, *v. n.* ii. 2221, iii. 228.  
**waile**, **weille**, *v. n.* i. 3025, v. 7443.  
**waileway**, *interj.* viii. 327.  
**waisshe(n)**, *v. a. n. and refl.* v. 301, 1471, *pret. s.* **wisshe**, v. 306, **wyshe**, v. 3806, vii. 2283, *pl.* **wisshe(n)**, v. 3836, *pp.* **waisshen**, i. 2846; *wash*.  
**waite**, **wayten**, *v. n.* ii. 110, 117, iii. 915, 2090, iv. 802, *wait*, *keep watch*; *v. a.* v. 7112, PP. 204, *watch for*, *attend to*.  
**wake(n)**, *v. n.* iii. 51, iv. 2709, 2837, 3314, *pret. wok*, i. 914, ii. 1349, *wake*, *stay awake*.  
**wakere**, *s.* iv. 3162.  
**wakinge**, *s.* iv. 3142.  
**wal**, *see wall*.  
**Wales**, ii. 904.  
**walke**, *v. n.* i. 99, ii. 758, 2094, iii. 364.  
**wall**, **wal**, *s.* P. 836, ii. 1089, 2893, *pl.* **walles**, i. 1155.  
**walle**, *v. a.* v. 7230.  
**wane**, *s.* v. 5369, vii. 591.  
**wanhope**, *s.* iii. 281, iv. 3397, *despair*.  
**wantounesse**, *s.* iv. 1277, v. 6116, vii. 798.



wantounly, *adv.* iv. 1017.

war, *a.* P. 508, i. 330, 1075, ii. 557, *pl.* ware, viii. 1392, be war, ii. 1606, v. 7838, aware, careful.

war, *v. n. and refl. imperat.* war thes wel, iii. 968, v. 7606, war hem wel, ii. 1113, war, vii. 1137.

warrant, *s. i.* 1695, ii. 1237, v. 1924, security, warrant.

warde, *s. i.* 332, iii. 1953, v. 5298, guard; *pl.* wardes, v. 1868, wards (of a key).

warde, *v. a. n. i.* 331, 536, iii. 1954, v. 5297, guard.

wardein, *s. v.* 6614, 7152\*.

warle, *v. a. v.* 510, 3913, curse.

warisoun (-on), *s. i.* 671, 3349, property.

warm, *a.* iii. 314, iv. 422, vii. 4135, al warm, ii. 2485, v. 679.

warne, *v. a.* viii. 1194.

warne, *v. a. i.* 2506, ii. 1436, 2092, iv. 1432, warn, command, inform.

warnynge, *s.* viii. 581.

was, were, &c., *see* be.

was, *as subst.* viii. 2435.

wast, *a.* P. 839, v. 7816, desolate, wasted.

wast, *s. (1), i.* 1192, v. 356, 4656, waste.

wast, *s. (2), v.* 7143, waist.

waste, *v. a.* P. 649, i. 2836, 3310.

wastour, *s. v.* 1053.

water, *s. i.* 2194, ii. 2189, 3170, iv. 3009, vii. 238, water stronde, i. 1169, water Nymphes, v. 1182, waterspoute, vii. 1193.

watergates, *s. pl.* iii. 689, 987.

waterpot, *s.* iii. 673.

wawe, *s. i.* 2945, ii. 24, 728, iv. 3083.

waxe, wexe, *v. n.* P. 629, ii. 2260, iii. 56, iv. 345, 3 *s. pres.* wext, vi. 34, waxeth, P. 1078, 3 *s. pret.* wax, P. 914, ii. 1713, 3 *pl.* woxan, P. 914, vii. 1995, *pp.*

woxe, v. 9, 6008.

way, *see* wele.

wayt, *s. ii.* 2447, 2999.

wayten, *see* walte.

we, *pron.* P. 2, i. 842, &c., *cp.* ous.

wedd, *s. i.* 1558, pledge; to wedde, i. 1588, ii. 2662, iv. 2876, as a pledge.

wedde(n), *v. a. n. i.* 1587, 1741, 2486, ii. 623, 664, 1305, v. 486, *pp.* weddidd, iv. 650, wedded, i. 1761.

wedded, *a. v.* 4655, 5631.

weddinge, *s.* vii. 5326.

wede, *s. ii.* 1847, v. 6209, dress, cover.

weder, *s. i.* 2925, ii. 1888, iii. 1029, v. 7048, weather, wind.

weene, *s. iv.* 2595, expectation.

weene, *v. see* wene.

weer, *see* wer.

wele, *s.* P. 17, 232, i. 89, 818, 1002, 1712, 3440, (weye, viii. 3058\*), wey, i. 1562, way, v. 6596; do wey, vii. 5408; mi

wele, his wele (= away), viii. 1452, PP. 336; way, road, means.

wele, *v. a. n.* v. 4412, vii. 1105, PP. 91, *pp.* wele, PP. 320, weigh.

welle, *see* walle.

weke, *s. i.* 3110, vii. 957, week.

wel, *adv.* P. 92, 522, 616, &c. wel, P. 648, vii. 816, wel is, i. 1605, wel you be, ii. 1513, *cp.* iii. 840, wel the more, &c., P. 55\*, ii. 3512, 3523, wela fourtenyht, iv. 1418, als

(also, wel... as, i. 1316, 2248 f, ii. 3408.

wel, wele, *s.* P. 547, i. 149, 2371, iii. 283, 780, iv. 1070, prosperity, happiness.

welcome, *a. v.* 3788.

welcome, *v. a. v.* 3373, viii. 1895.

welcominge, welcomyng, *s. ii.* 671, v. 3813, vi. 1504.

welde(n), *v. a. n.* 2411, iv. 1828, v. 77, 1631, vii. 657, manage, rule.

welfare, *s. ii.* 225, iv. 3412.

welke, *v. n.* P. 934, wither; *pp.* welked, viii. 2437.

welkne, *s.* P. 928, iii. 985, viii. 1042.

welle, *s. i.* 148, 2306, 2343, iii. 1408, well, spring; welle stremes, vii. 251.

wellwillende, *a.* iv. 507, well disposed.

welmore, *adv.* i. 973, iii. 455, 797, much more.

welnyh, *adv.* P. 30, i. 983, vi. 1685.

welthe, P. 95, 787, i. 2495, ii. 1207, prosperity, wealth.

welwillinge, *s. iii.* 599, 2258, goodwill.

wenche, *s. ii.* 3097.

wende(n), *v. a. v.* 522, *pret.* wente, ii. 2248, *pp.* want, P. 246, iii. 678, v. 4450, vii. 442, turn; *v. n. and refl.* P. 591, i. 2090, 3 *s.*

*pres.* went, i. 50, *pret.* wente, i. 143, 826, 1163, v. 3314, went, v. 7533, turn, go.

wene, weene, *v. n.* P. 337, 656, i. 681, 1603, 1897, ii. 2479, iv. 911, 2596, *pret.* wende, i. 2005, ii. 2289, think, expect, trust; *v. a.*

i. 925, 1194, ii. 2018, *pret.* wende, i. 1187, expect, believe.

wenge, *see* wyng.

wente, *s. iv.* 168, v. 2726, vi. 1029, vii. 2250, turn, way, device.

wenynge, wenyng, i. 1946, 1958, 2267, expectation, thought.

wepe, *v. n.* i. 115, 955, 965, 2325, 3 *s.* *pres.* wepeth, i. 2338, *pret.* wepte, i. 2180, 2325, weep.

wepinge, *s. i.* 2188, 3171, viii. 522.

**wepne**, *s.* ii. 1767, v. 338, weapon.  
**wepneles**, *a.* vii. 2850, without arms.  
**wer**, **weer**, *s.* P. 143, i. 1924, iii. 1148, doubt, difficulty.  
**werche**, *see* **worche(n)**.  
**were** (1), *v. a.* P. 356, iv. 1429, *pp.* **wered** (oute), P. 870, wear; *v. n.* **were** (oute), P. 368.  
**were** (2), *v. a.* v. 3615, defend.  
**were**, *s.* vii. 4813, wearing.  
**werinesse**, *s.* vii. 3264\*.  
**werk**, *s.* P. 51, i. 1090, 2542, *pl.* **werkes**, P. 491, iii. 1274.  
**werke**, *see* **worche(n)**.  
**werkman**, *s.* i. 1091.  
**werkmanschipe**, *s.* i. 2541.  
**werne**, *v. a.* i. 1931, ii. 85, iv. 2066, viii. 948; *v. n.* i. 2622, prevent, refuse.  
**werre**, *s.* P. 129, i. 2463, 3288, war.  
**werre**, *v. a.* iii. 2489, 2537, fight against, *pp.* **werred**, iv. 1805, be engaged in war; *v. n.* iii. 2584, v. 6420\*, make war.  
**werre**, *see* **werse**.  
**werreleur**, *s.* ii. 2516, iii. 2348, PP. 130.  
**werse**, *a. comp.* P. 638, iii. 1563, **worse**, P. 57, iii. 2598; *as subst.* the **werse**, iii. 587, the **worse**, v. 7353, the **werre**, P. 176, iii. 1646, for bet, for **wers**, iv. 673: *adv.* **wurse**, v. 6994, **worse**, vii. 5293.  
**werste**, *a. sup.* i. 3057, **worste**, iii. 2102; *as subst.* the **werste**, P. 641, ii. 1675, v. 7363, *cp.* viii. 1067, the **worste**, ii. 443, v. 3278: *adv.* **werst**, **worst**, i. 326, iv. 420, **worste**, i. 2360.  
**wery**, *a.* iii. 1153, vii. 415, weary.  
**west**, *s.* vii. 565.  
**westward**, *adv.* vii. 576.  
**wet**, *a.* i. 1680, *pl.* **wete**, v. 4087; *as subst.* the **wete**, vi. 1271.  
**wete**, *v. a.* vi. 1042, *pret.* **wette**, v. 3973, **wet**.  
**wether**, *s.* v. 4045, vi. 429, ram.  
**wetinge**, *s.* iv. 1109, wetting.  
**weve**, *v. a. n.* v. 1283, vii. 4333, *pret.* **waf**, v. 5770, weave.  
**wevinge**, *s.* iv. 1175.  
**wex**, *s.* iv. 1055, vi. 1958, wax.  
**wexe**, *see* **waxe**.  
**wey**, *see* **weie**.  
**weyhte**, *s.* ii. 341, 1926, iii. 1572, weight, balance.  
**weyve**, *v. a.* i. 479, 2894, ii. 610, 2930, iii. 1061, iv. 3692, vi. 1456, 2058, **weive**, iii. 1854, viii. 1288, put aside, refuse, leave, vacate; *v. n.* ii. 3469, iii. 1768, 2509, turn aside, refuse, leave off.

**whan**, **whanne**, *conj.* P. 9, 343, i. 112, **whan** that, P. 37, 337, **when**, i. 1757, 2402.  
**what**, *pron. and a.* P. 26, i. 881, (= whatever) P. 69\*, i. 281, iii. 325, **what** man, iii. 2508, **what** womman, i. 1610, **what** . . . that, P. 68, 399, 997, **what** as (evere), P. 487, i. 1830, v. 351, **what** . . . **what**, iv. 701, v. 527, 7583, **what** . . . and, viii. 856, **what** time, iv. 1983.  
**what**, *s.* i. 1676, iii. 1217, v. 4429, thing.  
**whel**, *see* **whiel**.  
**whelp**, *s.* i. 1259.  
**when**, *see* **whan**, **whenne**.  
**whenne**, **when**, *interr. adv.* iv. 578, viii. 738, 989, **fro** **whenne**, ii. 3135, v. 614, **fro** **whenne** that, ii. 1147, **fro** **when**, iv. 1336; *conj.* **whenne** as **evere**, i. 3375, **whenne** that, ii. 1583: **whence**.  
**wher** (1), **where**, *interr. adv.* P. 381, i. 126, 932; *conj.* P. 288, i. 35, **wher** that, P. 666, **wher(e)** as (evere), P. 893, i. 37, iii. 2339, iv. 2877; **wher** on, iv. 3001, **elles** **where**, ii. 1979, iii. 2079: **where**.  
**wher** (2), *interr. adv.*, **wher** . . . or, i. 57, 1811; *conj.*, **wher** . . . or, i. 789, iii. 1000, iv. 1516, **wher** so . . . or, iv. 641, v. 466, 3569, viii. 2220: **whether**.  
**wherby**, *rel. adv.* v. 4991.  
**wherinne**, *rel. adv.* iv. 1835.  
**wherof**, *rel. adv.* P. 47, i. 454, 829, 1203, iv. 1790, vii. 741, (**whereof**, PP. 17 ff., **wher** of, viii. 2952 ff.), **wherof** that, i. 541, 1266; of which, **whence**.  
**wherto**, *rel. adv.* iii. 254.  
**wherupon**, *rel. adv.* i. 12, v. 268, (**wher** upon, vi. 1762).  
**wherwith**, *rel. adv.* v. 2618.  
**whete**, *s.* iv. 1710, viii. 469.  
**whether**, *a.* ii. 1725, iii. 1733, iv. 1741, which (of the two), which ever.  
**whether**, *conj.*, **whether** that . . . or, i. 1332, iv. 1092; *cp.* **wher** (2).  
**whi**, **why**, *interr. adv.* P. 32, 849, i. 2149, iv. 2023, **why** that, P. 557, **whi** ne were it (a wish), iv. 2855; for **why**, v. 4717.  
**which**, *rel. pron. and a.* P. 52, 75, i. 193, 766, 2411, iii. 343 (that which), 2527, the **which**, P. 71, *pl.* **whiche**, P. 707, i. 404, ii. 604, **which**, P. 1016, **which** that, i. 94, **which(e)** as, i. 1653, ii. 2082: *interr.* i. 827; *in exclamation*, iv. 1212, v. 388, 1186.  
**whider**, *interr. adv.* iv. 578, 3446, **whither**.  
**whiderward**, *interr. adv.* vii. 777.

- whiel**, **whel**, P. 138, 444, 561, i. 2490, ii. 241, 1822, iv. 1196, wheel.  
**whil**, **whyl**, **whila**, *conj.* P. 252, i. 762, ii. 1010, iii. 1577, iv. 1495, **whil that**, **whyl that**, i. 963, 3384.  
**while**, **whyte**, s. P. 558, i. 706, 756, 1094, 1264, 1577, 2628, ii. 1846, 2324, 2862, v. 6752; **al the while** (*as conj.*), iii. 2530, **the whyte**, iv. 1565, (meanwhile): short time, time, leisure.  
**whiles**, **whyles**, *see therwhile*.  
**whilom**, P. 54, 886, i. 975, **whylom**, iv. 2347, formerly.  
**whippe**, s. iii. 120.  
**who**, *pron. indef.*, **who that**, P. 13, 550, i. 481, **who so**, P. 1002, **who so that**, v. 50, **who as evers**, iv. 1096, 1685, **as who seith**, P. 43, i. 1381, 2794: *interr.* P. 176, **whowas who**, vii. 2001, viii. 2461: *relat.* **whom**, P. 85, **the whom**, ii. 162, **whos**, P. 444, **the whos**, iv. 3039, v. 1798: *cp.* **which**.  
**why**, *see whi*.  
**whyte**, **whit**, a. ii. 1506, iii. 797, iv. 1348, *def.* **whyte**, iv. 859, *pl.* **whyte**, i. 2045, iv. 1310: *as subst.* **whyte**, iv. 1317, **the whyte**, v. 3016, **the whyte**, iv. 2571.  
**wiocheorast**, s. vi. 1288.  
**wicke**, a. ii. 571, iii. 115, 462, 1651, v. 7353, **wikke**, viii. 3025, *bad: as subst.* v. 5915.  
**wioke**, s. i. 3312, ii. 495, *evil*.  
**wicked**, a. ii. 496, iii. 1626, **wikid**, iii. 649, vii. 3805, **wikid**, P. 459.  
**wickedly**, *adv.* i. 959.  
**wickednesse**, **wikkidnesse**, s. vii. 4723, 5060.  
**wide**, *see wyde*.  
**wiel**, *see wel*.  
**wierde**, s. iii. 1819, **weerde**, (*pl.*) iv. 2765, *destiny*.  
**wif**, s. i. 677, 765, 1573, *genit.* **wyves**, i. 2500, *dat.* **to wyve**, v. 2686, *pl.* **wyves**, ii. 1283, v. 6019, *woman, wife*.  
**wifhode**, s. i. 974, v. 456, vi. 1475.  
**wifles**, a. i. 1411, viii. 1760, *without wife*.  
**wibessinge**, s. iii. 1174, *wishing*.  
**wiht**, **wyht**, s. i. 28, 315, 745, 1548, **wight**, i. 3011, *person, creature*.  
**wikid**, **wikkidnesse**, *see wicked, &c.*  
**wilde**, **wylde**, a. P. 68\*, 1057, i. 1241, ii. 161, 2295, iii. 325, 1638, **a wylde fyr**, v. 2178.  
**wildernesse**, s. iv. 1975, v. 1263, **wylder-nesse**, vii. 3216\*.  
**wile**, *see wyle*.  
**wilful**, a. iii. 2449.
- wille**, **will**, s. P. 477, i. 190, 928, 1953, iii. 1161 ff., iv. 1828, (**wil**, P. 72\*, viii. 3037\*), **will**, *pleasure, wilfulness*.  
**willinge**, s. v. 5744.  
**wind**, *see wynd*.  
**winde**, v. a., *pret.* **wond**, v. 6889.  
**winge**, *see wynges*.  
**winke**, **wynke**, v. n. i. 384, v. 1842, *close the eye*.  
**winne**, *see wyne*.  
**winnynge**, s. iii. 2284.  
**wircho**, *see worcho(n)*.  
**wis**, *see wys*.  
**wiadam**, s. P. 13, i. 2267, viii. 1483.  
**wise**, s. P. 463, i. 478, 747, 2018, 3027, **wysse**, P. 8, *manner*.  
**wisemen**, *see wysman*.  
**wisly**, *see wysly*.  
**wiss**, *adv.*, **als so wiss**, v. 3487, **als so wiss** . . . **as**, v. 4444, *surely*.  
**wisse(n)**, v. a. P. 232, iii. 1640, v. 1669, *inform, guide*.  
**wisshe**, v. n. i. 115, 3164, iii. 1575, iv. 11, *pret.* **wissheide**, i. 120.  
**wisshe**, s. *pl.* iii. 1507, iv. 1107, vii. 4826.  
**wist**, *see wite*.  
**wit**, **witt**, s. P. 14, i. 1309, 1907, iii. 609, 1163 ff., *pl.* **wittes**, P. 81, i. 296, *mind, reason, wits, senses*.  
**wite(n)**, v. a. n. P. 286, i. 2742, 2 s. *pres.* **wost**, ii. 3528, 3 s. **wot**, P. 27, ii. 226, **woot**, i. 1640, 3 *pl.* **witen**, i. 608, *pret.* **wiste**, P. 1024, i. 911, 931, ii. 36, **wist**, ii. 2010, *pp.* **wist**, P. 503, **hadde I wist**, i. 1888, ii. 473, iv. 305, **wiste**, viii. 37, *imperat.* **wite**, i. 2450, *know: cp. not*.  
**with**, *prep. and adv.* P. 85, 132, i. 248, 514, ii. 283, viii. 2501, 2553, **with that**, i. 972, ii. 1528, **forth with**, *see forth*.  
**withal**, *adv.* P. 545, i. 1225, **withalle**, i. 2307, ii. 1777, **withall**, ii. 3474, **with al**, i. 3421, *therewith, moreover*.  
**withdrawe**, v. a. and *refl.* i. 2224, *pret.* **withdrowh**, **withdrouh**, i. 930, iii. 2673, v. 6268, *pp.* **withdrawe**, ii. 2582, iv. 2683, v. 2812, *imperat.* **withdrawgh**, **withdrowh**, iv. 3220, v. 7738; v. n. iv. 1924.  
**withholde**, v. a. iv. 533, v. 3383, *pp.* **withholde**, P. 101, 263, i. 262, iii. 851, *keep, retain (in service)*.  
**withinne**, *prep.* P. 989, i. 1158, 2954, **withinnen**, viii. 959; *adv.* P. 836, i. 360, 875, (**withynne**, viii. 3081).  
**withoute**, *prep.* P. 114, i. 119, **withouten**, P. 985, iii. 55, (**withoute**, **withoute**, viii. 2951, 3089\*), **without: adv. **withoute**,**



- P. 794, i. 597, ii. 4, v. 2279, outside, outwardly, without.
- withsein, withsele**, *v. a.* iii. 978, 2166, 3 *s. pres.* **withseith**, ii. 2806, **withseid**, iii. 1838, oppose, say in opposition.
- withset**, *v. a. pp.* ii. 2335, hindered.
- withstonde**, *v. a.* i. 787, iv. 1993, *pret.* **withstod**, ii. 2973, *pp.* **withstonde**, i. 91; **noght withstondende**, v. 1611, *cp.* vi. 683.
- witles**, *a.* vi. 163, 567, senseless.
- witnesse**, *s.* P. 907, i. 714, 2559, ii. 1696, iii. 487, iv. 2040, evidence, witness.
- witnesse**, *v. a. n.* ii. 3095, v. 2864, vii. 4821, bear testimony (to).
- wo**, *s.* P. 547, iv. 3031, **wo thee be**, i. 1659, iii. 462, *cp.* i. 1076, iii. 802, **wo worthe**, viii. 1334, 2582, **wo begon**, i. 1762, **wo the while**, v. 6752.
- wo**, *a.* ii. 134, v. 3678, sorrowful.
- wod**, *a.* P. 1078, ii. 153, iii. 217, *def.* **wode**, iii. 244, iv. 3064, mad, wild.
- wode**, *s.* i. 110, 344, ii. 2296, (**woode**, v. 7026 \*), *genit.* **wodes**, iv. 1308, wood.
- wode**, *v. n.* iii. 86, rage.
- wodemayde**, *s.* v. 6237, wood-maiden.
- wodesschawe**, *s.* v. 6324, wood.
- woful(l)**, *a.* P. 255, i. 75, 1001, 1674; *sup.* **the wofulleste**, vii. 5017.
- wofully, wofulli**, *adv.* ii. 1149, 3224, vi. 1009.
- wol**, *v.* 1, 3 *s. pres.* P. 482, 750, 963, **woll**, P. 62, i. 838, 1266, **wole**, i. 2389, v. 4516, **wile**, i. 1865, **nyle** (= **ne wyle**), iii. 961, 2 *s. wolt*, i. 2254, **wilt**, i. 3333, *pl.* **yewole**, i. 1831, **ye woll**, i. 66, 3274, **wol ye**, ii. 551, 3 *pl.* **wol**, i. 1363 f., iv. 1678, **wole**, v. 2107, 3 *s. pres. subj.* (?) **wole**, P. 368, iv. 1171, 1215, **wile**, P. 379, i. 35, *pret. ind. and subj.* **wolde**, P. 17, 151, 461, i. 162, 816, 3169, **wold**, v. 4217, 7137, **wolde god**, iv. 899, 1148, *pp.* **wold**, iv. 248; **will, would** (*as auxil.*): *v. a.* i. 3169, iv. 3475, desire.
- woldes**, *as subst. pl.* vi. 923.
- wolf**, *s.* P. 419, iv. 328, vii. 3364.
- wolle**, *s.* iv. 2435, v. 45, 1203, **wulle**, P. 399, iv. 2895, wool.
- wollesak**, *s.* i. 1692, sack of wool.
- wombe**, *s.* P. 609, iii. 190, iv. 2755, belly, womb.
- womman**, *s.* i. 681, ii. 56, *pl.* **wommen**, i. 488.
- wommanhiede** (-hede), *s.* i. 1719, iii. 1607, iv. 602, 2305, v. 533, woman's nature, womanliness.
- wommanlich, wommanly**, *a.* i. 2757, vii. 4879.
- wommanysse, wommannysse, wommanisshe**, *a.* i. 495, 913, iv. 1924, v. 6199, viii. 855, **wommannysch, womanysch**, i. 1530, vii. 4321, womanly, effeminate.
- wonde(n)**, *v. n.* iii. 1569, 2215, v. 7036, turn aside; *v. a.* vii. 5260, avoid.
- wonder**, *s.* P. 75, 243, i. 2798, **wondre**, iv. 1972, (**wondir**, viii. 3093, PP. 47), *pl.* **wondres**, v. 1570; **no wonder thogh, &c.**, i. 1726, 2759.
- wonder**, *a.* i. 67, 411, 1328, **wondrous**: *adv.* P. 604, i. 368.
- wonderfull**, *a.* P. 557, v. 349.
- wonderly** (-li), *adv.* ii. 1544, iii. 1157, iv. 2980.
- wondre**, *v. n.* P. 175, ii. 775, 1508, iv. 3647.
- wondringe**, *s.* v. 5149.
- wone**, *s.* i. 2276, ii. 3260, iii. 149, v. 468, custom, habit.
- wone**, *v. n.* i. 920, ii. 1053, iii. 150, v. 467, dwell.
- wones**, *s. pl.* iv. 2217, v. 210, vii. 4116, viii. 612, possession.
- wont**, *a.* i. 2979, 3036, iv. 3105.
- worche(n)**, *v. a. n.* i. 2615, ii. 215, 1850, iii. 357, 959, iv. 2595, v. 463, **werche**, P. 450, i. 626, v. 1800, (**wirche**, PP. 20, 199), **werke**, i. 633, v. 1894; *pret.* **wroghte**, P. 694, 1008, iii. 1117, (**wroughte**, viii. 3002), *pp.* **wroght**, i. 1061, 2613, work, do.
- worcinge**, *s.* ii. 3485, vii. 1369.
- word**, *s.* P. 113, 460, i. 746, ii. 1406, vii. 1509 ff., (*pl.* **wordis**, viii. 3118 ff.).
- worde**, *v. n.* iii. 742, dispute.
- world**, *s.* P. 10, 28, 383, 1081, i. 178, 1257, ii. 2972, iii. 626, iv. 2078, vii. 2521, 2702; **worldes blisse, &c.**, i. 1771, 2683, iii. 2470, **worldes deth**, i. 2213, **a worldes womman**, v. 5755: world, fortune.
- worldesriche**, *s.* iii. 2587, v. 87.
- worldly**, *a.* P. 219; *adv.* vii. 2304.
- worm**, *s.* v. 3716, 5131, serpent.
- worschipe**, *s.* P. 785, i. 919, 1553, v. 188, 195, honour.
- worschipe**, *v. a.* P. 105, v. 1272, honour, worship.
- worschipful**, *a.* ii. 662.
- worse, worst**, *see* **werse, werste**.
- wortes**, *s. pl.* vii. 2297, herbs.
- worth**, *s.* P. 636, iv. 1327.
- worth**, *a.* P. 629, i. 1927, iii. 1652.
- worthe**, *v. n.* vi. 279, become, **wo worthe**, viii. 1334, 2582.

- worthi**, *a.* P. 45, i. 203, 316, 764, iv. 1335, v. 105; *as subst. pl.* v. 2058; *sup.* the **worthieste**, i. 1432, vi. 1600.  
**worthili** (-ly), *adv.* ii. 604, 2649.  
**worthinesse**, *s.* P. 50\*, i. 1435, iv. 1156.  
**wounde**, *s.* i. 1426, iii. 308, vii. 1568, wound.  
**wounde(n)**, *v. a.* iv. 2002, vii. 4282, *pp.* wounded, viii. 2818.  
**wow**, *s.* iii. 1341, iv. 246, wall.  
**wowe**, *v. n.* iv. 161, 2281, 2711, v. 2888, woo.  
**wower**, *s.* ii. 52, wooer.  
**wrastle**, *v. n.* viii. 2240 f.  
**wrathful**, *a.* vii. 411.  
**wrathfulli**, *adv.* v. 7202.  
**wraththe**, *s.* i. 3325, iii. 83, 842, **wrathe**, iii. 21.  
**wraththe(n)**, *v. n. and refl.* iii. 385, 401, *pret.* **wroth**, viii. 1692, be angry.  
**wreche**, *s.* i. 2098, v. 4856, wretch.  
**wreche**, *s.* P. 899, ii. 572, iii. 231, v. 388, **wrieche**, vii. 537, 4731, **wreeche**, iii. 2147, vengeance.  
**wreke**, *v. a.* i. 1519, iii. 1109, iv. 3618, *pp.* **wroke(n)**, ii. 536, 2174, iii. 860, **wreke**, ii. 186, v. 5869, *avenger*, satisfy.  
**wrenne**, *s.* viii. 2227.  
**wrieche**, *see wreche*.  
**wringe**, *v. a.* iii. 1426, iv. 2673.  
**writ**, *s.* ii. 3386, v. 1923, viii. 2698.  
**write**, *see wryte*.  
**writere**, *s.* iv. 2657.  
**writhe**, *v. a.* *pp.* vii. 5341, *twisted*.  
**writinge**, *see wrytinge*.  
**wroughte**, **wrought**, *see worohen*.  
**wrong**, *a.* ii. 2391, v. 5743, *def.* **wrong**, ii. 295, *pl.* **wronge**, iv. 3709.  
**wrong**, *s.* P. 251, ii. 1739, iii. 2425, PP. 106, with **wrong** (= *wrongly*), vi. 2320.  
**wronge**, *v. n.* ii. 3070, v. 7634, *do wrong*.  
**wrongful**, **wrongfull**, *a.* ii. 2980, iii. 2343, 2354, v. 7385, vii. 5247.  
**wroth**, *a.* i. 368, 1204, iii. 217, *for wroth*, vi. 1696, *pl.* **wrothe**, P. 920, iv. 1873.  
**wryte(n)**, *v. a. n.* P. 6, 21, i. 74, &c., (*write*, P. 56\*, viii. 3014\*), 3 *s. pres.* **writ**, P. 13, vii. 4560, *pret.* **s. wrot**, i. 1487, *pl.* **write(n)**, P. 1, i. 1857, iv. 2525, *pret. subj.* **write**, P. 41, *pp.* **write(n)**, P. 3, iv. 1662; *write*.  
**wrytinge**, **wrytynge**, *s.* P. 38, ii. 3030, iv. 2924, vi. 2438, **wrytyage**, P. 53\*, **wrytinges** (*pl.*), i. 8.  
**wulle**, *see wolle*.  
**wurse**, *see werse*.  
**wyde**, **wide**, *a.* P. 100, i. 627, ii. 595; *adv.* vii. 3320, **wydewhere**, iii. 1019, viii. 1460.  
**wydewhere**, *adv.* vii. 3456, *far and wide*: *see wyde*.  
**wyht**, *see wiht*.  
**wyhte**, *a.* *pl.* viii. 681, *nimble*.  
**wylde**, *see wilde*.  
**wyle**, *s.* i. 755, 2627, ii. 480, **wiles**, (*pl.*) i. 2588, *cunning*, *wile*.  
**wympel**, **wimpel**, *s.* iii. 1396, 1419, v. 6889.  
**wyn**, *s.* i. 2549, ii. 1008, *pl.* **wynes**, iv. 2442, *wine*.  
**wynd**, *s.* P. 923, i. 2410, **wind**, viii. 2851.  
**wynddrive**, *pp.* vi. 1423, *driven by wind*.  
**wyndi**, **wyndy**, *a.* vi. 1418, viii. 1146.  
**wyndou**, **wyndowe**, *s.* v. 6513, 6661.  
**wyndrunke**, *a.* vi. 547, *drunk with wine*.  
**wynge**, **winge**, *s.* ii. 417, v. 6005, 6526, *pl.* **wynges**, iii. 2107, iv. 111, **wenges**, viii. 2655.  
**wynke**, *see winke*.  
**wynne**, **winne**, *v. a. n.* P. 265, 403, i. 792, 823, 1809, *pret.* **wan**, P. 709, i. 3421, *pl.* **wonne**, iii. 2049, *pret. subj.* **wonne**, iv. 2782, *pp.* **wonne**, P. 687, i. 755, iv. 2184, vi. 2231, **wunne**, vi. 2092, *win*, *get*, *make*, *gain*; *v. n.* **winne** (*away*), v. 352, *get (away)*.  
**wynter**, *s.* i. 2355, 3253, *genit.* **wyntres**, v. 5959, *pl.* **wytk num.**, **wyntar**, i. 1153, 1803, ii. 3207; *as a.* P. 938, i. 1167, ii. 1817, iii. 684.  
**wyny**, *a.* viii. 2849.  
**wype**, *v. a.* v. 6529.  
**wys**, **wis**, *a.* P. 157, i. 1899, *def.* **wyse**, P. 65, i. 3396, *pl.* **wise**, P. 363, i. 2017, 2768, iv. 2367; *as subst. sing.* the **wise**, ii. 3248, *pl.* **wyse**, P. 7; *superl.* the **wiseste** (*as subst.*), P. 666, i. 1097; *wise*.  
**wyse**, *s.* *see wise*.  
**wysly**, **wisly**, *adv.* i. 536, ii. 2854, vii. 2482.  
**wysman**, **wisman**, *s.* P. 68, i. 130, 1064, iii. 954, *pl.* **wisemen**, vii. 1792, *genit.* **wisemennes**, PP. 94.  
**wyte**, *s.* ii. 430, iv. 2622, (**wite**, P. 59\*), *blame*, *censure*.  
**wyte**, *v. a.* ii. 1844, *charge*; *to (forto)* **wyte**, P. 530, i. 20, 263, 592, 1455, 2214, (*to wite*, viii. 3013\*), *to be blamed*.  
**wyve**, *v. n.* ii. 3112, iv. 256, *take a wife*.  
**wyve**, **wyves**, *s.* *see wif*.

## Y

**yare** (3), *a.* i. 1165, v. 3299, 5613, ready.  
**ybore**, *see* bere.  
**Ychonithon**, vii. 1453.  
**ydeac**, vi. 1318.  
**ydel**, *a.* i. 1986, iv. 1094, 2678, v. 4724, idle, useless, empty: *adv.* iv. 1152.  
**ydeliche**, *adv.* iv. 1197, idly.  
**ydelnesse**, *s.* iv. 1086, 1104.  
**ydelschipe**, **idelschipe**, *s.* iv. 1729, 2329, vii. 4390.  
**Ydoine**, vi. 879.  
**ydolatrie**, *s.* v. 1587, vii. 4497.  
**Ydomeneux**, iii. 1949.  
**ydriades**, vii. 835, (name of a stone).  
**ydromance**, *s.* vi. 1297, divination by water.  
**ydropesie**, *s.* v. 250, dropsy.  
**ye** (3), *pron.* P. 16, i. 182, 588, 1821, yee, vi. 1071, viii. 1533, *obl.* you, yow, i. 66, 173.  
**ye**, **yee** (3), *adv.* P. 373, i. 550, 740, ii. 17, 1387, yea.  
**ȳe**, *see* yhe.  
**yede** (3), *v. n. pret.* ii. 856, vii. 2786, went.  
**yelde(n)** (3), *v. a.* v. 4926, 7092, *pret. pl.* yolde, viii. 1265, *pp.* yolde, iv. 2125, v. 5648, vii. 4639, render, surrender, repay.  
**yelpe** (3), *v. n.* iv. 3410, v. 6156; *refl.* i. 26, 1651: boast.  
**yelwe** (3), *a.* vii. 4881.  
**yeme** (3), *v. a.* v. 6611, take care of.  
**yer**, **yeer** (3), *s.* P. 25, 779, *pl.* yeress, ii. 711, 1218, 2259, yeeres, iv. 481, yer, i. 2922, 3134; yer (yeer) to yere, yer to yeere, i. 342, ii. 239, v. 1242, yer be yere, ii. 20, yeeres dai, v. 1311: year.  
**yerd** (3), *s.* iv. 870, courtyard.  
**verde** (3), *s.* iii. 369, v. 2363, vii. 4676, stick.  
**yeve** (3), *see* yive(n).  
**yhe**, **ȳe**, *s.* P. 34, 330, i. 305, 903, 2362, v. 2034, *pl.* yhen, i. 140, 774, eye, sight.  
**yhed**, *a.*, bryht yhed, vii. 1857, bright eyed (man).  
**yhte**, *s.* v. 7307, possession.  
**yifte** (3), *s.* i. 794, 1100, ii. 330, gift; god I yive a yifte, iv. 1114, I vow to God, *cp.* iv. 1684.  
**yifteles** (3), *a.* ii. 997.  
**yls** (3), *adv.* ii. 235, 1251, iii. 416, 854, iii. 1269, yes (not specially after a negative).

**yit** (3), *adv.* P. 62, i. 1284, 2364, ii. 60, iii. 199, yet (3), P. 179, i. 576, 786; for the time yit, &c., vi. 311, 893: yet, as yet, moreover.  
**yive(n)** (3), *v. a.* i. 964, 1648, ii. 1208, iv. 1114, yeve, P. 167, 2 *s. pres.* yifst, v. 5856, 3 *s. yifth*, P. 519, iv. 367, *pret.* yaf, P. 226, i. 817, *imperat.* yif, i. 135, 1972, *pp.* yove(n), P. 332, i. 1125, iii. 1594, give.  
**yle**, **ile**, *s.* i. 1578, iv. 435, v. 861, 1254, thyle, v. 1071, island.  
**ylem**, *s.* vii. 216 ff., first substance.  
**Ylia**, v. 894.  
**Ylioun**, v. 7236.  
**ymage**, *s.* P. 604, i. 804, v. 1499.  
**ymagerie**, *s.* v. 5771.  
**ymaginacion** (-oun), *s.* i. 958, 2269, 3069, ii. 2845.  
**ymaginyng**, *s.* vii. 3312.  
**ynche**, *s.* i. 1112, inch.  
**Ynde**, iii. 2447, iv. 2056, v. 1049, 1910.  
**Yndien**, *a.* v. 4732.  
**Yno**, v. 4271 ff.  
**ynowh**, *a.* i. 929, 1565, *pl.* ynowhe, ynowe, i. 1135, ii. 3226; *subst.* ynogh, ynow, v. 84, 2485: enough.  
**ynowh**, **ynouh**, **ynow**, **ynou**, *adv.* ii. 3319, v. 2607, 5010, vii. 2100, sufficiently.  
**Yo**, iv. 3319 ff.  
**yock** (3), *s.* v. 108, yoke.  
**yoke(n)** (3), *v. a.* iv. 1836, v. 3519, yoke.  
**yomen** (3), *s. pl.* vi. 1811.  
**yong** (3), *a.* i. 488, *def.* yonge, i. 790, iv. 503, *pl.* yonge, ii. 3219, iii. 1800; *as subst. pl.* i. 2086, v. 3930; *comp.* yonger, v. 5395; *sup.* the yongest, i. 3133.  
**yongly** (3), *a.* v. 7202\*, viii. 2674.  
**you**, **yow** (3), *see* ye.  
**youre** (3), *poss. pron.* i. 2768, iii. 596, 1087, your, iii. 627; *disj.* youres, i. 1852.  
**yowthe**, **youth** (3), *s.* i. 730, iii. 153, 793, iv. 1588, (person) viii. 2462 ff.  
**Ypocras**, vi. 1409.  
**ypocrisie**, **ipocrisie**, *s.* i. 585, 635, 1034, 1079, hypocrisy.  
**ypocrite**, *s.* i. 591 ff.  
**Ypolitus**, v. 967.  
**yren**, *see* iren.  
**Yris**, iv. 2972 ff.  
**ys**, *s.* ii. 1824, vi. 245, ice.  
**Ysis**, i. 806, v. 801, 816, Isis, iv. 460, Ysis temple, i. 842, 858.  
**Ysolde**, vi. 472, viii. 2501.

**Ytalle**, iv. 93, 2183, v. 887, 903, 1223.  
**Ytalie**, ii. 591.  
**Ytaapia**, vii. 1785.  
**yvor**, s. iv. 383, ivory.  
**yvy** (leaf), s. iv. 586, ivy (leaf).  
**ywisa**, *adv.* i. 1281, ii. 2394, *iwisa*, i. 1226, certainly.

**Z**

**Zelpha**, viii. 131.  
**Zensia**, iv. 2421.  
**zodiaque**, s. vii. 697, 977.  
**Zorastes**, vi. 1402, 2368.  
**Zorobabel**, vii. 1802 ff.

INDEX TO THE NOTES

**abaissht**, iv. 1330.  
**abeche**, vi. 709.  
**accidence**, ii. 3210.  
**Achelons**, iv. 2045.  
**adjective forms**, P. 139, 221, 738, i. 636, 1006, 2677, ii. 2341, 3507, iv. 1320, 2624, vii. 4245.  
**aftercast**, iv. 904.  
**a game**, viii. 2319.  
**Alanus de Insulis**, viii. 2341.  
**Albertus Magnus**, v. 6498: see also *Speculum Astronomiae*.  
**Albumasar**, vii. 283, 989, 1239.  
**alchemy**, terms of, iv. 2462 ff.  
**Alexander**, *Historia de Preliis*, v. 1453, 1571, 2543, vi. 1789 ff., Romance of, vi. 1789 ff., see also *Roman de toute Chevalerie*.  
**Alfraganus**, vii. 1461.  
**algorisme**, vii. 155.  
**Almagest**, vii. 983, 1449.  
**'along on'**, iv. 624.  
**amaied**, i. 2030.  
**anacoluthon**, i. 98, iii. 1593, vi. 1798, vii. 5254.  
**'and'**, position of, P. 155, v. 2815.  
**Andreas Capellanus**, iv. 1245.  
**Antoninus Pius**, vii. 4181.  
**a place, a doun**, &c., i. 2377.  
**Apollonius of Tyre**, *Historia*, viii. 271-1681.  
**appende**, vii. 978.  
**applied**, i. 577.  
**archdeacon's court**, P. 407.  
**arechen**, v. 1826.  
**ariste**, iv. 1285.  
**Aristotle**, vi. 663, vii. 1, 265, 334 ff., 611.  
**article**, use of, P. 72.  
**'as he which'**, &c., i. 695, ii. 785.  
**'as to'**, 'as forto', i. 713.  
**asp**, i. 463 (with *Addenda*).  
**assise**, i. 3050.  
**assub**, vii. 334.  
**asterte**, iii. 626.

**astraid**, vii. 2660.  
**'at after'**, vi. 1831.  
**Augustine**, i. 463, iii. 2363, vi. 2368.  
**Avian's Fables** as authority, ii. 291.  
**Avicen**, iv. 2610.  
**'away'**, v. 7179.  
**Ayen.ite of Inwyf**, vi. 785.  
**Babio** (comedy), v. 4808.  
**baillie**, P. 220.  
**balke**, iii. 515.  
**Barbour's Bruce**, viii. 1393.  
**Barlaam et Josaphat**, i. 2021, v. 729 ff., 2273.  
**believe**, viii. 2500.  
**Benoit de Sainte-More** as authority, i. 483, 1077, iii. 973 ff., 1757, 1885 ff., 2639 ff., iv. 1693, 2135, v. 1831, 2547, 3247 ff., 6435, 7195 ff., 7591, vi. 1391 ff.  
**besele**, besein, viii. 1617.  
**beteche**, vi. 2411.  
**'betwen hem two'**, &c., ii. 653, v. 5025.  
**bewar**, iii. 1496, v. 7838.  
**Bible** as authority, P. 881, i. 2785, iv. 1505, 1935, 2325, 2342, v. 1930, 1952, vi. 986, vii. 1783 ff., 2527, 3149, 3627, 3820, 3860, 3891, 4027, 4406, 4469, 5307.  
**bidde**, btede, bede, v. 4455.  
**blanche fievre**, vi. 239.  
**blesse**, v. 5022.  
**Boccaccio**, i. 389, 2316, ii. 2451, iii. 2555, v. 2273.  
**Boethius** quoted, P. 567, false reference, ii. 261.  
**Bohemian fashions**, viii. 2470.  
**Boniface VIII**, legend of, ii. 2803.  
**bord**, iv. 1741.  
**bot** (=beyond), vii. 694.  
**Bromyard**, *Summa Praedicantium*, ii. 83, vii. 2355.  
**Brunetto Latini** as authority, P. 745 (*Addenda*), i. 463 (*Addenda*), vii. 1-725, 1595 ff., 2115, 3054, 3387.  
**brygantaille**, P. 212.

- burel**, P. 52.  
**Burley**, *De Vita Philosophorum*, iii. 1201.  
**byme** (= by me), i. 232.  
  
**Caecilius Balbus** quoted as Seneca, v. 7736.  
**Callisthenes**, vi. 2274.  
**'cam ride'**, i. 350.  
**Canahim**, vii. 566.  
**capital letters**, use of, iii. 1158, iv. 1285, viii. 1285.  
**Capitolinus**, vii. 4181.  
**Caracalla**, vii. 4574.  
**Catiline**, debate on the conspiracy, vii. 1595 ff.  
**'cause of'**, P. 905.  
**champartie**, iii. 1173.  
**'chase'** at tennis, PP. 295.  
**Chaucer and Gower**, i. 1407 ff., ii. 587 ff., 2451, iii. 143, 1331, iv. 104, 731, 2927, v. 3247, 5231, 5551 ff., vii. 4754, 5131, 7597, viii. 2450, 2573, 2955\*.  
*Chaunces of the Dyse*, iv. 2792.  
**cherry fair** (or feast), P. 454, vi. 891.  
**cheeste**, iii. 417.  
**Cicero** (Cithero), not identified with Tullius, iv. 2648, vii. 1595.  
**cit**, P. 836.  
**Civile**, ii. 83.  
**'coat for the hood'**, v. 4787, 7716.  
**Colchos**, Isle of, v. 3509.  
**Comestor**, Petrus, iv. 647, vii. 3417.  
**'common voice'**, P. 122.  
**conjunctions**, position of, P. 155.  
**conscience**, i. 595.  
**consecutive clauses**, i. 492.  
**conseil**, v. 3904.  
**contenance**, i. 698.  
**contretaille**, viii. 3102\*.  
**'cope (coupe) of hevene'**, vii. 534.  
**crok**, vii. 2268.  
**'cross and pile'**, ii. 390.  
**'curry favel'**, i. *Lat. Verses*, x. 5.  
  
**Daaly**, vii. 351.  
**'danger'**, i. 2443.  
**Dante**, ii. 3095, iv. 2200, 2208.  
**definite form of adjectives**, P. 221, ii. 2341, vii. 4245, before proper names, P. 139.  
**demonstrative for definite article**, P. 900, ii. 317.  
**depos**, ii. 1757.  
**desoryve**, vi. 1110.  
**deserve**, PP. 278.  
**digressions**, v. 729.  
**Dindymus**, Didymus, iv. 2641.  
  
**disorder of clauses**, P. 34\*, i. 2078, ii. 709, iv. 242, 3520.  
**'do wey'**, vii. 5408.  
**dom**, viii. 2113.  
**'doute'**, 'hem stant no doute', ii. 2124.  
**due**, vii. 4195.  
  
**Eges**, vii. 351.  
**elision before 'have'**, i. 2398.  
**elision never prevented by caesura**, PP. 356.  
**elision-apocope**, P. 683, vi. 2062, viii. 2165.  
*Emaré*, ii. 1300.  
**embraoe**, i. 431.  
**entame**, i. 709.  
*Epistola Valerii ad Rufinum*, v. 6398.  
**erasures in Fairfax MS.**, i. 2713, ii. 594, iii. 2346, iv. 1245 (end), vi. 1359, viii. 2938.  
**errors of original copyists**, i. 2410, ii. 833, 1020, 1778, 2537, iii. 1065, iv. 2973, v. 4251, vii. 2698 (margin).  
**eschu**, v. 4748.  
**'-eth' termination of plural verb**, vii. 536.  
**Etna**, fire of, P. 329, ii. 20.  
**'evel' in the metre**, v. 519.  
**'exaltation' of planets**, vii. 1085 ff.  
**'excuse'**, i. 733.  
**exponde**, P. 823.  
  
**Fa crere**, ii. 2122.  
**fale**, i. 2317.  
**'fall' of planets**, vii. 1135 ff.  
**fatalism of Gower**, i. 1714, iii. 352, vi. 995.  
**fawht**, *pret.*, v. 5360.  
**felawe**, P. 795.  
**feminine forms of substantives**, i. 1006, of adjectives, i. 636, 1006, 2677, ii. 3507.  
**ferke**, viii. 603.  
**fet**, viii. 2415.  
**fieldwode**, v. 4039.  
**finde**, vi. 632.  
**'for an ende'**, viii. 1219.  
**'for pure abaissht'**, 'for wroth,' &c., iv. 1330, vi. 1696.  
**fore**, iv. 1723.  
**forebode**, v. 6053.  
**'forwhy and'**, ii. 2025.  
**French plural adjective**, P. 738, fem. adj. i. 636, 1006, 2677, ii. 3507, iv. 2624.  
**Froissart**, iv. 3438, viii. 2450.  
**Fulgentius as authority**, v. 363, 1520, vii. 853.  
  
**Galahot**, viii. 2505.  
**Garland**, *see* Hortulanus.  
**Geber**, iv. 2608.  
**genitive for adjective**, v. 3533, viii. 1374.



- Genius, i. 196: cp. *Vox Clamantis*, iv. 587 ff.  
 'gentillesse,' iv. 2200.  
 geomancy, vi. 1295.  
*Gesta Romanorum*, iii. 1201, v. 2391,  
 7105\*, vii. 2061, 2355, 2889, 2917, 3295;  
 not used by Gower, vii. 2061.  
*Geta* of Vitalis Blesensis, ii. 2459 (*Addenda*).  
 'goddesshalf,' v. 4452.  
 Godfrey of Viterbo as authority, i. 2459,  
 iv. 647, 2396 ff., v. 1541 ff., vii. 2765,  
 2833, 3144, 3295, 4181, 4335, 4574, viii.  
 271, 679, 1311, 1567.  
 gold laid on the book, v. 558.  
 Gregory cited, P. 289, 945, v. 1756, 1900.  
 grein, vi. 770.  
 grisel, viii. 2407.  
 Grosteste, legend of, iv. 234.  
 Guido di Colonna (*or delle Colonne*), iii.  
 2639; also referred to, i. 483, 1077, ii.  
 973 ff., 1757, 1885 ff., v. 3247 ff., 7195,  
 vi. 1391 ff.  
 'had' for 'hadde,' i. 2569.  
 'hadde I wist,' iv. 305.  
 Hampole referred to, viii. 2833.  
 hapne, v. 7830.  
 hed, ii. 2066.  
 'of hed,' iv. 3438.  
 Hegesippus as authority, i. 761, 940.  
 hepe, v. 2872.  
 heraldie, ii. 399.  
 Hermes (Trismegistus), iv. 2410, 2606, as  
 authority, vii. 1281 ff.  
 'heved' in the metre, i. 1536.  
 heavenly, heavenly, v. 774.  
 'hire' in the metre, i. 367.  
 'his oghne (hondes, &c.),' i. 1427, ii. 3260.  
 Hoccleve, vii. 2061, 2416, 2889, 3295.  
 Homer, vi. 330.  
 homeward, i. 938, iii. 2451.  
 Horace, false references to, vi. 1513, vii.  
 3581.  
 hors (*pl.*), iv. 1309.  
 horse side, &c., P. 1085.  
 horses of the sun, vii. 853.  
 Hortulanus, iv. 2533, 2609.  
 'houses' in astrology, vii. 991 ff.  
 Hugh of Fleury, viii. 2573.  
 Hyginus, ii. 2451, iii. 973, iv. 1815, v. 363,  
 4251, 5231 ff., 6435, vi. 399.  
 '-ie' termination, P. 299, 323, ii. 905.  
 'if' interrogative, ii. 11.  
 imperative, 2nd pers. for 3rd, P. 550, viii. 1128,  
*sing. and plur.*, iv. 1432, v. 3986, 7372.  
 incest, iii. 172, viii. 158.  
 infinitive (Latin) as noun, P. *Lat. Verses*, iv. 4.  
 intelligences, vii. 26.  
 interstition, vii. 283.  
 inverted order, i. 833, ii. 2642.  
 Jerome, iii. 641, v. 6359.  
 jeupartie, iii. 1173, vii. 3217.  
 Joachim (Abbot), ii. 3056.  
 John, 'Seint John to borwe,' v. 3416.  
 joutes, vii. 2279.  
 Justin, ii. 1613, vii. 2917, 3417.  
 Justinian II, vii. 3267.  
 Juvenal quoted, vii. 3581.  
 Kaire, ii. 2558.  
 Langharet, ii. 2995.  
 lapwing, v. 6041.  
 Latini, *see* Brunetto Latini.  
 Lay d'Aristote, viii. 2705.  
 Legenda Aurea, ii. 3187 ff.  
 'leng the lasse,' viii. 2055.  
 lere, i. 1509.  
 leste, *adv.* i. 3296.  
 lete, i. 3365, iv. 453.  
 'lete by,' 'let of,' v. 1004, 5840.  
 letters of request, P. 207.  
 Livy, vii. 5093, 5131.  
 loke, P. 52\*.  
 Lombards, ii. 2098.  
 love (= luff), v. 7048.  
 Lydgate, i. 1129, 1917, 2443, iii. 143, iv.  
 869, 1330, 2533.  
 Macer, vi. 1408.  
 maintanue, viii. 3012.  
 Malebouche, ii. 389.  
 'in manere,' vii. 2132.  
 'many,' ii. 447.  
 Matthew Paris, v. 4937.  
 'men,' vi. 321.  
 menable, i. 1067.  
 merel, P. 430.  
 Methodius as authority, viii. 48, 62.  
 mi, min, iv. 3159.  
 microcosm, P. 947.  
 miht, mihte, iii. 1356.  
 mille, viii. 2312.  
*Mirour de l'Homme*, P. 16, 54, 122, 204, 212,  
 323, 407, 430, 480, 823, 836, 900, 910,  
 945 ff., 1066, l. 10, 299, 463, 492, 636, 695,  
 709, 718, 1006, 1067, 1354, 1676, 2677,  
 2703, 3067, 3308, ii. 20, 83, 389, 401, 413,  
 2098, 2430, 3095, 3122, 3507, iii. 431, 585,  
 699, 2599, iv. 9, 60, 448, 893, 914, 1090,  
 1108, 1632, 2014, 2200, 2606, 2738, v. 29,

- 49, 249, 363, 370, 1879, 1900, 1919, 2015, 2238, 4774, 5507, 5550, 6041, 6359, 6372, 6389, 6395\*, 6398, 6498, 7013, 7015\*, 7105\*, 7612, vi. 71, 218, 253, 770, 857, 1513, 1707, vii. 978, 3137, 3144, 3161\* ff., 3581, 5307, viii. 110, 158, 2931, 3012.  
**mistime**, iii. 2458, vi. 4.  
**Morien**, iv. 2609.  
**moste**, viii. 395.  
**mote**, viii. 640.
- '**Namplus**,' '**Nauplus**,' iii. 1002.  
**natheles**, i. 21, vii. 979.  
'**nedle and ston**,' vi. 1422.  
**newe**, P. 92\*.  
'**Nonarcigne**,' v. 1009.  
**Norwich**, bishop of, P. 268.
- Octovien**, gold of, v. 4731.  
'**of hed**,' iv. 3438.  
'**of this lif**,' &c., iv. 3414.  
'**offering**,' v. 7140.  
**oil**, vii. 2194.  
**old, olde**, iii. 782.  
**omission of pronoun subject**, P. 676, i. 1895, vi. 34; of relative, i. 10; of negative, ii. 2423, iii. 78.  
'**on the ferste**,' &c., iv. 2606.  
'**onwrong**,' P. 65\*.  
**oppose**, i. 225.  
'**Orbis**,' vii. 611.  
**order of words**, P. 155, 905, i. 833, ii. 2642, of clauses, P. 34\*, i. 2078, ii. 709.  
**Ormulum**, viii. 2833.  
**Orosius**, ii. 1613, vii. 3417, 4574.  
**orthography**, P. 24\*, 252, 550, 702, iv. 2123, v. 5215, 5248, vii. 3418, viii. 484, 2938, PP. (p. 552).  
**other, othre**, i. 116.  
**outwith**, viii. 2833.  
**overhippe**, v. 2004.  
**Ovid as authority**, P. 1055, i. 333, 389, 2275 ff., ii. 104, 2157, 2451, iii. 143 ff., 361, 736, 783, 818, 1331, 1685, iv. 77, 104, 147, 371, 451, 731 ff., 816, 979, 1035, 1901, 2045, 2927 ff., 3187, 3317, 3515 ff., v. 141 ff., 635, 1009, 3927 ff., 4583, 5231, 5551 ff., 6145 ff., 6225 ff., 6713 ff., 6807, vi. 485, 1445, 1513, vii. 3355, 4593 ff., 4754 ff.  
'**owl on stock**,' iii. 585.
- Pantheon**, see Godfrey of Viterbo.  
**par, per**, i. 2049.  
**paragraphs in the MSS.**, ii. 2451, v. 1323.  
**pars**, v. 4774.  
**participle absolute**, ii. 752, 791, 1723.  
**participle for infinitive**, i. 3153, iv. 249, 816.  
**participle inflected as predicate**, i. 3246.  
**Paulus Diaconus**, i. 2459.  
**Paulus Langius**, ii. 2803.  
**peace with France**, P. 162.  
'**peace with honour**,' PP. 157.  
**peacock**, v. 6498.  
'**peire of bedes**,' viii. 2904.  
**Pericles, Prince of Tyre**, viii. 271, 1534.  
**pernable**, viii. 2931.  
**Physics of Aristotle**, vi. 663.  
'**pillars of Hercules**,' iv. 2054.  
**pipe**, v. 95.  
**plight**, vii. 4228.  
'**poete**,' i. e. Ovid, v. 5231.  
'**positive law**,' P. 247, iii. 172.  
**pronoun subject omitted**, P. 676, i. 1895, vi. 34.  
**Proteus**, v. 3082.  
**provende**, P. 210.  
**proverbs**, P. 416, i. 1293, 1917, iii. 585, v. 4787, 6526.  
**Pseudo**, v. 1879.  
**punctuation**, P. 809, i. 320, 1102, 2548, 2939, ii. 762, 1001 ff., 1173, 1950, iii. 1394, iv. 733, 1490, 1927, 3438 (end), 3542, v. 1636, 1980, 2937, 3966, 3981, 5093, 5724, 6281, vi. 2074, vii. 2302, viii. 1101, 2713.
- queinte**, iv. 2314.
- Ragman**, viii. 2378.  
**Razel**, vi. 1316.  
**relative omitted**, i. 10.  
**reles**, vi. 253.  
**remene**, v. 6541.  
**repetition of line**, i. 2106, iii. 352.  
**reprise**, i. 3308, v. 4708.  
**rhyme**, ii. 2578, 2680, iv. 453, 979, 1723, v. 3488, 3786, 6073, vi. 709, viii. 1451, PP. 150.  
**Richard II**, viii. 2991\*.  
**riddles**, viii. 405, 1681.  
**Rishanger's Chronicle**, ii. 2803.  
**Robert of Geneva**, P. 196.  
**Roman de la Rose**, P. 945, i. 196, 213, 2443, ii. 389, iii. 1158, iv. 2200, 2421, 2901, vi. 330, vii. 5131.  
**Roman de toute Chevalerie as authority**, vi. 1789 ff.  
**Roman des Sept Sages as authority**, v. 2031, 2643.  
**Romane de Troie**, see Benoît de Sainte-More.  
'**Romance of Alexander**,' (English), vi. 1789 ff.  
**Romance of Ydoine and Amadas**, vi. 879.  
**rote**, vi. 1312.

- schapthe**, vi. 785.  
**soomerfare**, viii. 1391.  
**sea terms**, iv. 1741, v. 7048.  
*Secretum Secretorum*, iv. 2533, v. 6498, vi. 663, vii. 1, 1706, 2017, 2031 ff., 3207\*, 4559.  
**see**, PP. 382.  
**sein** (= seen), i. 2883.  
**sende** (*pret.*), P. 1013.  
**Seneca**, vii. 2061, false references to, ii. 3095, v. 7736.  
**sete**, vii. 2864.  
**sett**, viii. 2095.  
**Silvester**, legend of, ii. 3187.  
**Simon Magus**, P. 204.  
**'slake a riff'**, viii. 1983.  
**slyke**, v. 6634.  
**sojorned**, vi. 1180.  
**solein**, iv. 448.  
**som**, P. 529.  
**Sortes**, viii. 2718.  
**soth, sothe**, P. 850.  
*Speculum Astronomie* as authority, vi. 1306 ff., vii. 1449.  
*Speculum Stultorum*, v. 4937 ff.  
**'Spertachus'**, vii. 3417 ff.  
**stars**, names of, vii. 1281, 1329 ff.  
**Statius** as authority, i. 1980, iv. 1968, v. 2961 ff.  
**statue**, P. 891.  
**stature**, vi. 1524.  
**'stones'** of alchemy, iv. 2533.  
**'strong thing'**, v. 7377.  
**subjunctive** in indirect speech, P. 41, i. 532, iii. 708; with **'who that'**, &c., P. 460, iv. 1096, v. 2677.  
**'Supplication'**, viii. 2217.  
**supposeth** (*impers.*), v. 22.  
**symbolism** of Gower, i. 2355, ii. 196, v. 5943.  
**syncope**, P. 66\*, 152, v. 519.  
**'Synon,' 'Symon,'** i. 1172.  
  
**take**, P. 54.  
**'tale and ende'**, v. 5670.  
**Tantalus**, punishment of, v. 363.  
**'testament of love'**, viii. 2955\*.  
**'that'**, v. 899, **'that I arise'**, &c., iv. 3273, v. 3422, **'that I ne hadde'**, &c., iv. 1422, **'that . . . ne betre (more, &c.)'**, i. 718, ii. 1423.  
**'the'**, use of, P. 72, 116.  
**Thebith**, vi. 1321.  
**thenken, thinken**, i. 2684.  
**'ther'**, i. 987.  
**Tiberius Constantinus**, ii. 590.  
  
**tire**, vi. 817.  
**'to,'** use of, v. 5724, **'to loke,'** &c., P. 133, **'to'** after **'mai,' 'myhte,' 'mote,'** ii. 510, vii. 437, viii. 640.  
**'he to go,'** viii. 1393.  
**tome** (= to me), i. 232.  
**tome** (*subst.*), ii. 2680.  
**topseilcole**, viii. 1890.  
**'toward,'** v. 6757, viii. 2077.  
*Tresor*, see Brunetto Latini.  
**Trevisa's Polychronicon**, vii. 2194.  
**Trivet** as authority, ii. 587.  
**'Troian,'** vii. 3144.  
**Tullius**, iv. 2648, vii. 1595.  
**tyh** (*pret.*), v. 5709.  
  
**u and v**, vii. 5390.  
**'under the gore,'** &c., v. 5730, 6680.  
**unskilfully**, vii. 4757.  
**unwar**, vi. 1262.  
  
*Valerii Epistola ad Rufinum*, v. 6398 f.  
**Valerius Maximus**, ii. 1613, vii. 2217, 2783, 2845, 2889, 3181, 3215.  
**Valerius, Res Gestae Alexandri**, vi. 1789 ff.  
**'vernage,'** vi. 218.  
**vers**, vi. 70.  
**Vincent of Beauvais**, i. 761, ii. 1613, iii. 1201, vii. 283, 989, viii. 2573.  
**Virgil**, legends of, v. 2031, viii. 2714.  
*Vita Iohannis Eleemosynarii*, vii. 2416.  
*Vox Clamantis*, P. 207, 247, 268, 305, 407, 945, 947, i. 718, v. 1879, 1900, 4937, viii. 2212, PP. 157 and p. 554.  
  
**Walsingham's Chronicle**, iv. 3438.  
**'was,'** viii. 2435.  
*Weddyng of Sir Gawene*, i. 1407 ff.  
**weer**, P. 143.  
**what** (*subst.*), i. 1676.  
**'what'** (= whatever), P. 69\*.  
**'whi ne were it,'** iv. 2855.  
**'whiche'** in the metre, i. 2769.  
**'who that,'** P. 13.  
**William of Malmesbury**, v. 4731.  
**'Wit and Will,'** iii. 1158.  
**'with,'** use of, i. 452, v. 6757, vii. 3359.  
**'with al,'** vi. 1707.  
**wool**, iv. 2895.  
**world**, P. 383, iii. 626.  
  
**ydel**, v. 4724.  
**'yit'** used redundantly, vi. 311, 2418.  
**Ylem**, vii. 216.  
  
**Zoroaster**, vi. 2368.



OXFORD  
PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS  
BY HORACE HART, M.A.  
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY





Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 005 593 582

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES  
CECIL H. GREEN LIBRARY  
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004  
(415) 723-1493

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

JUN 3 2000  
SEP 20 2000

JUN 8 2004  
JAN 8 2004

JUN 21 2005  
MAR 1 2005

